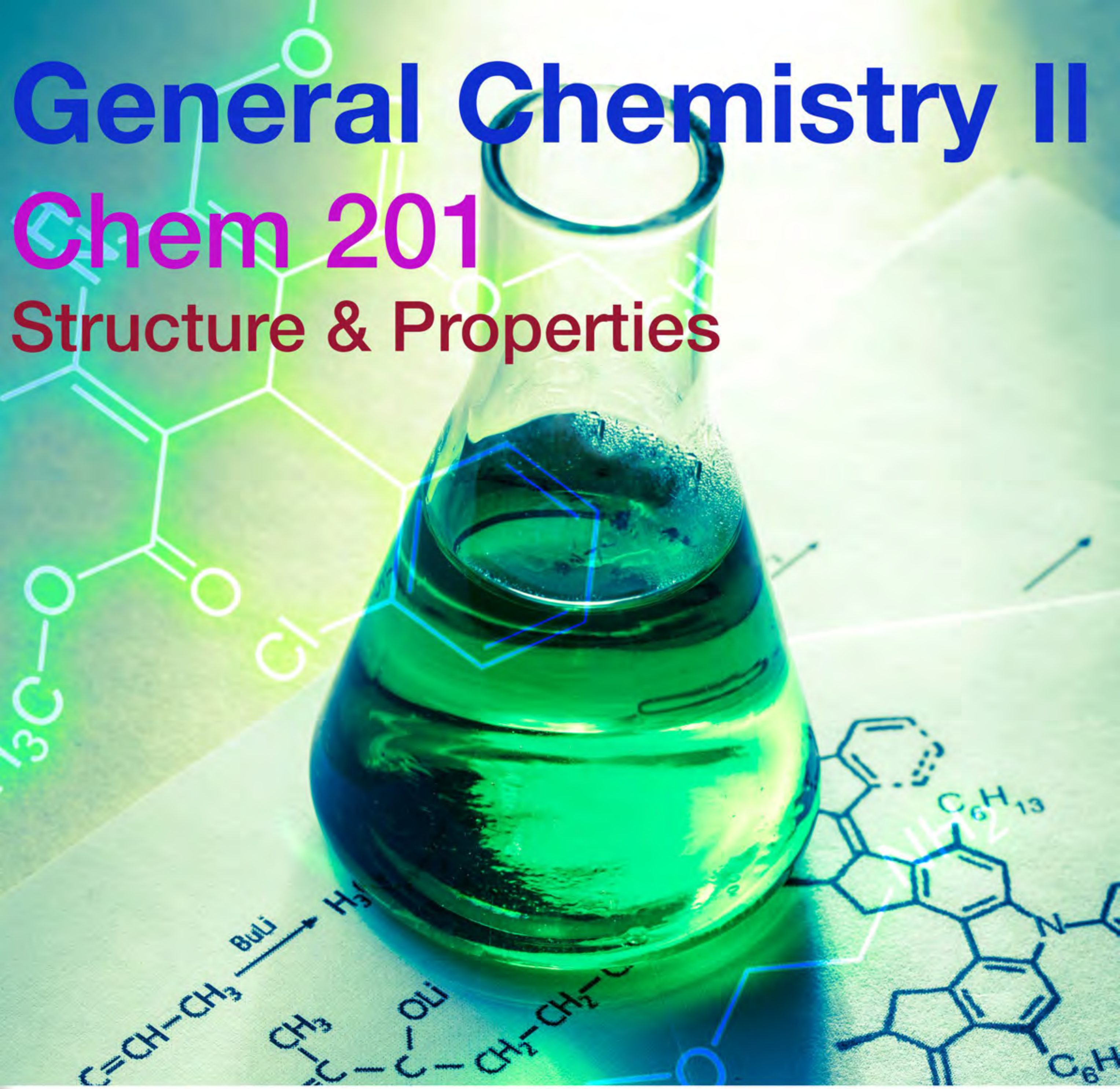
General Chemistry II

Chem 201

Structure & Properties



LibreTexts™

CHEMISTRY

CHEMISTRY 201: GENERAL CHEMISTRY II (GARCES)

LibreTexts™

Chemistry 201: General Chemistry II (Garces)

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the hundreds of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing and "consuming." Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects.

Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.

The LibreTexts mission is to unite students, faculty and scholars in a cooperative effort to develop an easy-to-use online platform for the construction, customization, and dissemination of OER content to reduce the burdens of unreasonable textbook costs to our students and society. The LibreTexts project is a multi-institutional collaborative venture to develop the next generation of open-access texts to improve postsecondary education at all levels of higher learning by developing an Open Access Resource environment. The project currently consists of 14 independently operating and interconnected libraries that are constantly being optimized by students, faculty, and outside experts to supplant conventional paper-based books. These free textbook alternatives are organized within a central environment that is both vertically (from advance to basic level) and horizontally (across different fields) integrated.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXOne and are supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org. More information on our activities can be found via Facebook (https://facebook.com/Libretexts), Twitter (https://twitter.com/libretexts), or our blog (http://Blog.Libretexts.org).

This text was compiled on 01/26/2024

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1: Liquids, Solids, and Intermolecular Forces

2: Solutions

3: Chemical Kinetics

4: Chemical Equilibrium

5: Acids and Bases

6: Free Energy and Thermodynamics

7: Electrochemistry

8: Transition Metals and Coordination Compounds

9: Radioactivity and Nuclear Chemistry

Licensing

A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in ***Back Matter/Detailed Licensing****.*

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: Liquids, Solids, and Intermolecular Forces

1.1: Structure Determines Properties

Here on Earth, we all live in a state of gravity. Not only us, but everything around us, including water, is being pulled towards the center of the planet by gravity. True, it is nice that our dogs don't float off into space, but when a child drops their ice cream (which is full of water, by the way) they don't have to know about gravity to be upset

***Floating Water in Zero Gravity**: Once again, astronauts on the International Space Station dissolved an effervescent tablet in a floating ball of water, and captured images using a camera capable of recording four times the resolution of normal high-definition cameras. The higher resolution images and higher frame rate videos can reveal more information when used on science investigations, giving researchers a valuable new tool aboard the space station. This footage is one of the first of its kind. The cameras are being evaluated for capturing science data and vehicle operations by engineers at NASA's Marshall Space Flight Center in Huntsville, Alabama.*

If you go far enough out in space, for instance, onto the International Space Station, gravity becomes negligible, and the laws of physics act differently than here on Earth. Just how might water act in a place of zero gravity? This video above from NASA gives you a good idea of how different water behaves when the effects if gravity are counteracted.

Actually, on the International Space Station, there is plenty of gravity—according to NASA scientists, the pull of Earth's gravity on the space station and its occupants is substantial: about 90 percent of the force at the Earth's surface. But since the space station is continuously falling around our planet, the astronauts and objects on board are in a kind of free-fall, too, and feel nearly weightless. Water on the space station behaves as if in a zero-gravity environment.

This unique picture shows not only a water drop but also an air bubble inside of the water drop. Notice they both behave the same....according to the laws of physics in space. They both form spheres. This makes sense, as without gravity to tug downward, the forces governing the objects are all the same. So, the water drop (and air bubble) form themselves so they occupy a shape having the least amount of surface area, which is a sphere. On Earth, gravity distorts the shape, but not in space.

Consider what would happen on Earth: The air bubble, lighter than water, would race upward to burst through the surface of the droplet. In space, the air bubble doesn't rise because it is no lighter than the water around it—there's no buoyancy. The droplet doesn't fall from the leaf because there's no force to pull it off. It's stuck there by molecular adhesion.

Sticky water. No buoyancy. These are some of the factors space-farers must take into account when they plan their space gardens. If water is sprayed onto the base of the plant will it trickle down to the roots? More likely it will stick to the stem or adhere to the material in which the plant grows. As humans spend more time and go farther out in space in the future, the physics of "space water" will need to be well understood.

Reference

- The Physics of Space Gardens, NASA.

1.2: Solids, Liquids, and Gases- A Molecular Comparison

Learning Objectives

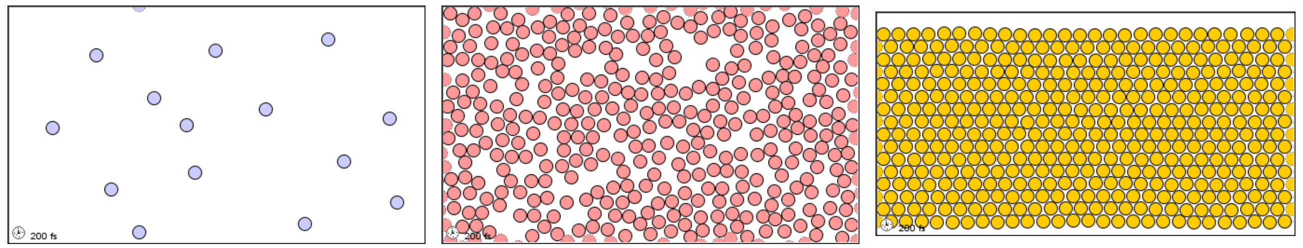
- To be familiar with the kinetic molecular description of liquids.

The *physical* properties of a substance depends upon its physical state. Water vapor, liquid water and ice all have the same *chemical* properties, but their *physical* properties are considerably different. In general *covalent bonds* determine: molecular shape, bond energies, *chemical* properties, while *intermolecular forces* (non-covalent bonds) influence the *physical* properties of liquids and solids. The kinetic molecular theory of gases gives a reasonably accurate description of the behavior of gases. A similar model can be applied to liquids, but it must take into account the nonzero volumes of particles and the presence of strong intermolecular attractive forces.

Figure $1.2.1$: The three common states of matter. From the left, they are solid, liquid, and gas, represented by an ice sculpture, a drop of water, and the air around clouds, respectively. Images used with permission from Wikipedia.

The *state* of a substance depends on the balance between the *kinetic energy* of the individual particles (molecules or atoms) and the *intermolecular forces*. The kinetic energy keeps the molecules apart and moving around, and is a function of the temperature of the substance. The intermolecular forces are attractive forces that try to draw the particles together (Figure $1.2.2$). A discussed previously, gasses are very sensitive to temperatures and pressure. However, these also affect liquids and solids too. Heating and cooling can change the *kinetic energy* of the particles in a substance, and so, we can change the physical state of a substance by heating or cooling it. Increasing the pressure on a substance forces the molecules closer together, which *increases* the strength of intermolecular forces.

Molecular level picture of gases, liquids and solids.



(a) *in the gaseous state*

(b) *as a liquid*

(c) *in solid form*

Figure $1.2.2$: Molecular level picture of gases, liquids and solids.

Below is an overview of the general properties of the three different phases of matter.

Properties of Gases

- A collection of widely separated molecules
- The kinetic energy of the molecules is greater than any attractive forces between the molecules
- The lack of any significant attractive force between molecules allows a gas to expand to fill its container
- If attractive forces become large enough, then the gases exhibit non-ideal behavior

Properties of Liquids

- The intermolecular attractive forces are strong enough to hold molecules close together
- Liquids are more dense and less compressible than gasses
- Liquids have a definite volume, independent of the size and shape of their container

- The attractive forces are ***not*** strong enough, however, to keep neighboring molecules in a fixed position and molecules are free to move past or slide over one another

> *Thus, liquids can be poured and assume the shape of their containers.*

Properties of Solids

- The intermolecular forces between neighboring molecules are strong enough to keep them locked in position
- Solids (like liquids) are not very compressible due to the lack of space between molecules
- If the molecules in a solid adopt a highly ordered packing arrangement, the structures are said to be ***crystalline***

> *Due to the strong intermolecular forces between neighboring molecules, solids are rigid.*

> - Cooling a gas may change the state to a liquid
> - Cooling a liquid may change the state to a solid
> - Increasing the pressure on a gas may change the state to a liquid
> - Increasing the pressure on a liquid may change the state to a solid

Video 1.2.1: Video highlighting the properties for the three states of matter. Source found at www.youtube.com/watch?v=s-KvoVzukHo.

Physical Properties of Liquids

In a gas, the distance between molecules, whether monatomic or polyatomic, is very large compared with the size of the molecules; thus gases have a low density and are highly compressible. In contrast, the molecules in liquids are very close together, with essentially no empty space between them. As in gases, however, the molecules in liquids are in constant motion, and their kinetic energy (and hence their speed) depends on their temperature. We begin our discussion by examining some of the characteristic properties of liquids to see how each is consistent with a modified kinetic molecular description.

The properties of liquids can be explained using a modified version of the kinetic molecular theory of gases described previously. This model explains the higher density, greater order, and lower compressibility of liquids versus gases; the thermal expansion of liquids; why they diffuse; and why they adopt the shape (but not the volume) of their containers. A kinetic molecular description of liquids must take into account both the nonzero volumes of particles and the presence of strong intermolecular attractive forces. Solids and liquids have particles that are fairly close to one another, and are thus called "**condensed phases**" to distinguish them from gases

- **Density**: The molecules of a liquid are packed relatively close together. Consequently, liquids are much denser than gases. The density of a liquid is typically about the same as the density of the solid state of the substance. Densities of liquids are therefore more commonly measured in units of grams per cubic centimeter (g/cm^3) or grams per milliliter (g/mL) than in grams per liter (g/L), the unit commonly used for gases.
- **Molecular Order:** Liquids exhibit short-range order because strong intermolecular attractive forces cause the molecules to pack together rather tightly. Because of their higher kinetic energy compared to the molecules in a solid, however, the molecules in a liquid move rapidly with respect to one another. Thus unlike the ions in the ionic solids, the molecules in liquids are not

arranged in a repeating three-dimensional array. Unlike the molecules in gases, however, the arrangement of the molecules in a liquid is not completely random.

- **Compressibility**: Liquids have so little empty space between their component molecules that they cannot be readily compressed. Compression would force the atoms on adjacent molecules to occupy the same region of space.
- **Thermal Expansion**: The intermolecular forces in liquids are strong enough to keep them from expanding significantly when heated (typically only a few percent over a 100°C temperature range). Thus the volumes of liquids are somewhat fixed. Notice from Table S1 (with a shorten version in Table 1.2.1) that the density of water, for example, changes by only about 3% over a 90-degree temperature range.

Table 1.2.1: The Density of Water at Various Temperatures

T (°C)	Density (g/cm^3)
0	0.99984
30	0.99565
60	0.98320
90	0.96535

- **Diffusion**: Molecules in liquids diffuse because they are in constant motion. A molecule in a liquid cannot move far before colliding with another molecule, however, so the mean free path in liquids is very short, and the rate of diffusion is much slower than in gases.
- **Fluidity**: Liquids can flow, adjusting to the shape of their containers, because their molecules are free to move. This freedom of motion and their close spacing allow the molecules in a liquid to move rapidly into the openings left by other molecules, in turn generating more openings, and so forth (Figure 1.2.3).

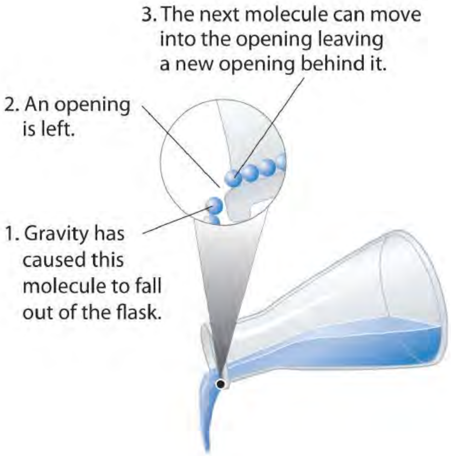


Figure 1.2.3: Why Liquids Flow. Molecules in a liquid are in constant motion. Consequently, when the flask is tilted, molecules move to the left and down due to the force of gravity, and the openings are occupied by other molecules. The result is a net flow of liquid out of the container. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous vy request).

Contributors and Attributions

- Mike Blaber (Florida State University)

1.3: Intermolecular Forces- The Forces that Hold Condensed Phases Together

Learning Objectives

- To describe the intermolecular forces in liquids.

The properties of liquids are intermediate between those of gases and solids, but are more similar to solids. In contrast to *intra*molecular forces, such as the covalent bonds that hold atoms together in molecules and polyatomic ions, *inter*molecular forces hold molecules together in a liquid or solid. Intermolecular forces are generally much weaker than covalent bonds. For example, it requires 927 kJ to overcome the intramolecular forces and break both O–H bonds in 1 mol of water, but it takes only about 41 kJ to overcome the intermolecular attractions and convert 1 mol of liquid water to water vapor at 100°C. (Despite this seemingly low value, the intermolecular forces in liquid water are among the strongest such forces known!) Given the large difference in the strengths of intra- and intermolecular forces, changes between the solid, liquid, and gaseous states almost invariably occur for molecular substances *without breaking covalent bonds*.

> *The properties of liquids are intermediate between those of gases and solids, but are more similar to solids.*

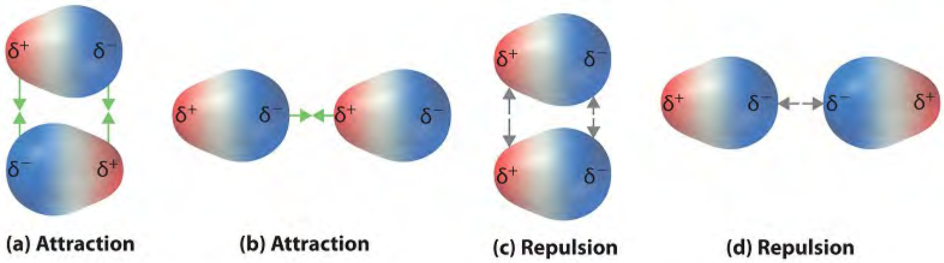
Intermolecular forces determine bulk properties, such as the melting points of solids and the boiling points of liquids. Liquids boil when the molecules have enough thermal energy to overcome the intermolecular attractive forces that hold them together, thereby forming bubbles of vapor within the liquid. Similarly, solids melt when the molecules acquire enough thermal energy to overcome the intermolecular forces that lock them into place in the solid.

Intermolecular forces are electrostatic in nature; that is, they arise from the interaction between positively and negatively charged species. Like covalent and ionic bonds, intermolecular interactions are the sum of both attractive and repulsive components. Because electrostatic interactions fall off rapidly with increasing distance between molecules, intermolecular interactions are most important for solids and liquids, where the molecules are close together. These interactions become important for gases only at very high pressures, where they are responsible for the observed deviations from the ideal gas law at high pressures.

In this section, we explicitly consider three kinds of intermolecular interactions. There are two additional types of electrostatic interaction that you are already familiar with: the ion–ion interactions that are responsible for ionic bonding, and the ion–dipole interactions that occur when ionic substances dissolve in a polar substance such as water. The first two are often described collectively as van der Waals forces.

Dipole–Dipole Interactions

Polar covalent bonds behave as if the bonded atoms have localized fractional charges that are equal but opposite (i.e., the two bonded atoms generate a *dipole*). If the structure of a molecule is such that the individual bond dipoles do not cancel one another, then the molecule has a net dipole moment. Molecules with net dipole moments tend to align themselves so that the positive end of one dipole is near the negative end of another and vice versa, as shown in Figure 1.3.1a.



(a) Attraction **(b) Attraction** **(c) Repulsion** **(d) Repulsion**

Figure 1.3.1: Attractive and Repulsive Dipole–Dipole Interactions. (a and b) Molecular orientations in which the positive end of one dipole (δ^+) is near the negative end of another (δ^-) (and vice versa) produce attractive interactions. (c and d) Molecular orientations that juxtapose the positive or negative ends of the dipoles on adjacent molecules produce repulsive interactions. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

These arrangements are more stable than arrangements in which two positive or two negative ends are adjacent (Figure 1.3.1c). Hence dipole–dipole interactions, such as those in Figure 1.3.1b, are *attractive intermolecular interactions*, whereas those in Figure 1.3.1d are *repulsive intermolecular interactions*. Because molecules in a liquid move freely and continuously, molecules always experience both attractive and repulsive dipole–dipole interactions simultaneously, as shown in Figure 1.3.2. On average, however, the attractive interactions dominate.

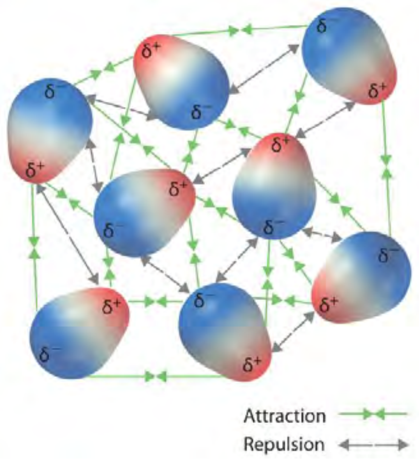


Figure 1.3.2: Both attractive and repulsive dipole–dipole interactions occur in a liquid sample with many molecules. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

The green arrows pointing towards each other represent attraction. The gray arrows pointing away from each other represent repulsion

Because each end of a dipole possesses only a fraction of the charge of an electron, dipole–dipole interactions are substantially weaker than the interactions between two ions, each of which has a charge of at least ±1, or between a dipole and an ion, in which one of the species has at least a full positive or negative charge. In addition, the attractive interaction between dipoles falls off much more rapidly with increasing distance than do the ion–ion interactions. Recall that the attractive energy between two ions is proportional to $1/r$, where r is the distance between the ions. Doubling the distance ($r \rightarrow 2r$) decreases the attractive energy by one-half. In contrast, the energy of the interaction of two dipoles is proportional to $1/r^3$, so doubling the distance between the dipoles decreases the strength of the interaction by 2^3, or 8-fold. Thus a substance such as HCl, which is partially held together by dipole–dipole interactions, is a gas at room temperature and 1 atm pressure. Conversely, $NaCl$, which is held together by interionic interactions, is a high-melting-point solid. Within a series of compounds of similar molar mass, the strength of the intermolecular interactions increases as the dipole moment of the molecules increases, as shown in Table 1.3.1.

Table 1.3.1: Relationships Between the Dipole Moment and the Boiling Point for Organic Compounds of Similar Molar Mass

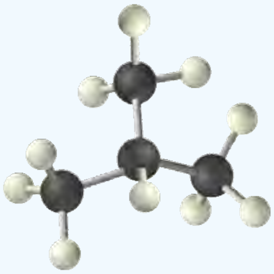
Compound	Molar Mass (g/mol)	Dipole Moment (D)	Boiling Point (K)
C_3H_6 (cyclopropane)	42	0	240
CH_3OCH_3 (dimethyl ether)	46	1.30	248
CH_3CN (acetonitrile)	41	3.9	355

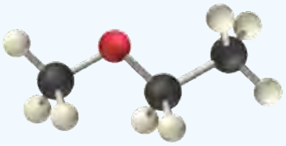
> *The attractive energy between two ions is proportional to 1/r, whereas the attractive energy between two dipoles is proportional to 1/r6.*

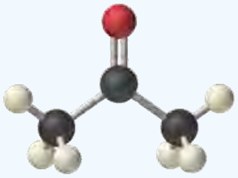
Video Discussing Dipole Intermolecular Forces. Source: Dipole Intermolecular Force, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Example 1.3.1

Arrange ethyl methyl ether ($CH_3OCH_2CH_3$), 2-methylpropane [isobutane, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_3$], and acetone (CH_3COCH_3) in order of increasing boiling points. Their structures are as follows:


2-Methylpropane


Ethyl methyl ether


Acetone

Given: compounds.

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points.

Strategy:

Compare the molar masses and the polarities of the compounds. Compounds with higher molar masses and that are polar will have the highest boiling points.

Solution:

The three compounds have essentially the same molar mass (58–60 g/mol), so we must look at differences in polarity to predict the strength of the intermolecular dipole–dipole interactions and thus the boiling points of the compounds.

The first compound, 2-methylpropane, contains only C–H bonds, which are not very polar because C and H have similar electronegativities. It should therefore have a very small (but nonzero) dipole moment and a very low boiling point.

Ethyl methyl ether has a structure similar to H_2O; it contains two polar C–O single bonds oriented at about a 109° angle to each other, in addition to relatively nonpolar C–H bonds. As a result, the C–O bond dipoles partially reinforce one another and generate a significant dipole moment that should give a moderately high boiling point.

Acetone contains a polar C=O double bond oriented at about 120° to two methyl groups with nonpolar C–H bonds. The C–O bond dipole therefore corresponds to the molecular dipole, which should result in both a rather large dipole moment and a high boiling point.

Thus we predict the following order of boiling points:

2-methylpropane < ethyl methyl ether < acetone

This result is in good agreement with the actual data: 2-methylpropane, boiling point = −11.7°C, and the dipole moment (μ) = 0.13 D; methyl ethyl ether, boiling point = 7.4°C and μ = 1.17 D; acetone, boiling point = 56.1°C and μ = 2.88 D.

Exercise 1.3.1

Arrange carbon tetrafluoride (CF_4), ethyl methyl sulfide ($CH_3SC_2H_5$), dimethyl sulfoxide [$(CH_3)_2S=O$], and 2-methylbutane [isopentane, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3$] in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer

dimethyl sulfoxide (boiling point = 189.9°C) > ethyl methyl sulfide (boiling point = 67°C) > 2-methylbutane (boiling point = 27.8°C) > carbon tetrafluoride (boiling point = −128°C)

London Dispersion Forces

Thus far, we have considered only interactions between polar molecules. Other factors must be considered to explain why many nonpolar molecules, such as bromine, benzene, and hexane, are liquids at room temperature; why others, such as iodine and naphthalene, are solids. Even the noble gases can be liquefied or solidified at low temperatures, high pressures, or both (Table 1.3.2).

What kind of attractive forces can exist between nonpolar molecules or atoms? This question was answered by Fritz London (1900–1954), a German physicist who later worked in the United States. In 1930, London proposed that temporary fluctuations in the electron distributions within atoms and nonpolar molecules could result in the formation of short-lived instantaneous dipole moments, which produce attractive forces called London dispersion forces between otherwise nonpolar substances.

Table 1.3.2: Normal Melting and Boiling Points of Some Elements and Nonpolar Compounds

Substance	Molar Mass (g/mol)	Melting Point (°C)	Boiling Point (°C)
Ar	40	−189.4	−185.9
Xe	131	−111.8	−108.1
N_2	28	−210	−195.8
O_2	32	−218.8	−183.0
F_2	38	−219.7	−188.1
I_2	254	113.7	184.4
CH_4	16	−182.5	−161.5

Consider a pair of adjacent He atoms, for example. On average, the two electrons in each He atom are uniformly distributed around the nucleus. Because the electrons are in constant motion, however, their distribution in one atom is likely to be asymmetrical at any given instant, resulting in an instantaneous dipole moment. As shown in part (a) in Figure 1.3.3, the instantaneous dipole moment on one atom can interact with the electrons in an adjacent atom, pulling them toward the positive end of the instantaneous dipole or repelling them from the negative end. The net effect is that the first atom causes the temporary formation of a dipole, called an induced dipole, in the second. Interactions between these temporary dipoles cause atoms to be attracted to one another. These attractive interactions are weak and fall off rapidly with increasing distance. London was able to show with quantum mechanics that the attractive energy between molecules due to temporary dipole–induced dipole interactions falls off as $1/r^6$. Doubling the distance therefore decreases the attractive energy by 2^6, or 64-fold.

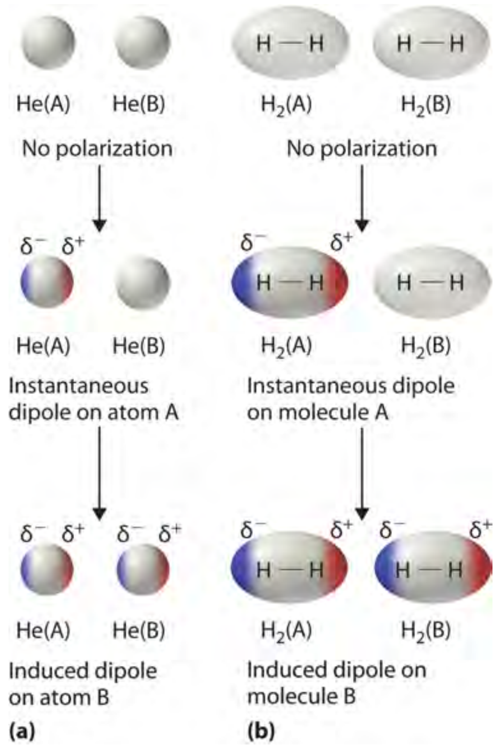


Figure 1.3.3: Instantaneous Dipole Moments. The formation of an instantaneous dipole moment on one He atom (a) or an H_2 molecule (b) results in the formation of an induced dipole on an adjacent atom or molecule.

Instantaneous dipole–induced dipole interactions between nonpolar molecules can produce intermolecular attractions just as they produce interatomic attractions in monatomic substances like Xe. This effect, illustrated for two H_2 molecules in part (b) in Figure 1.3.3, tends to become more pronounced as atomic and molecular masses increase (Table 1.3.2). For example, Xe boils at −108.1°C, whereas He boils at −269°C. The reason for this trend is that the strength of London dispersion forces is related to the ease with which the electron distribution in a given atom can be perturbed. In small atoms such as He, the two 1*s* electrons are held close to the nucleus in a very small volume, and electron–electron repulsions are strong enough to prevent significant asymmetry in their distribution. In larger atoms such as Xe, however, the outer electrons are much less strongly attracted to the nucleus because of filled intervening shells. As a result, it is relatively easy to temporarily deform the electron distribution to generate an instantaneous or induced dipole. The ease of deformation of the electron distribution in an atom or molecule is called its polarizability. Because the electron distribution is more easily perturbed in large, heavy species than in small, light species, we say that heavier substances tend to be much more *polarizable* than lighter ones.

> *For similar substances, London dispersion forces get stronger with increasing molecular size.*

The polarizability of a substance also determines how it interacts with ions and species that possess permanent dipoles. Thus, London dispersion forces are responsible for the general trend toward higher boiling points with increased molecular mass and greater surface area in a homologous series of compounds, such as the alkanes (part (a) in Figure 1.3.4). The strengths of London dispersion forces also depend significantly on molecular shape because shape determines how much of one molecule can interact with its neighboring molecules at any given time. For example, part (b) in Figure 1.3.4 shows 2,2-dimethylpropane (neopentane) and *n*-pentane, both of which have the empirical formula C_5H_{12}. Neopentane is almost spherical, with a small surface area for intermolecular interactions, whereas *n*-pentane has an extended conformation that enables it to come into close contact with other *n*-pentane molecules. As a result, the boiling point of neopentane (9.5°C) is more than 25°C lower than the boiling point of *n*-pentane (36.1°C).

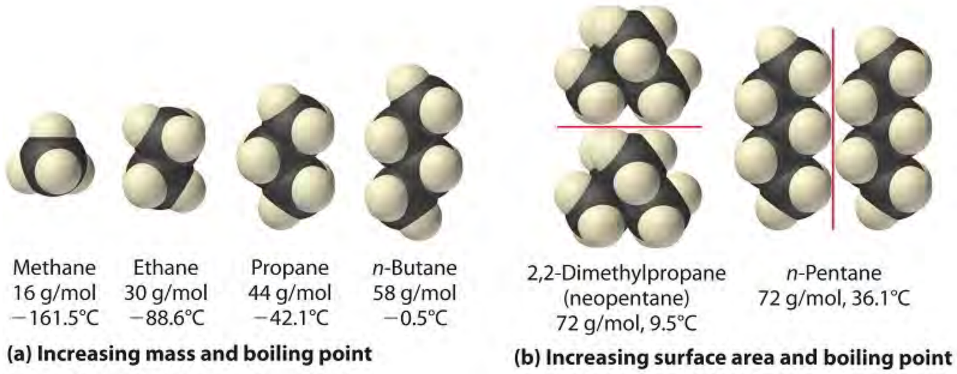


Figure 1.3.4: Mass and Surface Area Affect the Strength of London Dispersion Forces. (a) In this series of four simple alkanes, larger molecules have stronger London forces between them than smaller molecules do, and consequently have higher boiling points. (b) Linear *n*-pentane molecules have a larger surface area and stronger intermolecular forces than spherical neopentane molecules. As a result, neopentane is a gas at room temperature, whereas *n*-pentane is a volatile liquid.

All molecules, whether polar or nonpolar, are attracted to one another by London dispersion forces in addition to any other attractive forces that may be present. In general, however, dipole–dipole interactions in small polar molecules are significantly stronger than London dispersion forces, so the former predominate.

Video Discussing London/Dispersion Intermolecular Forces. Source: Dispersion Intermolecular Force, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

✓ Example 1.3.2

Arrange *n*-butane, propane, 2-methylpropane [isobutene, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_3$], and *n*-pentane in order of increasing boiling points.

Given: compounds

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points

Strategy:

Determine the intermolecular forces in the compounds, and then arrange the compounds according to the strength of those forces. The substance with the weakest forces will have the lowest boiling point.

Solution:

The four compounds are alkanes and nonpolar, so London dispersion forces are the only important intermolecular forces. These forces are generally stronger with increasing molecular mass, so propane should have the lowest boiling point and *n*-pentane should have the highest, with the two butane isomers falling in between. Of the two butane isomers, 2-methylpropane is more compact, and *n*-butane has the more extended shape. Consequently, we expect intermolecular interactions for *n*-butane to be stronger due to its larger surface area, resulting in a higher boiling point. The overall order is thus as follows, with actual boiling points in parentheses: propane (−42.1°C) < 2-methylpropane (−11.7°C) < *n*-butane (−0.5°C) < *n*-pentane (36.1°C).

? Exercise 1.3.2

Arrange GeH_4, $SiCl_4$, SiH_4, CH_4, and $GeCl_4$ in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer

$GeCl_4$ (87°C) > $SiCl_4$ (57.6°C) > GeH_4 (−88.5°C) > SiH_4 (−111.8°C) > CH_4 (−161°C)

Hydrogen Bonds

Molecules with hydrogen atoms bonded to electronegative atoms such as O, N, and F (and to a much lesser extent, Cl and S) tend to exhibit unusually strong intermolecular interactions. These result in much higher boiling points than are observed for substances in which London dispersion forces dominate, as illustrated for the covalent hydrides of elements of groups 14–17 in Figure 1.3.5. Methane and its heavier congeners in group 14 form a series whose boiling points increase smoothly with increasing molar mass. This is the expected trend in nonpolar molecules, for which London dispersion forces are the exclusive intermolecular forces. In contrast, the hydrides of the lightest members of groups 15–17 have boiling points that are more than 100°C greater than predicted on the basis of their molar masses. The effect is most dramatic for water: if we extend the straight line connecting the points for H_2Te and H_2Se to the line for period 2, we obtain an estimated boiling point of −130°C for water! Imagine the implications for life on Earth if water boiled at −130°C rather than 100°C.

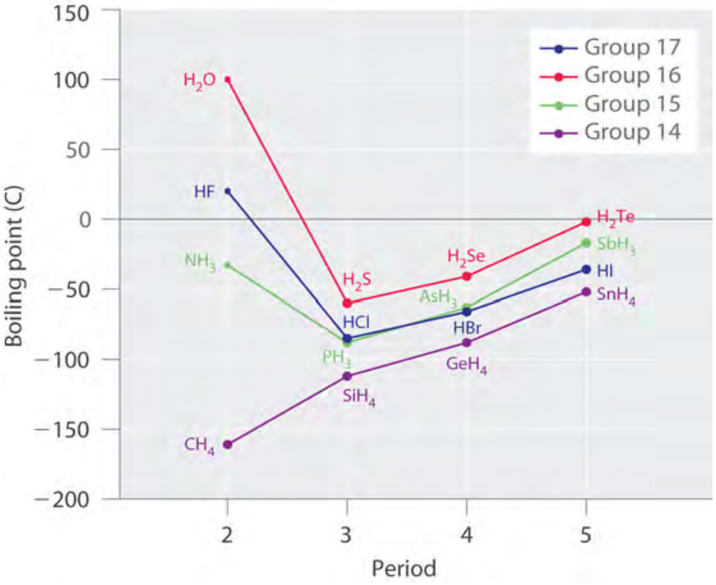


Figure 1.3.5: The Effects of Hydrogen Bonding on Boiling Points. These plots of the boiling points of the covalent hydrides of the elements of groups 14–17 show that the boiling points of the lightest members of each series for which hydrogen bonding is possible (HF, NH_3, and H_2O) are anomalously high for compounds with such low molecular masses.

Group 14 is in purple, group 15 is in green, group 16 is red, and group 17 is blue. Graph of boiling point against period.

Why do strong intermolecular forces produce such anomalously high boiling points and other unusual properties, such as high enthalpies of vaporization and high melting points? The answer lies in the highly polar nature of the bonds between hydrogen and very electronegative elements such as O, N, and F. The large difference in electronegativity results in a large partial positive charge on hydrogen and a correspondingly large partial negative charge on the O, N, or F atom. Consequently, H–O, H–N, and H–F bonds have very large bond dipoles that can interact strongly with one another. Because a hydrogen atom is so small, these dipoles can also approach one another more closely than most other dipoles. The combination of large bond dipoles and short dipole–dipole distances results in very strong dipole–dipole interactions called hydrogen bonds, as shown for ice in Figure 1.3.6. A hydrogen bond is usually indicated by a dotted line between the hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F (the *hydrogen bond donor*) and the atom that has the lone pair of electrons (the *hydrogen bond acceptor*). Because each water molecule contains two hydrogen atoms and two lone pairs, a tetrahedral arrangement maximizes the number of hydrogen bonds that can be formed. In the structure of ice, each oxygen atom is surrounded by a distorted tetrahedron of hydrogen atoms that form bridges to the oxygen atoms of adjacent water molecules. The bridging hydrogen atoms are *not* equidistant from the two oxygen atoms they connect, however. Instead, each hydrogen atom is 101 pm from one oxygen and 174 pm from the other. In contrast, each oxygen atom is bonded to two H atoms at the shorter distance and two at the longer distance, corresponding to two O–H covalent bonds and two O⋯H hydrogen bonds from adjacent water molecules, respectively. The resulting open, cagelike structure of ice means that the solid is actually slightly less dense than the liquid, which explains why ice floats on water, rather than sinks.

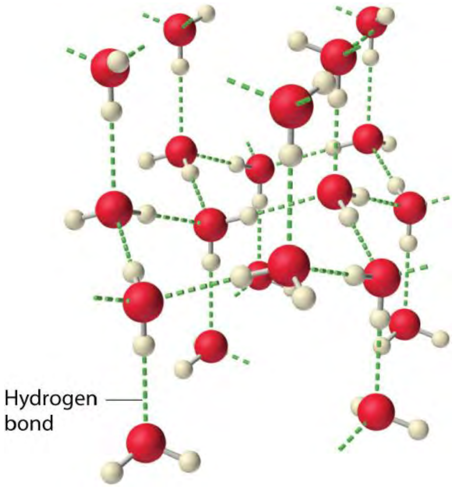


Figure 1.3.6: The Hydrogen-Bonded Structure of Ice

Each water molecule accepts two hydrogen bonds from two other water molecules and donates two hydrogen atoms to form hydrogen bonds with two more water molecules, producing an open, cage like structure. The structure of liquid water is very similar, but in the liquid, the hydrogen bonds are continually broken and formed because of rapid molecular motion.

> *Hydrogen bond formation requires both a hydrogen bond donor and a hydrogen bond acceptor.*

Because ice is less dense than liquid water, rivers, lakes, and oceans freeze from the top down. In fact, the ice forms a protective surface layer that insulates the rest of the water, allowing fish and other organisms to survive in the lower levels of a frozen lake or sea. If ice were denser than the liquid, the ice formed at the surface in cold weather would sink as fast as it formed. Bodies of water would freeze from the bottom up, which would be lethal for most aquatic creatures. The expansion of water when freezing also explains why automobile or boat engines must be protected by “antifreeze” and why unprotected pipes in houses break if they are allowed to freeze.

Video Discussing Hydrogen Bonding Intermolecular Forces. Source: Hydrogen Bonding Intermolecular Force, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

✓ Example 1.3.3

Considering CH_3OH, C_2H_6, Xe, and $(CH_3)_3N$, which can form hydrogen bonds with themselves? Draw the hydrogen-bonded structures.

Given: compounds

Asked for: formation of hydrogen bonds and structure

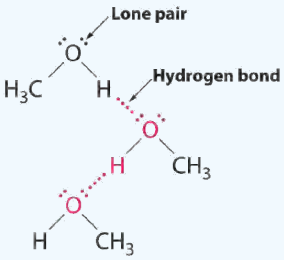
Strategy:

A. Identify the compounds with a hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F. These are likely to be able to act as hydrogen bond donors.
B. Of the compounds that can act as hydrogen bond donors, identify those that also contain lone pairs of electrons, which allow them to be hydrogen bond acceptors. If a substance is both a hydrogen donor and a hydrogen bond acceptor, draw a structure showing the hydrogen bonding.

Solution:

A. Of the species listed, xenon (Xe), ethane (C_2H_6), and trimethylamine [$(CH_3)_3N$] do not contain a hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F; hence they cannot act as hydrogen bond donors.

B. The one compound that can act as a hydrogen bond donor, methanol (CH_3OH), contains both a hydrogen atom attached to O (making it a hydrogen bond donor) and two lone pairs of electrons on O (making it a hydrogen bond acceptor); methanol can thus form hydrogen bonds by acting as either a hydrogen bond donor or a hydrogen bond acceptor. The hydrogen-bonded structure of methanol is as follows:



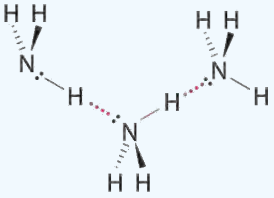
Hydrogen bonding in methanol

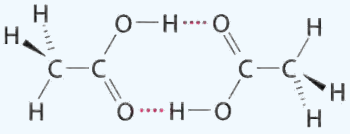
? Exercise 1.3.3

Considering CH_3CO_2H, $(CH_3)_3N$, NH_3, and CH_3F, which can form hydrogen bonds with themselves? Draw the hydrogen-bonded structures.

Answer

CH_3CO_2H and NH_3;





Hydrogen bonding in ammonia

Hydrogen bonding in acetic acid

Hydrogen bonding in ammonia between nitrogen and hydrogen. hydrogen bonding in acetic acid is between oxygen and hydrogen.

Although hydrogen bonds are significantly weaker than covalent bonds, with typical dissociation energies of only 15–25 kJ/mol, they have a significant influence on the physical properties of a compound. Compounds such as HF can form only two hydrogen bonds at a time as can, on average, pure liquid NH_3. Consequently, even though their molecular masses are similar to that of water, their boiling points are significantly lower than the boiling point of water, which forms *four* hydrogen bonds at a time.

✓ Example 1.3.4: Buckyballs

Arrange C_{60} (buckminsterfullerene, which has a cage structure), NaCl, He, Ar, and N_2O in order of increasing boiling points.

Given: compounds.

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points.

Strategy:

Identify the intermolecular forces in each compound and then arrange the compounds according to the strength of those forces. The substance with the weakest forces will have the lowest boiling point.

Solution

Electrostatic interactions are strongest for an ionic compound, so we expect NaCl to have the highest boiling point. To predict the relative boiling points of the other compounds, we must consider their polarity (for dipole–dipole interactions), their ability to form hydrogen bonds, and their molar mass (for London dispersion forces). Helium is nonpolar and by far the lightest, so it should have the lowest boiling point. Argon and N_2O have very similar molar masses (40 and 44 g/mol, respectively), but N_2O is polar while Ar is not. Consequently, N_2O should have a higher boiling point. A C_{60} molecule is nonpolar, but its molar mass is 720 g/mol, much greater than that of Ar or N_2O. Because the boiling points of nonpolar substances increase rapidly with molecular mass, C_{60} should boil at a higher temperature than the other nonionic substances. The predicted order is thus as follows, with actual boiling points in parentheses:

$$\text{He } (-269°\text{C}) < \text{Ar } (-185.7°\text{C}) < N_2O\ (-88.5°\text{C}) < C_{60}\ (>280°\text{C}) < \text{NaCl } (1465°\text{C}).$$

? Exercise 1.3.4

Arrange 2,4-dimethylheptane, Ne, CS_2, Cl_2, and KBr in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer

KBr (1435°C) > 2,4-dimethylheptane (132.9°C) > CS_2 (46.6°C) > Cl_2 (−34.6°C) > Ne (−246°C)

✓ Example 1.3.5

Identify the most significant intermolecular force in each substance.

a. C_3H_8
b. CH_3OH
c. H_2S

Solution

a. Although C–H bonds are polar, they are only minimally polar. The most significant intermolecular force for this substance would be dispersion forces.
b. This molecule has an H atom bonded to an O atom, so it will experience hydrogen bonding.
c. Although this molecule does not experience hydrogen bonding, the Lewis electron dot diagram and VSEPR indicate that it is bent, so it has a permanent dipole. The most significant force in this substance is dipole-dipole interaction.

? Exercise 1.3.6

Identify the most significant intermolecular force in each substance.

a. HF
b. HCl

Answer a

hydrogen bonding

Answer b

dipole-dipole interactions

Summary

Intermolecular forces are electrostatic in nature and include van der Waals forces and hydrogen bonds. Molecules in liquids are held to other molecules by intermolecular interactions, which are weaker than the intramolecular interactions that hold the atoms together within molecules and polyatomic ions. Transitions between the solid and liquid, or the liquid and gas phases, are due to changes in intermolecular interactions, but do not affect intramolecular interactions. The three major types of intermolecular interactions are dipole–dipole interactions, London dispersion forces (these two are often referred to collectively as **van der Waals forces**), and hydrogen bonds. **Dipole–dipole interactions** arise from the electrostatic interactions of the positive and negative ends of molecules with permanent dipole moments; their strength is proportional to the magnitude of the dipole moment and to $1/r^3$, where r is the distance between dipoles. **London dispersion forces** are due to the formation of **instantaneous dipole moments** in polar or nonpolar molecules as a result of short-lived fluctuations of electron charge distribution, which in turn cause the temporary formation of an **induced dipole** in adjacent molecules; their energy falls off as $1/r^6$. Larger atoms tend to be more **polarizable** than smaller ones, because their outer electrons are less tightly bound and are therefore more easily perturbed. **Hydrogen bonds** are especially strong dipole–dipole interactions between molecules that have hydrogen bonded to a highly electronegative atom, such as O, N, or F. The resulting partially positively charged H atom on one molecule (the *hydrogen bond donor*) can interact strongly with a lone pair of electrons of a partially negatively charged O, N, or F atom on adjacent molecules (the *hydrogen bond acceptor*). Because of strong O⋯H hydrogen bonding between water molecules, water has an unusually high boiling point, and ice has an open, cage like structure that is less dense than liquid water.

1.4: Intermolecular Forces in Action- Surface Tension, Viscosity, and Capillary Action

Learning Objectives

- To describe the unique properties of liquids.

Although you have been introduced to some of the interactions that hold molecules together in a liquid, we have not yet discussed the consequences of those interactions for the bulk properties of liquids. We now turn our attention to three unique properties of liquids that intimately depend on the nature of intermolecular interactions:

- surface tension,
- capillary action, and
- viscosity.

Surface Tension

If liquids tend to adopt the shapes of their containers, then why do small amounts of water on a freshly waxed car form raised droplets instead of a thin, continuous film? The answer lies in a property called *surface tension*, which depends on intermolecular forces. Surface tension is the energy required to increase the surface area of a liquid by a unit amount and varies greatly from liquid to liquid based on the nature of the intermolecular forces, e.g., water with hydrogen bonds has a surface tension of 7.29 x 10^{-2} J/m^2 (at 20°C), while mercury with metallic bonds has as surface tension that is 15 times higher: 4.86 x 10^{-1} J/m^2 (at 20°C).

Figure $1.4.1$ presents a microscopic view of a liquid droplet. A typical molecule in the *interior* of the droplet is surrounded by other molecules that exert attractive forces from all directions. Consequently, there is no *net* force on the molecule that would cause it to move in a particular direction. In contrast, a molecule on the *surface* experiences a net attraction toward the drop because there are no molecules on the outside to balance the forces exerted by adjacent molecules in the interior. Because a sphere has the smallest possible surface area for a given volume, intermolecular attractive interactions between water molecules cause the droplet to adopt a spherical shape. This maximizes the number of attractive interactions and minimizes the number of water molecules at the surface. Hence raindrops are almost spherical, and drops of water on a waxed (nonpolar) surface, which does not interact strongly with water, form round beads. A dirty car is covered with a mixture of substances, some of which are polar. Attractive interactions between the polar substances and water cause the water to spread out into a thin film instead of forming beads.

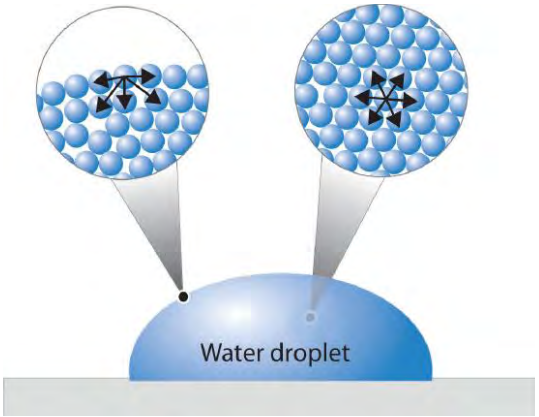


Figure 1.4.1: A Representation of Surface Tension in a Liquid. Molecules at the surface of water experience a net attraction to other molecules in the liquid, which holds the surface of the bulk sample together. In contrast, those in the interior experience uniform attractive forces.

The same phenomenon holds molecules together at the surface of a bulk sample of water, almost as if they formed a skin. When filling a glass with water, the glass can be overfilled so that the level of the liquid actually extends *above* the rim. Similarly, a sewing needle or a paper clip can be placed on the surface of a glass of water where it "floats," even though steel is much denser than water. Many insects take advantage of this property to walk on the surface of puddles or ponds without sinking. This is even observable in the zero gravity conditions of space as shown in Figure $1.4.2$ (and more so in the video link) where water wrung from a wet towel continues to float along the towel's surface!

Figure 1.4.2: The Effects of the High Surface Tension of Liquid Water. The full video can be found at www.youtube.com/watch?v=9jB7rOC5kG8.

Such phenomena are manifestations of surface tension, which is defined as the energy required to increase the surface area of a liquid by a specific amount. Surface tension is therefore measured as energy per unit area, such as joules per square meter (J/m^2) or dyne per centimeter (dyn/cm), where 1 dyn = 1×10^{-5} N. The values of the surface tension of some representative liquids are listed in Table 1.4.1. Note the correlation between the surface tension of a liquid and the strength of the intermolecular forces: the stronger the intermolecular forces, the higher the surface tension. For example, water, with its strong intermolecular hydrogen bonding, has one of the highest surface tension values of any liquid, whereas low-boiling-point organic molecules, which have relatively weak intermolecular forces, have much lower surface tensions. Mercury is an apparent anomaly, but its very high surface tension is due to the presence of strong metallic bonding.

Table 1.4.1: Surface Tension, Viscosity, Vapor Pressure (at 25°C Unless Otherwise Indicated), and Normal Boiling Points of Common Liquids

Substance	Surface Tension ($\times 10^{-3}$ J/m^2)	Viscosity (mPa•s)	Vapor Pressure (mmHg)	Normal Boiling Point (°C)
Organic Compounds				
diethyl ether	17	0.22	531	34.6
n-hexane	18	0.30	149	68.7
acetone	23	0.31	227	56.5
ethanol	22	1.07	59	78.3
ethylene glycol	48	16.1	~0.08	198.9
Liquid Elements				
bromine	41	0.94	218	58.8
mercury	486	1.53	0.0020	357
Water				
0°C	75.6	1.79	4.6	—
20°C	72.8	1.00	17.5	—
60°C	66.2	0.47	149	—
100°C	58.9	0.28	760	—

Adding soaps and detergents that disrupt the intermolecular attractions between adjacent water molecules can reduce the surface tension of water. Because they affect the surface properties of a liquid, soaps and detergents are called surface-active agents, or surfactants. In the 1960s, US Navy researchers developed a method of fighting fires aboard aircraft carriers using “foams,” which are aqueous solutions of fluorinated surfactants. The surfactants reduce the surface tension of water below that of fuel, so the fluorinated solution is able to spread across the burning surface and extinguish the fire. Such foams are now used universally to fight large-scale fires of organic liquids.

Capillary Action

Intermolecular forces also cause a phenomenon called capillary action, which is the tendency of a polar liquid to rise against gravity into a small-diameter tube (a *capillary*), as shown in Figure $1.4.3$. When a glass capillary is is placed in liquid water, water rises up into the capillary. The height to which the water rises depends on the diameter of the tube and the temperature of the water but *not* on the angle at which the tube enters the water. The smaller the diameter, the higher the liquid rises.

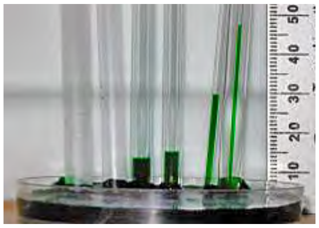


Figure $1.4.3$: The Phenomenon of Capillary Action. Capillary action seen as water climbs to different levels in glass tubes of different diameters. Credit: Dr. Clay Robinson, PhD, West Texas A&M University.

- Cohesive forces bind molecules of the same type together
- Adhesive forces bind a substance to a surface

Capillary action is the net result of two opposing sets of forces: cohesive forces, which are the intermolecular forces that hold a liquid together, and adhesive forces, which are the attractive forces between a liquid and the substance that composes the capillary. Water has both strong adhesion to glass, which contains polar SiOH groups, and strong intermolecular cohesion. When a glass capillary is put into water, the surface tension due to cohesive forces constricts the surface area of water within the tube, while adhesion between the water and the glass creates an upward force that maximizes the amount of glass surface in contact with the water. If the adhesive forces are stronger than the cohesive forces, as is the case for water, then the liquid in the capillary rises to the level where the downward force of gravity exactly balances this upward force. If, however, the cohesive forces are stronger than the adhesive forces, as is the case for mercury and glass, the liquid pulls itself down into the capillary below the surface of the bulk liquid to minimize contact with the glass (Figure $1.4.4$). The upper surface of a liquid in a tube is called the meniscus, and the shape of the meniscus depends on the relative strengths of the cohesive and adhesive forces. In liquids such as water, the meniscus is concave; in liquids such as mercury, however, which have very strong cohesive forces and weak adhesion to glass, the meniscus is convex (Figure $1.4.4$).

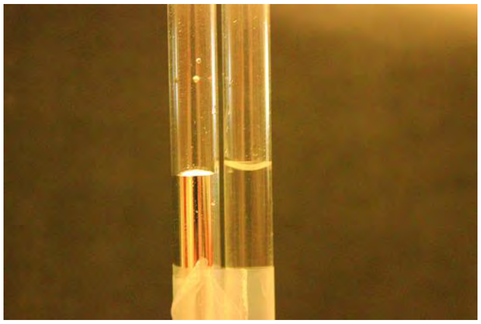


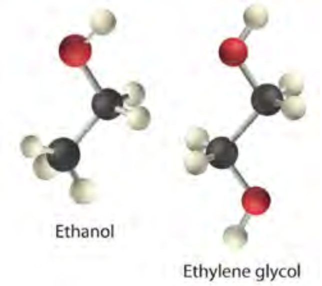
Figure $1.4.4$: The Phenomenon of Capillary Action. Capillary action of water compared to mercury, in each case with respect to a polar surface such as glass. Differences in the relative strengths of cohesive and adhesive forces result in different meniscus shapes for mercury (left) and water (right) in glass tubes. (credit: Mark Ott)

Polar substances are drawn up a glass capillary and generally have a concave meniscus.

Fluids and nutrients are transported up the stems of plants or the trunks of trees by capillary action. Plants contain tiny rigid tubes composed of cellulose, to which water has strong adhesion. Because of the strong adhesive forces, nutrients can be transported from the roots to the tops of trees that are more than 50 m tall. Cotton towels are also made of cellulose; they absorb water because the tiny tubes act like capillaries and “wick” the water away from your skin. The moisture is absorbed by the entire fabric, not just the layer in contact with your body.

Viscosity

Viscosity (η) is the resistance of a liquid to flow. Some liquids, such as gasoline, ethanol, and water, flow very readily and hence have a *low viscosity*. Others, such as motor oil, molasses, and maple syrup, flow very slowly and have a *high viscosity*. The two most common methods for evaluating the viscosity of a liquid are (1) to measure the time it takes for a quantity of liquid to flow through a narrow vertical tube and (2) to measure the time it takes steel balls to fall through a given volume of the liquid. The higher the viscosity, the slower the liquid flows through the tube and the steel balls fall. Viscosity is expressed in units of the poise (mPa•s); the higher the number, the higher the viscosity. The viscosities of some representative liquids are listed in Table 11.3.1 and show a correlation between viscosity and intermolecular forces. Because a liquid can flow only if the molecules can move past one another with minimal resistance, strong intermolecular attractive forces make it more difficult for molecules to move with respect to one another. The addition of a second hydroxyl group to ethanol, for example, which produces ethylene glycol ($HOCH_2CH_2OH$), increases the viscosity 15-fold. This effect is due to the increased number of hydrogen bonds that can form between hydroxyl groups in adjacent molecules, resulting in dramatically stronger intermolecular attractive forces.



There is also a correlation between viscosity and molecular shape. Liquids consisting of long, flexible molecules tend to have higher viscosities than those composed of more spherical or shorter-chain molecules. The longer the molecules, the easier it is for them to become “tangled” with one another, making it more difficult for them to move past one another. London dispersion forces also increase with chain length. Due to a combination of these two effects, long-chain hydrocarbons (such as motor oils) are highly viscous.

> *Viscosity increases as intermolecular interactions or molecular size increases.*

Video Discussing Surface Tension and Viscosity. Video Link: Surface Tension, Viscosity, & Melting Point, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Application: Motor Oils

Motor oils and other lubricants demonstrate the practical importance of controlling viscosity. The oil in an automobile engine must effectively lubricate under a wide range of conditions, from subzero starting temperatures to the 200°C that oil can reach in an engine in the heat of the Mojave Desert in August. Viscosity decreases rapidly with increasing temperatures because the kinetic energy of the molecules increases, and higher kinetic energy enables the molecules to overcome the attractive forces that prevent the liquid from flowing. As a result, an oil that is thin enough to be a good lubricant in a cold engine will become too “thin” (have too low a viscosity) to be effective at high temperatures.

Figure 1.4.5: Oil being drained from a car

The viscosity of motor oils is described by an SAE (Society of Automotive Engineers) rating ranging from SAE 5 to SAE 50 for engine oils: the lower the number, the lower the viscosity (Figure 1.4.5). So-called *single-grade oils* can cause major problems. If they are viscous enough to work at high operating temperatures (SAE 50, for example), then at low temperatures, they can be so viscous that a car is difficult to start or an engine is not properly lubricated. Consequently, most modern oils are *multigrade*, with designations such as SAE 20W/50 (a grade used in high-performance sports cars), in which case the oil has the viscosity of an SAE 20 oil at subzero temperatures (hence the W for winter) and the viscosity of an SAE 50 oil at high temperatures. These properties are achieved by a careful blend of additives that modulate the intermolecular interactions in the oil, thereby controlling the temperature dependence of the viscosity. Many of the commercially available oil additives “for improved engine performance” are highly viscous materials that increase the viscosity and effective SAE rating of the oil, but overusing these additives can cause the same problems experienced with highly viscous single-grade oils.

✓ Example 1.4.1

Based on the nature and strength of the intermolecular cohesive forces and the probable nature of the liquid–glass adhesive forces, predict what will happen when a glass capillary is put into a beaker of SAE 20 motor oil. Will the oil be pulled up into the tube by capillary action or pushed down below the surface of the liquid in the beaker? What will be the shape of the meniscus (convex or concave)? (Hint: the surface of glass is lined with Si–OH groups.)

Given: substance and composition of the glass surface

Asked for: behavior of oil and the shape of meniscus

Strategy:

A. Identify the cohesive forces in the motor oil.
B. Determine whether the forces interact with the surface of glass. From the strength of this interaction, predict the behavior of the oil and the shape of the meniscus.

Solution

A Motor oil is a nonpolar liquid consisting largely of hydrocarbon chains. The cohesive forces responsible for its high boiling point are almost solely London dispersion forces between the hydrocarbon chains.

B Such a liquid cannot form strong interactions with the polar Si–OH groups of glass, so the surface of the oil inside the capillary will be lower than the level of the liquid in the beaker. The oil will have a convex meniscus similar to that of mercury.

? Exercise 1.4.1

Predict what will happen when a glass capillary is put into a beaker of ethylene glycol. Will the ethylene glycol be pulled up into the tube by capillary action or pushed down below the surface of the liquid in the beaker? What will be the shape of the meniscus (convex or concave)?

Answer

Capillary action will pull the ethylene glycol up into the capillary. The meniscus will be concave.

Summary

Surface tension, capillary action, and viscosity are unique properties of liquids that depend on the nature of intermolecular interactions. **Surface tension** is the energy required to increase the surface area of a liquid by a given amount. The stronger the intermolecular interactions, the greater the surface tension. **Surfactants** are molecules, such as soaps and detergents, that reduce the surface tension of polar liquids like water. **Capillary action** is the phenomenon in which liquids rise up into a narrow tube called a capillary. It results when **cohesive forces**, the intermolecular forces in the liquid, are weaker than **adhesive forces**, the attraction between a liquid and the surface of the capillary. The shape of the **meniscus**, the upper surface of a liquid in a tube, also reflects the balance between adhesive and cohesive forces. The **viscosity** of a liquid is its resistance to flow. Liquids that have strong intermolecular forces tend to have high viscosities.

1.5: Vaporization and Vapor Pressure

Learning Objectives

- To know how and why the vapor pressure of a liquid varies with temperature.
- To understand that the equilibrium vapor pressure of a liquid depends on the temperature and the intermolecular forces present.
- To understand that the relationship between pressure, enthalpy of vaporization, and temperature is given by the Clausius-Clapeyron equation.

Nearly all of us have heated a pan of water with the lid in place and shortly thereafter heard the sounds of the lid rattling and hot water spilling onto the stovetop. When a liquid is heated, its molecules obtain sufficient kinetic energy to overcome the forces holding them in the liquid and they escape into the gaseous phase. By doing so, they generate a population of molecules in the vapor phase above the liquid that produces a pressure—the vapor pressure of the liquid. In the situation we described, enough pressure was generated to move the lid, which allowed the vapor to escape. If the vapor is contained in a sealed vessel, however, such as an unvented flask, and the vapor pressure becomes too high, the flask will explode (as many students have unfortunately discovered). In this section, we describe vapor pressure in more detail and explain how to quantitatively determine the vapor pressure of a liquid.

Evaporation and Condensation

Because the molecules of a liquid are in constant motion, we can plot the fraction of molecules with a given kinetic energy (KE) against their kinetic energy to obtain the kinetic energy distribution of the molecules in the liquid (Figure $1.5.1$), just as we did for a gas. As for gases, increasing the temperature increases both the average kinetic energy of the particles in a liquid and the range of kinetic energy of the individual molecules. If we assume that a minimum amount of energy (E_0) is needed to overcome the intermolecular attractive forces that hold a liquid together, then some fraction of molecules in the liquid always has a kinetic energy greater than E_0. The fraction of molecules with a kinetic energy greater than this minimum value increases with increasing temperature. Any molecule with a kinetic energy greater than E_0 has enough energy to overcome the forces holding it in the liquid and escape into the vapor phase. Before it can do so, however, a molecule must also be at the surface of the liquid, where it is physically possible for it to leave the liquid surface; that is, only molecules at the surface can undergo evaporation (or vaporization), where molecules gain sufficient energy to enter a gaseous state above a liquid's surface, thereby creating a vapor pressure.

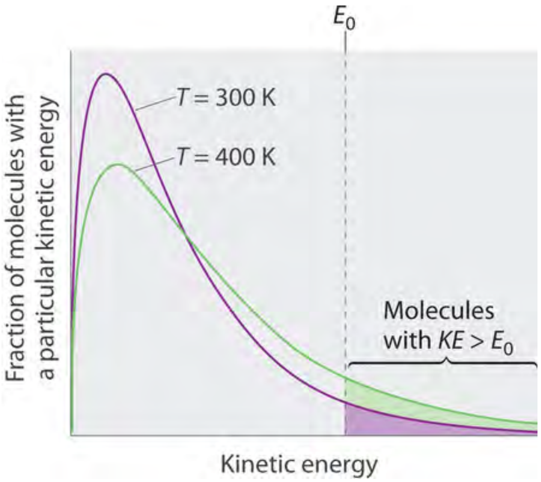


Figure $1.5.1$: The Distribution of the Kinetic Energies of the Molecules of a Liquid at Two Temperatures. Just as with gases, increasing the temperature shifts the peak to a higher energy and broadens the curve. Only molecules with a kinetic energy greater than E_0 can escape from the liquid to enter the vapor phase, and the proportion of molecules with $KE > E_0$ is greater at the higher temperature. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

Graph of fraction of molecules with a particular kinetic energy against kinetic energy. Green line is temperature at 400 kelvin, purple line is temperature at 300 kelvin.

To understand the causes of vapor pressure, consider the apparatus shown in Figure $1.5.2$. When a liquid is introduced into an evacuated chamber (part (a) in Figure $1.5.2$), the initial pressure above the liquid is approximately zero because there are as yet no molecules in the vapor phase. Some molecules at the surface, however, will have sufficient kinetic energy to escape from the liquid and form a vapor, thus increasing the pressure inside the container. As long as the temperature of the liquid is held constant, the fraction of molecules with $KE > E_0$ will not change, and the rate at which molecules escape from the liquid into the vapor phase will depend only on the surface area of the liquid phase.

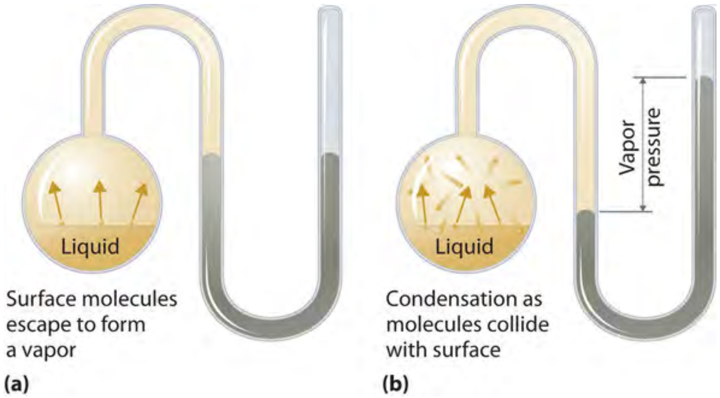


Figure $1.5.2$: Vapor Pressure. (a) When a liquid is introduced into an evacuated chamber, molecules with sufficient kinetic energy escape from the surface and enter the vapor phase, causing the pressure in the chamber to increase. (b) When sufficient molecules are in the vapor phase for a given temperature, the rate of condensation equals the rate of evaporation (a steady state is reached), and the pressure in the container becomes constant. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

As soon as some vapor has formed, a fraction of the molecules in the vapor phase will collide with the surface of the liquid and reenter the liquid phase in a process known as condensation (part (b) in Figure $1.5.2$). As the number of molecules in the vapor phase increases, the number of collisions between vapor-phase molecules and the surface will also increase. Eventually, a *steady state* will be reached in which exactly as many molecules per unit time leave the surface of the liquid (vaporize) as collide with it (condense). At this point, the pressure over the liquid stops increasing and remains constant at a particular value that is characteristic of the liquid at a given temperature. The rates of evaporation and condensation over time for a system such as this are shown graphically in Figure $1.5.3$.

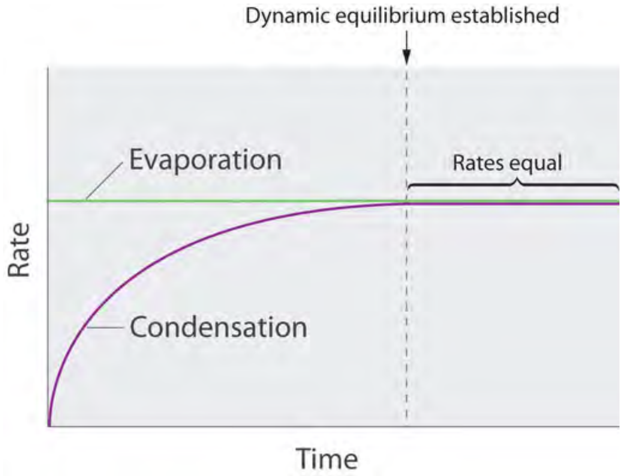


Figure $1.5.3$: The Relative Rates of Evaporation and Condensation as a Function of Time after a Liquid Is Introduced into a Sealed Chamber. The rate of evaporation depends only on the surface area of the liquid and is essentially constant. The rate of condensation depends on the number of molecules in the vapor phase and increases steadily until it equals the rate of evaporation. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

Graph of rate against time. The green line is evaporation while the pruple line is condensation. Dynamic equilibrium is established when the evaporation and condensation rates are equal.

Equilibrium Vapor Pressure

Two opposing processes (such as evaporation and condensation) that occur at the same rate and thus produce no *net* change in a system, constitute a dynamic equilibrium. In the case of a liquid enclosed in a chamber, the molecules continuously evaporate and condense, but the amounts of liquid and vapor do not change with time. The pressure exerted by a vapor in dynamic equilibrium with a liquid is the equilibrium vapor pressure of the liquid.

If a liquid is in an *open* container, however, most of the molecules that escape into the vapor phase will *not* collide with the surface of the liquid and return to the liquid phase. Instead, they will diffuse through the gas phase away from the container, and an equilibrium will never be established. Under these conditions, the liquid will continue to evaporate until it has "disappeared." The speed with which this occurs depends on the vapor pressure of the liquid and the temperature. Volatile liquids have relatively high vapor pressures and tend to evaporate readily; nonvolatile liquids have low vapor pressures and evaporate more slowly. Although the dividing line between volatile and nonvolatile liquids is not clear-cut, as a general guideline, we can say that substances with vapor pressures greater than that of water (Figure 1.5.4) are relatively volatile, whereas those with vapor pressures less than that of water are relatively nonvolatile. Thus diethyl ether (ethyl ether), acetone, and gasoline are volatile, but mercury, ethylene glycol, and motor oil are nonvolatile.

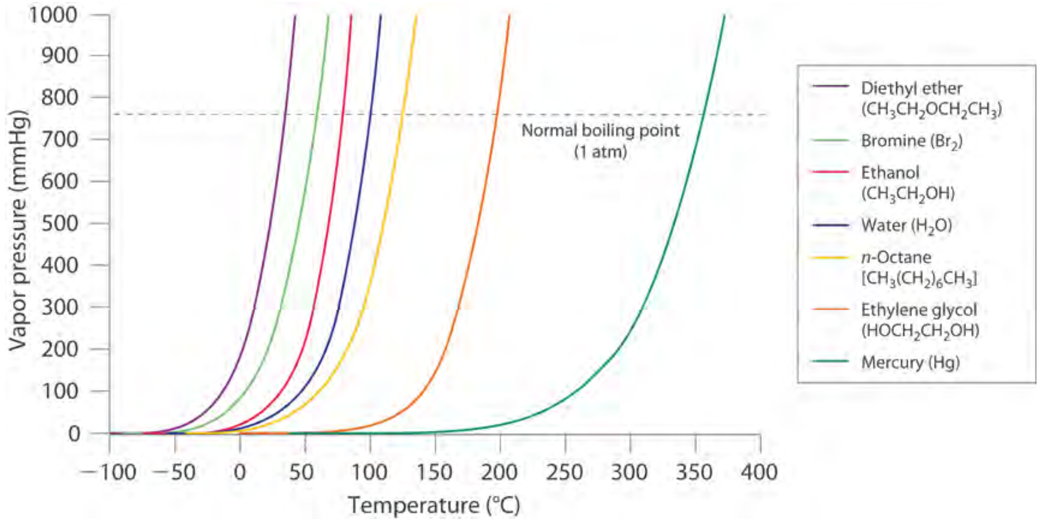


Figure 1.5.4: The Vapor Pressures of Several Liquids as a Function of Temperature. The point at which the vapor pressure curve crosses the P = 1 atm line (dashed) is the normal boiling point of the liquid. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

The equilibrium vapor pressure of a substance at a particular temperature is a characteristic of the material, like its molecular mass, melting point, and boiling point. It does *not* depend on the amount of liquid as long as at least a tiny amount of liquid is present in equilibrium with the vapor. The equilibrium vapor pressure does, however, depend very strongly on the temperature and the intermolecular forces present, as shown for several substances in Figure 1.5.4. Molecules that can hydrogen bond, such as ethylene glycol, have a much lower equilibrium vapor pressure than those that cannot, such as octane. The nonlinear increase in vapor pressure with increasing temperature is *much* steeper than the increase in pressure expected for an ideal gas over the corresponding temperature range. The temperature dependence is so strong because the vapor pressure depends on the fraction of molecules that have a kinetic energy greater than that needed to escape from the liquid, and this fraction increases exponentially with temperature. As a result, sealed containers of volatile liquids are potential bombs if subjected to large increases in temperature. The gas tanks on automobiles are vented, for example, so that a car won't explode when parked in the sun. Similarly, the small cans (1–5 gallons) used to transport gasoline are required by law to have a pop-off pressure release.

> *Volatile substances have low boiling points and relatively weak intermolecular interactions; nonvolatile substances have high boiling points and relatively strong intermolecular interactions.*

A Video Discussing Vapor Pressure and Boiling Points. Video Source: Vapor Pressure & Boiling Point(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

The exponential rise in vapor pressure with increasing temperature in Figure 1.5.4 allows us to use natural logarithms to express the nonlinear relationship as a linear one.

$$\boxed{\ln P = \frac{-\Delta H_{vap}}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T}\right) + C} \tag{1.5.1}$$

where

- $\ln P$ is the natural logarithm of the vapor pressure,
- ΔH_{vap} is the enthalpy of vaporization,
- R is the universal gas constant [8.314 J/(mol•K)],
- T is the temperature in kelvins, and
- C is the y-intercept, which is a constant for any given line.

Plotting $\ln P$ versus the inverse of the absolute temperature $(1/T)$ is a straight line with a slope of $-\Delta H_{vap}/R$. Equation 1.5.1, called the Clausius–Clapeyron Equation, can be used to calculate the ΔH_{vap} of a liquid from its measured vapor pressure at two or more temperatures. The simplest way to determine ΔH_{vap} is to measure the vapor pressure of a liquid at **two** temperatures and insert the values of P and T for these points into Equation 1.5.2, which is derived from the Clausius–Clapeyron equation:

$$\ln\left(\frac{P_1}{P_2}\right) = \frac{-\Delta H_{vap}}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right) \tag{1.5.2}$$

Conversely, if we know ΔH_{vap} and the vapor pressure P_1 at any temperature T_1, we can use Equation 1.5.2 to calculate the vapor pressure P_2 at any other temperature T_2, as shown in Example 1.5.1.

A Video Discussing the Clausius-Clapeyron Equation. Video Link: The Clausius-Clapeyron Equation(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

✓ Example 1.5.1: Vapor Pressure of Mercury

The experimentally measured vapor pressures of liquid Hg at four temperatures are listed in the following table:

experimentally measured vapor pressures of liquid Hg at four temperatures

T (°C)	80.0	100	120	140
P (torr)	0.0888	0.2729	0.7457	1.845

From these data, calculate the enthalpy of vaporization (ΔH_{vap}) of mercury and predict the vapor pressure of the liquid at 160°C. (Safety note: mercury is highly toxic; when it is spilled, its vapor pressure generates hazardous levels of mercury vapor.)

Given: vapor pressures at four temperatures

Asked for: ΔH_{vap} of mercury and vapor pressure at 160°C

Strategy:

A. Use Equation 1.5.2 to obtain ΔH_{vap} directly from two pairs of values in the table, making sure to convert all values to the appropriate units.
B. Substitute the calculated value of ΔH_{vap} into Equation 1.5.2 to obtain the unknown pressure (P_2).

Solution:

A The table gives the measured vapor pressures of liquid Hg for four temperatures. Although one way to proceed would be to plot the data using Equation 1.5.1 and find the value of ΔH_{vap} from the slope of the line, an alternative approach is to use Equation 1.5.2 to obtain ΔH_{vap} directly from two pairs of values listed in the table, assuming no errors in our measurement. We therefore select two sets of values from the table and convert the temperatures from degrees Celsius to kelvin because the equation requires absolute temperatures. Substituting the values measured at 80.0°C (T_1) and 120.0°C (T_2) into Equation 1.5.2 gives

$$\ln\left(\frac{0.7457\ \cancel{Torr}}{0.0888\ \cancel{Torr}}\right) = \frac{-\Delta H_{vap}}{8.314\ J/mol\cdot K}\left(\frac{1}{(120+273)\ K} - \frac{1}{(80.0+273)\ K}\right)$$

$$\ln(8.398) = \frac{-\Delta H_{vap}}{8.314\ J/mol\cdot\ \cancel{K}}\left(-2.88\times 10^{-4}\ \ \cancel{K^{-1}}\right)$$

$$2.13 = -\Delta H_{vap}\left(-3.46\times 10^{-4}\right) J^{-1}\cdot mol$$

$$\Delta H_{vap} = 61,400\ J/mol = 61.4\ kJ/mol$$

B We can now use this value of ΔH_{vap} to calculate the vapor pressure of the liquid (P_2) at 160.0°C (T_2):

$$\ln\left(\frac{P_2}{0.0888\ torr}\right) = \frac{-61,400\ \ J/\cancel{mol}}{8.314\ \ J/\cancel{mol}\ \ K^{-1}}\left(\frac{1}{(160+273)\ K} - \frac{1}{(80.0+273)\ K}\right)$$

Using the relationship $e^{\ln x} = x$, we have

$$\ln\left(\frac{P_2}{0.0888\ Torr}\right) = 3.86$$

$$\frac{P_2}{0.0888\ Torr} = e^{3.86} = 47.5$$

$$P_2 = 4.21 Torr$$

At 160°C, liquid Hg has a vapor pressure of 4.21 torr, substantially greater than the pressure at 80.0°C, as we would expect.

Exercise 1.5.1: Vapor Pressure of Nickel

The vapor pressure of liquid nickel at 1606°C is 0.100 torr, whereas at 1805°C, its vapor pressure is 1.000 torr. At what temperature does the liquid have a vapor pressure of 2.500 torr?

Answer

1896°C

Boiling Points

As the temperature of a liquid increases, the vapor pressure of the liquid increases until it equals the external pressure, or the atmospheric pressure in the case of an open container. Bubbles of vapor begin to form throughout the liquid, and the liquid begins to boil. The temperature at which a liquid boils at exactly 1 atm pressure is the normal boiling point of the liquid. For water, the normal boiling point is exactly 100°C. The normal boiling points of the other liquids in Figure 1.5.4 are represented by the points at which the vapor pressure curves cross the line corresponding to a pressure of 1 atm. Although we usually cite the normal boiling point of a liquid, the *actual* boiling point depends on the pressure. At a pressure greater than 1 atm, water boils at a temperature greater than 100°C because the increased pressure forces vapor molecules above the surface to condense. Hence the molecules must have greater kinetic energy to escape from the surface. Conversely, at pressures less than 1 atm, water boils below 100°C.

Table 1.5.1: The Boiling Points of Water at Various Locations on Earth

Place	Altitude above Sea Level (ft)	Atmospheric Pressure (mmHg)	Boiling Point of Water (°C)
Mt. Everest, Nepal/Tibet	29,028	240	70
Bogota, Colombia	11,490	495	88
Denver, Colorado	5280	633	95
Washington, DC	25	759	100
Dead Sea, Israel/Jordan	−1312	799	101.4

Typical variations in atmospheric pressure at sea level are relatively small, causing only minor changes in the boiling point of water. For example, the highest recorded atmospheric pressure at sea level is 813 mmHg, recorded during a Siberian winter; the lowest sea-level pressure ever measured was 658 mmHg in a Pacific typhoon. At these pressures, the boiling point of water changes minimally, to 102°C and 96°C, respectively. At high altitudes, on the other hand, the dependence of the boiling point of water on pressure becomes significant. Table 1.5.1 lists the boiling points of water at several locations with different altitudes. At an elevation of only 5000 ft, for example, the boiling point of water is already lower than the lowest ever recorded at sea level. The lower boiling point of water has major consequences for cooking everything from soft-boiled eggs (a “three-minute egg” may well take four or more minutes in the Rockies and even longer in the Himalayas) to cakes (cake mixes are often sold with separate high-altitude instructions). Conversely, pressure cookers, which have a seal that allows the pressure inside them to exceed 1 atm, are used to cook food more rapidly by raising the boiling point of water and thus the temperature at which the food is being cooked.

> *As pressure increases, the boiling point of a liquid increases and vice versa.*

✓ Example 1.5.2: Boiling Mercury

Use Figure 1.5.4 to estimate the following.

a. the boiling point of water in a pressure cooker operating at 1000 mmHg
b. the pressure required for mercury to boil at 250°C

Mercury boils at 356 °C at room pressure. To see video go to www.youtube.com/watch?v=0iizsbXWYoo

Given: Data in Figure 1.5.4, pressure, and boiling point

Asked for: corresponding boiling point and pressure

Strategy:

A. To estimate the boiling point of water at 1000 mmHg, refer to Figure 1.5.4 and find the point where the vapor pressure curve of water intersects the line corresponding to a pressure of 1000 mmHg.
B. To estimate the pressure required for mercury to boil at 250°C, find the point where the vapor pressure curve of mercury intersects the line corresponding to a temperature of 250°C.

Solution:

a. **A** The vapor pressure curve of water intersects the P = 1000 mmHg line at about 110°C; this is therefore the boiling point of water at 1000 mmHg.
b. **B** The vertical line corresponding to 250°C intersects the vapor pressure curve of mercury at $P \approx 75$ mmHg. Hence this is the pressure required for mercury to boil at 250°C.

? Exercise 1.5.2: Boiling Ethlyene Glycol

Ethylene glycol is an organic compound primarily used as a raw material in the manufacture of polyester fibers and fabric industry, and polyethylene terephthalate resins (PET) used in bottling. Use the data in Figure 1.5.4 to estimate the following.

a. the normal boiling point of ethylene glycol
b. the pressure required for diethyl ether to boil at 20°C.

Answer a

200°C

Answer b

450 mmHg

Summary

Because the molecules of a liquid are in constant motion and possess a wide range of kinetic energies, at any moment some fraction of them has enough energy to escape from the surface of the liquid to enter the gas or vapor phase. This process, called **vaporization** or **evaporation**, generates a **vapor pressure** above the liquid. Molecules in the gas phase can collide with the liquid surface and reenter the liquid via **condensation**. Eventually, a *steady state* is reached in which the number of molecules evaporating and condensing per unit time is the same, and the system is in a state of **dynamic equilibrium**. Under these conditions, a liquid exhibits a characteristic **equilibrium vapor pressure** that depends only on the temperature. We can express the nonlinear relationship between vapor pressure and temperature as a linear relationship using the **Clausius–Clapeyron equation**. This equation can be used to calculate the enthalpy of vaporization of a liquid from its measured vapor pressure at two or more temperatures. **Volatile liquids** are liquids with high vapor pressures, which tend to evaporate readily from an open container; **nonvolatile liquids** have low vapor pressures. When the vapor pressure equals the external pressure, bubbles of vapor form within the liquid, and it boils. The temperature at which a substance boils at a pressure of 1 atm is its **normal boiling point**.

Contributors and Attributions

- Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

1.6: Sublimation and Fusion

Sublimation

Some solids can transition directly into the gaseous state, bypassing the liquid state, via a process known as sublimation. At room temperature and standard pressure, a piece of dry ice (solid CO_2) sublimes, appearing to gradually disappear without ever forming any liquid. Snow and ice sublime at temperatures below the melting point of water, a slow process that may be accelerated by winds and the reduced atmospheric pressures at high altitudes. When solid iodine is warmed, the solid sublimes and a vivid purple vapor forms (Figure $1.6.6$). The reverse of sublimation is called deposition, a process in which gaseous substances condense directly into the solid state, bypassing the liquid state. The formation of frost is an example of deposition.

This figure shows a test tube. In the bottom is a dark substance which breaks up into a purple gas at the top.

Figure $1.6.6$: Sublimation of solid iodine in the bottom of the tube produces a purple gas that subsequently deposits as solid iodine on the colder part of the tube above. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

Like vaporization, the process of sublimation requires an input of energy to overcome intermolecular attractions. The enthalpy of sublimation, ΔHsub, is the energy required to convert one mole of a substance from the solid to the gaseous state. For example, the sublimation of carbon dioxide is represented by:

$$\mathrm{CO_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \quad \Delta H_{\text{sub}} = 26.1\ \mathrm{kJ/mol} \tag{1.6.1}$$

Likewise, the enthalpy change for the reverse process of deposition is equal in magnitude but opposite in sign to that for sublimation:

$$\mathrm{CO_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(s) \quad \Delta H_{\text{dep}} = -\Delta H_{\text{sub}} = -26.1\ \mathrm{kJ/mol} \tag{1.6.2}$$

Consider the extent to which intermolecular attractions must be overcome to achieve a given phase transition. Converting a solid into a liquid requires that these attractions be only partially overcome; transition to the gaseous state requires that they be completely overcome. As a result, the enthalpy of fusion for a substance is less than its enthalpy of vaporization. This same logic can be used to derive an approximate relation between the enthalpies of all phase changes for a given substance. Though not an entirely accurate description, sublimation may be conveniently modeled as a sequential two-step process of melting followed by vaporization in order to apply Hess’s Law.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{solid} \longrightarrow \text{liquid} \quad \Delta H_{\text{fus}} \\ \underline{\text{liquid} \longrightarrow \text{gas} \quad \Delta H_{\text{vap}}} \\ \text{solid} \longrightarrow \text{gas} \quad \Delta H_{\text{sub}} = \Delta H_{\text{fus}} + \Delta H_{\text{vap}} \end{array} \tag{1.6.3}$$

Viewed in this manner, the enthalpy of sublimation for a substance may be estimated as the sum of its enthalpies of fusion and vaporization, as illustrated in Figure $1.6.7$. For example:

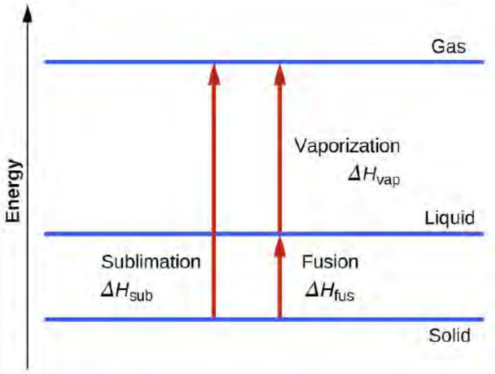


Figure* $1.6.7$*: For a given substance, the sum of its enthalpy of fusion and enthalpy of vaporization is approximately equal to its enthalpy of sublimation.

An energy level diagram is shown with three horizontal lines representing states of solid, liquid, and gas in increasing energy levels. The enthalpy of fusion is shown by arrow pointing from solid to liquid. Enthalpy of vaporization is shown with arrow pointing from liquid to gas. The enthalpy of sublimation points from solid to gas and has the same length as the arrows for fusion and vaporization combined.

Fusion

When we heat a crystalline solid, we increase the average energy of its atoms, molecules, or ions and the solid gets hotter. At some point, the added energy becomes large enough to partially overcome the forces holding the molecules or ions of the solid in their fixed positions, and the solid begins the process of transitioning to the liquid state, or melting. At this point, the temperature of the solid stops rising, despite the continual input of heat, and it remains constant until all of the solid is melted. Only after all of the solid has melted will continued heating increase the temperature of the liquid (Figure \(\PageIndex{5}\).

Figure $1.6.5$: (a) This beaker of ice has a temperature of −12.0 °C. (b) After 10 minutes the ice has absorbed enough heat from the air to warm to 0 °C. A small amount has melted. (c) Thirty minutes later, the ice has absorbed more heat, but its temperature is still 0 °C. The ice melts without changing its temperature. (d) Only after all the ice has melted does the heat absorbed cause the temperature to increase to 22.2 °C. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott).

If we stop heating during melting and place the mixture of solid and liquid in a perfectly insulated container so no heat can enter or escape, the solid and liquid phases remain in equilibrium. This is almost the situation with a mixture of ice and water in a very good thermos bottle; almost no heat gets in or out, and the mixture of solid ice and liquid water remains for hours. In a mixture of solid and liquid at equilibrium, the reciprocal process of melting and freezing occur at equal rates, and the quantities of solid and liquid therefore remain constant. The temperature at which the solid and liquid phases of a given substance are in equilibrium is called the melting point of the solid or the freezing point of the liquid. Use of one term or the other is normally dictated by the direction of the phase transition being considered, for example, solid to liquid (melting) or liquid to solid (freezing).

The enthalpy of fusion and the melting point of a crystalline solid depend on the strength of the attractive forces between the units present in the crystal. Molecules with weak attractive forces form crystals with low melting points. Crystals consisting of particles with stronger attractive forces melt at higher temperatures.

The amount of heat required to change one mole of a substance from the solid state to the liquid state is the enthalpy of fusion, ΔH_{fus} of the substance. The enthalpy of fusion of ice is 6.0 kJ/mol at 0 °C. Fusion (melting) is an endothermic process:

$$H_2O_{(s)} \rightarrow H_2O_{(l)} \quad \Delta H_{\text{fus}} = 6.01\ \text{kJ/mol} \tag{1.6.4}$$

The reciprocal process, freezing, is an exothermic process whose enthalpy change is −6.0 kJ/mol at 0 °C:

$$H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow H_2O_{(s)} \quad \Delta H_{\text{frz}} = -\Delta H_{\text{fus}} = -6.01\ \text{kJ/mol} \tag{1.6.5}$$

Selected molar enthalpies of fusion are tabulated in Table 1.6.1. Solids like ice which have strong intermolecular forces have much higher values than those like CH_4 with weak ones. Note that the enthalpies of fusion and vaporization change with temperature.

Table 1.6.1: Molar Enthalpies of Fusion and Vaporization of Selected Substances.

Substance	**Formula**	**ΔH(fusion) / kJ mol^1**	**Melting Point / K**	**ΔH(vaporization) / kJ mol^{-1}**	**Boiling Point / K**	**($\Delta H_v/T_b$) / JK^{-1} mol^{-1}**
Neon	Ne	0.33	24	1.80	27	67
Oxygen	O_2	0.44	54	6.82	90.2	76
Methane	CH_4	0.94	90.7	8.18	112	73
Ethane	C_2H_6	2.85	90.0	14.72	184	80
Chlorine	Cl_2	6.40	172.2	20.41	239	85
Carbon tetrachloride	CCl_4	2.67	250.0	30.00	350	86
Water*	H_2O	6.00678 at 0°C, 101kPa 6.354 at 81.6 °C, 2.50 MPa	273.1	40.657 at 100 °C, 45.051 at 0 °C, 46.567 at -33 °C	373.1	109
n-Nonane	C_9H_{20}	19.3	353	40.5	491	82
Mercury	Hg	2.30	234	58.6	630	91
Sodium	Na	2.60	371	98	1158	85
Aluminum	Al	10.9	933	284	2600	109
Lead	Pb	4.77	601	178	2022	88

*www1.lsbu.ac.uk/water/data.html

Contributors and Attributions

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

1.7: Heating Curve for Water

Freezing, condensation, and deposition, which are the reverse of fusion, sublimation, and vaporization—are exothermic. Thus heat pumps that use refrigerants are essentially air-conditioners running in reverse. Heat from the environment is used to vaporize the refrigerant, which is then condensed to a liquid in coils within a house to provide heat. The energy changes that occur during phase changes can be quantified by using a heating or cooling curve.

Heating Curves

Figure 1.7.3 shows a heating curve, a plot of temperature versus heating time, for a 75 g sample of water. The sample is initially ice at 1 atm and −23°C; as heat is added, the temperature of the ice increases linearly with time. The slope of the line depends on both the mass of the ice and the specific heat (C_s) of ice, which is the number of joules required to raise the temperature of 1 g of ice by 1°C. As the temperature of the ice increases, the water molecules in the ice crystal absorb more and more energy and vibrate more vigorously. At the melting point, they have enough kinetic energy to overcome attractive forces and move with respect to one another. As more heat is added, the temperature of the system does *not* increase further but remains constant at 0°C until all the ice has melted. Once all the ice has been converted to liquid water, the temperature of the water again begins to increase. Now, however, the temperature increases more slowly than before because the specific heat capacity of water is *greater* than that of ice. When the temperature of the water reaches 100°C, the water begins to boil. Here, too, the temperature remains constant at 100°C until all the water has been converted to steam. At this point, the temperature again begins to rise, but at a *faster* rate than seen in the other phases because the heat capacity of steam is *less* than that of ice or water.

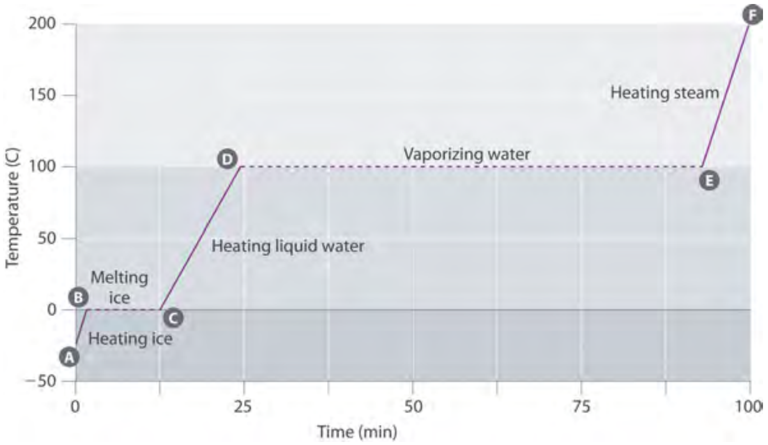


Figure 1.7.1: A Heating Curve for Water. This plot of temperature shows what happens to a 75 g sample of ice initially at 1 atm and −23°C as heat is added at a constant rate: A–B: heating solid ice; B–C: melting ice; C–D: heating liquid water; D–E: vaporizing water; E–F: heating steam.

Thus *the temperature of a system does not change during a phase change*. In this example, as long as even a tiny amount of ice is present, the temperature of the system remains at 0°C during the melting process, and as long as even a small amount of liquid water is present, the temperature of the system remains at 100°C during the boiling process. The rate at which heat is added does *not* affect the temperature of the ice/water or water/steam mixture because the added heat is being used exclusively to overcome the attractive forces that hold the more condensed phase together. Many cooks think that food will cook faster if the heat is turned up higher so that the water boils more rapidly. Instead, the pot of water will boil to dryness sooner, but the temperature of the water does not depend on how vigorously it boils.

> *The temperature of a sample does not change during a phase change.*

If heat is added at a constant rate, as in Figure 1.7.3, then the length of the horizontal lines, which represents the time during which the temperature does not change, is directly proportional to the magnitude of the enthalpies associated with the phase changes. In Figure 1.7.3, the horizontal line at 100°C is much longer than the line at 0°C because the enthalpy of vaporization of water is several times greater than the enthalpy of fusion.

A superheated liquid is a sample of a liquid at the temperature and pressure at which it should be a gas. Superheated liquids are not stable; the liquid will eventually boil, sometimes violently. The phenomenon of superheating causes “bumping” when a liquid is heated in the laboratory. When a test tube containing water is heated over a Bunsen burner, for example, one portion of the liquid can easily become too hot. When the superheated liquid converts to a gas, it can push or "bump" the rest of the liquid out of the test tube. Placing a stirring rod or a small piece of ceramic (a "boiling chip") in the test tube allows bubbles of vapor to form on the surface of the object so the liquid boils instead of becoming superheated. Superheating is the reason a liquid heated in a smooth cup in a microwave oven may not boil until the cup is moved, when the motion of the cup allows bubbles to form.

Cooling Curves

The cooling curve, a plot of temperature versus cooling time, in Figure 1.7.4 plots temperature versus time as a 75 g sample of steam, initially at 1 atm and 200°C, is cooled. Although we might expect the cooling curve to be the mirror image of the heating curve in Figure 1.7.3, the cooling curve is *not* an identical mirror image. As heat is removed from the steam, the temperature falls until it reaches 100°C. At this temperature, the steam begins to condense to liquid water. No further temperature change occurs until all the steam is converted to the liquid; then the temperature again decreases as the water is cooled. We might expect to reach another plateau at 0°C, where the water is converted to ice; in reality, however, this does not always occur. Instead, the temperature often drops below the freezing point for some time, as shown by the little dip in the cooling curve below 0°C. This region corresponds to an unstable form of the liquid, a supercooled liquid. If the liquid is allowed to stand, if cooling is continued, or if a small crystal of the solid phase is added (a seed crystal), the supercooled liquid will convert to a solid, sometimes quite suddenly. As the water freezes, the temperature increases slightly due to the heat evolved during the freezing process and then holds constant at the melting point as the rest of the water freezes. Subsequently, the temperature of the ice decreases again as more heat is removed from the system.

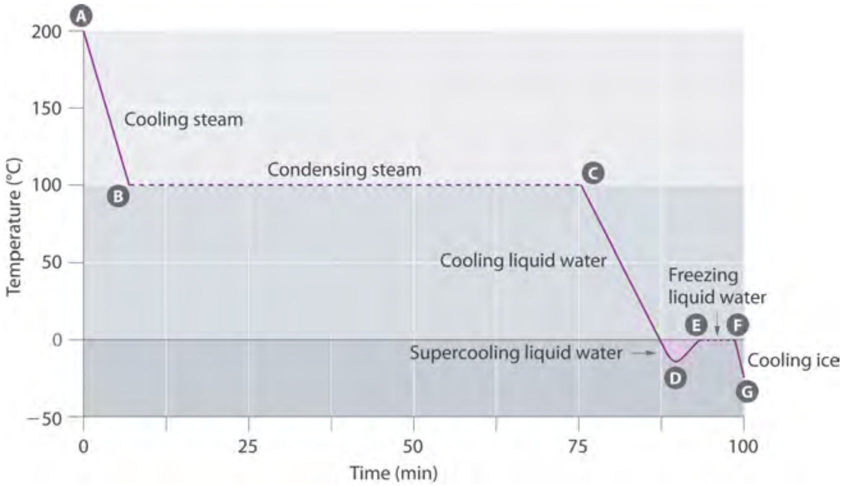


Figure 1.7.2: A Cooling Curve for Water. This plot of temperature shows what happens to a 75 g sample of steam initially at 1 atm and 200°C as heat is removed at a constant rate: A–B: cooling steam; B–C: condensing steam; C–D: cooling liquid water to give a supercooled liquid; D–E: warming the liquid as it begins to freeze; E–F: freezing liquid water; F–G: cooling ice.

Supercooling effects have a huge impact on Earth's climate. For example, supercooling of water droplets in clouds can prevent the clouds from releasing precipitation over regions that are persistently arid as a result. Clouds consist of tiny droplets of water, which in principle should be dense enough to fall as rain. In fact, however, the droplets must aggregate to reach a certain size before they can fall to the ground. Usually a small particle (a *nucleus*) is required for the droplets to aggregate; the nucleus can be a dust particle, an ice crystal, or a particle of silver iodide dispersed in a cloud during *seeding* (a method of inducing rain). Unfortunately, the small droplets of water generally remain as a supercooled liquid down to about −10°C, rather than freezing into ice crystals that are more suitable nuclei for raindrop formation. One approach to producing rainfall from an existing cloud is to cool the water droplets so that they crystallize to provide nuclei around which raindrops can grow. This is best done by dispersing small granules of solid CO_2 (dry ice) into the cloud from an airplane. Solid CO_2 sublimes directly to the gas at pressures of 1 atm or lower, and the enthalpy of sublimation is substantial (25.3 kJ/mol). As the CO_2 sublimes, it absorbs heat from the cloud, often with the desired results.

Example 1.7.1: Cooling Hot Tea

If a 50.0 g ice cube at 0.0°C is added to 500 mL of tea at 20.0°C, what is the temperature of the tea when the ice cube has just melted? Assume that no heat is transferred to or from the surroundings. The density of water (and iced tea) is 1.00 g/mL over the range 0°C–20°C, the specific heats of liquid water and ice are 4.184 J/(g•°C) and 2.062 J/(g•°C), respectively, and the enthalpy of fusion of ice is 6.01 kJ/mol.

Given: mass, volume, initial temperature, density, specific heats, and ΔH_{fus}

Asked for: final temperature

Strategy:

Substitute the values given into the general equation relating heat gained to heat lost (Equation 5.39) to obtain the final temperature of the mixture.

Solution:

When two substances or objects at different temperatures are brought into contact, heat will flow from the warmer one to the cooler. The amount of heat that flows is given by

$$q = mC_s\Delta T \tag{1.7.1}$$

where q is heat, m is mass, C_s is the specific heat, and ΔT is the temperature change. Eventually, the temperatures of the two substances will become equal at a value somewhere between their initial temperatures. Calculating the temperature of iced tea after adding an ice cube is slightly more complicated. The general equation relating heat gained and heat lost is still valid, but in this case we also have to take into account the amount of heat required to melt the ice cube from ice at 0.0°C to liquid water at 0.0°C.

Exercise 1.7.1: Death by Freezing

Suppose you are overtaken by a blizzard while ski touring and you take refuge in a tent. You are thirsty, but you forgot to bring liquid water. You have a choice of eating a few handfuls of snow (say 400 g) at −5.0°C immediately to quench your thirst or setting up your propane stove, melting the snow, and heating the water to body temperature before drinking it. You recall that the survival guide you leafed through at the hotel said something about not eating snow, but you cannot remember why—after all, it’s just frozen water. To understand the guide’s recommendation, calculate the amount of heat that your body will have to supply to bring 400 g of snow at −5.0°C to your body’s internal temperature of 37°C. Use the data in Example 1.7.1

Answer

200 kJ (4.1 kJ to bring the ice from −5.0°C to 0.0°C, 133.6 kJ to melt the ice at 0.0°C, and 61.9 kJ to bring the water from 0.0°C to 37°C), which is energy that would not have been expended had you first melted the snow.

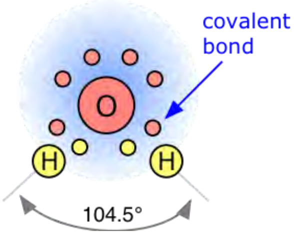
1.8: Water - An Extraordinary Substance

Learning Objectives

- Identify three special properties of water that make it unusual for a molecule of its size, and explain how these result from hydrogen bonding.
- Explain what is meant by hydrogen bonding and the molecular structural features that bring it about.
- Describe the "structure", such as it is, of liquid water.
- Sketch out structural examples of hydrogen bonding in three small molecules other than H_2O.
- Describe the roles of hydrogen bonding in proteins and in DNA.

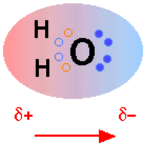
Most students of chemistry quickly learn to relate the structure of a molecule to its general properties. Thus we generally expect small molecules to form gases or liquids, and large ones to exist as solids under ordinary conditions. And then we come to H_2O, and are shocked to find that many of the predictions are way off, and that water (and by implication, life itself) should not even exist on our planet! In this section we will learn why this tiny combination of three nuclei and ten electrons possesses special properties that make it unique among the more than 15 million chemical species we presently know.

In water, each hydrogen nucleus is covalently bound to the central oxygen atom by a pair of electrons that are shared between them. In H_2O, only two of the six outer-shell electrons of oxygen are used for this purpose, leaving four electrons which are organized into two non-bonding pairs. The four electron pairs surrounding the oxygen tend to arrange themselves as far from each other as possible in order to minimize repulsions between these clouds of negative charge. This would ordinarily result in a tetrahedral geometry in which the angle between electron pairs (and therefore the H-O-H *bond angle*) is 109.5°. However, because the two non-bonding pairs remain closer to the oxygen atom, these exert a stronger repulsion against the two covalent bonding pairs, effectively pushing the two hydrogen atoms closer together. The result is a distorted tetrahedral arrangement in which the H—O—H angle is 104.5°.

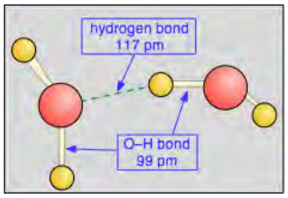


Water's large dipole moment leads to hydrogen bonding

The H_2O molecule is electrically neutral, but the positive and negative charges are not distributed uniformly. This is illustrated by the gradation in color in the schematic diagram here. The electronic (negative) charge is concentrated at the oxygen end of the molecule, owing partly to the nonbonding electrons (solid blue circles), and to oxygen's high nuclear charge which exerts stronger attractions on the electrons. This charge displacement constitutes an *electric dipole*, represented by the arrow at the bottom; you can think of this dipole as the electrical "image" of a water molecule.

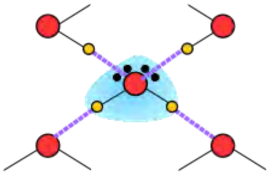


Opposite charges attract, so it is not surprising that the negative end of one water molecule will tend to orient itself so as to be close to the positive end of another molecule that happens to be nearby. The strength of this *dipole-dipole attraction* is less than that of a normal chemical bond, and so it is completely overwhelmed by ordinary thermal motions in the gas phase. However, when the H_2O molecules are crowded together in the liquid, these attractive forces exert a very noticeable effect, which we call (somewhat misleadingly) *hydrogen bonding*. And at temperatures low enough to turn off the disruptive effects of thermal motions, water freezes into ice in which the hydrogen bonds form a rigid and stable network.



Notice that the hydrogen bond (shown by the dashed green line) is somewhat longer than the covalent O—H bond. It is also *much weaker*, about 23 kJ mol^{-1} compared to the O–H covalent bond strength of 492 kJ mol^{-1}.

Water has long been known to exhibit many physical properties that distinguish it from other small molecules of comparable mass. Although chemists refer to these as the "anomalous" properties of water, they are by no means mysterious; all are entirely predictable consequences of the way the size and nuclear charge of the oxygen atom conspire to distort the electronic charge clouds of the atoms of other elements when these are chemically bonded to the oxygen.



The combination of large bond dipoles and short dipole–dipole distances results in very strong dipole–dipole interactions called hydrogen bonds, as shown for ice in Figure 1.8.6. A hydrogen bond is usually indicated by a dotted line between the hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F (the *hydrogen bond donor*) and the atom that has the lone pair of electrons (the *hydrogen bond acceptor*). Because each water molecule contains two hydrogen atoms and two lone pairs, a tetrahedral arrangement maximizes the number of hydrogen bonds that can be formed. In the structure of ice, each oxygen atom is surrounded by a distorted tetrahedron of hydrogen atoms that form bridges to the oxygen atoms of adjacent water molecules. The bridging hydrogen atoms are *not* equidistant from the two oxygen atoms they connect, however. Instead, each hydrogen atom is 101 pm from one oxygen and 174 pm from the other. In contrast, each oxygen atom is bonded to two H atoms at the shorter distance and two at the longer distance, corresponding to two O–H covalent bonds and two O⋯H hydrogen bonds from adjacent water molecules, respectively. The resulting open, cagelike structure of ice means that the solid is actually slightly less dense than the liquid, which explains why ice floats on water rather than sinks.

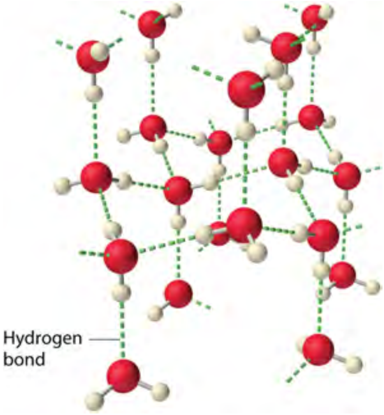


Figure* 1.8.6*: *The Hydrogen-Bonded Structure of Ice.*

Each water molecule accepts two hydrogen bonds from two other water molecules and donates two hydrogen atoms to form hydrogen bonds with two more water molecules, producing an open, cagelike structure. The structure of liquid water is very similar, but in the liquid, the hydrogen bonds are continually broken and formed because of rapid molecular motion.

> *Hydrogen bond formation requires both a hydrogen bond donor and a hydrogen bond acceptor.*

Boiling Point

Molecules with hydrogen atoms bonded to electronegative atoms such as O, N, and F (and to a much lesser extent Cl and S) tend to exhibit unusually strong intermolecular interactions. These result in much higher boiling points than are observed for substances in which London dispersion forces dominate, as illustrated for the covalent hydrides of elements of groups 14–17 in Figure 1.8.5. Methane and its heavier congeners in group 14 form a series whose boiling points increase smoothly with increasing molar mass. This is the expected trend in nonpolar molecules, for which London dispersion forces are the exclusive intermolecular forces. In contrast, the hydrides of the lightest members of groups 15–17 have boiling points that are more than 100°C greater than predicted on the basis of their molar masses. The effect is most dramatic for water: if we extend the straight line connecting the points for H_2Te and H_2Se to the line for period 2, we obtain an estimated boiling point of −130°C for water! Imagine the implications for life on Earth if water boiled at −130°C rather than 100°C.

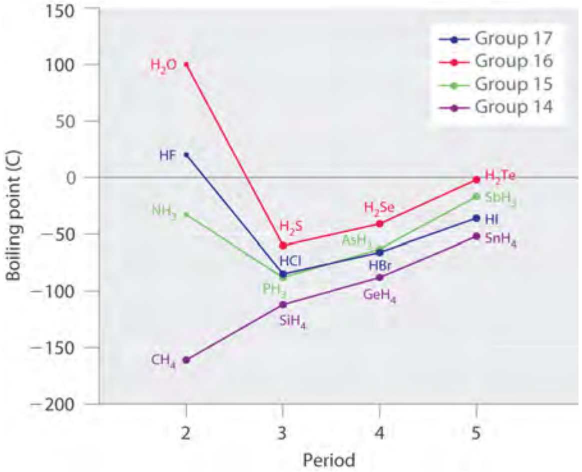
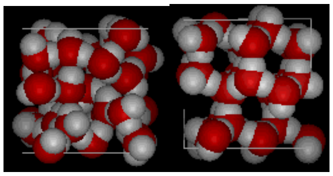


Figure 1.8.5: The Effects of Hydrogen Bonding on Boiling Points. These plots of the boiling points of the covalent hydrides of the elements of groups 14–17 show that the boiling points of the lightest members of each series for which hydrogen bonding is possible (HF, NH_3, and H_2O) are anomalously high for compounds with such low molecular masses.

Why do strong intermolecular forces produce such anomalously high boiling points and other unusual properties, such as high enthalpies of vaporization and high melting points? The answer lies in the highly polar nature of the bonds between hydrogen and very electronegative elements such as O, N, and F. The large difference in electronegativity results in a large partial positive charge on hydrogen and a correspondingly large partial negative charge on the O, N, or F atom. Consequently, H–O, H–N, and H–F bonds have very large bond dipoles that can interact strongly with one another. Because a hydrogen atom is so small, these dipoles can also approach one another more closely than most other dipoles.

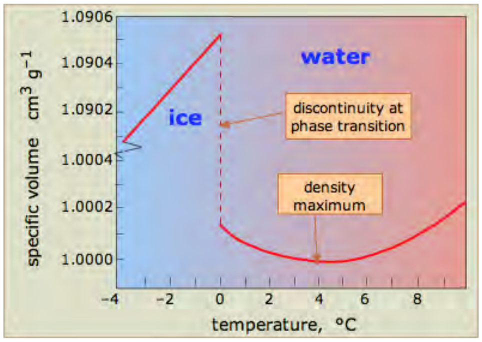
Ice Floats on Water

The most energetically favorable configuration of H_2O molecules is one in which each molecule is hydrogen-bonded to four neighboring molecules. Owing to the thermal motions described above, this ideal is never achieved in the liquid, but when water freezes to ice, the molecules settle into exactly this kind of an arrangement in the ice crystal. This arrangement requires that the molecules be somewhat farther apart then would otherwise be the case; as a consequence, ice, in which hydrogen bonding is at its maximum, has a more open structure, and thus a lower density than water.



Here are three-dimensional views of a typical local structure of water (left) and ice (right.) Notice the greater openness of the ice structure which is necessary to ensure the strongest degree of hydrogen bonding in a uniform, extended crystal lattice. The more crowded and jumbled arrangement in liquid water can be sustained only by the greater amount of thermal energy available above the freezing point.

When ice melts, the more vigorous thermal motion disrupts much of the hydrogen-bonded structure, allowing the molecules to pack more closely. Water is thus one of the very few substances whose solid form has a lower density than the liquid at the freezing point. Localized clusters of hydrogen bonds still remain, however; these are continually breaking and reforming as the thermal motions jiggle and shove the individual molecules. As the temperature of the water is raised above freezing, the extent and lifetimes of these clusters diminish, so the density of the water increases.



At higher temperatures, another effect, common to all substances, begins to dominate: as the temperature increases, so does the amplitude of thermal motions. This more vigorous jostling causes the average distance between the molecules to increase, reducing the density of the liquid; this is ordinary thermal expansion. Because the two competing effects (hydrogen bonding at low temperatures and thermal expansion at higher temperatures) both lead to a decrease in density, it follows that there must be some temperature at which the density of water passes through a maximum. This temperature is 4° C; this is the temperature of the water you will find at the bottom of an ice-covered lake in which this most dense of all water has displaced the colder water and pushed it nearer to the surface.

Because ice is less dense than liquid water, rivers, lakes, and oceans freeze from the top down. In fact, the ice forms a protective surface layer that insulates the rest of the water, allowing fish and other organisms to survive in the lower levels of a frozen lake or sea. If ice were denser than the liquid, the ice formed at the surface in cold weather would sink as fast as it formed. Bodies of water would freeze from the bottom up, which would be lethal for most aquatic creatures. The expansion of water when freezing also explains why automobile or boat engines must be protected by “antifreeze” and why unprotected pipes in houses break if they are allowed to freeze.

Contributors

- Stephen Lower, Professor Emeritus (Simon Fraser U.) Chem1 Virtual Textbook

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Solutions

2.1: Types of Solutions and Solubility

Learning Objectives

- To understand how enthalpy and entropy changes affect solution formation.
- To use the magnitude of the changes in both enthalpy and entropy to predict whether a given solute–solvent combination will spontaneously form a solution.

In all solutions, whether gaseous, liquid, or solid, the substance present in the greatest amount is the solvent, and the substance or substances present in lesser amounts are the solute(s). The solute does not have to be in the same physical state as the solvent, but the physical state of the solvent usually determines the state of the solution. As long as the solute and solvent combine to give a homogeneous solution, the solute is said to be soluble in the solvent. Table $2.1.1$ lists some common examples of gaseous, liquid, and solid solutions and identifies the physical states of the solute and solvent in each.

Table $2.1.1$: Types of Solutions

Solution	Solute	Solvent	Examples
gas	gas	gas	air, natural gas
liquid	gas	liquid	seltzer water (CO_2 gas in water)
liquid	liquid	liquid	alcoholic beverage (ethanol in water), gasoline
liquid	solid	liquid	tea, salt water
solid	gas	solid	H_2 in Pd (used for H_2 storage)
solid	solid	liquid	mercury in silver or gold (amalgam often used in dentistry)
solid	solid	solid	alloys and other "solid solutions"

Forming a Solution

The formation of a solution from a solute and a solvent is a physical process, not a chemical one. That is, both solute and solvent can be recovered in chemically unchanged forms using appropriate separation methods. For example, solid zinc nitrate dissolves in water to form an aqueous solution of zinc nitrate:

$$\mathrm{Zn(NO_3)_2(s) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + 2\,NO_3^-(aq)} \tag{2.1.1}$$

Because $Zn(NO_3)_2$ can be recovered easily by evaporating the water, this is a physical process. In contrast, metallic zinc appears to dissolve in aqueous hydrochloric acid. In fact, the two substances undergo a chemical reaction to form an aqueous solution of zinc chloride with evolution of hydrogen gas:

$$\mathrm{Zn(s) + 2\,H^+(aq) + 2\,Cl^-(aq) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + 2\,Cl^-(aq) + H_2(g)} \tag{2.1.2}$$

When the solution evaporates, we do not recover metallic zinc, so we cannot say that metallic zinc is soluble in aqueous hydrochloric acid because it is chemically transformed when it dissolves. The dissolution of a solute in a solvent to form a solution does not involve a chemical transformation (that it is a physical change).

> *Dissolution of a solute in a solvent to form a solution does not involve a chemical transformation.*

Substances that form a single homogeneous phase in all proportions are said to be completely *miscible* in one another. Ethanol and water are miscible, just as mixtures of gases are miscible. If two substances are essentially insoluble in each other, such as oil and water, they are *immiscible*. Examples of gaseous solutions that we have already discussed include Earth's atmosphere.

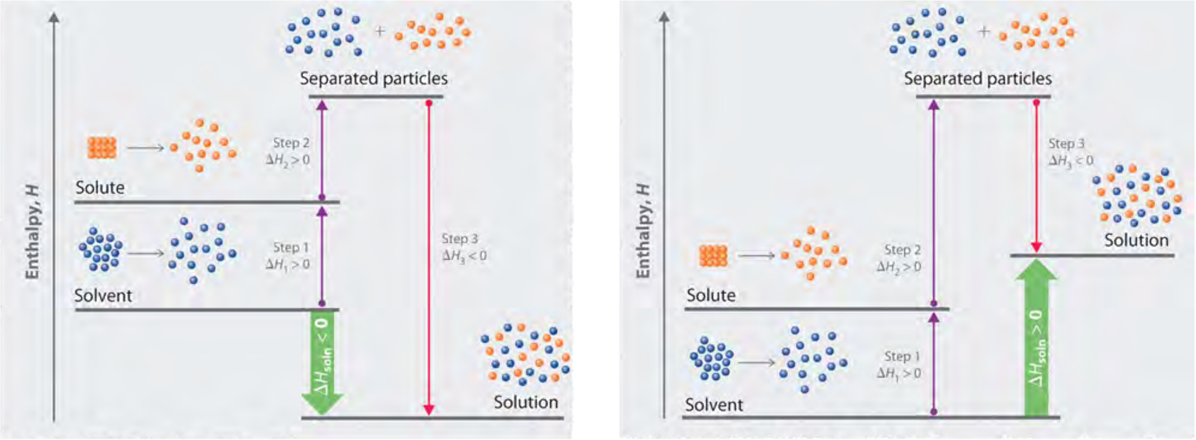
The Role of Enthalpy in Solution Formation

Energy is required to overcome the intermolecular interactions in a solute, which can be supplied only by the new interactions that occur in the solution, when each solute particle is surrounded by particles of the solvent in a process called solvation (or hydration when the solvent is water). Thus all of the solute–solute interactions and many of the solvent–solvent interactions must be disrupted for a solution to form. In this section, we describe the role of enthalpy in this process.

Because enthalpy is a state function, we can use a thermochemical cycle to analyze the energetics of solution formation. The process occurs in three discrete steps, indicated by ΔH_1, ΔH_2, and ΔH_3 in Figure $2.1.2$. The overall enthalpy change in the formation of the solution (ΔH_{soln}) is the sum of the enthalpy changes in the three steps:

$$\Delta H_{soln} = \Delta H_1 + \Delta H_2 + \Delta H_3 \tag{2.1.3}$$

When a solvent is added to a solution, steps 1 and 2 are both endothermic because energy is required to overcome the intermolecular interactions in the solvent (ΔH_1) and the solute (ΔH_2). Because ΔH is positive for both steps 1 and 2, the solute–solvent interactions (ΔH_3) must be stronger than the solute–solute and solvent–solvent interactions they replace in order for the dissolution process to be exothermic ($\Delta H_{soln} < 0$). When the solute is an ionic solid, ΔH_2 corresponds to the lattice energy that must be overcome to form a solution. The higher the charge of the ions in an ionic solid, the higher the lattice energy. Consequently, solids that have very high lattice energies, such as MgO (−3791 kJ/mol), are generally insoluble in all solvents.



(a) Exothermic solution formation **(b) Endothermic solution formation**

Figure $2.1.2$: Enthalpy Changes That Accompany the Formation of a Solution. Solvation can be an exothermic or endothermic process depending on the nature of the solute and solvent. In both cases, step 1, separation of the solvent particles, is energetically uphill ($\Delta H_1 > 0$), as is step 2, separation of the solute particles ($\Delta H_2 > 0$). In contrast, energy is released in step 3 ($\Delta H_3 < 0$) because of interactions between the solute and solvent. (a) When ΔH_3 is larger in magnitude than the sum of ΔH_1 and ΔH_2, the overall process is exothermic ($\Delta H_{soln} < 0$), as shown in the thermochemical cycle. (b) When ΔH_3 is smaller in magnitude than the sum of ΔH_1 and ΔH_2, the overall process is endothermic ($\Delta H_{soln} > 0$).

A positive value for ΔH_{soln} does not mean that a solution will not form. Whether a given process, including formation of a solution, occurs spontaneously depends on whether the total energy of the system is lowered as a result. Enthalpy is only one of the contributing factors. A high ΔH_{soln} is usually an indication that the substance is not very soluble. Instant cold packs used to treat athletic injuries, for example, take advantage of the large positive ΔH_{soln} of ammonium nitrate during dissolution (+25.7 kJ/mol), which produces temperatures less than 0°C (Figure $2.1.3$).

Figure 2.1.3: Commercial Cold Packs for Treating Injuries. These packs contain solid NH_4NO_3 and water in separate compartments. When the seal between the compartments is broken, the NH_4NO_3 dissolves in the water. Because ΔH_{soln} for NH_4NO_3 is much greater than zero, heat is absorbed by the cold pack during the dissolution process, producing local temperatures less than 0°C.

Entropy and Solution Formation

The enthalpy change that accompanies a process is important because processes that release substantial amounts of energy tend to occur spontaneously. A second property of any system, its entropy, is also important in helping us determine whether a given process occurs spontaneously. We will discuss entropy in more detail elsewhere, but for now we can state that entropy (S) is a thermodynamic property of all substances that is proportional to their degree of disorder. A perfect crystal at 0 K, whose atoms are regularly arranged in a perfect lattice and are motionless, has an entropy of zero. In contrast, gases have large positive entropies because their molecules are highly disordered and in constant motion at high speeds.

The formation of a solution disperses molecules, atoms, or ions of one kind throughout a second substance, which generally increases the disorder and results in an increase in the entropy of the system. Thus entropic factors almost always favor formation of a solution. In contrast, a change in enthalpy may or may not favor solution formation. The London dispersion forces that hold cyclohexane and n-hexane together in pure liquids, for example, are similar in nature and strength. Consequently, ΔH_{soln} should be approximately zero, as is observed experimentally. Mixing equal amounts of the two liquids, however, produces a solution in which the n-hexane and cyclohexane molecules are uniformly distributed over approximately twice the initial volume. In this case, the driving force for solution formation is not a negative ΔH_{soln} but rather the increase in entropy due to the increased disorder in the mixture. All spontaneous processes with $\Delta H \geq 0$ are characterized by an *increase* in entropy. In other cases, such as mixing oil with water, salt with gasoline, or sugar with hexane, the enthalpy of solution is large and positive, and the increase in entropy resulting from solution formation is not enough to overcome it. Thus in these cases a solution does not form.

> *All spontaneous processes with ΔH ≥ 0 are characterized by an increase in entropy.*

Table 2.1.2 summarizes how enthalpic factors affect solution formation for four general cases. The column on the far right uses the relative magnitudes of the enthalpic contributions to predict whether a solution will form from each of the four. Keep in mind that in each case entropy favors solution formation. In two of the cases the enthalpy of solution is expected to be relatively small and can be either positive or negative. Thus the entropic contribution dominates, and we expect a solution to form readily. In the other two cases the enthalpy of solution is expected to be large and positive. The entropic contribution, though favorable, is usually too small to overcome the unfavorable enthalpy term. Hence we expect that a solution will not form readily.

Table 2.1.2: Relative Changes in Enthalpies for Different Solute–Solvent Combinations*

ΔH_1 (separation of solvent molecules)	ΔH_2 (separation of solute particles)	ΔH_3 (solute–solvent interactions)	ΔH_{soln} (ΔH_1 + ΔH_2 + ΔH_3)	Result of Mixing Solute and Solvent†
large; positive	large; positive	large; negative	small; positive or negative	solution will usually form
small; positive	large; positive	small; negative	large; positive	solution will not form
large; positive	small; positive	small; negative	large; positive	solution will not form
small; positive	small; positive	small; negative	small; positive or negative	solution will usually form

ΔH_1 (separation of solvent molecules)	ΔH_2 (separation of solute particles)	ΔH_3 (solute–solvent interactions)	ΔH_{soln} (ΔH_1 + ΔH_2 + ΔH_3)	Result of Mixing Solute and Solvent†

*ΔH_1, ΔH_2, and ΔH_3 refer to the processes indicated in the thermochemical cycle shown in Figure 2.1.2.
†In all four cases, entropy increases.

In contrast to liquid solutions, the intermolecular interactions in gases are weak (they are considered to be nonexistent in ideal gases). Hence mixing gases is usually a thermally neutral process ($\Delta H_{soln} \approx 0$), and the entropic factor due to the increase in disorder is dominant (Figure 2.1.4). Consequently, all gases dissolve readily in one another in all proportions to form solutions.

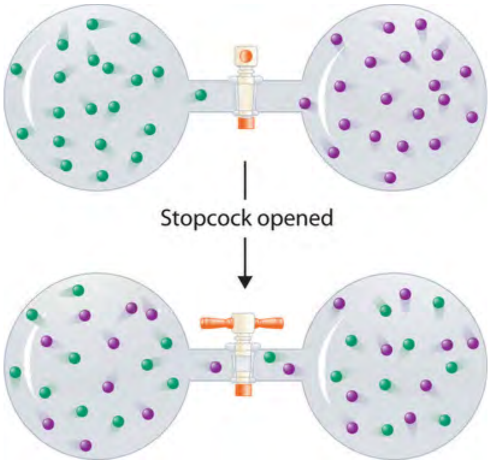
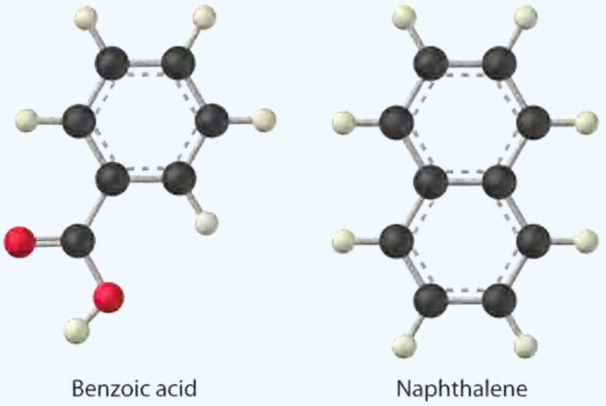


Figure 2.1.4: Formation of a Solution of Two Gases. (top) Pure samples of two different gases are in separate bulbs. (bottom) When the connecting stopcock is opened, diffusion causes the two gases to mix together and form a solution. Even though ΔH_{soln} is zero for the process, the increased entropy of the solution (the increased disorder) versus that of the separate gases favors solution formation.

Example 2.1.1

Considering $LiCl$, benzoic acid ($C_6H_5CO_2H$), and naphthalene, which will be most soluble and which will be least soluble in water?



Given: three compounds

Asked for: relative solubilities in water

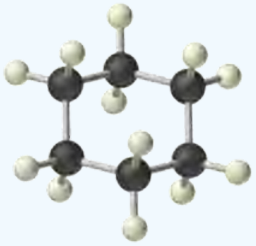
Strategy: Assess the relative magnitude of the enthalpy change for each step in the process shown in Figure 2.1.2. Then use Table 2.1.2 to predict the solubility of each compound in water and arrange them in order of decreasing solubility.

Solution:

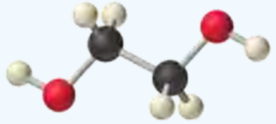
The first substance, $LiCl$, is an ionic compound, so a great deal of energy is required to separate its anions and cations and overcome the lattice energy (ΔH_2 is far greater than zero in Equation 2.1.1). Because water is a polar substance, the interactions between both Li^+ and Cl^- ions and water should be favorable and strong. Thus we expect ΔH_3 to be far less than zero, making LiCl soluble in water. In contrast, naphthalene is a nonpolar compound, with only London dispersion forces holding the molecules together in the solid state. We therefore expect ΔH_2 to be small and positive. We also expect the interaction between polar water molecules and nonpolar naphthalene molecules to be weak $\Delta H_3 \approx 0$. Hence we do not expect naphthalene to be very soluble in water, if at all. Benzoic acid has a polar carboxylic acid group and a nonpolar aromatic ring. We therefore expect that the energy required to separate solute molecules (ΔH_2) will be greater than for naphthalene and less than for LiCl. The strength of the interaction of benzoic acid with water should also be intermediate between those of LiCl and naphthalene. Hence benzoic acid is expected to be more soluble in water than naphthalene but less soluble than LiCl. We thus predict LiCl to be the most soluble in water and naphthalene to be the least soluble.

? Exercise 2.1.1

Considering ammonium chloride, cyclohexane, and ethylene glycol ($HOCH_2CH_2OH$), which will be most soluble and which will be least soluble in benzene?



Cyclohexane



Ethylene glycol

Answer

The most soluble is cyclohexane; the least soluble is ammonium chloride.

Summary

Solutions are homogeneous mixtures of two or more substances whose components are uniformly distributed on a microscopic scale. The component present in the greatest amount is the solvent, and the components present in lesser amounts are the solute(s). The formation of a solution from a solute and a solvent is a physical process, not a chemical one. Substances that are miscible, such as gases, form a single phase in all proportions when mixed. Substances that form separate phases are immiscible. Solvation is the process in which solute particles are surrounded by solvent molecules. When the solvent is water, the process is called hydration. The overall enthalpy change that accompanies the formation of a solution, ΔH_{soln}, is the sum of the enthalpy change for breaking the intermolecular interactions in both the solvent and the solute and the enthalpy change for the formation of new solute–solvent interactions. Exothermic ($\Delta H_{soln} < 0$) processes favor solution formation. In addition, the change in entropy, the degree of disorder of the system, must be considered when predicting whether a solution will form. An increase in entropy (a decrease in order) favors dissolution.

2.2: Energetics of Solution Formation

Learning Objectives

- Understand entropy drives solution formation but necessary enthalpy changes can prevent solution formation.
- Define heat of solute and heat of solvent, know these are always endothermic. (*"the price you pay to pull substances apart"*)
- Define heat of mixing, know this is always exothermic. (*"energy that splashes out when you drop atoms into each others energy well"*)
- Define heat of solvation, identify when it will be exothermic and when it will be endothermic.
- Define heat of hydration, know this is the sum of heat of mixing and heat of solvent when the solvent is water.
- Relate lattice energy to heat of solute.
- Given a substances lattice energy and heat of hydration, determine heat of solvation for that substance in water.
- Use the magnitude of changes in enthalpy to predict whether a given solute–solvent combination can form a solution.

In all solutions, whether gaseous, liquid, or solid, the substance present in the greatest amount is the solvent, and the substance or substances present in lesser amounts are the solute(s). The solute does not have to be in the same physical state as the solvent, but the physical state of the solvent usually determines the state of the solution. As long as the solute and solvent combine to give a homogeneous solution, the solute is said to be soluble in the solvent. Table $2.2.1$ lists some common examples of gaseous, liquid, and solid solutions and identifies the physical states of the solute and solvent in each.

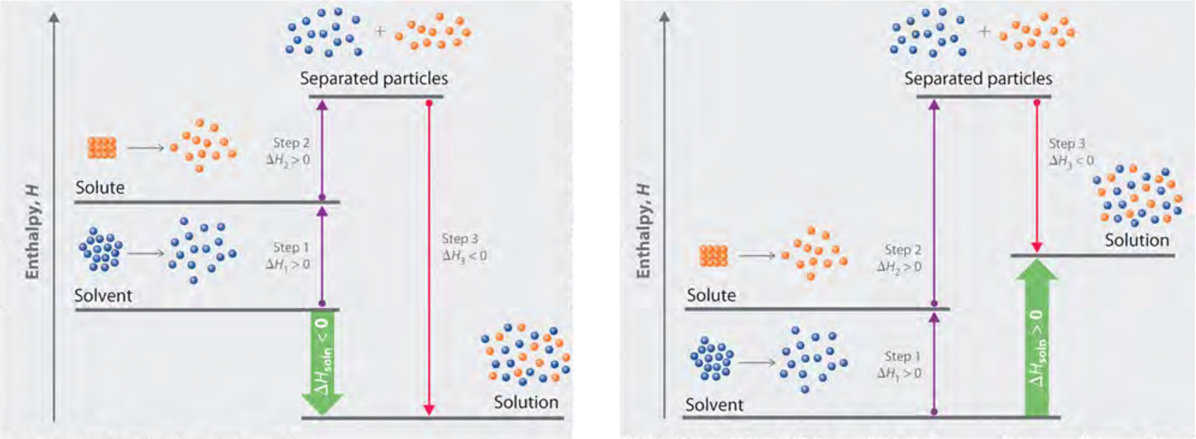
The Role of Enthalpy in Solution Formation

Energy is required to overcome the intermolecular interactions in a solute, which can be supplied only by the new interactions that occur in the solution, when each solute particle is surrounded by particles of the solvent in a process called solvation (or hydration when the solvent is water). Thus all of the solute–solute interactions and many of the solvent–solvent interactions must be disrupted for a solution to form. In this section, we describe the role of enthalpy in this process.

Because enthalpy is a state function, we can use a thermochemical cycle to analyze the energetics of solution formation. The process occurs in three discrete steps, indicated by ΔH_1, ΔH_2, and ΔH_3 in Figure $2.2.2$. The overall enthalpy change in the formation of the solution (ΔH_{soln}) is the sum of the enthalpy changes in the three steps:

$$\Delta H_{soln} = \Delta H_1 + \Delta H_2 + \Delta H_3 \tag{2.2.1}$$

When a solvent is added to a solution, steps 1 and 2 are both endothermic because energy is required to overcome the intermolecular interactions in the solvent (ΔH_1) and the solute (ΔH_2). Because ΔH is positive for both steps 1 and 2, the solute–solvent interactions (ΔH_3) must be stronger than the solute–solute and solvent–solvent interactions they replace in order for the dissolution process to be exothermic ($\Delta H_{soln} < 0$). When the solute is an ionic solid, ΔH_2 corresponds to the lattice energy that must be overcome to form a solution. The higher the charge of the ions in an ionic solid, the higher the lattice energy. Consequently, solids that have very high lattice energies, such as MgO (−3791 kJ/mol), are generally insoluble in all solvents.



(a) Exothermic solution formation **(b) Endothermic solution formation**

Figure 2.2.2: Enthalpy Changes That Accompany the Formation of a Solution. Solvation can be an exothermic or endothermic process depending on the nature of the solute and solvent. In both cases, step 1, separation of the solvent particles, is energetically uphill ($\Delta H_1 > 0$), as is step 2, separation of the solute particles ($\Delta H_2 > 0$). In contrast, energy is released in step 3 ($\Delta H_3 < 0$) because of interactions between the solute and solvent. (a) When ΔH_3 is larger in magnitude than the sum of ΔH_1 and ΔH_2, the overall process is exothermic ($\Delta H_{soln} < 0$), as shown in the thermochemical cycle. (b) When ΔH_3 is smaller in magnitude than the sum of ΔH_1 and ΔH_2, the overall process is endothermic ($\Delta H_{soln} > 0$).

A positive value for ΔH_{soln} does not mean that a solution will not form. Whether a given process, including formation of a solution, occurs spontaneously depends on whether the total energy of the system is lowered as a result. Enthalpy is only one of the contributing factors. A high ΔH_{soln} is usually an indication that the substance is not very soluble. Instant cold packs used to treat athletic injuries, for example, take advantage of the large positive ΔH_{soln} of ammonium nitrate during dissolution (+25.7 kJ/mol), which produces temperatures less than 0°C (Figure 2.2.3).

Figure 2.2.3: Commercial Cold Packs for Treating Injuries. These packs contain solid NH_4NO_3 and water in separate compartments. When the seal between the compartments is broken, the NH_4NO_3 dissolves in the water. Because ΔH_{soln} for NH_4NO_3 is much greater than zero, heat is absorbed by the cold pack during the dissolution process, producing local temperatures less than 0°C.

Entropy and Solution Formation

The enthalpy change that accompanies a process is important because processes that release substantial amounts of energy tend to occur spontaneously. A second property of any system, its entropy, is also important in helping us determine whether a given process occurs spontaneously. We will discuss entropy in more detail elsewhere, but for now we can state that entropy (S) is a thermodynamic property of all substances that is proportional to their degree of disorder. A perfect crystal at 0 K, whose atoms are regularly arranged in a perfect lattice and are motionless, has an entropy of zero. In contrast, gases have large positive entropies because their molecules are highly disordered and in constant motion at high speeds.

The formation of a solution disperses molecules, atoms, or ions of one kind throughout a second substance, which generally increases the disorder and results in an increase in the entropy of the system. Thus entropic factors almost always favor formation of a solution. In contrast, a change in enthalpy may or may not favor solution formation. The London dispersion forces that hold cyclohexane and n-hexane together in pure liquids, for example, are similar in nature and strength. Consequently, ΔH_{soln} should be approximately zero, as is observed experimentally. Mixing equal amounts of the two liquids, however, produces a solution in which the n-hexane and cyclohexane molecules are uniformly distributed over approximately twice the initial volume. In this case, the driving force for solution formation is not a negative ΔH_{soln} but rather the increase in entropy due to the increased disorder in the mixture. All spontaneous processes with $\Delta H \geq 0$ are characterized by an *increase* in entropy. In other cases, such as mixing oil with water, salt with gasoline, or sugar with hexane, the enthalpy of solution is large and positive, and the increase in entropy resulting from solution formation is not enough to overcome it. Thus in these cases a solution does not form.

> *All spontaneous processes with ΔH ≥ 0 are characterized by an increase in entropy.*

Table 2.2.2 summarizes how enthalpic factors affect solution formation for four general cases. The column on the far right uses the relative magnitudes of the enthalpic contributions to predict whether a solution will form from each of the four. Keep in mind that in each case entropy favors solution formation. In two of the cases the enthalpy of solution is expected to be relatively small and can be either positive or negative. Thus the entropic contribution dominates, and we expect a solution to form readily. In the other two cases the enthalpy of solution is expected to be large and positive. The entropic contribution, though favorable, is usually too small to overcome the unfavorable enthalpy term. Hence we expect that a solution will not form readily.

Table 2.2.2: Relative Changes in Enthalpies for Different Solute–Solvent Combinations*

ΔH_1 (separation of solvent molecules)	ΔH_2 (separation of solute particles)	ΔH_3 (solute–solvent interactions)	ΔH_{soln} ($\Delta H_1 + \Delta H_2 + \Delta H_3$)	Result of Mixing Solute and Solvent†
large; positive	large; positive	large; negative	small; positive or negative	solution will usually form
small; positive	large; positive	small; negative	large; positive	solution will not form
large; positive	small; positive	small; negative	large; positive	solution will not form
small; positive	small; positive	small; negative	small; positive or negative	solution will usually form

*ΔH_1, ΔH_2, and ΔH_3 refer to the processes indicated in the thermochemical cycle shown in Figure 2.2.2.

†In all four cases, entropy increases.

In contrast to liquid solutions, the intermolecular interactions in gases are weak (they are considered to be nonexistent in ideal gases). Hence mixing gases is usually a thermally neutral process ($\Delta H_{soln} \approx 0$), and the entropic factor due to the increase in disorder is dominant (Figure 2.2.4). Consequently, all gases dissolve readily in one another in all proportions to form solutions.

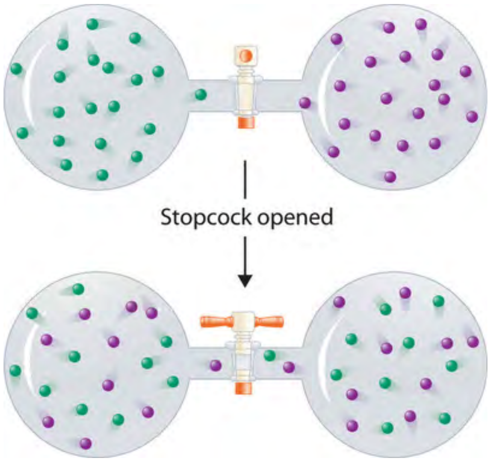
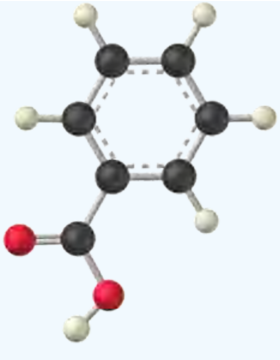


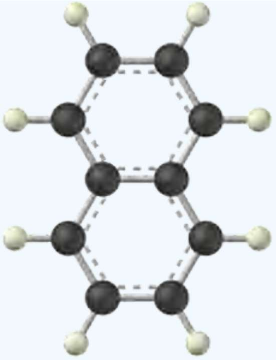
Figure 2.2.4: Formation of a Solution of Two Gases. (top) Pure samples of two different gases are in separate bulbs. (bottom) When the connecting stopcock is opened, diffusion causes the two gases to mix together and form a solution. Even though ΔH_{soln} is zero for the process, the increased entropy of the solution (the increased disorder) versus that of the separate gases favors solution formation.

✓ Example 2.2.1

Considering $LiCl$, benzoic acid ($C_6H_5CO_2H$), and naphthalene, which will be most soluble and which will be least soluble in water?



Benzoic acid



Naphthalene

Given: three compounds

Asked for: relative solubilities in water

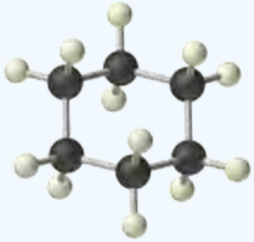
Strategy: Assess the relative magnitude of the enthalpy change for each step in the process shown in Figure 2.2.2. Then use Table 2.2.2 to predict the solubility of each compound in water and arrange them in order of decreasing solubility.

Solution:

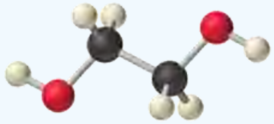
The first substance, $LiCl$, is an ionic compound, so a great deal of energy is required to separate its anions and cations and overcome the lattice energy (ΔH_2 is far greater than zero in Equation ???). Because water is a polar substance, the interactions between both Li^+ and Cl^- ions and water should be favorable and strong. Thus we expect ΔH_3 to be far less than zero, making LiCl soluble in water. In contrast, naphthalene is a nonpolar compound, with only London dispersion forces holding the molecules together in the solid state. We therefore expect ΔH_2 to be small and positive. We also expect the interaction between polar water molecules and nonpolar naphthalene molecules to be weak $\Delta H_3 \approx 0$. Hence we do not expect naphthalene to be very soluble in water, if at all. Benzoic acid has a polar carboxylic acid group and a nonpolar aromatic ring. We therefore expect that the energy required to separate solute molecules (ΔH_2) will be greater than for naphthalene and less than for LiCl. The strength of the interaction of benzoic acid with water should also be intermediate between those of LiCl and naphthalene. Hence benzoic acid is expected to be more soluble in water than naphthalene but less soluble than $LiCl$. We thus predict $LiCl$ to be the most soluble in water and naphthalene to be the least soluble.

? Exercise 2.2.1

Considering ammonium chloride, cyclohexane, and ethylene glycol ($HOCH_2CH_2OH$), which will be most soluble and which will be least soluble in benzene?



Cyclohexane



Ethylene glycol

Answer

The most soluble is cyclohexane; the least soluble is ammonium chloride.

Summary

Solutions are homogeneous mixtures of two or more substances whose components are uniformly distributed on a microscopic scale. The component present in the greatest amount is the solvent, and the components present in lesser amounts are the solute(s).

The formation of a solution from a solute and a solvent is a physical process, not a chemical one. Substances that are miscible, such as gases, form a single phase in all proportions when mixed. Substances that form separate phases are immiscible. Solvation is the process in which solute particles are surrounded by solvent molecules. When the solvent is water, the process is called hydration. The overall enthalpy change that accompanies the formation of a solution, ΔH_{soln}, is the sum of the enthalpy change for breaking the intermolecular interactions in both the solvent and the solute and the enthalpy change for the formation of new solute–solvent interactions. Exothermic ($\Delta H_{soln} < 0$) processes favor solution formation. In addition, the change in entropy, the degree of disorder of the system, must be considered when predicting whether a solution will form. An increase in entropy (a decrease in order) favors dissolution.

2.3: Solution Equilibrium and Factors Affecting Solubility

Learning Objectives

- To understand the relationship among temperature, pressure, and solubility.
- The understand that the solubility of a solid may increase or decrease with increasing temperature,
- To understand that the solubility of a gas decreases with an increase in temperature and a decrease in pressure.

Experimentally it is found that the solubility of most compounds depends strongly on temperature and, if a gas, on pressure as well. As we shall see, the ability to manipulate the solubility by changing the temperature and pressure has several important consequences.

Effect of Temperature on the Solubility of Solids

Figure $2.3.1$ shows plots of the solubilities of several organic and inorganic compounds in water as a function of temperature. Although the solubility of a solid generally increases with increasing temperature, there is no simple relationship between the structure of a substance and the temperature dependence of its solubility. Many compounds (such as glucose and CH_3CO_2Na) exhibit a dramatic increase in solubility with increasing temperature. Others (such as $NaCl$ and K_2SO_4) exhibit little variation, and still others (such as Li_2SO_4) become less soluble with increasing temperature.

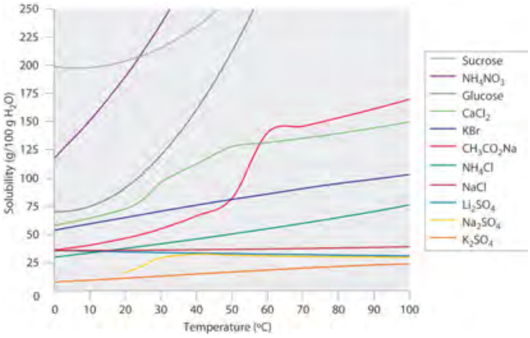


Figure $2.3.1$: Solubilities of Several Inorganic and Organic Solids in Water as a Function of Temperature. Solubility may increase or decrease with temperature; the magnitude of this temperature dependence varies widely among compounds. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Graph of solubility against temperature. Plots of sucrose, NH4NO3, glucose, CaCl2, KBr, CH3CO2Na, NH4Cl, Li2SO4, Na2SO4, K2SO4.

Notice in particular the curves for NH_4NO_3 and $CaCl_2$. The dissolution of ammonium nitrate in water is endothermic ($\Delta H_{soln} = +25.7\ kJ/mol$), whereas the dissolution of calcium chloride is exothermic ($\Delta H_{soln} = -68.2\ kJ/mol$), yet Figure $2.3.1$ shows that the solubility of both compounds increases sharply with increasing temperature. In fact, the magnitudes of the changes in both enthalpy and entropy for dissolution are temperature dependent. Because the solubility of a compound is ultimately determined by relatively small differences between large numbers, there is generally no good way to predict how the solubility will vary with temperature.

The variation of solubility with temperature has been measured for a wide range of compounds, and the results are published in many standard reference books. Chemists are often able to use this information to separate the components of a mixture by fractional crystallization, the separation of compounds on the basis of their solubilities in a given solvent. For example, if we have a mixture of 150 g of sodium acetate (CH_3CO_2Na) and 50 g of KBr, we can separate the two compounds by dissolving the mixture in 100 g of water at 80°C and then cooling the solution slowly to 0°C. According to the temperature curves in Figure $2.3.1$, both compounds dissolve in water at 80°C, and all 50 g of KBr remains in solution at 0°C. Only about 36 g of CH_3CO_2Na are soluble in 100 g of water at 0°C, however, so approximately 114 g (150 g − 36 g) of CH_3CO_2Na crystallizes out on cooling. The crystals can then be separated by filtration. Thus fractional crystallization allows us to recover about 75% of the original CH_3CO_2Na in essentially pure form in only one step.

Fractional crystallization is a common technique for purifying compounds as diverse as those shown in Figure $2.3.1$ and from antibiotics to enzymes. For the technique to work properly, the compound of interest must be more soluble at high temperature than at low temperature, so that lowering the temperature causes it to crystallize out of solution. In addition, the impurities must be more soluble than the compound of interest (as was KBr in this example) and preferably present in relatively small amounts.

Effect of Temperature on the Solubility of Gases

The solubility of gases in liquids decreases with increasing temperature, as shown in Figure $2.3.2$. Attractive intermolecular interactions in the gas phase are essentially zero for most substances. When a gas dissolves, it does so because its molecules interact with solvent molecules. Because heat is released when these new attractive interactions form, dissolving most gases in liquids is an exothermic process ($\Delta H_{soln} < 0$). Conversely, adding heat to the solution provides thermal energy that overcomes the attractive forces between the gas and the solvent molecules, thereby decreasing the solubility of the gas. The phenomenon is similar to that involved in the increase in the vapor pressure of a pure liquid with increasing temperature. In the case of vapor pressure, however, it is attractive forces between solvent molecules that are being overcome by the added thermal energy when the temperature is increased.

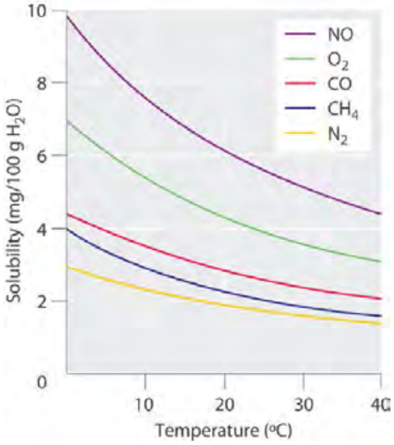


Figure $2.3.2$: Solubilities of Several Common Gases in Water as a Function of Temperature at Partial Pressure of 1 atm. The solubilities of all gases decrease with increasing temperature. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

The decrease in the solubilities of gases at higher temperatures has both practical and environmental implications. Anyone who routinely boils water in a teapot or electric kettle knows that a white or gray deposit builds up on the inside and must eventually be removed. The same phenomenon occurs on a much larger scale in the giant boilers used to supply hot water or steam for industrial applications, where it is called “boiler scale,” a deposit that can seriously decrease the capacity of hot water pipes (Figure 2.3.3). The problem is not a uniquely modern one: aqueducts that were built by the Romans 2000 years ago to carry cold water from alpine regions to warmer, drier regions in southern France were clogged by similar deposits. The chemistry behind the formation of these deposits is moderately complex and will be described elsewhere, but the driving force is the loss of dissolved CO_2 from solution. Hard water contains dissolved Ca^{2+} and HCO_3^- (bicarbonate) ions. Calcium bicarbonate ($Ca(HCO_3)_2$ is rather soluble in water, but calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) is quite insoluble. A solution of bicarbonate ions can react to form carbon dioxide, carbonate ion, and water:

$$2\,HCO_3^-(aq) \longrightarrow CO_3^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(aq) \tag{2.3.1}$$

Heating the solution decreases the solubility of CO_2, which escapes into the gas phase above the solution. In the presence of calcium ions, the carbonate ions precipitate as insoluble calcium carbonate, the major component of boiler scale.

Figure 2.3.3: Calcium carbonate deposits (left) Calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) deposits in hot water pipes can significantly reduce pipe capacity. These deposits, called boiler scale, form when dissolved CO_2 is driven into the gas phase at high temperatures. (right) Highly calcified remains of Eiffel aqueduct near Euskirchen-Kreuzweingarten, Germany. (Wikipedia)

Thermal Pollution

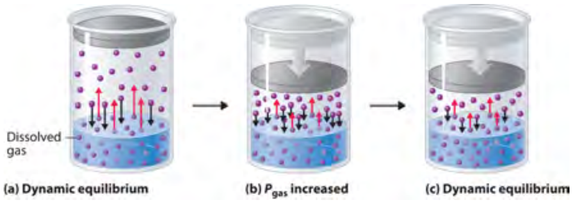
In **thermal pollution**, lake or river water that is used to cool an industrial reactor or a power plant is returned to the environment at a higher temperature than normal. Because of the reduced solubility of O_2 at higher temperatures (Figure 2.3.2), the warmer water contains less dissolved oxygen than the water did when it entered the plant. Fish and other aquatic organisms that need dissolved oxygen to live can literally suffocate if the oxygen concentration of their habitat is too low. Because the warm, oxygen-depleted water is less dense, it tends to float on top of the cooler, denser, more oxygen-rich water in the lake or river, forming a barrier that prevents atmospheric oxygen from dissolving. Eventually even deep lakes can be suffocated if the problem is not corrected. Additionally, most fish and other nonmammalian aquatic organisms are cold-blooded, which means that their body temperature is the same as the temperature of their environment. Temperatures substantially greater than the normal range can lead to severe stress or even death. Cooling systems for power plants and other facilities must be designed to minimize any adverse effects on the temperatures of surrounding bodies of water.

There are many causes of fish kill, but oxygen depletion is the most common cause. (Public Domain; United States Fish and Wildlife Service)

A similar effect is seen in the rising temperatures of bodies of water such as the k0oi89Chesapeake Bay, the largest estuary in North America, where \lobal warming has been implicated as the cause. For each 1.5°C that the bay’s water warms, the capacity of water to dissolve oxygen decreases by about 1.1%. Many marine species that are at the southern limit of their distributions have shifted their populations farther north. In 2005, the eelgrass, which forms an important nursery habitat for fish and shellfish, disappeared from much of the bay following record high water temperatures. Presumably, decreased oxygen levels decreased populations of clams and other filter feeders, which then decreased light transmission to allow the eelsgrass to grow. The complex relationships in ecosystems such as the Chesapeake Bay are especially sensitive to temperature fluctuations that cause a deterioration of habitat quality.

Effect of Pressure on the Solubility of Gases: Henry’s Law

External pressure has very little effect on the solubility of liquids and solids. In contrast, the solubility of gases increases as the partial pressure of the gas above a solution increases. This point is illustrated in Figure 2.3.4, which shows the effect of increased pressure on the dynamic equilibrium that is established between the dissolved gas molecules in solution and the molecules in the gas phase above the solution. Because the concentration of molecules in the gas phase increases with increasing pressure, the concentration of dissolved gas molecules in the solution at equilibrium is also higher at higher pressures.



(a) Dynamic equilibrium (b) P_{gas} increased (c) Dynamic equilibrium

Figure 2.3.4: A Model Depicting Why the Solubility of a Gas Increases as the Partial Pressure Increases at Constant Temperature. (a) When a gas comes in contact with a pure liquid, some of the gas molecules (purple spheres) collide with the surface of the liquid and dissolve. When the concentration of dissolved gas molecules has increased so that the rate at which gas molecules escape into the gas phase is the same as the rate at which they dissolve, a dynamic equilibrium has been established, as depicted here. This equilibrium is entirely analogous to the one that maintains the vapor pressure of a liquid. (b) Increasing the pressure of the gas increases the number of molecules of gas per unit volume, which increases the rate at which gas molecules collide with the surface of the liquid and dissolve. (c) As additional gas molecules dissolve at the higher pressure, the concentration of dissolved gas increases until a new dynamic equilibrium is established. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

The relationship between pressure and the solubility of a gas is described quantitatively by Henry’s law, which is named for its discoverer, the English physician and chemist, William Henry (1775–1836):

$$C = kP \tag{2.3.2}$$

where

- C is the concentration of dissolved gas at equilibrium,
- P is the partial pressure of the gas, and
- k is the Henry’s law constant, which must be determined experimentally for each combination of gas, solvent, and temperature.

Although the gas concentration may be expressed in any convenient units, we will use molarity exclusively. The units of the Henry’s law constant are therefore mol/(L·atm) = M/atm. Values of the Henry’s law constants for solutions of several gases in water at 20°C are listed in Table 2.3.1.

As the data in Table 2.3.1 demonstrate, the concentration of a dissolved gas in water at a given pressure depends strongly on its physical properties. For a series of related substances, London dispersion forces increase as molecular mass increases. Thus among the Group 18 elements, the Henry's law constants increase smoothly from He to Ne to Ar.

Table 2.3.1: Henry's Law Constants for Selected Gases in Water at 20°C

Gas	Henry's Law Constant [mol/(L·atm)] × 10^{-4}
He	3.9
Ne	4.7
Ar	15
H_2	8.1
N_2	7.1
O_2	14
CO_2	392

Oxygen is Especially Soluble

Nitrogen and oxygen are the two most prominent gases in the Earth's atmosphere and they share many similar physical properties. However, as Table 2.3.1 shows, O_2 is twice as soluble in water as N_2. Many factors contribute to solubility including the nature of the intermolecular forces at play. For a details discussion, see "The O_2/N_2 Ratio Gas Solubility Mystery" by Rubin Battino and Paul G. Seybold (J. Chem. Eng. Data 2011, 56, 5036–5044),

Gases that react chemically with water, such as HCl and the other hydrogen halides, H_2S, and NH_3, do **not** obey Henry's law; all of these gases are much more soluble than predicted by Henry's law. For example, HCl reacts with water to give $H^+(aq)$ and $Cl^-(aq)$, not dissolved HCl molecules, and its dissociation into ions results in a much higher solubility than expected for a neutral molecule.

> *Gases that react with water do not obey Henry's law.*

Henry's law has important applications. For example, bubbles of CO_2 form as soon as a carbonated beverage is opened because the drink was bottled under CO_2 at a pressure greater than 1 atm. When the bottle is opened, the pressure of CO_2 above the solution drops rapidly, and some of the dissolved gas escapes from the solution as bubbles. Henry's law also explains why scuba divers have to be careful to ascend to the surface slowly after a dive if they are breathing compressed air. At the higher pressures under water, more N2 from the air dissolves in the diver's internal fluids. If the diver ascends too quickly, the rapid pressure change causes small bubbles of N_2 to form throughout the body, a condition known as "the bends." These bubbles can block the flow of blood through the small blood vessels, causing great pain and even proving fatal in some cases.

Due to the low Henry's law constant for O_2 in water, the levels of dissolved oxygen in water are too low to support the energy needs of multicellular organisms, including humans. To increase the O_2 concentration in internal fluids, organisms synthesize highly soluble carrier molecules that bind O_2 reversibly. For example, human red blood cells contain a protein called hemoglobin that specifically binds O_2 and facilitates its transport from the lungs to the tissues, where it is used to oxidize food molecules to provide energy. The concentration of hemoglobin in normal blood is about 2.2 mM, and each hemoglobin molecule can bind four O_2 molecules. Although the concentration of dissolved O_2 in blood serum at 37°C (normal body temperature) is only 0.010 mM, the total dissolved O_2 concentration is 8.8 mM, almost a thousand times greater than would be possible without hemoglobin. Synthetic oxygen carriers based on fluorinated alkanes have been developed for use as an emergency replacement for whole blood. Unlike donated blood, these "blood substitutes" do not require refrigeration and have a long shelf life. Their very high Henry's law constants for O_2 result in dissolved oxygen concentrations comparable to those in normal blood.

A Video Discussing Henry's Law. Video Link: Henry's Law (The Solubility of Gases in Solvents), YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

✓ Example 2.3.1

The Henry's law constant for O_2 in water at 25°C is $1.27 \times 10^{-3} M/atm$, and the mole fraction of O_2 in the atmosphere is 0.21. Calculate the solubility of O_2 in water at 25°C at an atmospheric pressure of 1.00 atm.

Given: Henry's law constant, mole fraction of O_2, and pressure

Asked for: solubility

Strategy:

A. Use Dalton's law of partial pressures to calculate the partial pressure of oxygen. (For more information about Dalton's law of partial pressures)
B. Use Henry's law to calculate the solubility, expressed as the concentration of dissolved gas.

Solution:

A According to Dalton's law, the partial pressure of O_2 is proportional to the mole fraction of O_2:

$$\begin{aligned} P_A &= \chi_A P_t \\ &= (0.21)(1.00\ atm) \\ &= 0.21\ atm \end{aligned}$$

B From Henry’s law, the concentration of dissolved oxygen under these conditions is

$$\begin{aligned}[CO_2] &= kP_{O_2} \\ &= (1.27 \times 10^{-3}\ M/\ \cancel{atm})(0.21\ \ \cancel{atm}) \\ &= 2.7 \times 10^{-4}\ M\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 2.3.1

To understand why soft drinks “fizz” and then go “flat” after being opened, calculate the concentration of dissolved CO_2 in a soft drink:

a. bottled under a pressure of 5.0 atm of CO_2
b. in equilibrium with the normal partial pressure of CO_2 in the atmosphere (approximately $3 \times 10^{-4}\ atm$). The Henry’s law constant for CO_2 in water at 25°C is $3.4 \times 10^{-2}\ M/atm$.

Answer a

$0.17M$

Answer b

$1 \times 10^{-5}M$

Summary

The solubility of most substances depends strongly on the temperature and, in the case of gases, on the pressure. The solubility of most solid or liquid solutes increases with increasing temperature. The components of a mixture can often be separated using fractional crystallization, which separates compounds according to their solubilities. The solubility of a gas decreases with increasing temperature. Henry’s law describes the relationship between the pressure and the solubility of a gas.

2.4: Expressing Solution Concentration

Learning Objectives

- To describe the concentration of a solution in the way that is most appropriate for a particular problem or application.
- To be familiar with the different units used to express the concentrations of a solution.

There are several different ways to quantitatively describe the concentration of a solution. For example, molarity is a useful way to describe solution concentrations for reactions that are carried out in solution. Mole fractions are used not only to describe gas concentrations but also to determine the vapor pressures of mixtures of similar liquids. Example $2.4.1$ reviews the methods for calculating the molarity and mole fraction of a solution when the masses of its components are known.

✓ Example 2.4.1: Molarity and Mole Fraction

Commercial vinegar is essentially a solution of acetic acid in water. A bottle of vinegar has 3.78 g of acetic acid per 100.0 g of solution. Assume that the density of the solution is 1.00 g/mL.

a. What is its molarity?
b. What is its mole fraction?

Given: mass of substance and mass and density of solution

Asked for: molarity and mole fraction

Strategy:

A. Calculate the number of moles of acetic acid in the sample. Then calculate the number of liters of solution from its mass and density. Use these results to determine the molarity of the solution.
B. Determine the mass of the water in the sample and calculate the number of moles of water. Then determine the mole fraction of acetic acid by dividing the number of moles of acetic acid by the total number of moles of substances in the sample.

Solution:

A: The molarity is the number of moles of acetic acid per liter of solution. We can calculate the number of moles of acetic acid as its mass divided by its molar mass.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{moles CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H} &= \frac{3.78\ \cancel{\text{g}}\ \text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}}{60.05\ \cancel{\text{g}}/\text{mol}} \\ &= 0.0629\ \text{mol}\end{aligned}$$

The volume of the solution equals its mass divided by its density.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{volume} &= \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{density}} \\ &= \frac{100.0\ \cancel{\text{g}}\ \text{solution}}{1.00\ \cancel{\text{g}}/\text{mL}} = 100\ mL\end{aligned}$$

Then calculate the molarity directly.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{molarity of CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H} &= \frac{\text{moles CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}}{\text{liter solution}} \\ &= \frac{0.0629\ mol\ \text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}}{(100\ \cancel{\text{mL}})(1\ L/1000\ \cancel{\text{mL}})} = 0.629\ M\ \text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}\end{aligned}$$

This result makes intuitive sense. If 100.0 g of aqueous solution (equal to 100 mL) contains 3.78 g of acetic acid, then 1 L of solution will contain 37.8 g of acetic acid, which is a little more than $\frac{1}{2}$ mole. Keep in mind, though, that the mass and volume of a solution are related by its density; concentrated aqueous solutions often have densities greater than 1.00 g/mL.

B: To calculate the mole fraction of acetic acid in the solution, we need to know the number of moles of both acetic acid and water. The number of moles of acetic acid is 0.0629 mol, as calculated in part (a). We know that 100.0 g of vinegar contains 3.78 g of acetic acid; hence the solution also contains (100.0 g − 3.78 g) = 96.2 g of water. We have

$$moles\ \mathrm{H_2O} = \frac{96.2\ \cancel{g}\ \mathrm{H_2O}}{18.02\ \cancel{g}/mol} = 5.34\ mol\ \mathrm{H_2O}$$

The mole fraction χ of acetic acid is the ratio of the number of moles of acetic acid to the total number of moles of substances present:

$$\begin{aligned}\chi_{\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}} &= \frac{moles\ \mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}}{moles\ \mathrm{CH_3CO_2H} + moles\ \mathrm{H_2O}} \\ &= \frac{0.0629\ mol}{0.0629\ mol + 5.34\ mol} \\ &= 0.0116 = 1.16 \times 10^{-2}\end{aligned}$$

This answer makes sense, too. There are approximately 100 times as many moles of water as moles of acetic acid, so the ratio should be approximately 0.01.

? Exercise 2.4.1: Molarity and Mole Fraction

A solution of HCl gas dissolved in water (sold commercially as "muriatic acid," a solution used to clean masonry surfaces) has 20.22 g of HCl per 100.0 g of solution, and its density is 1.10 g/mL.

a. What is its molarity?
b. What is its mole fraction?

Answer a

6.10 M HCl

Answer b

$\chi_{HCl} = 0.111$

The concentration of a solution can also be described by its molality (m), the number of moles of solute per kilogram of solvent:

$$\text{molality (m)} = \frac{\text{moles solute}}{\text{kilogram solvent}} \tag{2.4.1}$$

Molality, therefore, has the same numerator as molarity (the number of moles of solute) but a different denominator (kilogram of solvent rather than liter of solution). For dilute aqueous solutions, the molality and molarity are nearly the same because dilute solutions are mostly solvent. Thus because the density of water under standard conditions is very close to 1.0 g/mL, the volume of 1.0 kg of H_2O under these conditions is very close to 1.0 L, and a 0.50 M solution of KBr in water, for example, has approximately the same concentration as a 0.50 m solution.

Another common way of describing concentration is as the ratio of the mass of the solute to the total mass of the solution. The result can be expressed as mass percentage, parts per million (ppm), or parts per billion (ppb):

$$\text{mass percentage} = \frac{\text{mass of solute}}{\text{mass of solution}} \times 100 \tag{2.4.2}$$

$$\text{parts per million (ppm)} = \frac{\text{mass of solute}}{\text{mass of solution}} \times 10^6 \tag{2.4.3}$$

$$\text{parts per billion (ppb)} = \frac{\text{mass of solute}}{\text{mass of solution}} \times 10^9 \tag{2.4.4}$$

In the health sciences, the concentration of a solution is often expressed as parts per thousand (ppt), indicated as a proportion. For example, adrenalin, the hormone produced in high-stress situations, is available in a 1:1000 solution, or one gram of adrenalin per

1000 g of solution.

The labels on bottles of commercial reagents often describe the contents in terms of mass percentage. Sulfuric acid, for example, is sold as a 95% aqueous solution, or 95 g of H_2SO_4 per 100 g of solution. Parts per million and parts per billion are used to describe concentrations of highly dilute solutions. These measurements correspond to milligrams and micrograms of solute per kilogram of solution, respectively. For dilute aqueous solutions, this is equal to milligrams and micrograms of solute per liter of solution (assuming a density of 1.0 g/mL).

Example 2.4.2: Molarity and Mass

Several years ago, millions of bottles of mineral water were contaminated with benzene at ppm levels. This incident received a great deal of attention because the lethal concentration of benzene in rats is 3.8 ppm. A 250 mL sample of mineral water has 12.7 ppm of benzene. Because the contaminated mineral water is a very dilute aqueous solution, we can assume that its density is approximately 1.00 g/mL.

a. What is the molarity of the solution?
b. What is the mass of benzene in the sample?

Given: volume of sample, solute concentration, and density of solution

Asked for: molarity of solute and mass of solute in 250 mL

Strategy:

A. Use the concentration of the solute in parts per million to calculate the molarity.
B. Use the concentration of the solute in parts per million to calculate the mass of the solute in the specified volume of solution.

Solution:

a. A To calculate the molarity of benzene, we need to determine the number of moles of benzene in 1 L of solution. We know that the solution contains 12.7 ppm of benzene. Because 12.7 ppm is equivalent to 12.7 mg/1000 g of solution and the density of the solution is 1.00 g/mL, the solution contains 12.7 mg of benzene per liter (1000 mL). The molarity is therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\text{molarity} &= \frac{\text{moles}}{\text{liter solution}}\\ &= \frac{(12.7\ \cancel{mg})\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{g}}{1000\ \cancel{mg}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ mol}{78.114\ \cancel{g}}\right)}{1.00\ L}\\ &= 1.63\times 10^{-4} M\end{aligned}$$

b. B We are given that there are 12.7 mg of benzene per 1000 g of solution, which is equal to 12.7 mg/L of solution. Hence the mass of benzene in 250 mL (250 g) of solution is

$$\begin{aligned}\text{mass of benzene} &= \frac{(12.7\ mg\ \text{benzene})(250\ \cancel{mL})}{1000\ \cancel{mL}}\\ &= 3.18\ mg\\ &= 3.18\times 10^{-3}\ g\ \text{benzene}\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 2.4.2: Molarity of Lead Solution

The maximum allowable concentration of lead in drinking water is 9.0 ppb.

a. What is the molarity of Pb^{2+} in a 9.0 ppb aqueous solution?
b. Use your calculated concentration to determine how many grams of Pb^{2+} are in an 8 oz glass of water.

Answer a

4.3×10^{-8} M

Answer b

2×10^{-6} g

How do chemists decide which units of concentration to use for a particular application? Although molarity is commonly used to express concentrations for reactions in solution or for titrations, it does have one drawback—molarity is the number of moles of solute divided by the volume of the solution, and the volume of a solution depends on its density, which is a function of temperature. Because volumetric glassware is calibrated at a particular temperature, typically 20°C, the molarity may differ from the original value by several percent if a solution is prepared or used at a significantly different temperature, such as 40°C or 0°C. For many applications this may not be a problem, but for precise work these errors can become important. In contrast, mole fraction, molality, and mass percentage depend on only the masses of the solute and solvent, which are independent of temperature.

Mole fraction is not very useful for experiments that involve quantitative reactions, but it is convenient for calculating the partial pressure of gases in mixtures, as discussed previously. Mole fractions are also useful for calculating the vapor pressures of certain types of solutions. Molality is particularly useful for determining how properties such as the freezing or boiling point of a solution vary with solute concentration. Because mass percentage and parts per million or billion are simply different ways of expressing the ratio of the mass of a solute to the mass of the solution, they enable us to express the concentration of a substance even when the molecular mass of the substance is unknown. Units of ppb or ppm are also used to express very low concentrations, such as those of residual impurities in foods or of pollutants in environmental studies.

Table $2.4.1$ summarizes the different units of concentration and typical applications for each. When the molar mass of the solute and the density of the solution are known, it becomes relatively easy with practice to convert among the units of concentration we have discussed, as illustrated in Example $2.4.3$.

Table $2.4.1$: Different Units for Expressing the Concentrations of Solutions*

Unit	Definition	Application
molarity (M)	moles of solute/liter of solution (mol/L)	Used for quantitative reactions in solution and titrations; mass and molecular mass of solute and volume of solution are known.
mole fraction (χ)	moles of solute/total moles present (mol/mol)	Used for partial pressures of gases and vapor pressures of some solutions; mass and molecular mass of each component are known.
molality (m)	moles of solute/kg of solvent (mol/kg)	Used in determining how colligative properties vary with solute concentration; masses and molecular mass of solute are known.
mass percentage (%)	[mass of solute (g)/mass of solution (g)] × 100	Useful when masses are known but molecular masses are unknown.
parts per thousand (ppt)	[mass of solute/mass of solution] × 10^3 (g solute/kg solution)	Used in the health sciences, ratio solutions are typically expressed as a proportion, such as 1:1000.
parts per million (ppm)	[mass of solute/mass of solution] × 10^6 (mg solute/kg solution)	Used for trace quantities; masses are known but molecular masses may be unknown.
parts per billion (ppb)	[mass of solute/mass of solution] × 10^9 (µg solute/kg solution)	Used for trace quantities; masses are known but molecular masses may be unknown.

*The molarity of a solution is temperature dependent, but the other units shown in this table are independent of temperature.

✓ Example 2.4.3: Vodka

Vodka is essentially a solution of ethanol in water. Typical vodka is sold as “80 proof,” which means that it contains 40.0% ethanol by volume. The density of pure ethanol is 0.789 g/mL at 20°C. If we assume that the volume of the solution is the sum of the volumes of the components (which is not strictly correct), calculate the following for the ethanol in 80-proof vodka.

a. the mass percentage
b. the mole fraction

c. the molarity
d. the molality

Given: volume percent and density

Asked for: mass percentage, mole fraction, molarity, and molality

Strategy:

A. Use the density of the solute to calculate the mass of the solute in 100.0 mL of solution. Calculate the mass of water in 100.0 mL of solution.
B. Determine the mass percentage of solute by dividing the mass of ethanol by the mass of the solution and multiplying by 100.
C. Convert grams of solute and solvent to moles of solute and solvent. Calculate the mole fraction of solute by dividing the moles of solute by the total number of moles of substances present in solution.
D. Calculate the molarity of the solution: moles of solute per liter of solution. Determine the molality of the solution by dividing the number of moles of solute by the kilograms of solvent.

Solution:

The key to this problem is to use the density of pure ethanol to determine the mass of ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH), abbreviated as EtOH, in a given volume of solution. We can then calculate the number of moles of ethanol and the concentration of ethanol in any of the required units. A Because we are given a percentage by volume, we assume that we have 100.0 mL of solution. The volume of ethanol will thus be 40.0% of 100.0 mL, or 40.0 mL of ethanol, and the volume of water will be 60.0% of 100.0 mL, or 60.0 mL of water. The mass of ethanol is obtained from its density:

$$mass\ of\ EtOH = (40.0\ \cancel{mL})\left(\frac{0.789\ g}{\cancel{mL}}\right) = 31.6\ g\ EtOH$$

If we assume the density of water is 1.00 g/mL, the mass of water is 60.0 g. We now have all the information we need to calculate the concentration of ethanol in the solution.

B The mass percentage of ethanol is the ratio of the mass of ethanol to the total mass of the solution, expressed as a percentage:

$$\begin{aligned}\%EtOH &= \left(\frac{mass\ of\ EtOH}{mass\ of\ solution}\right)(100) \\ &= \left(\frac{31.6\ \cancel{g}\ EtOH}{31.6\ \cancel{g}\ EtOH + 60.0\ \cancel{g}\ H_2O}\right)(100) \\ &= 34.5\%\end{aligned}$$

C The mole fraction of ethanol is the ratio of the number of moles of ethanol to the total number of moles of substances in the solution. Because 40.0 mL of ethanol has a mass of 31.6 g, we can use the molar mass of ethanol (46.07 g/mol) to determine the number of moles of ethanol in 40.0 mL:

$$\begin{aligned}moles\ \mathrm{CH_3CH_2OH} &= (31.6\ \cancel{g\ \mathrm{CH_3CH_2OH}})\left(\frac{1\ mol}{46.07\ \cancel{g\ \mathrm{CH_3CH_2OH}}}\right) \\ &= 0.686\ mol\ \mathrm{CH_3CH_2OH}\end{aligned}$$

Similarly, the number of moles of water is

$$moles\ \mathrm{H_2O} = (60.0\ \cancel{g\ \mathrm{H_2O}})\left(\frac{1\ mol\ \mathrm{H_2O}}{18.02\ \cancel{g\ \mathrm{H_2O}}}\right) = 3.33\ mol\ \mathrm{H_2O}$$

The mole fraction of ethanol is thus

$$\chi_{\mathrm{CH_3CH_2OH}} = \frac{0.686\ \cancel{mol}}{0.686\ \cancel{mol} + 3.33\ \cancel{mol}} = 0.171$$

D The molarity of the solution is the number of moles of ethanol per liter of solution. We already know the number of moles of ethanol per 100.0 mL of solution, so the molarity is

$$M_{\mathrm{CH_3CH_2OH}} = \left(\frac{0.686\ mol}{100\ \cancel{mL}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ \cancel{mL}}{L}\right) = 6.86\ M$$

The molality of the solution is the number of moles of ethanol per kilogram of solvent. Because we know the number of moles of ethanol in 60.0 g of water, the calculation is again straightforward:

$$m_{\mathrm{CH_3CH_2OH}} = \left(\frac{0.686\ mol\ EtOH}{60.0\ \cancel{g}\ H_2O}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ \cancel{g}}{kg}\right) = \frac{11.4\ mol\ EtOH}{kg\ H_2O} = 11.4\ m$$

? Exercise 2.4.3: Toluene/Benzene Solution

A solution is prepared by mixing 100.0 mL of toluene with 300.0 mL of benzene. The densities of toluene and benzene are 0.867 g/mL and 0.874 g/mL, respectively. Assume that the volume of the solution is the sum of the volumes of the components. Calculate the following for toluene.

a. mass percentage
b. mole fraction
c. molarity
d. molality

Answer a

mass percentage toluene = 24.8%

Answer b

$\chi_{toluene} = 0.219$

Answer c

2.35 M toluene

Answer d

3.59 m toluene

A Video Discussing Different Measures of Concentration. Video Link: Measures of Concentration, YouTube (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

A Video Discussing how to Convert Measures of Concentration. Video Link: Converting Units of Concentration, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

Different units are used to express the concentrations of a solution depending on the application. The concentration of a solution is the quantity of solute in a given quantity of solution. It can be expressed in several ways: molarity (moles of solute per liter of solution); mole fraction, the ratio of the number of moles of solute to the total number of moles of substances present; mass percentage, the ratio of the mass of the solute to the mass of the solution times 100; parts per thousand (ppt), grams of solute per kilogram of solution; parts per million (ppm), milligrams of solute per kilogram of solution; parts per billion (ppb), micrograms of solute per kilogram of solution; and molality (m), the number of moles of solute per kilogram of solvent.

2.5: Colligative Properties- Freezing Point Depression, Boiling Point Elevation, and Osmosis

Learning Objectives

- To describe the relationship between solute concentration and the physical properties of a solution.
- To understand that the total number of nonvolatile solute particles determines the decrease in vapor pressure, increase in boiling point, and decrease in freezing point of a solution versus the pure solvent.

Many of the physical properties of solutions differ significantly from those of the pure substances discussed in earlier chapters, and these differences have important consequences. For example, the limited temperature range of liquid water (0°C–100°C) severely limits its use. Aqueous solutions have both a lower freezing point and a higher boiling point than pure water. Probably one of the most familiar applications of this phenomenon is the addition of ethylene glycol (“antifreeze”) to the water in an automobile radiator. This solute lowers the freezing point of the water, preventing the engine from cracking in very cold weather from the expansion of pure water on freezing. Antifreeze also enables the cooling system to operate at temperatures greater than 100°C without generating enough pressure to explode.

Changes in the freezing point and boiling point of a solution depend primarily on the number of solute particles present rather than the kind of particles. Such properties of solutions are called colligative properties (from the Latin colligatus, meaning “bound together” as in a quantity). As we will see, the vapor pressure and osmotic pressure of solutions are also colligative properties.

Counting concentrations

When we determine the number of particles in a solution, it is important to remember that not all solutions with the same molarity contain the same concentration of solute particles. Consider, for example, 0.01 M aqueous solutions of sucrose, NaCl, and $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$. Because sucrose dissolves to give a solution of neutral molecules, the concentration of solute particles in a 0.01 M sucrose solution is 0.01 M. In contrast, both NaCl and $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$ are ionic compounds that dissociate in water to yield solvated ions. As a result, a 0.01 M aqueous solution of NaCl contains 0.01 M $\mathrm{Na^+}$ ions and 0.01 M $\mathrm{Cl^-}$ ions, for a total particle concentration of 0.02 M. Similarly, the $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$ solution contains 0.01 M $\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}$ ions and 0.02 M $\mathrm{Cl^-}$ ions, for a total particle concentration of 0.03 M. These values are correct for dilute solutions, where the dissociation of the compounds to form separately solvated ions is complete.

At **higher concentrations** (typically >1 M), especially with salts of small, highly charged ions (such as $\mathrm{Mg^{2+}}$ or $\mathrm{Al^{3+}}$), or in solutions with less polar solvents, dissociation to give separate ions is often incomplete. The sum of the concentrations of the dissolved solute particles dictates the physical properties of a solution. In the following discussion, we must therefore keep the chemical nature of the solute firmly in mind.

Vapor Pressure of Solutions and Raoult’s Law

Adding a nonvolatile solute, one whose vapor pressure is too low to measure readily, to a volatile solvent decreases the vapor pressure of the solvent. We can understand this phenomenon qualitatively by examining Figure $2.5.1$, which is a schematic diagram of the surface of a solution of glucose in water. In an aqueous solution of glucose, a portion of the surface area is occupied by nonvolatile glucose molecules rather than by volatile water molecules. As a result, fewer water molecules can enter the vapor phase per unit time, even though the surface water molecules have the same kinetic energy distribution as they would in pure water. At the same time, the rate at which water molecules in the vapor phase collide with the surface and reenter the solution is unaffected. The net effect is to shift the dynamic equilibrium between water in the vapor and the liquid phases, decreasing the vapor pressure of the solution compared with the vapor pressure of the pure solvent.

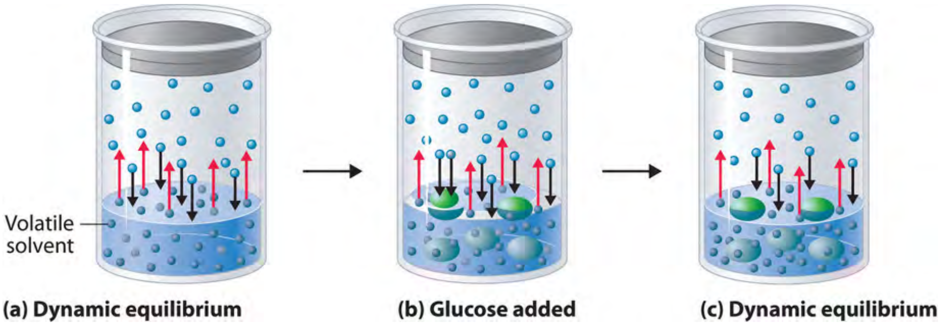


Figure 2.5.1: A Model Depicting Why the Vapor Pressure of a Solution of Glucose Is Less Than the Vapor Pressure of Pure Water. (a) When water or any volatile solvent is in a closed container, water molecules move into and out of the liquid phase at the same rate in a dynamic equilibrium. (b) If a nonvolatile solute such as glucose is added, some fraction of the surface area is occupied by solvated solute molecules. As a result, the rate at which water molecules evaporate is decreased, although initially their rate of condensation is unchanged. (c) When the glucose solution reaches equilibrium, the concentration of water molecules in the vapor phase, and hence the vapor pressure, is less than that of pure water.

Figure 2.5.2 shows two beakers, one containing pure water and one containing an aqueous glucose solution, in a sealed chamber. We can view the system as having two competing equilibria: water vapor will condense in both beakers at the same rate, but water molecules will evaporate more slowly from the glucose solution because fewer water molecules are at the surface. Eventually all of the water will evaporate from the beaker containing the liquid with the higher vapor pressure (pure water) and condense in the beaker containing the liquid with the lower vapor pressure (the glucose solution). If the system consisted of only a beaker of water inside a sealed container, equilibrium between the liquid and vapor would be achieved rather rapidly, and the amount of liquid water in the beaker would remain constant.

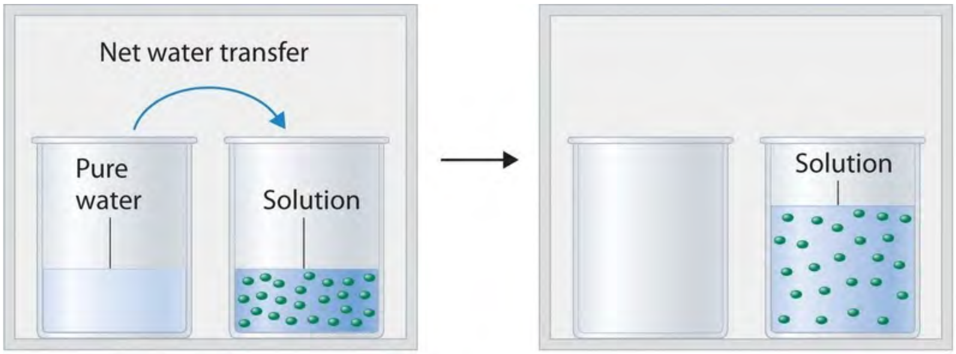


Figure 2.5.2: Transfer of Water to a Beaker Containing a Glucose Solution. (top) One beaker contains an aqueous solution of glucose, and the other contains pure water. If they are placed in a sealed chamber, the lower vapor pressure of water in the glucose solution results in a net transfer of water from the beaker containing pure water to the beaker containing the glucose solution. (bottom) Eventually, all of the water is transferred to the beaker that has the glucose solution.

If the particles of a solute are essentially the same size as those of the solvent and both solute and solvent have roughly equal probabilities of being at the surface of the solution, then the effect of a solute on the vapor pressure of the solvent is proportional to the number of sites occupied by solute particles at the surface of the solution. Doubling the concentration of a given solute causes twice as many surface sites to be occupied by solute molecules, resulting in twice the decrease in vapor pressure. The relationship between solution composition and vapor pressure is therefore

$$P_A = \chi_A P^0_A \tag{2.5.1}$$

where P_A is the vapor pressure of component A of the solution (in this case the solvent), χ_A is the mole fraction of A in solution, and P^0_A is the vapor pressure of pure A. Equation 2.5.1 is known as **Raoult's law**, after the French chemist who developed it. If the solution contains only a single nonvolatile solute (B), then $\chi_A + \chi_B = 1$, and we can substitute $\chi_A = 1 - \chi_B$ to obtain

$$P_A = (1 - \chi_B) P^0_A \tag{2.5.2}$$

$$= P^0_A - \chi_B P^0_A \tag{2.5.3}$$

Rearranging and defining $\Delta P_A = P^0_A - P_A$, we obtain a relationship between the decrease in vapor pressure and the mole fraction of nonvolatile solute:

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_A^0 - P_A &= \Delta P_A \qquad (2.5.4)\\
&= \chi_B P_A^0 \qquad (2.5.5)
\end{aligned}
$$

We can solve vapor pressure problems in either of two ways: by using Equation 2.5.1 to calculate the actual vapor pressure above a solution of a nonvolatile solute, or by using Equation 2.5.5 to calculate the decrease in vapor pressure caused by a specified amount of a nonvolatile solute.

✓ Example 2.5.1: Anti-Freeze

Ethylene glycol ($HOCH_2CH_2OH$), the major ingredient in commercial automotive antifreeze, increases the boiling point of radiator fluid by lowering its vapor pressure. At 100°C, the vapor pressure of pure water is 760 mmHg. Calculate the vapor pressure of an aqueous solution containing 30.2% ethylene glycol by mass, a concentration commonly used in climates that do not get extremely cold in winter.

Given: identity of solute, percentage by mass, and vapor pressure of pure solvent

Asked for: vapor pressure of solution

Strategy:

A. Calculate the number of moles of ethylene glycol in an arbitrary quantity of water, and then calculate the mole fraction of water.
B. Use Raoult's law to calculate the vapor pressure of the solution.

Solution:

A A 30.2% solution of ethylene glycol contains 302 g of ethylene glycol per kilogram of solution; the remainder (698 g) is water. To use Raoult's law to calculate the vapor pressure of the solution, we must know the mole fraction of water. Thus we must first calculate the number of moles of both ethylene glycol (EG) and water present:

$$moles\ EG = (302\ \cancel{g})\left(\frac{1\ mol}{62.07\ \cancel{g}}\right) = 4.87\ mol\ EG$$

$$moles\ H_2O = (698\ \cancel{g})\left(\frac{1\ mol}{18.02\ \cancel{g}}\right) = 38.7\ mol\ H_2O$$

The mole fraction of water is thus

$$\chi_{H_2O} = \frac{38.7\ \cancel{mol}\ H_2O}{38.7\ \cancel{mol}\ H_2O + 4.87\ \cancel{mol}\ EG} = 0.888$$

B From Raoult's law (Equation 2.5.1), the vapor pressure of the solution is

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{H_2O} &= (\chi_{H2_O})(P^0_{H_2O})\\
&= (0.888)(760\ mmHg) = 675\ mmHg
\end{aligned}
$$

Alternatively, we could solve this problem by calculating the mole fraction of ethylene glycol and then using Equation 2.5.5 to calculate the resulting decrease in vapor pressure:

$$\chi_{EG} = \frac{4.87\ mol\ EG}{4.87\ mol\ EG + 38.7\ mol\ H_2O} = 0.112$$

$$\Delta P_{H2_O} = (\chi_{EG})(P^0_{H_2O}) = (0.112)(760\ mmHg) = 85.1\ mmHg$$

$$P_{H_2O} = P^0_{H_2O} - \Delta P_{H_2O} = 760\ mmHg - 85.1\ mmHg = 675\ mmHg$$

The same result is obtained using either method.

? Exercise 2.5.1

Seawater is an approximately 3.0% aqueous solution of NaCl by mass with about 0.5% of other salts by mass. Calculate the decrease in the vapor pressure of water at 25°C caused by this concentration of NaCl, remembering that 1 mol of NaCl produces 2 mol of solute particles. The vapor pressure of pure water at 25°C is 23.8 mmHg.

Answer

> 0.45 mmHg. This may seem like a small amount, but it constitutes about a 2% decrease in the vapor pressure of water and accounts in part for the higher humidity in the north-central United States near the Great Lakes, which are freshwater lakes. The decrease therefore has important implications for climate modeling.

Even when a solute is volatile, meaning that it has a measurable vapor pressure, we can still use Raoult's law. In this case, we calculate the vapor pressure of each component separately. The total vapor pressure of the solution (P_{tot}) is the sum of the vapor pressures of the components:

$$P_{tot} = P_A + P_B = \chi_A P^0_A + \chi_B P^0_B \tag{2.5.6}$$

Because $\chi_B = 1 - \chi_A$ for a two-component system,

$$P_{tot} = \chi_A P^0_A + (1-\chi_A) P^0_B \tag{2.5.7}$$

Thus we need to specify the mole fraction of only one of the components in a two-component system. Consider, for example, the vapor pressure of solutions of benzene and toluene of various compositions. At 20°C, the vapor pressures of pure benzene and toluene are 74.7 and 22.3 mmHg, respectively. The vapor pressure of benzene in a benzene–toluene solution is

$$P_{C_6H_6} = \chi_{C_6H_6} P^0_{C_6H_6} \tag{2.5.8}$$

and the vapor pressure of toluene in the solution is

$$PC_6H_5CH_3 = \chi_{C_6H_5CH_3} P^0_{C_6H_5CH3} \tag{2.5.9}$$

Equations 2.5.8 and 2.5.9 are both in the form of the equation for a straight line: $y = mx + b$, where $b = 0$. Plots of the vapor pressures of both components versus the mole fractions are therefore straight lines that pass through the origin, as shown in Figure 2.5.3. Furthermore, a plot of the total vapor pressure of the solution versus the mole fraction is a straight line that represents the sum of the vapor pressures of the pure components. Thus the vapor pressure of the solution is always greater than the vapor pressure of either component.

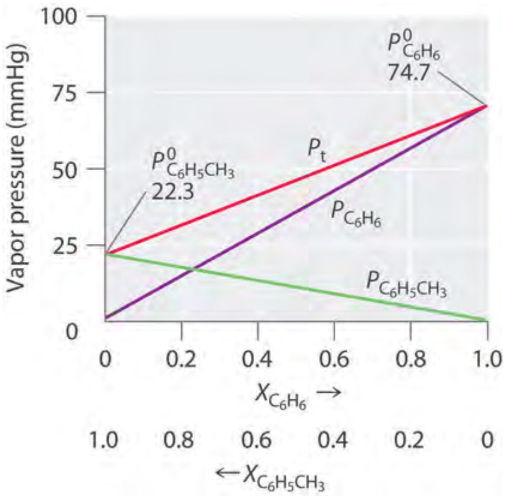


Figure 2.5.3: Vapor Pressures of Benzene–Toluene Solutions. Plots of the vapor pressures of benzene (C_6H_6) and toluene ($C_6H_5CH_3$) versus the mole fractions at 20°C are straight lines. For a solution like this, which approximates an ideal solution, the total vapor pressure of the solution (P_{tot}) is the sum of the vapor pressures of the components.

Graph of vapp pressure in mmHg against benzene and toulen mole fractions. Benzene mole fractions increase from left to right while toluene mole fractions decrease from left to right on the x axis.

A solution of two volatile components that behaves like the solution in Figure $2.5.3$, which is defined as a solution that obeys Raoult's law. Like an ideal gas, an ideal solution is a hypothetical system whose properties can be described in terms of a simple model. Mixtures of benzene and toluene approximate an ideal solution because the intermolecular forces in the two pure liquids are almost identical in both kind and magnitude. Consequently, the change in enthalpy on solution formation is essentially zero ($\Delta H_{soln} \approx 0$), which is one of the defining characteristics of an ideal solution.

> Ideal solutions and ideal gases are both simple models that ignore intermolecular interactions.

Most real solutions, however, do not obey Raoult's law precisely, just as most real gases do not obey the ideal gas law exactly. Real solutions generally deviate from Raoult's law because the intermolecular interactions between the two components A and B differ. We can distinguish between two general kinds of behavior, depending on whether the intermolecular interactions between molecules A and B are stronger or weaker than the A–A and B–B interactions in the pure components. If the A–B interactions are stronger than the A–A and B–B interactions, each component of the solution exhibits a lower vapor pressure than expected for an ideal solution, as does the solution as a whole. The favorable A–B interactions effectively stabilize the solution compared with the vapor. This kind of behavior is called a negative deviation from Raoult's law. Systems stabilized by hydrogen bonding between two molecules, such as acetone and ethanol, exhibit **negative deviations** from Raoult's law. Conversely, if the A–B interactions are weaker than the A–A and B–B interactions yet the entropy increase is enough to allow the solution to form, both A and B have an increased tendency to escape from the solution into the vapor phase. The result is a higher vapor pressure than expected for an ideal solution, producing a positive deviation from Raoult's law. In a solution of CCl_4 and methanol, for example, the nonpolar CCl_4 molecules interrupt the extensive hydrogen bonding network in methanol, and the lighter methanol molecules have weaker London dispersion forces than the heavier CCl_4 molecules. Consequently, solutions of CCl_4 and methanol exhibit **positive deviations** from Raoult's law.

✓ Example $2.5.2$

For each system, compare the intermolecular interactions in the pure liquids and in the solution to decide whether the vapor pressure will be greater than that predicted by Raoult's law (positive deviation), approximately equal to that predicted by Raoult's law (an ideal solution), or less than the pressure predicted by Raoult's law (negative deviation).

a. cyclohexane and ethanol
b. methanol and acetone
c. n-hexane and isooctane (2,2,4-trimethylpentane)

Given: identity of pure liquids

Asked for: predicted deviation from Raoult's law (Equation $2.5.1$)

Strategy:

Identify whether each liquid is polar or nonpolar, and then predict the type of intermolecular interactions that occur in solution.

Solution:

a. Liquid ethanol contains an extensive hydrogen bonding network, and cyclohexane is nonpolar. Because the cyclohexane molecules cannot interact favorably with the polar ethanol molecules, they will disrupt the hydrogen bonding. Hence the A–B interactions will be weaker than the A–A and B–B interactions, leading to a higher vapor pressure than predicted by Raoult's law (a positive deviation).
b. Methanol contains an extensive hydrogen bonding network, but in this case the polar acetone molecules create A–B interactions that are stronger than the A–A or B–B interactions, leading to a negative enthalpy of solution and a lower vapor pressure than predicted by Raoult's law (a negative deviation).
c. Hexane and isooctane are both nonpolar molecules (isooctane actually has a very small dipole moment, but it is so small that it can be ignored). Hence the predominant intermolecular forces in both liquids are London dispersion forces. We expect the A–B interactions to be comparable in strength to the A–A and B–B interactions, leading to a vapor pressure in good agreement with that predicted by Raoult's law (an ideal solution).

? Exercise 2.5.2

For each system, compare the intermolecular interactions in the pure liquids with those in the solution to decide whether the vapor pressure will be greater than that predicted by Raoult’s law (positive deviation), approximately equal to that predicted by Raoult’s law (an ideal solution), or less than the pressure predicted by Raoult’s law (negative deviation):

a. benzene and n-hexane
b. ethylene glycol and CCl_4
c. acetic acid and n-propanol

Answer a

approximately equal

Answer b

positive deviation (vapor pressure greater than predicted)

Answer c

negative deviation (vapor pressure less than predicted)

A Video Discussing Roult's Law. Video Link: Introduction to the Vapor Pressure of a Solution (Raoult's Law), YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

A Video Discussing How to find the Vapor Pressure of a Solution. Video Link: Finding the Vapor Pressure of a Solution (Nonionic-Nonvolatile Solute), YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Boiling Point Elevation

Recall that the normal boiling point of a substance is the temperature at which the vapor pressure equals 1 atm. If a nonvolatile solute lowers the vapor pressure of a solvent, it must also affect the boiling point. Because the vapor pressure of the solution at a given temperature is less than the vapor pressure of the pure solvent, achieving a vapor pressure of 1 atm for the solution requires a higher temperature than the normal boiling point of the solvent. Thus the boiling point of a solution is always greater than that of the pure solvent. We can see why this must be true by comparing the phase diagram for an aqueous solution with the phase diagram for pure water (Figure $2.5.4$). The vapor pressure of the solution is less than that of pure water at all temperatures. Consequently, the liquid–vapor curve for the solution crosses the horizontal line corresponding to P = 1 atm at a higher temperature than does the curve for pure water.

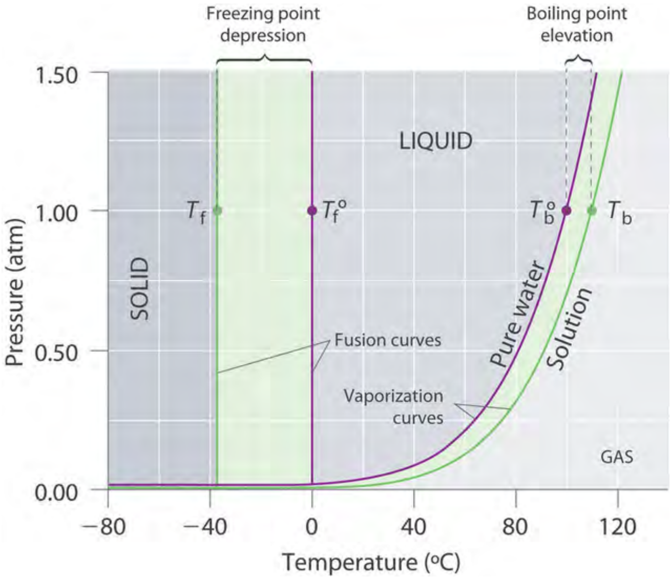


Figure $2.5.4$: Phase Diagrams of Pure Water and an Aqueous Solution of a Nonvolatile Solute. The vaporization curve for the solution lies below the curve for pure water at all temperatures, which results in an increase in the boiling point and a decrease in the freezing point of the solution.

> *The boiling point of a solution with a nonvolatile solute is **always** greater than the boiling point of the pure solvent.*

The magnitude of the increase in the boiling point is related to the magnitude of the decrease in the vapor pressure. As we have just discussed, the decrease in the vapor pressure is proportional to the concentration of the solute in the solution. Hence the magnitude of the increase in the boiling point must also be proportional to the concentration of the solute (Figure $2.5.5$).

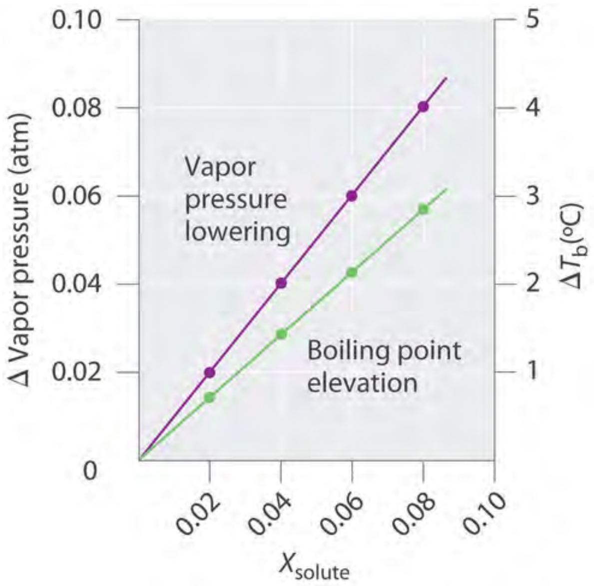


Figure 2.5.5: Vapor Pressure Decrease and Boiling Point Increase as Functions of the Mole Fraction of a Nonvolatile Solute

Change in vapor pressure in atm in on the left side y axis while change in temperature is on the right side y axis. These are being plotted against mole fraction of solute.

We can define the boiling point elevation (ΔT_b) as the difference between the boiling points of the solution and the pure solvent:

$$\Delta T_b = T_b - T_b^0 \tag{2.5.10}$$

where T_b is the boiling point of the solution and T_b^0 is the boiling point of the pure solvent. We can express the relationship between ΔT_b and concentration as follows

$$\Delta T_b = mK_b \tag{2.5.11}$$

where m is the concentration of the solute expressed in molality, and K_b is the **molal boiling point elevation constant** of the solvent, which has units of °C/m. Table $2.5.1$ lists characteristic K_b values for several commonly used solvents. For relatively dilute solutions, the magnitude of both properties is proportional to the solute concentration.

Table $2.5.1$: Boiling Point Elevation Constants (K_b) and Freezing Point Depression Constants (K_f) for Some Solvents

Solvent	Boiling Point (°C)	K_b (°C/m)	Freezing Point (°C)	K_f (°C/m)
acetic acid	117.90	3.22	16.64	3.63
benzene	80.09	2.64	5.49	5.07
d-(+)-camphor	207.4	4.91	178.8	37.8
carbon disulfide	46.2	2.42	−112.1	3.74
carbon tetrachloride	76.8	5.26	−22.62	31.4
chloroform	61.17	3.80	−63.41	4.60
nitrobenzene	210.8	5.24	5.70	6.87
water	100.00	0.51	0.00	1.86

The concentration of the solute is typically expressed as molality rather than mole fraction or molarity for two reasons. First, because the density of a solution changes with temperature, the value of molarity also varies with temperature. If the boiling point depends on the solute concentration, then by definition the system is not maintained at a constant temperature. Second, molality and mole fraction are proportional for relatively dilute solutions, but molality has a larger numerical value (a mole fraction can be only between zero and one). Using molality allows us to eliminate nonsignificant zeros.

According to Table $2.5.1$, the molal boiling point elevation constant for water is 0.51°C/m. Thus a 1.00 m aqueous solution of a nonvolatile molecular solute such as glucose or sucrose will have an increase in boiling point of 0.51°C, to give a boiling point of 100.51°C at 1.00 atm. The increase in the boiling point of a 1.00 m aqueous $NaCl$ solution will be approximately twice as large as that of the glucose or sucrose solution because 1 mol of NaCl produces 2 mol of dissolved ions. Hence a 1.00 m NaCl solution will have a boiling point of about 101.02°C.

✓ Example 2.5.3

In Example 2.5.1, we calculated that the vapor pressure of a 30.2% aqueous solution of ethylene glycol at 100°C is 85.1 mmHg less than the vapor pressure of pure water. We stated (without offering proof) that this should result in a higher boiling point for the solution compared with pure water. Now that we have seen why this assertion is correct, calculate the boiling point of the aqueous ethylene glycol solution.

Given: composition of solution

Asked for: boiling point

Strategy:

Calculate the molality of ethylene glycol in the 30.2% solution. Then use Equation 2.5.11 to calculate the increase in boiling point.

Solution:

From Example 2.5.1, we know that a 30.2% solution of ethylene glycol in water contains 302 g of ethylene glycol (4.87 mol) per 698 g of water. The molality of the solution is thus

$$\text{molality of ethylene glycol} = \left(\frac{4.87\ mol}{698\ \cancel{g}\ H_2O}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ \cancel{g}}{1\ kg}\right) = 6.98\,m$$

From Equation 2.5.11, the increase in boiling point is therefore

$$\Delta T_b = mK_b = (6.98\ \cancel{m})(0.51^\circ C/\ \cancel{m}) = 3.6^\circ C$$

The boiling point of the solution is thus predicted to be 104°C. With a solute concentration of almost 7 m, however, the assumption of a dilute solution used to obtain Equation 2.5.11 may not be valid.

? Exercise 2.5.3

Assume that a tablespoon (5.00 g) of NaCl is added to 2.00 L of water at 20.0°C, which is then brought to a boil to cook spaghetti. At what temperature will the water boil?

Answer

> 100.04°C, or 100°C to three significant figures. (Recall that 1 mol of NaCl produces 2 mol of dissolved particles. The small increase in temperature means that adding salt to the water used to cook pasta has essentially no effect on the cooking time.)

A Video Discussing Boiling Point Elevation and Freezing Point Depression. Video Link: Boiling Point Elevation and Freezing Point Depression, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be] (opens in new window)

Freezing Point Depression

The phase diagram in Figure $2.5.4$ shows that dissolving a nonvolatile solute in water not only raises the boiling point of the water but also lowers its freezing point. The solid–liquid curve for the solution crosses the line corresponding to $P = 1\, atm$ at a lower temperature than the curve for pure water.

We can understand this result by imagining that we have a sample of water at the normal freezing point temperature, where there is a dynamic equilibrium between solid and liquid. Water molecules are continuously colliding with the ice surface and entering the solid phase at the same rate that water molecules are leaving the surface of the ice and entering the liquid phase. If we dissolve a nonvolatile solute such as glucose in the liquid, the dissolved glucose molecules will reduce the number of collisions per unit time between water molecules and the ice surface because some of the molecules colliding with the ice will be glucose. Glucose, though, has a very different structure than water, and it cannot fit into the ice lattice. Consequently, the presence of glucose molecules in the solution can only decrease the rate at which water molecules in the liquid collide with the ice surface and solidify. Meanwhile, the rate at which the water molecules leave the surface of the ice and enter the liquid phase is unchanged. The net effect is to cause the ice to melt. The only way to reestablish a dynamic equilibrium between solid and liquid water is to lower the temperature of the system, which decreases the rate at which water molecules leave the surface of the ice crystals until it equals the rate at which water molecules in the solution collide with the ice.

By analogy to our treatment of boiling point elevation,the freezing point depression (ΔT_f) is defined as the difference between the freezing point of the pure solvent and the freezing point of the solution:

$$\Delta T_f = T_f^0 - T_f \tag{2.5.12}$$

where T_f^0 is the freezing point of the pure solvent and T_f is the freezing point of the solution.

The order of the terms is reversed compared with Equation $2.5.10$ to express the freezing point depression as a positive number. The relationship between ΔT_f and the solute concentration is given by an equation analogous to Equation $2.5.11$:

$$\Delta T_f = mK_f \tag{2.5.13}$$

where m is the molality of the solution and K_f is the molal freezing point depression constant for the solvent (in units of °C/m).

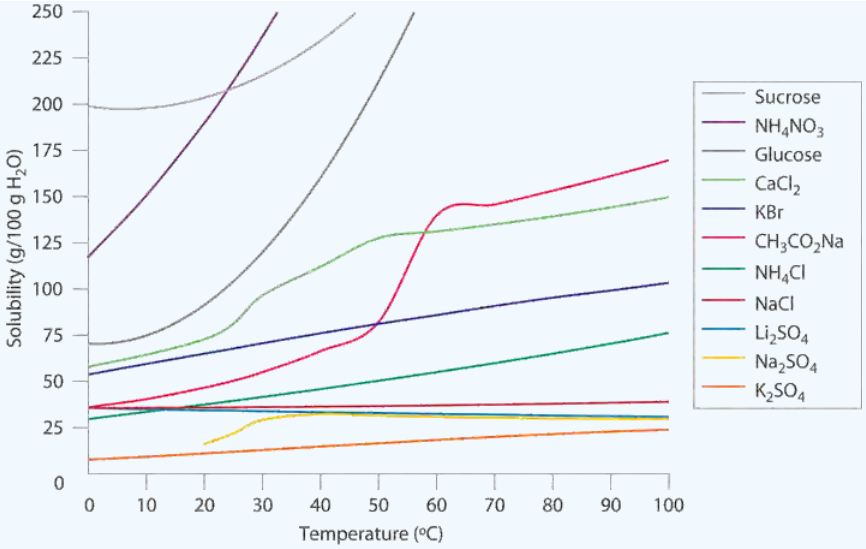
Like K_b, each solvent has a characteristic value of K_f (see Table $2.5.1$). Freezing point depression depends on the total number of dissolved nonvolatile solute particles, just as with boiling point elevation. Thus an aqueous NaCl solution has twice as large a freezing point depression as a glucose solution of the same molality.

People who live in cold climates use freezing point depression to their advantage in many ways. For example, salt is used to melt ice and snow on roads and sidewalks, ethylene glycol is added to engine coolant water to prevent an automobile engine from being destroyed, and methanol is added to windshield washer fluid to prevent the fluid from freezing.

> The decrease in vapor pressure, increase in boiling point, and decrease in freezing point of a solution versus a pure liquid all depend on the total number of dissolved nonvolatile solute particles.

✓ Example 2.5.4: Salting the Roads

In colder regions of the United States, NaCl or $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$ is often sprinkled on icy roads in winter to melt the ice and make driving safer. Use the data in the Figure below to estimate the concentrations of two saturated solutions at 0°C, one of NaCl and one of $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$, and calculate the freezing points of both solutions to see which salt is likely to be more effective at melting ice.



Solubilities of Several Inorganic and Organic Solids in Water as a Function of Temperature. Solubility may increase or decrease with temperature; the magnitude of this temperature dependence varies widely among compounds.

Graph of solubility against temperature. Plots of sucrose, NH4NO3, glucose, CaCl2, KBr, CH3CO2Na, NH4Cl, NaCl, Li2SO4, Na2SO4, K2SO4.

Given: solubilities of two compounds

Asked for: concentrations and freezing points

Strategy:

A. Estimate the solubility of each salt in 100 g of water from the figure. Determine the number of moles of each in 100 g and calculate the molalities.
B. Determine the concentrations of the dissolved salts in the solutions. Substitute these values into Equation 2.5.13to calculate the freezing point depressions of the solutions.

Solution:

A From Figure above, we can estimate the solubilities of NaCl and $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$ to be about 36 g and 60 g, respectively, per 100 g of water at 0°C. The corresponding concentrations in molality are

$$m_{NaCl} = \left(\frac{36\ \ g\ \cancel{NaCl}}{100\ \ \cancel{g}\ H_2O}\right)\left(\frac{1\ mol\ NaCl}{58.44\ \ g\ \cancel{NaCl}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ \ \cancel{g}}{1\ kg}\right) = 6.2\ m$$

$$m_{CaCl_2} = \left(\frac{60\ \ g\ \cancel{CaCl_2}}{100\ \ \cancel{g}\ H_2O}\right)\left(\frac{1\ mol\ CaCl_2}{110.98\ \ g\ \cancel{CaCl_2}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ \ \cancel{g}}{1kg}\right) = 5.4\ m$$

The lower formula mass of NaCl more than compensates for its lower solubility, resulting in a saturated solution that has a slightly higher concentration than $CaCl_2$.

B Because these salts are ionic compounds that dissociate in water to yield two and three ions per formula unit of NaCl and $CaCl_2$, respectively, the actual concentrations of the dissolved species in the two saturated solutions are 2 × 6.2 m = 12 m for NaCl and 3 × 5.4 m = 16 m for $CaCl_2$. The resulting freezing point depressions can be calculated using Equation 2.5.13:

$$\mathrm{NaCl} : \Delta T_f = mK_f = (12\ \ \cancel{m})(1.86^\circ C/\ \cancel{m}) = 22^\circ C$$

$$\mathrm{CaCl_2} : \Delta T_f = mK_f = (16\ \ \cancel{m})(1.86^\circ C/\ \cancel{m}) = 30^\circ C$$

Because the freezing point of pure water is 0°C, the actual freezing points of the solutions are −22°C and −30°C, respectively. Note that $CaCl_2$ is substantially more effective at lowering the freezing point of water because its solutions contain three ions per formula unit. In fact, $CaCl_2$ is the salt usually sold for home use, and it is also often used on highways.

Because the solubilities of both salts decrease with decreasing temperature, the freezing point can be depressed by only a certain amount, regardless of how much salt is spread on an icy road. If the temperature is significantly below the minimum temperature at which one of these salts will cause ice to melt (say −35°C), there is no point in using salt until it gets warmer

? Exercise $2.5.4$

Calculate the freezing point of the 30.2% solution of ethylene glycol in water whose vapor pressure and boiling point we calculated in Examples $2.5.5$ and $2.5.5$.

Answer

−13.0°C

✓ Example $2.5.5$

Arrange these aqueous solutions in order of decreasing freezing points: 0.1 m KCl, 0.1 m glucose, 0.1 m SrCl2, 0.1 m ethylene glycol, 0.1 m benzoic acid, and 0.1 m HCl.

Given: molalities of six solutions

Asked for: relative freezing points

Strategy:

A. Identify each solute as a strong, weak, or nonelectrolyte, and use this information to determine the number of solute particles produced.
B. Multiply this number by the concentration of the solution to obtain the effective concentration of solute particles. The solution with the highest effective concentration of solute particles has the largest freezing point depression.

Solution:

A Because the molal concentrations of all six solutions are the same, we must focus on which of the substances are strong electrolytes, which are weak electrolytes, and which are nonelectrolytes to determine the actual numbers of particles in solution. KCl, $\mathrm{SrCl_2}$, and HCl are **strong electrolytes**, producing two, three, and two ions per formula unit, respectively. Benzoic acid is a weak electrolyte (approximately one particle per molecule), and glucose and ethylene glycol are both nonelectrolytes (one particle per molecule).

B The molalities of the solutions in terms of the total particles of solute are: KCl and HCl, 0.2 m; $SrCl_2$, 0.3 m; glucose and ethylene glycol, 0.1 m; and benzoic acid, 0.1–0.2 m. Because the magnitude of the decrease in freezing point is proportional to the concentration of dissolved particles, the order of freezing points of the solutions is: glucose and ethylene glycol (highest freezing point, smallest freezing point depression) > benzoic acid > HCl = KCl > $\mathrm{SrCl_2}$.

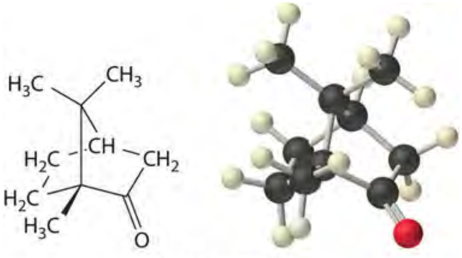
? Exercise $2.5.5$

Arrange these aqueous solutions in order of increasing freezing points: 0.2 m NaCl, 0.3 m acetic acid, 0.1 m $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$, and 0.2 m sucrose.

Answer

0.2 m NaCl (lowest freezing point) < 0.3 m acetic acid ≈ 0.1 m $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$ < 0.2 m sucrose (highest freezing point)

Colligative properties can also be used to determine the molar mass of an unknown compound. One method that can be carried out in the laboratory with minimal equipment is to measure the freezing point of a solution with a known mass of solute. This method is accurate for dilute solutions (≤1% by mass) because changes in the freezing point are usually large enough to measure accurately and precisely. By comparing K_b and K_f values in Table $2.5.1$, we see that changes in the boiling point are smaller than changes in the freezing point for a given solvent. Boiling point elevations are thus more difficult to measure precisely. For this reason, freezing point depression is more commonly used to determine molar mass than is boiling point elevation. Because of its very large value of K_f (37.8°C/m), d-(+)-camphor (Table $2.5.1$) is often used to determine the molar mass of organic compounds by this method.



d-(+)-Camphor

Example 2.5.6: Sulfur

A 7.08 g sample of elemental sulfur is dissolved in 75.0 g of CS_2 to create a solution whose freezing point is −113.5°C. Use these data to calculate the molar mass of elemental sulfur and thus the formula of the dissolved Sn molecules (i.e., what is the value of n?).

Given: masses of solute and solvent and freezing point

Asked for: molar mass and number of S atoms per molecule

Strategy:

A. Use Equation 2.5.12, the measured freezing point of the solution, and the freezing point of CS_2 from Table $2.5.1$ to calculate the freezing point depression. Then use Equation 2.5.13 and the value of K_f from Table $2.5.1$ to calculate the molality of the solution.
B. From the calculated molality, determine the number of moles of solute present.
C. Use the mass and number of moles of the solute to calculate the molar mass of sulfur in solution. Divide the result by the molar mass of atomic sulfur to obtain n, the number of sulfur atoms per mole of dissolved sulfur.

Solution:

A The first step is to calculate the freezing point depression using Equation 2.5.12:

$$\Delta T_f = T_f^0 - T_f = -112.1^\circ C - (-113.5^\circ C) = 1.4^\circ C$$

Then Equation 2.5.13 gives

$$m = \frac{\Delta T_f}{K_f} = \frac{1.4^\circ \cancel{C}}{3.74^\circ \cancel{C}/m} = 0.37\ m$$

B The total number of moles of solute present in the solution is

$$\text{moles solute} = \left(\frac{0.37 mol}{\cancel{kg}}\right)(75.0\ g)\left(\frac{1 kg}{1000\ g}\right) = 0.028\ mol$$

C We now know that 0.708 g of elemental sulfur corresponds to 0.028 mol of solute. The molar mass of dissolved sulfur is thus

$$\text{molar mass} = \frac{7.08\ g}{0.028\ mol} = 260\ g/mol$$

The molar mass of atomic sulfur is 32 g/mol, so there must be 260/32 = 8.1 sulfur atoms per mole, corresponding to a formula of S_8.

? Exercise 2.5.6

One of the byproducts formed during the synthesis of C_{60} is a deep red solid containing only carbon. A solution of 205 mg of this compound in 10.0 g of CCl_4 has a freezing point of −23.38°C. What are the molar mass and most probable formula of the substance?

Answer

847 g/mol; C_{70}

A Video Discussing how to find the Molecular Weight of an Unknown using Colligative Properties. Video Link: Finding the Molecular Weight of an Unknown using Colligative Properties, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Osmotic Pressure

Osmotic pressure is a colligative property of solutions that is observed using a semipermeable membrane, a barrier with pores small enough to allow solvent molecules to pass through but not solute molecules or ions. The net flow of solvent through a semipermeable membrane is called osmosis (from the Greek osmós, meaning “push”). The direction of net solvent flow is always from the side with the lower concentration of solute to the side with the higher concentration.

Osmosis can be demonstrated using a U-tube like the one shown in Figure $2.5.6$, which contains pure water in the left arm and a dilute aqueous solution of glucose in the right arm. A net flow of water through the membrane occurs until the levels in the arms eventually stop changing, which indicates that equilibrium has been reached. The osmotic pressure (Π) of the glucose solution is the difference in the pressure between the two sides, in this case the heights of the two columns. Although the semipermeable membrane allows water molecules to flow through in either direction, the rate of flow is not the same in both directions because the concentration of water is not the same in the two arms. The net flow of water through the membrane can be prevented by applying a pressure to the right arm that is equal to the osmotic pressure of the glucose solution.

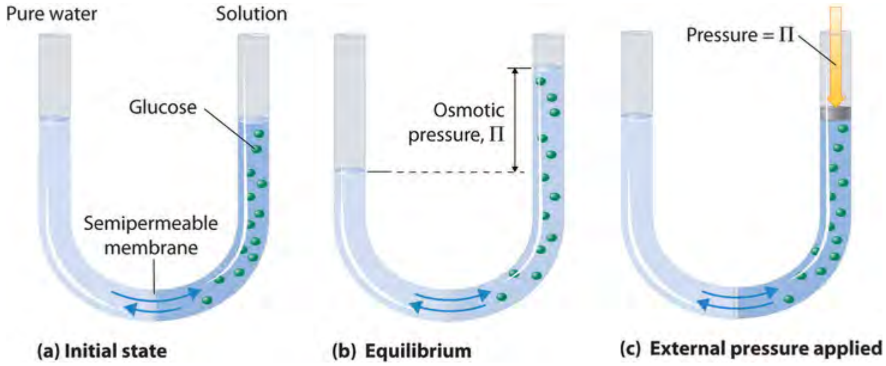


Figure $2.5.6$: Osmotic Pressure. (a) A dilute solution of glucose in water is placed in the right arm of a U-tube, and the left arm is filled to the same height with pure water; a semipermeable membrane separates the two arms. Because the flow of pure solvent through the membrane from left to right (from pure water to the solution) is greater than the flow of solvent in the reverse direction, the level of liquid in the right tube rises. (b) At equilibrium, the pressure differential, equal to the osmotic pressure of the solution (Π_{soln}), equalizes the flow rate of solvent in both directions. (c) Applying an external pressure equal to the osmotic pressure of the original glucose solution to the liquid in the right arm reverses the flow of solvent and restores the original situation.

Just as with any other colligative property, the osmotic pressure of a solution depends on the concentration of dissolved solute particles. Osmotic pressure obeys a law that resembles the ideal gas equation:

$$\Pi = \frac{nRT}{V} = MRT \tag{2.5.14}$$

where M is the number of moles of solute per unit volume of solution (i.e., the molarity of the solution), R is the ideal gas constant, and T is the absolute temperature.

As shown in Example $2.5.7$, osmotic pressures tend to be quite high, even for rather dilute solutions.

✓ Example $2.5.7$

When placed in a concentrated salt solution, certain yeasts are able to produce high internal concentrations of glycerol to counteract the osmotic pressure of the surrounding medium. Suppose that the yeast cells are placed in an aqueous solution containing 4.0% NaCl by mass; the solution density is 1.02 g/mL at 25°C.

a. Calculate the osmotic pressure of a 4.0% aqueous NaCl solution at 25°C.
b. If the normal osmotic pressure inside a yeast cell is 7.3 atm, corresponding to a total concentration of dissolved particles of 0.30 M, what concentration of glycerol must the cells synthesize to exactly balance the external osmotic pressure at 25°C?

Given: concentration, density, and temperature of NaCl solution; internal osmotic pressure of cell

Asked for: osmotic pressure of NaCl solution and concentration of glycerol needed

Strategy:

A. Calculate the molarity of the NaCl solution using the formula mass of the solute and the density of the solution. Then calculate the total concentration of dissolved particles.
B. Use Equation 2.5.14 to calculate the osmotic pressure of the solution.
C. Subtract the normal osmotic pressure of the cells from the osmotic pressure of the salt solution to obtain the additional pressure needed to balance the two. Use Equation 2.5.14 to calculate the molarity of glycerol needed to create this osmotic pressure.

Solution:

A The solution contains 4.0 g of NaCl per 100 g of solution. Using the formula mass of NaCl (58.44 g/mol) and the density of the solution (1.02 g/mL), we can calculate the molarity:

$$\begin{aligned} M_{NaCl} &= \frac{moles\ NaCl}{\text{liter solution}} \\ &= \left(\frac{4.0\ \cancel{g}\ NaCl}{58.44\ \cancel{g}/mol\ NaCl}\right)\left(\frac{1}{100\ \cancel{g\ solution}}\right)\left(\frac{1.02\ \cancel{g\ solution}}{1.00\ \cancel{mL}\ solution}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ \cancel{mL}}{1\ L}\right) \\ &= 0.70\ M\ \text{NaCl} \end{aligned}$$

Because 1 mol of NaCl produces 2 mol of particles in solution, the total concentration of dissolved particles in the solution is (2)(0.70 M) = 1.4 M.

B Now we can use Equation 2.5.14 to calculate the osmotic pressure of the solution:

$$\begin{aligned} \Pi &= MRT \\ &= (1.4\ mol/L)\,[0.0821\ (L\cdot atm)/(K\cdot mol)]\,(298\ K) \\ &= 34\ atm \end{aligned}$$

C If the yeast cells are to exactly balance the external osmotic pressure, they must produce enough glycerol to give an additional internal pressure of (34 atm − 7.3 atm) = 27 atm. Glycerol is a nonelectrolyte, so we can solve Equation 2.5.14 for the molarity corresponding to this osmotic pressure:

$$\begin{aligned} M &= \frac{\Pi}{RT} \\ &= \frac{27\ \cancel{atm}}{[0.0821(L\cdot\ \cancel{atm})/(\ \cancel{K}\cdot mol)](298\ \cancel{K})} \\ &= 1.1\ M\ \text{glycerol} \end{aligned}$$

In solving this problem, we could also have recognized that the only way the osmotic pressures can be the same inside the cells and in the solution is if the concentrations of dissolved particles are the same. We are given that the normal concentration of dissolved particles in the cells is 0.3 M, and we have calculated that the NaCl solution is effectively 1.4 M in dissolved particles. The yeast cells must therefore synthesize enough glycerol to increase the internal concentration of dissolved particles from 0.3 M to 1.4 M—that is, an additional 1.1 M concentration of glycerol.

? Exercise 2.5.7

Assume that the fluids inside a sausage are approximately 0.80 M in dissolved particles due to the salt and sodium nitrite used to prepare them. Calculate the osmotic pressure inside the sausage at 100°C to learn why experienced cooks pierce the semipermeable skin of sausages before boiling them.

Answer

24 atm

Because of the large magnitude of osmotic pressures, osmosis is extraordinarily important in biochemistry, biology, and medicine. Virtually every barrier that separates an organism or cell from its environment acts like a semipermeable membrane, permitting the flow of water but not solutes. The same is true of the compartments inside an organism or cell. Some specialized barriers, such as those in your kidneys, are slightly more permeable and use a related process called dialysis, which permits both water and small molecules to pass through but not large molecules such as proteins.

The same principle has long been used to preserve fruits and their essential vitamins over the long winter. High concentrations of sugar are used in jams and jellies not for sweetness alone but because they greatly increase the osmotic pressure. Thus any bacteria not killed in the cooking process are dehydrated, which keeps them from multiplying in an otherwise rich medium for bacterial growth. A similar process using salt prevents bacteria from growing in ham, bacon, salt pork, salt cod, and other preserved meats. The effect of osmotic pressure is dramatically illustrated in Figure 2.5.7, which shows what happens when red blood cells are placed in a solution whose osmotic pressure is much lower or much higher than the internal pressure of the cells.

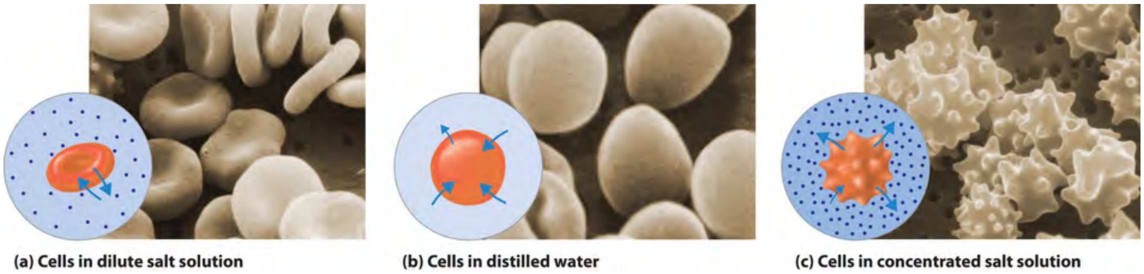


Figure 2.5.7: Effect on Red Blood Cells of the Surrounding Solution's Osmotic Pressure. (a) When red blood cells are placed in a dilute salt solution having the same osmotic pressure as the intracellular fluid, the rate of flow of water into and out of the cells is the same and their shape does not change. (b) When cells are placed in distilled water whose osmotic pressure is less than that of the intracellular fluid, the rate of flow of water into the cells is greater than the rate of flow out of the cells. The cells swell and eventually burst. (c) When cells are placed in a concentrated salt solution with an osmotic pressure greater than that of the intracellular fluid, the rate of flow of water out of the cells is greater than the rate of flow into the cells. The cells shrivel and become so deformed that they cannot function.

In addition to capillary action, trees use osmotic pressure to transport water and other nutrients from the roots to the upper branches. Evaporation of water from the leaves results in a local increase in the salt concentration, which generates an osmotic pressure that pulls water up the trunk of the tree to the leaves.

Finally, a process called reverse osmosis can be used to produce pure water from seawater. As shown schematically in Figure 2.5.8, applying high pressure to seawater forces water molecules to flow through a semipermeable membrane that separates pure water from the solution, leaving the dissolved salt behind. Large-scale desalinization plants that can produce hundreds of thousands of gallons of freshwater per day are common in the desert lands of the Middle East, where they supply a large proportion of the freshwater needed by the population. Similar facilities are now being used to supply freshwater in southern California. Small, hand-operated reverse osmosis units can produce approximately 5 L of freshwater per hour, enough to keep 25 people alive, and are now standard equipment on US Navy lifeboats.

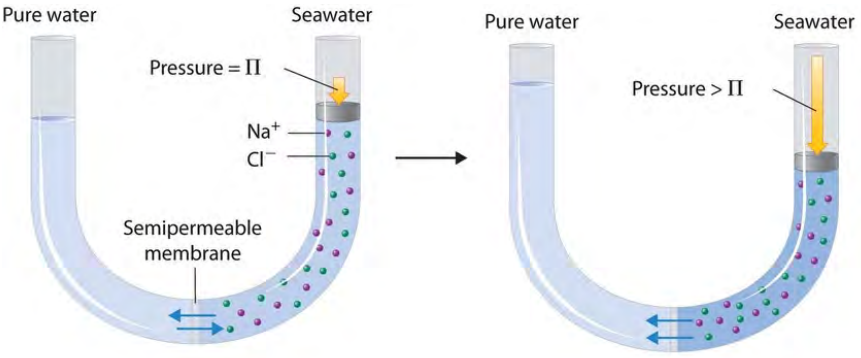


Figure 2.5.8: Desalinization of Seawater by Reverse Osmosis. (top) When the pressure applied to seawater equals its osmotic pressure (Π_{soln}), there is no net flow of water across the semipermeable membrane. (bottom) The application of pressure greater than the osmotic pressure of seawater forces water molecules to flow through the membrane, leaving behind a concentrated salt solution. In desalinization plants, seawater is continuously introduced under pressure and pure water is collected, so the process continues indefinitely.

A Video Discussing Osmotic Pressure. Video Link: Osmotic Pressure, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be] (opens in new window)

Colligative Properties of Electrolyte Solutions

Thus far we have assumed that we could simply multiply the molar concentration of a solute by the number of ions per formula unit to obtain the actual concentration of dissolved particles in an electrolyte solution. We have used this simple model to predict such properties as freezing points, melting points, vapor pressure, and osmotic pressure. If this model were perfectly correct, we would expect the freezing point depression of a 0.10 m solution of sodium chloride, with 2 mol of ions per mole of $NaCl$ in solution, to be exactly twice that of a 0.10 m solution of glucose, with only 1 mol of molecules per mole of glucose in solution. In reality, this is not always the case. Instead, the observed change in freezing points for 0.10 m aqueous solutions of $NaCl$ and KCl are significantly less than expected (−0.348°C and −0.344°C, respectively, rather than −0.372°C), which suggests that fewer particles than we expected are present in solution.

The relationship between the actual number of moles of solute added to form a solution and the apparent number as determined by colligative properties is called the van't Hoff factor (i) and is defined as follows:

$$i = \frac{\text{apparent number of particles in solution}}{\text{number of moles of solute dissolved}} \tag{2.5.15}$$

Named for Jacobus Hendricus van't Hoff (1852–1911), a Dutch chemistry professor at the University of Amsterdam who won the first Nobel Prize in Chemistry (1901) for his work on thermodynamics and solutions.

> *As the solute concentration increases, the van't Hoff factor decreases.*

The van't Hoff factor is therefore **a measure of a deviation from ideal behavior**. The lower the van't Hoff factor, the greater the deviation. As the data in Table $2.5.2$ show, the van't Hoff factors for ionic compounds are somewhat lower than expected; that is, their solutions apparently contain fewer particles than predicted by the number of ions per formula unit. As the concentration of the solute increases, the van’t Hoff factor decreases because ionic compounds generally do not totally dissociate in aqueous solution.

Table $2.5.2$: van’t Hoff Factors for 0.0500 M Aqueous Solutions of Selected Compounds at 25°C

Compound	i (measured)	i (ideal)
glucose	1.0	1.0
sucrose	1.0	1.0
$NaCl$	1.9	2.0
HCl	1.9	2.0
$MgCl_2$	2.7	3.0
$FeCl_3$	3.4	4.0
$Ca(NO_3)_2$	2.5	3.0
$AlCl_3$	3.2	4.0
$MgSO_4$	1.4	2.0

Instead, some of the ions exist as ion pairs, a cation and an anion that for a brief time are associated with each other without an intervening shell of water molecules (Figure $2.5.9$). Each of these temporary units behaves like a single dissolved particle until it dissociates. Highly charged ions such as Mg^{2+}, Al^{3+}, SO_4^{2-}, and PO_4^{3-} have a greater tendency to form ion pairs because of their strong electrostatic interactions. The actual number of solvated ions present in a solution can be determined by measuring a colligative property at several solute concentrations.

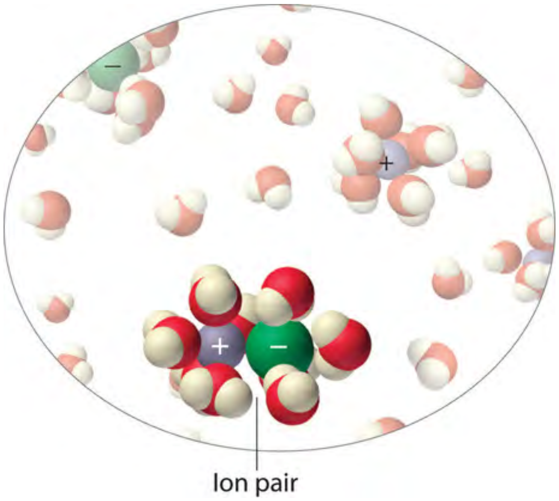


Figure $2.5.9$: Ion Pairs. In concentrated solutions of electrolytes like $NaCl$, some of the ions form neutral ion pairs that are not separated by solvent and diffuse as single particles.

✓ Example $2.5.8$: Iron Chloride in Water

A 0.0500 M aqueous solution of $FeCl_3$ has an osmotic pressure of 4.15 atm at 25°C. Calculate the van’t Hoff factor i for the solution.

Given: solute concentration, osmotic pressure, and temperature

Asked for: van’t Hoff factor

Strategy:

A. Use Equation $2.5.14$ to calculate the expected osmotic pressure of the solution based on the effective concentration of dissolved particles in the solvent.
B. Calculate the ratio of the observed osmotic pressure to the expected value. Multiply this number by the number of ions of solute per formula unit, and then use Equation $2.5.15$ to calculate the van’t Hoff factor.

Solution:

A If $\mathrm{FeCl_3}$ dissociated completely in aqueous solution, it would produce four ions per formula unit [Fe3+(aq) plus 3Cl−(aq)] for an effective concentration of dissolved particles of 4 × 0.0500 M = 0.200 M. The osmotic pressure would be

$$\begin{aligned}\Pi &= MRT \\ &= (0.200\ mol/L)\,[0.0821\ (L\cdot atm)/(K\cdot mol)]\,(298\ K) = 4.89\ atm\end{aligned}$$

B The observed osmotic pressure is only 4.15 atm, presumably due to ion pair formation. The ratio of the observed osmotic pressure to the calculated value is 4.15 atm/4.89 atm = 0.849, which indicates that the solution contains (0.849)(4) = 3.40 particles per mole of $\mathrm{FeCl_3}$ dissolved. Alternatively, we can calculate the observed particle concentration from the osmotic pressure of 4.15 atm:

$$4.15\ atm = M\left(\frac{0.0821\ (L\cdot atm)}{(K\cdot mol)}\right)(298\ K)$$

or after rearranging

$$M = 0.170 mol$$

The ratio of this value to the expected value of 0.200 M is 0.170 M/0.200 M = 0.850, which again gives us (0.850)(4) = 3.40 particles per mole of $\mathrm{FeCl_3}$ dissolved. From Equation 2.5.15, the van't Hoff factor for the solution is

$$i = \frac{3.40 \text{ particles observed}}{1 \text{ formula unit } \mathrm{FeCl_3}} = 3.40$$

? Exercise 2.5.8: Magnesium Chloride in Water

Calculate the van't Hoff factor for a 0.050 m aqueous solution of $MgCl_2$ that has a measured freezing point of −0.25°C.

Answer

2.7 (versus an ideal value of 3).

A Video Discussing the Colligative Properties in Solutions. Video Link: Colligative Properties in Solutions, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

The colligative properties of a solution depend on only the total number of dissolved particles in solution, not on their chemical identity. Colligative properties include vapor pressure, boiling point, freezing point, and osmotic pressure. The addition of a nonvolatile solute (one without a measurable vapor pressure) decreases the vapor pressure of the solvent. The vapor pressure of the solution is proportional to the mole fraction of solvent in the solution, a relationship known as **Raoult's law**. Solutions that obey Raoult's law are called ideal solutions. Most real solutions exhibit positive or negative deviations from Raoult's law. The boiling point elevation (ΔT_b) and freezing point depression (ΔT_f) of a solution are defined as the differences between the boiling and freezing points, respectively, of the solution and the pure solvent. Both are proportional to the molality of the solute. When a solution and a pure solvent are separated by a semipermeable membrane, a barrier that allows solvent molecules but not solute molecules to pass through, the flow of solvent in opposing directions is unequal and produces an osmotic pressure, which is the difference in pressure between the two sides of the membrane. Osmosis is the net flow of solvent through such a membrane due to different solute concentrations. Dialysis uses a semipermeable membrane with pores that allow only small solute molecules and solvent molecules to pass through. In more concentrated solutions, or in solutions of salts with highly charged ions, the cations and anions can associate to form ion pairs, which decreases their effect on the colligative properties of the solution. The extent of ion pair formation is given by the van’t Hoff factor (i), the ratio of the apparent number of particles in solution to the number predicted by the stoichiometry of the salt.

- **Henry’s law:**

$$C = kP$$

- **Raoult’s law**:

$$P_A = \chi_A P_A^0$$

- **vapor pressure lowering**:

$$P_A^0 - P_A = \Delta P_A = \chi_B P_A^0$$

- **vapor pressure of a system containing two volatile components**:

$$P_{tot} = \chi_A P_A^0 + (1 - \chi_A) P_B^0$$

- **boiling point elevation**:

$$\Delta T_b = mK_b$$

- **freezing point depression:**

$$\Delta T_f = mK_f$$

- **osmotic pressure**:

$$\Pi = nRTV = MRT$$

- **van ’t Hoff factor**:

$$i = \frac{\text{apparent number of particles in solution}}{\text{number of moles of solute dissolved}}$$

2.6: The Colligative Properties of Strong Electrolyte Solutions

Learning Objectives

- To understand the factors that determine the solubility of ionic compounds.

The solubility product of an ionic compound describes the concentrations of ions in equilibrium with a solid, but what happens if some of the cations become associated with anions rather than being completely surrounded by solvent? Then predictions of the total solubility of the compound based on the assumption that the solute exists solely as discrete ions would differ substantially from the actual solubility, as would predictions of ionic concentrations. In general, four situations explain why the solubility of a compound may be other than expected: ion pair formation, the incomplete dissociation of molecular solutes, the formation of complex ions, and changes in pH.

Ion-Pair Formation

An **ion pair** consists of a cation and an anion that are in intimate contact in solution, rather than separated by solvent (Figure 2.6.1). The ions in an ion pair are held together by the same attractive electrostatic force in ionic solids. As a result, the ions in an ion pair migrate as a single unit, whose net charge is the sum of the charges on the ions. In many ways, we can view an ion pair as a species intermediate between the ionic solid (in which each ion participates in many cation–anion interactions that hold the ions in a rigid array) and the completely dissociated ions in solution (where each is fully surrounded by water molecules and free to migrate independently).

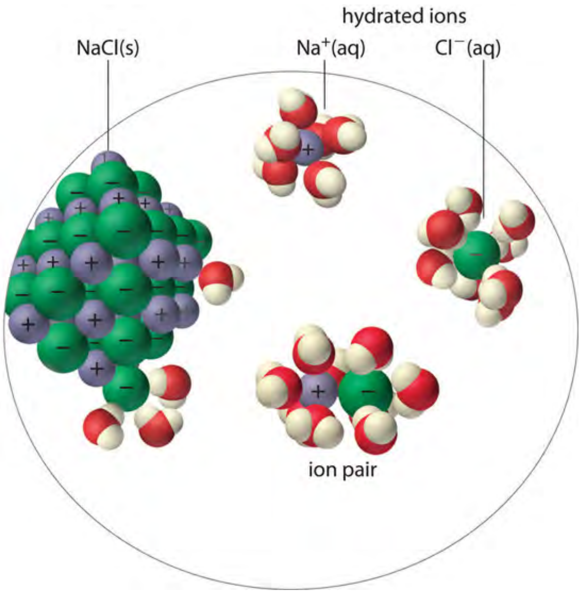


Figure 2.6.1: Ion-Pair Formation. In an ion pair, the cation and the anion are in intimate contact in solution and migrate as a single unit. They are not completely dissociated and individually surrounded by solvent molecules, as are the hydrated ions, which are free to migrate independently.

As illustrated for calcium sulfate in the following equation, a second equilibrium must be included to describe the solubility of salts that form ion pairs:

$$\mathrm{CaSO_4(s)} \rightleftharpoons \underbrace{\mathrm{Ca^{2+} \cdot SO_4^{2-}(aq)}}_{\text{ion pair}} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ca^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq)} \tag{2.6.1}$$

The ion pair is represented by the symbols of the individual ions separated by a dot, which indicates that they are associated in solution. The formation of an ion pair is a dynamic process, just like any other equilibrium, so a particular ion pair may exist only briefly before dissociating into the free ions, each of which may later associate briefly with other ions.

Ion-pair formation can have a major effect on the measured solubility of a salt. For example, the measured K_{sp} for calcium sulfate is 4.93 × 10^{-5} at 25°C. The solubility of $CaSO_4$ should be 7.02 × 10^{-3} M if the only equilibrium involved were as follows:

$$\mathrm{CaSO_4(s) \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq)} \tag{2.6.2}$$

In fact, the experimentally measured solubility of calcium sulfate at 25°C is 1.6 × 10^{-2} M, almost twice the value predicted from its K_{sp}. The reason for the discrepancy is that the concentration of ion pairs in a saturated $\mathrm{CaSO_4}$ solution is almost as high as the concentration of the hydrated ions. Recall that the magnitude of attractive electrostatic interactions is greatest for small, highly charged ions. Hence ion pair formation is most important for salts that contain M^{2+} and M^{3+} ions, such as Ca^{2+} and La^{3+}, and is relatively unimportant for salts that contain monopositive cations, except for the smallest, Li^+. We therefore expect a saturated solution of $\mathrm{CaSO_4}$ to contain a high concentration of ion pairs and its solubility to be greater than predicted from its K_{sp}.

> *The formation of ion pairs increases the solubility of a salt.*

Incomplete Dissociation

A molecular solute may also be more soluble than predicted by the measured concentrations of ions in solution due to incomplete dissociation. This is particularly common with weak organic acids. Although strong acids (HA) dissociate completely into their constituent ions (H^+ and A^-) in water, weak acids such as carboxylic acids do not (K_a = 1.5 × 10^{-5}). However, the molecular (undissociated) form of a weak acid (HA) is often quite soluble in water; for example, acetic acid (CH_3CO_2H) is completely miscible with water. Many carboxylic acids, however, have only limited solubility in water, such as benzoic acid ($C_6H_5CO_2H$), with K_a = 6.25 × 10^{-5}. Just as with calcium sulfate, we need to include an additional equilibrium to describe the solubility of benzoic acid:

$$\mathrm{C_6H_5CO_2H(s) \rightleftharpoons C_6H_5CO_2H(aq) \rightleftharpoons C_6H_5CO_2^-(aq) + H^+(aq)}$$

In a case like this, measuring only the concentration of the ions grossly underestimates the total concentration of the organic acid in solution. In the case of benzoic acid, for example, the pH of a saturated solution at 25°C is 2.85, corresponding to $[H^+]$ = $[C_6H_5CO_2^-]$ = 1.4 × 10^{-3} M. The total concentration of benzoic acid in the solution, however, is 2.8 × 10^{-2} M. Thus approximately 95% of the benzoic acid in solution is in the form of hydrated neutral molecules—$C_6H_5CO_2H_{(aq)}$—and only about 5% is present as the dissociated ions (Figure 2.6.2).

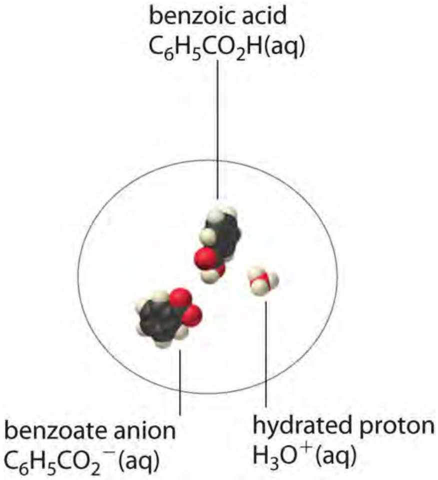


Figure 2.6.2: Incomplete Dissociation of a Molecular Solute. In a saturated solution of benzoic acid in water at 25°C, only about 5% of the dissolved benzoic acid molecules are dissociated to form benzoate anions and hydrated protons. The remaining 95% exists in solution in the form of hydrated neutral molecules. (H_2O molecules are omitted for clarity.)

Although ion pairs, such as $Ca^{2+}\cdot SO_4^{2-}$, and undissociated electrolytes, such as $C_6H_5CO_2H$, are both electrically neutral, there is a major difference in the forces responsible for their formation. Simple electrostatic attractive forces between the cation and the anion hold the ion pair together, whereas a polar covalent O−H bond holds together the undissociated electrolyte.

> *Incomplete dissociation of a molecular solute that is miscible with water can increase the solubility of the solute.*

Complex Ion Formation

Previously, you learned that metal ions in aqueous solution are hydrated—that is, surrounded by a shell of usually four or six water molecules. A hydrated ion is one kind of a **complex ion** (or, simply, complex), a species formed between a central metal ion and one or more surrounding **ligands**, molecules or ions that contain at least one lone pair of electrons, such as the $[Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ ion.

A complex ion forms from a metal ion and a ligand because of a Lewis acid–base interaction. The positively charged metal ion acts as a Lewis acid, and the ligand, with one or more lone pairs of electrons, acts as a Lewis base. Small, highly charged metal ions, such as Cu^{2+} or Ru^{3+}, have the greatest tendency to act as Lewis acids, and consequently, they have the greatest tendency to form complex ions.

As an example of the formation of complex ions, consider the addition of ammonia to an aqueous solution of the hydrated Cu^{2+} ion $\{[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}\}$. Because it is a stronger base than H_2O, ammonia replaces the water molecules in the hydrated ion to form the $[Cu(NH_3)_4(H_2O)_2]^{2+}$ ion. Formation of the $[Cu(NH_3)_4(H_2O)_2]^{2+}$ complex is accompanied by a dramatic color change, as shown in Figure $2.6.1$. The solution changes from the light blue of $[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ to the blue-violet characteristic of the $[Cu(NH_3)_4(H_2O)_2]^{2+}$ ion.

Figure $2.6.3$: The Formation of Complex Ions. An aqueous solution of $CuSO_4$ consists of hydrated Cu^{2+} ions in the form of pale blue $[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ (left). The addition of aqueous ammonia to the solution results in the formation of the intensely blue-violet $[Cu(NH_3)_4(H_2O)_2]^{2+}$ ions, usually written as $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$ ion (right) because ammonia, a stronger base than H_2O, replaces water molecules from the hydrated Cu^{2+} ion. For a more complete description, see www.youtube.com/watch?v=IQNcLH6OZK0.

The Formation Constant

The replacement of water molecules from $[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ by ammonia occurs in sequential steps. Omitting the water molecules bound to \(\ce{Cu^{2+}}\) for simplicity, we can write the equilibrium reactions as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} Cu^{2+}(aq) + NH_{3(aq)} &\rightleftharpoons [Cu(NH_3)]^{2+}_{(aq)} \qquad K_1 \\ [Cu(NH_3)]^{2+}_{(aq)} + NH_{3(aq)} &\rightleftharpoons [Cu(NH_3)_2]^{2+}_{(aq)} \qquad K_2 \\ [Cu(NH_3)_2]^{2+}_{(aq)} + NH_{3(aq)} &\rightleftharpoons [Cu(NH_3)_3]^{2+}_{(aq)} \qquad K_3 \\ [Cu(NH_3)_3]^{2+}_{(aq)} + NH_{3(aq)} &\rightleftharpoons [Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}_{(aq)} \qquad K_4 \end{aligned}$$

The sum of the stepwise reactions is the overall equation for the formation of the complex ion: The hydrated Cu^{2+} ion contains six H_2O ligands, but the complex ion that is produced contains only four NH_3 ligands, not six.

$$Cu^{2+}(aq) + 4\,NH_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons [Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}(aq) \tag{2.6.3}$$

The equilibrium constant for the formation of the complex ion from the hydrated ion is called the **formation constant** (K_f). The equilibrium constant expression for K_f has the same general form as any other equilibrium constant expression. In this case, the expression is as follows:

$$K_f = \frac{[[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}]}{[Cu^{2+}][NH_3]^4} = 2.1 \times 10^{13} = K_1K_2K_3K_4 \tag{2.6.4}$$

> *The formation constant (K_f) has the same general form as any other equilibrium constant expression.*

Water, a pure liquid, does not appear explicitly in the equilibrium constant expression, and the hydrated Cu^{2+}(aq) ion is represented as Cu^{2+} for simplicity. As for any equilibrium, the larger the value of the equilibrium constant (in this case, K_f), the more stable the product. With $K_f = 2.1 \times 10^{13}$, the $[Cu(NH_3)_4(H_2O)_2]^{2+}$ complex ion is very stable. The formation constants for some common complex ions are listed in Table 2.6.1.

Table 2.6.1: Formation Constants for Selected Complex Ions in Aqueous Solution*

	Complex Ion	Equilibrium Equation	K_f
Ammonia Complexes	$[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$	$Ag^+ + 2NH_3 \rightleftharpoons [Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$	1.1×10^7
	$[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$	$Cu^{2+} + 4NH_3 \rightleftharpoons [Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$	2.1×10^{13}
	$[Ni(NH_3)_6]^{2+}$	$Ni^{2+} + 6NH_3 \rightleftharpoons [Ni(NH_3)_6]^{2+}$	5.5×10^8
Cyanide Complexes	$[Ag(CN)_2]^-$	$Ag^+ + 2CN^- \rightleftharpoons [Ag(CN)_2]^-$	1.1×10^{18}
	$[Ni(CN)_4]^{2-}$	$Ni^{2+} + 4CN^- \rightleftharpoons [Ni(CN)_4]^{2-}$	2.2×10^{31}
	$[Fe(CN)_6]^{3-}$	$Fe^{3+} + 6CN^- \rightleftharpoons [Fe(CN)_6]^{3-}$	1×10^{42}
Hydroxide Complexes	$[Zn(OH)_4]^{2-}$	$Zn^{2+} + 4OH^- \rightleftharpoons [Zn(OH)_4]^{2-}$	4.6×10^{17}
	$[Cr(OH)_4]^-$	$Cr^{3+} + 4OH^- \rightleftharpoons [Cr(OH)_4]^-$	8.0×10^{29}
Halide Complexes	$[HgCl_4]^{2-}$	$Hg^{2+} + 4Cl^- \rightleftharpoons [HgCl_4]^{2-}$	1.2×10^{15}
	$[CdI_4]^{2-}$	$Cd^{2+} + 4I \rightleftharpoons [CdI_4]^{2-}$	2.6×10^5
	$[AlF_6]^{3-}$	$Al^{3+} + 6F^- \rightleftharpoons [AlF_6]^{3-}$	6.9×10^{19}
Other Complexes	$[Ag(S_2O_3)_2]^{3-}$	$Ag^+ + 2S_2O_3^{2-} \rightleftharpoons [Ag(S_2O_3)_2]^{3-}$	2.9×10^{13}
	$[Fe(C_2O_4)_3]^{3-}$	$Fe^{3+} + 3C_2O_4^{2-} \rightleftharpoons [Fe(C_2O_4)_3]^{3-}$	2.0×10^{20}

*Reported values are overall formation constants. Source: Data from *Lange's Handbook of Chemistry*, 15th ed. (1999).

2.6.1 Example

If 12.5 g of $Cu(NO_3)_2 \cdot 6H_2O$ is added to 500 mL of 1.00 M aqueous ammonia, what is the equilibrium concentration of Cu^{2+}(aq)?

Given: mass of Cu^{2+} salt and volume and concentration of ammonia solution

Asked for: equilibrium concentration of Cu^{2+}(aq)

Strategy:

A. Calculate the initial concentration of Cu^{2+} due to the addition of copper(II) nitrate hexahydrate. Use the stoichiometry of the reaction shown in Equation 2.6.3 to construct a table showing the initial concentrations, the changes in concentrations, and the final concentrations of all species in solution.
B. Substitute the final concentrations into the expression for the formation constant (Equation 2.6.4) to calculate the equilibrium concentration of Cu^{2+}(aq).

Solution

Adding an ionic compound that contains Cu^{2+} to an aqueous ammonia solution will result in the formation of $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$(aq), as shown in Equation 2.6.3. We assume that the volume change caused by adding solid copper(II) nitrate to aqueous ammonia is negligible.

A The initial concentration of Cu^{2+} from the amount of added copper nitrate prior to any reaction is as follows:

$$12.5\ \cancel{g}\ \mathrm{Cu(NO_3)_2 \cdot 6H_2O} \left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{mol}}{295.65\ \cancel{g}}\right)\left(\frac{1}{500\ \cancel{mL}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ \cancel{mL}}{1\ \mathrm{L}}\right) = 0.0846\ \mathrm{M}$$

Because the stoichiometry of the reaction is four NH_3 to one Cu^{2+}, the amount of NH_3 required to react completely with the Cu^{2+} is 4(0.0846) = 0.338 M. The concentration of ammonia after complete reaction is 1.00 M − 0.338 M = 0.66 M. These results are summarized in the first two lines of the following table. Because the equilibrium constant for the reaction is large (2.1×10^{13}), the equilibrium will lie far to the right. Thus we will assume that the formation of $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$ in the first step is complete and allow some of it to dissociate into Cu^{2+} and NH_3 until equilibrium has been reached. If we define x as the amount of Cu^{2+} produced by the dissociation reaction, then the stoichiometry of the reaction tells us that the change in the concentration of $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$ is $-x$, and the change in the concentration of ammonia is $+4x$, as indicated in the table. The final concentrations of all species (in the bottom row of the table) are the sums of the concentrations after complete reaction and the changes in concentrations.

$$\mathrm{Cu^{2+} + 4\,NH_3 \rightleftharpoons [Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}}$$

Solutions to Example 17.5.1

	$[Cu^{2+}]$	$[NH_3]$	$[[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}]$
initial	0.0846	1.00	0
after complete reaction	0	0.66	0.0846
change	$+x$	$+4x$	$-x$
final	x	$0.66 + 4x$	$0.0846 - x$

B Substituting the final concentrations into the expression for the formation constant (Equation 2.6.4) and assuming that $x \ll 0.0846$, which allows us to remove x from the sum and difference,

$$\begin{aligned} K_f &= \frac{[[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}]}{[Cu^{2+}][NH_3]^4} = \frac{0.0846 - x}{x(0.66 + 4x)^4} \approx \frac{0.0846}{x(0.66)^4} = 2.1 \times 10^{13} \\ x &= 2.1 \times 10^{-14} \end{aligned}$$

The value of x indicates that our assumption was justified. The equilibrium concentration of $\mathrm{Cu^{2+}(aq)}$ in a 1.00 M ammonia solution is therefore $2.1 \times 10^{-14} M$.

? Exercise 2.6.1

The ferrocyanide ion $[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$ is very stable, with a $K_f = 1 \times 10^{35}$. Calculate the concentration of cyanide ion in equilibrium with a 0.65 M solution of $K_4[Fe(CN)_6]$.

Answer

2×10^{-6} M

The Effect of the Formation of Complex Ions on Solubility

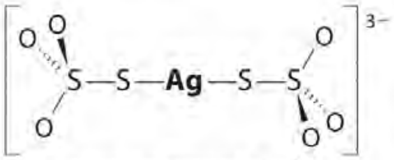
What happens to the solubility of a sparingly soluble salt if a ligand that forms a stable complex ion is added to the solution? One such example occurs in conventional black-and-white photography. Recall that black-and-white photographic film contains light-sensitive microcrystals of AgBr, or mixtures of AgBr and other silver halides. AgBr is a sparingly soluble salt, with a K_{sp} of 5.35×10^{-13} at 25°C. When the shutter of the camera opens, the light from the object being photographed strikes some of the crystals on the film and initiates a photochemical reaction that converts AgBr to black Ag metal. Well-formed, stable negative images appear in tones of gray, corresponding to the number of grains of AgBr converted, with the areas exposed to the most light being darkest. To fix the image and prevent more AgBr crystals from being converted to Ag metal during processing of the film, the unreacted AgBr on the film is removed using a complexation reaction to dissolve the sparingly soluble salt.

The reaction for the dissolution of silver bromide is as follows:

$$\mathrm{AgBr(s)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag^+(aq)} + \mathrm{Br^-(aq)}$$

with $K_{sp} = 5.35 \times 10^{-13}$ at 25°C.

The equilibrium lies far to the left, and the equilibrium concentrations of Ag^+ and Br^- ions are very low (7.31×10^{-7} M). As a result, removing unreacted AgBr from even a single roll of film using pure water would require tens of thousands of liters of water and a great deal of time. Le Chatelier's principle tells us, however, that we can drive the reaction to the right by removing one of the products, which will cause more AgBr to dissolve. Bromide ion is difficult to remove chemically, but silver ion forms a variety of stable two-coordinate complexes with neutral ligands, such as ammonia, or with anionic ligands, such as cyanide or thiosulfate ($S_2O_3{}^{2-}$). In photographic processing, excess AgBr is dissolved using a concentrated solution of sodium thiosulfate.



thiosulfate complex of Ag^+

The reaction of Ag^+ with thiosulfate is as follows:

$$\mathrm{Ag^+(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{S_2O_3^{2-}(aq)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{[Ag(S_2O_3)_2]^{3-}(aq)}$$

with $K_f = 2.9 \times 10^{13}$.

The magnitude of the equilibrium constant indicates that almost all Ag^+ ions in solution will be immediately complexed by thiosulfate to form $[Ag(S_2O_3)_2]^{3-}$. We can see the effect of thiosulfate on the solubility of AgBr by writing the appropriate reactions and adding them together:

$$\mathrm{AgBr(s)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag^+(aq)} + \mathrm{Br^-(aq)} \quad K_{\mathrm{sp}} = 5.35 \times 10^{-13} \tag{2.6.5}$$

$$\mathrm{Ag^+(aq)} + 2\mathrm{S_2O_3^{2-}(aq)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{[Ag(S_2O_3)_2]^{3-}(aq)} \quad K_{\mathrm{f}} = 2.9 \times 10^{13} \tag{2.6.6}$$

$$\mathrm{AgBr(s)} + 2\mathrm{S_2O_3^{2-}(aq)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{[Ag(S_2O_3)_2]^{3-}(aq)} + \mathrm{Br^-(aq)} \quad K = K_{\mathrm{sp}}K_{\mathrm{f}} = 15 \tag{2.6.7}$$

Comparing K with K_{sp} shows that the formation of the complex ion increases the solubility of AgBr by approximately 3×10^{13}. The dramatic increase in solubility combined with the low cost and the low toxicity explains why sodium thiosulfate is almost universally used for developing black-and-white film. If desired, the silver can be recovered from the thiosulfate solution using any of several methods and recycled.

> *If a complex ion has a large K_f, the formation of a complex ion can dramatically increase the solubility of sparingly soluble salts.*

✓ Example 2.6.2

Due to the common ion effect, we might expect a salt such as AgCl to be much less soluble in a concentrated solution of KCl than in water. Such an assumption would be incorrect, however, because it ignores the fact that silver ion tends to form a two-coordinate complex with chloride ions ($AgCl_2{}^-$). Calculate the solubility of AgCl in each situation:

a. in pure water
b. in 1.0 M KCl solution, ignoring the formation of any complex ions
c. the same solution as in part (b) except taking the formation of complex ions into account, assuming that $AgCl_2{}^-$ is the only Ag^+ complex that forms in significant concentrations

At 25°C, $K_{sp} = 1.77 \times 10^{-10}$ for AgCl and $K_f = 1.1 \times 10^5$ for $AgCl_2{}^-$.

Given: K_{sp} of AgCl, K_f of $AgCl_2{}^-$, and KCl concentration

Asked for: solubility of AgCl in water and in KCl solution with and without the formation of complex ions

Strategy:

A. Write the solubility product expression for AgCl and calculate the concentration of Ag^+ and Cl^- in water.
B. Calculate the concentration of Ag^+ in the KCl solution.
C. Write balanced chemical equations for the dissolution of AgCl and for the formation of the $AgCl_2^-$ complex. Add the two equations and calculate the equilibrium constant for the overall equilibrium.
D. Write the equilibrium constant expression for the overall reaction. Solve for the concentration of the complex ion.

Solution

a. **A** If we let x equal the solubility of AgCl, then at equilibrium $[Ag+] = [Cl^-] = x$ M. Substituting this value into the solubility product expression,

$$K_{sp} = [Ag^+][Cl^-] = (x)(x) = x^2 = 1.77\times10^{-10}$$
$$x = 1.33\times10^{-5}$$

Thus the solubility of AgCl in pure water at 25°C is 1.33×10^{-5} M.

b. **B** If x equals the solubility of AgCl in the KCl solution, then at equilibrium $[Ag^+] = x$ M and $[Cl^-] = (1.0 + x)$ M. Substituting these values into the solubility product expression and assuming that $x << 1.0$,

$$K_{sp} = [Ag^+][Cl^-] = (x)(1.0 + x) \approx x(1.0) = 1.77\times10^{-10} = x$$

If the common ion effect were the only important factor, we would predict that AgCl is approximately five orders of magnitude less soluble in a 1.0 M KCl solution than in water.

c. **C** To account for the effects of the formation of complex ions, we must first write the equilibrium equations for both the dissolution and the formation of complex ions. Adding the equations corresponding to K_{sp} and K_f gives us an equation that describes the dissolution of AgCl in a KCl solution. The equilibrium constant for the reaction is therefore the product of K_{sp} and K_f:

$$\mathrm{AgCl(s)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag^+(aq)} + \mathrm{Cl^-(aq)} \quad K_{sp} = 1.77\times10^{-10} \tag{2.6.8}$$
$$\mathrm{Ag^+(aq)} + 2\mathrm{Cl^-} \rightleftharpoons [\mathrm{AgCl_2}]^- \quad K_f = 1.1\times10^{5} \tag{2.6.9}$$
$$\mathrm{AgCl(s)} + \mathrm{Cl^-} \rightleftharpoons [\mathrm{AgCl_2}]^- \quad K = K_{sp}K_f = 1.9\times10^{-5} \tag{2.6.10}$$

D If we let x equal the solubility of AgCl in the KCl solution, then at equilibrium $[AgCl_2^-] = x$ and $[Cl^-] = 1.0 - x$. Substituting these quantities into the equilibrium constant expression for the net reaction and assuming that $x << 1.0$,

$$K = \frac{[\mathrm{AgCl_2^-}]}{[\mathrm{Cl^-}]} = \frac{x}{1.0 - x} \approx 1.9\times10^{-5} = x$$

That is, AgCl dissolves in 1.0 M KCl to produce a 1.9×10^{-5} M solution of the $AgCl_2^-$ complex ion. Thus we predict that AgCl has approximately the same solubility in a 1.0 M KCl solution as it does in pure water, which is 10^5 times greater than that predicted based on the common ion effect. (In fact, the measured solubility of AgCl in 1.0 M KCl is almost a factor of 10 greater than that in pure water, largely due to the formation of other chloride-containing complexes.)

? Exercise 2.6.2

Calculate the solubility of mercury(II) iodide (HgI_2) in each situation:

a. pure water
b. a 3.0 M solution of NaI, assuming $[HgI_4]^{2-}$ is the only Hg-containing species present in significant amounts

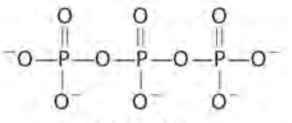
$$K_{sp} = 2.9 \times 10^{-29} \text{ for } HgI_2 \text{ and } K_f = 6.8 \times 10^{29} \text{ for } [HgI_4]^{2-}.$$

Answer

a. 1.9×10^{-10} M
b. 1.4 M

Solubility of Complex Ions: Solubility of Complex Ions(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Complexing agents, molecules or ions that increase the solubility of metal salts by forming soluble metal complexes, are common components of laundry detergents. Long-chain carboxylic acids, the major components of soaps, form insoluble salts with Ca^{2+} and Mg^{2+}, which are present in high concentrations in “hard” water. The precipitation of these salts produces a bathtub ring and gives a gray tinge to clothing. Adding a complexing agent such as pyrophosphate ($O_3POPO_3{}^{4-}$, or $P_2O_7{}^{4-}$) or triphosphate ($P_3O_{10}{}^{5-}$) to detergents prevents the magnesium and calcium salts from precipitating because the equilibrium constant for complex-ion formation is large:

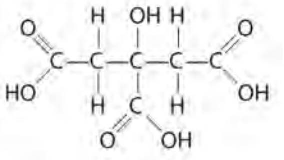


triphosphate

$$Ca^{2+}(aq) + O_3POPO_4^{4-}(aq) \rightleftharpoons [Ca(O_3POPO_3)]^{2-}(aq) \tag{2.6.11}$$

with $K_f = 4 \times 10^4$.

However, phosphates can cause environmental damage by promoting eutrophication, the growth of excessive amounts of algae in a body of water, which can eventually lead to large decreases in levels of dissolved oxygen that kill fish and other aquatic organisms. Consequently, many states in the United States have banned the use of phosphate-containing detergents, and France has banned their use beginning in 2007. “Phosphate-free” detergents contain different kinds of complexing agents, such as derivatives of acetic acid or other carboxylic acids. The development of phosphate substitutes is an area of intense research.



Citric acid,
a hydroxy polycarboxylic acid

Commercial water softeners also use a complexing agent to treat hard water by passing the water over ion-exchange resins, which are complex sodium salts. When water flows over the resin, sodium ion is dissolved, and insoluble salts precipitate onto the resin surface. Water treated in this way has a saltier taste due to the presence of Na^+, but it contains fewer dissolved minerals.

Another application of complexing agents is found in medicine. Unlike x-rays, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) can give relatively good images of soft tissues such as internal organs. MRI is based on the magnetic properties of the ^1H nucleus of hydrogen atoms in water, which is a major component of soft tissues. Because the properties of water do not depend very much on whether it is inside a cell or in the blood, it is hard to get detailed images of these tissues that have good contrast. To solve this problem, scientists have developed a class of metal complexes known as “MRI contrast agents.” Injecting an MRI contrast agent into a patient selectively affects the magnetic properties of water in cells of normal tissues, in tumors, or in blood vessels and allows doctors to “see” each of these separately (Figure 2.6.4). One of the most important metal ions for this application is Gd^{3+}, which with seven unpaired electrons is highly paramagnetic. Because $Gd^{3+}(aq)$ is quite toxic, it must be administered as a very stable complex that does not dissociate in the body and can be excreted intact by the kidneys. The complexing agents used for gadolinium are ligands such as $DTPA^{5-}$ (diethylene triamine pentaacetic acid), whose fully protonated form is shown here.

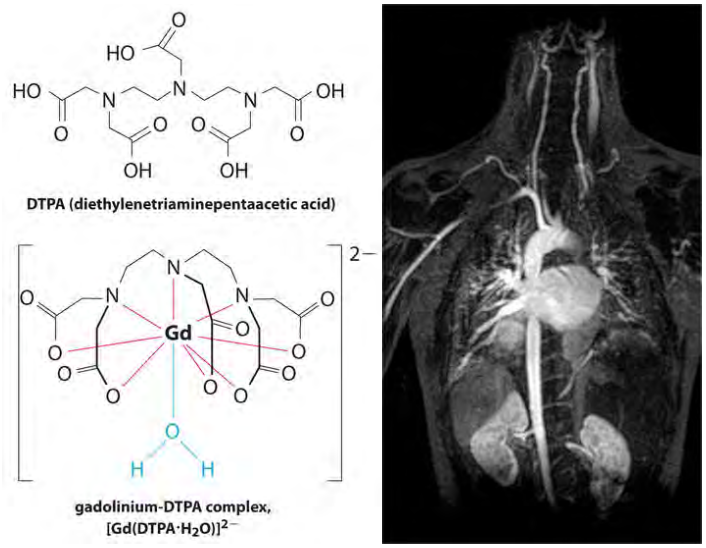


Figure 2.6.4: An MRI Image of the Heart, Arteries, and Veins. When a patient is injected with a paramagnetic metal cation in the form of a stable complex known as an MRI contrast agent, the magnetic properties of water in cells are altered. Because the different environments in different types of cells respond differently, a physician can obtain detailed images of soft tissues.

Summary

Ion-pair formation, the incomplete dissociation of molecular solutes, the formation of complex ions, and changes in pH all affect solubility. There are four explanations why the solubility of a compound can differ from the solubility indicated by the concentrations of ions: (1) ion pair formation, in which an anion and a cation are in intimate contact in solution and not separated by solvent, (2) the incomplete dissociation of molecular solutes, (3) the formation of complex ions, and (4) changes in pH. An ion pair is held together by electrostatic attractive forces between the cation and the anion, whereas incomplete dissociation results from intramolecular forces, such as polar covalent O–H bonds.

The formation of complex ions can substantially increase the solubility of sparingly soluble salts if the complex ion has a large K_f. A complex ion is a species formed between a central metal ion and one or more surrounding ligands, molecules or ions that contain at least one lone pair of electrons. Small, highly charged metal ions have the greatest tendency to act as Lewis acids and form complex ions. The equilibrium constant for the formation of the complex ion is the formation constant (K_f). The formation of a complex ion by adding a complexing agent increases the solubility of a compound.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: Chemical Kinetics

3.1: Catching Lizards

3.2: Rates of Reaction and the Particulate Nature of Matter

Learning Objectives

- To determine the reaction rate of a reaction.

Reaction rates are usually expressed as the concentration of reactant consumed or the concentration of product formed per unit time. The units are thus moles per liter per unit time, written as M/s, M/min, or M/h. To measure reaction rates, chemists initiate the reaction, measure the concentration of the reactant or product at different times as the reaction progresses, perhaps plot the concentration as a function of time on a graph, and then calculate the change in the concentration per unit time.

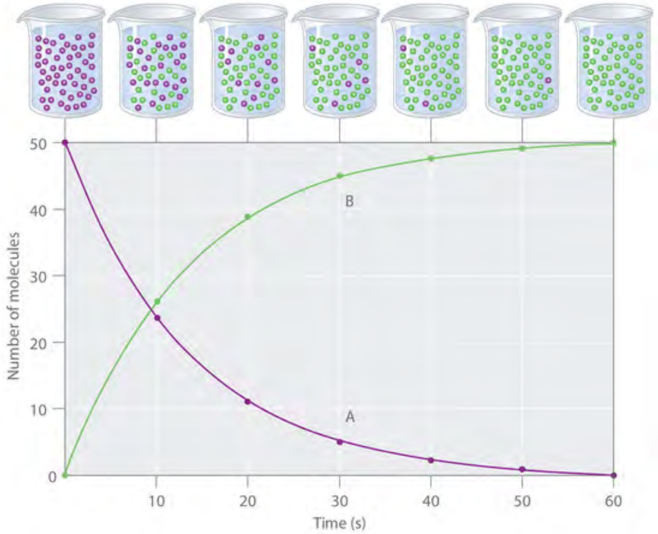


Figure 3.2.1: The Progress of a Simple Reaction (A → B). The mixture initially contains only A molecules (purple). Over time, the number of A molecules decreases and more B molecules (green) are formed (top). The graph shows the change in the number of A and B molecules in the reaction as a function of time over a 1 min period (bottom).

The progress of a simple reaction (A → B) is shown in Figure 3.2.1; the beakers are snapshots of the composition of the solution at 10 s intervals. The number of molecules of reactant (A) and product (B) are plotted as a function of time in the graph. Each point in the graph corresponds to one beaker in Figure 3.2.1. The reaction rate is the change in the concentration of either the reactant or the product over a period of time. The concentration of A decreases with time, while the concentration of B increases with time.

$$\text{rate} = \frac{\Delta[\text{B}]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t} \tag{3.2.1}$$

Square brackets indicate molar concentrations, and the capital Greek delta (Δ) means “change in.” Because chemists follow the convention of expressing all reaction rates as positive numbers, however, a negative sign is inserted in front of Δ[A]/Δt to convert that expression to a positive number. The reaction rate calculated for the reaction A → B using Equation 3.2.1 is different for each interval (this is not true for every reaction, as shown below). A greater change occurs in [A] and [B] during the first 10 s interval, for example, than during the last, meaning that the reaction rate is greatest at first.

> *Reaction rates generally decrease with time as reactant concentrations decrease.*

A Video Discussing Average Reaction Rates. Video Link: Introduction to Chemical Reaction Kinetics(opens in new window) [youtu.be] (opens in new window)

Determining the Reaction Rate of Hydrolysis of Aspirin

We can use Equation 3.2.1 to determine the reaction rate of hydrolysis of aspirin, probably the most commonly used drug in the world (more than 25,000,000 kg are produced annually worldwide). Aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid) reacts with water (such as water in body fluids) to give salicylic acid and acetic acid, as shown in Figure 3.2.2.

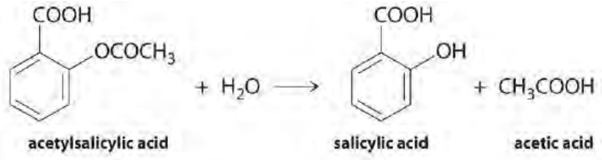


Figure 3.2.2: Hydrolysis of Aspirin reaction.

Because salicylic acid is the actual substance that relieves pain and reduces fever and inflammation, a great deal of research has focused on understanding this reaction and the factors that affect its rate. Data for the hydrolysis of a sample of aspirin are in Table 3.2.1 and are shown in the graph in Figure 3.2.3.

Table 3.2.1: Data for Aspirin Hydrolysis in Aqueous Solution at pH 7.0 and 37°C*

Time (h)	[Aspirin] (M)	[Salicylic Acid] (M)
0	5.55×10^{-3}	0
2.0	5.51×10^{-3}	0.040×10^{-3}
5.0	5.45×10^{-3}	0.10×10^{-3}
10	5.35×10^{-3}	0.20×10^{-3}
20	5.15×10^{-3}	0.40×10^{-3}
30	4.96×10^{-3}	0.59×10^{-3}
40	4.78×10^{-3}	0.77×10^{-3}
50	4.61×10^{-3}	0.94×10^{-3}
100	3.83×10^{-3}	1.72×10^{-3}
200	2.64×10^{-3}	2.91×10^{-3}
300	1.82×10^{-3}	3.73×10^{-3}
*The reaction at pH 7.0 is very slow. It is much faster under acidic conditions, such as those found in the stomach.		

The data in Table 3.2.1 were obtained by removing samples of the reaction mixture at the indicated times and analyzing them for the concentrations of the reactant (aspirin) and one of the products (salicylic acid).

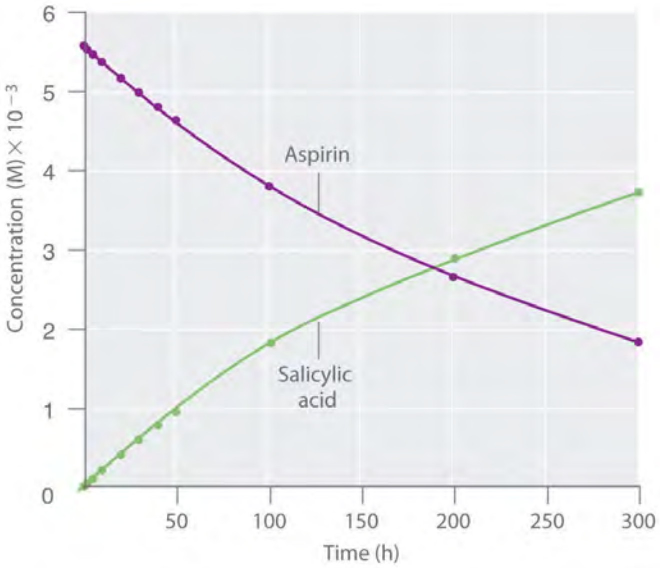


Figure 3.2.3: The Hydrolysis of Aspirin. This graph shows the concentrations of aspirin and salicylic acid as a function of time, based on the hydrolysis data in Table 14.1. The time dependence of the concentration of the other product, acetate, is not shown, but based on the stoichiometry of the reaction, it is identical to the data for salicylic acid.

Graph of concentration against time in hours. The purple line is aspirin. The green line is salicylic acid.

The **average reaction rate** for a given time interval can be calculated from the concentrations of either the reactant or one of the products at the beginning of the interval (time = t_0) and at the end of the interval (t_1). Using salicylic acid, the reaction rate for the interval between t = 0 h and t = 2.0 h (recall that change is always calculated as final minus initial) is calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{rate}_{(t=0-2.0\text{ h})} &= \frac{[\text{salicyclic acid}]_2 - [\text{salicyclic acid}]_0}{2.0\text{ h} - 0\text{ h}} \\ &= \frac{0.040\times 10^{-3}\text{ M} - 0\text{ M}}{2.0\text{ h}} = 2.0\times 10^{-5}\text{ M/h}\end{aligned}$$

The reaction rate can also be calculated from the concentrations of aspirin at the beginning and the end of the same interval, remembering to insert a negative sign, because its concentration decreases:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{rate}_{(t=0-2.0\text{ h})} &= -\frac{[\text{aspirin}]_2 - [\text{aspirin}]_0}{2.0\text{ h} - 0\text{ h}} \\ &= -\frac{(5.51\times 10^{-3}\text{ M}) - (5.55\times 10^{-3}\text{ M})}{2.0\text{ h}} \\ &= 2\times 10^{-5}\text{ M/h}\end{aligned}$$

If the reaction rate is calculated during the last interval given in Table 3.2.1(the interval between 200 h and 300 h after the start of the reaction), the reaction rate is significantly slower than it was during the first interval (t = 0–2.0 h):

$$\begin{aligned}\text{rate}_{(t=200-300\text{h})} &= \frac{[\text{salicyclic acid}]_{300} - [\text{salicyclic acid}]_{200}}{300\text{ h} - 200\text{ h}} \\ &= -\frac{(3.73\times 10^{-3}\text{ M}) - (2.91\times 10^{-3}\text{ M})}{100\text{ h}} \\ &= 8.2\times 10^{-6}\text{ M/h}\end{aligned}$$

Calculating the Reaction Rate of Fermentation of Sucrose

In the preceding example, the stoichiometric coefficients in the balanced chemical equation are the same for all reactants and products; that is, the reactants and products all have the coefficient 1. Consider a reaction in which the coefficients are not all the same, the fermentation of sucrose to ethanol and carbon dioxide:

$$\underset{\text{sucrose}}{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}(aq)} + H_2O(l) \rightarrow 4C_2H_5OH(aq) + 4CO_2(g) \tag{3.2.2}$$

The coefficients indicate that the reaction produces four molecules of ethanol and four molecules of carbon dioxide for every one molecule of sucrose consumed. As before, the reaction rate can be found from the change in the concentration of any reactant or product. In this particular case, however, a chemist would probably use the concentration of either sucrose or ethanol because gases are usually measured as volumes and, as explained in Chapter 10, the volume of CO_2 gas formed depends on the total volume of the solution being studied and the solubility of the gas in the solution, not just the concentration of sucrose. The coefficients in the balanced chemical equation tell us that the reaction rate at which ethanol is formed is always four times faster than the reaction rate at which sucrose is consumed:

$$\frac{\Delta[C_2H_5OH]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{4\Delta[\text{sucrose}]}{\Delta t} \tag{3.2.3}$$

The concentration of the reactant—in this case sucrose—*decreases* with time, so the value of Δ[sucrose] is negative. Consequently, a minus sign is inserted in front of Δ[sucrose] in Equation 3.2.3 so the rate of change of the sucrose concentration is expressed as a positive value. Conversely, the ethanol concentration *increases* with time, so its rate of change is automatically expressed as a positive value.

Often the reaction rate is expressed in terms of the reactant or product with the smallest coefficient in the balanced chemical equation. The smallest coefficient in the sucrose fermentation reaction (Equation 3.2.2) corresponds to sucrose, so the reaction rate is generally defined as follows:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{sucrose}]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{\Delta[C_2H_5OH]}{\Delta t}\right) \tag{3.2.4}$$

✓ Example 3.2.1: Decomposition Reaction I

Consider the thermal decomposition of gaseous N_2O_5 to NO_2 and O_2 via the following equation:

$$2N_2O_5(g) \xrightarrow{\Delta} 4NO_2(g) + O_2(g)$$

Write expressions for the reaction rate in terms of the rates of change in the concentrations of the reactant and each product with time.

Given: balanced chemical equation

Asked for: reaction rate expressions

Strategy:

A. Choose the species in the equation that has the smallest coefficient. Then write an expression for the rate of change of that species with time.
B. For the remaining species in the equation, use molar ratios to obtain equivalent expressions for the reaction rate.

Solution

A Because O_2 has the smallest coefficient in the balanced chemical equation for the reaction, define the reaction rate as the rate of change in the concentration of O_2 and write that expression.

B The balanced chemical equation shows that 2 mol of N_2O_5 must decompose for each 1 mol of O_2 produced and that 4 mol of NO_2 are produced for every 1 mol of O_2 produced. The molar ratios of O_2 to N_2O_5 and to NO_2 are thus 1:2 and 1:4, respectively. This means that the rate of change of $[N_2O_5]$ and $[NO_2]$ must be divided by its stoichiometric coefficient to obtain equivalent expressions for the reaction rate. For example, because NO_2 is produced at four times the rate of O_2, the rate of production of NO_2 is divided by 4. The reaction rate expressions are as follows:

$$\text{rate} = \frac{\Delta[O_2]}{\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta[NO_2]}{4\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[N_2O_5]}{2\Delta t}$$

? Exercise 3.2.1: Contact Process I

The contact process is used in the manufacture of sulfuric acid. A key step in this process is the reaction of SO_2 with O_2 to produce SO_3.

$$2SO_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)} \rightarrow 2SO_{3(g)}$$

Write expressions for the reaction rate in terms of the rate of change of the concentration of each species.

Answer

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{O}_2]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{SO}_2]}{2\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta[\text{SO}_3]}{2\Delta t}$$

Instantaneous Rates of Reaction

The **instantaneous rate** of a reaction is the reaction rate at any given point in time. As the period of time used to calculate an average rate of a reaction becomes shorter and shorter, the average rate approaches the instantaneous rate. Comparing this to calculus, the instantaneous rate of a reaction at a given time corresponds to the slope of a line tangent to the concentration-versus-time curve at that point—that is, the derivative of concentration with respect to time.

The distinction between the instantaneous and average rates of a reaction is similar to the distinction between the actual speed of a car at any given time on a trip and the average speed of the car for the entire trip. Although the car may travel for an extended period at 65 mph on an interstate highway during a long trip, there may be times when it travels only 25 mph in construction zones or 0 mph if you stop for meals or gas. The average speed on the trip may be only 50 mph, whereas the instantaneous speed on the interstate at a given moment may be 65 mph. Whether the car can be stopped in time to avoid an accident depends on its instantaneous speed, not its average speed. There are important differences between the speed of a car during a trip and the speed of a chemical reaction, however. The speed of a car may vary unpredictably over the length of a trip, and the initial part of a trip is often one of the slowest. In a chemical reaction, the initial interval typically has the fastest rate (though this is not always the case), and the reaction rate generally changes smoothly over time.

> *Chemical kinetics generally focuses on one particular instantaneous rate, which is the initial reaction rate, t = 0. Initial rates are determined by measuring the reaction rate at various times and then extrapolating a plot of rate versus time to t = 0.*

✓ Example 3.2.2: Decomposition Reaction II

Using the reaction shown in Example 3.2.1, calculate the reaction rate from the following data taken at 56°C:

$$2N_2O_{5(g)} \rightarrow 4NO_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)}$$

calculate the reaction rate from the following data taken at 56°C:

Time (s)	$[N_2O_5]$ (M)	$[NO_2]$ (M)	$[O_2]$ (M)

Time (s)	[N_2O_5] (M)	[NO_2] (M)	[O_2] (M)
240	0.0388	0.0314	0.00792
600	0.0197	0.0699	0.0175

Given: balanced chemical equation and concentrations at specific times

Asked for: reaction rate

Strategy:

A. Using the equations in Example 3.2.1, subtract the initial concentration of a species from its final concentration and substitute that value into the equation for that species.
B. Substitute the value for the time interval into the equation. Make sure your units are consistent.

Solution

A Calculate the reaction rate in the interval between t_1 = 240 s and t_2 = 600 s. From Example 3.2.1, the reaction rate can be evaluated using any of three expressions:

$$\text{rate} = \frac{\Delta[\mathrm{O_2}]}{\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta[\mathrm{NO_2}]}{4\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{N_2O_5}]}{2\Delta t}$$

Subtracting the initial concentration from the final concentration of N_2O_5 and inserting the corresponding time interval into the rate expression for N_2O_5,

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{N_2O_5}]}{2\Delta t} = -\frac{[\mathrm{N_2O_5}]_{600} - [\mathrm{N_2O_5}]_{240}}{2(600\ \mathrm{s} - 240\ \mathrm{s})}$$

B Substituting actual values into the expression,

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{0.0197\ \mathrm{M} - 0.0388\ \mathrm{M}}{2(360\ \mathrm{s})} = 2.65 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{M/s}$$

Similarly, NO_2 can be used to calculate the reaction rate:

$$\text{rate} = \frac{\Delta[\mathrm{NO_2}]}{4\Delta t} = \frac{[\mathrm{NO_2}]_{600} - [\mathrm{NO_2}]_{240}}{4(600\ \mathrm{s} - 240\ \mathrm{s})} = \frac{0.0699\ \mathrm{M} - 0.0314\ \mathrm{M}}{4(360\ \mathrm{s})} = 2.67 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{M/s}$$

Allowing for experimental error, this is the same rate obtained using the data for N_2O_5. The data for O_2 can also be used:

$$\text{rate} = \frac{\Delta[\mathrm{O_2}]}{\Delta t} = \frac{[\mathrm{O_2}]_{600} - [\mathrm{O_2}]_{240}}{600\ \mathrm{s} - 240\ \mathrm{s}} = \frac{0.0175\ \mathrm{M} - 0.00792\ \mathrm{M}}{360\ \mathrm{s}} = 2.66 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{M/s}$$

Again, this is the same value obtained from the N_2O_5 and NO_2 data. Thus, the reaction rate does not depend on which reactant or product is used to measure it.

? Exercise 3.2.2: Contact Process II

Using the data in the following table, calculate the reaction rate of $SO_2(g)$ with $O_2(g)$ to give $SO_3(g)$.

$$2SO_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)} \rightarrow 2SO_{3(g)}$$

calculate the reaction rate of $SO_2(g)$ with $O_2(g)$ to give $SO_3(g)$.

Time (s)	**[SO_2] (M)**	**[O_2] (M)**	**[SO_3] (M)**
300	0.0270	0.0500	0.0072
720	0.0194	0.0462	0.0148

Answer:

9.0×10^{-6} M/s

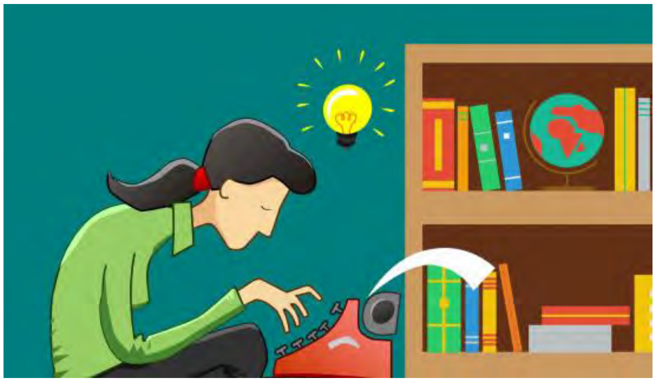
Summary

In this Module, the quantitative determination of a reaction rate is demonstrated. Reaction rates can be determined over particular time intervals or at a given point in time. A rate law describes the relationship between reactant rates and reactant concentrations. Reaction rates are reported as either the average rate over a period of time or as the instantaneous rate at a single time. Reaction rates can be determined over particular time intervals or at a given point in time.

- General definition of rate for A → B:

$$\text{rate} = \frac{\Delta[\text{B}]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t}$$

3.3: Defining and Measuring the Rate of a Chemical Reaction



Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

3.4: The Rate Law- The Effect of Concentration on Reaction Rate

Learning Objectives

- To understand the meaning of the rate law.

The factors that affect the reaction rate of a chemical reaction, which may determine whether a desired product is formed. In this section, we will show you how to quantitatively determine the reaction rate.

Rate Laws

Typically, reaction rates decrease with time because reactant concentrations decrease as reactants are converted to products. Reaction rates generally increase when reactant concentrations are increased. This section examines mathematical expressions called **rate laws**, which describe the relationships between reactant rates and reactant concentrations. Rate laws are mathematical descriptions of experimentally verifiable data.

Rate laws may be written from either of two different but related perspectives. A **differential rate law** expresses the reaction rate in terms of changes in the concentration of one or more reactants (Δ[R]) over a specific time interval (Δt). In contrast, an **integrated rate law** describes the reaction rate in terms of the initial concentration ($[R]_0$) and the measured concentration of one or more reactants ([R]) after a given amount of time (t); integrated rate laws are discussed in more detail later. The integrated rate law is derived by using calculus to integrate the differential rate law. Whether using a differential rate law or integrated rate law, always make sure that the rate law gives the proper units for the reaction rate, usually moles per liter per second (M/s).

Reaction Orders

For a reaction with the general equation:

$$aA + bB \rightarrow cC + dD \tag{3.4.1}$$

the experimentally determined rate law usually has the following form:

$$\text{rate} = k[A]^m[B]^n \tag{3.4.2}$$

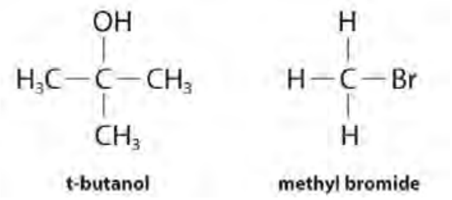
The proportionality constant (*k*) is called the **rate constant**, and its value is characteristic of the reaction and the reaction conditions. A given reaction has a particular rate constant value under a given set of conditions, such as temperature, pressure, and solvent; varying the temperature or the solvent usually changes the value of the rate constant. The numerical value of *k*, however, does not change as the reaction progresses under a given set of conditions.

> *Under a given set of conditions, the value of the rate constant does **not** change as the reaction progresses.*

The reaction rate thus depends on the rate constant for the given set of reaction conditions and the concentration of A and B raised to the powers *m* and *n*, respectively. The values of *m* and *n* are derived from experimental measurements of the changes in reactant concentrations over time and indicate the **reaction order**, the degree to which the reaction rate depends on the concentration of each reactant; *m* and *n* need not be integers. For example, Equation 3.4.2 tells us that Equation 3.4.1 is m^{th} order in reactant A and n^{th} order in reactant B. It is important to remember that *n* and *m* are not related to the stoichiometric coefficients *a* and *b* in the balanced chemical equation and must be determined **experimentally**. The overall reaction order is the sum of all the exponents in the rate law: *m* + *n*.

> *The orders of the reactions (e.g. n and m) are **not** related to the stoichiometric coefficients in the balanced chemical (e.g., a and b).*

To illustrate how chemists interpret a differential rate law, consider the experimentally derived rate law for the hydrolysis of *t*-butyl bromide in 70% aqueous acetone.



This reaction produces *t*-butanol according to the following equation:

$$(CH_3)_3CBr_{(soln)} + H_2O_{(soln)} \rightarrow (CH_3)_3COH_{(soln)} + HBr_{(soln)} \tag{3.4.3}$$

Combining the rate expression in Equation 3.4.2 with the definition of average reaction rate

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t}$$

gives a general expression for the differential rate law:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t} = k[\text{A}]^m[\text{B}]^n \tag{3.4.4}$$

Inserting the identities of the reactants into Equation 3.4.4 gives the following expression for the differential rate law for the reaction:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CBr}]}{\Delta t} = k[(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CBr}]^m[\text{H}_2\text{O}]^n \tag{3.4.5}$$

Experiments to determine the rate law for the hydrolysis of *t*-butyl bromide show that the reaction rate is directly proportional to the concentration of $(CH_3)_3CBr$ but is independent of the concentration of water. Therefore, m and n in Equation 3.4.4 are 1 and 0, respectively, and,

$$\text{rate} = k[(CH_3)_3CBr]^1[H_2O]^0 = k[(CH_3)_3CBr] \tag{3.4.6}$$

Because the exponent for the reactant is 1, the reaction is first order in $(CH_3)_3CBr$. It is zeroth order in water because the exponent for $[H_2O]$ is 0. (Recall that anything raised to the zeroth power equals 1.) Thus, the overall reaction order is 1 + 0 = 1. The reaction orders state in practical terms that doubling the concentration of $(CH_3)_3CBr$ doubles the reaction rate of the hydrolysis reaction, halving the concentration of $(CH_3)_3CBr$ halves the reaction rate, and so on. Conversely, increasing or decreasing the concentration of water has no effect on the reaction rate. (Again, when working with rate laws, there is no simple correlation between the stoichiometry of the reaction and the rate law. The values of *k*, *m*, and *n* in the rate law must be determined experimentally.) Experimental data show that *k* has the value $5.15 \times 10^{-4}\ s^{-1}$ at 25°C. The rate constant has units of reciprocal seconds (s^{-1}) because the reaction rate is defined in units of concentration per unit time (M/s). The units of a rate constant depend on the rate law for a particular reaction.

Under conditions identical to those for the *t*-butyl bromide reaction, the experimentally derived differential rate law for the hydrolysis of methyl bromide (CH_3Br) is as follows:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{CH}_3\text{Br}]}{\Delta t} = k'[\text{CH}_3\text{Br}] \tag{3.4.7}$$

This reaction also has an overall reaction order of 1, but the rate constant in Equation 3.4.7 is approximately 10^6 times smaller than that for *t*-butyl bromide. Thus, methyl bromide hydrolyzes about 1 million times more slowly than *t*-butyl bromide, and this information tells chemists how the reactions differ on a molecular level.

Frequently, changes in reaction conditions also produce changes in a rate law. In fact, chemists often alter reaction conditions to study the mechanics of a reaction. For example, when *t*-butyl bromide is hydrolyzed in an aqueous acetone solution containing OH^- ions rather than in aqueous acetone alone, the differential rate law for the hydrolysis reaction does not change. In contrast, for methyl bromide, the differential rate law becomes

$$\text{rate} = k''[CH_3Br][OH^-]$$

with an overall reaction order of 2. Although the two reactions proceed similarly in neutral solution, they proceed very differently in the presence of a base, providing clues as to how the reactions differ on a molecular level.

✓ Example 3.4.1: Writing Rate Laws from Reaction Orders

An experiment shows that the reaction of nitrogen dioxide with carbon monoxide:

$$NO_2(g) + CO(g) \longrightarrow NO(g) + CO_2(g)$$

is second order in NO_2 and zero order in CO at 100 °C. What is the rate law for the reaction?

Solution

The reaction will have the form:

$$\text{rate} = k[NO_2]^m[CO]^n$$

The reaction is second order in NO_2; thus $m = 2$. The reaction is zero order in CO; thus $n = 0$. The rate law is:

$$\text{rate} = k[NO_2]^2[CO]^0 = k[NO_2]^2$$

Remember that a number raised to the zero power is equal to 1, thus $[CO]^0 = 1$, which is why we can simply drop the concentration of CO from the rate equation: the rate of reaction is solely dependent on the concentration of NO_2. When we consider rate mechanisms later in this chapter, we will explain how a reactant's concentration can have no effect on a reaction despite being involved in the reaction.

? Exercise $3.4.1A$

The rate law for the reaction:

$$H_2(g) + 2\,NO(g) \longrightarrow N_2O(g) + H_2O(g)$$

has been experimentally determined to be $rate = k[NO]^2[H_2]$. What are the orders with respect to each reactant, and what is the overall order of the reaction?

Answer

- order in NO = 2
- order in H_2 = 1
- overall order = 3

? Exercise $3.4.1B$

In a transesterification reaction, a triglyceride reacts with an alcohol to form an ester and glycerol. Many students learn about the reaction between methanol (CH_3OH) and ethyl acetate ($CH_3CH_2OCOCH_3$) as a sample reaction before studying the chemical reactions that produce biodiesel:

$$CH_3OH + CH_3CH_2OCOCH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3OCOCH_3 + CH_3CH_2OH$$

The rate law for the reaction between methanol and ethyl acetate is, under certain conditions, experimentally determined to be:

$$\text{rate} = k[CH_3OH]$$

What is the order of reaction with respect to methanol and ethyl acetate, and what is the overall order of reaction?

Answer

- order in CH_3OH = 1
- order in $CH_3CH_2OCOCH_3$ = 0
- overall order = 1

✓ Example 3.4.2: Differential Rate Laws

Below are three reactions and their experimentally determined differential rate laws. For each reaction, give the units of the rate constant, give the reaction order with respect to each reactant, give the overall reaction order, and predict what happens to the reaction rate when the concentration of the first species in each chemical equation is doubled.

a.
$$2\mathrm{HI(g)} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Pt}} \mathrm{H_2(g)} + \mathrm{I_2(g)}$$
$$\mathrm{rate} = -\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{HI}]}{\Delta t}\right) = k[\mathrm{HI}]^2$$

b.
$$2\mathrm{N_2O(g)} \xrightarrow{\Delta} 2\mathrm{N_2(g)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)}$$
$$\mathrm{rate} = -\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{N_2O}]}{\Delta t}\right) = k$$

c.
$$\mathrm{cyclopropane(g)} \rightarrow \mathrm{propane(g)}$$
$$\mathrm{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{cyclopropane}]}{\Delta t} = k[\mathrm{cyclopropane}]$$

Given: balanced chemical equations and differential rate laws

Asked for: units of rate constant, reaction orders, and effect of doubling reactant concentration

Strategy:

A. Express the reaction rate as moles per liter per second [mol/(L·s), or M/s]. Then determine the units of each chemical species in the rate law. Divide the units for the reaction rate by the units for all species in the rate law to obtain the units for the rate constant.
B. Identify the exponent of each species in the rate law to determine the reaction order with respect to that species. Add all exponents to obtain the overall reaction order.
C. Use the mathematical relationships as expressed in the rate law to determine the effect of doubling the concentration of a single species on the reaction rate.

Solution

1. **A** $[\mathrm{HI}]^2$ will give units of (moles per liter)^2. For the reaction rate to have units of moles per liter per second, the rate constant must have reciprocal units [1/(M·s)]:

$$k\mathrm{M}^2 = \frac{\mathrm{M}}{\mathrm{s}} k = \frac{\mathrm{M/s}}{\mathrm{M}^2} = \frac{1}{\mathrm{M\cdot s}} = \mathrm{M}^{-1}\cdot\mathrm{s}^{-1}$$

   B The exponent in the rate law is 2, so the reaction is second order in HI. Because HI is the only reactant and the only species that appears in the rate law, the reaction is also second order overall.

   C If the concentration of HI is doubled, the reaction rate will increase from $k[\mathrm{HI}]_0^2$ to $k(2[\mathrm{HI}])_0^2 = 4k[\mathrm{HI}]_0^2$. The reaction rate will therefore quadruple.

2. **A** Because no concentration term appears in the rate law, the rate constant must have M/s units for the reaction rate to have M/s units.

   B The rate law tells us that the reaction rate is constant and independent of the N_2O concentration. That is, the reaction is zeroth order in N_2O and zeroth order overall.

   C Because the reaction rate is independent of the N_2O concentration, doubling the concentration will have no effect on the reaction rate.

3. **A** The rate law contains only one concentration term raised to the first power. Hence the rate constant must have units of reciprocal seconds (s^{-1}) to have units of moles per liter per second for the reaction rate: $\mathrm{M\cdot s^{-1}} = \mathrm{M/s}$.

B The only concentration in the rate law is that of cyclopropane, and its exponent is 1. This means that the reaction is first order in cyclopropane. Cyclopropane is the only species that appears in the rate law, so the reaction is also first order overall.

C Doubling the initial cyclopropane concentration will increase the reaction rate from $k[\text{cyclopropane}]_0$ to $2k[\text{cyclopropane}]_0$. This doubles the reaction rate.

? Exercise 3.4.2

Given the following two reactions and their experimentally determined differential rate laws: determine the units of the rate constant if time is in seconds, determine the reaction order with respect to each reactant, give the overall reaction order, and predict what will happen to the reaction rate when the concentration of the first species in each equation is doubled.

a.

$$\mathrm{CH_3N{=}NCH_3(g) \rightarrow C_2H_6(g) + N_2(g)} \qquad \text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{CH_3N{=}NCH_3}]}{\Delta t} \tag{3.4.8}$$

$$= k[\mathrm{CH_3N{=}NCH_3}] \tag{3.4.9}$$

b.

$$\mathrm{2NO_2(g) + F_2(g) \rightarrow 2NO_2F(g)} \qquad \text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{F_2}]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{NO_2}]}{\Delta t}\right) \tag{3.4.10}$$

$$= k[\mathrm{NO_2}][\mathrm{F_2}] \tag{3.4.11}$$

Answer a

s^{-1}; first order in $CH_3N{=}NCH_3$; first order overall; doubling $[CH_3N{=}NCH_3]$ will double the reaction rate.

Answer b

$M^{-1}\cdot s^{-1}$; first order in NO_2, first order in F_2; second order overall; doubling $[NO_2]$ will double the reaction rate.

Determining the Rate Law of a Reaction

The number of fundamentally different mechanisms (sets of steps in a reaction) is actually rather small compared to the large number of chemical reactions that can occur. Thus understanding **reaction mechanisms** can simplify what might seem to be a confusing variety of chemical reactions. The first step in discovering the reaction mechanism is to determine the reaction's rate law. This can be done by designing experiments that measure the concentration(s) of one or more reactants or products as a function of time. For the reaction $A+B \rightarrow products$, for example, we need to determine k and the exponents m and n in the following equation:

$$\text{rate} = k[A]^m[B]^n \tag{3.4.12}$$

To do this, we might keep the initial concentration of B constant while varying the initial concentration of A and calculating the initial reaction rate. This information would permit us to deduce the reaction order with respect to A. Similarly, we could determine the reaction order with respect to B by studying the initial reaction rate when the initial concentration of A is kept constant while the initial concentration of B is varied. In earlier examples, we determined the reaction order with respect to a given reactant by comparing the different rates obtained when only the concentration of the reactant in question was changed. An alternative way of determining reaction orders is to set up a proportion using the rate laws for two different experiments. Rate data for a hypothetical reaction of the type $A+B \rightarrow products$ are given in Table $3.4.1$.

Table 3.4.1: Rate Data for a Hypothetical Reaction of the Form $A+B \rightarrow products$

Experiment	[A] (M)	[B] (M)	Initial Rate (M/min)
1	0.50	0.50	8.5×10^{-3}
2	0.75	0.50	19×10^{-3}
3	1.00	0.50	34×10^{-3}
4	0.50	0.75	8.5×10^{-3}
5	0.50	1.00	8.5×10^{-3}

The general rate law for the reaction is given in Equation 3.4.12. We can obtain *m* or *n* directly by using a proportion of the rate laws for two experiments in which the concentration of one reactant is the same, such as Experiments 1 and 3 in Table $3.4.3$.

$$\frac{\text{rate}_1}{\text{rate}_3}=\frac{k[\text{A}_1]^m[\text{B}_1]^n}{k[\text{A}_3]^m[\text{B}_3]^n}$$

Inserting the appropriate values from Table $3.4.3$,

$$\frac{8.5\times10^{-3}\text{ M/min}}{34\times10^{-3}\text{ M/min}}=\frac{k[0.50\text{ M}]^m[0.50\text{ M}]^n}{k[1.00\text{ M}]^m[0.50\text{ M}]^n}$$

Because 1.00 to any power is 1, $[1.00\text{ M}]^m$ = 1.00 M. We can cancel like terms to give 0.25 = $[0.50]^m$, which can also be written as 1/4 = $[1/2]^m$. Thus we can conclude that *m* = 2 and that the reaction is second order in A. By selecting two experiments in which the concentration of B is the same, we were able to solve for *m*.

Conversely, by selecting two experiments in which the concentration of A is the same (e.g., Experiments 5 and 1), we can solve for *n*.

$$\frac{\text{rate}_1}{\text{rate}_5}=\frac{k[\text{A}_1]^m[\text{B}_1]^n}{k[\text{A}_5]^m[\text{B}_5]^n}$$

Substituting the appropriate values from Table $3.4.3$,

$$\frac{8.5\times10^{-3}\text{ M/min}}{8.5\times10^{-3}\text{ M/min}}=\frac{k[0.50\text{ M}]^m[0.50\text{ M}]^n}{k[0.50\text{ M}]^m[1.00\text{ M}]^n}$$

Canceling leaves 1.0 = $[0.50]^n$, which gives $n=0$; that is, the reaction is zeroth order in B. The experimentally determined rate law is therefore

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{A}]^2[\text{B}]^0 = k[\text{A}]^2$$

We can now calculate the rate constant by inserting the data from any row of Table $3.4.3$ into the experimentally determined rate law and solving for k. Using Experiment 2, we obtain

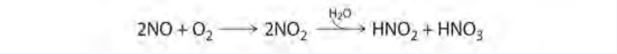
$$19\times10^{-3}\text{ M/min} = k(0.75\text{ M})^2$$

$$3.4\times10^{-2}\text{ M}^{-1}\cdot\text{min}^{-1} = \text{k}$$

You should verify that using data from any other row of Table $3.4.1$ gives the same rate constant. This must be true as long as the experimental conditions, such as temperature and solvent, are the same.

✓ Example 3.4.3

Nitric oxide is produced in the body by several different enzymes and acts as a signal that controls blood pressure, long-term memory, and other critical functions. The major route for removing NO from biological fluids is via reaction with O_2 to give NO_2, which then reacts rapidly with water to give nitrous acid and nitric acid:



$$2NO + O_2 \longrightarrow 2NO_2 \xrightarrow{H_2O} HNO_2 + HNO_3$$

These reactions are important in maintaining steady levels of NO. The following table lists kinetics data for the reaction of NO with O_2 at 25°C:

$$2NO(g)+O_2(g)\rightarrow 2NO_2(g)$$

Determine the rate law for the reaction and calculate the rate constant.

rate law for the reaction and calculate the rate constant.

Experiment	**$[NO]_0$ (M)**	**$[O_2]_0$ (M)**	**Initial Rate (M/s)**
1	0.0235	0.0125	7.98×10^{-3}
2	0.0235	0.0250	15.9×10^{-3}
3	0.0470	0.0125	32.0×10^{-3}

Experiment	$[NO]_0$ (M)	$[O_2]_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/s)
4	0.0470	0.0250	63.5×10^{-3}

Given: balanced chemical equation, initial concentrations, and initial rates

Asked for: rate law and rate constant

Strategy:

A. Compare the changes in initial concentrations with the corresponding changes in rates of reaction to determine the reaction order for each species. Write the rate law for the reaction.
B. Using data from any experiment, substitute appropriate values into the rate law. Solve the rate equation for *k*.

Solution

A Comparing Experiments 1 and 2 shows that as $[O_2]$ is doubled at a constant value of $[NO_2]$, the reaction rate approximately doubles. Thus the reaction rate is proportional to $[O_2]^1$, so the reaction is first order in O_2. Comparing Experiments 1 and 3 shows that the reaction rate essentially quadruples when [NO] is doubled and $[O_2]$ is held constant. That is, the reaction rate is proportional to $[NO]^2$, which indicates that the reaction is second order in NO. Using these relationships, we can write the rate law for the reaction:

$$\text{rate} = k[NO]^2[O_2]$$

B The data in any row can be used to calculate the rate constant. Using Experiment 1, for example, gives

$$k = \frac{\text{rate}}{[\text{NO}]^2[\text{O}_2]} = \frac{7.98 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M/s}}{(0.0235\ \text{M})^2(0.0125\ \text{M})} = 1.16 \times 10^3\ \text{M}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$$

Alternatively, using Experiment 2 gives

$$k = \frac{\text{rate}}{[\text{NO}]^2[\text{O}_2]} = \frac{15.9 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M/s}}{(0.0235\ \text{M})^2(0.0250\ \text{M})} = 1.15 \times 10^3\ \text{M}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$$

The difference is minor and associated with significant digits and likely experimental error in making the table.

The overall reaction order $(m+n) = 3$, so this is a third-order reaction whose rate is determined by three reactants. The units of the rate constant become more complex as the overall reaction order increases.

Exercise 3.4.3

The peroxydisulfate ion ($S_2O_8{}^{2-}$) is a potent oxidizing agent that reacts rapidly with iodide ion in water:

$$S_2O^{2-}_{8(aq)} + 3I^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2SO^{2-}_{4(aq)} + I^-_{3(aq)}$$

The following table lists kinetics data for this reaction at 25°C. Determine the rate law and calculate the rate constant.

kinetics data for this reaction at 25°C.

Experiment	$[S_2O_8{}^{2-}]_0$ (M)	$[I^-]_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/s)
1	0.27	0.38	2.05
2	0.40	0.38	3.06
3	0.40	0.22	1.76

Answer:

rate = $k[S_2O_8{}^{2-}][I^-]$; $k = 20\ M^{-1}{\cdot}s^{-1}$

A Video Discussing Initial Rates and Rate Law Expressions. Video Link: Initial Rates and Rate Law Expressions(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

The rate law for a reaction is a mathematical relationship between the reaction rate and the concentrations of species in solution. Rate laws can be expressed either as a differential rate law, describing the change in reactant or product concentrations as a function of time, or as an integrated rate law, describing the actual concentrations of reactants or products as a function of time. The rate constant (k) of a rate law is a constant of proportionality between the reaction rate and the reactant concentration. The exponent to which a concentration is raised in a rate law indicates the reaction order, the degree to which the reaction rate depends on the concentration of a particular reactant.

3.5: The Integrated Rate Law- The Dependence of Concentration on Time

Learning Objectives

- To apply rate laws to zeroth, first and second order reactions.

Either the differential rate law or the integrated rate law can be used to determine the reaction order from experimental data. Often, the exponents in the rate law are the positive integers: 1 and 2 or even 0. Thus the reactions are zeroth, first, or second order in each reactant. The common patterns used to identify the reaction order are described in this section, where we focus on characteristic types of differential and integrated rate laws and how to determine the reaction order from experimental data. The learning objective of this Module is to know how to determine the reaction order from experimental data.

Zeroth-Order Reactions

A **zeroth-order reaction** is one whose rate is independent of concentration; its differential rate law is

$$\text{rate} = k.$$

We refer to these reactions as zeroth order because we could also write their rate in a form such that the exponent of the reactant in the rate law is 0:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t} = k[\text{reactant}]^0 = k(1) = k \tag{3.5.1}$$

Because rate is independent of reactant concentration, a graph of the concentration of any reactant as a function of time is a straight line with a slope of $-k$. The value of k is negative because the concentration of the reactant decreases with time. Conversely, a graph of the concentration of any product as a function of time is a straight line with a slope of k, a positive value.

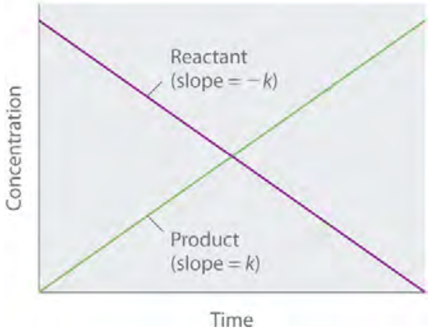


Figure 3.5.1: The graph of a zeroth-order reaction. The change in concentration of reactant and product with time produces a straight line.

Graph of concentration against time. The reactant is in purple and has a slope of minus k. The product is in green and has a slope of positive k.

The integrated rate law for a zeroth-order reaction also produces a straight line and has the general form

$$[A] = [A]_0 - kt \tag{3.5.2}$$

where $[A]_0$ is the initial concentration of reactant A. Equation 3.5.2 has the form of the algebraic equation for a straight line,

$$y = mx + b,$$

with $y = [A]$, $mx = -kt$, and $b = [A]_0$.)

Units

In a zeroth-order reaction, the rate constant must have the same units as the reaction rate, typically moles per liter per second.

Although it may seem counterintuitive for the reaction rate to be independent of the reactant concentration(s), such reactions are rather common. They occur most often when the reaction rate is determined by available surface area. An example is the decomposition of N_2O on a platinum (Pt) surface to produce N_2 and O_2, which occurs at temperatures ranging from 200°C to 400°C:

$$2N_2O(g) \xrightarrow{Pt} 2N_2(g) + O_2(g) \tag{3.5.3}$$

Without a platinum surface, the reaction requires temperatures greater than 700°C, but between 200°C and 400°C, the only factor that determines how rapidly N_2O decomposes is the amount of Pt surface available (not the amount of Pt). As long as there is enough N_2O to react with the entire Pt surface, doubling or quadrupling the N_2O concentration will have no effect on the reaction rate. At very low concentrations of N_2O, where there are not enough molecules present to occupy the entire available Pt surface, the reaction rate is dependent on the N_2O concentration. The reaction rate is as follows:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\Delta[N_2O]}{\Delta t}\right) = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\Delta[N_2]}{\Delta t}\right) = \frac{\Delta[O_2]}{\Delta t} = k[N_2O]^0 = k \tag{3.5.4}$$

Thus the rate at which N_2O is consumed and the rates at which N_2 and O_2 are produced are independent of concentration. As shown in Figure $3.5.2$, the change in the concentrations of all species with time is linear. Most important, the exponent (0) corresponding to the N_2O concentration in the experimentally derived rate law is not the same as the reactant's stoichiometric coefficient in the balanced chemical equation (2). For this reaction, as for all others, the rate law must be determined experimentally.

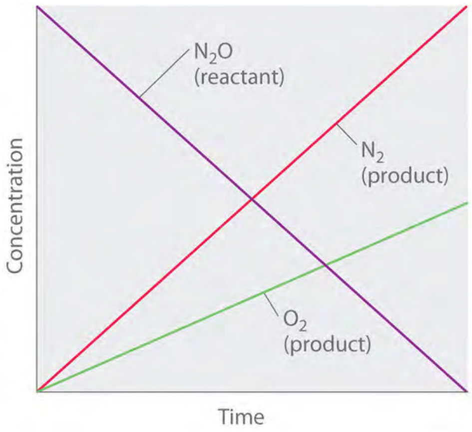
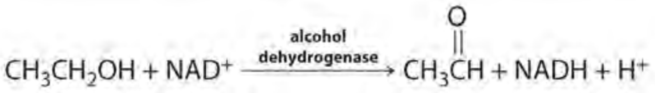


Figure $3.5.2$: A Zeroth-Order Reaction. This graph shows the concentrations of reactants and products versus time for the zeroth-order catalyzed decomposition of N_2O to N_2 and O_2 on a Pt surface. The change in the concentrations of all species with time is linear.

Graph of concentration against time. N2O is the reactant is graphed in purple. O2 is one of the products and is graphed in green. The second product is N2 which is graphed in red

A zeroth-order reaction that takes place in the human liver is the oxidation of ethanol (from alcoholic beverages) to acetaldehyde, catalyzed by the **enzyme** alcohol dehydrogenase. At high ethanol concentrations, this reaction is also a zeroth-order reaction. The overall reaction equation is



$$CH_3CH_2OH + NAD^+ \xrightarrow[\text{dehydrogenase}]{\text{alcohol}} CH_3\overset{\overset{\large O}{||}}{C}H + NADH + H^+$$

Figure 3.5.2

where \ce{NAD^{+}}\) (nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide) and $NADH$ (reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide) are the oxidized and reduced forms, respectively, of a species used by all organisms to transport electrons. When an alcoholic beverage is consumed, the ethanol is rapidly absorbed into the blood. Its concentration then decreases at a constant rate until it reaches zero (Figure $3.5.3a$). An average 70 kg person typically takes about 2.5 h to oxidize the 15 mL of ethanol contained in a single 12 oz can of beer, a 5 oz glass of wine, or a shot of distilled spirits (such as whiskey or brandy). The actual rate, however, varies a great deal from person to person, depending on body size and the amount of alcohol dehydrogenase in the liver. The reaction rate does not increase if a greater quantity of alcohol is consumed over the same period of time because the reaction rate is determined only by the amount of enzyme present in the liver. Contrary to popular belief, the caffeine in coffee is ineffective at catalyzing the oxidation of ethanol. When the ethanol has been completely oxidized and its concentration drops to essentially zero, the rate of oxidation also drops rapidly (part (b) in Figure $3.5.3$).

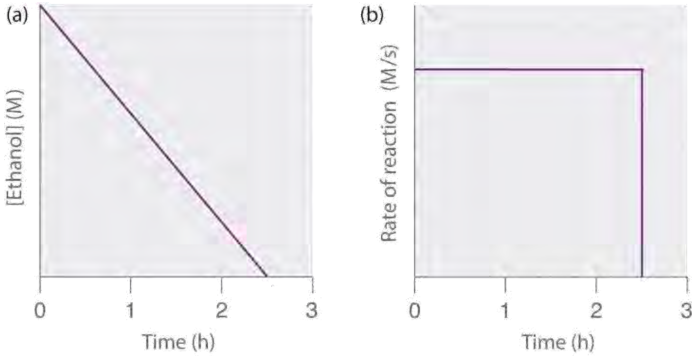


Figure 3.5.3: The Catalyzed Oxidation of Ethanol (a) The concentration of ethanol in human blood decreases linearly with time, which is typical of a zeroth-order reaction. (b) The rate at which ethanol is oxidized is constant until the ethanol concentration reaches essentially zero, at which point the reaction rate drops to zero.

These examples illustrate two important points:

1. In a zeroth-order reaction, the reaction rate does not depend on the reactant concentration.
2. A linear change in concentration with time is a clear indication of a zeroth-order reaction.

First-Order Reactions

In a **first-order reaction**, the reaction rate is directly proportional to the concentration of one of the reactants. First-order reactions often have the general form A → products. The differential rate for a first-order reaction is as follows:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t} = k[\text{A}] \tag{3.5.5}$$

If the concentration of A is doubled, the reaction rate doubles; if the concentration of A is increased by a factor of 10, the reaction rate increases by a factor of 10, and so forth. Because the units of the reaction rate are always moles per liter per second, the units of a first-order rate constant are reciprocal seconds (s^{-1}).

The integrated rate law for a first-order reaction can be written in two different ways: one using exponents and one using logarithms. The exponential form is as follows:

$$[A] = [A]_0 e^{-kt} \tag{3.5.6}$$

where $[A]_0$ is the initial concentration of reactant A at $t = 0$; k is the rate constant; and e is the base of the natural logarithms, which has the value 2.718 to three decimal places. Recall that an integrated rate law gives the relationship between reactant concentration and time. Equation 3.5.6 predicts that the concentration of A will decrease in a smooth exponential curve over time. By taking the natural logarithm of each side of Equation 3.5.6 and rearranging, we obtain an alternative logarithmic expression of the relationship between the concentration of A and t:

$$\ln[A] = \ln[A]_0 - kt \tag{3.5.7}$$

Because Equation 3.5.7 has the form of the algebraic equation for a straight line,

$$y = mx + b,$$

with $y = \ln[A]$ and $b = \ln[A]_0$, a plot of $\ln[A]$ versus t for a first-order reaction should give a straight line with a slope of $-k$ and an intercept of $\ln[A]_0$. Either the differential rate law (Equation 3.5.5) or the integrated rate law (Equation 3.5.7) can be used to determine whether a particular reaction is first order.

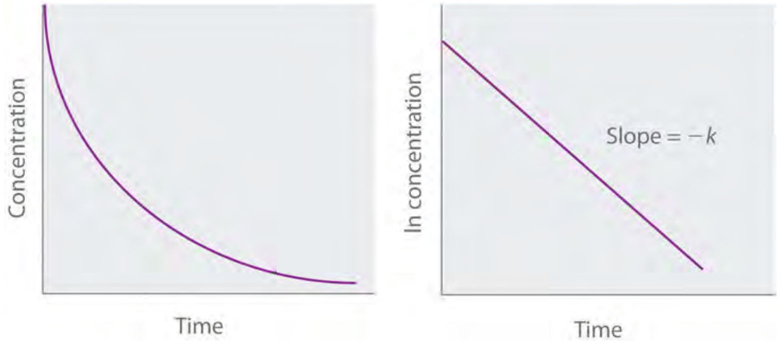


Figure 3.5.4: Graphs of a first-order reaction. The expected shapes of the curves for plots of reactant concentration versus time (top) and the natural logarithm of reactant concentration versus time (bottom) for a first-order reaction.

First-order reactions are very common. One reaction that exhibits apparent first-order kinetics is the hydrolysis of the anticancer drug cisplatin. Cisplatin, the first "inorganic" anticancer drug to be discovered, is unique in its ability to cause complete remission of the relatively rare, but deadly cancers of the reproductive organs in young adults. The structures of cisplatin and its hydrolysis product are as follows:

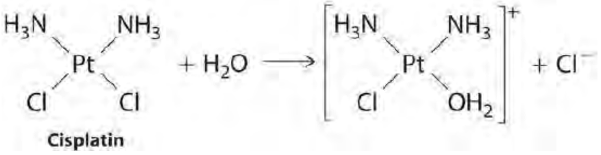


Figure 3.5.5: Cis-platin reaction with water.

Both platinum compounds have four groups arranged in a square plane around a Pt(II) ion. The reaction shown in Figure 3.5.5 is important because cisplatin, the form in which the drug is administered, is not the form in which the drug is active. Instead, at least one chloride ion must be replaced by water to produce a species that reacts with deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) to prevent cell division and tumor growth. Consequently, the kinetics of the reaction in Figure 3.5.4 have been studied extensively to find ways of maximizing the concentration of the active species.

> *If a plot of reactant concentration versus time is not linear but a plot of the natural logarithm of reactant concentration versus time is linear, then the reaction is first order.*

The rate law and reaction order of the hydrolysis of cisplatin are determined from experimental data, such as those displayed in Table 3.5.1. The table lists initial rate data for four experiments in which the reaction was run at pH 7.0 and 25°C but with different initial concentrations of cisplatin.

Table 3.5.1: Rates of Hydrolysis of Cisplatin as a Function of Concentration at pH 7.0 and 25°C

Experiment	[Cisplatin]$_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/min)
1	0.0060	9.0×10^{-6}
2	0.012	1.8×10^{-5}
3	0.024	3.6×10^{-5}
4	0.030	4.5×10^{-5}

Because the reaction rate increases with increasing cisplatin concentration, we know this cannot be a zeroth-order reaction. Comparing Experiments 1 and 2 in Table 3.5.1 shows that the reaction rate doubles [(1.8×10^{-5} M/min) ÷ (9.0×10^{-6} M/min) = 2.0] when the concentration of cisplatin is doubled (from 0.0060 M to 0.012 M). Similarly, comparing Experiments 1 and 4 shows that the reaction rate increases by a factor of 5 [(4.5×10^{-5} M/min) ÷ (9.0×10^{-6} M/min) = 5.0] when the concentration of cisplatin is increased by a factor of 5 (from 0.0060 M to 0.030 M). Because the reaction rate is directly proportional to the concentration of the reactant, the exponent of the cisplatin concentration in the rate law must be 1, so the rate law is rate = $k[\text{cisplatin}]^1$. Thus the reaction is first order. Knowing this, we can calculate the rate constant using the differential rate law for a first-order reaction and the data in any row of Table 3.5.1. For example, substituting the values for Experiment 3 into Equation 3.5.5,

$$3.6 \times 10^{-5} \text{ M/min} = k(0.024 \text{ M})$$

$$1.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{min}^{-1} = k$$

Knowing the rate constant for the hydrolysis of cisplatin and the rate constants for subsequent reactions that produce species that are highly toxic enables hospital pharmacists to provide patients with solutions that contain only the desired form of the drug.

✓ **Example 3.5.1**

At high temperatures, ethyl chloride produces HCl and ethylene by the following reaction:

$$\mathrm{CH_3CH_2Cl(g)} \xrightarrow{\Delta} \mathrm{HCl(g)} + \mathrm{C_2H_4(g)}$$

Using the rate data for the reaction at 650°C presented in the following table, calculate the reaction order with respect to the concentration of ethyl chloride and determine the rate constant for the reaction.

data for the reaction at 650°C

Experiment	$[CH_3CH_2Cl]_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/s)
1	0.010	1.6×10^{-8}
2	0.015	2.4×10^{-8}
3	0.030	4.8×10^{-8}
4	0.040	6.4×10^{-8}

Given: balanced chemical equation, initial concentrations of reactant, and initial rates of reaction

Asked for: reaction order and rate constant

Strategy:

A. Compare the data from two experiments to determine the effect on the reaction rate of changing the concentration of a species.
B. Compare the observed effect with behaviors characteristic of zeroth- and first-order reactions to determine the reaction order. Write the rate law for the reaction.

C Use measured concentrations and rate data from any of the experiments to find the rate constant.

Solution

The reaction order with respect to ethyl chloride is determined by examining the effect of changes in the ethyl chloride concentration on the reaction rate.

A Comparing Experiments 2 and 3 shows that doubling the concentration doubles the reaction rate, so the reaction rate is proportional to $[CH_3CH_2Cl]$. Similarly, comparing Experiments 1 and 4 shows that quadrupling the concentration quadruples the reaction rate, again indicating that the reaction rate is directly proportional to $[CH_3CH_2Cl]$.

B This behavior is characteristic of a first-order reaction, for which the rate law is rate = $k[CH_3CH_2Cl]$.

C We can calculate the rate constant (k) using any row in the table. Selecting Experiment 1 gives the following:

$$1.60 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{M/s} = k(0.010\ \text{M})$$

$$1.6 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{s}^{-1} = k$$

? **Exercise 3.5.1**

Sulfuryl chloride (SO_2Cl_2) decomposes to SO_2 and Cl_2 by the following reaction:

$$SO_2Cl_2(g) \rightarrow SO_2(g) + Cl_2(g)$$

Data for the reaction at 320°C are listed in the following table. Calculate the reaction order with regard to sulfuryl chloride and determine the rate constant for the reaction.

Data for the reaction at 320°C

Experiment	$[SO_2Cl_2]_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/s)
1	0.0050	1.10×10^{-7}
2	0.0075	1.65×10^{-7}
3	0.0100	2.20×10^{-7}
4	0.0125	2.75×10^{-7}

Answer

first order; $k = 2.2 \times 10^{-5}\ s^{-1}$

We can also use the integrated rate law to determine the reaction rate for the hydrolysis of cisplatin. To do this, we examine the change in the concentration of the reactant or the product as a function of time at a single initial cisplatin concentration. Figure $3.5.6a$ shows plots for a solution that originally contained 0.0100 M cisplatin and was maintained at pH 7 and 25°C.

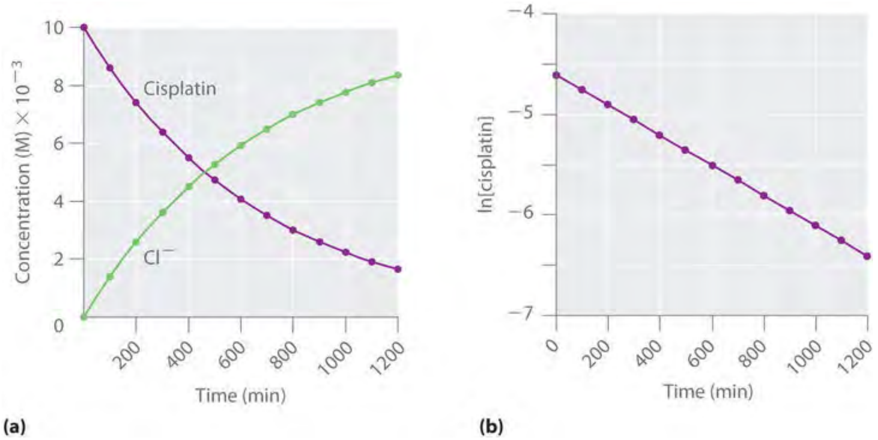


Figure $3.5.6$: The Hydrolysis of Cisplatin, a First-Order Reaction. These plots show hydrolysis of cisplatin at pH 7.0 and 25°C as (a) the experimentally determined concentrations of cisplatin and chloride ions versus time and (b) the natural logarithm of the cisplatin concentration versus time. The straight line in (b) is expected for a first-order reaction.

The concentration of cisplatin decreases smoothly with time, and the concentration of chloride ion increases in a similar way. When we plot the natural logarithm of the concentration of cisplatin versus time, we obtain the plot shown in part (b) in Figure $3.5.6$. The straight line is consistent with the behavior of a system that obeys a first-order rate law. We can use any two points on the line to calculate the slope of the line, which gives us the rate constant for the reaction. Thus taking the points from part (a) in Figure $3.5.6$ for t = 100 min ([cisplatin] = 0.0086 M) and t = 1000 min ([cisplatin] = 0.0022 M),

$$\begin{aligned} \text{slope} &= \frac{\ln[\text{cisplatin}]_{1000} - \ln[\text{cisplatin}]_{100}}{1000\text{ min} - 100\text{ min}} \\ -k &= \frac{\ln 0.0022 - \ln 0.0086}{1000\text{ min} - 100\text{ min}} = \frac{-6.12 - (-4.76)}{900\text{ min}} = -1.51 \times 10^{-3}\text{ min}^{-1} \\ k &= 1.5 \times 10^{-3}\text{ min}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

The slope is negative because we are calculating the rate of disappearance of cisplatin. Also, the rate constant has units of min^{-1} because the times plotted on the horizontal axes in parts (a) and (b) in Figure $3.5.6$ are in minutes rather than seconds.

The reaction order and the magnitude of the rate constant we obtain using the integrated rate law are exactly the same as those we calculated earlier using the differential rate law. This must be true if the experiments were carried out under the same conditions.

Video Example Using the First-Order Integrated Rate Law Equation:

Example Using the First-Order Integrated Rate Law Equation(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

✓ Example 3.5.2

If a sample of ethyl chloride with an initial concentration of 0.0200 M is heated at 650°C, what is the concentration of ethyl chloride after 10 h? How many hours at 650°C must elapse for the concentration to decrease to 0.0050 M (k = 1.6 × 10^{-6} s^{-1}) ?

Given: initial concentration, rate constant, and time interval

Asked for: concentration at specified time and time required to obtain particular concentration

Strategy:

A. Substitute values for the initial concentration ($[A]_0$) and the calculated rate constant for the reaction (k) into the integrated rate law for a first-order reaction. Calculate the concentration ([A]) at the given time t.
B. Given a concentration [A], solve the integrated rate law for time t.

Solution

The exponential form of the integrated rate law for a first-order reaction (Equation 3.5.6) is $[A] = [A]_0e^{-kt}$.

A Having been given the initial concentration of ethyl chloride ($[A]_0$) and having the rate constant of $k = 1.6 \times 10^{-6}\ s^{-1}$, we can use the rate law to calculate the concentration of the reactant at a given time t. Substituting the known values into the integrated rate law,

$$\begin{aligned}[\mathrm{CH_3CH_2Cl}]_{10\text{ h}} &= [\mathrm{CH_3CH_2Cl}]_0 e^{-kt} \\ &= 0.0200\text{ M}(e^{-(1.6\times10^{-6}\text{ s}^{-1})[(10\text{ h})(60\text{ min/h})(60\text{ s/min})]}) \\ &= 0.0189\text{ M}\end{aligned}$$

We could also have used the logarithmic form of the integrated rate law (Equation 3.5.7):

$$\begin{aligned}\ln[\mathrm{CH_3CH_2Cl}]_{10\text{ h}} &= \ln[\mathrm{CH_3CH_2Cl}]_0 - kt \\ &= \ln 0.0200 - (1.6\times10^{-6}\text{ s}^{-1})[(10\text{ h})(60\text{ min/h})(60\text{ s/min})] \\ &= -3.912 - 0.0576 = -3.970 \\ [\mathrm{CH_3CH_2Cl}]_{10\text{ h}} &= e^{-3.970}\text{ M} \\ &= 0.0189\text{ M}\end{aligned}$$

B To calculate the amount of time required to reach a given concentration, we must solve the integrated rate law for t. Equation 3.5.7 gives the following:

$$\ln[CH_3CH_2Cl]_t = \ln[CH_3CH_2Cl]_0 - kt$$

$$kt = \ln[CH_3CH_2Cl]_0 - \ln[CH_3CH_2Cl]_t = \ln\frac{[CH_3CH_2Cl]_0}{[CH_3CH_2Cl]_t}$$

$$t = \frac{1}{k}\left(\ln\frac{[CH_3CH_2Cl]_0}{[CH_3CH_2Cl]_t}\right) = \frac{1}{1.6\times 10^{-6}\ s^{-1}}\left(\ln\frac{0.0200\ M}{0.0050\ M}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\ln 4.0}{1.6\times 10^{-6}\ s^{-1}} = 8.7\times 10^5\ s = 240\ h = 2.4\times 10^2\ h$$

Exercise 3.5.2

In the exercise in Example 3.5.1, you found that the decomposition of sulfuryl chloride (SO_2Cl_2) is first order, and you calculated the rate constant at 320°C.

a. Use the form(s) of the integrated rate law to find the amount of SO_2Cl_2 that remains after 20 h if a sample with an original concentration of 0.123 M is heated at 320°C.
b. How long would it take for 90% of the SO_2Cl_2 to decompose?

Answer a

0.0252 M

Answer b

29 h

Second-Order Reactions

The simplest kind of **second-order reaction** is one whose rate is proportional to the square of the concentration of one reactant. These generally have the form

$$2\ A \rightarrow \text{products}\cdot$$

A second kind of second-order reaction has a reaction rate that is proportional to the product of the concentrations of two reactants. Such reactions generally have the form A + B → products. An example of the former is a dimerization reaction, in which two smaller molecules, each called a monomer, combine to form a larger molecule (a dimer).

The differential rate law for the simplest second-order reaction in which 2A → products is as follows:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[A]}{2\Delta t} = k[A]^2 \tag{3.5.8}$$

Consequently, doubling the concentration of A quadruples the reaction rate. For the units of the reaction rate to be moles per liter per second (M/s), the units of a second-order rate constant must be the inverse ($M^{-1}\cdot s^{-1}$). Because the units of molarity are expressed as mol/L, the unit of the rate constant can also be written as L(mol·s).

For the reaction 2A → products, the following integrated rate law describes the concentration of the reactant at a given time:

$$\frac{1}{[A]} = \frac{1}{[A]_0} + kt \tag{3.5.9}$$

Because Equation 3.5.9 has the form of an algebraic equation for a straight line, $y = mx + b$, with $y = 1/[A]$ and $b = 1/[A]_0$, a plot of $1/[A]$ versus t for a simple second-order reaction is a straight line with a slope of k and an intercept of $1/[A]_0$.

> *Second-order reactions generally have the form 2A → products or A + B → products.*

Video Discussing the Second-Order Integrated Rate Law Equation: Second-Order Integrated Rate Law Equation(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Simple second-order reactions are common. In addition to dimerization reactions, two other examples are the decomposition of NO_2 to NO and O_2 and the decomposition of HI to I_2 and H_2. Most examples involve simple inorganic molecules, but there are organic examples as well. We can follow the progress of the reaction described in the following paragraph by monitoring the decrease in the intensity of the red color of the reaction mixture.

Many cyclic organic compounds that contain two carbon–carbon double bonds undergo a dimerization reaction to give complex structures. One example is as follows:

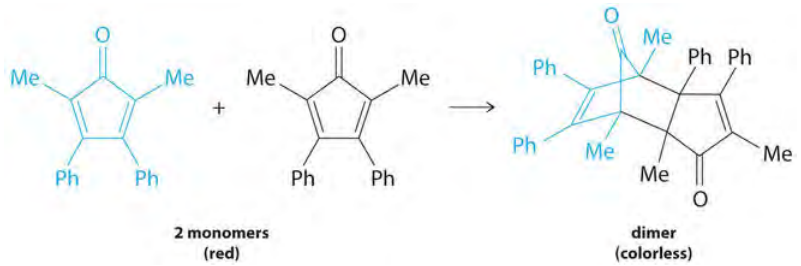


Figure $3.5.7$

For simplicity, we will refer to this reactant and product as "monomer" and "dimer," respectively. The systematic name of the monomer is 2,5-dimethyl-3,4-diphenylcyclopentadienone. The systematic name of the dimer is the name of the monomer followed by "dimer." Because the monomers are the same, the general equation for this reaction is 2A → product. This reaction represents an important class of organic reactions used in the pharmaceutical industry to prepare complex carbon skeletons for the synthesis of drugs. Like the first-order reactions studied previously, it can be analyzed using either the differential rate law (Equation $3.5.8$) or the integrated rate law (Equation $3.5.9$).

Table $3.5.2$: Rates of Reaction as a Function of Monomer Concentration for an Initial Monomer Concentration of 0.0054 M

Time (min)	[Monomer] (M)	Instantaneous Rate (M/min)
10	0.0044	8.0×10^{-5}
26	0.0034	5.0×10^{-5}
44	0.0027	3.1×10^{-5}
70	0.0020	1.8×10^{-5}
120	0.0014	8.0×10^{-6}

To determine the differential rate law for the reaction, we need data on how the reaction rate varies as a function of monomer concentrations, which are provided in Table $3.5.2$. From the data, we see that the reaction rate is not independent of the monomer concentration, so this is not a zeroth-order reaction. We also see that the reaction rate is not proportional to the monomer concentration, so the reaction is not first order. Comparing the data in the second and fourth rows shows that the reaction rate decreases by a factor of 2.8 when the monomer concentration decreases by a factor of 1.7:

$$\frac{5.0\times10^{-5}\ \text{M/min}}{1.8\times10^{-5}\ \text{M/min}}=2.8\quad\text{and}\quad\frac{3.4\times10^{-3}\ \text{M}}{2.0\times10^{-3}\ \text{M}}=1.7$$

Because $(1.7)^2 = 2.9 \approx 2.8$, the reaction rate is approximately proportional to the square of the monomer concentration.

$$\text{rate} \propto [\text{monomer}]^2$$

This means that the reaction is second order in the monomer. Using Equation 3.5.8 and the data from any row in Table 3.5.2, we can calculate the rate constant. Substituting values at time 10 min, for example, gives the following:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{rate} &= k[\text{A}]^2 &(3.5.10)\\ 8.0\times10^{-5}\ \text{M/min} &= k(4.4\times10^{-3}\ \text{M})^2 &(3.5.11)\\ 4.1\ \text{M}^{-1}\cdot\text{min}^{-1} &= k &(3.5.12)\end{aligned}$$

We can also determine the reaction order using the integrated rate law. To do so, we use the decrease in the concentration of the monomer as a function of time for a single reaction, plotted in Figure 3.5.8*a*. The measurements show that the concentration of the monomer (initially 5.4×10^{-3} M) decreases with increasing time. This graph also shows that the reaction rate decreases smoothly with increasing time. According to the integrated rate law for a second-order reaction, a plot of 1/[monomer] versus t should be a straight line, as shown in Figure 3.5.8*b*. Any pair of points on the line can be used to calculate the slope, which is the second-order rate constant. In this example, $k = 4.1\ \text{M}^{-1}\cdot\text{min}^{-1}$, which is consistent with the result obtained using the differential rate equation. Although in this example the stoichiometric coefficient is the same as the reaction order, this is not always the case. The reaction order must always be determined experimentally.

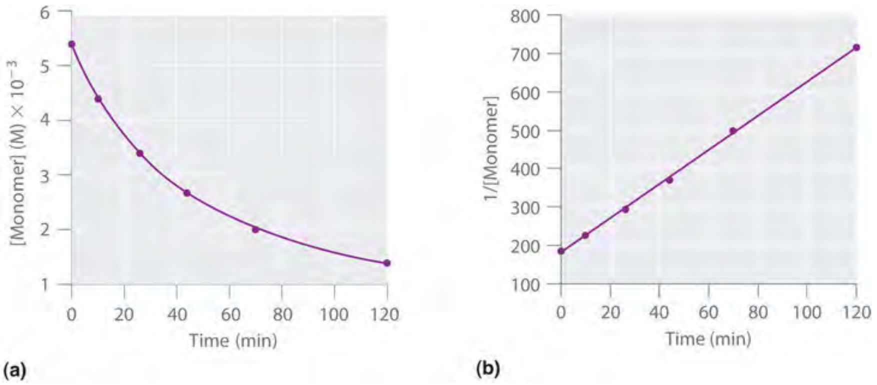


Figure 3.5.8: Dimerization of a Monomeric Compound, a Second-Order Reaction. These plots correspond to dimerization of the monomer in Figure 14.4.6 as (a) the experimentally determined concentration of monomer versus time and (b) 1/[monomer] versus time. The straight line in (b) is expected for a simple second-order reaction.

For two or more reactions of the same order, the reaction with the largest rate constant is the fastest. Because the units of the rate constants for zeroth-, first-, and second-order reactions are different, however, we cannot compare the magnitudes of rate constants for reactions that have different orders.

✓ Example 3.5.3

At high temperatures, nitrogen dioxide decomposes to nitric oxide and oxygen.

$$2\text{NO}_2(\text{g}) \xrightarrow{\Delta} 2\text{NO}(\text{g}) + \text{O}_2(\text{g})$$

Experimental data for the reaction at 300°C and four initial concentrations of NO_2 are listed in the following table:

Experimental data for the reaction at 300°C and four initial concentrations of NO2

Experiment	$[NO_2]_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/s)
1	0.015	1.22×10^{-4}
2	0.010	5.40×10^{-5}

Experiment	$[NO_2]_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/s)
3	0.0080	3.46×10^{-5}
4	0.0050	1.35×10^{-5}

Determine the reaction order and the rate constant.

Given: balanced chemical equation, initial concentrations, and initial rates

Asked for: reaction order and rate constant

Strategy:

A. From the experiments, compare the changes in the initial reaction rates with the corresponding changes in the initial concentrations. Determine whether the changes are characteristic of zeroth-, first-, or second-order reactions.
B. Determine the appropriate rate law. Using this rate law and data from any experiment, solve for the rate constant (k).

Solution

A We can determine the reaction order with respect to nitrogen dioxide by comparing the changes in NO_2 concentrations with the corresponding reaction rates. Comparing Experiments 2 and 4, for example, shows that doubling the concentration quadruples the reaction rate [$(5.40 \times 10^{-5}) \div (1.35 \times 10^{-5}) = 4.0$], which means that the reaction rate is proportional to $[NO_2]^2$. Similarly, comparing Experiments 1 and 4 shows that tripling the concentration increases the reaction rate by a factor of 9, again indicating that the reaction rate is proportional to $[NO_2]^2$. This behavior is characteristic of a second-order reaction.

B We have rate = $k[NO_2]^2$. We can calculate the rate constant (k) using data from any experiment in the table. Selecting Experiment 2, for example, gives the following:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rate} &= k[\mathrm{NO_2}]^2 \\ 5.40 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{M/s} &= k(0.010\ \mathrm{M})^2 \\ 0.54\ \mathrm{M^{-1} \cdot s^{-1}} &= k \end{aligned}$$

? Exercise 3.5.3

When the highly reactive species HO_2 forms in the atmosphere, one important reaction that then removes it from the atmosphere is as follows:

$$2HO_{2(g)} \rightarrow H_2O_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)}$$

The kinetics of this reaction have been studied in the laboratory, and some initial rate data at 25°C are listed in the following table:

Some initial rate data at 25°C

Experiment	$[HO_2]_0$ (M)	Initial Rate (M/s)
1	1.1×10^{-8}	1.7×10^{-7}
2	2.5×10^{-8}	8.8×10^{-7}
3	3.4×10^{-8}	1.6×10^{-6}
4	5.0×10^{-8}	3.5×10^{-6}

Determine the reaction order and the rate constant.

Answer

second order in HO_2; $k = 1.4 \times 10^9\ M^{-1} \cdot s^{-1}$

If a plot of reactant concentration versus time is **not** linear, but a plot of 1/(reactant concentration) versus time is linear, then the reaction is second order.

✓ Example 3.5.4

If a flask that initially contains 0.056 M NO_2 is heated at 300°C, what will be the concentration of NO_2 after 1.0 h? How long will it take for the concentration of NO_2 to decrease to 10% of the initial concentration? Use the integrated rate law for a second-order reaction (Equation 3.5.9) and the rate constant calculated above.

Given: balanced chemical equation, rate constant, time interval, and initial concentration

Asked for: final concentration and time required to reach specified concentration

Strategy:

A. Given k, t, and $[A]_0$, use the integrated rate law for a second-order reaction to calculate [A].
B. Setting [A] equal to 1/10 of $[A]_0$, use the same equation to solve for t.

Solution

A We know k and $[NO_2]_0$, and we are asked to determine $[NO_2]$ at t = 1 h (3600 s). Substituting the appropriate values into Equation 3.5.9,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{[NO_2]_{3600}} &= \frac{1}{[NO_2]_0} + kt \\ &= \frac{1}{0.056\ M} + [(0.54\ M^{-1}\cdot s^{-1})(3600\ s)] \\ &= 2.0 \times 10^3\ M^{-1}\end{aligned}$$

Thus $[NO_2]_{3600} = 5.1 \times 10^{-4}$ M.

B In this case, we know k and $[NO_2]_0$, and we are asked to calculate at what time $[NO_2] = 0.1[NO_2]_0 = 0.1(0.056\ M) = 0.0056$ M. To do this, we solve Equation 3.5.9 for t, using the concentrations given.

$$\begin{aligned}t &= \frac{(1/[NO_2]) - (1/[NO_2]_0)}{k} \\ &= \frac{(1/0.0056\ M) - (1/0.056\ M)}{0.54\ M^{-1}\cdot s^{-1}} \\ &= 3.0 \times 10^2\ s = 5.0\ min\end{aligned}$$

NO_2 decomposes very rapidly; under these conditions, the reaction is 90% complete in only 5.0 min.

? Exercise 3.5.4

In the previous exercise, you calculated the rate constant for the decomposition of HO_2 as $k = 1.4 \times 10^9\ M^{-1}\cdot s^{-1}$. This high rate constant means that HO_2 decomposes rapidly under the reaction conditions given in the problem. In fact, the HO_2 molecule is so reactive that it is virtually impossible to obtain in high concentrations. Given a 0.0010 M sample of HO_2, calculate the concentration of HO_2 that remains after 1.0 h at 25°C. How long will it take for 90% of the HO_2 to decompose? Use the integrated rate law for a second-order reaction (Equation 3.5.9) and the rate constant calculated in the exercise in Example 3.5.3.

Answer

2.0×10^{-13} M; 6.4×10^{-6} s

In addition to the simple second-order reaction and rate law we have just described, another very common second-order reaction has the general form $A+B \rightarrow products$, in which the reaction is first order in A and first order in B. The differential rate law for this reaction is as follows:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{B}]}{\Delta t} = k[\text{A}][\text{B}]$$

Because the reaction is first order both in A and in B, it has an overall reaction order of 2. (The integrated rate law for this reaction is rather complex, so we will not describe it.) We can recognize second-order reactions of this sort because the reaction rate is proportional to the concentrations of each reactant.

Summary

The reaction rate of a zeroth-order reaction is independent of the concentration of the reactants. The reaction rate of a first-order reaction is directly proportional to the concentration of one reactant. The reaction rate of a simple second-order reaction is proportional to the square of the concentration of one reactant. Knowing the rate law of a reaction gives clues to the reaction mechanism.

- **zeroth-order reaction:**

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t} = k$$

$$[A] = [A]_0 - kt$$

- **first-order reaction**:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t} = k[\text{A}]$$

$$[A] = [A]_0 e^{-kt}$$

$$\ln[A] = \ln[A]_0 - kt$$

- **second-order reaction:**

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{A}]}{\Delta t} = k[\text{A}]^2$$

$$\frac{1}{[\text{A}]} = \frac{1}{[\text{A}]_0} + kt$$

3.6: The Effect of Temperature on Reaction Rate

Learning Objectives

- To understand why and how chemical reactions occur.

It is possible to use kinetics studies of a chemical system, such as the effect of changes in reactant concentrations, to deduce events that occur on a microscopic scale, such as collisions between individual particles. Such studies have led to the collision model of chemical kinetics, which is a useful tool for understanding the behavior of reacting chemical species. The collision model explains why chemical reactions often occur more rapidly at higher temperatures. For example, the reaction rates of many reactions that occur at room temperature approximately double with a temperature increase of only 10°C. In this section, we will use the collision model to analyze this relationship between temperature and reaction rates. Before delving into the relationship between temperature and reaction rate, we must discuss three microscopic factors that influence the observed macroscopic reaction rates.

Microscopic Factor 1: Collisional Frequency

Central to collision model is that a chemical reaction can occur only when the reactant molecules, atoms, or ions collide. Hence, the observed rate is influence by the frequency of collisions between the reactants. The **collisional frequency** is the average rate in which two reactants collide for a given system and is used to express the average number of collisions per unit of time in a defined system. While deriving the collisional frequency (Z_{AB}) between two species in a gas is straightforward, it is beyond the scope of this text and the equation for collisional frequency of A and B is the following:

$$Z_{AB} = N_A N_B (r_A + r_B)^2 \sqrt{\frac{8\pi k_B T}{\mu_{AB}}} \tag{3.6.1}$$

with

- N_A and N_B are the numbers of A and B molecules in the system, respectively
- r_a and r_b are the radii of molecule A and B, respectively
- k_B is the Boltzmann constant k_B = 1.380 x 10^{-23} Joules Kelvin
- T is the temperature in Kelvin
- μ_{AB} is calculated via $\mu_{AB} = \frac{m_A m_B}{m_A + m_B}$

The specifics of Equation 3.6.1 are not important for this conversation, but it is important to identify that Z_{AB} increases with increasing density (i.e., increasing N_A and N_B), with increasing reactant size (r_a and r_b), with increasing velocities (predicted via Kinetic Molecular Theory), and with increasing temperature (although weakly because of the square root function).

A Video Discussing Collision Theory of Kinetics: Collusion Theory of Kinetics (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Microscopic Factor 2: Activation Energy

Previously, we discussed the kinetic molecular theory of gases, which showed that the average kinetic energy of the particles of a gas increases with increasing temperature. Because the speed of a particle is proportional to the square root of its kinetic energy, increasing the temperature will also increase the number of collisions between molecules per unit time. What the kinetic molecular theory of gases does not explain is why the reaction rate of most reactions approximately doubles with a 10°C temperature increase. This result is surprisingly large considering that a 10°C increase in the temperature of a gas from 300 K to 310 K increases the kinetic energy of the particles by only about 4%, leading to an increase in molecular speed of only about 2% and a correspondingly small increase in the number of bimolecular collisions per unit time.

The collision model of chemical kinetics explains this behavior by introducing the concept of **activation energy** (E_a). We will define this concept using the reaction of NO with ozone, which plays an important role in the depletion of ozone in the ozone layer:

$$\mathrm{NO(g) + O_3(g) \rightarrow NO_2(g) + O_2(g)}$$

Increasing the temperature from 200 K to 350 K causes the rate constant for this particular reaction to increase by a factor of more than 10, whereas the increase in the frequency of bimolecular collisions over this temperature range is only 30%. Thus something other than an increase in the collision rate must be affecting the reaction rate.

Experimental rate law for this reaction is

$$\text{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO}][\mathrm{O_3}]$$

and is used to identify how the reaction rate (not the rate constant) vares with concentration. The rate constant, however, does vary with temperature. Figure $3.6.1$ shows a plot of the rate constant of the reaction of NO with $\mathrm{O_3}$ at various temperatures. The relationship is not linear but instead resembles the relationships seen in graphs of vapor pressure versus temperature (e.g, the Clausius-Claperyon equation). In all three cases, the shape of the plots results from a distribution of kinetic energy over a population of particles (electrons in the case of conductivity; molecules in the case of vapor pressure; and molecules, atoms, or ions in the case of reaction rates). Only a fraction of the particles have sufficient energy to overcome an energy barrier.

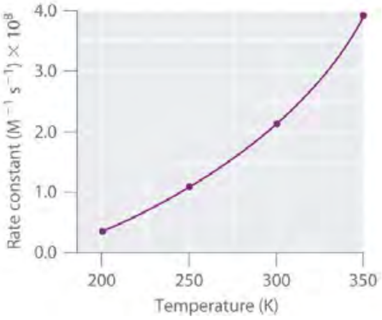


Figure $3.6.1$: Rate Constant versus Temperature for the Reaction of NO with $\mathrm{O_3}$The nonlinear shape of the curve is caused by a distribution of kinetic energy over a population of molecules. Only a fraction of the particles have enough energy to overcome an energy barrier, but as the temperature is increased, the size of that fraction increases. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

In the case of vapor pressure, particles must overcome an energy barrier to escape from the liquid phase to the gas phase. This barrier corresponds to the energy of the intermolecular forces that hold the molecules together in the liquid. In conductivity, the barrier is the energy gap between the filled and empty bands. In chemical reactions, the energy barrier corresponds to the amount of energy the particles must have to react when they collide. This energy threshold, called the **activation energy**, was first postulated in 1888 by the Swedish chemist Svante Arrhenius (1859–1927; Nobel Prize in Chemistry 1903). It is the minimum amount of energy needed for a reaction to occur. Reacting molecules must have enough energy to overcome electrostatic repulsion, and a minimum amount of energy is required to break chemical bonds so that new ones may be formed. Molecules that collide with less than the threshold energy bounce off one another chemically unchanged, with only their direction of travel and their speed altered by the collision. Molecules that are able to overcome the energy barrier are able to react and form an arrangement of atoms called the **activated complex** or the **transition state** of the reaction. The activated complex is not a reaction intermediate; it does not last long enough to be detected readily.

> *Any phenomenon that depends on the distribution of thermal energy in a population of particles has a nonlinear temperature dependence.*

We can graph the energy of a reaction by plotting the potential energy of the system as the reaction progresses. Figure 3.6.2 shows a plot for the NO–O_3 system, in which the vertical axis is potential energy and the horizontal axis is the reaction coordinate, which indicates the progress of the reaction with time. The activated complex is shown in brackets with an asterisk. The overall change in potential energy for the reaction (ΔE) is negative, which means that the reaction releases energy. (In this case, ΔE is −200.8 kJ/mol.) To react, however, the molecules must overcome the energy barrier to reaction (E_a is 9.6 kJ/mol). That is, 9.6 kJ/mol must be put into the system as the activation energy. Below this threshold, the particles do not have enough energy for the reaction to occur.

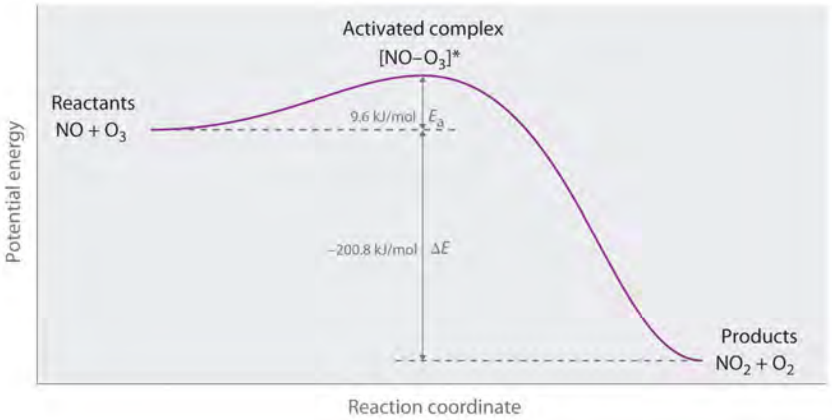


Figure 3.6.2: Energy of the Activated Complex for the NO–O_3 System. The diagram shows how the energy of this system varies as the reaction proceeds from reactants to products. Note the initial increase in energy required to form the activated complex. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Figure 3.6.3*a* illustrates the general situation in which the products have a lower potential energy than the reactants. In contrast, Figure 3.6.3*b* illustrates the case in which the products have a higher potential energy than the reactants, so the overall reaction requires an input of energy; that is, it is energetically uphill, and \($\Delta E > 0$\). Although the energy changes that result from a reaction can be positive, negative, or even zero, in most cases an energy barrier must be overcome before a reaction can occur. This means that the activation energy is almost always positive; there is a class of reactions called barrierless reactions, but those are discussed elsewhere.

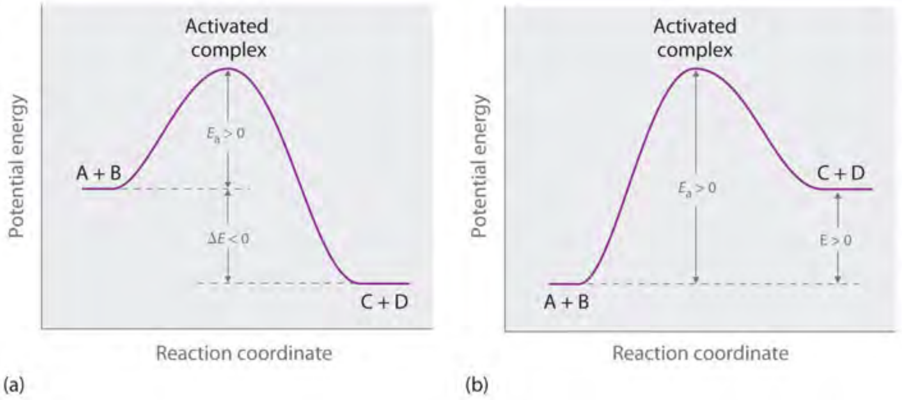


Figure 3.6.3: Differentiating between E_a and ΔE. The potential energy diagrams for a reaction with (a) $\Delta E < 0$ and (b) $\Delta E > 0$ illustrate the change in the potential energy of the system as reactants are converted to products. In both cases, E_a is positive. For a reaction such as the one shown in (b), E_a must be greater than ΔE. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

> *For similar reactions under comparable conditions, the one with the smallest E_a will occur most rapidly.*

Whereas ΔE is related to the tendency of a reaction to occur spontaneously, E_a gives us information about the reaction rate and how rapidly the reaction rate changes with temperature. For two similar reactions under comparable conditions, the reaction with the smallest E_a will occur more rapidly.

Figure $3.6.4$ shows both the kinetic energy distributions and a potential energy diagram for a reaction. The shaded areas show that at the lower temperature (300 K), only a small fraction of molecules collide with kinetic energy greater than E_a; however, at the higher temperature (500 K) a much larger fraction of molecules collide with kinetic energy greater than E_a. Consequently, the reaction rate is much slower at the lower temperature because only a relatively few molecules collide with enough energy to overcome the potential energy barrier.

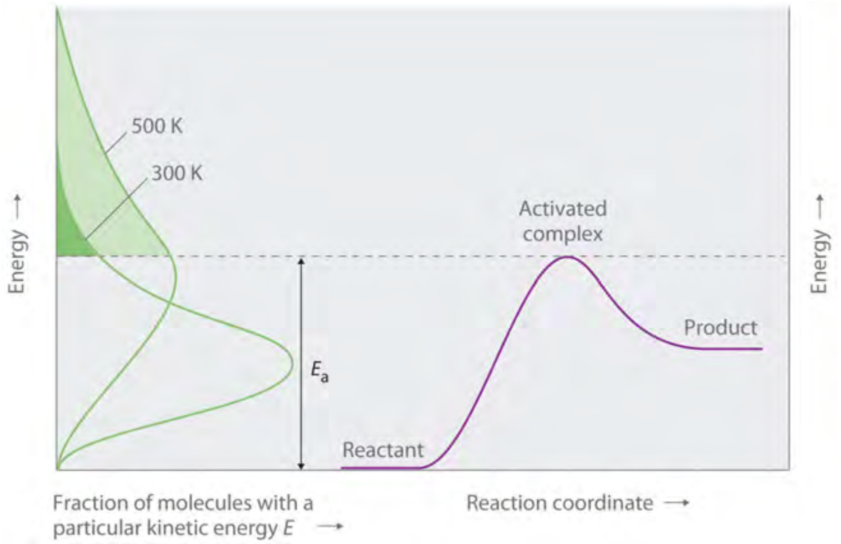


Figure $3.6.4$: Surmounting the Energy Barrier to a Reaction. This chart juxtaposes the energy distributions of lower-temperature (300 K) and higher-temperature (500 K) samples of a gas against the potential energy diagram for a reaction. Only those molecules in the shaded region of the energy distribution curve have E > E_a and are therefore able to cross the energy barrier separating reactants and products. The fraction of molecules with $E > E_a$ is much greater at 500 K than at 300 K, so the reaction will occur much more rapidly at 500 K. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Energy is on the y axis while reaction coordinate and fraction of molecules with a particular kinetic energy E are on the x axis.

Video Discussing Transition State Theory: Transition State Theory(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Microscopic Factor 3: Sterics

Even when the energy of collisions between two reactant species is greater than E_a, most collisions do not produce a reaction. The probability of a reaction occurring depends not only on the collision energy but also on the spatial orientation of the molecules when they collide. For NO and O_3 to produce NO_2 and O_2, a terminal oxygen atom of O_3 must collide with the nitrogen atom of NO at an angle that allows O_3 to transfer an oxygen atom to NO to produce NO_2 (Figure $3.6.4$). All other collisions produce no reaction. Because fewer than 1% of all possible orientations of NO and O_3 result in a reaction at kinetic energies greater than E_a, most collisions of NO and O_3 are unproductive. The fraction of orientations that result in a reaction is called the **steric factor** (ρ) and its value can range from $\rho = 0$ (no orientations of molecules result in reaction) to $\rho = 1$ (all orientations result in reaction).

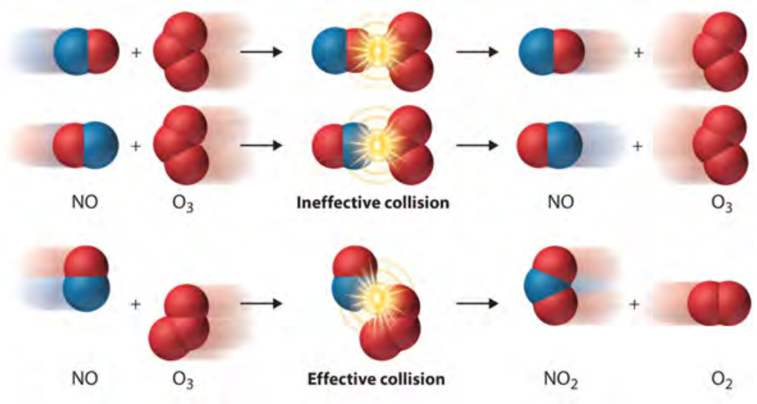


Figure 3.6.4: The Effect of Molecular Orientation on the Reaction of NO and O_3. Most collisions of NO and O_3 molecules occur with an incorrect orientation for a reaction to occur. Only those collisions in which the N atom of NO collides with one of the terminal O atoms of O_3 are likely to produce NO_2 and O_2, even if the molecules collide with $E > E_a$. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Macroscopic Behavior: The Arrhenius Equation

The collision model explains why most collisions between molecules do not result in a chemical reaction. For example, nitrogen and oxygen molecules in a single liter of air at room temperature and 1 atm of pressure collide about 10^{30} times per second. If every collision produced two molecules of NO, the atmosphere would have been converted to NO and then NO_2 a long time ago. Instead, in most collisions, the molecules simply bounce off one another without reacting, much as marbles bounce off each other when they collide.

For an $A+B$ elementary reaction, all three microscopic factors discussed above that affect the reaction rate can be summarized in a single relationship:

$$\text{rate} = (\text{collision frequency}) \times (\text{steric factor}) \times (\text{fraction of collisions with } E > E_a)$$

where

$$\text{rate} = k[A][B] \tag{3.6.2}$$

Arrhenius used these relationships to arrive at an equation that relates the magnitude of the rate constant for a reaction to the temperature, the activation energy, and the constant, A, called the **frequency factor**:

$$k = Ae^{-E_a/RT} \tag{3.6.3}$$

The frequency factor is used to convert concentrations to collisions per second (scaled by the steric factor). Because the frequency of collisions depends on the temperature, A is actually not constant (Equation 3.6.1). Instead, A increases slightly with temperature as the increased kinetic energy of molecules at higher temperatures causes them to move slightly faster and thus undergo more collisions per unit time.

Equation 3.6.3 is known as the **Arrhenius equation** and summarizes the collision model of chemical kinetics, where T is the absolute temperature (in K) and R is the ideal gas constant [8.314 J/(K·mol)]. E_a indicates the sensitivity of the reaction to changes in temperature. The reaction rate with a large E_a increases rapidly with increasing temperature, whereas the reaction rate with a smaller E_a increases much more slowly with increasing temperature.

If we know the reaction rate at various temperatures, we can use the Arrhenius equation to calculate the activation energy. Taking the natural logarithm of both sides of Equation 3.6.3,

$$\ln k = \ln A + \left(-\frac{E_\text{a}}{RT}\right) \tag{3.6.4}$$

$$= \ln A + \left[\left(-\frac{E_\text{a}}{R}\right)\left(\frac{1}{T}\right)\right] \tag{3.6.5}$$

Equation 3.6.5 is the equation of a straight line,

$$y = mx + b$$

where $y = \ln k$ and $x = 1/T$. This means that a plot of $\ln k$ versus $1/T$ is a straight line with a slope of $-E_a/R$ and an intercept of $\ln A$. In fact, we need to measure the reaction rate at only two temperatures to estimate E_a.

Knowing the E_a at one temperature allows us to predict the reaction rate at other temperatures. This is important in cooking and food preservation, for example, as well as in controlling industrial reactions to prevent potential disasters. The procedure for determining E_a from reaction rates measured at several temperatures is illustrated in Example $3.6.1$.

A Video Discussing The Arrhenius Equation: The Arrhenius Equation(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

✓ Example $3.6.1$: Chirping Tree Crickets

Many people believe that the rate of a tree cricket's chirping is related to temperature. To see whether this is true, biologists have carried out accurate measurements of the rate of tree cricket chirping (f) as a function of temperature (T). Use the data in the following table, along with the graph of ln[chirping rate] versus $1/T$ to calculate E_a for the biochemical reaction that controls cricket chirping. Then predict the chirping rate on a very hot evening, when the temperature is 308 K (35°C, or 95°F).

Chirping Tree Crickets Frequency Table

Frequency (f; chirps/min)	ln f	T (K)	1/T (K)
200	5.30	299	3.34×10^{-3}
179	5.19	298	3.36×10^{-3}
158	5.06	296	3.38×10^{-3}
141	4.95	294	3.40×10^{-3}
126	4.84	293	3.41×10^{-3}
112	4.72	292	3.42×10^{-3}
100	4.61	290	3.45×10^{-3}
89	4.49	289	3.46×10^{-3}
79	4.37	287	3.48×10^{-3}

Given: chirping rate at various temperatures

Asked for: activation energy and chirping rate at specified temperature

Strategy:

A. From the plot of $\ln f$ versus $1/T$, calculate the slope of the line ($-E_a/R$) and then solve for the activation energy.
B. Express Equation 3.6.5 in terms of k_1 and T_1 and then in terms of k_2 and T_2.
C. Subtract the two equations; rearrange the result to describe k_2/k_1 in terms of T_2 and T_1.

D. Using measured data from the table, solve the equation to obtain the ratio k_2/k_1. Using the value listed in the table for k_1, solve for k_2.

Solution

A If cricket chirping is controlled by a reaction that obeys the Arrhenius equation, then a plot of $\ln f$ versus $1/T$ should give a straight line (Figure $3.6.6$).

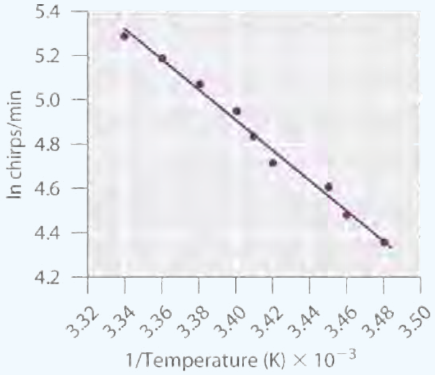


Figure $3.6.6$: Graphical Determination of E_a for Tree Cricket Chirping. When the natural logarithm of the rate of tree cricket chirping is plotted versus 1/T, a straight line results. The slope of the line suggests that the chirping rate is controlled by a single reaction with an E_a of 55 kJ/mol. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Also, the slope of the plot of $\ln f$ versus $1/T$ should be equal to $-E_a/R$. We can use the two endpoints in Figure $3.6.6$ to estimate the slope:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{slope} &= \frac{\Delta \ln f}{\Delta(1/T)} \\ &= \frac{5.30-4.37}{3.34\times 10^{-3}\ \text{K}^{-1}-3.48\times 10^{-3}\ \text{K}^{-1}} \\ &= \frac{0.93}{-0.14\times 10^{-3}\ \text{K}^{-1}} \\ &= -6.6\times 10^{3}\ \text{K}\end{aligned}$$

A computer best-fit line through all the points has a slope of -6.67×10^3 K, so our estimate is very close. We now use it to solve for the activation energy:

$$\begin{aligned}E_\text{a} &= -(\text{slope})(R) \\ &= -(-6.6\times 10^{3}\ \text{K})\left(\frac{8.314\ \text{J}}{\text{K}\cdot\text{mol}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \text{KJ}}{1000\ \text{J}}\right) \\ &= \frac{55\ \text{kJ}}{\text{mol}}\end{aligned}$$

B If the activation energy of a reaction and the rate constant at one temperature are known, then we can calculate the reaction rate at any other temperature. We can use Equation 3.6.5 to express the known rate constant (k_1) at the first temperature (T_1) as follows:

$$\ln k_1 = \ln A - \frac{E_\text{a}}{RT_1}$$

Similarly, we can express the unknown rate constant (k_2) at the second temperature (T_2) as follows:

$$\ln k_2 = \ln A - \frac{E_\text{a}}{RT_2}$$

C These two equations contain four known quantities (E_a, T_1, T_2, and k_1) and two unknowns (A and k_2). We can eliminate A by subtracting the first equation from the second:

$$\begin{aligned}\ln k_2 - \ln k_1 &= \left(\ln A - \frac{E_a}{RT_2}\right) - \left(\ln A - \frac{E_a}{RT_1}\right)\\ &= -\frac{E_a}{RT_2} + \frac{E_a}{RT_1}\end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\ln \frac{k_2}{k_1} = \frac{E_a}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right)$$

D To obtain the best prediction of chirping rate at 308 K (T_2), we try to choose for T_1 and k_1 the measured rate constant and corresponding temperature in the data table that is closest to the best-fit line in the graph. Choosing data for T_1 = 296 K, where f = 158, and using the E_a calculated previously,

$$\begin{aligned}\ln \frac{k_{T_2}}{k_{T_1}} &= \frac{E_a}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right)\\ &= \frac{55\ \text{kJ/mol}}{8.314\ \text{J/(K}\cdot\text{mol)}}\left(\frac{1000\ \text{J}}{1\ \text{kJ}}\right)\left(\frac{1}{296\ \text{K}} - \frac{1}{308\ \text{K}}\right)\\ &= 0.87\end{aligned}$$

Thus k_{308}/k_{296} = 2.4 and k_{308} = (2.4)(158) = 380, and the chirping rate on a night when the temperature is 308 K is predicted to be 380 chirps per minute.

? Exercise 3.6.1A

The equation for the decomposition of NO_2 to NO and O_2 is second order in NO_2:

$$2\,NO_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,NO(g) + O_2(g)$$

Data for the reaction rate as a function of temperature are listed in the following table. Calculate E_a for the reaction and the rate constant at 700 K.

Data for the reaction rate as a function of temperature

T (K)	k ($M^{-1}\cdot s^{-1}$)
592	522
603	755
627	1700
652	4020
656	5030

Answer

E_a = 114 kJ/mol; k_{700}= 18,600 $M^{-1}\cdot s^{-1}$ = 1.86 × 10^4 $M^{-1}\cdot s^{-1}$.

? Exercise 3.6.1B

What E_a results in a doubling of the reaction rate with a 10°C increase in temperature from 20° to 30°C?

Answer

about 51 kJ/mol

A Video Discussing Graphing Using the Arrhenius Equation: Graphing Using the Arrhenius Equation (opens in new window) [youtu.be] (opens in new window)

Summary

For a chemical reaction to occur, an energy threshold must be overcome, and the reacting species must also have the correct spatial orientation. The Arrhenius equation is $k = Ae^{-E_a/RT}$. A minimum energy (activation energy,vE_a) is required for a collision between molecules to result in a chemical reaction. Plots of potential energy for a system versus the reaction coordinate show an energy barrier that must be overcome for the reaction to occur. The arrangement of atoms at the highest point of this barrier is the activated complex, or transition state, of the reaction. At a given temperature, the higher the E_a, the slower the reaction. The fraction of orientations that result in a reaction is the steric factor. The frequency factor, steric factor, and activation energy are related to the rate constant in the Arrhenius equation: $k = Ae^{-E_a/RT}$. A plot of the natural logarithm of k versus $1/T$ is a straight line with a slope of $-E_a/R$.

3.7: Reaction Mechanisms

Learning Objectives

- To determine the individual steps of a simple reaction.

One of the major reasons for studying chemical kinetics is to use measurements of the macroscopic properties of a system, such as the rate of change in the concentration of reactants or products with time, to discover the sequence of events that occur at the molecular level during a reaction. This molecular description is the mechanism of the reaction; it describes how individual atoms, ions, or molecules interact to form particular products. The stepwise changes are collectively called the reaction mechanism.

In an internal combustion engine, for example, isooctane reacts with oxygen to give carbon dioxide and water:

$$2\,C_8H_{18}(l) + 25\,O_2(g) \longrightarrow 16\,CO_2(g) + 18\,H_2O(g) \tag{3.7.1}$$

For this reaction to occur in a single step, 25 dioxygen molecules and 2 isooctane molecules would have to collide simultaneously and be converted to 34 molecules of product, which is very unlikely. It is more likely that a complex series of reactions takes place in a stepwise fashion. Each individual reaction, which is called an **elementary reaction**, involves one, two, or (rarely) three atoms, molecules, or ions. The overall sequence of elementary reactions is the **mechanism** of the reaction. The sum of the individual steps, or elementary reactions, in the mechanism must give the balanced chemical equation for the overall reaction.

> *The overall sequence of elementary reactions is the mechanism of the reaction.*

Molecularity and the Rate-Determining Step

To demonstrate how the analysis of elementary reactions helps us determine the overall reaction mechanism, we will examine the much simpler reaction of carbon monoxide with nitrogen dioxide.

$$NO_2(g) + CO(g) \longrightarrow NO(g) + CO_2(g) \tag{3.7.2}$$

From the balanced chemical equation, one might expect the reaction to occur via a collision of one molecule of NO_2 with a molecule of CO that results in the transfer of an oxygen atom from nitrogen to carbon. The experimentally determined rate law for the reaction, however, is as follows:

$$rate = k[NO_2]^2 \tag{3.7.3}$$

The fact that the reaction is second order in $[NO_2]$ and independent of $[CO]$ tells us that it does not occur by the simple collision model outlined previously. If it did, its predicted rate law would be

$$rate = k[NO_2][CO].$$

The following two-step mechanism is consistent with the rate law if step 1 is much slower than step 2:

two-step mechanism

step 1	$NO_2 + NO_2 \xrightarrow{slow} NO_3 + NO$	elementary reaction
step 2	$\underline{NO_3 + CO \rightarrow NO_2 + CO_2}$	elementary reaction
sum	$NO_2 + CO \rightarrow NO + CO_2$	overall reaction

According to this mechanism, the overall reaction occurs in two steps, or elementary reactions. Summing steps 1 and 2 and canceling on both sides of the equation gives the overall balanced chemical equation for the reaction. The NO_3 molecule is an **intermediate** in the reaction, a species that does not appear in the balanced chemical equation for the overall reaction. It is formed as a product of the first step but is consumed in the second step.

> *The sum of the elementary reactions in a reaction mechanism **must** give the overall balanced chemical equation of the reaction.*

Using Molecularity to Describe a Rate Law

The **molecularity** of an elementary reaction is the number of molecules that collide during that step in the mechanism. If there is only a single reactant molecule in an elementary reaction, that step is designated as **unimolecular**; if there are two reactant molecules, it is **bimolecular**; and if there are three reactant molecules (a relatively rare situation), it is **termolecular**. Elementary reactions that involve the simultaneous collision of more than three molecules are highly improbable and have never been observed experimentally. (To understand why, try to make three or more marbles or pool balls collide with one another simultaneously!)

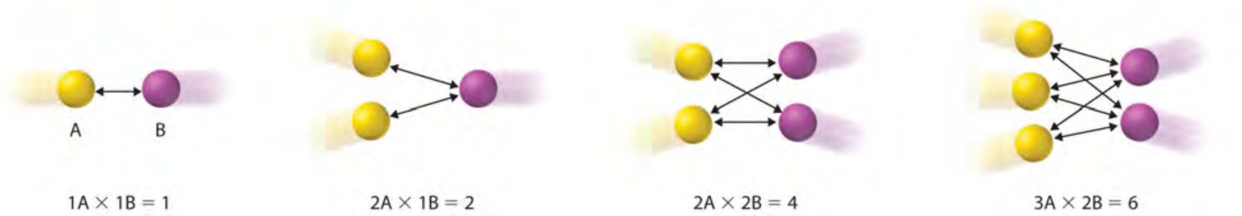


Figure 3.7.1: The Basis for Writing Rate Laws of Elementary Reactions. This diagram illustrates how the number of possible collisions per unit time between two reactant species, A and B, depends on the number of A and B particles present. The number of collisions between A and B particles increases as the product of the number of particles, not as the sum. This is why the rate law for an elementary reaction depends on the product of the concentrations of the species that collide in that step. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

Writing the rate law for an elementary reaction is straightforward because we know how many molecules must collide simultaneously for the elementary reaction to occur; hence the order of the elementary reaction is the same as its molecularity (Table 3.7.1). In contrast, the rate law for the reaction cannot be determined from the balanced chemical equation for the overall reaction. The general rate law for a unimolecular elementary reaction (A → products) is

$$rate = k[A].$$

For bimolecular reactions, the reaction rate depends on the number of collisions per unit time, which is proportional to the product of the concentrations of the reactants, as shown in Figure 3.7.1. For a bimolecular elementary reaction of the form A + B → products, the general rate law is

$$rate = k[A][B].$$

Table 3.7.1: Common Types of Elementary Reactions and Their Rate Laws

Elementary Reaction	Molecularity	Rate Law	Reaction Order
A → products	unimolecular	rate = $k[A]$	first
2A → products	bimolecular	rate = $k[A]^2$	second
A + B → products	bimolecular	rate = $k[A][B]$	second
2A + B → products	termolecular	rate = $k[A]^2[B]$	third
A + B + C → products	termolecular	rate = $k[A][B][C]$	third

> *For elementary reactions, the order of the elementary reaction is the same as its molecularity. In contrast, the rate law* ***cannot*** *be determined from the balanced chemical equation for the overall reaction (unless it is a single step mechanism and is therefore also an elementary step).*

Identifying the Rate-Determining Step

Note the important difference between writing rate laws for elementary reactions and the balanced chemical equation of the overall reaction. Because the balanced chemical equation does not necessarily reveal the individual elementary reactions by which the reaction occurs, we cannot obtain the rate law for a reaction from the overall balanced chemical equation alone. In fact, it is the rate law for the slowest overall reaction, which is the same as the rate law for the slowest step in the reaction mechanism, the **rate-determining step**, that must give the experimentally determined rate law for the overall reaction.This statement is true if one step is substantially slower than all the others, typically by a factor of 10 or more. If two or more slow steps have comparable rates, the experimentally determined rate laws can become complex. Our discussion is limited to reactions in which one step can be identified as being substantially slower than any other. The reason for this is that any process that occurs through a sequence of steps can take place no faster than the slowest step in the sequence. In an automotive assembly line, for example, a component cannot be used faster than it is produced. Similarly, blood pressure is regulated by the flow of blood through the smallest passages, the capillaries. Because movement through capillaries constitutes the rate-determining step in blood flow, blood pressure can be regulated by medications that cause the capillaries to contract or dilate. A chemical reaction that occurs via a series of elementary reactions can take place no faster than the slowest step in the series of reactions.

Rate-determining step. The phenomenon of a rate-determining step can be compared to a succession of funnels. The smallest-diameter funnel controls the rate at which the bottle is filled, whether it is the first or the last in the series. Pouring liquid into the first funnel faster than it can drain through the smallest results in an overflow. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

Look at the rate laws for each elementary reaction in our example as well as for the overall reaction.

rate laws for each elementary reaction in our example as well as for the overall reaction.

step 1	$NO_2 + NO_2 \xrightarrow{k_1} NO_3 + NO$	rate $= k_1[NO_2]^2$ (predicted)
step 2	$\underline{NO_3 + CO \xrightarrow{k_2} NO_2 + CO_2}$	rate $= k_2[NO_3][CO]$ (predicted)
sum	$NO_2 + CO \xrightarrow{k} NO + CO_2$	rate $= k[NO_2]^2$ (observed)

The experimentally determined rate law for the reaction of NO_2 with CO is the same as the predicted rate law for step 1. This tells us that the first elementary reaction is the rate-determining step, so k for the overall reaction must equal k_1. That is, NO_3 is formed slowly in step 1, but once it is formed, it reacts very rapidly with CO in step 2.

Sometimes chemists are able to propose two or more mechanisms that are consistent with the available data. If a proposed mechanism predicts the wrong experimental rate law, however, the mechanism must be incorrect.

✓ Example 3.7.1: A Reaction with an Intermediate

In an alternative mechanism for the reaction of NO_2 with CO with N_2O_4 appearing as an intermediate.

alternative mechanism for the reaction of NO_2 with CO with N_2O_4 appearing as an intermediate.

step 1	$NO_2 + NO_2 \xrightarrow{k_1} N_2O_4$
step 2	$\underline{N_2O_4 + CO \xrightarrow{k_2} NO + NO_2 + CO_2}$
sum	$NO_2 + CO \rightarrow NO + CO_2$

Write the rate law for each elementary reaction. Is this mechanism consistent with the experimentally determined rate law (rate $= k[NO_2]^2$)?

Given: elementary reactions

Asked for: rate law for each elementary reaction and overall rate law

Strategy:

A. Determine the rate law for each elementary reaction in the reaction.
B. Determine which rate law corresponds to the experimentally determined rate law for the reaction. This rate law is the one for the rate-determining step.

Solution

A The rate law for step 1 is rate = $k_1[NO_2]^2$; for step 2, it is rate = $k_2[N_2O_4][CO]$.

B If step 1 is slow (and therefore the rate-determining step), then the overall rate law for the reaction will be the same: rate = $k_1[NO_2]^2$. This is the same as the experimentally determined rate law. Hence this mechanism, with N_2O_4 as an intermediate, and the one described previously, with NO_3 as an intermediate, are kinetically indistinguishable. In this case, further experiments are needed to distinguish between them. For example, the researcher could try to detect the proposed intermediates, NO_3 and N_2O_4, directly.

? Exercise 3.7.1

Iodine monochloride (ICl) reacts with H_2 as follows:

$$2\,\text{ICl}(l) + \text{H}_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,\text{HCl}(g) + \text{I}_2(s)$$

The experimentally determined rate law is $rate = k[\text{ICl}][\text{H}_2]$. Write a two-step mechanism for this reaction using only bimolecular elementary reactions and show that it is consistent with the experimental rate law. (Hint: HI is an intermediate.)

Answer

Solutions to Exercise 14.6.1

step 1	$\text{ICl} + \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{k_1} \text{HCl} + \text{HI}$	$\text{rate} = k_1[\text{ICl}][\text{H}_2]$ (slow)
step 2	$\underline{\text{HI} + \text{ICl} \xrightarrow{k_2} \text{HCl} + \text{I}_2}$	$\text{rate} = k_2[\text{HI}][\text{ICl}]$ (fast)
sum	$2\text{ICl} + \text{H}_2 \rightarrow 2\text{HCl} + \text{I}_2$	

This mechanism is consistent with the experimental rate law if the first step is the rate-determining step.

✓ Example 3.7.2 : Nitrogen Oxide Reacting with Molecular Hydrogen

Assume the reaction between NO and H_2 occurs via a three-step process:

the reaction between NO and H_2 occurs via a three-step process

step 1	$\text{NO} + \text{NO} \xrightarrow{k_1} \text{N}_2\text{O}_2$	(fast)
step 2	$\text{N}_2\text{O}_2 + \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{k_2} \text{N}_2\text{O} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$	(slow)
step 3	$\text{N}_2\text{O} + \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{k_3} \text{N}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$	(fast)

Write the rate law for each elementary reaction, write the balanced chemical equation for the overall reaction, and identify the rate-determining step. Is the rate law for the rate-determining step consistent with the experimentally derived rate law for the overall reaction:

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{NO}]^2[\text{H}_2]? \qquad \text{(observed)}$$

Answer

- Step 1: $rate = k_1[NO]^2$
- Step 2: $rate = k_2[N_2O_2][H_2]$
- Step 3: $rate = k_3[N_2O][H_2]$

The overall reaction is then

$$2\,NO(g) + 2\,H_2(g) \longrightarrow N_2(g) + 2\,H_2O(g)$$

- Rate Determining Step : #2
- Yes, because the rate of formation of $[N_2O_2] = k_1[NO]^2$. Substituting $k_1[NO]^2$ for $[N_2O_2]$ in the rate law for step 2 gives the experimentally derived rate law for the overall chemical reaction, where $k = k_1k_2$.

Reaction Mechanism (Slow step followed by fast step): Reaction Mechanism (Slow step Followed by Fast Step)(opens in new window) [youtu.be] (opens in new window)

Summary

A balanced chemical reaction does not necessarily reveal either the individual elementary reactions by which a reaction occurs or its rate law. A reaction mechanism is the microscopic path by which reactants are transformed into products. Each step is an elementary reaction. Species that are formed in one step and consumed in another are intermediates. Each elementary reaction can be described in terms of its *molecularity*, the number of molecules that collide in that step. The slowest step in a reaction mechanism is the rate-determining step.

3.8: Catalysis

Learning Objectives

- To understand how catalysts increase the reaction rate and the selectivity of chemical reactions.

Catalysts are substances that increase the reaction rate of a chemical reaction without being consumed in the process. A catalyst, therefore, does not appear in the overall stoichiometry of the reaction it catalyzes, but it must appear in at least one of the elementary reactions in the mechanism for the catalyzed reaction. The catalyzed pathway has a lower E_a, but the net change in energy that results from the reaction (the difference between the energy of the reactants and the energy of the products) is not affected by the presence of a catalyst (Figure $3.8.1$). Nevertheless, because of its lower E_a, the reaction rate of a catalyzed reaction is faster than the reaction rate of the uncatalyzed reaction at the same temperature. Because a catalyst decreases the height of the energy barrier, its presence increases the reaction rates of both the forward and the reverse reactions by the same amount. In this section, we will examine the three major classes of catalysts: heterogeneous catalysts, homogeneous catalysts, and enzymes.

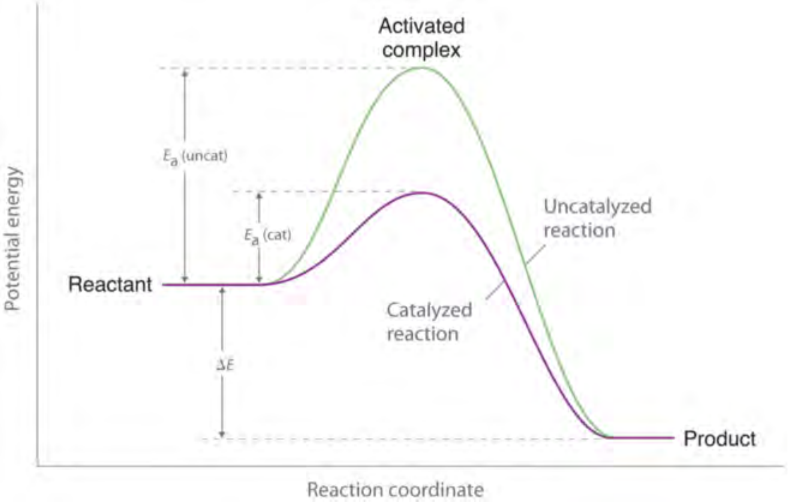


Figure $3.8.1$: Lowering the Activation Energy of a Reaction by a Catalyst. This graph compares potential energy diagrams for a single-step reaction in the presence and absence of a catalyst. The only effect of the catalyst is to lower the activation energy of the reaction. The catalyst does not affect the energy of the reactants or products (and thus does not affect ΔE). (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

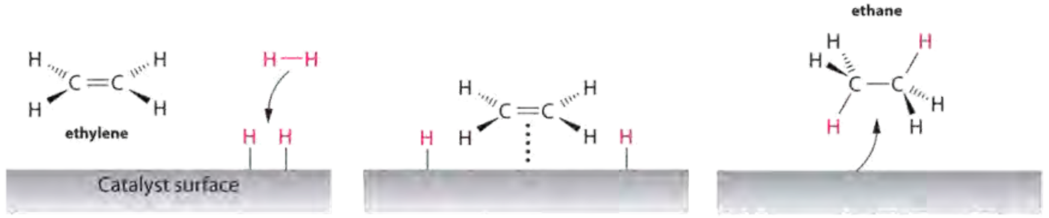
The green line represents the uncatalyzed reaction. The purple line represent the catalyzed reaction .

> *A catalyst affects E_a, not ΔE.*

Heterogeneous Catalysis

In **heterogeneous catalysis**, the catalyst is in a different phase from the reactants. At least one of the reactants interacts with the solid surface in a physical process called adsorption in such a way that a chemical bond in the reactant becomes weak and then breaks. Poisons are substances that bind irreversibly to catalysts, preventing reactants from adsorbing and thus reducing or destroying the catalyst’s efficiency.

An example of heterogeneous catalysis is the interaction of hydrogen gas with the surface of a metal, such as Ni, Pd, or Pt. As shown in part (a) in Figure $3.8.2$, the hydrogen–hydrogen bonds break and produce individual adsorbed hydrogen atoms on the surface of the metal. Because the adsorbed atoms can move around on the surface, two hydrogen atoms can collide and form a molecule of hydrogen gas that can then leave the surface in the reverse process, called desorption. Adsorbed H atoms on a metal surface are substantially more reactive than a hydrogen molecule. Because the relatively strong H–H bond (dissociation energy = 432 kJ/mol) has already been broken, the energy barrier for most reactions of H_2 is substantially lower on the catalyst surface.



(a) Hydrogen (H_2) adsorbs to the catalyst surface (M) to form adsorbed H atoms.

(b) Ethylene (C_2H_4) adsorbs to the catalyst surface.

(c) Ethylene reacts with adsorbed H atoms to give the product ethane (C_2H_6).

Figure 3.8.2: Hydrogenation of Ethylene on a Heterogeneous Catalyst. When a molecule of hydrogen adsorbs to the catalyst surface, the H–H bond breaks, and new M–H bonds are formed. The individual H atoms are more reactive than gaseous H_2. When a molecule of ethylene interacts with the catalyst surface, it reacts with the H atoms in a stepwise process to eventually produce ethane, which is released. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

Figure 3.8.2 shows a process called *hydrogenation*, in which hydrogen atoms are added to the double bond of an alkene, such as ethylene, to give a product that contains C–C single bonds, in this case ethane. Hydrogenation is used in the food industry to convert vegetable oils, which consist of long chains of alkenes, to more commercially valuable solid derivatives that contain alkyl chains. Hydrogenation of some of the double bonds in polyunsaturated vegetable oils, for example, produces margarine, a product with a melting point, texture, and other physical properties similar to those of butter.

Several important examples of industrial heterogeneous catalytic reactions are in Table 3.8.1. Although the mechanisms of these reactions are considerably more complex than the simple hydrogenation reaction described here, they all involve adsorption of the reactants onto a solid catalytic surface, chemical reaction of the adsorbed species (sometimes via a number of intermediate species), and finally desorption of the products from the surface.

Table 3.8.1: Some Commercially Important Reactions that Employ Heterogeneous Catalysts

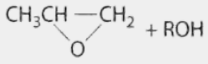
Commercial Process	Catalyst	Initial Reaction	Final Commercial Product
contact process	V_2O_5 or Pt	$2SO_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2SO_3$	H_2SO_4
Haber process	Fe, K_2O, Al_2O_3	$N_2 + 3H_2 \rightarrow 2NH_3$	NH_3
Ostwald process	Pt and Rh	$4NH_3 + 5O_2 \rightarrow 4NO + 6H_2O$	HNO_3
water–gas shift reaction	Fe, Cr_2O_3, or Cu	$CO + H_2O \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2$	H_2 for NH_3, CH_3OH, and other fuels
steam reforming	Ni	$CH_4 + H_2O \rightarrow CO + 3H_2$	H_2
methanol synthesis	ZnO and Cr_2O_3	$CO + 2H_2 \rightarrow CH_3OH$	CH_3OH
Sohio process	bismuth phosphomolybdate	$CH_2{=}CHCH_3 + NH_3 + \frac{3}{2}O_2 \rightarrow CH_2{=}CHCN + 3H_2O$	$\underset{\text{acrylonitrile}}{CH_2{=}CHCN}$
catalytic hydrogenation	Ni, Pd, or Pt	$RCH{=}CHR' + H2 \rightarrow RCH_2—CH_2R'$	partially hydrogenated oils for margarine, and so forth

Homogeneous Catalysis

In **homogeneous catalysis**, the catalyst is in the same phase as the reactant(s). The number of collisions between reactants and catalyst is at a maximum because the catalyst is uniformly dispersed throughout the reaction mixture. Many homogeneous catalysts in industry are transition metal compounds (Table 3.8.2), but recovering these expensive catalysts from solution has been a major challenge. As an added barrier to their widespread commercial use, many homogeneous catalysts can be used only at relatively low temperatures, and even then they tend to decompose slowly in solution. Despite these problems, a number of commercially viable processes have been developed in recent years. High-density polyethylene and polypropylene are produced by homogeneous catalysis.

Table 3.8.2: Some Commercially Important Reactions that Employ Homogeneous Catalysts

Commercial Process	Catalyst	Reactants	Final Product
Union Carbide	$[Rh(CO)_2I_2]^-$	$CO + CH_3OH$	CH_3CO_2H

Commercial Process	Catalyst	Reactants	Final Product
hydroperoxide process	Mo(VI) complexes	$CH_3CH=CH_2 + R–O–O–H$	 propylene oxide
hydroformylation	Rh/PR_3 complexes	$RCH=CH_2 + CO + H_2$	RCH_2CH_2CHO
adiponitrile process	Ni/PR_3complexes	$2HCN + CH_2=CHCH=CH_2$	$NCCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CN$ used to synthesize nylon
olefin polymerization	$(RC_5H_5)_2ZrCl_2$	$CH_2=CH_2$	$–(CH_2CH_2–)_n$: high-density polyethylene

Enzymes

Enzymes, catalysts that occur naturally in living organisms, are almost all protein molecules with typical molecular masses of 20,000–100,000 amu. Some are homogeneous catalysts that react in aqueous solution within a cellular compartment of an organism. Others are heterogeneous catalysts embedded within the membranes that separate cells and cellular compartments from their surroundings. The reactant in an enzyme-catalyzed reaction is called a **substrate**.

Because enzymes can increase reaction rates by enormous factors (up to 10^{17} times the uncatalyzed rate) and tend to be very specific, typically producing only a single product in quantitative yield, they are the focus of active research. At the same time, enzymes are usually expensive to obtain, they often cease functioning at temperatures greater than 37 °C, have limited stability in solution, and have such high specificity that they are confined to turning one particular set of reactants into one particular product. This means that separate processes using different enzymes must be developed for chemically similar reactions, which is time-consuming and expensive. Thus far, enzymes have found only limited industrial applications, although they are used as ingredients in laundry detergents, contact lens cleaners, and meat tenderizers. The enzymes in these applications tend to be proteases, which are able to cleave the amide bonds that hold amino acids together in proteins. Meat tenderizers, for example, contain a protease called papain, which is isolated from papaya juice. It cleaves some of the long, fibrous protein molecules that make inexpensive cuts of beef tough, producing a piece of meat that is more tender. Some insects, like the bombadier beetle, carry an enzyme capable of catalyzing the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide to water (Figure $3.8.3$).

Figure $3.8.3$: A Catalytic Defense Mechanism. The scalding, foul-smelling spray emitted by this bombardier beetle is produced by the catalytic decomposition of H_2O_2.

Enzyme inhibitors cause a decrease in the reaction rate of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction by binding to a specific portion of an enzyme and thus slowing or preventing a reaction from occurring. Irreversible inhibitors are therefore the equivalent of poisons in heterogeneous catalysis. One of the oldest and most widely used commercial enzyme inhibitors is aspirin, which selectively inhibits one of the enzymes involved in the synthesis of molecules that trigger inflammation. The design and synthesis of related molecules that are more effective, more selective, and less toxic than aspirin are important objectives of biomedical research.

Summary

Catalysts participate in a chemical reaction and increase its rate. They do not appear in the reaction's net equation and are not consumed during the reaction. Catalysts allow a reaction to proceed via a pathway that has a lower activation energy than the uncatalyzed reaction. In heterogeneous catalysis, catalysts provide a surface to which reactants bind in a process of adsorption. In homogeneous catalysis, catalysts are in the same phase as the reactants. Enzymes are biological catalysts that produce large increases in reaction rates and tend to be specific for certain reactants and products. The reactant in an enzyme-catalyzed reaction is called a substrate. Enzyme inhibitors cause a decrease in the reaction rate of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Chemical Equilibrium

4.1: Fetal Hemoglobin and Equilibrium

4.2: The Concept of Dynamic Equilibrium

Learning Objectives

- To understand what is meant by chemical equilibrium.

In the last chapter, we discussed the principles of chemical kinetics, which deal with the *rate of change*, or how quickly a given chemical reaction occurs. We now turn our attention to the *extent* to which a reaction occurs and how reaction conditions affect the final concentrations of reactants and products. For most of the reactions that we have discussed so far, you may have assumed that once reactants are converted to products, they are likely to remain that way. In fact, however, virtually all chemical reactions are *reversible* to some extent. That is, an opposing reaction occurs in which the products react, to a greater or lesser degree, to re-form the reactants. Eventually, the forward and reverse reaction rates become the same, and the system reaches **chemical equilibrium,** the point at which the composition of the system no longer changes with time.

Figure 4.2.1: Dinitrogen tetroxide is a powerful oxidizer that reacts spontaneously upon contact with various forms of hydrazine, which makes the pair a popular propellant combination for rockets. Nitrogen dioxide at −196 °C, 0 °C, 23 °C, 35 °C, and 50 °C. (NO_2) converts to the colorless dinitrogen tetroxide (N_2O_4) at low temperatures, and reverts to NO_2 at higher temperatures. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Eframgoldberg).

Chemical equilibrium is a dynamic process that consists of a forward reaction, in which reactants are converted to products, and a reverse reaction, in which products are converted to reactants. At equilibrium, the forward and reverse reactions proceed at equal rates. Consider, for example, a simple system that contains only one reactant and one product, the reversible dissociation of dinitrogen tetroxide (N_2O_4) to nitrogen dioxide (NO_2). You may recall that NO_2 is responsible for the brown color we associate with smog. When a sealed tube containing solid N_2O_4 (mp = −9.3°C; bp = 21.2°C) is heated from −78.4°C to 25°C, the red-brown color of NO_2 appears (Figure 4.2.1). The reaction can be followed visually because the product (NO_2) is colored, whereas the reactant (N_2O_4) is colorless:

$$\underset{colorless}{N_2O_4(g)} \underset{k_r}{\overset{k_f}{\rightleftharpoons}} \underset{red-brown}{2\,NO_2(g)} \tag{4.2.1}$$

The double arrow indicates that both the forward reaction

$$N_2O_4(g) \xrightarrow{k_f} 2\,NO_2(g) \tag{4.2.2}$$

and reverse reaction

$$2\,NO_2(g) \xrightarrow{k_r} N_2O_4(g) \tag{4.2.3}$$

occurring simultaneously (i.e, the reaction is reversible). However, this does not necessarily mean the system is equilibrium as the following chapter demonstrates.

Figure 4.2.2 shows how the composition of this system would vary as a function of time at a constant temperature. If the initial concentration of NO_2 were zero, then it increases as the concentration of N_2O_4 decreases. Eventually the composition of the system stops changing with time, and chemical equilibrium is achieved. Conversely, if we start with a sample that contains no N_2O_4 but an initial NO_2 concentration twice the initial concentration of N_2O_4 (Figure 4.2.2*a*), in accordance with the stoichiometry of the reaction, we reach exactly the same equilibrium composition (Figure $4.2.2b$). Thus equilibrium can be approached from either direction in a chemical reaction.

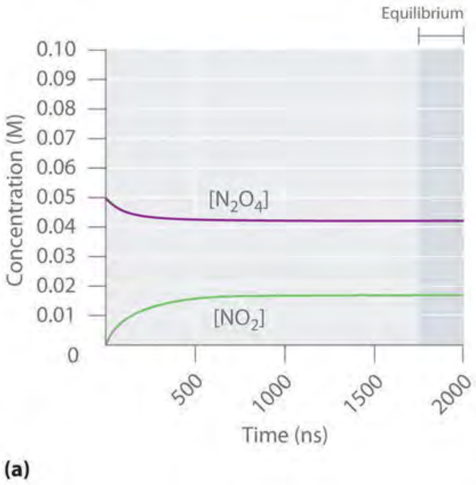


Figure $4.2.2$: The Composition of N_2O_4/NO_2 Mixtures as a Function of Time at Room Temperature. (a) Initially, this idealized system contains 0.0500 M gaseous N_2O_4 and no gaseous NO_2. The concentration of N_2O_4 decreases with time as the concentration of NO_2 increases. (b) Initially, this system contains 0.1000 M NO_2 and no N_2O_4. The concentration of NO_2 decreases with time as the concentration of N_2O_4 increases. In both cases, the final concentrations of the substances are the same: [N_2O_4] = 0.0422 M and [NO_2] = 0.0156 M at equilibrium. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

Figure $4.2.3$ shows the forward and reverse reaction rates for a sample that initially contains pure NO_2. Because the initial concentration of N_2O_4 is zero, the forward reaction rate (dissociation of N_2O_4) is initially zero as well. In contrast, the reverse reaction rate (dimerization of NO_2) is initially very high ($2.0 \times 10^6\ M/s$), but it decreases rapidly as the concentration of NO_2 decreases. As the concentration of N_2O_4 increases, the rate of dissociation of N_2O_4 increases—but more slowly than the dimerization of NO_2—because the reaction is only first order in N_2O_4 (rate = $k_f[N_2O_4]$, where k_f is the rate constant for the forward reaction in Equations 4.2.1 and 4.2.2). Eventually, the forward and reverse reaction rates become identical, $k_f = k_r$, and the system has reached chemical equilibrium. If the forward and reverse reactions occur at different rates, then the system is not at equilibrium.

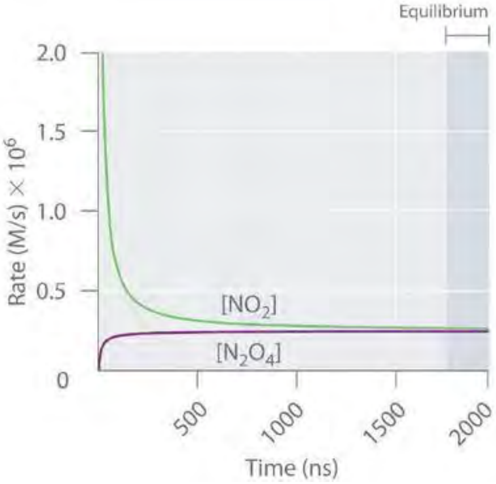


Figure $4.2.3$: The Forward and Reverse Reaction Rates as a Function of Time for the $N_2O_{4(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2NO_{2(g)}$ System Shown in Part (b) in Figure 4.2.2. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

The rate of dimerization of NO_2 (reverse reaction) decreases rapidly with time, as expected for a second-order reaction. Because the initial concentration of N_2O_4 is zero, the rate of the dissociation reaction (forward reaction) at $t = 0$ is also zero. As the dimerization reaction proceeds, the N_2O_4 concentration increases, and its rate of dissociation also increases. Eventually the rates of the two reactions are equal: chemical equilibrium has been reached, and the concentrations of N_2O_4 and NO_2 no longer change.

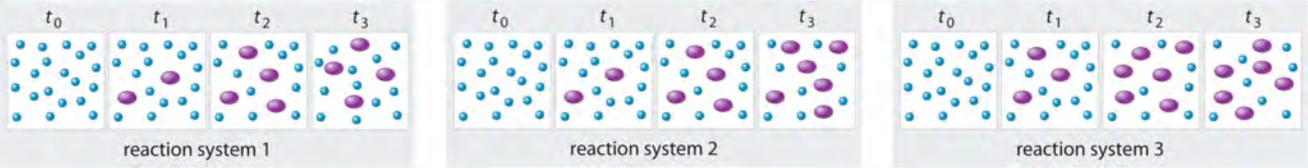
> *At equilibrium, the forward reaction rate is equal to the reverse reaction rate.*

Example 4.2.1

The three reaction systems (1, 2, and 3) depicted in the accompanying illustration can all be described by the equation:

$$2A \rightleftharpoons B$$

where the blue circles are A and the purple ovals are B. Each set of panels shows the changing composition of one of the three reaction mixtures as a function of time. Which system took the longest to reach chemical equilibrium?



In reaction system 1 theree are four purple ovals at t3. In reaction system 2 there are size purple ovals at t3. In reaction system systems there are six ovals at t2 and t3.

Given: three reaction systems

Asked for: relative time to reach chemical equilibrium

Strategy:

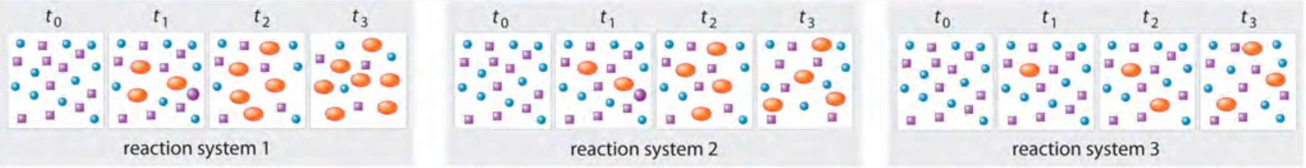
Compare the concentrations of A and B at different times. The system whose composition takes the longest to stabilize took the longest to reach chemical equilibrium.

Solution:

In systems 1 and 3, the concentration of A decreases from t_0 through t_2 but is the same at both t_2 and t_3. Thus systems 1 and 3 are at equilibrium by t_3. In system 2, the concentrations of A and B are still changing between t_2 and t_3, so system 2 may not yet have reached equilibrium by t_3. Thus system 2 took the longest to reach chemical equilibrium.

Exercise 4.2.1

In the following illustration, A is represented by blue circles, B by purple squares, and C by orange ovals; the equation for the reaction is A + B ⇌ C. The sets of panels represent the compositions of three reaction mixtures as a function of time. Which, if any, of the systems shown has reached equilibrium?



In reaction system 1 there are seven orange ovals at t3. In reaction system two there are four orange ovals at t3. In reaction system three there are three orange ovals at t3.

Answer

system 2

A Video Introduction to Dynamic Equilibrium: Introduction to Dynamic Equilibrium(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

At equilibrium, the forward and reverse reactions of a system proceed at equal rates. Chemical equilibrium is a dynamic process consisting of forward and reverse reactions that proceed at equal rates. At equilibrium, the composition of the system no longer changes with time. The composition of an equilibrium mixture is independent of the direction from which equilibrium is approached.

4.3: The Equilibrium Constant (K)

Learning Objectives

- To know the relationship between the equilibrium constant and the rate constants for the forward and reverse reactions.
- To write an equilibrium constant expression for any reaction.

Because an equilibrium state is achieved when the forward reaction rate equals the reverse reaction rate, under a given set of conditions there must be a relationship between the composition of the system at equilibrium and the kinetics of a reaction (represented by rate constants). We can show this relationship using the decomposition reaction of N_2O_4 to NO_2. Both the forward and reverse reactions for this system consist of a single elementary reaction, so the reaction rates are as follows:

$$\text{forward rate} = k_f[N_2O_4]$$

and

$$\text{reverse rate} = k_r[NO_2]^2$$

At equilibrium, the forward rate equals the reverse rate (definition of equilibrium):

$$k_f[N_2O_4] = k_r[NO_2]^2 \tag{4.3.1}$$

so

$$\frac{k_f}{k_r} = \frac{[NO_2]^2}{[N_2O_4]} \tag{4.3.2}$$

The ratio of the rate constants gives us a new constant, the equilibrium constant (K), which is defined as follows:

$$K = \frac{k_f}{k_r} \tag{4.3.3}$$

Hence there is a fundamental relationship between chemical kinetics and chemical equilibrium: under a given set of conditions, the composition of the equilibrium mixture is determined by the magnitudes of the rate constants for the forward and the reverse reactions.

> *The equilibrium constant is equal to the rate constant for the forward reaction divided by the rate constant for the reverse reaction.*

A Video for Determining the Equilibrium Expression: Determining the Equilibrium Expression(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Table $4.3.1$ lists the initial and equilibrium concentrations from five different experiments using the reaction system described by Equation 4.3.1. At equilibrium the magnitude of the quantity $[NO_2]^2/[N_2O_4]$ is essentially the same for all five experiments. In fact, no matter what the initial concentrations of NO_2 and N_2O_4 are, at equilibrium the quantity $[NO_2]^2/[N_2O_4]$ will always be

$6.53 \pm 0.03 \times 10^{-3}$ at 25°C, which corresponds to the ratio of the rate constants for the forward and reverse reactions. That is, at a given temperature, the equilibrium constant for a reaction always has the same value, even though the specific concentrations of the reactants and products vary depending on their initial concentrations.

Table 4.3.1: Initial and Equilibrium Concentrations for $NO_2 : N_2O_4$ Mixtures at 25°C

[\(\ce{NO2}\)] (M)	**Initial Concentrations [\(\ce{NO2}\)] (M)**		**Concentrations at Equilibrium**		
Experiment	$[N_2O_4]$ (M)	$[NO_2]$ (M)	$[N_2O_4]$ (M)	$[NO_2]$ (M)	$K = [NO_2]^2/[N_2O_4]$
1	0.0500	0.0000	0.0417	0.0165	6.54×10^{-3}
2	0.0000	0.1000	0.0417	0.0165	6.54×10^{-3}
3	0.0750	0.0000	0.0647	0.0206	6.56×10^{-3}
4	0.0000	0.0750	0.0304	0.0141	6.54×10^{-3}
5	0.0250	0.0750	0.0532	0.0186	6.50×10^{-3}

Developing an Equilibrium Constant Expression

In 1864, the Norwegian chemists Cato Guldberg (1836–1902) and Peter Waage (1833–1900) carefully measured the compositions of many reaction systems at equilibrium. They discovered that for any reversible reaction of the general form

$$aA + bB \rightleftharpoons cC + dD \tag{4.3.4}$$

where A and B are reactants, C and D are products, and a, b, c, and d are the stoichiometric coefficients in the balanced chemical equation for the reaction, the ratio of the product of the equilibrium concentrations of the products (raised to their coefficients in the balanced chemical equation) to the product of the equilibrium concentrations of the reactants (raised to their coefficients in the balanced chemical equation) is always a constant under a given set of conditions. This relationship is known as the law of mass action (or law of chemical equilibrium) and can be stated as follows:

$$K = \frac{[C]^c[D]^d}{[A]^a[B]^b} \tag{4.3.5}$$

where K is the equilibrium constant for the reaction. Equation 4.3.4 is called the equilibrium equation, and the right side of Equation 4.3.5 is called the equilibrium constant expression. The relationship shown in Equation 4.3.5 is true for any pair of opposing reactions regardless of the mechanism of the reaction or the number of steps in the mechanism.

The equilibrium constant can vary over a wide range of values. The values of K shown in Table $4.3.2$, for example, vary by 60 orders of magnitude. Because products are in the numerator of the equilibrium constant expression and reactants are in the denominator, values of K greater than 10^3 indicate a strong tendency for reactants to form products. In this case, chemists say that equilibrium lies to the right as written, favoring the formation of products. An example is the reaction between H_2 and Cl_2 to produce HCl, which has an equilibrium constant of 1.6×10^{33} at 300 K. Because H_2 is a good reductant and Cl_2 is a good oxidant, the reaction proceeds essentially to completion. In contrast, values of K less than 10^{-3} indicate that the ratio of products to reactants at equilibrium is very small. That is, reactants do not tend to form products readily, and the equilibrium lies to the left as written, favoring the formation of reactants.

Table 4.3.2: Equilibrium Constants for Selected Reactions*

Reaction	**Temperature (K)**	**Equilibrium Constant (K)**
$S_{(s)} + O_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons SO_{2(g)}$	300	4.4×10^{53}
$2H_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2H2O_{(g)}$	500	2.4×10^{47}
$H_{2(g)} + Cl_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2HCl_{(g)}$	300	1.6×10^{33}
$H_{2(g)} + Br_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2HBr_{(g)}$	300	4.1×10^{18}
$2NO_{(g)} + O_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2NO_{2(g)}$	300	4.2×10^{13}
$3H_{2(g)} + N_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2NH_{3(g)}$	300	2.7×10^{8}

*Equilibrium constants vary with temperature. The K values shown are for systems at the indicated temperatures.

Reaction	Temperature (K)	Equilibrium Constant (K)
$H_{2(g)} + D_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2HD_{(g)}$	100	1.92
$H_{2(g)} + I_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2HI_{(g)}$	300	2.9×10^{-1}
$I_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2I_{(g)}$	800	4.6×10^{-7}
$Br_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2Br_{(g)}$	1000	4.0×10^{-7}
$Cl_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2Cl_{(g)}$	1000	1.8×10^{-9}
$F_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2F_{(g)}$	500	7.4×10^{-13}

*Equilibrium constants vary with temperature. The K values shown are for systems at the indicated temperatures.

Effective vs. True Concentrations

You will also notice in Table $4.3.2$ that equilibrium constants have no units, even though Equation 4.3.5 suggests that the units of concentration might not always cancel because the exponents may vary. **In fact, equilibrium constants are calculated using "effective concentrations," or activities, of reactants and products, which are the ratios of the measured concentrations to a standard state of 1 M.** As shown in Equation 4.3.6, the units of concentration cancel, which makes K unitless as well:

$$\frac{[A]_{measured}}{[A]_{standard\ state}} = \frac{\cancel{M}}{\cancel{M}} = \frac{\cancel{\frac{mol}{L}}}{\cancel{\frac{mol}{L}}} \tag{4.3.6}$$

Because equilibrium constants are calculated using "effective concentrations" relative to a standard state of 1 M, values of K are unitless.

Many reactions have equilibrium constants between 1000 and 0.001 ($10^3 \geq K \geq 10^{-3}$), neither very large nor very small. At equilibrium, these systems tend to contain significant amounts of both products and reactants, indicating that there is not a strong tendency to form either products from reactants or reactants from products. An example of this type of system is the reaction of gaseous hydrogen and deuterium, a component of high-stability fiber-optic light sources used in ocean studies, to form HD:

$$\mathrm{H_2(g) + D_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,HD(g)}$$

The equilibrium constant expression for this reaction is

$$K = \frac{[HD]^2}{[H_2][D_2]}$$

with K varying between 1.9 and 4 over a wide temperature range (100–1000 K). Thus an equilibrium mixture of H_2, D_2, and HD contains significant concentrations of both product and reactants.

Figure $4.3.3$ summarizes the relationship between the magnitude of K and the relative concentrations of reactants and products at equilibrium for a general reaction, written as reactants $\rightleftharpoons$ products. Because there is a direct relationship between the kinetics of a reaction and the equilibrium concentrations of products and reactants (Equations 4.3.6 and 4.3.5), when $k_f \gg k_r$, K is a **large** number, and the concentration of products at equilibrium predominate. This corresponds to an essentially irreversible reaction. Conversely, when $k_f \ll k_r$, K is a very **small** number, and the reaction produces almost no products as written. Systems for which $k_f \approx k_r$ have significant concentrations of both reactants and products at equilibrium.

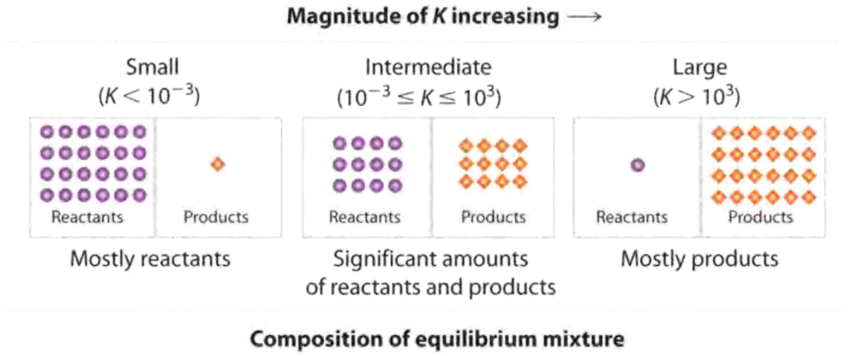


Figure 4.3.3: The Relationship between the Composition of the Mixture at Equilibrium and the Magnitude of the Equilibrium Constant. The larger the K, the farther the reaction proceeds to the right before equilibrium is reached, and the greater the ratio of products to reactants at equilibrium.

If K is less than 0.001, it is considered small and it will be mostly reactants. If K is greater than 1000, it is considered large and it will be mostly products. If K is greater than or equal to 0.001 and less than or equal to 1000, it is considered intermediate. there will be significant amounts or reactants and products.

> *A large value of the equilibrium constant K means that products predominate at equilibrium; a small value means that reactants predominate at equilibrium.*

Example 4.3.1: Equilibrium Constant Expressions

Write the equilibrium constant expression for each reaction.

- $N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g)$
- $CO(g) + \frac{1}{2}O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons CO_2(g)$
- $2\,CO_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,CO(g) + O_2(g)$

Given: balanced chemical equations

Asked for: equilibrium constant expressions

Strategy:

Refer to Equation 4.3.5. Place the arithmetic product of the concentrations of the products (raised to their stoichiometric coefficients) in the numerator and the product of the concentrations of the reactants (raised to their stoichiometric coefficients) in the denominator.

Solution:

The only product is ammonia, which has a coefficient of 2. For the reactants, N_2 has a coefficient of 1 and H_2 has a coefficient of 3. The equilibrium constant expression is as follows:

$$\frac{[NH_3]^2}{[N_2][H_2]^3}$$

The only product is carbon dioxide, which has a coefficient of 1. The reactants are CO, with a coefficient of 1, and O_2, with a coefficient of $\frac{1}{2}$. Thus the equilibrium constant expression is as follows:

$$\frac{[CO_2]}{[CO][O_2]^{1/2}}$$

This reaction is the reverse of the reaction in part b, with all coefficients multiplied by 2 to remove the fractional coefficient for O_2. The equilibrium constant expression is therefore the inverse of the expression in part b, with all exponents multiplied by 2

$$\frac{[CO]^2[O_2]}{[CO_2]^2}$$

❓ Exercise 4.3.1

Write the equilibrium constant expression for each reaction.

a. $N_2O(g) \rightleftharpoons N_2(g) + \frac{1}{2}O_2(g)$
b. $2\,C_8H_{18}(g) + 25\,O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 16\,CO_2(g) + 18\,H_2O(g)$
c. $H_2(g) + I_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,HI(g)$

Answer a

$$K = \frac{[N_2][O_2]^{1/2}}{[N_2O]}$$

Answer b

$$K = \frac{[CO_2]^{16}[H_2O]^{18}}{[C_8H_{18}]^2[O_2]^{25}}$$

Answer c

$$K = \frac{[HI]^2}{[H_2][I_2]}$$

✓ Example 4.3.2

Predict which systems at equilibrium will (a) contain essentially only products, (b) contain essentially only reactants, and (c) contain appreciable amounts of both products and reactants.

1. $H_{2(g)} + I_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2HI_{(g)} \qquad K_{(700K)} = 54$
2. $2CO_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2CO_{(g)} + O_{2(g)} \qquad K_{(1200K)} = 3.1 \times 10^{-18}$
3. $PCl_{5(g)} \rightleftharpoons PCl_{3(g)} + Cl_{2(g)} \qquad K_{(613K)} = 97$
4. $2O_{3(g)} \rightleftharpoons 3O_{2(g)} \qquad K_{(298K)} = 5.9 \times 10^{55}$

Given: systems and values of K

Asked for: composition of systems at equilibrium

Strategy:

Use the value of the equilibrium constant to determine whether the equilibrium mixture will contain essentially only products, essentially only reactants, or significant amounts of both.

Solution:

a. Only system 4 has $K \gg 10^3$, so at equilibrium it will consist of essentially only products.
b. System 2 has $K \ll 10^{-3}$, so the reactants have little tendency to form products under the conditions specified; thus, at equilibrium the system will contain essentially only reactants.
c. Both systems 1 and 3 have equilibrium constants in the range $10^3 \geq K \geq 10^{-3}$, indicating that the equilibrium mixtures will contain appreciable amounts of both products and reactants.

❓ Exercise 4.3.2

Hydrogen and nitrogen react to form ammonia according to the following balanced chemical equation:

$$3\,H_2(g) + N_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g)$$

Values of the equilibrium constant at various temperatures were reported as

- $K_{25^\circ C} = 3.3 \times 10^8$,
- $K_{177^\circ C} = 2.6 \times 10^3$, and
- $K_{327^\circ C} = 4.1$.

a. At which temperature would you expect to find the highest proportion of H_2 and N_2 in the equilibrium mixture?
b. Assuming that the reaction rates are fast enough so that equilibrium is reached quickly, at what temperature would you design a commercial reactor to operate to maximize the yield of ammonia?

Answer a

327°C, where K is smallest

Answer b

25°C

Video which Discusses What Does K Tell us About a Reaction?: What Does K Tell us About a Reaction?(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Variations in the Form of the Equilibrium Constant Expression

Because equilibrium can be approached from either direction in a chemical reaction, the equilibrium constant expression and thus the magnitude of the equilibrium constant depend on the form in which the chemical reaction is written. For example, if we write the reaction described in Equation 4.3.4 in reverse, we obtain the following:

$$cC + dD \rightleftharpoons aA + bB \tag{4.3.7}$$

The corresponding equilibrium constant K' is as follows:

$$K' = \frac{[A]^a[B]^b}{[C]^c[D]^d} \tag{4.3.8}$$

This expression is the inverse of the expression for the original equilibrium constant, so $K' = 1/K$. That is, when we write a reaction in the reverse direction, the equilibrium constant expression is inverted. For instance, the equilibrium constant for the reaction $N_2O_4 \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2$ is as follows:

$$K = \frac{[NO_2]^2}{[N_2O_4]} \tag{4.3.9}$$

but for the opposite reaction, $2NO_2 \rightleftharpoons N_2O_4$, the equilibrium constant K′ is given by the inverse expression:

$$K' = \frac{[N_2O_4]}{[NO_2]^2} \tag{4.3.10}$$

Consider another example, the formation of water:

$$2\,H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,H_2O(g).$$

Because H_2 is a good reductant and O_2 is a good oxidant, this reaction has a very large equilibrium constant ($K = 2.4 \times 10^{47}$ at 500 K). Consequently, the equilibrium constant for the reverse reaction, the decomposition of water to form O_2 and H_2, is very small: $K' = 1/K = 1/(2.4 \times 10^{47}) = 4.2 \times 10^{-48}$. As suggested by the very small equilibrium constant, and fortunately for life as we know it, a substantial amount of energy is indeed needed to dissociate water into H_2 and O_2.

> *The equilibrium constant for a reaction written in reverse is the inverse of the equilibrium constant for the reaction as written originally.*

Writing an equation in different but chemically equivalent forms also causes both the equilibrium constant expression and the magnitude of the equilibrium constant to be different. For example, we could write the equation for the reaction

$$2\,NO_2 \rightleftharpoons N_2O_4$$

as

$$NO_2 \rightleftharpoons \tfrac{1}{2}N_2O_4$$

with the equilibrium constant K″ is as follows:

$$K'' = \frac{[N_2O_4]^{1/2}}{[NO_2]} \tag{4.3.11}$$

The values for K′ (Equation 4.3.10) and K″ are related as follows:

$$K'' = (K')^{1/2} = \sqrt{K'} \tag{4.3.12}$$

In general, if all the coefficients in a balanced chemical equation were subsequently multiplied by n, then the new equilibrium constant is the original equilibrium constant raised to the n^{th} power.

A Video Discussing Relationships Involving Equilibrium Constants: Relationships Involving Equilibrium Constants(opens in new window) [youtu.be] (opens in new window)

✓ Example 4.3.3: The Haber Process

At 745 K, K is 0.118 for the following reaction:

$$N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g)$$

What is the equilibrium constant for each related reaction at 745 K?

a. $2\,NH_3(g) \rightleftharpoons N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g)$
b. $\tfrac{1}{2}N_2(g) + \tfrac{3}{2}H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons NH_3(g)$

Given: balanced equilibrium equation, K at a given temperature, and equations of related reactions

Asked for: values of K for related reactions

Strategy:

Write the equilibrium constant expression for the given reaction and for each related reaction. From these expressions, calculate K for each reaction.

Solution:

The equilibrium constant expression for the given reaction of $N_{2(g)}$ with $H_{2(g)}$ to produce $NH_{3(g)}$ at 745 K is as follows:

$$K = \frac{[NH_3]^2}{[N_2][H_2]^3} = 0.118$$

This reaction is the reverse of the one given, so its equilibrium constant expression is as follows:

$$K' = \frac{1}{K} = \frac{[N_2][H_2]^3}{[NH_3]^2} = \frac{1}{0.118} = 8.47$$

In this reaction, the stoichiometric coefficients of the given reaction are divided by 2, so the equilibrium constant is calculated as follows:

$$K'' = \frac{[NH_3]}{[N_2]^{1/2}[H_2]^{3/2}} = K^{1/2} = \sqrt{K} = \sqrt{0.118} = 0.344$$

? Exercise

At 527°C, the equilibrium constant for the reaction

$$2\,\mathrm{SO_2(g)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{SO_3(g)}$$

is 7.9×10^4. Calculate the equilibrium constant for the following reaction at the same temperature:

$$\mathrm{SO_3(g)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{SO_2(g)} + \tfrac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2(g)}$$

Answer

3.6×10^{-3}

Equilibrium Constant Expressions for Systems that Contain Gases

For reactions that involve species in solution, the concentrations used in equilibrium calculations are usually expressed in moles/liter. For gases, however, the concentrations are usually expressed in terms of partial pressures rather than molarity, where the standard state is 1 atm of pressure. The symbol K_p is used to denote equilibrium constants calculated from partial pressures. For the general reaction $aA + bB \rightleftharpoons cC + dD$, in which all the components are gases, the equilibrium constant expression can be written as the ratio of the partial pressures of the products and reactants (each raised to its coefficient in the chemical equation):

$$K_p = \frac{(P_C)^c(P_D)^d}{(P_A)^a(P_B)^b} \tag{4.3.13}$$

Thus K_p for the decomposition of N_2O_4 (Equation 15.1) is as follows:

$$K_p = \frac{(P_{NO_2})^2}{P_{N_2O_4}} \tag{4.3.14}$$

Like K, K_p is a unitless quantity because the quantity that is actually used to calculate it is an “effective pressure,” the ratio of the measured pressure to a standard state of 1 bar (approximately 1 atm), which produces a unitless quantity. The “effective pressure” is called the fugacity, just as activity is the effective concentration.

Because partial pressures are usually expressed in atmospheres or mmHg, the molar concentration of a gas and its partial pressure do not have the same numerical value. Consequently, the numerical values of K and K_p are usually different. They are, however, related by the ideal gas constant (R) and the absolute temperature (T):

$$K_p = K(RT)^{\Delta n} \tag{4.3.15}$$

where K is the equilibrium constant expressed in units of concentration and Δn is the difference between the numbers of moles of **gaseous** products and **gaseous** reactants ($n_p - n_r$). The temperature is expressed as the absolute temperature in Kelvin. According to Equation 4.3.15, $K_p = K$ only if the moles of gaseous products and gaseous reactants are the same (i.e., $\Delta n = 0$). For the decomposition of N_2O_4, there are 2 mol of gaseous product and 1 mol of gaseous reactant, so $\Delta n = 1$. Thus, for this reaction,

\[K_p = K(RT)^1 = KRT \nonumber \]

✓ Example 4.3.4: The Haber Process (again)

The equilibrium constant for the reaction of nitrogen and hydrogen to give ammonia is 0.118 at 745 K. The balanced equilibrium equation is as follows:

$$\mathrm{N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g)}$$

What is K_p for this reaction at the same temperature?

Given: equilibrium equation, equilibrium constant, and temperature

Asked for: K_p

Strategy:

Use the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation to calculate Δn. Then use Equation 4.3.15to calculate K from K_p.

Solution:

This reaction has 2 mol of gaseous product and 4 mol of gaseous reactants, so $\Delta n = (2-4) = -2$. We know K, and $T = 745\ K$. Thus, from Equation 4.3.12, we have the following:

$$\begin{aligned} K_p &= K(RT)^{-2} \\ &= \frac{K}{(RT)^2} \\ &= \frac{0.118}{\{[0.08206(L \cdot atm)/(mol \cdot K)][745\ K]\}^2} \\ &= 3.16 \times 10^{-5} \end{aligned}$$

Because K_p is a unitless quantity, the answer is $K_p = 3.16 \times 10^{-5}$.

? Exercise 4.3.4

Calculate K_p for the reaction

$$\mathrm{2\,SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,SO_3(g)}$$

at 527°C, if $K = 7.9 \times 10^4$ at this temperature.

Answer

$K_p = 1.2 \times 10^3$

Video Discussing Converting Kc to Kp: Converting Kc to Kp(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Equilibrium Constant Expressions for the Sums of Reactions

Chemists frequently need to know the equilibrium constant for a reaction that has not been previously studied. In such cases, the desired reaction can often be written as the sum of other reactions for which the equilibrium constants are known. The equilibrium constant for the unknown reaction can then be calculated from the tabulated values for the other reactions.

To illustrate this procedure, let's consider the reaction of N_2 with O_2 to give NO_2. This reaction is an important source of the NO_2 that gives urban smog its typical brown color. The reaction normally occurs in two distinct steps. In the first reaction (step 1), N_2 reacts with O_2 at the high temperatures inside an internal combustion engine to give NO. The released NO then reacts with additional O_2 to give NO_2 (step 2). The equilibrium constant for each reaction at 100°C is also given.

$$\mathrm{N_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO(g)} \qquad K_1 = 2.0 \times 10^{-25}$$

$$\mathrm{2\,NO(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g)} \quad K_2 = 6.4 \times 10^{9}$$

Summing reactions (step 1) and (step 2) gives the overall reaction of N_2 with O_2:

$$\mathrm{N_2(g) + 2\,O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g)} \qquad K_3 = ?$$

The equilibrium constant expressions for the reactions are as follows:

$$K_1 = \frac{[NO]^2}{[N_2][O_2]} \qquad K_2 = \frac{[NO_2]^2}{[NO]^2[O_2]} \qquad K_3 = \frac{[NO_2]^2}{[N_2][O_2]^2}$$

What is the relationship between K_1, K_2, and K_3, all at 100°C? The expression for K_1 has $[NO]^2$ in the numerator, the expression for K_2 has $[NO]^2$ in the denominator, and $[NO]^2$ does not appear in the expression for K_3. Multiplying K_1 by K_2 and canceling the $[NO]^2$ terms,

$$K_1K_2 = \frac{\cancel{[NO]^2}}{[N_2][O_2]} \times \frac{[NO_2]^2}{\cancel{[NO]^2}[O_2]} = \frac{[NO_2]^2}{[N_2][O_2]^2} = K_3$$

Thus the product of the equilibrium constant expressions for K_1 and K_2 is the same as the equilibrium constant expression for K_3:

$$K_3 = K_1K_2 = (2.0 \times 10^{-25})(6.4 \times 10^{9}) = 1.3 \times 10^{-15}$$

The equilibrium constant for a reaction that is the sum of two or more reactions is equal to the product of the equilibrium constants for the individual reactions. In contrast, recall that according to Hess's Law, ΔH for the sum of two or more reactions is the sum of the ΔH values for the individual reactions.

> *To determine K for a reaction that is the sum of two or more reactions, add the reactions but multiply the equilibrium constants.*

✓ Example 4.3.6

The following reactions occur at 1200°C:

1. $CO_{(g)} + 3H_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons CH_{4(g)} + H_2O_{(g)} \qquad K_1 = 9.17 \times 10^{-2}$
2. $CH_{4(g)} + 2H_2S_{(g)} \rightleftharpoons CS_{2(g)} + 4H_{2(g)} \qquad K_2 = 3.3 \times 10^4$

Calculate the equilibrium constant for the following reaction at the same temperature.

3. $CO_{(g)} + 2H_2S_{(g)} \rightleftharpoons CS_{2(g)} + H_2O_{(g)} + H_{2(g)} \qquad K_3 = ?$

Given: two balanced equilibrium equations, values of K, and an equilibrium equation for the overall reaction

Asked for: equilibrium constant for the overall reaction

Strategy:

Arrange the equations so that their sum produces the overall equation. If an equation had to be reversed, invert the value of K for that equation. Calculate K for the overall equation by multiplying the equilibrium constants for the individual equations.

Solution:

The key to solving this problem is to recognize that reaction 3 is the sum of reactions 1 and 2:

$$CO_{(g)} + \cancel{3H_{2(g)}} \rightleftharpoons \cancel{CH_{4(g)}} + H_2O_{(g)}$$

$$\cancel{CH_{4(g)}} + 2H_2S_{(g)} \rightleftharpoons CS_{2(g)} + \cancel{3H_{2(g)}} + H_{2(g)}$$

$$CO_{(g)} + 3H_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons CS_{2(g)} + H_2O_{(g)} + H_{2(g)}$$

The values for K_1 and K_2 are given, so it is straightforward to calculate K_3:

$$K_3 = K_1 K_2 = (9.17 \times 10^{-2})(3.3 \times 10^4) = 3.03 \times 10^3$$

? Exercise 4.3.6

In the first of two steps in the industrial synthesis of sulfuric acid, elemental sulfur reacts with oxygen to produce sulfur dioxide. In the second step, sulfur dioxide reacts with additional oxygen to form sulfur trioxide. The reaction for each step is shown, as is the value of the corresponding equilibrium constant at 25°C. Calculate the equilibrium constant for the overall reaction at this same temperature.

1. $\frac{1}{8}S_{8(s)} + O_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons SO_{2(g)} \qquad K_1 = 4.4 \times 10^{53}$
2. $SO_{2(g)} + \frac{1}{2}O_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons SO_{3(g)} \qquad K_2 = 2.6 \times 10^{12}$
3. $\frac{1}{8}S_{8(s)} + \frac{3}{2}O_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons SO_{3(g)} \qquad K_3 = ?$

Answer

$K_3 = 1.1 \times 10^{66}$

Summary

The ratio of the rate constants for the forward and reverse reactions at equilibrium is the equilibrium constant (K), a unitless quantity. The composition of the equilibrium mixture is therefore determined by the magnitudes of the forward and reverse rate constants at equilibrium. Under a given set of conditions, a reaction will always have the same K. For a system at equilibrium, the law of mass action relates K to the ratio of the equilibrium concentrations of the products to the concentrations of the reactants raised to their respective powers to match the coefficients in the equilibrium equation. The ratio is called the equilibrium constant expression. When a reaction is written in the reverse direction, K and the equilibrium constant expression are inverted. For gases, the equilibrium constant expression can be written as the ratio of the partial pressures of the products to the partial pressures of the reactants, each raised to a power matching its coefficient in the chemical equation. An equilibrium constant calculated from partial pressures (K_p) is related to K by the ideal gas constant (R), the temperature (T), and the change in the number of moles of gas during the reaction. An equilibrium system that contains products and reactants in a single phase is a homogeneous equilibrium; a system whose reactants, products, or both are in more than one phase is a heterogeneous equilibrium. When a reaction can be expressed as the sum of two or more reactions, its equilibrium constant is equal to the product of the equilibrium constants for the individual reactions.

- The law of mass action describes a system at equilibrium in terms of the concentrations of the products and the reactants.
- For a system involving one or more gases, either the molar concentrations of the gases or their partial pressures can be used.
- Definition of equilibrium constant in terms of forward and reverse rate constants:

$$K=\frac{k_f}{k_r}$$

- Equilibrium constant expression (law of mass action):

$$K=\frac{[C]^c[D]^d}{[A]^a[B]^b}$$

- Equilibrium constant expression for reactions involving gases using partial pressures:

$$K_p=\frac{(P_C)^c(P_D)^d}{(P_A)^a(P_B)^b}$$

- Relationship between K_p and K:

$$K_p=K(RT)^{\Delta n}$$

4.4: Expressing the Equilibrium Constant in Terms of Pressure

Learning Objectives

- To understand how different phases affect equilibria.

When the products and reactants of an equilibrium reaction form a single phase, whether gas or liquid, the system is a homogeneous equilibrium. In such situations, the concentrations of the reactants and products can vary over a wide range. In contrast, a system whose reactants, products, or both are in more than one phase is a heterogeneous equilibrium, such as the reaction of a gas with a solid or liquid.

As noted in the previous section, the equilibrium constant expression is actually a ratio of activities. To simplify the calculations in general chemistry courses, the activity of each substance in the reaction is often approximated using a ratio of the molarity of a substance compared to the standard state of that substance. For substances that are liquids or solids, the standard state is just the concentration of the substance within the liquid or solid. Because the molar concentrations of pure liquids and solids normally do not vary greatly with temperature, the ratio of the molarity to the standard state for substances that are liquids or solids always has a value of 1. For example, for a compound such as $CaF_2(s)$, the term going into the equilibrium expression is $[CaF_2]/[CaF_2]$ which cancels to unity. Thus, when the activities of the solids and liquids (including solvents) are incorporated into the equilibrium expression, they do not change the value.

Consider the following reaction, which is used in the final firing of some types of pottery to produce brilliant metallic glazes:

$$\mathrm{CO_2(g) + C(s) \rightleftharpoons 2\,CO(g)} \tag{4.4.1}$$

The glaze is created when metal oxides are reduced to metals by the product, carbon monoxide. The equilibrium constant expression for this reaction is as follows:

$$K = \frac{a^2_{\mathrm{CO}}}{a_{\mathrm{CO_2}} a_C} = \frac{[\mathrm{CO}]^2}{[\mathrm{CO_2}][1]} = \frac{[\mathrm{CO}]^2}{[\mathrm{CO_2}]} \tag{4.4.2}$$

The equilibrium constant for this reaction can also be written in terms of the partial pressures of the gases:

$$K_p = \frac{(P_{CO})^2}{P_{CO_2}} \tag{4.4.3}$$

Incorporating all the constant values into K' or K_p allows us to focus on the substances whose concentrations change during the reaction.

Although the activities of pure liquids or solids are not written explicitly in the equilibrium constant expression, these substances must be present in the reaction mixture for chemical equilibrium to occur. Whatever the concentrations of CO and $\mathrm{CO_2}$, the system described in Equation 4.4.1 will reach chemical equilibrium only if a stoichiometric amount of solid carbon or excess solid carbon has been added so that some is still present once the system has reached equilibrium. As shown in Figure $4.4.1$, it does not matter whether 1 g or 100 g of solid carbon is present; in either case, the composition of the gaseous components of the system will be the same at equilibrium.

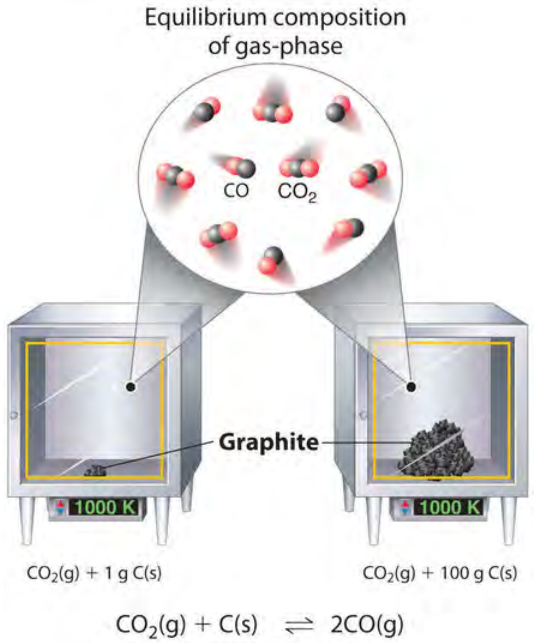


Figure 4.4.2: Effect of the Amount of Solid Present on Equilibrium in a Heterogeneous Solid–Gas System. In the system, the equilibrium composition of the gas phase at a given temperature, 1000 K in this case, is the same whether a small amount of solid carbon (left) or a large amount (right) is present.

✓ Example 4.4.1

Write each expression for K, incorporating all constants, and K_p for the following equilibrium reactions.

a. $\mathrm{PCl_3(l) + Cl_2(g) \rightleftharpoons PCl_5(s)}$
b. $\mathrm{Fe_3O_4(s) + 4\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 3\,Fe(s) + 4\,H_2O(g)}$

Given: balanced equilibrium equations.

Asked for: expressions for K and K_p.

Strategy:

Find K by writing each equilibrium constant expression as the ratio of the concentrations of the products and reactants, each raised to its coefficient in the chemical equation. Then express K_p as the ratio of the partial pressures of the products and reactants, each also raised to its coefficient in the chemical equation.

Solution

This reaction contains a pure solid (PCl_5) and a pure liquid (PCl_3). Their activities are equal to 1, so when incorporated into the equilibrium constant expression, they do not change the value. So

$$K = \frac{1}{(1)[Cl_2]}$$

and

$$K_p = \frac{1}{(1)P_{Cl_2}}$$

This reaction contains two pure solids (Fe_3O_4 and Fe), which are each assigned a value of 1 in the equilibrium constant expressions:

$$K = \frac{(1)[H_2O]^4}{(1)[H_2]^4}$$

and

$$K_p = \frac{(1)(P_{H_2O})^4}{(1)(P_{H_2})^4}$$

? Exercise 4.4.1

Write the expressions for K and K_p for the following reactions.

a. $\mathrm{CaCO_3(s) \rightleftharpoons CaO(s) + CO_2(g)}$
b. $\underbrace{\mathrm{C_6H_{12}O_6(s)}}_{glucose} + \mathrm{6\,O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 6\,CO_2(g) + 6\,H_2O(g)}$

Answer a

$K = [\mathrm{CO_2}]$ and $K_p = P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}$

Answer b

$$K = \frac{[CO_2]^6[H_2O]^6}{[O_2]^6} \text{ and } K_p = \frac{(P_{CO_2})^6(P_{H_2O})^6}{(P_{O_2})^6}$$

For reactions carried out in solution, the solvent is assumed to be pure, and therefore is assigned an activity equal to 1 in the equilibrium constant expression. The activities of the solutes are approximated by their molarities. The result is that the equilibrium constant expressions appear to only depend upon the concentrations of the solutes.

> *The activities of pure solids, pure liquids, and solvents are defined as having a value of '1'. Often, it is said that these activities are "left out" of equilibrium constant expressions. This is an unfortunate use of words. The activities are not "left out" of equilibrium constant expressions. Rather, because they have a value of '1', they do not change the value of the equilibrium constant when they are multiplied together with the other terms. The activities of the solutes are approximated by their molarities.*

Summary

An equilibrated system that contains products and reactants in a single phase is a homogeneous equilibrium; a system whose reactants, products, or both are in more than one phase is a heterogeneous equilibrium.

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous
- Modified by Tom Neils (Grand Rapids Community College)

4.5: Heterogenous Equilibria - Reactions Involving Solids and Liquids

Learning Objectives

- To understand how different phases affect equilibria.

When the products and reactants of an equilibrium reaction form a single phase, whether gas or liquid, the system is a homogeneous equilibrium. In such situations, the concentrations of the reactants and products can vary over a wide range. In contrast, a system whose reactants, products, or both are in more than one phase is a heterogeneous equilibrium, such as the reaction of a gas with a solid or liquid.

As noted in the previous section, the equilibrium constant expression is actually a ratio of activities. To simplify the calculations in general chemistry courses, the activity of each substance in the reaction is often approximated using a ratio of the molarity of a substance compared to the standard state of that substance. For substances that are liquids or solids, the standard state is just the concentration of the substance within the liquid or solid. Because the molar concentrations of pure liquids and solids normally do not vary greatly with temperature, the ratio of the molarity to the standard state for substances that are liquids or solids always has a value of 1. For example, for a compound such as CaF_2(s), the term going into the equilibrium expression is $[CaF_2]/[CaF_2]$ which cancels to unity. Thus, when the activities of the solids and liquids (including solvents) are incorporated into the equilibrium expression, they do not change the value.

Consider the following reaction, which is used in the final firing of some types of pottery to produce brilliant metallic glazes:

$$\mathrm{CO_2(g) + C(s) \rightleftharpoons 2\,CO(g)} \tag{4.5.1}$$

The glaze is created when metal oxides are reduced to metals by the product, carbon monoxide. The equilibrium constant expression for this reaction is as follows:

$$K = \frac{a^2_{\mathrm{CO}}}{a_{\mathrm{CO_2}} a_C} = \frac{[\mathrm{CO}]^2}{[\mathrm{CO_2}][1]} = \frac{[\mathrm{CO}]^2}{[\mathrm{CO_2}]} \tag{4.5.2}$$

The equilibrium constant for this reaction can also be written in terms of the partial pressures of the gases:

$$K_p = \frac{(P_{CO})^2}{P_{CO_2}} \tag{4.5.3}$$

Incorporating all the constant values into K' or K_p allows us to focus on the substances whose concentrations change during the reaction.

Although the activities of pure liquids or solids are not written explicitly in the equilibrium constant expression, these substances must be present in the reaction mixture for chemical equilibrium to occur. Whatever the concentrations of CO and $\mathrm{CO_2}$, the system described in Equation 4.5.1 will reach chemical equilibrium only if a stoichiometric amount of solid carbon or excess solid carbon has been added so that some is still present once the system has reached equilibrium. As shown in Figure 4.5.1, it does not matter whether 1 g or 100 g of solid carbon is present; in either case, the composition of the gaseous components of the system will be the same at equilibrium.

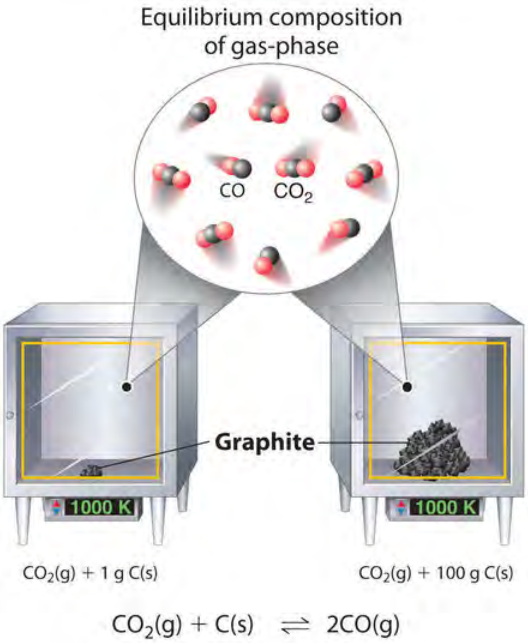


Figure 4.5.2: Effect of the Amount of Solid Present on Equilibrium in a Heterogeneous Solid–Gas System. In the system, the equilibrium composition of the gas phase at a given temperature, 1000 K in this case, is the same whether a small amount of solid carbon (left) or a large amount (right) is present.

Example 4.5.1

Write each expression for K, incorporating all constants, and K_p for the following equilibrium reactions.

a. $PCl_3(l) + Cl_2(g) \rightleftharpoons PCl_5(s)$
b. $Fe_3O_4(s) + 4\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 3\,Fe(s) + 4\,H_2O(g)$

Given: balanced equilibrium equations.

Asked for: expressions for K and K_p.

Strategy:

Find K by writing each equilibrium constant expression as the ratio of the concentrations of the products and reactants, each raised to its coefficient in the chemical equation. Then express K_p as the ratio of the partial pressures of the products and reactants, each also raised to its coefficient in the chemical equation.

Solution

This reaction contains a pure solid (PCl_5) and a pure liquid (PCl_3). Their activities are equal to 1, so when incorporated into the equilibrium constant expression, they do not change the value. So

$$K = \frac{1}{(1)[Cl_2]}$$

and

$$K_p = \frac{1}{(1)P_{Cl_2}}$$

This reaction contains two pure solids (Fe_3O_4 and Fe), which are each assigned a value of 1 in the equilibrium constant expressions:

$$K = \frac{(1)[H_2O]^4}{(1)[H_2]^4}$$

and

$$K_p = \frac{(1)(P_{H_2O})^4}{(1)(P_{H_2})^4}$$

Exercise 4.5.1

Write the expressions for K and K_p for the following reactions.

a. $\mathrm{CaCO_3(s) \rightleftharpoons CaO(s) + CO_2(g)}$
b. $\underbrace{\mathrm{C_6H_{12}O_6(s)}}_{glucose} + \mathrm{6\,O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 6\,CO_2(g) + 6\,H_2O(g)}$

Answer a

$K = [\mathrm{CO_2}]$ and $K_p = P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}$

Answer b

$$K = \frac{[CO_2]^6[H_2O]^6}{[O_2]^6} \text{ and } K_p = \frac{(P_{CO_2})^6(P_{H_2O})^6}{(P_{O_2})^6}$$

For reactions carried out in solution, the solvent is assumed to be pure, and therefore is assigned an activity equal to 1 in the equilibrium constant expression. The activities of the solutes are approximated by their molarities. The result is that the equilibrium constant expressions appear to only depend upon the concentrations of the solutes.

> *The activities of pure solids, pure liquids, and solvents are defined as having a value of '1'. Often, it is said that these activities are "left out" of equilibrium constant expressions. This is an unfortunate use of words. The activities are not "left out" of equilibrium constant expressions. Rather, because they have a value of '1', they do not change the value of the equilibrium constant when they are multiplied together with the other terms. The activities of the solutes are approximated by their molarities.*

Summary

An equilibrated system that contains products and reactants in a single phase is a homogeneous equilibrium; a system whose reactants, products, or both are in more than one phase is a heterogeneous equilibrium.

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous
- Modified by Tom Neils (Grand Rapids Community College)

4.6: The Reaction Quotient- Predicting the Direction of Change

Learning Objectives

- To predict in which direction a reaction will proceed.

We previously saw that knowing the magnitude of the equilibrium constant under a given set of conditions allows chemists to predict the extent of a reaction. Often, however, chemists must decide whether a system has reached equilibrium or if the composition of the mixture will continue to change with time. In this section, we describe how to quantitatively analyze the composition of a reaction mixture to make this determination.

The Reaction Quotient

To determine whether a system has reached equilibrium, chemists use a Quantity called the reaction Quotient (Q). The expression for the reaction Quotient has precisely the same form as the equilibrium constant expression, except that Q may be derived from a set of values measured at any time during the reaction of any mixture of the reactants and the products, regardless of whether the system is at equilibrium. Therefore, for the following general reaction:

$$aA + bB \rightleftharpoons cC + dD$$

the reaction quotient is defined as follows:

$$Q = \frac{[C]^c[D]^d}{[A]^a[B]^b} \tag{4.6.1}$$

To understand how information is obtained using a reaction Quotient, consider the dissociation of dinitrogen tetroxide to nitrogen dioxide,

$$N_2O_4(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g)$$

for which $K = 4.65 \times 10^{-3}$ at 298 K. We can write Q for this reaction as follows:

$$Q = \frac{[NO_2]^2}{[N_2O_4]} \tag{4.6.2}$$

The following table lists data from three experiments in which samples of the reaction mixture were obtained and analyzed at equivalent time intervals, and the corresponding values of Q were calculated for each. Each experiment begins with different proportions of product and reactant:

Table 4.6.1: Equilibrium Experiment data

Experiment	$[NO_2]$ (M)	$[N_2O_4]$ (M)	$Q = \frac{[NO_2]^2}{[N_2O_4]}$
1	0	0.0400	$\frac{0^2}{0.0400} = 0$
2	0.0600	0	$\frac{(0.0600)^2}{0} = \text{undefined}$
3	0.0200	0.0600	$\frac{(0.0200)^2}{0.0600} = 6.67 \times 10^{-3}$

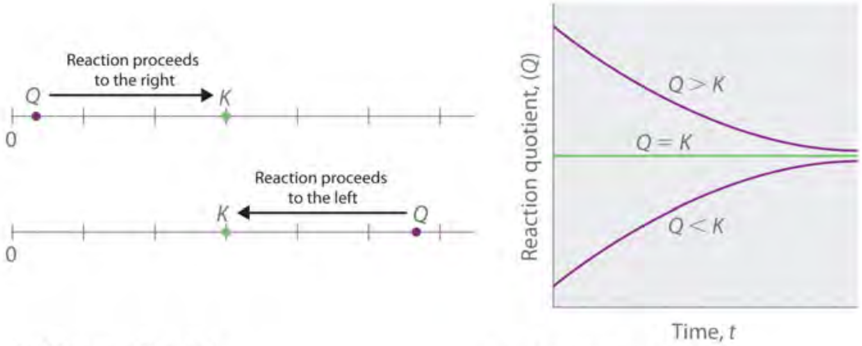
As these calculations demonstrate, Q can have any numerical value between 0 and infinity (undefined); that is, Q can be greater than, less than, or equal to K.

Comparing the magnitudes of Q and K enables us to determine whether a reaction mixture is already at equilibrium and, if it is not, predict how its composition will change with time to reach equilibrium (i.e., whether the reaction will proceed to the right or to the left as written). All you need to remember is that the composition of a system not at equilibrium will change in a way that makes Q approach K:

- If $Q = K$, for example, then the system is already at equilibrium, and **no further change** in the composition of the system will occur unless the conditions are changed.

- If $Q < K$, then the ratio of the concentrations of products to the concentrations of reactants is less than the ratio at equilibrium. Therefore, the reaction will proceed to the **right** as written, forming products at the expense of reactants.
- If $Q > K$, then the ratio of the concentrations of products to the concentrations of reactants is greater than at equilibrium, so the reaction will proceed to the **left** as written, forming reactants at the expense of products.

These points are illustrated graphically in Figure 4.6.1.



(a) Q versus *K*, t_0 to *t* **(b) Q versus *K*, t_0 to t_∞**

Figure 4.6.1: Two Different Ways of Illustrating How the Composition of a System Will Change Depending on the Relative Values of Q and K.(a) Both Q and K are plotted as points along a number line: the system will always react in the way that causes Q to approach K. (b) The change in the composition of a system with time is illustrated for systems with initial values of $Q > K$, $Q < K$, and $Q = K$.

One way is used two number lines. The second way is to use a graph of reaction quotient against time.

> *If $Q < K$, the reaction will proceed to the right as written. If $Q > K$, the reaction will proceed to the left as written. If $Q = K$, then the system is at equilibrium.*

A Video Discussing Using the Reaction Quotient (Q): Using the Reaction Quotient (Q) (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

✓ Example 4.6.1

At elevated temperatures, methane (CH_4) reacts with water to produce hydrogen and carbon monoxide in what is known as a steam-reforming reaction:

$$\mathrm{CH_4(g) + H_2O(g) \rightleftharpoons CO(g) + 3\,H_2(g)}$$

$K = 2.4 \times 10^{-4}$ at 900 K. Huge amounts of hydrogen are produced from natural gas in this way and are then used for the industrial synthesis of ammonia. If 1.2×10^{-2} mol of CH_4, 8.0×10^{-3} mol of H_2O, 1.6×10^{-2} mol of CO, and 6.0×10^{-3} mol of H_2 are placed in a 2.0 L steel reactor and heated to 900 K, will the reaction be at equilibrium or will it proceed to the right to produce CO and $\mathrm{H_2}$ or to the left to form $\mathrm{CH_4}$ and $\mathrm{H_2O}$?

Given: balanced chemical equation, K, amounts of reactants and products, and volume

Asked for: direction of reaction

Strategy:

A. Calculate the molar concentrations of the reactants and the products.
B. Use Equation 4.6.1 to determine Q. Compare Q and K to determine in which direction the reaction will proceed.

Solution:

A We must first find the initial concentrations of the substances present. For example, we have $1.2 \times 10^{-2} mol$ of $\mathrm{CH_4}$ in a 2.0 L container, so

$$[\mathrm{CH_4}] = \frac{1.2 \times 10^{-2}\text{ mol}}{2.0\text{ L}} = 6.0 \times 10^{-3} M$$

We can calculate the other concentrations in a similar way:

- $[\mathrm{H_2O}] = 4.0 \times 10^{-3} M$,
- $[\mathrm{CO}] = 8.0 \times 10^{-3} M$, and
- $[\mathrm{H_2}] = 3.0 \times 10^{-3} M$.

B We now compute Q and compare it with K:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= \frac{[\mathrm{CO}][\mathrm{H_2}]^3}{[\mathrm{CH_4}][\mathrm{H_2O}]} \\ &= \frac{(8.0 \times 10^{-3})(3.0 \times 10^{-3})^3}{(6.0 \times 10^{-3})(4.0 \times 10^{-3})} \\ &= 9.0 \times 10^{-6} \end{aligned}$$

Because $K = 2.4 \times 10^{-4}$, we see that $Q < K$. Thus the ratio of the concentrations of products to the concentrations of reactants is less than the ratio for an equilibrium mixture. The reaction will therefore proceed to the right as written, forming $\mathrm{H_2}$ and CO at the expense of $\mathrm{H_2O}$ and $\mathrm{CH_4}$.

? Exercise 4.6.2

In the water–gas shift reaction introduced in Example 4.6.1, carbon monoxide produced by steam-reforming reaction of methane reacts with steam at elevated temperatures to produce more hydrogen:

$$\mathrm{CO(g) + H_2O(g) \rightleftharpoons CO_2(g) + H_2(g)}$$

$K = 0.64$ at 900 K. If 0.010 mol of both CO and $\mathrm{H_2O}$, 0.0080 mol of $\mathrm{CO_2}$, and 0.012 mol of $\mathrm{H_2}$ are injected into a 4.0 L reactor and heated to 900 K, will the reaction proceed to the left or to the right as written?

Answer

$Q = 0.96$. Since (Q > K), so the reaction will proceed to the left, and CO and H_2O will form.

Predicting the Direction of a Reaction with a Graph

By graphing a few equilibrium concentrations for a system at a given temperature and pressure, we can readily see the range of reactant and product concentrations that correspond to equilibrium conditions, for which $Q = K$. Such a graph allows us to predict what will happen to a reaction when conditions change so that Q no longer equals K, such as when a reactant concentration or a product concentration is increased or decreased.

Reaction 1

Lead carbonate decomposes to lead oxide and carbon dioxide according to the following equation:

$$\mathrm{PbCO_3(s) \rightleftharpoons PbO(s) + CO_2(g)} \tag{4.6.3}$$

Because $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ and PbO are solids, the equilibrium constant is simply

$$K=[\mathrm{CO_2}].$$

At a given temperature, therefore, any system that contains solid $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ and solid PbO will have exactly the same concentration of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ at equilibrium, regardless of the ratio or the amounts of the solids present. This situation is represented in Figure $4.6.3$, which shows a plot of $[\mathrm{CO_2}]$ versus the amount of $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ added. Initially, the added $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ decomposes completely to $\mathrm{CO_2}$ because the amount of $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ is not sufficient to give a $\mathrm{CO_2}$ concentration equal to K. Thus the left portion of the graph represents a system that is not at equilibrium because it contains only $\mathrm{CO_2(g)}$ and $\mathrm{PbO(s)}$. In contrast, when just enough $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ has been added to give $[CO_2]=K$, the system has reached equilibrium, and adding more $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ has no effect on the $\mathrm{CO_2}$ concentration: the graph is a horizontal line.

Thus any $\mathrm{CO_2}$ concentration that is not on the horizontal line represents a nonequilibrium state, and the system will adjust its composition to achieve equilibrium, provided enough $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ and PbO are present. For example, the point labeled **A** in Figure $4.6.2$ lies above the horizontal line, so it corresponds to a $[\mathrm{CO_2}]$ that is greater than the equilibrium concentration of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ (i.e., $Q>K$). To reach equilibrium, the system must decrease $[\mathrm{CO_2}]$, which it can do only by reacting $\mathrm{CO_2}$ with solid PbO to form solid $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$. Thus the reaction in Equation 4.6.3 will proceed to the left as written, until $[\mathrm{CO_2}]=K$. Conversely, the point labeled **B** in Figure $4.6.2$ lies below the horizontal line, so it corresponds to a $[\mathrm{CO_2}]$ that is less than the equilibrium concentration of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ (i.e., $Q<K$). To reach equilibrium, the system must increase $[\mathrm{CO_2}]$, which it can do only by decomposing solid $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ to form $\mathrm{CO_2}$ and solid PbO. The reaction in Equation 4.6.3 will therefore proceed to the right as written, until $[\mathrm{CO_2}]=K$.

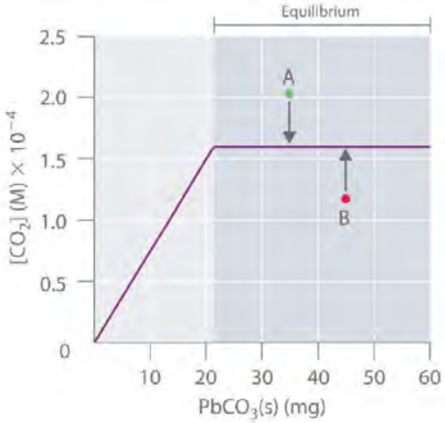


Figure $4.6.2$: The Concentration of Gaseous $\mathrm{CO_2}$ in a Closed System at Equilibrium as a Function of the Amount of Solid $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ Added. Initially the concentration of CO2(g) increases linearly with the amount of solid $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ added, as $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ decomposes to $\mathrm{CO_2(g)}$ and solid PbO. Once the $\mathrm{CO_2}$ concentration reaches the value that corresponds to the equilibrium concentration, however, adding more solid $\mathrm{PbCO_3}$ has no effect on $[\mathrm{CO_2}]$, as long as the temperature remains constant.

Reaction 2

In contrast, the reduction of cadmium oxide by hydrogen gives metallic cadmium and water vapor:

$$\mathrm{CdO(s)+H_2(g)\rightleftharpoons Cd(s)+H_2O(g)} \tag{4.6.4}$$

and the equilibrium constant is

$$K=\frac{[\mathrm{H_2O}]}{[\mathrm{H_2}]}.$$

If $[\mathrm{H_2O}]$ is doubled at equilibrium, then $[\mathrm{H_2}]$ must also be doubled for the system to remain at equilibrium. A plot of $[\mathrm{H_2O}]$ versus $[\mathrm{H_2}]$ at equilibrium is a straight line with a slope of K (Figure $4.6.3$). Again, only those pairs of concentrations of $\mathrm{H_2O}$ and $\mathrm{H_2}$ that lie on the line correspond to equilibrium states. Any point representing a pair of concentrations that does not lie on the line corresponds to a nonequilibrium state. In such cases, the reaction in Equation 4.6.4 will proceed in whichever direction causes the composition of the system to move toward the equilibrium line. For example, point **A** in Figure $4.6.3$ lies below the line, indicating that the $[\mathrm{H_2O}]/[\mathrm{H_2}]$ ratio is less than the ratio of an equilibrium mixture (i.e., $Q<K$). Thus the reaction in Equation 4.6.4 will proceed to the right as written, consuming $\mathrm{H_2}$ and producing $\mathrm{H_2O}$, which causes the concentration ratio to move up and to the left toward the equilibrium line. Conversely, point **B** in Figure $4.6.3$ lies above the line, indicating that the $[\mathrm{H_2O}]/[\mathrm{H_2}]$ ratio is greater than the ratio of an equilibrium mixture ($Q>K$). Thus the reaction in Equation 4.6.4 will proceed to the left as written, consuming $\mathrm{H_2O}$ and producing $\mathrm{H_2}$, which causes the concentration ratio to move down and to the right toward the equilibrium line.

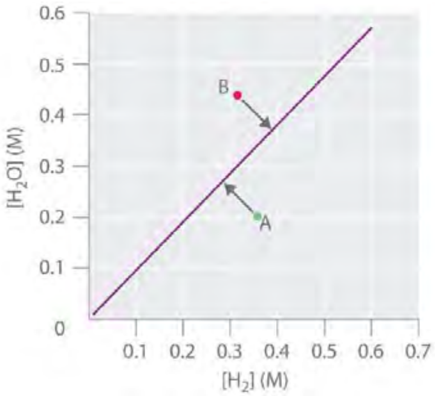


Figure 4.6.3: The Concentration of Water Vapor versus the Concentration of Hydrogen for the $CdO_{(s)} + H_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons Cd_{(s)} + H_2O_{(g)}$ System at Equilibrium. For any equilibrium concentration of $H_2O_{(g)}$, there is only one equilibrium concentration of $H_{2(g)}$. Because the magnitudes of the two concentrations are directly proportional, a large $[H_2O]$ at equilibrium requires a large $[H_2]$ and vice versa. In this case, the slope of the line is equal to K.

Reaction 3

In another example, solid ammonium iodide dissociates to gaseous ammonia and hydrogen iodide at elevated temperatures:

$$\mathrm{NH_4I(s) \rightleftharpoons NH_3(g) + HI(g)} \tag{4.6.5}$$

For this system, K is equal to the product of the concentrations of the two products:

$$K = [\mathrm{NH_3}][\mathrm{HI}].$$

If we double the concentration of $\mathrm{NH_3}$, the concentration of HI must decrease by approximately a factor of 2 to maintain equilibrium, as shown in Figure 4.6.4. As a result, for a given concentration of either HI or $\mathrm{NH_3}$, only a single equilibrium composition that contains equal concentrations of both $\mathrm{NH_3}$ and HI is possible, for which

$$[\mathrm{NH_3}] = [\mathrm{HI}] = \sqrt{K}.$$

Any point that lies below and to the left of the equilibrium curve (such as point **A** in Figure 4.6.4) corresponds to $Q < K$, and the reaction in Equation 4.6.5 will therefore proceed to the right as written, causing the composition of the system to move toward the equilibrium line. Conversely, any point that lies above and to the right of the equilibrium curve (such as point **B** in Figure 4.6.5) corresponds to $Q > K$, and the reaction in Equation 4.6.5 will therefore proceed to the left as written, again causing the composition of the system to move toward the equilibrium line. By graphing equilibrium concentrations for a given system at a given temperature and pressure, we can predict the direction of reaction of that mixture when the system is not at equilibrium.

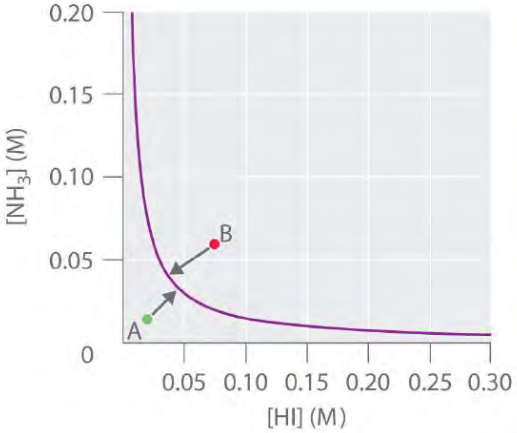


Figure 4.6.4: The Concentration of $NH_{3(g)}$ versus the Concentration of $HI_{(g)}$ for system in Reaction 4.6.5 at Equilibrium. Only one equilibrium concentration of $NH_3(g)$ is possible for any given equilibrium concentration of $HI(g)$. In this case, the two are inversely proportional. Thus a large $[HI]$ at equilibrium requires a small $[NH_3]$ at equilibrium and vice versa.

Summary

The reaction Quotient (Q) is used to determine whether a system is at equilibrium and if it is not, to predict the direction of reaction. The reaction Quotient (Q or Q_p) has the same form as the equilibrium constant expression, but it is derived from concentrations obtained at any time. When a reaction system is at equilibrium, $Q = K$. Graphs derived by plotting a few equilibrium concentrations for a system at a given temperature and pressure can be used to predict the direction in which a reaction will proceed. Points that do not lie on the line or curve represent nonequilibrium states, and the system will adjust, if it can, to achieve equilibrium.

4.7: Finding Equilibrium Concentrations

Learning Objectives

- To solve quantitative problems involving chemical equilibriums.

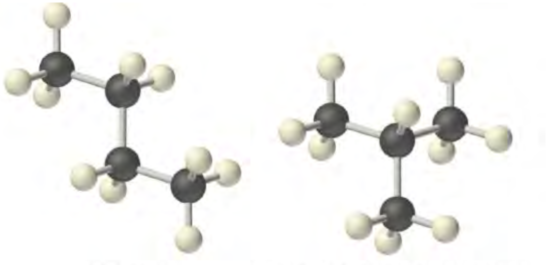
There are two fundamental kinds of equilibrium problems:

1. those in which we are given the concentrations of the reactants and the products at equilibrium (or, more often, information that allows us to calculate these concentrations), and we are asked to calculate the equilibrium constant for the reaction; and
2. those in which we are given the equilibrium constant and the initial concentrations of reactants, and we are asked to calculate the concentration of one or more substances at equilibrium. In this section, we describe methods for solving both kinds of problems.

Calculating an Equilibrium Constant from Equilibrium Concentrations

We saw in the exercise in Example 6 in Section 15.2 that the equilibrium constant for the decomposition of $CaCO_{3(s)}$ to $CaO_{(s)}$ and $CO_{2(g)}$ is $K=[CO_2]$. At 800°C, the concentration of CO_2 in equilibrium with solid $CaCO_3$ and CaO is $2.5 \times 10^{-3}\ M$. Thus K at 800°C is 2.5×10^{-3}. (Remember that equilibrium constants are unitless.)

A more complex example of this type of problem is the conversion of n-butane, an additive used to increase the volatility of gasoline, into isobutane (2-methylpropane).



This reaction can be written as follows:

$$\mathrm{n{-}butane_{(g)}} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{isobutane_{(g)}} \tag{4.7.1}$$

and the equilibrium constant $K=[\text{isobutane}]/[\text{n-butane}]$. At equilibrium, a mixture of n-butane and isobutane at room temperature was found to contain 0.041 M isobutane and 0.016 M n-butane. Substituting these concentrations into the equilibrium constant expression,

$$K=\frac{[isobutane]}{[n\text{-}butane]}=0.041\ M=2.6 \tag{4.7.2}$$

Thus the equilibrium constant for the reaction as written is 2.6.

Example 4.7.1

The reaction between gaseous sulfur dioxide and oxygen is a key step in the industrial synthesis of sulfuric acid:

$$2SO_{2(g)}+O_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2SO_{3(g)}$$

A mixture of SO_2 and O_2 was maintained at 800 K until the system reached equilibrium. The equilibrium mixture contained

- $5.0 \times 10^{-2}\ M\ SO_3$,
- $3.5 \times 10^{-3}\ M\ O_2$, and
- $3.0 \times 10^{-3}\ M\ SO_2$.

Calculate K and K_p at this temperature.

Given: balanced equilibrium equation and composition of equilibrium mixture

Asked for: equilibrium constant

Strategy

Write the equilibrium constant expression for the reaction. Then substitute the appropriate equilibrium concentrations into this equation to obtain K.

Solution

Substituting the appropriate equilibrium concentrations into the equilibrium constant expression,

$$K=\frac{[SO_3]^2}{[SO_2]^2[O_2]}=\frac{(5.0\times 10^{-2})^2}{(3.0\times 10^{-3})^2(3.5\times 10^{-3})}=7.9\times 10^4$$

To solve for K_p, we use the relationship derived previously

$$K_p=K(RT)^{\Delta n}$$

where $\Delta n=2-3=-1$:

$$K_p=K(RT)^{\Delta n}$$

$$K_p=7.9\times 10^4[(0.08206\ L\cdot atm/mol\cdot K)(800K)]^{-1}$$

$$K_p=1.2\times 10^3$$

Exercise 4.7.1

Hydrogen gas and iodine react to form hydrogen iodide via the reaction

$$2NOCl_{(g)}\rightleftharpoons 2NO_{(g)}+Cl_{2(g)}$$

A mixture of H_2 and I_2 was maintained at 740 K until the system reached equilibrium. The equilibrium mixture contained

- $1.37\times 10^{-2}\ M\ HI$,
- $6.47\times 10^{-3}\ M\ H_2$, and
- $5.94\times 10^{-4}\ M\ I_2$.

Calculate K and K_p for this reaction.

Answer

$K=48.8$ and $K_p=48.8$

Chemists are not often given the concentrations of all the substances, and they are not likely to measure the equilibrium concentrations of all the relevant substances for a particular system. In such cases, we can obtain the equilibrium concentrations from the initial concentrations of the reactants and the balanced chemical equation for the reaction, as long as the equilibrium concentration of one of the substances is known. Example $4.7.2$ shows one way to do this.

Example 4.7.2

A 1.00 mol sample of $NOCl$ was placed in a 2.00 L reactor and heated to 227°C until the system reached equilibrium. The contents of the reactor were then analyzed and found to contain 0.056 mol of Cl_2. Calculate K at this temperature. The equation for the decomposition of $NOCl$ to NO and Cl_2 is as follows:

\[2 NOCl_{(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2NO_{(g)}+Cl_{2(g)}\nonumber \]

Given: balanced equilibrium equation, amount of reactant, volume, and amount of one product at equilibrium

Asked for: K

Strategy:

A. Write the equilibrium constant expression for the reaction. Construct a table showing the initial concentrations, the changes in concentrations, and the final concentrations (as initial concentrations plus changes in concentrations).
B. Calculate all possible initial concentrations from the data given and insert them in the table.
C. Use the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation to obtain the changes in concentration of all other substances in the reaction. Insert those concentration changes in the table.
D. Obtain the final concentrations by summing the columns. Calculate the equilibrium constant for the reaction.

Solution

A The first step in any such problem is to balance the chemical equation for the reaction (if it is not already balanced) and use it to derive the equilibrium constant expression. In this case, the equation is already balanced, and the equilibrium constant expression is as follows:

$$K = \frac{[NO]^2[Cl_2]}{[NOCl]^2}$$

To obtain the concentrations of $NOCl$, NO, and Cl_2 at equilibrium, we construct a table showing what is known and what needs to be calculated. We begin by writing the balanced chemical equation at the top of the table, followed by three lines corresponding to the initial concentrations, the changes in concentrations required to get from the initial to the final state, and the final concentrations.

$$2NOCl_{(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2NO_{(g)} + Cl_{2(g)}$$

ICE	$[NOCl]$	$[NO]$	$[Cl_2]$
Initial			
Change			
Final			

B Initially, the system contains 1.00 mol of $NOCl$ in a 2.00 L container. Thus $[NOCl]_i = 1.00\ mol/2.00\ L = 0.500\ M$ The initial concentrations of NO and Cl_2 are $0\ M$ because initially no products are present. Moreover, we are told that at equilibrium the system contains 0.056 mol of Cl_2 in a 2.00 L container, so $[Cl_2]_f = 0.056\ mol/2.00\ L = 0.028\ M$ We insert these values into the following table:

$$2NOCl_{(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2NO_{(g)} + Cl_{2(g)}$$

ICE	$[NOCl]$	$[NO]$	$[Cl_2]$
Initial	0.500	0	0
Change			
Final			0.028

C We use the stoichiometric relationships given in the balanced chemical equation to find the change in the concentration of Cl_2, the substance for which initial and final concentrations are known:

$$\Delta[Cl_2] = 0.028\ M_{(final)} - 0.00\ M_{(initial)}] = +0.028\ M$$

According to the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation, 2 mol of NO are produced for every 1 mol of Cl_2, so the change in the NO concentration is as follows:

$$\Delta[NO]=\left(\frac{0.028\ \ mol\ \cancel{Cl_2}}{L}\right)\left(\frac{2\ mol\ NO}{1\ \ mol\ \cancel{Cl_2}}\right)=0.056\ M$$

Similarly, 2 mol of $NOCl$ are consumed for every 1 mol of Cl_2 produced, so the change in the $NOCl$ concentration is as follows:

$$\Delta[NOCl]=\left(\frac{0.028\ \ mol\ \cancel{Cl_2}}{L}\right)\left(\frac{-2\ mol\ NOCl}{1\ \ mol\ \cancel{Cl_2}}\right)=-0.056\ M$$

We insert these values into our table:

$$2NOCl_{(g)}\rightleftharpoons 2NO_{(g)}+Cl_{2(g)}$$

ICE	$[NOCl]$	$[NO]$	$[Cl_2]$
Initial	0.500	0	0
Change	−0.056	+0.056	+0.028
Final			0.028

D We sum the numbers in the $[NOCl]$ and $[NO]$ columns to obtain the final concentrations of NO and $NOCl$:

$$[NO]_f=0.000\ M+0.056\ M=0.056\ M$$

$$[NOCl]_f=0.500\ M+(-0.056\ M)=0.444 M$$

We can now complete the table:

$$2NOCl_{(g)}\rightleftharpoons 2NO_{(g)}+Cl_{2(g)}$$

ICE	\([NOCl]	$[NO]$	$[Cl_2]$
initial	0.500	0	0
change	−0.056	+0.056	+0.028
final	0.444	0.056	0.028

We can now calculate the equilibrium constant for the reaction:

$$K=\frac{[NO]^2[Cl_2]}{[NOCl]^2}=\frac{(0.056)^2(0.028)}{(0.444)^2}=4.5\times10^{-4}$$

? Exercise 4.7.2

The German chemist Fritz Haber (1868–1934; Nobel Prize in Chemistry 1918) was able to synthesize ammonia (NH_3) by reacting $0.1248\ M\ H_2$ and $0.0416\ M\ N_2$ at about 500°C. At equilibrium, the mixture contained 0.00272 M NH_3. What is K for the reaction

$$N_2+3H_2\rightleftharpoons 2NH_3$$

at this temperature? What is K_p?

Answer

$K=0.105$ and $K_p=2.61\times10^{-5}$

A Video Disucssing Using ICE Tables to find Kc: Using ICE Tables to find Kc(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Calculating Equilibrium Concentrations from the Equilibrium Constant

To describe how to calculate equilibrium concentrations from an equilibrium constant, we first consider a system that contains only a single product and a single reactant, the conversion of n-butane to isobutane (Equation 4.7.1), for which K = 2.6 at 25°C. If we begin with a 1.00 M sample of n-butane, we can determine the concentration of n-butane and isobutane at equilibrium by constructing a table showing what is known and what needs to be calculated, just as we did in Example 4.7.2.

$$\text{n-butane}_{(g)} \rightleftharpoons \text{isobutane}_{(g)}$$

ICE	$[\text{n-butane}_{(g)}]$	$[\text{isobutane}_{(g)}]$
Initial		
Change		
Final		

The initial concentrations of the reactant and product are both known: [n-butane]i = 1.00 M and [isobutane]i = 0 M. We need to calculate the equilibrium concentrations of both n-butane and isobutane. Because it is generally difficult to calculate final concentrations directly, we focus on the change in the concentrations of the substances between the initial and the final (equilibrium) conditions. If, for example, we define the change in the concentration of isobutane (Δ[isobutane]) as $+x$, then the change in the concentration of n-butane is Δ[n-butane] = $-x$. This is because the balanced chemical equation for the reaction tells us that 1 mol of n-butane is consumed for every 1 mol of isobutane produced. We can then express the final concentrations in terms of the initial concentrations and the changes they have undergone.

$$\text{n-butane}_{(g)} \rightleftharpoons \text{isobutane}_{(g)}$$

ICE	$[\text{n-butane}_{(g)}]$	$[\text{isobutane}_{(g)}]$
Initial	1.00	0
Change	$-x$	$+x$
Final	$(1.00-x)$	$(0+x)=x$

Substituting the expressions for the final concentrations of n-butane and isobutane from the table into the equilibrium equation,

$$K=\frac{[\text{isobutane}]}{[\text{n-butane}]}=\frac{x}{1.00-x}=2.6$$

Rearranging and solving for x,

$$x=2.6(1.00-x)=2.6-2.6x$$

$$x+2.6x=2.6$$

$$x = 0.72$$

We obtain the final concentrations by substituting this x value into the expressions for the final concentrations of n-butane and isobutane listed in the table:

$$[\text{n-butane}]_f = (1.00 - x)M = (1.00 - 0.72)M = 0.28\ M$$

$$[\text{isobutane}]_f = (0.00 + x)M = (0.00 + 0.72)M = 0.72\ M$$

We can check the results by substituting them back into the equilibrium constant expression to see whether they give the same K that we used in the calculation:

$$K = \frac{[\text{isobutane}]}{[\text{n-butane}]} = \left(\frac{0.72\ \cancel{M}}{0.28\ \cancel{M}}\right) = 2.6$$

This is the same K we were given, so we can be confident of our results.

Example $4.7.3$ illustrates a common type of equilibrium problem that you are likely to encounter.

✓ Example $4.7.3$: The water–gas shift reaction

The water–gas shift reaction is important in several chemical processes, such as the production of H_2 for fuel cells. This reaction can be written as follows:

$$H_{2(g)} + CO_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons H_2O_{(g)} + CO_{(g)}$$

$K = 0.106$ at 700 K. If a mixture of gases that initially contains 0.0150 M H_2 and 0.0150 M CO_2 is allowed to equilibrate at 700 K, what are the final concentrations of all substances present?

Given: balanced equilibrium equation, K, and initial concentrations

Asked for: final concentrations

Strategy:

A. Construct a table showing what is known and what needs to be calculated. Define x as the change in the concentration of one substance. Then use the reaction stoichiometry to express the changes in the concentrations of the other substances in terms of x. From the values in the table, calculate the final concentrations.
B. Write the equilibrium equation for the reaction. Substitute appropriate values from the ICE table to obtain x.
C. Calculate the final concentrations of all species present. Check your answers by substituting these values into the equilibrium constant expression to obtain K.

Solution

A The initial concentrations of the reactants are $[H_2]_i = [CO_2]_i = 0.0150\ M$. Just as before, we will focus on the change in the concentrations of the various substances between the initial and final states. If we define the change in the concentration of H_2O as x, then $\Delta[H_2O] = +x$. We can use the stoichiometry of the reaction to express the changes in the concentrations of the other substances in terms of x. For example, 1 mol of CO is produced for every 1 mol of H_2O, so the change in the CO concentration can be expressed as $\Delta[CO] = +x$. Similarly, for every 1 mol of H_2O produced, 1 mol each of H_2 and CO_2 are consumed, so the change in the concentration of the reactants is $\Delta[H_2] = \Delta[CO_2] = -x$. We enter the values in the following table and calculate the final concentrations.

$$H_{2(g)} + CO_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons H_2O_{(g)} + CO_{(g)}$$

ICE	$[H_2]$	$[CO_2]$	$[H_2O]$	$[CO]$
Initial	0.0150	0.0150	0	0
Change	$-x$	$-x$	$+x$	$+x$
Final	$(0.0150 - x)$	$(0.0150 - x)$	x	x

B We can now use the equilibrium equation and the given K to solve for x:

$$K = \frac{[H_2O][CO]}{[H_2][CO_2]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{(0.0150-x)(0.0150-x)} = \frac{x^2}{(0.0150-x)^2} = 0.106$$

We could solve this equation with the quadratic formula, but it is far easier to solve for x by recognizing that the left side of the equation is a perfect square; that is,

$$\frac{x^2}{(0.0150-x)^2} = \left(\frac{x}{0.0150-x}\right)^2 = 0.106$$

Taking the square root of the middle and right terms,

$$\frac{x}{(0.0150-x)} = (0.106)^{1/2} = 0.326$$

$$x = (0.326)(0.0150) - 0.326x$$

$$1.326x = 0.00489$$

$$x = 0.00369 = 3.69 \times 10^{-3}$$

C The final concentrations of all species in the reaction mixture are as follows:

- $[H_2]_f = [H_2]_i + \Delta[H_2] = (0.0150 - 0.00369)\ M = 0.0113\ M$
- $[CO_2]_f = [CO_2]_i + \Delta[CO_2] = (0.0150 - 0.00369)\ M = 0.0113\ M$
- $[H_2O]_f = [H_2O]_i + \Delta[H_2O] = (0 + 0.00369)\ M = 0.00369\ M$
- $[CO]_f = [CO]_i + \Delta[CO] = (0 + 0.00369)\ M = 0.00369\ M$

We can check our work by inserting the calculated values back into the equilibrium constant expression:

$$K = \frac{[H_2O][CO]}{[H_2][CO_2]} = \frac{(0.00369)^2}{(0.0113)^2} = 0.107$$

To two significant figures, this K is the same as the value given in the problem, so our answer is confirmed.

? Exercise 4.7.3

Hydrogen gas reacts with iodine vapor to give hydrogen iodide according to the following chemical equation:

$$H_{2(g)} + I_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2HI_{(g)}$$

$K = 54$ at 425°C. If 0.172 M H_2 and I_2 are injected into a reactor and maintained at 425°C until the system equilibrates, what is the final concentration of each substance in the reaction mixture?

Answer

- $[HI]_f = 0.270\ M$
- $[H_2]_f = [I_2]_f = 0.037\ M$

In Example 4.7.3, the initial concentrations of the reactants were the same, which gave us an equation that was a perfect square and simplified our calculations. Often, however, the initial concentrations of the reactants are not the same, and/or one or more of the products may be present when the reaction starts. Under these conditions, there is usually no way to simplify the problem, and we must determine the equilibrium concentrations with other means. Such a case is described in Example 4.7.4

✓ Example 4.7.4

In the water–gas shift reaction shown in Example 4.7.3, a sample containing 0.632 M CO2 and 0.570 M H_2 is allowed to equilibrate at 700 K. At this temperature, $K = 0.106$. What is the composition of the reaction mixture at equilibrium?

Given: balanced equilibrium equation, concentrations of reactants, and K

Asked for: composition of reaction mixture at equilibrium

Strategy:

A. Write the equilibrium equation. Construct a table showing the initial concentrations of all substances in the mixture. Complete the table showing the changes in the concentrations (\(x) and the final concentrations.
B. Write the equilibrium constant expression for the reaction. Substitute the known K value and the final concentrations to solve for x.
C. Calculate the final concentration of each substance in the reaction mixture. Check your answers by substituting these values into the equilibrium constant expression to obtain K.

Solution

A $[CO_2]_i = 0.632\ M$ and $[H_2]_i = 0.570\ M$. Again, x is defined as the change in the concentration of H_2O: $\Delta[H_2O] = +x$. Because 1 mol of CO is produced for every 1 mol of H_2O, the change in the concentration of CO is the same as the change in the concentration of H2O, so Δ[CO] = +x. Similarly, because 1 mol each of H_2 and CO_2 are consumed for every 1 mol of H_2O produced, $\Delta[H_2] = \Delta[CO_2] = -x$. The final concentrations are the sums of the initial concentrations and the changes in concentrations at equilibrium.

$$H_{2(g)} + CO_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons H_2O_{(g)} + CO_{(g)}$$

ICE	$H_{2(g)}$	$CO_{2(g)}$	$H_2O_{(g)}$	$CO_{(g)}$
Initial	0.570	0.632	0	0
Change	$-x$	$-x$	$+x$	$+x$
Final	$(0.570 - x)$	$(0.632 - x)$	x	x

B We can now use the equilibrium equation and the known K value to solve for x:

$$K = \frac{[H_2O][CO]}{[H_2][CO_2]} = \frac{x^2}{(0.570 - x)(0.632 - x)} = 0.106$$

In contrast to Example 4.7.3, however, there is no obvious way to simplify this expression. Thus we must expand the expression and multiply both sides by the denominator:

$$x^2 = 0.106(0.360 - 1.202x + x^2)$$

Collecting terms on one side of the equation,

$$0.894x^2 + 0.127x - 0.0382 = 0$$

This equation can be solved using the quadratic formula:

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a} = \frac{-0.127 \pm \sqrt{(0.127)^2 - 4(0.894)(-0.0382)}}{2(0.894)}$$

$$x = 0.148 \text{ and } -0.290$$

Only the answer with the positive value has any physical significance, so $\Delta[H_2O] = \Delta[CO] = +0.148M$, and $\Delta[H_2] = \Delta[CO_2] = -0.148\ M$.

C The final concentrations of all species in the reaction mixture are as follows:

- $[H_2]_f[= [H_2]_i + \Delta[H_2] = 0.570\ M - 0.148\ M = 0.422M$
- $[CO_2]_f = [CO_2]_i + \Delta[CO_2] = 0.632\ M - 0.148\ M = 0.484M$
- $[H_2O]_f = [H_2O]_i + \Delta[H_2O] = 0\ M + 0.148\ M = 0.148\ M$
- $[CO]_f = [CO]_i + \Delta[CO] = 0M + 0.148\ M = 0.148M$

We can check our work by substituting these values into the equilibrium constant expression:

$$K=\frac{[H_2O][CO]}{[H_2][CO_2]}=\frac{(0.148)^2}{(0.422)(0.484)}=0.107$$

Because K is essentially the same as the value given in the problem, our calculations are confirmed.

? Exercise $4.7.4$

The exercise in Example $4.7.1$ showed the reaction of hydrogen and iodine vapor to form hydrogen iodide, for which $K=54$ at 425°C. If a sample containing 0.200 M H_2 and 0.0450 M I_2 is allowed to equilibrate at 425°C, what is the final concentration of each substance in the reaction mixture?

Answer

- $[H_I]_f=0.0882\ M$
- $[H_2]_f=0.156\ M$
- $[I_2]_f=9.2\times10^{-4}M$

In many situations it is not necessary to solve a quadratic (or higher-order) equation. Most of these cases involve reactions for which the equilibrium constant is either very small ($K\leq10^{-3}$) or very large ($K\geq10^{3}$), which means that the change in the concentration (defined as x) is essentially negligible compared with the initial concentration of a substance. Knowing this simplifies the calculations dramatically, as illustrated in Example $4.7.5$.

✓ Example $4.7.5$

Atmospheric nitrogen and oxygen react to form nitric oxide:

$$N_{2(g)}+O_{2(g)}\rightleftharpoons 2NO_{(g)}$$

with $K_p=2.0\times10^{-31}$ at 25°C.

What is the partial pressure of NO in equilibrium with N_2 and O_2 in the atmosphere (at 1 atm, $P_{N_2}=0.78\ atm$ and $P_{O_2}=0.21\ atm$?

Given: balanced equilibrium equation and values of K_p, P_{O_2}, and P_{N_2}

Asked for: partial pressure of NO

Strategy:

A. Construct a table and enter the initial partial pressures, the changes in the partial pressures that occur during the course of the reaction, and the final partial pressures of all substances.
B. Write the equilibrium equation for the reaction. Then substitute values from the table to solve for the change in concentration (\(x).
C. Calculate the partial pressure of NO. Check your answer by substituting values into the equilibrium equation and solving for K.

Solution

A Because we are given Kp and partial pressures are reported in atmospheres, we will use partial pressures. The initial partial pressure of O_2 is 0.21 atm and that of N_2 is 0.78 atm. If we define the change in the partial pressure of NO as $2x$, then the change in the partial pressure of O_2 and of N_2 is $-x$ because 1 mol each of N_2 and of O_2 is consumed for every 2 mol of NO produced. Each substance has a final partial pressure equal to the sum of the initial pressure and the change in that pressure at equilibrium.

$$N_{2(g)}+O_{2(g)}\rightleftharpoons 2NO_{(g)}$$

ICE	P_{N_2}	P_{O_2}	P_{NO}
Initial	0.78	0.21	0

ICE	P_{N_2}	P_{O_2}	P_{NO}
Change	$-x$	$-x$	$+2x$
Final	$(0.78-x)$	$(0.21-x)$	$2x$

B Substituting these values into the equation for the equilibrium constant,

$$K_p = \frac{(P_{NO})^2}{(P_{N_2})(P_{O_2})} = \frac{(2x)^2}{(0.78-x)(0.21-x)} = 2.0 \times 10^{-31}$$

In principle, we could multiply out the terms in the denominator, rearrange, and solve the resulting quadratic equation. In practice, it is far easier to recognize that an equilibrium constant of this magnitude means that the extent of the reaction will be very small; therefore, the x value will be negligible compared with the initial concentrations. If this assumption is correct, then to two significant figures, $(0.78-x)=0.78$ and $(0.21-x)=0.21$. Substituting these expressions into our original equation,

$$\frac{(2x)^2}{(0.78)(0.21)} = 2.0 \times 10^{-31}$$

$$\frac{4x^2}{0.16} = 2.0 \times 10^{-31}$$

$$x^2 = \frac{0.33 \times 10^{-31}}{4}$$

$$x^{=}9.1 \times 10^{-17}$$

C Substituting this value of x into our expressions for the final partial pressures of the substances,

- $P_{NO} = 2x\ atm = 1.8 \times 10^{-16}\ atm$
- $P_{N_2} = (0.78-x)\ atm = 0.78\ atm$
- $P_{O_2} = (0.21-x)\ atm = 0.21\ atm$

From these calculations, we see that our initial assumption regarding x was correct: given two significant figures, 2.0×10^{-16} is certainly negligible compared with 0.78 and 0.21. When can we make such an assumption? As a general rule, if x is less than about 5% of the total, or $10^{-3} > K > 10^3$, then the assumption is justified. Otherwise, we must use the quadratic formula or some other approach. The results we have obtained agree with the general observation that toxic NO, an ingredient of smog, does not form from atmospheric concentrations of N_2 and O_2 to a substantial degree at 25°C. We can verify our results by substituting them into the original equilibrium equation:

$$K_p = \frac{(P_{NO})^2}{(P_{N_2})(P_{O_2})} = \frac{(1.8 \times 10^{-16})^2}{(0.78)(0.21)} = 2.0 \times 10^{-31}$$

The final K_p agrees with the value given at the beginning of this example.

? Exercise 4.7.5

Under certain conditions, oxygen will react to form ozone, as shown in the following equation:

$$3O_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2O_{3(g)}$$

with $K_p = 2.5 \times 10^{-59}$ at 25°C. What ozone partial pressure is in equilibrium with oxygen in the atmosphere ($P_{O_2} = 0.21\ atm$)?

Answer

$4.8 \times 10^{-31}\ atm$

Another type of problem that can be simplified by assuming that changes in concentration are negligible is one in which the equilibrium constant is very large ($K \geq 10^3$). A large equilibrium constant implies that the reactants are converted almost entirely to products, so we can assume that the reaction proceeds 100% to completion. When we solve this type of problem, we view the system as equilibrating from the products side of the reaction rather than the reactants side. This approach is illustrated in Example $4.7.6$.

Example $4.7.6$

The chemical equation for the reaction of hydrogen with ethylene (C_2H_4) to give ethane (C_2H_6) is as follows:

$$H_{2(g)} + C_2H_{4(g)} \overset{Ni}{\rightleftharpoons} C_2H_{6(g)}$$

with $K = 9.6 \times 10^{18}$ at 25°C. If a mixture of 0.200 M H_2 and 0.155 M C_2H_4 is maintained at 25°C in the presence of a powdered nickel catalyst, what is the equilibrium concentration of each substance in the mixture?

Given: balanced chemical equation, K, and initial concentrations of reactants

Asked for: equilibrium concentrations

Strategy:

A. Construct a table showing initial concentrations, concentrations that would be present if the reaction were to go to completion, changes in concentrations, and final concentrations.
B. Write the equilibrium constant expression for the reaction. Then substitute values from the table into the expression to solve for x (the change in concentration).
C. Calculate the equilibrium concentrations. Check your answers by substituting these values into the equilibrium equation.

Solution:

A From the magnitude of the equilibrium constant, we see that the reaction goes essentially to completion. Because the initial concentration of ethylene (0.155 M) is less than the concentration of hydrogen (0.200 M), ethylene is the limiting reactant; that is, no more than 0.155 M ethane can be formed from 0.155 M ethylene. If the reaction were to go to completion, the concentration of ethane would be 0.155 M and the concentration of ethylene would be 0 M. Because the concentration of hydrogen is greater than what is needed for complete reaction, the concentration of unreacted hydrogen in the reaction mixture would be 0.200 M − 0.155 M = 0.045 M. The equilibrium constant for the forward reaction is very large, so the equilibrium constant for the reverse reaction must be very small. The problem then is identical to that in Example $4.7.5$. If we define $-x$ as the change in the ethane concentration for the reverse reaction, then the change in the ethylene and hydrogen concentrations is $+x$. The final equilibrium concentrations are the sums of the concentrations for the forward and reverse reactions.

$$H_{2(g)} + C_2H_{4(g)} \overset{Ni}{\rightleftharpoons} C_2H_{6(g)}$$

IACE	$[H_{2(g)}]$	$[C_2H_{4(g)}]$	$[C_2H_{6(g)}]$
Initial	0.200	0.155	0
Assuming 100% reaction	0.045	0	0.155
Change	$+x$	$+x$	$-x$
Final	$(0.045 + x)$	$(0 + x)$	$(0.155 - x)$

B Substituting values into the equilibrium constant expression,

$$K = \frac{[C_2H_6]}{[H_2][C_2H_4]} = \frac{0.155 - x}{(0.045 + x)x} = 9.6 \times 10^{18}$$

Once again, the magnitude of the equilibrium constant tells us that the equilibrium will lie far to the right as written, so the reverse reaction is negligible. Thus x is likely to be very small compared with either 0.155 M or 0.045 M, and the equation can be simplified (($0.045 + x$) = 0.045 and $(0.155 - x) = 0.155$) as follows:

$$K = \frac{0.155}{0.045x} = 9.6 \times 10^{18}$$

$$x = 3.6 \times 10^{-19}$$

C The small x value indicates that our assumption concerning the reverse reaction is correct, and we can therefore calculate the final concentrations by evaluating the expressions from the last line of the table:

- $[C_2H_6]_f = (0.155 - x)\ M = 0.155\ M$
- $[C_2H_4]_f = x\ M = 3.6 \times 10^{-19} M$
- $[H_2]_f = (0.045 + x)\ M = 0.045\ M$

We can verify our calculations by substituting the final concentrations into the equilibrium constant expression:

$$K = \frac{[C_2H_6]}{[H_2][C_2H_4]} = \frac{0.155}{(0.045)(3.6 \times 10^{-19})} = 9.6 \times 10^{18}$$

This K value agrees with our initial value at the beginning of the example.

? Exercise 4.7.6

Hydrogen reacts with chlorine gas to form hydrogen chloride:

$$H_{2(g)} + Cl_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2HCl_{(g)}$$

with $K_p = 4.0 \times 10^{31}$ at 47°C. If a mixture of 0.257 M H_2 and 0.392 M Cl_2 is allowed to equilibrate at 47°C, what is the equilibrium composition of the mixture?

Answer

$[H_2]_f = 4.8 \times 10^{-32}\ M\ \ [Cl_2]_f = 0.135\ M\, [HCl]_f = 0.514\ M$

A Video Discussing Using ICE Tables to find Eq. Concentrations & Kc: Using ICE Tables to find Eq. Concentrations & Kc(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

Various methods can be used to solve the two fundamental types of equilibrium problems: (1) those in which we calculate the concentrations of reactants and products at equilibrium and (2) those in which we use the equilibrium constant and the initial concentrations of reactants to determine the composition of the equilibrium mixture. When an equilibrium constant is calculated from equilibrium concentrations, molar concentrations or partial pressures are substituted into the equilibrium constant expression for the reaction. Equilibrium constants can be used to calculate the equilibrium concentrations of reactants and products by using the quantities or concentrations of the reactants, the stoichiometry of the balanced chemical equation for the reaction, and a tabular format to obtain the final concentrations of all species at equilibrium.

4.8: Le Châtelier’s Principle- How a System at Equilibrium Responds to Disturbances

Learning Objectives

- Describe the ways in which an equilibrium system can be stressed
- Predict the response of a stressed equilibrium using Le Chatelier’s principle

As we saw in the previous section, reactions proceed in both directions (reactants go to products and products go to reactants). We can tell a reaction is at equilibrium if the reaction quotient (Q) is equal to the equilibrium constant (K). We next address what happens when a system at equilibrium is disturbed so that Q is no longer equal to K. If a system at equilibrium is subjected to a perturbance or stress (such as a change in concentration) the position of equilibrium changes. Since this stress affects the concentrations of the reactants and the products, the value of Q will no longer equal the value of K. To re-establish equilibrium, the system will either shift toward the products (if $(Q \leq K)$ or the reactants (if $(Q \geq K)$ until Q returns to the same value as K. This process is described by Le Chatelier's principle.

Le Chatelier's principle

When a chemical system at equilibrium is disturbed, it returns to equilibrium by counteracting the disturbance. As described in the previous paragraph, the disturbance causes a change in Q; the reaction will shift to re-establish $Q = K$.

Predicting the Direction of a Reversible Reaction

Le Chatelier's principle can be used to predict changes in equilibrium concentrations when a system that is at equilibrium is subjected to a stress. However, if we have a mixture of reactants and products that have not yet reached equilibrium, the changes necessary to reach equilibrium may not be so obvious. In such a case, we can compare the values of Q and K for the system to predict the changes.

> *A chemical system at equilibrium can be* ***temporarily*** *shifted out of equilibrium by adding or removing one or more of the reactants or products. The concentrations of both reactants and products then undergo additional changes to return the system to equilibrium.*

The stress on the system in Figure 4.8.1 is the reduction of the equilibrium concentration of SCN$^-$ (lowering the concentration of one of the reactants would cause Q to be larger than K). As a consequence, Le Chatelier's principle leads us to predict that the concentration of Fe(SCN)$^{2+}$ should decrease, increasing the concentration of SCN$^-$ part way back to its original concentration, and increasing the concentration of Fe^{3+} above its initial equilibrium concentration.

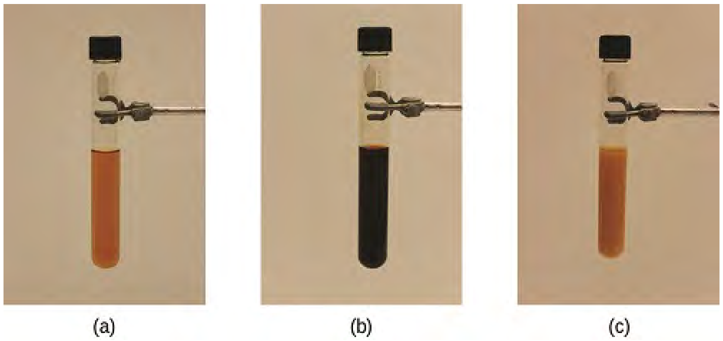


Figure 4.8.1: (a) The test tube contains 0.1 M Fe^{3+}. (b) Thiocyanate ion has been added to solution in (a), forming the red Fe(SCN)$^{2+}$ ion. $\text{Fe}^{3+}(aq) + \text{SCN}^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons \text{Fe(SCN)}^{2+}(aq)$. (c) Silver nitrate has been added to the solution in (b), precipitating some of the SCN− as the white solid AgSCN. $\text{Ag}^+(aq) + \text{SCN}^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons \text{AgSCN}(s)$ The decrease in the SCN− concentration shifts the first equilibrium in the solution to the left, decreasing the concentration (and lightening color) of the Fe(SCN)$^{2+}$. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott).

The effect of a change in concentration on a system at equilibrium is illustrated further by the equilibrium of this chemical reaction:

$$H_2(g) + I_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,HI(g) \tag{4.8.1}$$

$$K_c = 50.0 \text{ at } 400^\circ C \tag{4.8.2}$$

The numeric values for this example have been determined experimentally. A mixture of gases at 400 °C with $[H_2] = [I_2] = 0.221\ M$ and $[HI] = 1.563\ M$ is at equilibrium; for this mixture, $Q_c = K_c = 50.0$. If H_2 is introduced into the system so quickly that its concentration doubles before it begins to react (new $[H_2] = 0.442\ M$), the reaction will shift so that a new equilibrium is reached, at which

- $[H_2] = 0.374\ M$,
- $[I_2] = 0.153\ M$, and
- $[HI] = 1.692\ M$.

This gives:

$$\begin{aligned} Q_c &= \frac{[HI]^2}{[H_2][I_2]} \\ &= \frac{(1.692)^2}{(0.374)(0.153)} \\ &= 50.0 = K_c \end{aligned}$$

We have stressed this system by introducing additional H_2. The stress is relieved when the reaction shifts to the right, using up some (but not all) of the excess H_2, reducing the amount of uncombined I_2, and forming additional HI. **Le Chatelier's Principle (Changing Concentrations):** Le Chatelier's Principle (Changing Concentrations)(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

A Video Discussing Le Chatelier's Principle (Changing Concentrations): Le Chatelier's Principle (Changing Concentrations)(opens in new window) [youtu.be] (opens in new window)

Effect of Change in Pressure on Equilibrium

Sometimes we can change the position of equilibrium by changing the pressure of a system. However, changes in pressure have a measurable effect only in systems in which gases are involved, and then only when the chemical reaction produces a change in the total number of gas molecules in the system. An easy way to recognize such a system is to look for different numbers of moles of gas on the reactant and product sides of the equilibrium. While evaluating pressure (as well as related factors like volume), it is important to remember that equilibrium constants are defined with regard to concentration (for K_c) or partial pressure (for K_P). Some changes to total pressure, like adding an inert gas that is not part of the equilibrium, will change the total pressure but not the partial pressures of the gases in the equilibrium constant expression. Thus, addition of a gas not involved in the equilibrium will not perturb the equilibrium.

As we increase the pressure of a gaseous system at equilibrium, either by decreasing the volume of the system or by adding more of one of the components of the equilibrium mixture, we introduce a stress by increasing the partial pressures of one or more of the components. In accordance with Le Chatelier's principle, a shift in the equilibrium that reduces the total number of molecules per unit of volume will be favored because this relieves the stress. The reverse reaction would be favored by a decrease in pressure.

Consider what happens when we increase the pressure on a system in which NO, O_2, and NO_2 are at equilibrium:

$$2\,\mathrm{NO(g)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NO_2(g)} \tag{4.8.3}$$

The formation of additional amounts of NO_2 decreases the total number of molecules in the system because each time two molecules of NO_2 form, a total of three molecules of NO and O_2 are consumed. This reduces the total pressure exerted by the system and reduces, but does not completely relieve, the stress of the increased pressure. On the other hand, a decrease in the pressure on the system favors decomposition of NO_2 into NO and O_2, which tends to restore the pressure.

Now consider this reaction:

$$\mathrm{N_2(g)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NO(g)} \tag{4.8.4}$$

Because there is no change in the total number of molecules in the system during reaction, a change in pressure does not favor either formation or decomposition of gaseous nitrogen monoxide.

Le Chatelier’s Principle (Changes in Pressure or Volume):

Le Chatelier’s Principle (Changes in Pressure or Volume)(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Effect of Change in Temperature on Equilibrium

Changing concentration or pressure perturbs an equilibrium because the reaction quotient is shifted away from the equilibrium value. Changing the temperature of a system at equilibrium has a different effect: A change in temperature actually changes the value of the equilibrium constant. However, we can qualitatively predict the effect of the temperature change by treating it as a stress on the system and applying Le Chatelier's principle.

When hydrogen reacts with gaseous iodine, heat is evolved.

$$\mathrm{H_2(g)} + \mathrm{I_2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{HI(g)} \quad \Delta H = -9.4\ \mathrm{kJ\ (exothermic)} \tag{4.8.5}$$

Because this reaction is exothermic, we can write it with heat as a product.

$$\mathrm{H_2(g)} + \mathrm{I_2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{HI(g)} + \mathrm{heat} \tag{4.8.6}$$

Increasing the temperature of the reaction increases the internal energy of the system. Thus, increasing the temperature has the effect of increasing the amount of one of the products of this reaction. The reaction shifts to the left to relieve the stress, and there is an increase in the concentration of H_2 and I_2 and a reduction in the concentration of HI. Lowering the temperature of this system reduces the amount of energy present, favors the production of heat, and favors the formation of hydrogen iodide.

When we change the temperature of a system at equilibrium, the equilibrium constant for the reaction changes. Lowering the temperature in the HI system increases the equilibrium constant: At the new equilibrium the concentration of HI has increased and the concentrations of H_2 and I_2 decreased. Raising the temperature decreases the value of the equilibrium constant, from 67.5 at 357 °C to 50.0 at 400 °C.

Temperature affects the equilibrium between $\mathrm{NO_2}$ and $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ in this reaction

$$\mathrm{N_2O_4(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g)} \quad \Delta H = 57.20\text{ kJ} \tag{4.8.7}$$

The positive ΔH value tells us that the reaction is endothermic and could be written

$$\text{heat} + \mathrm{N_2O_4(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g)} \tag{4.8.8}$$

At higher temperatures, the gas mixture has a deep brown color, indicative of a significant amount of brown $\mathrm{NO_2}$ molecules. If, however, we put a stress on the system by cooling the mixture (withdrawing energy), the equilibrium shifts to the left to supply some of the energy lost by cooling. The concentration of colorless $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ increases, and the concentration of brown $\mathrm{NO_2}$ decreases, causing the brown color to fade.

The overview of how different disturbances affect the reaction equilibrium properties is tabulated in Table 4.8.1.

Table 4.8.1: Effects of Disturbances of Equilibrium and K

Disturbance	Observed Change as Equilibrium is Restored	Direction of Shift	Effect on K
reactant added	added reactant is partially consumed	toward products	none
product added	added product is partially consumed	toward reactants	none
decrease in volume/increase in gas pressure	pressure decreases	toward side with fewer moles of gas	none
increase in volume/decrease in gas pressure	pressure increases	toward side with more moles of gas	none
temperature increase	heat is absorbed	toward products for endothermic, toward reactants for exothermic	changes
temperature decrease	heat is given off	toward reactants for endothermic, toward products for exothermic	changes

✓ Example 4.8.1

Write an equilibrium constant expression for each reaction and use this expression to predict what will happen to the concentration of the substance in bold when the indicated change is made if the system is to maintain equilibrium.

a. $2HgO_{(s)} \rightleftharpoons 2Hg_{(l)} + \mathbf{O}_{2(g)}$: the amount of HgO is doubled.
b. $NH_4HS_{(s)} \rightleftharpoons \mathbf{NH}_{3(g)} + H_2S_{(g)}$: the concentration of H_2S is tripled.
c. $\textbf{n-butane}_{(g)} \rightleftharpoons isobutane_{(g)}$: the concentration of isobutane is halved.

Given: equilibrium systems and changes

Asked for: equilibrium constant expressions and effects of changes

Strategy:

Write the equilibrium constant expression, remembering that pure liquids and solids do not appear in the expression. From this expression, predict the change that must occur to maintain equilibrium when the indicated changes are made.

Solution:

Because $HgO_{(s)}$ and $Hg_{(l)}$ are pure substances, they do not appear in the equilibrium constant expression. Thus, for this reaction, $K = [O_2]$. The equilibrium concentration of O_2 is a constant and does not depend on the amount of HgO present. Hence adding more HgO will not affect the equilibrium concentration of O_2, so no compensatory change is necessary.

NH_4HS does not appear in the equilibrium constant expression because it is a solid. Thus $K = [NH_3][H_2S]$, which means that the concentrations of the products are inversely proportional. If adding H_2S triples the H_2S concentration, for example, then the NH_3 concentration must decrease by about a factor of 3 for the system to remain at equilibrium so that the product of the concentrations equals K.

For this reaction, $K = \frac{[isobutane]}{[n\text{-}butane]}$, so halving the concentration of isobutane means that the n-butane concentration must also decrease by about half if the system is to maintain equilibrium.

? Exercise 4.8.1

Write an equilibrium constant expression for each reaction. What must happen to the concentration of the substance in bold when the indicated change occurs if the system is to maintain equilibrium?

a. $\mathrm{HBr(g) + NaH(s) \rightleftharpoons NaBr(s) + \mathbf{H_2(g)}}$: the concentration of HBr is decreased by a factor of 3.
b. $\mathrm{6\,Li(s) + \mathbf{N_2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,Li_3N(s)}$: the amount of Li is tripled.
c. $\mathrm{\mathbf{SO_2(g)} + Cl_2(g) \rightleftharpoons SO_2Cl_2(l)}$: the concentration of $\mathrm{Cl_2}$ is doubled.

Answer a

$$K = \frac{[H_2]}{[HBr]}$$; $[H_2]$ must decrease by about a factor of 3.

Answer b

$$K = \frac{1}{[N_2]}$$; solid lithium does not appear in the equilibrium constant expression, so no compensatory change is necessary.

Answer c

$$K = \frac{1}{[SO_2][Cl_2]}$$; $[SO_2]$ must decrease by about half.

Le Chatelier’s Principle (Changes in Temperature):

Le Chatelier’s Principle (Changes in Temperature)(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Catalysts Do Not Affect Equilibrium

As we learned during our study of kinetics, a catalyst can speed up the rate of a reaction. Though this increase in reaction rate may cause a system to reach equilibrium more quickly (by speeding up the forward and reverse reactions), a catalyst has no effect on the value of an equilibrium constant nor on equilibrium concentrations. The interplay of changes in concentration or pressure, temperature, and the lack of an influence of a catalyst on a chemical equilibrium is illustrated in the industrial synthesis of ammonia from nitrogen and hydrogen according to the equation

$$\mathrm{N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g)} \tag{4.8.9}$$

A large quantity of ammonia is manufactured by this reaction. Each year, ammonia is among the top 10 chemicals, by mass, manufactured in the world. About 2 billion pounds are manufactured in the United States each year. Ammonia plays a vital role in our global economy. It is used in the production of fertilizers and is, itself, an important fertilizer for the growth of corn, cotton, and other crops. Large quantities of ammonia are converted to nitric acid, which plays an important role in the production of fertilizers, explosives, plastics, dyes, and fibers, and is also used in the steel industry.

Fritz Haber

Haber was born in Breslau, Prussia (presently Wroclaw, Poland) in December 1868. He went on to study chemistry and, while at the University of Karlsruhe, he developed what would later be known as the Haber process: the catalytic formation of ammonia from hydrogen and atmospheric nitrogen under high temperatures and pressures. For this work, Haber was awarded the 1918 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for synthesis of ammonia from its elements (Equation 4.8.9). The Haber process was a boon to agriculture, as it allowed the production of fertilizers to no longer be dependent on mined feed stocks such as sodium nitrate.

Figure 4.8.1: The work of Nobel Prize recipient Fritz Haber revolutionized agricultural practices in the early 20th century. His work also affected wartime strategies, adding chemical weapons to the artillery.

Currently, the annual production of synthetic nitrogen fertilizers exceeds 100 million tons and synthetic fertilizer production has increased the number of humans that arable land can support from 1.9 persons per hectare in 1908 to 4.3 in 2008. The availability of nitrogen is a strong limiting factor to the growth of plants. Despite accounting for 78% of air, diatomic nitrogen (N_2) is nutritionally unavailable to a majority of plants due the tremendous stability of the nitrogen-nitrogen triple bond. Therefore, the nitrogen must be converted to a more bioavailable form (this conversion is called nitrogen fixation). Legumes achieve this conversion at ambient temperature by exploiting bacteria equipped with suitable enzymes.

In addition to his work in ammonia production, Haber is also remembered by history as one of the fathers of chemical warfare. During World War I, he played a major role in the development of poisonous gases used for trench warfare. Regarding his role in these developments, Haber said, “During peace time a scientist belongs to the World, but during war time he belongs to his country.”[1] Haber defended the use of gas warfare against accusations that it was inhumane, saying that death was death, by whatever means it was inflicted. He stands as an example of the ethical dilemmas that face scientists in times of war and the double-edged nature of the sword of science.

Like Haber, the products made from ammonia can be multifaceted. In addition to their value for agriculture, nitrogen compounds can also be used to achieve destructive ends. Ammonium nitrate has also been used in explosives, including improvised explosive devices. Ammonium nitrate was one of the components of the bomb used in the attack on the Alfred P. Murrah Federal Building in downtown Oklahoma City on April 19, 1995.

Summary

Systems at equilibrium can be disturbed by changes to temperature, concentration, and, in some cases, volume and pressure; volume and pressure changes will disturb equilibrium if the number of moles of gas is different on the reactant and product sides of the reaction. The system's response to these disturbances is described by Le Chatelier's principle: The system will respond in a way that counteracts the disturbance. Not all changes to the system result in a disturbance of the equilibrium. Adding a catalyst affects the rates of the reactions but does not alter the equilibrium, and changing pressure or volume will not significantly disturb systems with no gases or with equal numbers of moles of gas on the reactant and product side.

Footnotes

1. 1 Herrlich, P. “The Responsibility of the Scientist: What Can History Teach Us About How Scientists Should Handle Research That Has the Potential to Create Harm?” *EMBO Reports* 14 (2013): 759–764.

Glossary

Le Chatelier's principle

when a chemical system at equilibrium is disturbed, it returns to equilibrium by counteracting the disturbance

position of equilibrium

concentrations or partial pressures of components of a reaction at equilibrium (commonly used to describe conditions before a disturbance)

stress

change to a reaction's conditions that may cause a shift in the equilibrium

Contributors and Attributions

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

4.9: Solubility Equilibria and the Solubility Product Constant

Learning Objectives

- To calculate the solubility of an ionic compound from its K_{sp}

We begin our discussion of solubility and complexation equilibria—those associated with the formation of complex ions—by developing quantitative methods for describing dissolution and precipitation reactions of ionic compounds in aqueous solution. Just as with acid–base equilibria, we can describe the concentrations of ions in equilibrium with an ionic solid using an equilibrium constant expression.

The Solubility Product

When a slightly soluble ionic compound is added to water, some of it dissolves to form a solution, establishing an equilibrium between the pure solid and a solution of its ions. For the dissolution of calcium phosphate, one of the two main components of kidney stones, the equilibrium can be written as follows, with the solid salt on the left:

$$Ca_3(PO_4)_{2(s)} \rightleftharpoons 3Ca^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2PO^{3-}_{4(aq)} \tag{4.9.1}$$

As you will discover in Section 17.4 and in more advanced chemistry courses, basic anions, such as S^{2-}, ${PO_4}^{3-}$, and ${CO_3}^{2-}$, react with water to produce OH^- and the corresponding protonated anion. Consequently, their calculated molarities, assuming no protonation in aqueous solution, are only approximate.

The equilibrium constant for the dissolution of a sparingly soluble salt is the **solubility product (K_{sp})** of the salt. Because the concentration of a pure solid such as $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ is a constant, it does not appear explicitly in the equilibrium constant expression. The equilibrium constant expression for the dissolution of calcium phosphate is therefore

$$K = \frac{[\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}]^3[\mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}]^2}{[\mathrm{Ca_3(PO_4)_2}]} \tag{4.9.2}$$

$$[\mathrm{Ca_3(PO_4)_2}]K = K_{\mathrm{sp}} = [\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}]^3[\mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}]^2 \tag{4.9.3}$$

At 25°C and pH 7.00, Ksp for calcium phosphate is 2.07×10^{-33}, indicating that the concentrations of Ca^{2+} and ${PO_4}^{3-}$ ions in solution that are in equilibrium with solid calcium phosphate are very low. The values of K_{sp} for some common salts are listed in Table 4.9.1, which shows that the magnitude of K_{sp} varies dramatically for different compounds. Although K_{sp} is not a function of pH in Equations 4.9.2 and 4.9.3, changes in pH can affect the solubility of a compound as discussed later.

> *As with any K, the concentration of a pure solid does not appear explicitly in K_{sp}.*

Table 4.9.1: Solubility Products for Selected Ionic Substances at 25°C

t…

Solid	Color	K_{sp}		Solid	Color	K_{sp}
Acetates				**Iodides**		
$Ca(O_2CCH_3)_2 \cdot 3H_2O$	white	4×10^{-3}		Hg_2I_2*	yellow	5.2×10^{-29}
Bromides				PbI_2	yellow	9.8×10^{-9}
AgBr	off-white	5.35×10^{-13}		**Oxalates**		
Hg_2Br_2*	yellow	6.40×10^{-23}		$Ag_2C_2O_4$	white	5.40×10^{-12}
Carbonates				$MgC_2O_4 \cdot 2H_2O$	white	4.83×10^{-6}
$CaCO_3$	white	3.36×10^{-9}		PbC_2O_4	white	4.8×10^{-10}
$PbCO_3$	white	7.40×10^{-14}		**Phosphates**		
Chlorides				Ag_3PO_4	white	8.89×10^{-17}
AgCl	white	1.77×10^{-10}		$Sr_3(PO_4)_2$	white	4.0×10^{-28}
*These contain the ${Hg_2}^{2+}$ ion.						

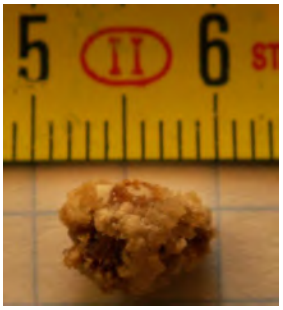
t…

Solid	Color	K_{sp}		Solid	Color	K_{sp}
Hg_2Cl_2*	white	1.43×10^{-18}		$FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$	pink	9.91×10^{-16}
$PbCl_2$	white	1.70×10^{-5}		**Sulfates**		
Chromates				Ag_2SO_4	white	1.20×10^{-5}
$CaCrO_4$	yellow	7.1×10^{-4}		$BaSO_4$	white	1.08×10^{-10}
$PbCrO_4$	yellow	2.8×10^{-13}		$PbSO_4$	white	2.53×10^{-8}
Fluorides				**Sulfides**		
BaF_2	white	1.84×10^{-7}		Ag_2S	black	6.3×10^{-50}
PbF_2	white	3.3×10^{-8}		CdS	yellow	8.0×10^{-27}
Hydroxides				PbS	black	8.0×10^{-28}
$Ca(OH)_2$	white	5.02×10^{-6}		ZnS	white	1.6×10^{-24}
$Cu(OH)_2$	pale blue	1×10^{-14}				
$Mn(OH)_2$	light pink	1.9×10^{-13}				
$Cr(OH)_3$	gray-green	6.3×10^{-31}				
$Fe(OH)_3$	rust red	2.79×10^{-39}				

*These contain the Hg_2^{2+} ion.

Definition of a Solubility Product: Definition of a Solubility Product(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Solubility products are determined experimentally by directly measuring either the concentration of one of the component ions or the solubility of the compound in a given amount of water. However, whereas solubility is usually expressed in terms of mass of solute per 100 mL of solvent, K_{sp}, like K, is defined in terms of the molar concentrations of the component ions.



A color photograph of a kidney stone, 8 mm in length. Kidney stones form from sparingly soluble calcium salts and are largely composed of $Ca(O_2CCO_2) \cdot H_2O$ and $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$. from Wikipedia.

Example 4.9.1

Calcium oxalate monohydrate [$Ca(O_2CCO_2)·H_2O$, also written as $CaC_2O_4·H_2O$] is a sparingly soluble salt that is the other major component of kidney stones [along with $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$]. Its solubility in water at 25°C is 7.36×10^{-4} g/100 mL. Calculate its K_{sp}.

Given: solubility in g/100 mL

Asked for: K_{sp}

Strategy:

A. Write the balanced dissolution equilibrium and the corresponding solubility product expression.
B. Convert the solubility of the salt to moles per liter. From the balanced dissolution equilibrium, determine the equilibrium concentrations of the dissolved solute ions. Substitute these values into the solubility product expression to calculate K_{sp}.

Solution

A We need to write the solubility product expression in terms of the concentrations of the component ions. For calcium oxalate monohydrate, the balanced dissolution equilibrium and the solubility product expression (abbreviating oxalate as ox^{2-}) are as follows:

$$\mathrm{Ca(O_2CCO_2)\cdot H_2O(s) \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+}(aq) + {}^{-}O_2CCO_2^{-}(aq) + H_2O(l)} \quad K_{\mathrm{sp}} = [\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}][\mathrm{ox^{2-}}]$$

Neither solid calcium oxalate monohydrate nor water appears in the solubility product expression because their concentrations are essentially constant.

B Next we need to determine [Ca^{2+}] and [ox^{2-}] at equilibrium. We can use the mass of calcium oxalate monohydrate that dissolves in 100 mL of water to calculate the number of moles that dissolve in 100 mL of water. From this we can determine the number of moles that dissolve in 1.00 L of water. For dilute solutions, the density of the solution is nearly the same as that of water, so dissolving the salt in 1.00 L of water gives essentially 1.00 L of solution. Because each 1 mol of dissolved calcium oxalate monohydrate dissociates to produce 1 mol of calcium ions and 1 mol of oxalate ions, we can obtain the equilibrium concentrations that must be inserted into the solubility product expression. The number of moles of calcium oxalate monohydrate that dissolve in 100 mL of water is as follows:

$$\frac{7.36 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{g}}{146.1\ \mathrm{g/mol}} = 5.04 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{mol\ Ca(O_2CCO_2)\cdot H_2O}$$

The number of moles of calcium oxalate monohydrate that dissolve in 1.00 L of the saturated solution is as follows:

$$\left(\frac{5.04 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{mol\ Ca(O_2CCO_2\cdot)H_2O}}{100\ \mathrm{mL}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ \mathrm{mL}}{1.00\ \mathrm{L}}\right) = 5.04 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{mol/L} = 5.04 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{M}$$

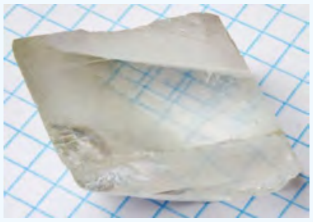
Because of the stoichiometry of the reaction, the concentration of Ca^{2+} and ox^{2-} ions are both 5.04×10^{-5} M. Inserting these values into the solubility product expression,

$$K_{sp} = [Ca^{2+}][ox^{2-}] = (5.04 \times 10^{-5})(5.04 \times 10^{-5}) = 2.54 \times 10^{-9}$$

In our calculation, we have ignored the reaction of the weakly basic anion with water, which tends to make the actual solubility of many salts greater than the calculated value.

Exercise 4.9.1: Calcite

One crystalline form of calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) is "calcite", found as both a mineral and a structural material in many organisms. Calcite is found in the teeth of sea urchins. The urchins create depressions in limestone that they can settle in by grinding the rock with their teeth. Limestone, however, also consists of calcite, so how can the urchins grind the rock without also grinding their teeth? Researchers have discovered that the teeth are shaped like needles and plates and contain magnesium. The concentration of magnesium increases toward the tip, which contributes to the hardness. Moreover, each tooth is composed of two blocks of the polycrystalline calcite matrix that are interleaved near the tip. This creates a corrugated surface that presumably increases grinding efficiency. Toolmakers are particularly interested in this approach to grinding.



A crystal of calcite ($CaCO_3$), illustrating the phenomenon of double refraction. When a transparent crystal of calcite is placed over a page, we see two images of the letters. from Wikipedia

The solubility of calcite in water is 0.67 mg/100 mL. Calculate its K_{sp}.

Answer

4.5×10^{-9}

> *The reaction of weakly basic anions with H_2O tends to make the actual solubility of many salts higher than predicted.*

Finding Ksp from Ion Concentrations: Finding Ksp from Ion Concentrations(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Tabulated values of K_{sp} can also be used to estimate the solubility of a salt with a procedure that is essentially the reverse of the one used in Example 4.9.1. In this case, we treat the problem as a typical equilibrium problem and set up a table of initial concentrations, changes in concentration, and final concentrations (ICE Tables), remembering that the concentration of the pure solid is essentially constant.

✓ Example 4.9.2

We saw that the K_{sp} for $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ is 2.07×10^{-33} at 25°C. Calculate the aqueous solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in terms of the following:

a. the molarity of ions produced in solution
b. the mass of salt that dissolves in 100 mL of water at 25°C

Given: K_{sp}

Asked for: molar concentration and mass of salt that dissolves in 100 mL of water

Strategy:

A. Write the balanced equilibrium equation for the dissolution reaction and construct a table showing the concentrations of the species produced in solution. Insert the appropriate values into the solubility product expression and calculate the molar solubility at 25°C.
B. Calculate the mass of solute in 100 mL of solution from the molar solubility of the salt. Assume that the volume of the solution is the same as the volume of the solvent.

Solution:

A. **A** The dissolution equilibrium for $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ (Equation 4.9.2) is shown in the following ICE table. Because we are starting with distilled water, the initial concentration of both calcium and phosphate ions is zero. For every 1 mol of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ that dissolves, 3 mol of Ca^{2+} and 2 mol of PO_4^{3-} ions are produced in solution. If we let *x* equal the solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in moles per liter, then the change in $[Ca^{2+}]$ will be +3*x*, and the change in $[PO_4^{3-}]$ will be +2*x*. We can insert these values into the table.

$$Ca_3(PO_4)_2(s) \rightleftharpoons 3Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2PO_4^{3-}(aq)$$

Solutions to Example 17.4.2

	Ca3(PO4)2	[Ca2+]	$[PO_4^{3-}]$
initial	pure solid	0	0
change	—	+3*x*	+2*x*
final	pure solid	3*x*	2*x*

Although the amount of solid $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ changes as some of it dissolves, its molar concentration does not change. We now insert the expressions for the equilibrium concentrations of the ions into the solubility product expression (Equation 17.2):

$$K_{\mathrm{sp}} = [\mathrm{Ca}^{2+}]^3[\mathrm{PO}_4^{3-}]^2 = (3x)^3(2x)^2 \tag{4.9.4}$$
$$2.07 \times 10^{-33} = 108x^5 \tag{4.9.5}$$
$$1.92 \times 10^{-35} = x^5 \tag{4.9.6}$$
$$1.14 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{M} = x \tag{4.9.7}$$

This is the molar solubility of calcium phosphate at 25°C. However, the molarity of the ions is 2*x* and 3*x*, which means that $[PO_4^{3-}] = 2.28 \times 10^{-7}$ and $[Ca^{2+}] = 3.42 \times 10^{-7}$.

b. **B** To find the mass of solute in 100 mL of solution, we assume that the density of this dilute solution is the same as the density of water because of the low solubility of the salt, so that 100 mL of water gives 100 mL of solution. We can then determine the amount of salt that dissolves in 100 mL of water:

$$\left(\frac{1.14 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{mol}}{1\ \mathrm{L}}\right) 100\ \mathrm{mL} \left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{L}}{1000\ \mathrm{mL}}\right) \left(\frac{310.18\ \mathrm{g\ Ca_3(PO_4)_2}}{1\ \mathrm{mol}}\right) = 3.54 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{g\ Ca_3(PO_4)_2}$$

? Exercise 4.9.2

The solubility product of silver carbonate (Ag_2CO_3) is 8.46 × 10^{-12} at 25°C. Calculate the following:

a. the molarity of a saturated solution
b. the mass of silver carbonate that will dissolve in 100 mL of water at this temperature

Answer

a. 1.28 × 10^{-4} M
b. 3.54 mg

Finding the Solubility of a Salt: Finding the Solubility of a Salt (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

The Ion Product

The **ion product (Q)** of a salt is the product of the concentrations of the ions in solution raised to the same powers as in the solubility product expression. It is analogous to the reaction quotient (Q) discussed for gaseous equilibria. Whereas K_{sp} describes equilibrium concentrations, the ion product describes concentrations that are not necessarily equilibrium concentrations.

> *The ion product Q is analogous to the reaction quotient Q for gaseous equilibria.*

As summarized in Figure 4.9.1, there are three possible conditions for an aqueous solution of an ionic solid:

- $Q < K_{sp}$. The solution is unsaturated, and more of the ionic solid, if available, will dissolve.
- $Q = K_{sp}$. The solution is saturated and at equilibrium.
- $Q > K_{sp}$. The solution is supersaturated, and ionic solid will precipitate.

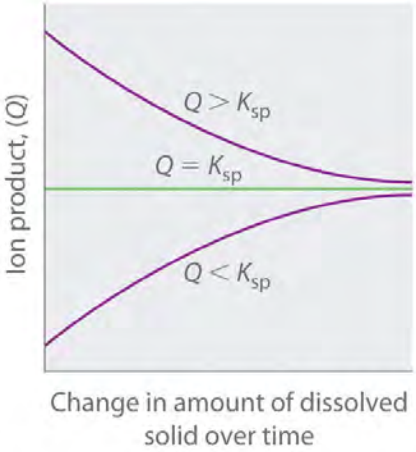


Figure 4.9.1: The Relationship between Q and K_{sp}. If Q is less than K_{sp}, the solution is unsaturated and more solid will dissolve until the system reaches equilibrium ($Q = K_{sp}$). If Q is greater than K_{sp}, the solution is supersaturated and solid will precipitate until $Q = K_{sp}$. If $Q = K_{sp}$, the rate of dissolution is equal to the rate of precipitation; the solution is saturated, and no net change in the amount of dissolved solid will occur.

Graph of ion product against change in amount of dissolved solid over time. The purple curves are when Q is greater or less than Ksp. The green line is when Q is equal to Ksp.

The process of calculating the value of the ion product and comparing it with the magnitude of the solubility product is a straightforward way to determine whether a solution is unsaturated, saturated, or supersaturated. More important, the ion product tells chemists whether a precipitate will form when solutions of two soluble salts are mixed.

Example 4.9.3

We mentioned that barium sulfate is used in medical imaging of the gastrointestinal tract. Its solubility product is 1.08 × 10^{-10} at 25°C, so it is ideally suited for this purpose because of its low solubility when a "barium milkshake" is consumed by a patient. The pathway of the sparingly soluble salt can be easily monitored by x-rays. Will barium sulfate precipitate if 10.0 mL of 0.0020 M Na_2SO_4 is added to 100 mL of 3.2 × 10^{-4} M $BaCl_2$? Recall that NaCl is highly soluble in water.

Given: K_{sp} and volumes and concentrations of reactants

Asked for: whether precipitate will form

Strategy:

A. Write the balanced equilibrium equation for the precipitation reaction and the expression for K_{sp}.
B. Determine the concentrations of all ions in solution when the solutions are mixed and use them to calculate the ion product (Q).
C. Compare the values of Q and K_{sp} to decide whether a precipitate will form.

Solution

A The only slightly soluble salt that can be formed when these two solutions are mixed is $BaSO_4$ because NaCl is highly soluble. The equation for the precipitation of $BaSO_4$ is as follows:

$$BaSO_{4(s)} \rightleftharpoons Ba^{2+}_{(aq)} + SO^{2-}_{4(aq)}$$

The solubility product expression is as follows:

$$K_{sp} = [Ba^{2+}][SO_4^{2-}] = 1.08 \times 10^{-10}$$

B To solve this problem, we must first calculate the ion product—$Q = [Ba^{2+}][SO_4^{2-}]$—using the concentrations of the ions that are present after the solutions are mixed and before any reaction occurs. The concentration of Ba^{2+} when the solutions are mixed is the total number of moles of Ba^{2+} in the original 100 mL of $BaCl_2$ solution divided by the final volume (100 mL + 10.0 mL = 110 mL):

$$\text{moles Ba}^{2+} = 100\text{ mL}\left(\frac{1\text{ L}}{1000\text{ mL}}\right)\left(\frac{3.2\times 10^{-4}\text{ mol}}{1\text{ L}}\right) = 3.2\times 10^{-5}\text{ mol Ba}^{2+}$$

$$[\text{Ba}^{2+}] = \left(\frac{3.2\times 10^{-5}\text{ mol Ba}^{2+}}{110\text{ mL}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\text{ mL}}{1\text{ L}}\right) = 2.9\times 10^{-4}\text{ M Ba}^{2+}$$

Similarly, the concentration of SO_4^{2-} after mixing is the total number of moles of SO_4^{2-} in the original 10.0 mL of Na_2SO_4 solution divided by the final volume (110 mL):

$$\text{moles SO}_4^{2-} = 10.0\text{ mL}\left(\frac{1\text{ L}}{1000\text{ mL}}\right)\left(\frac{0.0020\text{ mol}}{1\text{ L}}\right) = 2.0\times 10^{-5}\text{ mol SO}_4^{2-}$$

$$[\text{SO}_4^{2-}] = \left(\frac{2.0\times 10^{-5}\text{ mol SO}_4^{2-}}{110\text{ mL}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\text{ mL}}{1\text{ L}}\right) = 1.8\times 10^{-4}\text{ M SO}_4^{2-}$$

We can now calculate Q:

$$Q = [Ba^{2+}][SO_4^{2-}] = (2.9\times 10^{-4})(1.8\times 10^{-4}) = 5.2\times 10^{-8}$$

C We now compare Q with the K_{sp}. If $Q > K_{sp}$, then $BaSO_4$ will precipitate, but if $Q < K_{sp}$, it will not. Because $Q > K_{sp}$, we predict that $BaSO_4$ will precipitate when the two solutions are mixed. In fact, $BaSO_4$ will continue to precipitate until the system reaches equilibrium, which occurs when $[Ba^{2+}][SO_4^{2-}] = K_{sp} = 1.08 \times 10^{-10}$.

Exercise 4.9.3

The solubility product of calcium fluoride (CaF_2) is 3.45×10^{-11}. If 2.0 mL of a 0.10 M solution of NaF is added to 128 mL of a 2.0×10^{-5}M solution of $Ca(NO_3)_2$, will CaF_2 precipitate?

Answer

yes ($Q = 4.7 \times 10^{-11} > K_{sp}$)

Determining if a Precipitate forms (The Ion Product): Determining if a Precipitate forms (The Ion Product)(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

The Common Ion Effect and Solubility

The solubility product expression tells us that the equilibrium concentrations of the cation and the anion are inversely related. That is, as the concentration of the anion increases, the maximum concentration of the cation needed for precipitation to occur decreases—and vice versa—so that K_{sp} is constant. Consequently, the solubility of an ionic compound depends on the concentrations of other salts that contain the same ions. Adding a common cation or anion shifts a solubility equilibrium in the direction predicted by Le Chatelier's principle. As a result, the solubility of any sparingly soluble salt is almost always decreased by the presence of a soluble salt that contains a common ion. The exceptions generally involve the formation of complex ions, which is discussed later.

Consider, for example, the effect of adding a soluble salt, such as $CaCl_2$, to a saturated solution of calcium phosphate [$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$]. We have seen that the solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in water at 25°C is 1.14×10^{-7} M ($K_{sp} = 2.07 \times 10^{-33}$). Thus a saturated solution of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in water contains $3 \times (1.14 \times 10^{-7}\ M) = 3.42 \times 10^{-7}\ M\ Ca^{2+}$ and $2 \times (1.14 \times 10^{-7}\ M) = 2.28 \times 10^{-7}\ M\ PO_4^{3-}$, according to the stoichiometry shown in Equation 4.9.1 (neglecting hydrolysis to form HPO_4^{2-} as described in Chapter 16). If $CaCl_2$ is added to a saturated solution of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, the Ca^{2+} ion concentration will increase such that $[Ca^{2+}] > 3.42 \times 10^{-7}$ M, making $Q > K_{sp}$. The only way the system can return to equilibrium is for the reaction in Equation 4.9.1 to proceed to the left, resulting in precipitation of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$. This will decrease the concentration of both Ca^{2+} and PO_4^{3-} until $Q = K_{sp}$.

> *The common ion effect usually **decreases** the solubility of a sparingly soluble salt.*

Example 4.9.4

Calculate the solubility of calcium phosphate [$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$] in 0.20 M $CaCl_2$.

Given: concentration of $CaCl_2$ solution

Asked for: solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in $CaCl_2$ solution

Strategy:

A. Write the balanced equilibrium equation for the dissolution of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$. Tabulate the concentrations of all species produced in solution.

B. Substitute the appropriate values into the expression for the solubility product and calculate the solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$.

Solution

A The balanced equilibrium equation is given in the following table. If we let x equal the solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in moles per liter, then the change in $[Ca^{2+}]$ is once again $+3x$, and the change in $[PO_4^{3-}]$ is $+2x$. We can insert these values into the ICE table.

$$Ca_3(PO_4)_{2(s)} \rightleftharpoons 3Ca^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2PO^{3-}_{4(aq)}$$

Solutions to Example 17.4.4

	Ca3(PO4)2	$[Ca^{2+}]$	$[PO_4^{3-}]$
initial	pure solid	0.20	0
change	—	$+3x$	$+2x$
final	pure solid	$0.20 + 3x$	$2x$

B The K_{sp} expression is as follows:

$$K_{sp} = [Ca^{2+}]^3[PO_4^{3-}]^2 = (0.20 + 3x)^3(2x)^2 = 2.07\times10^{-33}$$

Because $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ is a sparingly soluble salt, we can reasonably expect that $x << 0.20$. Thus $(0.20 + 3x)$ M is approximately 0.20 M, which simplifies the K_{sp} expression as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} K_{\text{sp}} = (0.20)^3(2x)^2 &= 2.07 \times 10^{-33} \\ x^2 &= 6.5 \times 10^{-32} \\ x &= 2.5 \times 10^{-16} \text{ M} \end{aligned}$$

This value is the solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in 0.20 M $CaCl_2$ at 25°C. It is approximately nine orders of magnitude less than its solubility in pure water, as we would expect based on Le Chatelier's principle. With one exception, this example is identical to Example 4.9.2—here the initial $[Ca^{2+}]$ was 0.20 M rather than 0.

? Exercise 4.9.4

Calculate the solubility of silver carbonate in a 0.25 M solution of sodium carbonate. The solubility of silver carbonate in pure water is 8.45×10^{-12} at 25°C.

Answer

2.9×10^{-6} M (versus 1.3×10^{-4} M in pure water)

The Common Ion Effect in Solubility Products: The Common Ion Effect in Solubility Products(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

The solubility product (K_{sp}) is used to calculate equilibrium concentrations of the ions in solution, whereas the ion product (Q) describes concentrations that are not necessarily at equilibrium. The equilibrium constant for a dissolution reaction, called the solubility product (K_{sp}), is a measure of the solubility of a compound. Whereas solubility is usually expressed in terms of mass of solute per 100 mL of solvent, K_{sp} is defined in terms of the molar concentrations of the component ions. In contrast, the ion product (Q) describes concentrations that are not necessarily equilibrium concentrations. Comparing Q and K_{sp} enables us to determine whether a precipitate will form when solutions of two soluble salts are mixed. Adding a common cation or common anion to a solution of a sparingly soluble salt shifts the solubility equilibrium in the direction predicted by Le Chatelier's principle. The solubility of the salt is almost always decreased by the presence of a common ion.

4.10: Precipitation

Learning Objectives

- Calculate ion concentrations to maintain a heterogeneous equilibrium.
- Calculate pH required to precipitate a metal hydroxide.
- Design experiments to separate metal ions in a solution of mixtures of metals.

A mixture of metal ions in a solution can be separated by precipitation with anions such as Cl^-, Br^-, SO_4^{2-}, CO_3^{2-}, S^{2-}, $Cr_2O_4^{2-}$, PO_4^{2-}, OH^- etc. When a metal ion or a group of metal ions form insoluble salts with a particular anion, they can be separated from others by precipitation. We can also separate the anions by precipitating them with appropriate metal ions. There are no definite dividing lines between **insoluble salts, sparingly soluble**, and **soluble salts**, but concentrations of their saturated solutions are small, medium, and large. Solubility products are usually listed for insoluble and sparingly soluble salts, but they are not given for soluble salts. Solubility products for soluble salts are very large.

What type of salts are usually soluble, sparingly soluble and insoluble? The following are some general guidelines, but these are not precise laws.

- All nitrates are soluble. The singly charged large NO_3^- ions form salts with high solubilities. So do ClO_4^-, ClO_3^-, NO_2^-, $HCOO^-$, and CH_3COO^-.
- All chlorides, bromides, and iodides are soluble except those of Ag^+, Hg_2^{2+}, and Pb^{2+}. CaF_2, BaF_2, and PbF_2 are also insoluble.
- All sulfates are soluble, except those of Ba^{2+}, Sr^{2+}, and Pb^{2+}. The doubly charged sulfates are usually less soluble than halides and nitrates.
- Most singly charge cations K^+, Na^+, NH_4^+ form soluble salts. However, $K_3Co(NO_2)_6$ and $(NH_4)_3Co(NO_2)_6$ are insoluble.

These are handy rules for us to have if we deal with salts often. On the other hand, solubility is an important physical property of a substance, and these properties are listed in handbooks.

Chemical Separation of Metal Ions

Formation of crystals from a saturated solution is a **heterogeneous equilibrium** phenomenon, and it can be applied to separate various chemicals or ions in a solution. When solubilities of two metal salts are very different, they can be separated by precipitation. The K_{sp} values for various salts are valuable information, and some data are given in Table E3. In the first two examples, we show how barium and strontium can be separated as chromate.

✓ Example 4.10.1

The K_{sp} for strontium chromate is 3.6×10^{-5} and the K_{sp} for barium chromate is 1.2×10^{-10}. What concentration of potassium chromate will precipitate the maximum amount of either the barium or the strontium chromate from an equimolar 0.30 M solution of barium and strontium ions without precipitating the other?

Solution

Since the K_{sp} for barium chromate is smaller, we know that $BaCrO_4$ will form a precipitate first as $[CrO_4^{2-}]$ increases so that Q_{sp} for $BaCrO_4$ also increases from zero to K_{sp} of $BaCrO_4$, at which point, $BaCrO_4$ precipitates. As $[CrO_4^{2-}]$ increases, $[Ba^{2+}]$ decreases. Further increase of $[CrO_4^{2-}]$ till Q_{sp} for $SrCrO_4$ increases to K_{sp} of $SrCrO_4$; it then precipitates.

Let us write the equilibrium equations and data down to help us think. Let x be the concentration of chromate to precipitate Sr^{2+}, and y be that to precipitate Ba^{2+}:

$$SrCrO_4(s) \rightarrow Sr^{2+}(aq) + CrO_4^{2-}(aq)$$

According to the definition of K_{sp} we have we have $K_{sp} = (0.30)(x) = 3.6 \times 10^{-5}$. Solving for x gives

$$x = \frac{3.6 \times 10^{-5}}{0.30} = 1.2 \times 10^{-4} M$$

Further, let y be the concentration of chromate to precipitate precipitate Ba^{2+}:

$$\mathrm{BaCrO_4(s) \rightarrow Ba^{2\,+}(aq) + CrO_4^{2\,-}(aq)}$$

with $K_{sp} = (0.30)(y) = 1.2 \times 10^{-10}$. Solving for y gives

$$y = \frac{1.2 \times 10^{-10}}{0.30} = 4.0 \times 10^{-10}\ M$$

The K_{sp}'s for the two salts indicate $\mathrm{BaCrO_4}$ to be much less soluble, and it will precipitate before any $\mathrm{SrCrO_4}$ precipitates. If chromate concentration is maintained less than $1.2 \times 10^{-4}\,M$, then all $\mathrm{Sr^{2+}}$ ions will remain in the solution.

Discussion

In reality, controling the increase of $[\mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}]$ is very difficult.

✓ Example 4.10.2

The K_{sp} for strontium chromate is 3.6×10^{-5} and the K_{sp} for barium chromate is 1.2×10^{-10}. Potassium chromate is added a small amount at a time to first precipitate $\mathrm{BaCrO_4}$. Calculate $[\mathrm{Ba^{2+}}]$ when the first trace of $\mathrm{SrCrO_4}$ precipitate starts to form in a solution that contains 0.30 M each of $\mathrm{Ba^{2+}}$ and $\mathrm{Sr^{2+}}$ ions.

Solution

From the solution given in Example 4.10.1, $[\mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}] = 3.6 \times 10^{-4}\ M$ when $\mathrm{SrCrO_4}$ starts to form. At this concentration, the $[\mathrm{Ba^{2+}}]$ is estimated at $3.6 \times 10^{-4} = 1.2 \times 10^{-10}$.

The K_{sp} of $\mathrm{BaCrO_4}$.

Thus,

$$[\mathrm{Ba^{2+}}] = 3.33 \times 10^{-7}\ M$$

Very small indeed, compared to 0.30. In the fresh precipitate of $\mathrm{SrCrO_4}$, the molar ratio of $\mathrm{SrCrO_4}$ to $\mathrm{BaCrO_4}$ is

$$\frac{0.30}{3.33 \times 10^{-7}} = 9.0 \times 10^5.$$

Hence, the amount of $\mathrm{Ba^{2+}}$ ion in the solid is only 1×10^{-6} (i.e., 1 ppm) of all metal ions, providing that all the solid was removed when

$$[\mathrm{CrO_4^{2\,-}}] = 3.6 \times 10^{-4}\,M.$$

Discussion

The calculation shown here indicates that the separation of Sr and Ba is pretty good. In practice, an impurity level of 1 ppm is a very small value.

✓ Example 4.10.3

What reagent should you use to separate silver and lead ions that are present in a solution? What data or information will be required for this task?

Solution

The K_{sp}'s for salts of silver and lead are required. We list the K_{sp}'s for chlorides and sulfates in a table here. These value are found in the Handbook Menu of our website as Salts K_{sp}.

Solutions to Example 17.6.3

Salt	K_{sp}	Salt	K_{sp}
$AgCl$	1.8×10^{-10}	Ag_2SO_4	1.4×10^{-5}
Hg_2Cl_2	1.3×10^{-18}	$BaSO_4$	1.1×10^{-10}
$PbCl_2$	1.7×10^{-5}	$CaSO_4$	2.4×10^{-5}
		$PbSO_4$	6.3×10^{-7}
		$SrSO_4$	3.2×10^{-7}

Because the K_{sp}'s $AgCl$ and $PbCl_2$ are very different, chloride, Cl^-, apppears a good choice of negative ions for their separation.

The literature also indicates that $PbCl_2$ is rather soluble in warm water, and by heating the solution to 350 K (80°C), you can keep Pb^{2+} ions in solution and precipitate $AgCl$ as a solid. The solubility of $AgCl$ is very small even at high temperatures.

Discussion

Find more detailed information about the solubility of lead chloride as a function of temperature.

Can sulfate be used to separate silver and lead ions? Which one will form a precipitate first as the sulfate ion concentration increases? What is the $[Pb^{2+}]$ when Ag_2SO_4 begins to precipitate in a solution that contains 0.10 M Ag^+?

The Separation of Two Ions by a Difference in Solubility: The Separation of Two Ions by a Difference in Solubility(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

4.11: Complex Ion Equilibria

Learning Objectives

- To be introduced to complex ions, including ligands.

Previously, you learned that metal ions in aqueous solution are hydrated—that is, surrounded by a shell of usually four or six water molecules. A hydrated ion is one kind of a **complex ion** (or, simply, complex), a species formed between a central metal ion and one or more surrounding **ligands**, molecules or ions that contain at least one lone pair of electrons, such as the $[Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ ion.

A complex ion forms from a metal ion and a ligand because of a Lewis acid–base interaction. The positively charged metal ion acts as a Lewis acid, and the ligand, with one or more lone pairs of electrons, acts as a Lewis base. Small, highly charged metal ions, such as Cu^{2+} or Ru^{3+}, have the greatest tendency to act as Lewis acids, and consequently, they have the greatest tendency to form complex ions.

As an example of the formation of complex ions, consider the addition of ammonia to an aqueous solution of the hydrated Cu^{2+} ion $\{[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}\}$. Because it is a stronger base than H_2O, ammonia replaces the water molecules in the hydrated ion to form the $[Cu(NH_3)_4(H_2O)_2]^{2+}$ ion. Formation of the $[Cu(NH_3)_4(H_2O)_2]^{2+}$ complex is accompanied by a dramatic color change, as shown in Figure 4.11.1. The solution changes from the light blue of $[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ to the blue-violet characteristic of the $[Cu(NH_3)_4(H_2O)_2]^{2+}$ ion.

Figure 4.11.1: The Formation of Complex Ions. An aqueous solution of $CuSO_4$ consists of hydrated Cu^{2+} ions in the form of pale blue $[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ (left). The addition of aqueous ammonia to the solution results in the formation of the intensely blue-violet $[Cu(NH_3)_4(H_2O)_2]^{2+}$ ions, usually written as $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$ ion (right) because ammonia, a stronger base than H_2O, replaces water molecules from the hydrated Cu^{2+} ion. For a more complete description, see www.youtube.com/watch?v=IQNcLH6OZK0.

The Formation Constant

The replacement of water molecules from $[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ by ammonia occurs in sequential steps. Omitting the water molecules bound to Cu^{2+} for simplicity, we can write the equilibrium reactions as follows:

$$\mathrm{Cu^{2+}(aq)} + \mathrm{NH_{3(aq)}} \rightleftharpoons [\mathrm{Cu(NH_3)}]^{2+}_{(aq)} \quad K_1 \tag{4.11.1}$$

$$[\mathrm{Cu(NH_3)}]^{2+}_{(aq)} + \mathrm{NH_{3(aq)}} \rightleftharpoons [\mathrm{Cu(NH_3)_2}]^{2+}_{(aq)} \quad K_2 \tag{4.11.2}$$

$$[\mathrm{Cu(NH_3)_2}]^{2+}_{(aq)} + \mathrm{NH_{3(aq)}} \rightleftharpoons [\mathrm{Cu(NH_3)_3}]^{2+}_{(aq)} \quad K_3 \tag{4.11.3}$$

$$[\mathrm{Cu(NH_3)_3}]^{2+}_{(aq)} + \mathrm{NH_{3(aq)}} \rightleftharpoons [\mathrm{Cu(NH_3)_4}]^{2+}_{(aq)} \quad K_4 \tag{4.11.4}$$

The sum of the stepwise reactions is the overall equation for the formation of the complex ion: The hydrated Cu^{2+} ion contains six H_2O ligands, but the complex ion that is produced contains only four NH_3 ligands, not six.

$$Cu^{2+}_{(aq)} + 4NH_{3(aq)} \rightleftharpoons [Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}_{(aq)} \tag{4.11.5}$$

The equilibrium constant for the formation of the complex ion from the hydrated ion is called the **formation constant (K_f)**. The equilibrium constant expression for K_f has the same general form as any other equilibrium constant expression. In this case, the expression is as follows:

$$K_\mathrm{f} = \frac{[[\mathrm{Cu(NH_3)_4}]^{2+}]}{[\mathrm{Cu^{2+}}][\mathrm{NH_3}]^4} = 2.1 \times 10^{13} = K_1K_2K_3K_4 \tag{4.11.6}$$

> *The formation constant (K_f) has the same general form as any other equilibrium constant expression.*

Water, a pure liquid, does not appear explicitly in the equilibrium constant expression, and the hydrated $Cu^{2+}(aq)$ ion is represented as Cu^{2+} for simplicity. As for any equilibrium, the larger the value of the equilibrium constant (in this case, K_f), the more stable the product. With $K_f = 2.1 \times 10^{13}$, the $[Cu(NH_3)_4(H_2O)_2]^{2+}$ complex ion is very stable. The formation constants for some common complex ions are listed in Table 4.11.1.

Table 4.11.1: Common Complex Ions

	Complex Ion	Equilibrium Equation	K_f
Ammonia Complexes	$[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$	$Ag^+ + 2NH_3 \rightleftharpoons [Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$	1.1×10^7
	$[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$	$Cu^{2+} + 4NH_3 \rightleftharpoons [Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$	2.1×10^{13}
	$[Ni(NH_3)_6]^{2+}$	$Ni^{2+} + 6NH_3 \rightleftharpoons [Ni(NH_3)_6]^{2+}$	5.5×10^8
Cyanide Complexes	$[Ag(CN)_2]^-$	$Ag^+ + 2CN^- \rightleftharpoons [Ag(CN)_2]^-$	1.1×10^{18}
	$[Ni(CN)_4]^{2-}$	$Ni^{2+} + 4CN^- \rightleftharpoons [Ni(CN)_4]^{2-}$	2.2×10^{31}
	$[Fe(CN)_6]^{3-}$	$Fe^{3+} + 6CN^- \rightleftharpoons [Fe(CN)_6]^{3-}$	1×10^{42}
Hydroxide Complexes	$[Zn(OH)_4]^{2-}$	$Zn^{2+} + 4OH^- \rightleftharpoons [Zn(OH)_4]^{2-}$	4.6×10^{17}
	$[Cr(OH)_4]^-$	$Cr^{3+} + 4OH^- \rightleftharpoons [Cr(OH)_4]^-$	8.0×10^{29}
Halide Complexes	$[HgCl_4]^{2-}$	$Hg^{2+} + 4Cl^- \rightleftharpoons [HgCl_4]^{2-}$	1.2×10^{15}
	$[CdI_4]^{2-}$	$Cd^{2+} + 4I \rightleftharpoons [CdI_4]^{2-}$	2.6×10^5
	$[AlF_6]^{3-}$	$Al^{3+} + 6F^- \rightleftharpoons [AlF_6]^{3-}$	6.9×10^{19}
Other Complexes	$[Ag(S_2O_3)_2]^{3-}$	$Ag^+ + 2S_2O_3^{2-} \rightleftharpoons [Ag(S_2O_3)_2]^{3-}$	2.9×10^{13}
	$[Fe(C_2O_4)_3]^{3-}$	$Fe^{3+} + 3C_2O_4^{2-} \rightleftharpoons [Fe(C_2O_4)_3]^{3-}$	2.0×10^{20}

*Reported values are overall formation constants. Source: Data from Lange's Handbook of Chemistry, 15th ed. (1999).

✓ Example 4.11.1

If 12.5 g of $Cu(NO_3)_2 \bullet 6\,H_2O$ is added to 500 mL of 1.00 M aqueous ammonia, what is the equilibrium concentration of $Cu^{2+}(aq)$?

Given: mass of Cu^{2+} salt and volume and concentration of ammonia solution

Asked for: equilibrium concentration of $Cu^{2+}(aq)$

Strategy:

A. Calculate the initial concentration of Cu^{2+} due to the addition of copper(II) nitrate hexahydrate. Use the stoichiometry of the reaction shown in Equation 4.11.5 to construct a table showing the initial concentrations, the changes in concentrations, and the final concentrations of all species in solution.
B. Substitute the final concentrations into the expression for the formation constant (Equation 4.11.6) to calculate the equilibrium concentration of $Cu^{2+}(aq)$.

Solution

Adding an ionic compound that contains Cu^{2+} to an aqueous ammonia solution will result in the formation of $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}(aq)$, as shown in Equation 4.11.5. We assume that the volume change caused by adding solid copper(II) nitrate to aqueous ammonia is negligible.

A The initial concentration of Cu^{2+} from the amount of added copper nitrate prior to any reaction is as follows:

$$12.5\ \cancel{g}\ \mathrm{Cu(NO_3)_2 \cdot 6H_2O} \left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{mol}}{295.65\ \cancel{g}}\right)\left(\frac{1}{500\ \cancel{mL}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ \cancel{mL}}{1\ \mathrm{L}}\right) = 0.0846\ \mathrm{M} \tag{4.11.7}$$

Because the stoichiometry of the reaction is four NH_3 to one Cu^{2+}, the amount of NH_3 required to react completely with the Cu^{2+} is 4(0.0846) = 0.338 M. The concentration of ammonia after complete reaction is 1.00 M − 0.338 M = 0.66 M. These results are summarized in the first two lines of the following table. Because the equilibrium constant for the reaction is large (2.1×10^{13}), the equilibrium will lie far to the right. Thus we will assume that the formation of $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$ in the first step is complete and allow some of it to dissociate into Cu^{2+} and NH_3 until equilibrium has been reached. If we define x as the amount of Cu^{2+} produced by the dissociation reaction, then the stoichiometry of the reaction tells us that the change in the concentration of $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$ is $-x$, and the change in the concentration of ammonia is $+4x$, as indicated in the table. The final concentrations of all species (in the bottom row of the table) are the sums of the concentrations after complete reaction and the changes in concentrations.

$$\mathrm{Cu^{2+} + 4\,NH_3 \rightleftharpoons [Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}}$$

	$[Cu^{2+}]$	$[NH_3]$	$[[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}]$
initial	0.0846	1.00	0
after complete reaction	0	0.66	0.0846
change	$+x$	$+4x$	$-x$
final	x	$0.66 + 4x$	$0.0846 - x$

B Substituting the final concentrations into the expression for the formation constant (Equation 4.11.6) and assuming that $x << 0.0846$, which allows us to remove x from the sum and difference,

$$\begin{aligned} K_f &= \frac{[[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}]}{[Cu^{2+}][NH_3]^4} = \frac{0.0846 - x}{x(0.66 + 4x)^4} \approx \frac{0.0846}{x(0.66)^4} = 2.1 \times 10^{13} \\ x &= 2.1 \times 10^{-14} \end{aligned}$$

The value of x indicates that our assumption was justified. The equilibrium concentration of $Cu^{2+}(aq)$ in a 1.00 M ammonia solution is therefore 2.1×10^{-14} M.

? Exercise 4.11.1

The ferrocyanide ion $\{[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}\}$ is very stable, with a K_f of 1×10^{35}. Calculate the concentration of cyanide ion in equilibrium with a 0.65 M solution of $K_4[Fe(CN)_6]$.

Answer

2×10^{-6} M

The Effect of the Formation of Complex Ions on Solubility

What happens to the solubility of a sparingly soluble salt if a ligand that forms a stable complex ion is added to the solution? One such example occurs in conventional black-and-white photography. Recall that black-and-white photographic film contains light-sensitive microcrystals of AgBr, or mixtures of AgBr and other silver halides. AgBr is a sparingly soluble salt, with a K_{sp} of 5.35×10^{-13} at 25°C. When the shutter of the camera opens, the light from the object being photographed strikes some of the crystals on the film and initiates a photochemical reaction that converts AgBr to black Ag metal. Well-formed, stable negative images appear in tones of gray, corresponding to the number of grains of AgBr converted, with the areas exposed to the most light being darkest. To fix the image and prevent more AgBr crystals from being converted to Ag metal during processing of the film, the unreacted AgBr on the film is removed using a complexation reaction to dissolve the sparingly soluble salt.

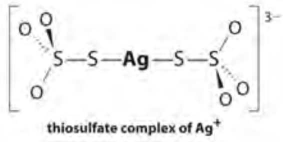
The reaction for the dissolution of silver bromide is as follows:

$$AgBr_{(s)} \rightleftharpoons Ag^+_{(aq)} + Br^-_{(aq)} \tag{4.11.8}$$

with

$$K_{sp} = 5.35 \times 10^{-13} \text{ at } 25^\circ\text{C} \tag{4.11.9}$$

The equilibrium lies far to the left, and the equilibrium concentrations of Ag^+ and Br^- ions are very low (7.31×10^{-7} M). As a result, removing unreacted AgBr from even a single roll of film using pure water would require tens of thousands of liters of water and a great deal of time. Le Chatelier's principle tells us, however, that we can drive the reaction to the right by removing one of the products, which will cause more AgBr to dissolve. Bromide ion is difficult to remove chemically, but silver ion forms a variety of stable two-coordinate complexes with neutral ligands, such as ammonia, or with anionic ligands, such as cyanide or thiosulfate ($S_2O_3^{2-}$). In photographic processing, excess AgBr is dissolved using a concentrated solution of sodium thiosulfate.



thiosulfate complex of Ag^+

The reaction of Ag^+ with thiosulfate is as follows:

$$Ag^+_{(aq)} + 2S_2O^{2-}_{3(aq)} \rightleftharpoons [Ag(S_2O_3)_2]^{3-}_{(aq)} \tag{4.11.10}$$

with

$$K_f = 2.9 \times 10^{13} \tag{4.11.11}$$

The magnitude of the equilibrium constant indicates that almost all Ag^+ ions in solution will be immediately complexed by thiosulfate to form $[Ag(S_2O_3)_2]^{3-}$. We can see the effect of thiosulfate on the solubility of AgBr by writing the appropriate reactions and adding them together:

$$\mathrm{AgBr(s)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag^+(aq)} + \mathrm{Br^-(aq)} \quad K_{\mathrm{sp}} = 5.35 \times 10^{-13} \tag{4.11.12}$$

$$\mathrm{Ag^+(aq)} + \mathrm{2S_2O_3^{2-}(aq)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{[Ag(S_2O_3)_2]^{3-}(aq)} \quad K_{\mathrm{f}} = 2.9 \times 10^{13} \tag{4.11.13}$$

$$\mathrm{AgBr(s)} + \mathrm{2S_2O_3^{2-}(aq)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{[Ag(S_2O_3)_2]^{3-}(aq)} + \mathrm{Br^-(aq)} \quad K = K_{\mathrm{sp}}K_{\mathrm{f}} = 15 \tag{4.11.14}$$

Comparing K with K_{sp} shows that the formation of the complex ion increases the solubility of AgBr by approximately 3×10^{13}. The dramatic increase in solubility combined with the low cost and the low toxicity explains why sodium thiosulfate is almost universally used for developing black-and-white film. If desired, the silver can be recovered from the thiosulfate solution using any of several methods and recycled.

> *If a complex ion has a large K_f, the formation of a complex ion can dramatically increase the solubility of sparingly soluble salts.*

✓ Example 4.11.2

Due to the common ion effect, we might expect a salt such as AgCl to be much less soluble in a concentrated solution of KCl than in water. Such an assumption would be incorrect, however, because it ignores the fact that silver ion tends to form a two-coordinate complex with chloride ions ($AgCl_2^-$). Calculate the solubility of AgCl in each situation:

a. in pure water
b. in 1.0 M KCl solution, ignoring the formation of any complex ions
c. the same solution as in part (b) except taking the formation of complex ions into account, assuming that $AgCl_2^-$ is the only Ag^+ complex that forms in significant concentrations

At 25°C, $K_{sp} = 1.77 \times 10^{-10}$ for AgCl and $K_f = 1.1 \times 10^5$ for $AgCl_2^-$.

Given: K_{sp} of AgCl, K_f of $AgCl_2^-$, and KCl concentration

Asked for: solubility of AgCl in water and in KCl solution with and without the formation of complex ions

Strategy:

A. Write the solubility product expression for AgCl and calculate the concentration of Ag^+ and Cl^- in water.
B. Calculate the concentration of Ag^+ in the KCl solution.

C. Write balanced chemical equations for the dissolution of AgCl and for the formation of the $AgCl_2^-$ complex. Add the two equations and calculate the equilibrium constant for the overall equilibrium.
D. Write the equilibrium constant expression for the overall reaction. Solve for the concentration of the complex ion.

Solution

a. **A** If we let x equal the solubility of AgCl, then at equilibrium [Ag+] = [Cl⁻] = x M. Substituting this value into the solubility product expression,

$$K_{sp} = [Ag^+][Cl^-] = (x)(x) = x^2 = 1.77\times10^{-10}$$

$$x = 1.33\times10^{-5}$$

Thus the solubility of AgCl in pure water at 25°C is 1.33×10^{-5} M.

b. **B** If x equals the solubility of AgCl in the KCl solution, then at equilibrium $[Ag^+] = x$ M and $[Cl^-] = (1.0 + x)$ M. Substituting these values into the solubility product expression and assuming that $x << 1.0$,

$$K_{sp} = [Ag^+][Cl^-] = (x)(1.0 + x) \approx x(1.0) = 1.77\times10^{-10} = x$$

If the common ion effect were the only important factor, we would predict that AgCl is approximately five orders of magnitude less soluble in a 1.0 M KCl solution than in water.

c. **C** To account for the effects of the formation of complex ions, we must first write the equilibrium equations for both the dissolution and the formation of complex ions. Adding the equations corresponding to K_{sp} and K_f gives us an equation that describes the dissolution of AgCl in a KCl solution. The equilibrium constant for the reaction is therefore the product of K_{sp} and K_f:

$$\mathrm{AgCl(s)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag^+(aq)} + \mathrm{Cl^-(aq)} \quad K_{sp} = 1.77\times10^{-10} \tag{4.11.15}$$

$$\mathrm{Ag^+(aq)} + 2\mathrm{Cl^-} \rightleftharpoons [\mathrm{AgCl_2}]^- \quad K_f = 1.1\times10^{5} \tag{4.11.16}$$

$$\mathrm{AgCl(s)} + \mathrm{Cl^-} \rightleftharpoons [\mathrm{AgCl_2}]^- \quad K = K_{sp}K_f = 1.9\times10^{-5} \tag{4.11.17}$$

D If we let x equal the solubility of AgCl in the KCl solution, then at equilibrium $[AgCl_2^-] = x$ and $[Cl^-] = 1.0 - x$. Substituting these quantities into the equilibrium constant expression for the net reaction and assuming that $x << 1.0$,

$$K = \frac{[AgCl_2^-]}{[Cl^-]} = \frac{x}{1.0 - x} \approx 1.9\times10^{-5} = x$$

That is, AgCl dissolves in 1.0 M KCl to produce a 1.9×10^{-5} M solution of the $AgCl_2^-$ complex ion. Thus we predict that AgCl has approximately the same solubility in a 1.0 M KCl solution as it does in pure water, which is 10^5 times greater than that predicted based on the common ion effect. (In fact, the measured solubility of AgCl in 1.0 M KCl is almost a factor of 10 greater than that in pure water, largely due to the formation of other chloride-containing complexes.)

? Exercise 4.11.2

Calculate the solubility of mercury(II) iodide (HgI_2) in each situation:

a. pure water
b. a 3.0 M solution of NaI, assuming $[HgI_4]^{2-}$ is the only Hg-containing species present in significant amounts

$$K_{sp} = 2.9 \times 10^{-29} \text{ for } HgI_2 \text{ and } K_f = 6.8 \times 10^{29} \text{ for } [HgI_4]^{2-}.$$

Answer a

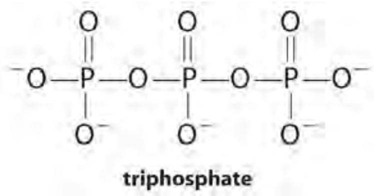
1.9×10^{-10} M

Answer a

1.4 M

Complexing agents, molecules or ions that increase the solubility of metal salts by forming soluble metal complexes, are common components of laundry detergents. Long-chain carboxylic acids, the major components of soaps, form insoluble salts with Ca^{2+} and

Mg^{2+}, which are present in high concentrations in “hard” water. The precipitation of these salts produces a bathtub ring and gives a gray tinge to clothing. Adding a complexing agent such as pyrophosphate ($O_3POPO_3^{4-}$, or $P_2O_7^{4-}$) or triphosphate ($P_3O_{10}^{5-}$) to detergents prevents the magnesium and calcium salts from precipitating because the equilibrium constant for complex-ion formation is large:



$$\mathrm{Ca^{2+}(aq) + O_3POPO_4^{4-}(aq) \rightleftharpoons [Ca(O_3POPO_3)]^{2-}(aq)} \tag{4.11.18}$$

with

$$K_f = 4 \times 10^4 \tag{4.11.19}$$

However, phosphates can cause environmental damage by promoting eutrophication, the growth of excessive amounts of algae in a body of water, which can eventually lead to large decreases in levels of dissolved oxygen that kill fish and other aquatic organisms. Consequently, many states in the United States have banned the use of phosphate-containing detergents, and France has banned their use beginning in 2007. “Phosphate-free” detergents contain different kinds of complexing agents, such as derivatives of acetic acid or other carboxylic acids. The development of phosphate substitutes is an area of intense research.

Commercial water softeners also use a complexing agent to treat hard water by passing the water over ion-exchange resins, which are complex sodium salts. When water flows over the resin, sodium ion is dissolved, and insoluble salts precipitate onto the resin surface. Water treated in this way has a saltier taste due to the presence of Na^+, but it contains fewer dissolved minerals.

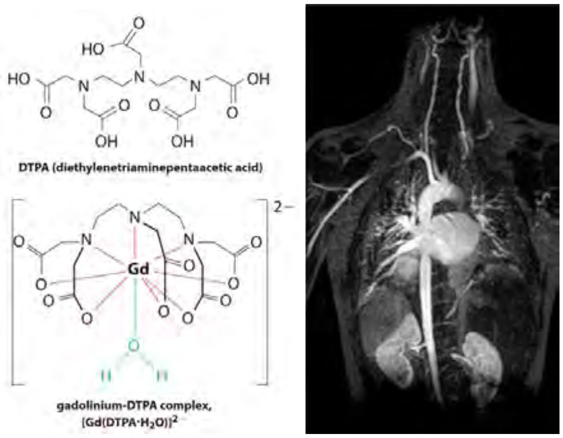


Figure 4.11.2: An MRI Image of the Heart, Arteries, and Veins. When a patient is injected with a paramagnetic metal cation in the form of a stable complex known as an MRI contrast agent, the magnetic properties of water in cells are altered. Because the different environments in different types of cells respond differently, a physician can obtain detailed images of soft tissues.

Another application of complexing agents is found in medicine. Unlike x-rays, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) can give relatively good images of soft tissues such as internal organs. MRI is based on the magnetic properties of the ^1H nucleus of hydrogen atoms in water, which is a major component of soft tissues. Because the properties of water do not depend very much on whether it is inside a cell or in the blood, it is hard to get detailed images of these tissues that have good contrast. To solve this problem, scientists have developed a class of metal complexes known as “MRI contrast agents.” Injecting an MRI contrast agent into a patient selectively affects the magnetic properties of water in cells of normal tissues, in tumors, or in blood vessels and allows doctors to “see” each of these separately (Figure 4.11.2). One of the most important metal ions for this application is Gd^{3+}, which with seven unpaired electrons is highly paramagnetic. Because $Gd^{3+}(aq)$ is quite toxic, it must be administered as a very stable complex that does not dissociate in the body and can be excreted intact by the kidneys. The complexing agents used for gadolinium are ligands such as $DTPA^{5-}$ (diethylene triamine pentaacetic acid), whose fully protonated form is shown here.

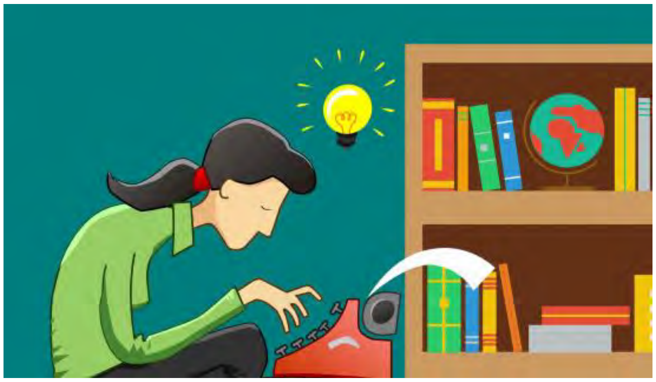
Summary

The formation of complex ions can substantially increase the solubility of sparingly soluble salts if the complex ion has a large K_f. A complex ion is a species formed between a central metal ion and one or more surrounding ligands, molecules or ions that contain at least one lone pair of electrons. Small, highly charged metal ions have the greatest tendency to act as Lewis acids and form complex ions. The equilibrium constant for the formation of the complex ion is the formation constant (K_f). The formation of a complex ion by adding a complexing agent increases the solubility of a compound.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: Acids and Bases

5.1: Batman’s Basic Blunder



Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

5.2: The Nature of Acids and Bases

Acids and bases have been known for a long time. When Robert Boyle characterized them in 1680, he noted that acids dissolve many substances, change the color of certain natural dyes (for example, they change litmus from blue to red), and lose these characteristic properties after coming into contact with alkalis (bases). In the eighteenth century, it was recognized that acids have a sour taste, react with limestone to liberate a gaseous substance (now known to be CO_2), and interact with alkalis to form neutral substances. In 1815, Humphry Davy contributed greatly to the development of the modern acid-base concept by demonstrating that hydrogen is the essential constituent of acids. Around that same time, Joseph Louis Gay-Lussac concluded that acids are substances that can neutralize bases and that these two classes of substances can be defined only in terms of each other. The significance of hydrogen was reemphasized in 1884 when Svante Arrhenius defined an acid as a compound that dissolves in water to yield hydrogen cations (now recognized to be hydronium ions) and a base as a compound that dissolves in water to yield hydroxide anions.

Acids and bases are common solutions that exist everywhere. Almost every liquid that we encounter in our daily lives consists of acidic and basic properties, with the exception of water. They have completely different properties and are able to neutralize to form H_2O, which will be discussed later in a subsection. Acids and bases can be defined by their physical and chemical observations (Table $5.2.1$).

Table $5.2.1$: General Properties of Acids and Bases

ACIDS	BASES
produce a piercing pain in a wound.	give a slippery feel.
taste sour.	taste bitter.
are colorless when placed in phenolphthalein (an indicator).	are pink when placed in phenolphthalein (an indicator).
are red on blue litmus paper (a pH indicator).	are blue on red litmus paper (a pH indicator).
have a pH<7.	have a pH>7.
produce hydrogen gas when reacted with metals.	
produce carbon dioxide when reacted with carbonates.	
Common examples: Lemons, oranges, vinegar, urine, sulfuric acid, hydrochloric acid	Common Examples: Soap, toothpaste, bleach, cleaning agents, limewater, ammonia water, sodium hydroxide.

Acids and bases in aqueous solutions will conduct electricity because they contain dissolved ions. Therefore, acids and bases are **electrolytes**. Strong acids and bases will be strong electrolytes. Weak acids and bases will be weak electrolytes. This affects the amount of conductivity.

The Arrhenius Definition of Acids and Bases

In 1884, the Swedish chemist Svante Arrhenius proposed two specific classifications of compounds, termed acids and bases. When dissolved in an aqueous solution, certain ions were released into the solution. The Arrhenius definition of acid-base reactions is a development of the "hydrogen theory of acids". It was used to provide a modern definition of acids and bases, and followed from Arrhenius's work with Friedrich Wilhelm Ostwald in establishing the presence of ions in aqueous solution in 1884. This led to Arrhenius receiving the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1903.

An Arrhenius acid is a compound that increases the concentration of H^+ ions that are present when added to water. These H^+ ions form the hydronium ion (H_3O^+) when they combine with water molecules. This process is represented in a chemical equation by adding H_2O to the reactants side.

$$HCl_{(aq)} \rightarrow H^+_{(aq)} + Cl^-_{(aq)}$$

In this reaction, hydrochloric acid (HCl) dissociates into hydrogen (H^+) and chlorine (Cl^-) ions when dissolved in water, thereby releasing H^+ ions into solution. Formation of the hydronium ion equation:

$$HCl_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow H_3O^+_{(aq)} + Cl^-_{(aq)}$$

The Arrhenius definitions of acidity and alkalinity are restricted to aqueous solutions and refer to the concentration of the solvated ions. Under this definition, pure H_2SO_4 or HCl dissolved in toluene are not acidic, despite the fact that both of these acids will donate a proton to toluene. In addition, under the Arrhenius definition, a solution of sodium amide ($NaNH_2$) in liquid ammonia is not alkaline, despite the fact that the amide ion (NH_2^-) will readily deprotonate ammonia. Thus, the Arrhenius definition can only describe acids and bases in an aqueous environment.

Limitation of the Arrhenius Definition of Acids and Bases

The Arrhenius definition can **only** describe acids and bases in an aqueous environment.

In chemistry, acids and bases have been defined differently by three sets of theories: One is the Arrhenius definition defined above, which revolves around the idea that acids are substances that ionize (break off) in an aqueous solution to produce hydrogen (H^+) ions while bases produce hydroxide (OH^-) ions in solution. The other two definitions are discussed in detail alter in the chapter and include the Brønsted-Lowry definition the defines acids as substances that donate protons (H^+) whereas bases are substances that accept protons and the Lewis theory of acids and bases states that acids are electron pair acceptors while bases are electron pair donors.

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous

5.3: Definitions of Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Identify acids, bases, and conjugate acid-base pairs according to the Brønsted-Lowry definition
- Write equations for acid and base ionization reactions
- Use the ion-product constant for water to calculate hydronium and hydroxide ion concentrations
- Describe the acid-base behavior of amphiprotic substances

Acids and bases have been known for a long time. When Robert Boyle characterized them in 1680, he noted that acids dissolve many substances, change the color of certain natural dyes (for example, they change litmus from blue to red), and lose these characteristic properties after coming into contact with alkalis (bases). In the eighteenth century, it was recognized that acids have a sour taste, react with limestone to liberate a gaseous substance (now known to be CO_2), and interact with alkalis to form neutral substances. In 1815, Humphry Davy contributed greatly to the development of the modern acid-base concept by demonstrating that hydrogen is the essential constituent of acids. Around that same time, Joseph Louis Gay-Lussac concluded that acids are substances that can neutralize bases and that these two classes of substances can be defined only in terms of each other. The significance of hydrogen was reemphasized in 1884 when Svante Arrhenius defined an acid as a compound that dissolves in water to yield hydrogen cations (now recognized to be hydronium ions) and a base as a compound that dissolves in water to yield hydroxide anions.

Previously, we defined acids and bases as Arrhenius did: An acid is a compound that dissolves in water to yield hydronium ions (H_3O^+) and a base as a compound that dissolves in water to yield hydroxide ions ($\mathrm{OH^-}$). This definition is not wrong; it is simply limited. We extended the definition of an acid or a base using the more general definition proposed in 1923 by the Danish chemist Johannes Brønsted and the English chemist Thomas Lowry. Their definition centers on the proton, $\mathrm{H^+}$. A proton is what remains when a normal hydrogen atom, $^1_1\mathrm{H}$, loses an electron. A compound that donates a proton to another compound is called a Brønsted-Lowry acid, and a compound that accepts a proton is called a Brønsted-Lowry base. An acid-base reaction is the transfer of a proton from a proton donor (acid) to a proton acceptor (base). In a subsequent chapter of this text we will introduce the most general model of acid-base behavior introduced by the American chemist G. N. Lewis.

Acids may be compounds such as HCl or H_2SO_4, organic acids like acetic acid ($\mathrm{CH_3COOH}$) or ascorbic acid (vitamin C), or H_2O. Anions (such as $\mathrm{HSO_4^-}$, $\mathrm{H_2PO_4^-}$, $\mathrm{HS^-}$, and $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$) and cations (such as $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$, $\mathrm{NH_4^+}$, and $\mathrm{[Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+}}$) may also act as acids. Bases fall into the same three categories. Bases may be neutral molecules (such as $\mathrm{H_2O}$, $\mathrm{NH_3}$, and $\mathrm{CH_3NH_2}$), anions (such as $\mathrm{OH^-}$, $\mathrm{HS^-}$, $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$, $\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}$, $\mathrm{F^-}$, and $\mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}$), or cations (such as $\mathrm{[Al(H_2O)_5OH]^{2+}}$). The most familiar bases are ionic compounds such as NaOH and $\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}$, which contain the hydroxide ion, $\mathrm{OH^-}$. The hydroxide ion in these compounds accepts a proton from acids to form water:

$$\mathrm{H^+ + OH^- \rightarrow H_2O} \tag{5.3.1}$$

We call the product that remains after an acid donates a proton the **conjugate base** of the acid. This species is a base because it can accept a proton (to re-form the acid):

$$\text{acid} \rightleftharpoons \text{proton} + \text{conjugate base} \tag{5.3.2}$$

$$\mathrm{HF \rightleftharpoons H^+ + F^-} \tag{5.3.3}$$

$$\mathrm{H_2SO_4 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HSO_4^-} \tag{5.3.4}$$

$$\mathrm{H_2O \rightleftharpoons H^+ + OH^-} \tag{5.3.5}$$

$$\mathrm{HSO_4^- \rightleftharpoons H^+ + SO_4^{2-}} \tag{5.3.6}$$

$$\mathrm{NH_4^+ \rightleftharpoons H^+ + NH_3} \tag{5.3.7}$$

We call the product that results when a base accepts a proton the base’s **conjugate acid**. This species is an acid because it can give up a proton (and thus re-form the base):

$$\text{base} + \text{proton} \rightleftharpoons \text{conjugate acid} \tag{5.3.8}$$

$$\mathrm{OH^- + H^+ \rightleftharpoons H_2O} \tag{5.3.9}$$

$$H_2O + H^+ \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ \tag{5.3.10}$$

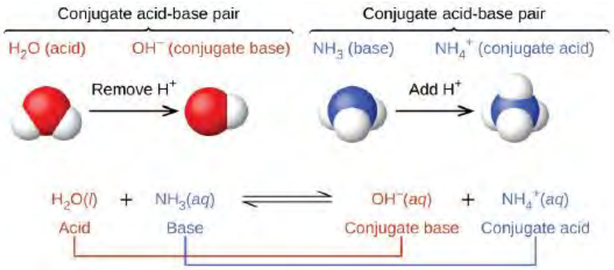
$$NH_3 + H^+ \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+ \tag{5.3.11}$$

$$S^{2-} + H^+ \rightleftharpoons HS^- \tag{5.3.12}$$

$$CO_3^{2-} + H^+ \rightleftharpoons HCO_3^- \tag{5.3.13}$$

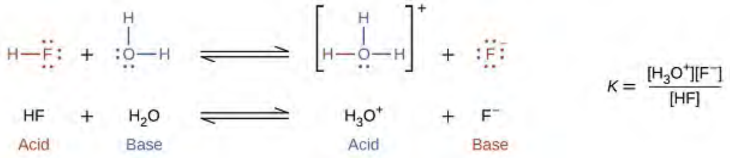
\[\ce{F^- +H^+ \rightleftharpoons HF} \label{16.2.3g} \]

In these two sets of equations, the behaviors of acids as proton donors and bases as proton acceptors are represented in isolation. In reality, all acid-base reactions involve the transfer of protons between acids and bases. For example, consider the acid-base reaction that takes place when ammonia is dissolved in water. A water molecule (functioning as an acid) transfers a proton to an ammonia molecule (functioning as a base), yielding the conjugate base of water, OH^-, and the conjugate acid of ammonia, NH_4^+:



A conjugate acid base pair if when we remove a H plus from the acid to get the conjugate base. Another conjugate acid base pair is when we add H plus to a base to get a conjugate acid. In a reaction: the acid and base are the reactants and the products are the conjugate base and conjugate acid.

The reaction between a Brønsted-Lowry acid and water is called acid ionization. For example, when hydrogen fluoride dissolves in water and ionizes, protons are transferred from hydrogen fluoride molecules to water molecules, yielding hydronium ions and fluoride ions:

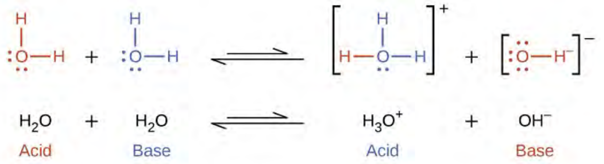


In this reaction HF is treated as the acid and water is treated as the base. The products as H3O plus and F minus. H3O plus is the acid and F minus is the base.

When we add a base to water, a base ionization reaction occurs in which protons are transferred from water molecules to base molecules. For example, adding pyridine to water yields hydroxide ions and pyridinium ions:

<div data-mt-source="1""This" height="167" width="612" src="/@api/deki/files/56740/CNX_Chem_14_01_NH3_img.jpg">

Notice that both these ionization reactions are represented as equilibrium processes. The relative extent to which these acid and base ionization reactions proceed is an important topic treated in a later section of this chapter. In the preceding paragraphs we saw that water can function as either an acid or a base, depending on the nature of the solute dissolved in it. In fact, in pure water or in any aqueous solution, water acts both as an acid and a base. A very small fraction of water molecules donate protons to other water molecules to form hydronium ions and hydroxide ions:



Here we have 2 water molecules reacting together. One water molecule is an acid while the second water molecule acts as a base. For the products, we get H3O plus and OH minus. H3O plus is the acid and OH minus is the base.

This type of reaction, in which a substance ionizes when one molecule of the substance reacts with another molecule of the same substance, is referred to as **autoionization**. Pure water undergoes autoionization to a very slight extent. Only about two out of every 10^9 molecules in a sample of pure water are ionized at 25 °C. The equilibrium constant for the ionization of water is called the ion-product constant for water (K_w):

$$\mathrm{H_2O}_{(l)} + \mathrm{H_2O}_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O}^+_{(aq)} + HO^-_{(aq)} \quad K_\mathrm{w} = [\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}] \tag{5.3.14}$$

The slight ionization of pure water is reflected in the small value of the equilibrium constant; at 25 °C, Kw has a value of 1.0×10^{-14}. The process is endothermic, and so the extent of ionization and the resulting concentrations of hydronium ion and hydroxide ion increase with temperature. For example, at 100 °C, the value for K_w is approximately 5.1×10^{-13}, roughly 100-times larger than the value at 25 °C.

A Video Discussing Conjugate Acid-Base Pairs: Conjugate Acid-Base Pairs [youtu.be]

✓ Example 5.3.1: Ion Concentrations in Pure Water

What are the hydronium ion concentration and the hydroxide ion concentration in pure water at 25 °C?

Solution

The autoionization of water yields the same number of hydronium and hydroxide ions. Therefore, in pure water, $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = [\mathrm{OH^-}]$. At 25 °C:

$$K_\mathrm{w} = [\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}] = [\mathrm{H_3O^+}]^{2+} = [\mathrm{OH^-}]^{2+} = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

So:

$$[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = [\mathrm{OH^-}] = \sqrt{1.0 \times 10^{-14}} = 1.0 \times 10^{-7} \ M$$

The hydronium ion concentration and the hydroxide ion concentration are the same, and we find that both equal $1.0 \times 10^{-7} \ M$.

? Exercise 5.3.1

The ion product of water at 80 °C is 2.4×10^{-13}. What are the concentrations of hydronium and hydroxide ions in pure water at 80 °C?

Answer

$[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = [\mathrm{OH^-}] = 4.9 \times 10^{-7} \ M$

It is important to realize that the autoionization equilibrium for water is established in all aqueous solutions. Adding an acid or base to water will not change the position of the equilibrium determined by the autoionization reaction but it does shift the relative concentrations of $[\mathrm{OH}-]$ and $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$. Example 16.2.2 demonstrates the quantitative aspects of this relation between hydronium and hydroxide ion concentrations.

A Video Describing the Self-Ionization of Water (Kw): Self-Ionization of Water (Kw) [youtu.be]

✓ Example 5.3.2: The Inverse Proportionality of $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$ and $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$

A solution of carbon dioxide in water has a hydronium ion concentration of $2.0 \times 10^{-6}\ M$. What is the concentration of hydroxide ion at 25 °C?

Solution

We know the value of the ion-product constant for water at 25 °C:

$$2\,\mathrm{H_2O}_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+_{(aq)}} + \mathrm{OH^-_{(aq)}}$$

$$K_\mathrm{w} = [\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}] = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

Thus, we can calculate the missing equilibrium concentration.

Rearrangement of the K_w expression yields that $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$ is directly proportional to the inverse of $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$:

$$[\mathrm{OH^-}] = \frac{K_\mathrm{w}}{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]} = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{2.0 \times 10^{-6}} = 5.0 \times 10^{-9}$$

The hydroxide ion concentration in water is reduced to $5.0 \times 10^{-9}\ M$ as the hydrogen ion concentration increases to $2.0 \times 10^{-6}\ M$. This is expected from Le Chatelier's principle; the autoionization reaction shifts to the left to reduce the stress of the increased hydronium ion concentration and the $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$ is reduced relative to that in pure water.

A check of these concentrations confirms that our arithmetic is correct:

$$K_\mathrm{w} = [\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}] = (2.0 \times 10^{-6})(5.0 \times 10^{-9}) = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

? Exercise 5.3.2

What is the hydronium ion concentration in an aqueous solution with a hydroxide ion concentration of 0.001 M at 25 °C?

Answer

$$[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = 1 \times 10^{-11} M$$

Amphiprotic Species

Like water, many molecules and ions may either gain or lose a proton under the appropriate conditions. Such species are said to be amphiprotic. Another term used to describe such species is amphoteric, which is a more general term for a species that may act either as an acid or a base by any definition (not just the Brønsted-Lowry one). Consider for example the bicarbonate ion, which may either donate or accept a proton as shown here:

$$\mathrm{HCO_{3(aq)}^{-} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons CO_{3(aq)}^{2\,-} + H_3O_{(aq)}^{+}} \tag{5.3.15}$$

$$\mathrm{HCO_{3(aq)}^{-} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_{3(aq)} + OH_{(aq)}^{-}} \tag{5.3.16}$$

✓ Example 5.3.3: The Acid-Base Behavior of an Amphoteric Substance

Write separate equations representing the reaction of $\mathrm{HSO_3^-}$

a. as an acid with $\mathrm{OH^-}$
b. as a base with HI

Solution

a. $HSO_{3(aq)}^{-} + OH_{(aq)}^{-} \rightleftharpoons SO_{3(aq)}^{2-} + H_2O_{(l)}$
b. $HSO_{3(aq)}^{-} + HI_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons H_2SO_{3(aq)} + I_{(aq)}^{-}$

? Example 5.3.4

Write separate equations representing the reaction of $\mathrm{H_2PO_4^-}$

a. as a base with HBr
b. as an acid with $\mathrm{OH^-}$

Answer

a. $H_2PO_{4(aq)}^{-} + HBr_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons H_3PO_{4(aq)} + Br_{(aq)}^{-}$
b. $H_2PO_{4(aq)}^{-} + OH_{(aq)}^{-} \rightleftharpoons HPO_{4(aq)}^{2-} + H_2O_{(l)}$

Summary

A compound that can donate a proton (a hydrogen ion) to another compound is called a Brønsted-Lowry acid. The compound that accepts the proton is called a Brønsted-Lowry base. The species remaining after a Brønsted-Lowry acid has lost a proton is the conjugate base of the acid. The species formed when a Brønsted-Lowry base gains a proton is the conjugate acid of the base. Thus, an acid-base reaction occurs when a proton is transferred from an acid to a base, with formation of the conjugate base of the reactant acid and formation of the conjugate acid of the reactant base. Amphiprotic species can act as both proton donors and proton acceptors. Water is the most important amphiprotic species. It can form both the hydronium ion, H_3O^+, and the hydroxide ion, $\mathrm{OH^-}$ when it undergoes autoionization:

$$\mathrm{2\,H_2O_{(l)}} \rightleftharpoons H_3O_{(aq)}^{+} + OH_{(aq)}^{-}$$

The ion product of water, K_w is the equilibrium constant for the autoionization reaction:

$$K_\mathrm{w} = \mathrm{[H_2O^+][OH^-]} = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} \text{ at } 25\,^\circ\mathrm{C}$$

Key Equations

- $$K_\mathrm{w} = \mathrm{[H_3O^+][OH^-]} = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} \text{ (at } 25\,^\circ\mathrm{C)}$$

Glossary

acid ionization

reaction involving the transfer of a proton from an acid to water, yielding hydronium ions and the conjugate base of the acid

amphiprotic

species that may either gain or lose a proton in a reaction

amphoteric

species that can act as either an acid or a base

autoionization

reaction between identical species yielding ionic products; for water, this reaction involves transfer of protons to yield hydronium and hydroxide ions

base ionization

reaction involving the transfer of a proton from water to a base, yielding hydroxide ions and the conjugate acid of the base

Brønsted-Lowry acid

proton donor

Brønsted-Lowry base

proton acceptor

conjugate acid

substance formed when a base gains a proton

conjugate base

substance formed when an acid loses a proton

ion-product constant for water (K_w)

equilibrium constant for the autoionization of water

Contributors and Attributions

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

5.4: Acid Strength and Molecular Structure

Learning Objectives

- To understand how molecular structure affects the strength of an acid or base.

We have seen that the strengths of acids and bases vary over many orders of magnitude. In this section, we explore some of the structural and electronic factors that control the acidity or basicity of a molecule.

Bond Strengths

In general, the stronger the $\mathrm{A–H}$ or $\mathrm{B–H^+}$ bond, the less likely the bond is to break to form H^+ ions and thus the less acidic the substance. This effect can be illustrated using the hydrogen halides:

Relative Acid Strength	HF	HCl	HBr	HI
H–X Bond Energy (kJ/mol)	570	432	366	298
pKa	3.20	−6.1	−8.9	−9.3

The trend in bond energies is due to a steady decrease in overlap between the 1s orbital of hydrogen and the valence orbital of the halogen atom as the size of the halogen increases. The larger the atom to which H is bonded, the weaker the bond. Thus the bond between H and a large atom in a given family, such as I or Te, is weaker than the bond between H and a smaller atom in the same family, such as F or O. As a result, acid strengths of binary hydrides increase as we go down a column of the periodic table. For example, the order of acidity for the binary hydrides of Group 16 elements is as follows, with pK_a values in parentheses:

$$H_2O(14.00 = pK_w) < H_2S(7.05) < H_2Se(3.89) < H_2Te(2.6) \tag{5.4.1}$$

Stability of the Conjugate Base

Whether we write an acid–base reaction as $AH \rightleftharpoons A^- + H^+$ or as $BH^+ \rightleftharpoons B + H^+$, the conjugate base ($A^-$ or B) contains one more lone pair of electrons than the parent acid (AH or BH^+). Any factor that stabilizes the lone pair on the conjugate base favors dissociation of H^+ and makes the parent acid a stronger acid. Let’s see how this explains the relative acidity of the binary hydrides of the elements in the second row of the periodic table. The observed order of increasing acidity is the following, with pKa values in parentheses:

$$CH_4(\,50) \ll NH_3(\,36) < H_2O(14.00) < HF(3.20) \tag{5.4.2}$$

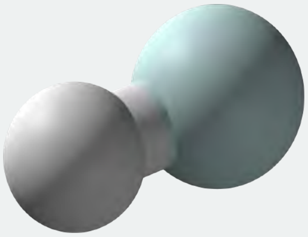
Consider, for example, the compounds at both ends of this series: methane and hydrogen fluoride. The conjugate base of CH_4 is CH_3^-, and the conjugate base of HF is F^-. Because fluorine is much more electronegative than carbon, fluorine can better stabilize the negative charge in the F^- ion than carbon can stabilize the negative charge in the CH3− ion. Consequently, HF has a greater tendency to dissociate to form H^+ and F^- than does methane to form H^+ and CH_3^-, making HF a much stronger acid than CH_4.

The same trend is predicted by analyzing the properties of the conjugate acids. For a series of compounds of the general formula HE, as the electronegativity of E increases, the E–H bond becomes more polar, favoring dissociation to form E^- and H^+. Due to both the increasing stability of the conjugate base and the increasing polarization of the E–H bond in the conjugate acid, acid strengths of binary hydrides increase as we go from left to right across a row of the periodic table.

> Acid strengths of binary hydrides increase as we go down a column or from left to right across a row of the periodic table.

the strongest acid Known: The hydrohelium Cation

The stornger acid, the weaker the covalent bond to a hydrogen atom. So the strongest acid possible is the molecule with the weakest bond. That is the hydrohelium (1+) cation, $\mathrm{HeH^+}$, which is a positively charged ion formed by the reaction of a proton with a helium atom in the gas phase. It was first produced in the laboratory in 1925 and is isoelectronic with molecular hydrogen (\ce{H2}). It is the strongest known acid, with a proton affinity of 177.8 kJ/mol.



Ball and stick model of the hydrohelium ion. (CC BY-SA 3.0; CCoil).

$\mathrm{HeH^+}$ cannot be prepared in a condensed phase, as it would protonate any anion, molecule or atom with which it were associated. However it is possible to estimate a *hypothetical* aqueous acidity using Hess's law:

$HHe^+(g)$	→	$H^+(g)$	+ He(*g*)	+178 kJ/mol
$HHe^+(aq)$	→	$HHe^+(g)$		+973 kJ/mol
$H^+(g)$	→	$H^+(aq)$		−1530 kJ/mol
He(*g*)	→	He(*aq*)		+19 kJ/mol
$HHe^+(aq)$	→	$H^+(aq)$	+ He(*aq*)	−360 kJ/mol

A free energy change of dissociation of −360 kJ/mol is equivalent to a pK_a of −63.

It has been suggested that $\mathrm{HeH^+}$ should occur naturally in the interstellar medium, but it has not yet been detected.

Inductive Effects

Atoms or groups of atoms in a molecule other than those to which H is bonded can induce a change in the distribution of electrons within the molecule. This is called an inductive effect, and, much like the coordination of water to a metal ion, it can have a major effect on the acidity or basicity of the molecule. For example, the hypohalous acids (general formula HOX, with X representing a halogen) all have a hydrogen atom bonded to an oxygen atom. In aqueous solution, they all produce the following equilibrium:

$$HOX_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons H^+_{(aq)} + OX^-(aq) \tag{5.4.3}$$

The acidities of these acids vary by about three orders of magnitude, however, due to the difference in electronegativity of the halogen atoms:

HOX	Electronegativity of X	pKa
HOCl	3.0	7.40
HOBr	2.8	8.55
HOI	2.5	10.5

As the electronegativity of X increases, the distribution of electron density within the molecule changes: the electrons are drawn more strongly toward the halogen atom and, in turn, away from the H in the O–H bond, thus weakening the O–H bond and allowing dissociation of hydrogen as H^+.

The acidity of oxoacids, with the general formula $HOXO_n$ (with n = 0−3), depends strongly on the number of terminal oxygen atoms attached to the central atom X. As shown in Figure $5.4.1$, the K_a values of the oxoacids of chlorine increase by a factor of about 10^4 to 10^6 with each oxygen as successive oxygen atoms are added. The increase in acid strength with increasing number of terminal oxygen atoms is due to both an inductive effect and increased stabilization of the conjugate base.

> *Any inductive effect that withdraws electron density from an O–H bond increases the acidity of the compound.*

Because oxygen is the second most electronegative element, adding terminal oxygen atoms causes electrons to be drawn away from the O–H bond, making it weaker and thereby increasing the strength of the acid. The colors in Figure $5.4.1$ show how the electrostatic potential, a measure of the strength of the interaction of a point charge at any place on the surface of the molecule, changes as the number of terminal oxygen atoms increases. In Figure $5.4.1$ and Figure $5.4.2$, blue corresponds to low electron densities, while red corresponds to high electron densities. The oxygen atom in the O–H unit becomes steadily less red from $HClO$ to $HClO_4$ (also written as $HOClO_3$, while the H atom becomes steadily bluer, indicating that the electron density on the O–H unit decreases as the number of terminal oxygen atoms increases. The decrease in electron density in the O–H bond weakens it, making it easier to lose hydrogen as H^+ ions, thereby increasing the strength of the acid.

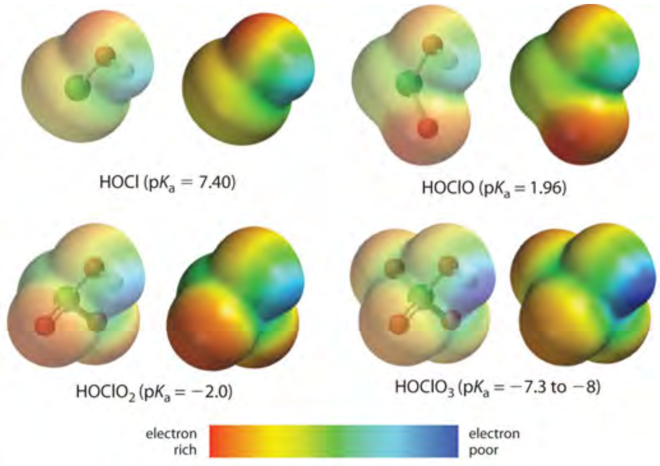
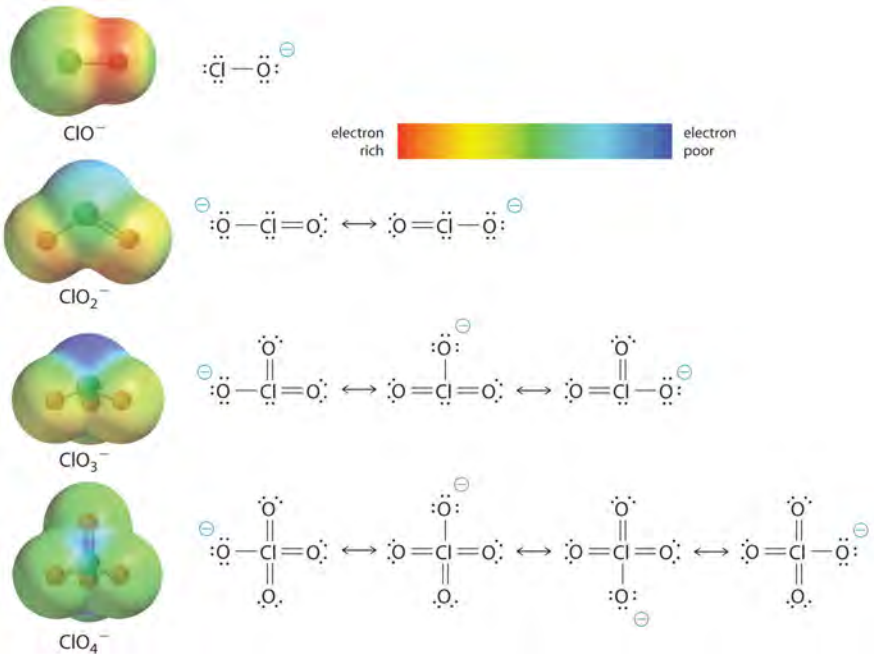


Figure $5.4.1$: The Relationship between the Acid Strengths of the Oxoacids of Chlorine and the Electron Density on the O–H Unit. These electrostatic potential maps show how the electron density on the O–H unit decreases as the number of terminal oxygen atoms increases. Blue corresponds to low electron densities, whereas red corresponds to high electron densities. Source: Chlorine oxoacids pKa values from J. R. Bowser, Inorganic Chemistry (Pacific Grove, CA: Brooks-Cole,1993).

At least as important, however, is the effect of delocalization of the negative charge in the conjugate base. As shown in Figure $5.4.2$, the number of resonance structures that can be written for the oxoanions of chlorine increases as the number of terminal oxygen atoms increases, allowing the single negative charge to be delocalized over successively more oxygen atoms.

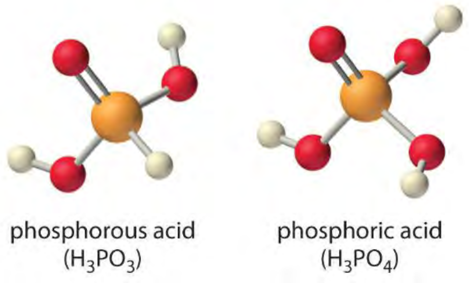
> *Electron delocalization in the conjugate base increases acid strength.*

The electrostatic potential plots in Figure $5.4.2$ demonstrate that the electron density on the terminal oxygen atoms decreases steadily as their number increases. The oxygen atom in ClO− is red, indicating that it is electron rich, and the color of oxygen progressively changes to green in ClO_4^+, indicating that the oxygen atoms are becoming steadily less electron rich through the series. For example, in the perchlorate ion (ClO_4^-), the single negative charge is delocalized over all four oxygen atoms, whereas in the hypochlorite ion (OCl^-), the negative charge is largely localized on a single oxygen atom (Figure $5.4.2$). As a result, the perchlorate ion has no localized negative charge to which a proton can bind. Consequently, the perchlorate anion has a much lower affinity for a proton than does the hypochlorite ion, and perchloric acid is one of the strongest acids known.



As the number of terminal oxygen atoms increases, the number of resonance structures that can be written for the oxoanions of chlorine also increases, and the single negative charge is delocalized over more oxygen atoms. As these electrostatic potential plots demonstrate, the electron density on the terminal oxygen atoms decreases steadily as their number increases. As the electron density on the oxygen atoms decreases, so does their affinity for a proton, making the anion less basic. As a result, the parent oxoacid is more acidic.

Similar inductive effects are also responsible for the trend in the acidities of oxoacids that have the same number of oxygen atoms as we go across a row of the periodic table from left to right. For example, H_3PO_4 is a weak acid, H_2SO_4 is a strong acid, and $HClO_4$ is one of the strongest acids known. The number of terminal oxygen atoms increases steadily across the row, consistent with the observed increase in acidity. In addition, the electronegativity of the central atom increases steadily from P to S to Cl, which causes electrons to be drawn from oxygen to the central atom, weakening the O–H bond and increasing the strength of the oxoacid.



Careful inspection of the data in Table $5.4.1$ shows two apparent anomalies: carbonic acid and phosphorous acid. If carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) were a discrete molecule with the structure $\text{(HO)}_2\text{C=O}$, it would have a single terminal oxygen atom and should be comparable in acid strength to phosphoric acid (H_3PO_4), for which pKa1 = 2.16. Instead, the tabulated value of pK_{a1} for carbonic acid is 6.35, making it about 10,000 times weaker than expected. As we shall see, however, H_2CO_3 is only a minor component of the aqueous solutions of CO_2 that are referred to as carbonic acid. Similarly, if phosphorous acid (H_3PO_3) actually had the structure $(HO)_3P$, it would have no terminal oxygen atoms attached to phosphorous. It would therefore be expected to be about as strong an acid as $HOCl$ (pKa = 7.40). In fact, the pK_{a1} for phosphorous acid is 1.30, and the structure of phosphorous acid is $\text{(HO)}_2\text{P(=O)H}$ with one H atom directly bonded to P and one P=O bond. Thus the pKa1 for phosphorous acid is similar to that of other oxoacids with one terminal oxygen atom, such as H_3PO_4. Fortunately, phosphorous acid is the only common oxoacid in which a hydrogen atom is bonded to the central atom rather than oxygen.

Table $5.4.1$: Values of pKa for Selected Polyprotic Acids and Bases

Polyprotic Acids	Formula	pK_{a1}	pK_{a2}	pK_{a3}
carbonic acid*	“H_2CO_3”	6.35	10.33	
citric acid	$HO_2CCH-2C(OH)(CO_2H)CH_2CO_2H$	3.13	4.76	6.40
malonic acid	$HO-2CCH_2CO_2H$	2.85	5.70	
oxalic acid	HO_2CCO_2H	1.25	3.81	
phosphoric acid	H_3PO_4	2.16	7.21	12.32
phosphorous acid	H_3PO_3	1.3	6.70	
succinic acid	$HO_2CCH_2CH_2CO_2H$	4.21	5.64	
sulfuric acid	H_2SO_4	−2.0	1.99	
sulfurous acid*	“H_2SO_3”	1.85	7.21	
Polyprotic Bases	**Formula**	pK_{b1}	pK_{b2}	
ethylenediamine	$H_2N(CH_2)_2NH_2$	4.08	7.14	
piperazine	$HN(CH_2CH_2)_2NH$	4.27	8.67	
propylenediamine	$H_2N(CH_2)_3NH_2$	3.45	5.12	

*H_2CO_3 and H_2SO_3 are at best minor components of aqueous solutions of $CO_{2(g)}$ and $SO_{2(g)}$, respectively, but such solutions are commonly referred to as containing carbonic acid and sulfurous acid, respectively.

Inductive effects are also observed in organic molecules that contain electronegative substituents. The magnitude of the electron-withdrawing effect depends on both the nature and the number of halogen substituents, as shown by the pKa values for several acetic acid derivatives:

$$pK_a CH_3CO_2H 4.76 < CH_2ClCO_2H 2.87 < CHCl_2CO_2H 1.35 < CCl_3CO_2H 0.66 < CF_3CO_2H 0.52$$

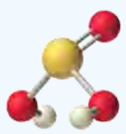
As you might expect, fluorine, which is more electronegative than chlorine, causes a larger effect than chlorine, and the effect of three halogens is greater than the effect of two or one. Notice from these data that inductive effects can be quite large. For instance, replacing the $-\text{CH}_3$ group of acetic acid by a $-\text{CF}_3$ group results in about a 10,000-fold increase in acidity!

✓ Example 5.4.1

Arrange the compounds of each series in order of increasing acid or base strength.

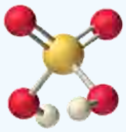
a. sulfuric acid [H_2SO_4, or $(HO)_2SO_2$], fluorosulfonic acid (FSO_3H, or FSO_2OH), and sulfurous acid [H_2SO_3, or $(HO)_2SO$]
b. ammonia (NH_3), trifluoramine (NF_3), and hydroxylamine (NH_2OH)

The structures are shown here.

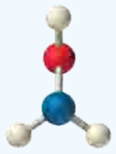


sulfurous acid (H_2SO_3)

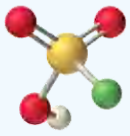
trifluoramine (NF_3)



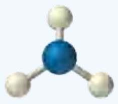
sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4)



hydroxylamine (NH_2OH)



fluorosulfonic acid (FSO_3H)



ammonia (NH_3)

Given: series of compounds

Asked for: relative acid or base strengths

Strategy:

Use relative bond strengths, the stability of the conjugate base, and inductive effects to arrange the compounds in order of increasing tendency to ionize in aqueous solution.

Solution:

Although both sulfuric acid and sulfurous acid have two –OH groups, the sulfur atom in sulfuric acid is bonded to two terminal oxygen atoms versus one in sulfurous acid. Because oxygen is highly electronegative, sulfuric acid is the stronger acid because the negative charge on the anion is stabilized by the additional oxygen atom. In comparing sulfuric acid and fluorosulfonic acid, we note that fluorine is more electronegative than oxygen. Thus replacing an –OH by –F will remove more electron density from the central S atom, which will, in turn, remove electron density from the S–OH bond and the O–H bond. Because its O–H bond is weaker, FSO_3H is a stronger acid than sulfuric acid. The predicted order of acid strengths given here is confirmed by the measured pKa values for these acids:

$$pKa H_2SO_3 1.85 < H_2SO_4^{-2} < FSO_3H - 10$$

The structures of both trifluoramine and hydroxylamine are similar to that of ammonia. In trifluoramine, all of the hydrogen atoms in NH3 are replaced by fluorine atoms, whereas in hydroxylamine, one hydrogen atom is replaced by OH. Replacing the three hydrogen atoms by fluorine will withdraw electron density from N, making the lone electron pair on N less available to bond to an H^+ ion. Thus NF_3 is predicted to be a much weaker base than NH_3. Similarly, because oxygen is more electronegative than hydrogen, replacing one hydrogen atom in NH_3 by OH will make the amine less basic. Because oxygen is less electronegative than fluorine and only one hydrogen atom is replaced, however, the effect will be smaller. The predicted order of increasing base strength shown here is confirmed by the measured pK_b values:

$$pK_b NF_3 — << NH_2OH 8.06 < NH_3 4.75$$

Trifluoramine is such a weak base that it does not react with aqueous solutions of strong acids. Hence its base ionization constant has never been measured.

? Exercise 5.4.1

Arrange the compounds of each series in order of

a. decreasing acid strength: H_3PO_4, $CH_3PO_3H_2$, and $HClO_3$.
b. increasing base strength: CH_3S^-, OH^-, and CF_3S^-.

Answer a

$$HClO - 3 > CH_3PO_3H_2 > H_3PO_4$$

Answer a

$$CF_3S^- < CH_3S^- < OH^-$$

Summary

Inductive effects and charge delocalization significantly influence the acidity or basicity of a compound. The acid–base strength of a molecule depends strongly on its structure. The weaker the A–H or B–H+ bond, the more likely it is to dissociate to form an H^+ ion. In addition, any factor that stabilizes the lone pair on the conjugate base favors the dissociation of H^+, making the conjugate acid a stronger acid. Atoms or groups of atoms elsewhere in a molecule can also be important in determining acid or base strength through an inductive effect, which can weaken an $\mathrm{O-H}$ bond and allow hydrogen to be more easily lost as H^+ ions.

Contributors and Attributions

- - Anonymous

5.5: Acid Strength and the Acid Ionization Constant (Ka)

Learning Objectives

- To know the relationship between acid or base strength and the magnitude of K_a, K_b, pK_a, and pK_b.
- To understand the leveling effect.

The magnitude of the equilibrium constant for an ionization reaction can be used to determine the relative strengths of acids and bases. For example, the general equation for the ionization of a weak acid in water, where HA is the parent acid and A− is its conjugate base, is as follows:

$$HA_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+_{(aq)} + A^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.5.1}$$

The equilibrium constant for this dissociation is as follows:

$$K = \frac{[H_3O^+][A^-]}{[H_2O][HA]} \tag{5.5.2}$$

As we noted earlier, because water is the solvent, it has an activity equal to 1, so the $[H_2O]$ term in Equation 5.5.2 is actually the a_{H_2O}, which is equal to 1.

Again, for simplicity, H_3O^+ can be written as H^+ in Equation 5.5.3.

$$HA_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons H^+_{(aq)} + A^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.5.3}$$

Keep in mind, though, that free H^+ does not exist in aqueous solutions and that a proton is transferred to H_2O in all acid ionization reactions to form hydronium ions, H_3O^+. The larger the K_a, the stronger the acid and the higher the H^+ concentration at equilibrium. Like all equilibrium constants, acid–base ionization constants are actually measured in terms of the activities of H^+ or OH^-, thus making them unitless. The values of K_a for a number of common acids are given in Table 5.5.1.

Table 5.5.1: Values of K_a, pK_a, K_b, and pK_b for Selected Acids (HA and Their Conjugate Bases (A^-)

Acid	HA	K_a	pK_a	A^-	K_b	pK_b
hydroiodic acid	HI	2×10^9	−9.3	I^-	5.5×10^{-24}	23.26
sulfuric acid (1)*	H_2SO_4	1×10^2	−2.0	HSO_4^-	1×10^{-16}	16.0
nitric acid	HNO_3	2.3×10^1	−1.37	NO_3^-	4.3×10^{-16}	15.37
hydronium ion	H_3O^+	1.0	0.00	H_2O	1.0×10^{-14}	14.00
sulfuric acid (2)*	HSO_4^-	1.0×10^{-2}	1.99	SO_4^{2-}	9.8×10^{-13}	12.01
hydrofluoric acid	HF	6.3×10^{-4}	3.20	F^-	1.6×10^{-11}	10.80
nitrous acid	HNO_2	5.6×10^{-4}	3.25	$NO2^-$	1.8×10^{-11}	10.75
formic acid	HCO_2H	1.78×10^{-4}	3.750	HCO_2-	5.6×10^{-11}	10.25
benzoic acid	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	6.3×10^{-5}	4.20	$C_6H_5CO_2^-$	1.6×10^{-10}	9.80
acetic acid	CH_3CO_2H	1.7×10^{-5}	4.76	$CH_3CO_2^-$	5.8×10^{-10}	9.24
pyridinium ion	$C_5H_5NH^+$	5.9×10^{-6}	5.23	C_5H_5N	1.7×10^{-9}	8.77
hypochlorous acid	$HOCl$	4.0×10^{-8}	7.40	OCl^-	2.5×10^{-7}	6.60
hydrocyanic acid	HCN	6.2×10^{-10}	9.21	CN^-	1.6×10^{-5}	4.79
ammonium ion	NH_4^+	5.6×10^{-10}	9.25	NH_3	1.8×10^{-5}	4.75
water	H_2O	1.0×10^{-14}	14.00	OH^-	1.00	0.00
acetylene	C_2H_2	1×10^{-26}	26.0	HC_2^-	1×10^{12}	−12.0

*The number in parentheses indicates the ionization step referred to for a polyprotic acid.

Acid	HA	K_a	pK_a	A^-	K_b	pK_b
ammonia	NH_3	1×10^{-35}	35.0	NH_2^-	1×10^{21}	−21.0
*The number in parentheses indicates the ionization step referred to for a polyprotic acid.						

Weak bases react with water to produce the hydroxide ion, as shown in the following general equation, where B is the parent base and BH+ is its conjugate acid:

$$B_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons BH^+_{(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.5.4}$$

The equilibrium constant for this reaction is the base ionization constant (K_b), also called the base dissociation constant:

$$K_b = \frac{[BH^+][OH^-]}{[B]} \tag{5.5.5}$$

Once again, the activity of water has a value of 1, so water does not appear in the equilibrium constant expression. The larger the K_b, the stronger the base and the higher the OH^- concentration at equilibrium. The values of K_b for a number of common weak bases are given in Table $5.5.2$.

Table 5.5.2: Values of K_b, pK_b, K_a, and pK_a for Selected Weak Bases (B) and Their Conjugate Acids (BH+)

Base	B	K_b	pK_b	BH^+	K_a	pK_a
hydroxide ion	OH^-	1.0	0.00*	H_2O	1.0×10^{-14}	14.00
phosphate ion	PO_4^{3-}	2.1×10^{-2}	1.68	HPO_4^{2-}	4.8×10^{-13}	12.32
dimethylamine	$(CH_3)_2NH$	5.4×10^{-4}	3.27	$(CH_3)_2NH_2^+$	1.9×10^{-11}	10.73
methylamine	CH_3NH_2	4.6×10^{-4}	3.34	$CH_3NH_3^+$	2.2×10^{-11}	10.66
trimethylamine	$(CH_3)_3N$	6.3×10^{-5}	4.20	$(CH_3)_3NH^+$	1.6×10^{-10}	9.80
ammonia	NH_3	1.8×10^{-5}	4.75	NH_4^+	5.6×10^{-10}	9.25
pyridine	C_5H_5N	1.7×10^{-9}	8.77	$C_5H_5NH^+$	5.9×10^{-6}	5.23
aniline	$C_6H_5NH_2$	7.4×10^{-10}	9.13	$C_6H_5NH_3^+$	1.3×10^{-5}	4.87
water	H_2O	1.0×10^{-14}	14.00	H_3O^+	1.0*	0.00
*As in Table 5.5.1.						

There is a simple relationship between the magnitude of K_a for an acid and K_b for its conjugate base. Consider, for example, the ionization of hydrocyanic acid (HCN) in water to produce an acidic solution, and the reaction of CN^- with water to produce a basic solution:

$$HCN_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons H^+_{(aq)} + CN^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.5.6}$$

$$CN^-_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons OH^-_{(aq)} + HCN_{(aq)} \tag{5.5.7}$$

The equilibrium constant expression for the ionization of HCN is as follows:

$$K_a = \frac{[H^+][CN^-]}{[HCN]} \tag{5.5.8}$$

The corresponding expression for the reaction of cyanide with water is as follows:

$$K_b = \frac{[OH^-][HCN]}{[CN^-]} \tag{5.5.9}$$

If we add Equations 5.5.6 and 5.5.7, we obtain the following:

add Equations 5.5.6 and 5.5.7, we obtain

Reaction	Equilibrium Constants

Reaction	Equilibrium Constants
$\cancel{HCN_{(aq)}} \rightleftharpoons H^+_{(aq)} + \cancel{CN^-_{(aq)}}$	$K_a = [H^+]\,\cancel{[CN^-]}/\,\cancel{[HCN]}$
$\cancel{CN^-_{(aq)}} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons OH^-_{(aq)} + \cancel{HCN_{(aq)}}$	$K_b = [OH^-]\,\cancel{[HCN]}/\,\cancel{[CN^-]}$
$H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H^+_{(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)}$	$K = K_a \times K_b = [H^+][OH^-]$

In this case, the sum of the reactions described by K_a and K_b is the equation for the autoionization of water, and the product of the two equilibrium constants is K_w:

$$K_a K_b = K_w \tag{5.5.10}$$

Thus if we know either K_a for an acid or K_b for its conjugate base, we can calculate the other equilibrium constant for any conjugate acid–base pair.

Just as with pH, pOH, and pKw, we can use negative logarithms to avoid exponential notation in writing acid and base ionization constants, by defining pK_a as follows:

$$pKa = -\log_{10} K_a \tag{5.5.11}$$

$$K_a = 10^{-pK_a} \tag{5.5.12}$$

and pK_b as

$$pK_b = -\log_{10} K_b \tag{5.5.13}$$

$$K_b = 10^{-pK_b} \tag{5.5.14}$$

Similarly, Equation 5.5.10, which expresses the relationship between K_a and K_b, can be written in logarithmic form as follows:

$$pK_a + pK_b = pK_w \tag{5.5.15}$$

At 25 °C, this becomes

$$pK_a + pK_b = 14.00 \tag{5.5.16}$$

The values of pK_a and pK_b are given for several common acids and bases in Tables $5.5.1$ and $5.5.2$, respectively, and a more extensive set of data is provided in Tables E1 and E2. Because of the use of negative logarithms, smaller values of pK_a correspond to larger acid ionization constants and hence stronger acids. For example, nitrous acid (HNO_2), with a pK_a of 3.25, is about a million times stronger acid than hydrocyanic acid (HCN), with a pK_a of 9.21. Conversely, smaller values of pK_b correspond to larger base ionization constants and hence stronger bases.

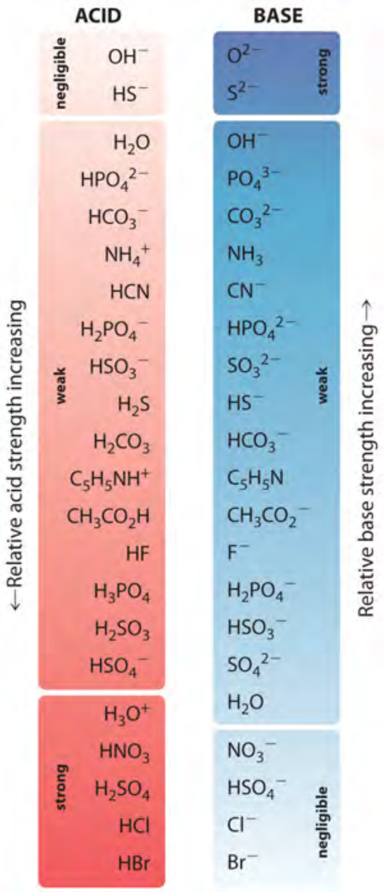


Figure $5.5.1$: The Relative Strengths of Some Common Conjugate Acid–Base Pairs. The strongest acids are at the bottom left, and the strongest bases are at the top right. The conjugate base of a strong acid is a very weak base, and, conversely, the conjugate acid of a strong base is a very weak acid.

Strong acids are H3O plus, HNO3, H2SO4, HCl, and HBr. Negligible acids are HS minus and OH minus. Stron bases are O negative 2, S negative 2. Negligible bases are NO3 minus, HSO4 minus, Cl minus, and Br minus.

The relative strengths of some common acids and their conjugate bases are shown graphically in Figure $5.5.1$. The conjugate acid–base pairs are listed in order (from top to bottom) of increasing acid strength, which corresponds to decreasing values of pK_a. This order corresponds to decreasing strength of the conjugate base or increasing values of pK_b. At the bottom left of Figure $5.5.2$ are the common strong acids; at the top right are the most common strong bases. Notice the inverse relationship between the strength of the parent acid and the strength of the conjugate base. Thus the conjugate base of a strong acid is a very weak base, and the conjugate base of a very weak acid is a strong base.

> *The conjugate base of a strong acid is a weak base and vice versa.*

We can use the relative strengths of acids and bases to predict the direction of an acid–base reaction by following a single rule: an acid–base equilibrium always favors the side with the weaker acid and base, as indicated by these arrows:

$$\text{stronger acid} + \text{stronger base} \rightleftharpoons \text{weaker acid} + \text{weaker base}$$

In an acid–base reaction, the proton always reacts with the stronger base.

For example, hydrochloric acid is a strong acid that ionizes essentially completely in dilute aqueous solution to produce H_3O^+ and Cl^-; only negligible amounts of HCl molecules remain undissociated. Hence the ionization equilibrium lies virtually all the way to the right, as represented by a single arrow:

$$HCl_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow H_3O^+_{(aq)} + Cl^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.5.17}$$

In contrast, acetic acid is a weak acid, and water is a weak base. Consequently, aqueous solutions of acetic acid contain mostly acetic acid molecules in equilibrium with a small concentration of H_3O^+ and acetate ions, and the ionization equilibrium lies far to the left, as represented by these arrows:

$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+_{(aq)} + CH_3CO^-_{2\,(aq)}}$$

Similarly, in the reaction of ammonia with water, the hydroxide ion is a strong base, and ammonia is a weak base, whereas the ammonium ion is a stronger acid than water. Hence this equilibrium also lies to the left:

$$H_2O_{(l)} + NH_{3(aq)} \rightleftharpoons NH^+_{4(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)}$$

> *All acid–base equilibria favor the side with the weaker acid and base. Thus the proton is bound to the stronger base.*

✓ Example 5.5.1: Butyrate and Dimethylammonium Ions

a. Calculate K_b and pK_b of the butyrate ion ($CH_3CH_2CH_2CO_2^-$). The pK_a of butyric acid at 25°C is 4.83. Butyric acid is responsible for the foul smell of rancid butter.
b. Calculate K_a and pK_a of the dimethylammonium ion ($(CH_3)_2NH_2^+$). The base ionization constant K_b of dimethylamine ($(CH_3)_2NH$) is 5.4×10^{-4} at 25°C.

Given: pK_a and K_b

Asked for: corresponding K_b and pK_b, K_a and pK_a

Strategy:

The constants K_a and K_b are related as shown in Equation 5.5.10. The pK_a and pK_b for an acid and its conjugate base are related as shown in Equations 5.5.15 and 5.5.16. Use the relationships pK = −log K and K = 10^{-pK} (Equations 5.5.11 and 5.5.13) to convert between K_a and pK_a or K_b and pK_b.

Solution:

We are given the pK_a for butyric acid and asked to calculate the K_b and the pK_b for its conjugate base, the butyrate ion. Because the pK_a value cited is for a temperature of 25°C, we can use Equation 5.5.16: $pK_a + pK_b = \mathrm{pK_w} = 14.00$. Substituting the pK_a and solving for the pK_b,

$$4.83 + pK_b = 14.00$$

$$pK_b = 14.00 - 4.83 = 9.17$$

Because $pK_b = -\log K_b$, K_b is $10^{-9.17} = 6.8 \times 10^{-10}$.

In this case, we are given K_b for a base (dimethylamine) and asked to calculate K_a and pK_a for its conjugate acid, the dimethylammonium ion. Because the initial quantity given is K_b rather than pK_b, we can use Equation 5.5.10: $K_aK_b = K_w$. Substituting the values of K_b and K_w at 25°C and solving for K_a,

$$K_a(5.4 \times 10^{-4}) = 1.01 \times 10^{-14}$$

$$K_a = 1.9 \times 10^{-11}$$

Because pK_a = −log K_a, we have $pK_a = -\log(1.9 \times 10^{-11}) = 10.72$. We could also have converted K_b to pK_b to obtain the same answer:

$$pK_b = -\log(5.4 \times 10^{-4}) = 3.27$$

$$pKa + pK_b = 14.00$$

$$pK_a = 10.73$$

$$K_a = 10^{-pK_a} = 10^{-10.73} = 1.9 \times 10^{-11}$$

If we are given any one of these four quantities for an acid or a base (K_a, pK_a, K_b, or pK_b), we can calculate the other three.

Exercise 5.5.1: Lactic Acid

Lactic acid ($CH_3CH(OH)CO_2H$) is responsible for the pungent taste and smell of sour milk; it is also thought to produce soreness in fatigued muscles. Its pK_a is 3.86 at 25°C. Calculate K_a for lactic acid and pK_b and K_b for the lactate ion.

Answer

- $K_a = 1.4 \times 10^{-4}$ for lactic acid;
- pK_b = 10.14 and
- $K_b = 7.2 \times 10^{-11}$ for the lactate ion

A Video Calculating pH in Strong Acid or Strong Base Solutions: Calculating pH in Strong Acid or Strong Base Solutions [youtu.be]

Solutions of Strong Acids and Bases: The Leveling Effect

You will notice in Table 5.5.1 that acids like H_2SO_4 and HNO_3 lie above the hydronium ion, meaning that they have pK_a values less than zero and are stronger acids than the H_3O^+ ion. Recall from Chapter 4 that the acidic proton in virtually all oxoacids is bonded to one of the oxygen atoms of the oxoanion. Thus nitric acid should properly be written as $HONO_2$. Unfortunately, however, the formulas of oxoacids are almost always written with hydrogen on the left and oxygen on the right, giving HNO_3 instead. In fact, all six of the common strong acids that we first encountered in Chapter 4 have pK_a values less than zero, which means that they have a greater tendency to lose a proton than does the H_3O^+ ion. Conversely, the conjugate bases of these strong acids are weaker bases than water. Consequently, the proton-transfer equilibria for these strong acids lie far to the right, and adding any of the common strong acids to water results in an essentially stoichiometric reaction of the acid with water to form a solution of the H_3O^+ ion and the conjugate base of the acid.

Although K_a for HI is about 108 greater than K_a for HNO_3, the reaction of either HI or HNO_3 with water gives an essentially stoichiometric solution of H_3O^+ and I− or NO_3^-. In fact, a 0.1 M aqueous solution of any strong acid actually contains 0.1 M H_3O^+, regardless of the identity of the strong acid. This phenomenon is called the leveling effect: any species that is a stronger acid than the conjugate acid of water (H_3O^+) is leveled to the strength of H_3O^+ in aqueous solution because H_3O^+ is the strongest acid that can exist in equilibrium with water. Consequently, it is impossible to distinguish between the strengths of acids such as HI and HNO3 in aqueous solution, and an alternative approach must be used to determine their relative acid strengths.

One method is to use a solvent such as anhydrous acetic acid. Because acetic acid is a stronger acid than water, it must also be a weaker base, with a lesser tendency to accept a proton than H_2O. Measurements of the conductivity of 0.1 M solutions of both HI and HNO_3 in acetic acid show that HI is completely dissociated, but HNO_3 is only partially dissociated and behaves like a weak acid in this solvent. This result clearly tells us that HI is a stronger acid than HNO_3. The relative order of acid strengths and approximate K_a and pK_a values for the strong acids at the top of Table 5.5.1 were determined using measurements like this and different nonaqueous solvents.

> *In aqueous solutions, H_3O^+ is the strongest acid and OH^- is the strongest base that can exist in equilibrium with H_2O.*

The leveling effect applies to solutions of strong bases as well: In aqueous solution, any base stronger than OH− is leveled to the strength of OH− because OH− is the strongest base that can exist in equilibrium with water. Salts such as K_2O, $NaOCH_3$ (sodium methoxide), and $NaNH_2$ (sodamide, or sodium amide), whose anions are the conjugate bases of species that would lie below water in Table $5.5.2$, are all strong bases that react essentially completely (and often violently) with water, accepting a proton to give a solution of OH^- and the corresponding cation:

$$K_2O_{(s)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow 2OH^-_{(aq)} + 2K^+_{(aq)} \tag{5.5.18}$$

$$NaOCH_{3(s)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow OH^-_{(aq)} + Na^+_{(aq)} + CH_3OH_{(aq)} \tag{5.5.19}$$

$$NaNH_{2(s)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow OH^-_{(aq)} + Na^+_{(aq)} + NH_{3(aq)} \tag{5.5.20}$$

Other examples that you may encounter are potassium hydride (KH) and organometallic compounds such as methyl lithium (CH_3Li).

Polyprotic Acids and Bases

As you learned, polyprotic acids such as H_2SO_4, H_3PO_4, and H_2CO_3 contain more than one ionizable proton, and the protons are lost in a stepwise manner. The fully protonated species is always the strongest acid because it is easier to remove a proton from a neutral molecule than from a negatively charged ion. Thus acid strength decreases with the loss of subsequent protons, and, correspondingly, the pK_a increases. Consider H_2SO_4, for example:

$$HSO^-_{4(aq)} \rightleftharpoons SO^{2-}_{4(aq)} + H^+_{(aq)} \quad pK_a = -2$$

The equilibrium in the first reaction lies far to the right, consistent with H_2SO_4 being a strong acid. In contrast, in the second reaction, appreciable quantities of both HSO_4^- and SO_4^{2-} are present at equilibrium.

> *For a polyprotic acid, acid strength decreases and the pK_a increases with the sequential loss of each proton.*

The hydrogen sulfate ion (HSO_4^-) is both the conjugate base of H_2SO_4 and the conjugate acid of SO_4^{2-}. Just like water, HSO4− can therefore act as either an acid or a base, depending on whether the other reactant is a stronger acid or a stronger base. Conversely, the sulfate ion (SO_4^{2-}) is a polyprotic base that is capable of accepting two protons in a stepwise manner:

$$SO^{2-}_{4(aq)} + H_2O_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons HSO^-_{4(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)}$$

$$HSO^-_{4(aq)} + H_2O_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons H_2SO_{4(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.5.21}$$

Like any other conjugate acid–base pair, the strengths of the conjugate acids and bases are related by pK_a + pK_b = pKw. Consider, for example, the HSO_4^-/SO_4^{2-} conjugate acid–base pair. From Table $5.5.1$, we see that the pK_a of HSO_4^- is 1.99. Hence the pK_b of SO_4^{2-} is 14.00 − 1.99 = 12.01. Thus sulfate is a rather weak base, whereas OH^- is a strong base, so the equilibrium shown in Equation $5.5.21$ lies to the left. The HSO_4^- ion is also a very weak base (pK_a of H_2SO_4 = 2.0, pK_b of $HSO_4^- = 14 - (-2.0) = 16$), which is consistent with what we expect for the conjugate base of a strong acid.

✓ Example $5.5.2$

Predict whether the equilibrium for each reaction lies to the left or the right as written.

- $NH^+_{4(aq)} + PO^{3-}_{4(aq)} \rightleftharpoons NH_{3(aq)} + HPO^{2-}_{4(aq)}$
- $CH_3CH_2CO_2H_{(aq)} + CN^-_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons CH_3CH_2CO^-_{2(aq)} + HCN_{(aq)}$

Given: balanced chemical equation

Asked for: equilibrium position

Strategy:

Identify the conjugate acid–base pairs in each reaction. Then refer to Tables $5.5.1$and$5.5.2$ and Figure $5.5.2$ to determine which is the stronger acid and base. Equilibrium **always** favors the formation of the weaker acid–base pair.

Solution:

The conjugate acid–base pairs are NH_4^+/NH_3 and HPO_4^{2-}/PO_4^{3-}. According to Tables 5.5.1 and 5.5.2, NH_4^+ is a stronger acid ($pK_a = 9.25$) than HPO_4^{2-} (pKa = 12.32), and PO_4^{3-} is a stronger base ($pK_b = 1.68$) than NH_3 ($pK_b = 4.75$). The equilibrium will therefore lie to the right, favoring the formation of the weaker acid–base pair:

$$\underset{\text{stronger acid}}{NH^+_{4(aq)}} + \underset{\text{stronger base}}{PO^{3-}_{4(aq)}} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{weaker base}}{NH_{3(aq)}} + \underset{\text{weaker acid}}{HPO^{2-}_{4(aq)}}$$

The conjugate acid–base pairs are $CH_3CH_2CO_2H/CH_3CH_2CO_2^-$ and HCN/CN^-. According to Table 5.5.1, HCN is a weak acid (pKa = 9.21) and CN^- is a moderately weak base (pKb = 4.79). Propionic acid ($CH_3CH_2CO_2H$) is not listed in Table 5.5.1, however. In a situation like this, the best approach is to look for a similar compound whose acid–base properties are listed. For example, propionic acid and acetic acid are identical except for the groups attached to the carbon atom of the carboxylic acid ($-\mathrm{CH_2CH_3}$ versus $-\mathrm{CH_3}$), so we might expect the two compounds to have similar acid–base properties. In particular, we would expect the pK_a of propionic acid to be similar in magnitude to the pK_a of acetic acid. (In fact, the pK_a of propionic acid is 4.87, compared to 4.76 for acetic acid, which makes propionic acid a slightly weaker acid than acetic acid.) Thus propionic acid should be a significantly stronger acid than HCN. Because the stronger acid forms the weaker conjugate base, we predict that cyanide will be a stronger base than propionate. The equilibrium will therefore lie to the right, favoring the formation of the weaker acid–base pair:

$$\underset{\text{stronger acid}}{CH_3CH_2CO_2H_{(aq)}} + \underset{\text{stronger base}}{CN^-_{(aq)}} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{weaker base}}{CH_3CH_2CO^-_{2(aq)}} + \underset{\text{weaker acid}}{HCN_{(aq)}}$$

? Exercise 5.5.1

Predict whether the equilibrium for each reaction lies to the left or the right as written.

a. $H_2O_{(l)} + HS^-_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons OH^-_{(aq)} + H_2S_{(aq)}$
b. $HCO^-_{2(aq)} + HSO^-_{4(aq)} \rightleftharpoons HCO_2H_{(aq)} + SO^{2-}_{4(aq)}$

Answer a

left

Answer b

left

A Video Discussing Polyprotic Acids: Polyprotic Acids [youtu.be]

Summary

Acid–base reactions always contain two conjugate acid–base pairs. Each acid and each base has an associated ionization constant that corresponds to its acid or base strength. Two species that differ by only a proton constitute a conjugate acid–base pair. The magnitude of the equilibrium constant for an ionization reaction can be used to determine the relative strengths of acids and bases.

For an aqueous solution of a weak acid, the dissociation constant is called the acid ionization constant (K_a). Similarly, the equilibrium constant for the reaction of a weak base with water is the base ionization constant (K_b). For any conjugate acid–base pair, $K_aK_b = K_w$. Smaller values of pK_a correspond to larger acid ionization constants and hence stronger acids. Conversely, smaller values of pK_b correspond to larger base ionization constants and hence stronger bases. At 25°C, $pK_a + pK_b = 14.00$. Acid–base reactions always proceed in the direction that produces the weaker acid–base pair. No acid stronger than H_3O^+ and no base stronger than OH^- can exist in aqueous solution, leading to the phenomenon known as the leveling effect. Polyprotic acids (and bases) lose (and gain) protons in a stepwise manner, with the fully protonated species being the strongest acid and the fully deprotonated species the strongest base.

Key Equations

- Acid ionization constant:

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][A^-]}{[HA]}$$

- Base ionization constant:

$$K_b = \frac{[BH^+][OH^-]}{[B]}$$

- Relationship between K_a and K_b of a conjugate acid–base pair:

$$K_aK_b = K_w$$

- Definition of pK_a:

$$pKa = -\log_{10} K_a$$

$$K_a = 10^{-pK_a}$$

- Definition of pK_b:

$$pK_b = -\log_{10} K_b$$

$$K_b = 10^{-pK_b}$$

- Relationship between pK_a and pK_b of a conjugate acid–base pair:

$$pK_a + pK_b = pK_w$$

$$pK_a + pK_b = 14.00 \text{ at } 25^\circ\text{C}$$

Contributors and Attributions

- Stephen Lower, Professor Emeritus (Simon Fraser U.) Chem1 Virtual Textbook

---

5.6: Autoionization of Water and pH

Learning Objectives

- To understand the autoionization reaction of liquid water.
- To know the relationship among pH, pOH, and pK_w.

As you learned previously acids and bases can be defined in several different ways (Table $5.6.1$). Recall that the Arrhenius definition of an acid is a substance that dissociates in water to produce H^+ ions (protons), and an Arrhenius base is a substance that dissociates in water to produce OH^- (hydroxide) ions. According to this view, an acid–base reaction involves the reaction of a proton with a hydroxide ion to form water. Although Brønsted and Lowry defined an acid similarly to Arrhenius by describing an acid as any substance that can donate a proton, the Brønsted–Lowry definition of a base is much more general than the Arrhenius definition. In Brønsted–Lowry terms, a base is any substance that can accept a proton, so a base is not limited to just a hydroxide ion. This means that for every Brønsted–Lowry acid, there exists a corresponding conjugate base with one fewer proton. Consequently, all Brønsted–Lowry acid–base reactions actually involve two conjugate acid–base pairs and the transfer of a proton from one substance (the acid) to another (the base). In contrast, the Lewis definition of acids and bases, focuses on accepting or donating pairs of electrons rather than protons. A Lewis base is an electron-pair donor, and a Lewis acid is an electron-pair acceptor.

Table 5.6.1: Definitions of Acids and Bases

Definition	Acids	Bases
Arrhenius	H^+ donor	OH^- donor
Brønsted–Lowry	H^+ donor	H^+ acceptor
Lewis	electron-pair acceptor	electron-pair donor

Because this chapter deals with acid–base equilibria in aqueous solution, our discussion will use primarily the Brønsted–Lowry definitions and nomenclature. Remember, however, that all three definitions are just different ways of looking at the same kind of reaction: a proton is an acid, and the hydroxide ion is a base—no matter which definition you use. In practice, chemists tend to use whichever definition is most helpful to make a particular point or understand a given system. If, for example, we refer to a base as having one or more lone pairs of electrons that can accept a proton, we are simply combining the Lewis and Brønsted–Lowry definitions to emphasize the characteristic properties of a base.

Acid–Base Properties of Water

Recall that because of its highly polar structure, liquid water can act as either an acid (by donating a proton to a base) or a base (by using a lone pair of electrons to accept a proton). For example, when a strong acid such as HCl dissolves in water, it dissociates into chloride ions (Cl^-) and protons (H^+). The proton, in turn, reacts with a water molecule to form the hydronium ion (H_3O^+):

$$\underset{acid}{HCl_{(aq)}} + \underset{base}{H_2O_{(l)}} \rightarrow \underset{acid}{H_3O^+_{(aq)}} + \underset{base}{Cl^-_{(aq)}} \tag{5.6.1}$$

In this reaction, HCl is the acid, and water acts as a base by accepting an H^+ ion. The reaction in Equation 5.6.1 is often written in a simpler form by removing H_2O from each side:

$$HCl_{(aq)} \rightarrow H^+_{(aq)} + Cl^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.6.2}$$

In Equation 5.6.2, the hydronium ion is represented by H^+, although free H^+ ions do not exist in liquid water as this reaction demonstrates:

$$H^+_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow H_3O^+_{(aq)}$$

Water can also act as an acid, as shown in Equation 5.6.3. In this equilibrium reaction, H_2O donates a proton to NH_3, which acts as a base:

$$\underset{acid}{H_2O_{(l)}} + \underset{base}{NH_{3(aq)}} \rightleftharpoons \underset{acid}{NH^+_{4(aq)}} + \underset{base}{OH^-_{(aq)}} \tag{5.6.3}$$

Water is thus termed amphiprotic, meaning that it can behave as either an acid or a base, depending on the nature of the other reactant. Notice that Equation 5.6.3 is an equilibrium reaction as indicated by the double arrow and hence has an equilibrium constant associated with it.

The Ion-Product Constant of Liquid Water

Because water is amphiprotic, one water molecule can react with another to form an OH^- ion and an H_3O^+ ion in an autoionization process:

$$2H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+_{(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.6.4}$$

The equilibrium constant K for this reaction can be written as follows:

$$K_a = \frac{a_{H_3O^+} \cdot a_{OH^-}}{a^2_{H_2O}} \approx \frac{[H_3O^+][HO^-]}{(1)^2} = [H_3O^+][HO^-] \tag{5.6.5}$$

where a is the activity of a species. Because water is the solvent, and the solution is assumed to be dilute, the activity of the water is approximated by the activity of pure water, which is defined as having a value of 1. The activity of each solute is approximated by the molarity of the solute.

Note

It is a common error to claim that the molar concentration of the solvent is in some way involved in the equilibrium law. This error is a result of a misunderstanding of solution thermodynamics. For example, it is often claimed that Ka = $K_{eq}[H_2O]$ for aqueous solutions. This equation is incorrect because it is an erroneous interpretation of the correct equation Ka = $K_{eq}(a_{H_2O})$. Because a_{H_2O} = 1 for a dilute solution, $K_a = K_{eq}(1)$, or $K_a = K_{eq}$.

In this reaction, one water molecule acts as an acid and one water molecule acts as a base. Thus, this reaction actually can be designated as the K_a of water and as the K_b of water. It is most common, however, to designate this reaction and the associated law of mass action as the K_w of water:

$$K_w = [H_3O^+][HO^-] \tag{5.6.6}$$

When pure liquid water is in equilibrium with hydronium and hydroxide ions at 25 °C, the concentrations of the hydronium ion and the hydroxide ion are equal:

$$[H_3O^+] = [OH^-] = 1.003 \times 10^{-7}\ M \tag{5.6.7}$$

Thus the number of dissociated water molecules is very small indeed, approximately 2 ppb.

Substituting the values for $[H_3O^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ at 25 °C into this expression

$$K_w = (1.003 \times 10^{-7})(1.003 \times 10^{-7}) = 1.006 \times 10^{-14} \tag{5.6.8}$$

Thus, to three significant figures, $K_w = 1.01 \times 10^{-14}$ *at room temperature*, and

$$K_w = 1.01 \times 10^{-14} = [H_3O^+][OH^-] \tag{5.6.9}$$

.

Like any other equilibrium constant, K_w varies with temperature, ranging from 1.15×10^{-15} at 0 °C to 4.99×10^{-13} at 100 °C.

In pure water, the concentrations of the hydronium ion and the hydroxide ion are equal, and the solution is therefore neutral. If $[H_3O^+] > [OH^-]$, however, the solution is acidic, whereas if $[H_3O^+] < [OH^-]$, the solution is basic. For an aqueous solution, the H_3O^+ concentration is a quantitative measure of acidity: the higher the H_3O^+ concentration, the more acidic the solution. Conversely, the higher the OH^- concentration, the more basic the solution. In most situations that you will encounter, the H_3O^+ and OH^- concentrations from the dissociation of water are so small ($1.003 \times 10^{-7} M$) that they can be ignored in calculating the H_3O^+ or OH^- concentrations of solutions of acids and bases, but this is not always the case.

A Video Describing the Self-Ionization of Water (Kw): Self-Ionization of Water (Kw): [youtu.be]

The Relationship among pH, pOH, and pK_w

The pH scale is a concise way of describing the H_3O^+ concentration and hence the acidity or basicity of a solution. Recall that pH and the H^+ (H_3O^+) concentration are related as follows:

$$pH = -\log_{10}[H^+] \tag{5.6.10}$$

$$[H^+] = 10^{-pH} \tag{5.6.11}$$

Because the scale is logarithmic, a pH difference of 1 between two solutions corresponds to a difference of a factor of 10 in their hydronium ion concentrations. Recall also that the pH of a neutral solution is 7.00 ($[H_3O^+] = 1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$), whereas acidic solutions have pH < 7.00 (corresponding to $[H_3O^+] > 1.0 \times 10^{-7}$) and basic solutions have pH > 7.00 (corresponding to $[H_3O^+] < 1.0 \times 10^{-7}$).

Similar notation systems are used to describe many other chemical quantities that contain a large negative exponent. For example, chemists use an analogous pOH scale to describe the hydroxide ion concentration of a solution. The pOH and $[OH^-]$ are related as follows:

$$pOH = -\log_{10}[OH^-] \tag{5.6.12}$$

$$[OH^-] = 10^{-pOH} \tag{5.6.13}$$

The constant K_w can also be expressed using this notation, where $pK_w = -\log\ K_w$.

Because a neutral solution has $[OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-7}$, the pOH of a neutral solution is 7.00. Consequently, the sum of the pH and the pOH for a neutral solution at 25 °C is 7.00 + 7.00 = 14.00. We can show that the sum of pH and pOH is equal to 14.00 for any aqueous solution at 25 °C by taking the negative logarithm of both sides of Equation ???:

$$-\log_{10} K_w = pK_w \tag{5.6.14}$$

$$= -\log([H_3O^+][OH^-]) \tag{5.6.15}$$

$$= (-\log[H_3O^+]) + (-\log[OH^-]) \tag{5.6.16}$$

$$= pH + pOH \tag{5.6.17}$$

Thus at any temperature, $pH + pOH = pK_w$, so at 25 °C, where $K_w = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$, pH + pOH = 14.00. More generally, the pH of any neutral solution is half of the pK_w at that temperature. The relationship among pH, pOH, and the acidity or basicity of a solution is summarized graphically in Figure 5.6.1 over the common pH range of 0 to 14. Notice the inverse relationship between the pH and pOH scales.

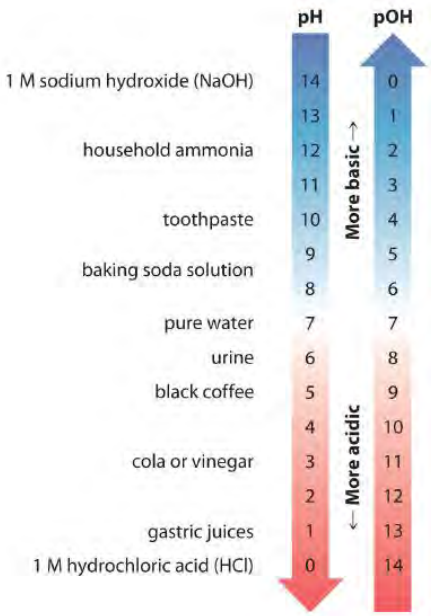


Figure 5.6.1: The Inverse Relationship between the pH and pOH Scales. As pH decreases, $[H^+]$ and the acidity increase. As pOH increases, $[OH^-]$ and the basicity decrease. Common substances have pH values that range from extremely acidic to extremely basic.

Zero is the most acidic and fourteen is the most basic on the pH scale. Zero is the most basic and fourteen is the most acidic on the pOH scale.

> *For any neutral solution, pH + pOH = 14.00 (at 25 °C) with pH=pOH=7.*

A Video Introduction to pH: Introduction to pH [youtu.be]

✓ Example 5.6.1

The K_w for water at 100 °C is 4.99×10^{-13}. Calculate pK_w for water at this temperature and the pH and the pOH for a neutral aqueous solution at 100 °C. Report pH and pOH values to two decimal places.

Given: K_w

Asked for: pK_w, pH, and pOH

Strategy:

A. Calculate pK_w by taking the negative logarithm of K_w.
B. For a neutral aqueous solution, $[H_3O^+] = [OH^-]$. Use this relationship and Equation 5.6.9 to calculate $[H_3O^+]$ and $[OH^-]$. Then determine the pH and the pOH for the solution.

Solution:

A

Because pK_w is the negative logarithm of Kw, we can write

$$pK_w = -\log K_w = -\log(4.99 \times 10^{-13}) = 12.302$$

The answer is reasonable: K_w is between 10^{-13} and 10^{-12}, so pK_w must be between 12 and 13.

B

Equation ??? shows that $K_w = [H_3O^+][OH^-]$. Because $[H_3O^+] = [OH^-]$ in a neutral solution, we can let $x = [H_3O^+] = [OH^-]$:

$$\begin{aligned} K_w &= [H_3O^+][OH^-] \\ &= (x)(x) = x^2 \\ x &= \sqrt{K_w} \\ &= \sqrt{4.99 \times 10^{-13}} \\ &= 7.06 \times 10^{-7}\ M \end{aligned}$$

Because x is equal to both $[H_3O^+]$ and $[OH^-]$,

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= pOH = -\log(7.06 \times 10^{-7}) \\ &= 6.15 \ \text{(to two decimal places)} \end{aligned}$$

We could obtain the same answer more easily (without using logarithms) by using the pK_w. In this case, we know that $pK_w = 12.302$, and from Equation 5.6.17, we know that $pK_w = pH + pOH$. Because $pH = pOH$ in a neutral solution, we can use Equation 5.6.17 directly, setting $pH = pOH = y$. Solving to two decimal places we obtain the following:

$$\begin{aligned} pK_w &= pH + pOH \\ &= y + y \\ &= 2y \\ y &= \frac{pK_w}{2} \\ &= \frac{12.302}{2} \\ &= 6.15 = pH = pOH \end{aligned}$$

? Exercise 5.6.1

Humans maintain an internal temperature of about 37 °C. At this temperature, $K_w = 3.55 \times 10^{-14}$. Calculate pK_w and the pH and the pOH of a neutral solution at 37 °C. Report pH and pOH values to two decimal places.

Answer

- $pK_w = 13.45$
- $pH = pOH = 6.73$

Summary

Water is amphiprotic: it can act as an acid by donating a proton to a base to form the hydroxide ion, or as a base by accepting a proton from an acid to form the hydronium ion (H_3O^+). The autoionization of liquid water produces OH^- and H_3O^+ ions. The equilibrium constant for this reaction is called the ion-product constant of liquid water (Kw) and is defined as $K_w = [H_3O^+][OH^-]$. At 25 °C, K_w is 1.01×10^{-14}; hence $pH + pOH = pK_w = 14.00$.

- For any neutral solution, $pH + pOH = 14.00$ (at 25 °C) and $pH = 1/2pK_w$.

- Ion-product constant of liquid water:

$$K_w = [H_3O^+][OH^-]$$

- Definition of pH:

$$pH = -\log 10[H^+]$$

or

$$[H^+] = 10^{-pH}$$

- Definition of pOH:

$$pOH = -\log_{10}[OH^+]$$

or

$$[OH^-] = 10^{-pOH}$$

- Relationship among pH, pOH, and pK_w:

$$pK_w = pH + pOH$$

5.7: Finding the [H3O+] and pH of Strong and Weak Acid Solutions

Learning Objectives

- To know the relationship between acid or base strength and the magnitude of K_a, K_b, pK_a, and pK_b.
- To understand the leveling effect.

The magnitude of the equilibrium constant for an ionization reaction can be used to determine the relative strengths of acids and bases. For example, the general equation for the ionization of a weak acid in water, where HA is the parent acid and A− is its conjugate base, is as follows:

$$HA_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+_{(aq)} + A^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.7.1}$$

The equilibrium constant for this dissociation is as follows:

$$K = \frac{[H_3O^+][A^-]}{[H_2O][HA]} \tag{5.7.2}$$

As we noted earlier, because water is the solvent, it has an activity equal to 1, so the $[H_2O]$ term in Equation 5.7.2 is actually the a_{H_2O}, which is equal to 1.

Again, for simplicity, H_3O^+ can be written as H^+ in Equation 5.7.3.

$$HA_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons H^+_{(aq)} + A^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.7.3}$$

Keep in mind, though, that free H^+ does not exist in aqueous solutions and that a proton is transferred to H_2O in all acid ionization reactions to form hydronium ions, H_3O^+. The larger the K_a, the stronger the acid and the higher the H^+ concentration at equilibrium. Like all equilibrium constants, acid–base ionization constants are actually measured in terms of the activities of H^+ or OH^-, thus making them unitless. The values of K_a for a number of common acids are given in Table 5.7.1.

Table 5.7.1: Values of K_a, pK_a, K_b, and pK_b for Selected Acids (HA and Their Conjugate Bases (A^-)

Acid	HA	K_a	pK_a	A^-	K_b	pK_b
hydroiodic acid	HI	2×10^9	−9.3	I^-	5.5×10^{-24}	23.26
sulfuric acid (1)*	H_2SO_4	1×10^2	−2.0	HSO_4^-	1×10^{-16}	16.0
nitric acid	HNO_3	2.3×10^1	−1.37	NO_3^-	4.3×10^{-16}	15.37
hydronium ion	H_3O^+	1.0	0.00	H_2O	1.0×10^{-14}	14.00
sulfuric acid (2)*	HSO_4^-	1.0×10^{-2}	1.99	SO_4^{2-}	9.8×10^{-13}	12.01
hydrofluoric acid	HF	6.3×10^{-4}	3.20	F^-	1.6×10^{-11}	10.80
nitrous acid	HNO_2	5.6×10^{-4}	3.25	$NO2^-$	1.8×10^{-11}	10.75
formic acid	HCO_2H	1.78×10^{-4}	3.750	HCO_2-	5.6×10^{-11}	10.25
benzoic acid	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	6.3×10^{-5}	4.20	$C_6H_5CO_2^-$	1.6×10^{-10}	9.80
acetic acid	CH_3CO_2H	1.7×10^{-5}	4.76	$CH_3CO_2^-$	5.8×10^{-10}	9.24
pyridinium ion	$C_5H_5NH^+$	5.9×10^{-6}	5.23	C_5H_5N	1.7×10^{-9}	8.77
hypochlorous acid	$HOCl$	4.0×10^{-8}	7.40	OCl^-	2.5×10^{-7}	6.60
hydrocyanic acid	HCN	6.2×10^{-10}	9.21	CN^-	1.6×10^{-5}	4.79
ammonium ion	NH_4^+	5.6×10^{-10}	9.25	NH_3	1.8×10^{-5}	4.75
water	H_2O	1.0×10^{-14}	14.00	OH^-	1.00	0.00
acetylene	C_2H_2	1×10^{-26}	26.0	HC_2^-	1×10^{12}	−12.0

*The number in parentheses indicates the ionization step referred to for a polyprotic acid.

Acid	HA	K_a	pK_a	A^-	K_b	pK_b
ammonia	NH_3	1×10^{-35}	35.0	NH_2^-	1×10^{21}	−21.0
*The number in parentheses indicates the ionization step referred to for a polyprotic acid.						

Weak bases react with water to produce the hydroxide ion, as shown in the following general equation, where B is the parent base and BH+ is its conjugate acid:

$$B_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons BH^+_{(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.7.4}$$

The equilibrium constant for this reaction is the base ionization constant (K_b), also called the base dissociation constant:

$$K_b = \frac{[BH^+][OH^-]}{[B]} \tag{5.7.5}$$

Once again, the activity of water has a value of 1, so water does not appear in the equilibrium constant expression. The larger the K_b, the stronger the base and the higher the OH^- concentration at equilibrium. The values of K_b for a number of common weak bases are given in Table $5.7.2$.

Table $5.7.2$: Values of K_b, pK_b, K_a, and pK_a for Selected Weak Bases (B) and Their Conjugate Acids (BH+)

Base	B	K_b	pK_b	BH^+	K_a	pK_a
hydroxide ion	OH^-	1.0	0.00*	H_2O	1.0×10^{-14}	14.00
phosphate ion	PO_4^{3-}	2.1×10^{-2}	1.68	HPO_4^{2-}	4.8×10^{-13}	12.32
dimethylamine	$(CH_3)_2NH$	5.4×10^{-4}	3.27	$(CH_3)_2NH_2^+$	1.9×10^{-11}	10.73
methylamine	CH_3NH_2	4.6×10^{-4}	3.34	$CH_3NH_3^+$	2.2×10^{-11}	10.66
trimethylamine	$(CH_3)_3N$	6.3×10^{-5}	4.20	$(CH_3)_3NH^+$	1.6×10^{-10}	9.80
ammonia	NH_3	1.8×10^{-5}	4.75	NH_4^+	5.6×10^{-10}	9.25
pyridine	C_5H_5N	1.7×10^{-9}	8.77	$C_5H_5NH^+$	5.9×10^{-6}	5.23
aniline	$C_6H_5NH_2$	7.4×10^{-10}	9.13	$C_6H_5NH_3^+$	1.3×10^{-5}	4.87
water	H_2O	1.0×10^{-14}	14.00	H_3O^+	1.0*	0.00
*As in Table 5.7.1.						

There is a simple relationship between the magnitude of K_a for an acid and K_b for its conjugate base. Consider, for example, the ionization of hydrocyanic acid (HCN) in water to produce an acidic solution, and the reaction of CN^- with water to produce a basic solution:

$$HCN_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons H^+_{(aq)} + CN^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.7.6}$$

$$CN^-_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons OH^-_{(aq)} + HCN_{(aq)} \tag{5.7.7}$$

The equilibrium constant expression for the ionization of HCN is as follows:

$$K_a = \frac{[H^+][CN^-]}{[HCN]} \tag{5.7.8}$$

The corresponding expression for the reaction of cyanide with water is as follows:

$$K_b = \frac{[OH^-][HCN]}{[CN^-]} \tag{5.7.9}$$

If we add Equations 5.7.6 and 5.7.7, we obtain the following:

add Equations 5.7.6 and 5.7.7, we obtain

Reaction	Equilibrium Constants

Reaction	Equilibrium Constants
$HCN_{\cancel{(aq)}} \rightleftharpoons H^+_{(aq)} + CN^-_{\cancel{(aq)}}$	$K_a = [H^+]\,\cancel{[CN^-]}/\,\cancel{[HCN]}$
$CN^-_{\cancel{(aq)}} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons OH^-_{(aq)} + HCN_{\cancel{(aq)}}$	$K_b = [OH^-]\,\cancel{[HCN]}/\,\cancel{[CN^-]}$
$H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H^+_{(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)}$	$K = K_a \times K_b = [H^+][OH^-]$

In this case, the sum of the reactions described by K_a and K_b is the equation for the autoionization of water, and the product of the two equilibrium constants is K_w:

$$K_a K_b = K_w \tag{5.7.10}$$

Thus if we know either K_a for an acid or K_b for its conjugate base, we can calculate the other equilibrium constant for any conjugate acid–base pair.

Just as with pH, pOH, and pKw, we can use negative logarithms to avoid exponential notation in writing acid and base ionization constants, by defining pK_a as follows:

$$pKa = -\log_{10} K_a \tag{5.7.11}$$

$$K_a = 10^{-pK_a} \tag{5.7.12}$$

and pK_b as

$$pK_b = -\log_{10} K_b \tag{5.7.13}$$

$$K_b = 10^{-pK_b} \tag{5.7.14}$$

Similarly, Equation 5.7.10, which expresses the relationship between K_a and K_b, can be written in logarithmic form as follows:

$$pK_a + pK_b = pK_w \tag{5.7.15}$$

At 25 °C, this becomes

$$pK_a + pK_b = 14.00 \tag{5.7.16}$$

The values of pK_a and pK_b are given for several common acids and bases in Tables 5.7.1 and 5.7.2, respectively, and a more extensive set of data is provided in Tables E1 and E2. Because of the use of negative logarithms, smaller values of pK_a correspond to larger acid ionization constants and hence stronger acids. For example, nitrous acid (HNO_2), with a pK_a of 3.25, is about a million times stronger acid than hydrocyanic acid (HCN), with a pK_a of 9.21. Conversely, smaller values of pK_b correspond to larger base ionization constants and hence stronger bases.

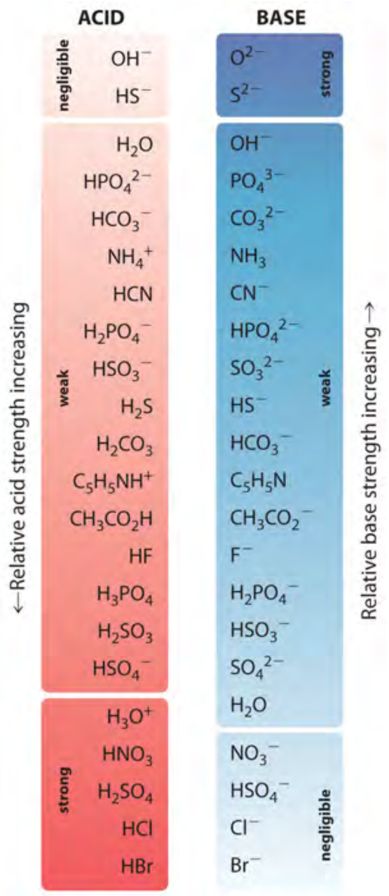


Figure 5.7.1: The Relative Strengths of Some Common Conjugate Acid–Base Pairs. The strongest acids are at the bottom left, and the strongest bases are at the top right. The conjugate base of a strong acid is a very weak base, and, conversely, the conjugate acid of a strong base is a very weak acid.

Strong acids are H3O plus, HNO3, H2SO4, HCl, and HBr. Negligible acids are HS minus and OH minus. Stron bases are O negative 2, S negative 2. Negligible bases are NO3 minus, HSO4 minus, Cl minus, and Br minus.

The relative strengths of some common acids and their conjugate bases are shown graphically in Figure $5.7.1$. The conjugate acid–base pairs are listed in order (from top to bottom) of increasing acid strength, which corresponds to decreasing values of pK_a. This order corresponds to decreasing strength of the conjugate base or increasing values of pK_b. At the bottom left of Figure $5.7.2$ are the common strong acids; at the top right are the most common strong bases. Notice the inverse relationship between the strength of the parent acid and the strength of the conjugate base. Thus the conjugate base of a strong acid is a very weak base, and the conjugate base of a very weak acid is a strong base.

> *The conjugate base of a strong acid is a weak base and vice versa.*

We can use the relative strengths of acids and bases to predict the direction of an acid–base reaction by following a single rule: an acid–base equilibrium always favors the side with the weaker acid and base, as indicated by these arrows:

$$\text{stronger acid} + \text{stronger base} \rightleftharpoons \text{weaker acid} + \text{weaker base}$$

In an acid–base reaction, the proton always reacts with the stronger base.

For example, hydrochloric acid is a strong acid that ionizes essentially completely in dilute aqueous solution to produce H_3O^+ and Cl^-; only negligible amounts of HCl molecules remain undissociated. Hence the ionization equilibrium lies virtually all the way to the right, as represented by a single arrow:

$$HCl_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow H_3O^+_{(aq)} + Cl^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.7.17}$$

In contrast, acetic acid is a weak acid, and water is a weak base. Consequently, aqueous solutions of acetic acid contain mostly acetic acid molecules in equilibrium with a small concentration of H_3O^+ and acetate ions, and the ionization equilibrium lies far to the left, as represented by these arrows:

$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+_{(aq)} + CH_3CO^-_{2\,(aq)}}$$

Similarly, in the reaction of ammonia with water, the hydroxide ion is a strong base, and ammonia is a weak base, whereas the ammonium ion is a stronger acid than water. Hence this equilibrium also lies to the left:

$$H_2O_{(l)} + NH_{3(aq)} \rightleftharpoons NH^+_{4(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)}$$

> *All acid–base equilibria favor the side with the weaker acid and base. Thus the proton is bound to the stronger base.*

Example 5.7.1: Butyrate and Dimethylammonium Ions

a. Calculate K_b and pK_b of the butyrate ion ($CH_3CH_2CH_2CO_2^-$). The pK_a of butyric acid at 25°C is 4.83. Butyric acid is responsible for the foul smell of rancid butter.
b. Calculate K_a and pK_a of the dimethylammonium ion ($(CH_3)_2NH_2^+$). The base ionization constant K_b of dimethylamine ($(CH_3)_2NH$) is 5.4×10^{-4} at 25°C.

Given: pK_a and K_b

Asked for: corresponding K_b and pK_b, K_a and pK_a

Strategy:

The constants K_a and K_b are related as shown in Equation 5.7.10. The pK_a and pK_b for an acid and its conjugate base are related as shown in Equations 5.7.15 and 5.7.16. Use the relationships pK = −log K and K = $10^{-\mathrm{pK}}$ (Equations 5.7.11 and 5.7.13) to convert between K_a and pK_a or K_b and pK_b.

Solution:

We are given the pK_a for butyric acid and asked to calculate the K_b and the pK_b for its conjugate base, the butyrate ion. Because the pK_a value cited is for a temperature of 25°C, we can use Equation 5.7.16: $pK_a + pK_b = \mathrm{pK_w} = 14.00$. Substituting the pK_a and solving for the pK_b,

$$4.83 + pK_b = 14.00$$

$$pK_b = 14.00 - 4.83 = 9.17$$

Because $pK_b = -\log K_b$, K_b is $10^{-9.17} = 6.8 \times 10^{-10}$.

In this case, we are given K_b for a base (dimethylamine) and asked to calculate K_a and pK_a for its conjugate acid, the dimethylammonium ion. Because the initial quantity given is K_b rather than pK_b, we can use Equation 5.7.10: $K_aK_b = K_w$. Substituting the values of K_b and K_w at 25°C and solving for K_a,

$$K_a(5.4 \times 10^{-4}) = 1.01 \times 10^{-14}$$

$$K_a = 1.9 \times 10^{-11}$$

Because pK_a = −log K_a, we have $pK_a = -\log(1.9 \times 10^{-11}) = 10.72$. We could also have converted K_b to pK_b to obtain the same answer:

$$pK_b = -\log(5.4 \times 10^{-4}) = 3.27$$

$$pKa + pK_b = 14.00$$

$$pK_a = 10.73$$

$$K_a = 10^{-pK_a} = 10^{-10.73} = 1.9 \times 10^{-11}$$

If we are given any one of these four quantities for an acid or a base (K_a, pK_a, K_b, or pK_b), we can calculate the other three.

Exercise 5.7.1: Lactic Acid

Lactic acid ($CH_3CH(OH)CO_2H$) is responsible for the pungent taste and smell of sour milk; it is also thought to produce soreness in fatigued muscles. Its pK_a is 3.86 at 25°C. Calculate K_a for lactic acid and pK_b and K_b for the lactate ion.

Answer

- $K_a = 1.4 \times 10^{-4}$ for lactic acid;
- pK_b = 10.14 and
- $K_b = 7.2 \times 10^{-11}$ for the lactate ion

A Video Calculating pH in Strong Acid or Strong Base Solutions: Calculating pH in Strong Acid or Strong Base Solutions [youtu.be]

Solutions of Strong Acids and Bases: The Leveling Effect

You will notice in Table 5.7.1 that acids like H_2SO_4 and HNO_3 lie above the hydronium ion, meaning that they have pK_a values less than zero and are stronger acids than the H_3O^+ ion. Recall from Chapter 4 that the acidic proton in virtually all oxoacids is bonded to one of the oxygen atoms of the oxoanion. Thus nitric acid should properly be written as $HONO_2$. Unfortunately, however, the formulas of oxoacids are almost always written with hydrogen on the left and oxygen on the right, giving HNO_3 instead. In fact, all six of the common strong acids that we first encountered in Chapter 4 have pK_a values less than zero, which means that they have a greater tendency to lose a proton than does the H_3O^+ ion. Conversely, the conjugate bases of these strong acids are weaker bases than water. Consequently, the proton-transfer equilibria for these strong acids lie far to the right, and adding any of the common strong acids to water results in an essentially stoichiometric reaction of the acid with water to form a solution of the H_3O^+ ion and the conjugate base of the acid.

Although K_a for HI is about 108 greater than K_a for HNO_3, the reaction of either HI or HNO_3 with water gives an essentially stoichiometric solution of H_3O^+ and I− or NO_3^-. In fact, a 0.1 M aqueous solution of any strong acid actually contains 0.1 M H_3O^+, regardless of the identity of the strong acid. This phenomenon is called the leveling effect: any species that is a stronger acid than the conjugate acid of water (H_3O^+) is leveled to the strength of H_3O^+ in aqueous solution because H_3O^+ is the strongest acid that can exist in equilibrium with water. Consequently, it is impossible to distinguish between the strengths of acids such as HI and HNO3 in aqueous solution, and an alternative approach must be used to determine their relative acid strengths.

One method is to use a solvent such as anhydrous acetic acid. Because acetic acid is a stronger acid than water, it must also be a weaker base, with a lesser tendency to accept a proton than H_2O. Measurements of the conductivity of 0.1 M solutions of both HI and HNO_3 in acetic acid show that HI is completely dissociated, but HNO_3 is only partially dissociated and behaves like a weak acid in this solvent. This result clearly tells us that HI is a stronger acid than HNO_3. The relative order of acid strengths and approximate K_a and pK_a values for the strong acids at the top of Table 5.7.1 were determined using measurements like this and different nonaqueous solvents.

> *In aqueous solutions, H_3O^+ is the strongest acid and OH^- is the strongest base that can exist in equilibrium with H_2O.*

The leveling effect applies to solutions of strong bases as well: In aqueous solution, any base stronger than OH− is leveled to the strength of OH− because OH− is the strongest base that can exist in equilibrium with water. Salts such as K_2O, $NaOCH_3$ (sodium methoxide), and $NaNH_2$ (sodamide, or sodium amide), whose anions are the conjugate bases of species that would lie below water in Table 5.7.2, are all strong bases that react essentially completely (and often violently) with water, accepting a proton to give a solution of OH^- and the corresponding cation:

$$K_2O_{(s)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow 2OH^-_{(aq)} + 2K^+_{(aq)} \tag{5.7.18}$$

$$NaOCH_{3(s)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow OH^-_{(aq)} + Na^+_{(aq)} + CH_3OH_{(aq)} \tag{5.7.19}$$

$$NaNH_{2(s)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow OH^-_{(aq)} + Na^+_{(aq)} + NH_{3(aq)} \tag{5.7.20}$$

Other examples that you may encounter are potassium hydride (KH) and organometallic compounds such as methyl lithium (CH_3Li).

Polyprotic Acids and Bases

As you learned, polyprotic acids such as H_2SO_4, H_3PO_4, and H_2CO_3 contain more than one ionizable proton, and the protons are lost in a stepwise manner. The fully protonated species is always the strongest acid because it is easier to remove a proton from a neutral molecule than from a negatively charged ion. Thus acid strength decreases with the loss of subsequent protons, and, correspondingly, the pK_a increases. Consider H_2SO_4, for example:

$$HSO^-_{4(aq)} \rightleftharpoons SO^{2-}_{4(aq)} + H^+_{(aq)} \quad pK_a = -2$$

The equilibrium in the first reaction lies far to the right, consistent with H_2SO_4 being a strong acid. In contrast, in the second reaction, appreciable quantities of both HSO_4^- and SO_4^{2-} are present at equilibrium.

> *For a polyprotic acid, acid strength decreases and the pK_a increases with the sequential loss of each proton.*

The hydrogen sulfate ion (HSO_4^-) is both the conjugate base of H_2SO_4 and the conjugate acid of SO_4^{2-}. Just like water, HSO4− can therefore act as either an acid or a base, depending on whether the other reactant is a stronger acid or a stronger base. Conversely, the sulfate ion (SO_4^{2-}) is a polyprotic base that is capable of accepting two protons in a stepwise manner:

$$SO^{2-}_{4(aq)} + H_2O_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons HSO^-_{4(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)}$$

$$HSO^-_{4(aq)} + H_2O_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons H_2SO_{4(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.7.21}$$

Like any other conjugate acid–base pair, the strengths of the conjugate acids and bases are related by pK_a + pK_b = pKw. Consider, for example, the HSO_4^-/SO_4^{2-} conjugate acid–base pair. From Table 5.7.1, we see that the pK_a of HSO_4^- is 1.99. Hence the pK_b of SO_4^{2-} is 14.00 − 1.99 = 12.01. Thus sulfate is a rather weak base, whereas OH^- is a strong base, so the equilibrium shown in Equation 5.7.21 lies to the left. The HSO_4^- ion is also a very weak base (pK_a of H_2SO_4 = 2.0, pK_b of $HSO_4^- = 14 - (-2.0) = 16$), which is consistent with what we expect for the conjugate base of a strong acid.

✓ Example 5.7.2

Predict whether the equilibrium for each reaction lies to the left or the right as written.

- $NH^+_{4(aq)} + PO^{3-}_{4(aq)} \rightleftharpoons NH_{3(aq)} + HPO^{2-}_{4(aq)}$
- $CH_3CH_2CO_2H_{(aq)} + CN^-_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons CH_3CH_2CO^-_{2(aq)} + HCN_{(aq)}$

Given: balanced chemical equation

Asked for: equilibrium position

Strategy:

Identify the conjugate acid–base pairs in each reaction. Then refer to Tables 5.7.1and5.7.2 and Figure 5.7.2 to determine which is the stronger acid and base. Equilibrium **always** favors the formation of the weaker acid–base pair.

Solution:

The conjugate acid–base pairs are NH_4^+/NH_3 and HPO_4^{2-}/PO_4^{3-}. According to Tables $5.7.1$ and $5.7.2$, NH_4^+ is a stronger acid ($pK_a = 9.25$) than HPO_4^{2-} (pKa = 12.32), and PO_4^{3-} is a stronger base ($pK_b = 1.68$) than NH_3 ($pK_b = 4.75$). The equilibrium will therefore lie to the right, favoring the formation of the weaker acid–base pair:

$$\underset{\text{stronger acid}}{NH^+_{4(aq)}} + \underset{\text{stronger base}}{PO^{3-}_{4(aq)}} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{weaker base}}{NH_{3(aq)}} + \underset{\text{weaker acid}}{HPO^{2-}_{4(aq)}}$$

The conjugate acid–base pairs are $CH_3CH_2CO_2H/CH_3CH_2CO_2^-$ and HCN/CN^-. According to Table $5.7.1$, HCN is a weak acid (pKa = 9.21) and CN^- is a moderately weak base (pKb = 4.79). Propionic acid ($CH_3CH_2CO_2H$) is not listed in Table $5.7.1$, however. In a situation like this, the best approach is to look for a similar compound whose acid–base properties are listed. For example, propionic acid and acetic acid are identical except for the groups attached to the carbon atom of the carboxylic acid ($-\mathrm{CH_2CH_3}$ versus $-\mathrm{CH_3}$), so we might expect the two compounds to have similar acid–base properties. In particular, we would expect the pK_a of propionic acid to be similar in magnitude to the pK_a of acetic acid. (In fact, the pK_a of propionic acid is 4.87, compared to 4.76 for acetic acid, which makes propionic acid a slightly weaker acid than acetic acid.) Thus propionic acid should be a significantly stronger acid than HCN. Because the stronger acid forms the weaker conjugate base, we predict that cyanide will be a stronger base than propionate. The equilibrium will therefore lie to the right, favoring the formation of the weaker acid–base pair:

$$\underset{\text{stronger acid}}{CH_3CH_2CO_2H_{(aq)}} + \underset{\text{stronger base}}{CN^-_{(aq)}} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{weaker base}}{CH_3CH_2CO^-_{2(aq)}} + \underset{\text{weaker acid}}{HCN_{(aq)}}$$

? Exercise $5.7.1$

Predict whether the equilibrium for each reaction lies to the left or the right as written.

a. $H_2O_{(l)} + HS^-_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons OH^-_{(aq)} + H_2S_{(aq)}$
b. $HCO^-_{2(aq)} + HSO^-_{4(aq)} \rightleftharpoons HCO_2H_{(aq)} + SO^{2-}_{4(aq)}$

Answer a

left

Answer b

left

A Video Discussing Polyprotic Acids: Polyprotic Acids [youtu.be]

Summary

Acid–base reactions always contain two conjugate acid–base pairs. Each acid and each base has an associated ionization constant that corresponds to its acid or base strength. Two species that differ by only a proton constitute a conjugate acid–base pair. The magnitude of the equilibrium constant for an ionization reaction can be used to determine the relative strengths of acids and bases.

For an aqueous solution of a weak acid, the dissociation constant is called the acid ionization constant (K_a). Similarly, the equilibrium constant for the reaction of a weak base with water is the base ionization constant (K_b). For any conjugate acid–base pair, $K_aK_b = K_w$. Smaller values of pK_a correspond to larger acid ionization constants and hence stronger acids. Conversely, smaller values of pK_b correspond to larger base ionization constants and hence stronger bases. At 25°C, $pK_a + pK_b = 14.00$. Acid–base reactions always proceed in the direction that produces the weaker acid–base pair. No acid stronger than H_3O^+ and no base stronger than OH^- can exist in aqueous solution, leading to the phenomenon known as the leveling effect. Polyprotic acids (and bases) lose (and gain) protons in a stepwise manner, with the fully protonated species being the strongest acid and the fully deprotonated species the strongest base.

Key Equations

- Acid ionization constant:

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][A^-]}{[HA]}$$

- Base ionization constant:

$$K_b = \frac{[BH^+][OH^-]}{[B]}$$

- Relationship between K_a and K_b of a conjugate acid–base pair:

$$K_aK_b = K_w$$

- Definition of pK_a:

$$pKa = -\log_{10} K_a$$

$$K_a = 10^{-pK_a}$$

- Definition of pK_b:

$$pK_b = -\log_{10} K_b$$

$$K_b = 10^{-pK_b}$$

- Relationship between pK_a and pK_b of a conjugate acid–base pair:

$$pK_a + pK_b = pK_w$$

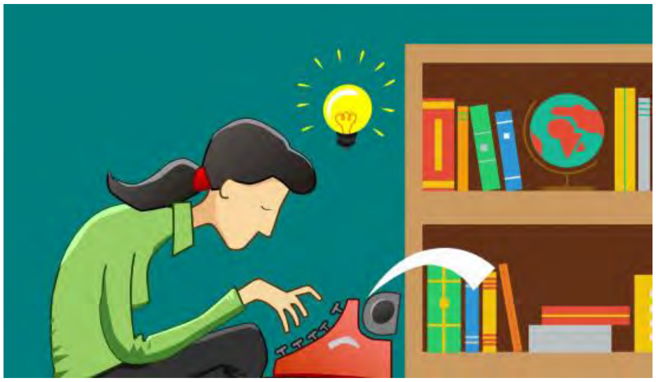
$$pK_a + pK_b = 14.00 \text{ at } 25^\circ\text{C}$$

Contributors and Attributions

- Stephen Lower, Professor Emeritus (Simon Fraser U.) Chem1 Virtual Textbook

---

5.8: Finding the [OH-] and pH of Strong and Weak Base Solutions



Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

5.9: The Acid-Base Properties of Ions and Salts

Learning Objectives

- To recognize salts that will produce acidic, basic, or neutral solutions in water
- To understand the Lewis acidity of small, highly-charged metal ions in water

A neutralization reaction can be defined as the reaction of an acid and a base to produce a salt and water. That is, another cation, such as Na^+, replaces the proton on the acid. An example is the reaction of CH_3CO_2H, a weak acid, with $NaOH$, a strong base:

$$\underbrace{CH_3CO_2H_{(l)}}_{acid} + \underbrace{NaOH_{(s)}}_{base} \xrightarrow{H_2O} \underbrace{H_2OCH_3CO_2Na_{(aq)}}_{salt} + \underbrace{H_2O_{(l)}}_{water}$$

Depending on the acid–base properties of its component ions, however, a salt can dissolve in water to produce a neutral solution, a basic solution, or an acidic solution.

When a salt such as $NaCl$ dissolves in water, it produces $Na^+_{(aq)}$ and $Cl^-_{(aq)}$ ions. Using a Lewis approach, the Na^+ ion can be viewed as an acid because it is an electron pair acceptor, although its low charge and relatively large radius make it a very weak acid. The Cl^- ion is the conjugate base of the strong acid HCl, so it has essentially no basic character. Consequently, dissolving $NaCl$ in water has no effect on the pH of a solution, and the solution remains neutral.

Now let's compare this behavior to the behavior of aqueous solutions of potassium cyanide and sodium acetate. Again, the cations (K^+ and Na^+) have essentially no acidic character, but the anions (CN^- and $CH_3CO_2^-$) are weak bases that can react with water because they are the conjugate bases of the weak acids HCN and acetic acid, respectively.

$$CN^-_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons HCN_{(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)}$$

$$CH_3CO^2_{2(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2H_{(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)}$$

Neither reaction proceeds very far to the right as written because the formation of the weaker acid–base pair is favored. Both HCN and acetic acid are stronger acids than water, and hydroxide is a stronger base than either acetate or cyanide, so in both cases, the equilibrium lies to the left. Nonetheless, each of these reactions generates enough hydroxide ions to produce a basic solution. For example, the pH of a 0.1 M solution of sodium acetate or potassium cyanide at 25°C is 8.8 or 11.1, respectively. From Table $5.9.1$ and Figure $5.9.1$, we can see that CN^- is a stronger base ($pK_b = 4.79$) than acetate ($pK_b = 9.24$), which is consistent with KCN producing a more basic solution than sodium acetate at the same concentration.

In contrast, the conjugate acid of a weak base should be a weak acid (Equation $5.9.1$). For example, ammonium chloride and pyridinium chloride are salts produced by reacting ammonia and pyridine, respectively, with HCl. As you already know, the chloride ion is such a weak base that it does not react with water. In contrast, the cations of the two salts are weak acids that react with water as follows:

$$NH^+_{4(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons HH_{3(aq)} + H_3O^+_{(aq)} \tag{5.9.1}$$

$$C_5H_5NH^+_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons C_5H_5NH_{(aq)} + H_3O^+_{(aq)} \tag{5.9.2}$$

Equation $5.9.1$ indicates that H_3O^+ is a stronger acid than either NH_4^+ or $C_5H_5NH^+$, and conversely, ammonia and pyridine are both stronger bases than water. The equilibrium will therefore lie far to the left in both cases, favoring the weaker acid–base pair. The H_3O^+ concentration produced by the reactions is great enough, however, to decrease the pH of the solution significantly: the pH of a 0.10 M solution of ammonium chloride or pyridinium chloride at 25°C is 5.13 or 3.12, respectively. This is consistent with the information shown in Figure 16.2, indicating that the pyridinium ion is more acidic than the ammonium ion.

What happens with aqueous solutions of a salt such as ammonium acetate, where both the cation and the anion can react separately with water to produce an acid and a base, respectively? According to Figure 16.10, the ammonium ion will lower the pH, while according to Equation $5.9.2$, the acetate ion will raise the pH. This particular case is unusual, in that the cation is as strong an acid as the anion is a base (pKa ≈ pKb). Consequently, the two effects cancel, and the solution remains neutral. With salts in which the cation is a stronger acid than the anion is a base, the final solution has a pH < 7.00. Conversely, if the cation is a weaker acid than the anion is a base, the final solution has a pH > 7.00.

Solutions of simple salts of metal ions can also be acidic, even though a metal ion cannot donate a proton directly to water to produce H_3O^+. Instead, a metal ion can act as a Lewis acid and interact with water, a Lewis base, by coordinating to a lone pair of electrons on the oxygen atom to form a hydrated metal ion (part (a) in Figure $5.9.1$). A water molecule coordinated to a metal ion is more acidic than a free water molecule for two reasons. First, repulsive electrostatic interactions between the positively charged metal ion and the partially positively charged hydrogen atoms of the coordinated water molecule make it easier for the coordinated water to lose a proton.

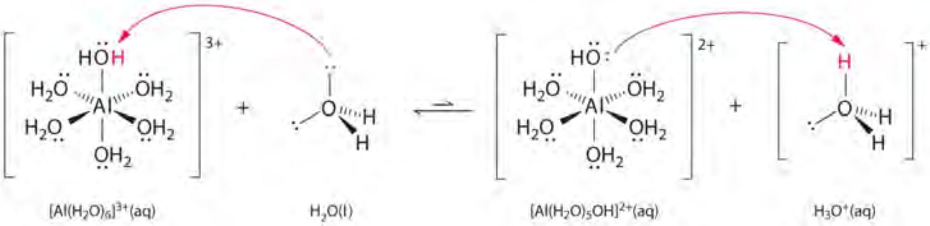


Figure $5.9.1$. With less electron density between the O atoms and the H atoms, the $\mathrm{O-H}$ bonds are weaker than in a free H_2O molecule, making it easier to lose a H^+ ion.

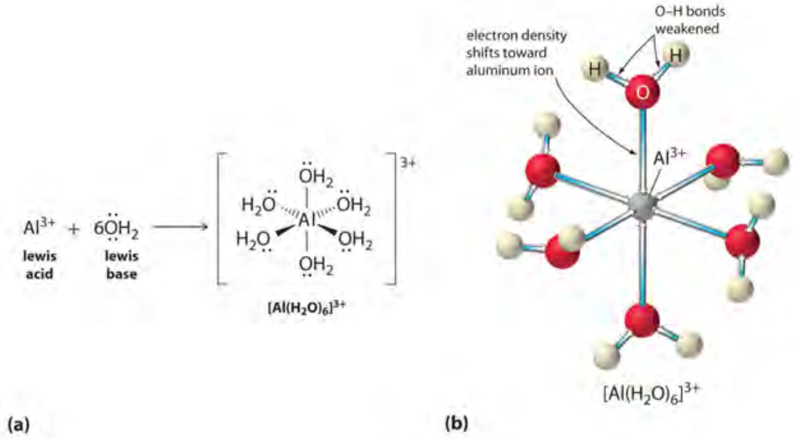


Figure $5.9.1$: Effect of a Metal Ion on the Acidity of Water (a) Reaction of the metal ion Al^{3+} with water to form the hydrated metal ion is an example of a Lewis acid–base reaction. (b) The positive charge on the aluminum ion attracts electron density from the oxygen atoms, which shifts electron density away from the O–H bonds. The decrease in electron density weakens the O–H bonds in the water molecules and makes it easier for them to lose a proton.

On the left is the reaction of Al three plus with six OH2 which produces [AL(H2O)6] three plus. On the right is the molecular structure of [Al(H2O)6] three plus.

The magnitude of this effect depends on the following two factors (Figure $5.9.2$):

1. The charge on the metal ion. A divalent ion (M^{2+}) has approximately twice as strong an effect on the electron density in a coordinated water molecule as a monovalent ion (M^+) of the same radius.
2. The radius of the metal ion. For metal ions with the same charge, the smaller the ion, the shorter the internuclear distance to the oxygen atom of the water molecule and the greater the effect of the metal on the electron density distribution in the water molecule.

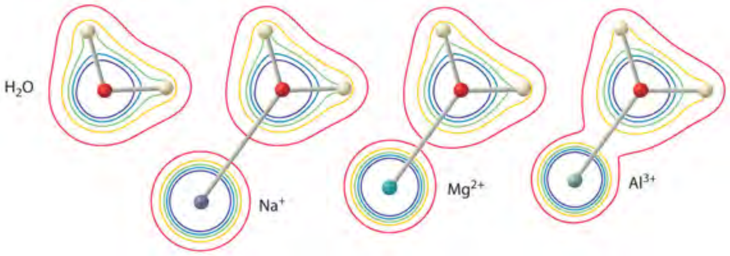


Figure $5.9.2$: The Effect of the Charge and Radius of a Metal Ion on the Acidity of a Coordinated Water Molecule. The contours show the electron density on the O atoms and the H atoms in both a free water molecule (left) and water molecules coordinated to Na^+, Mg^{2+}, and Al^{3+} ions. These contour maps demonstrate that the smallest, most highly charged metal ion (Al^{3+}) causes the greatest decrease in electron density of the O–H bonds of the water molecule. Due to this effect, the acidity of hydrated metal ions increases as the charge on the metal ion increases and its radius decreases.

Thus aqueous solutions of small, highly charged metal ions, such as Al^{3+} and Fe^{3+}, are acidic:

$$[Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+}_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons [Al(H_2O)_5(OH)]^{2+}_{(aq)} + H^+_{(aq)} \tag{5.9.3}$$

The $[Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ ion has a pK_a of 5.0, making it almost as strong an acid as acetic acid. Because of the two factors described previously, the most important parameter for predicting the effect of a metal ion on the acidity of coordinated water molecules is the charge-to-radius ratio of the metal ion. A number of pairs of metal ions that lie on a diagonal line in the periodic table, such as Li^+ and Mg^{2+} or Ca^{2+} and Y^{3+}, have different sizes and charges, but similar charge-to-radius ratios. As a result, these pairs of metal ions have similar effects on the acidity of coordinated water molecules, and they often exhibit other significant similarities in chemistry as well.

> *Solutions of small, highly charged metal ions in water are acidic.*

Reactions such as those discussed in this section, in which a salt reacts with water to give an acidic or basic solution, are often called hydrolysis reactions. Using a separate name for this type of reaction is unfortunate because it suggests that they are somehow different. In fact, hydrolysis reactions are just acid–base reactions in which the acid is a cation or the base is an anion; they obey the same principles and rules as all other acid–base reactions.

> *A hydrolysis reaction is an acid–base reaction.*

✓ Example $5.9.1$

Predict whether aqueous solutions of these compounds are acidic, basic, or neutral.

a. $\mathrm{KNO_3}$
b. $\mathrm{CrBr_3}cdot\mathrm{H_2O}$
c. $\mathrm{Na_2SO_4}$

Given: compound

Asked for: acidity or basicity of aqueous solution

Strategy:

A. Assess the acid–base properties of the cation and the anion. If the cation is a weak Lewis acid, it will not affect the pH of the solution. If the cation is the conjugate acid of a weak base or a relatively highly charged metal cation, however, it will react with water to produce an acidic solution.
B. f the anion is the conjugate base of a strong acid, it will not affect the pH of the solution. If, however, the anion is the conjugate base of a weak acid, the solution will be basic.

Solution:

a

A. The K^+ cation has a small positive charge (+1) and a relatively large radius (because it is in the fourth row of the periodic table), so it is a very weak Lewis acid.
B. The NO_3- anion is the conjugate base of a strong acid, so it has essentially no basic character (Table 16.1). Hence neither the cation nor the anion will react with water to produce H^+ or OH^-, and the solution will be neutral.

b.

A. The Cr^{3+} ion is a relatively highly charged metal cation that should behave similarly to the Al^{3+} ion and form the $[Cr(H2O)_6]^{3+}$ complex, which will behave as a weak acid:

$$Cr(H_2O)_6]^{3+}_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons Cr(H_2O)_5(OH)]^{2+}_{(aq)} + H^+_{(aq)}$$

B. The Br^- anion is a very weak base (it is the conjugate base of the strong acid HBr), so it does not affect the pH of the solution. Hence the solution will be acidic.

c.

A. The Na^+ ion, like the K^+, is a very weak acid, so it should not affect the acidity of the solution.

B. In contrast, SO_4^{2-} is the conjugate base of HSO_4^-, which is a weak acid. Hence the SO_4^{2-} ion will react with water as shown in Figure 16.6 to give a slightly basic solution.

Exercise 5.9.1

Predict whether aqueous solutions of the following are acidic, basic, or neutral.

a. KI
b. $Mg(ClO_4)_2$
c. $NaHS$

Answer a

neutral

Answer b

acidic

Answer c

basic (due to the reaction of $\mathrm{HS^-}$ with water to form $\mathrm{H_2S}$ and $\mathrm{OH^-}$)

Summary

A salt can dissolve in water to produce a neutral, a basic, or an acidic solution, depending on whether it contains the conjugate base of a weak acid as the anion (A^-), the conjugate acid of a weak base as the cation (BH^+), or both. Salts that contain small, highly charged metal ions produce acidic solutions in water. The reaction of a salt with water to produce an acidic or a basic solution is called a hydrolysis reaction.

Key Takeaways

- Acid–base reactions always contain two conjugate acid–base pairs.
- Each acid and each base has an associated ionization constant that corresponds to its acid or base strength.

5.10: Polyprotic Acids

Learning Objectives

- Extend previously introduced equilibrium concepts to acids and bases that may donate or accept more than one proton

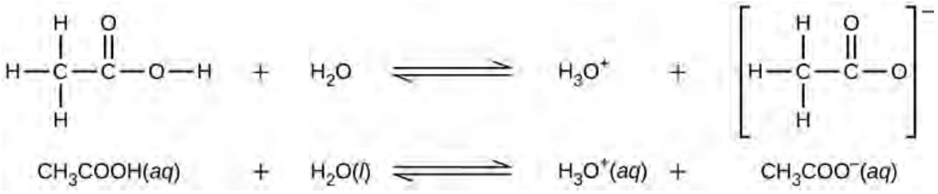
We can classify acids by the number of protons per molecule that they can give up in a reaction. Acids such as HCl, $\mathrm{HNO_3}$, and HCN that contain one ionizable hydrogen atom in each molecule are called monoprotic acids. Their reactions with water are:

$$\mathrm{HCl}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{HNO_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{NO_3^-}(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{HCN}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CN^-}(aq)$$

Even though it contains four hydrogen atoms, acetic acid, $\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}$, is also monoprotic because only the hydrogen atom from the carboxyl group ($-\mathrm{COOH}$) reacts with bases:



This image contains two equilibrium reactions. The first shows a C atom bonded to three H atoms and another C atom. The second C atom is double bonded to an O atom and also forms a single bond to another O atom. The second O atom is bonded to an H atom. There is a plus sign and then the molecular formula H subscript 2 O. An equilibrium arrow follows the H subscript 2 O. To the right of the arrow is H subscript 3 O superscript positive sign. There is a plus sign. The final structure shows a C atom bonded the three H atoms and another C atom. This second C atom is double bonded to an O atom and single bonded to another O atom. The entire structure is in brackets and a superscript negative sign appears outside the brackets. The second reaction shows C H subscript 3 C O O H (a q) plus H subscript 2 O (l) equilibrium arrow H subscript 3 O (a q) plus C H subscript 3 C O O superscript negative sign (a q).

Similarly, monoprotic bases are bases that will accept a single proton.

Diprotic Acids

Diprotic acids contain two ionizable hydrogen atoms per molecule; ionization of such acids occurs in two steps. The first ionization always takes place to a greater extent than the second ionization. For example, sulfuric acid, a strong acid, ionizes as follows:

- **The first ionization is**

$$\mathrm{H_2SO_4}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HSO_4^-}(aq)$$

with $K_{\mathrm{a1}} > 10^2;\ \textit{complete dissociation}$.

- **The second ionization is**

$$\mathrm{HSO_4^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{SO_4^{2-}}(aq)$$

with $K_{\mathrm{a2}} = 1.2 \times 10^{-2}$.

This stepwise ionization process occurs for all polyprotic acids. When we make a solution of a weak diprotic acid, we get a solution that contains a mixture of acids. Carbonic acid, $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$, is an example of a weak diprotic acid. The first ionization of carbonic acid yields hydronium ions and bicarbonate ions in small amounts.

- **First Ionization**

$$\mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq)$$

with

$$K_{H_2CO_3} = \frac{[H_3O^+][HCO_3^-]}{[H_2CO_3]} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7}$$

The bicarbonate ion can also act as an acid. It ionizes and forms hydronium ions and carbonate ions in even smaller quantities.

- **Second Ionization**

$$HCO_3^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + CO_3^{2-}(aq)$$

with

$$K_{HCO_3^-} = \frac{[H_3O^+][CO_3^{2-}]}{[HCO_3^-]} = 4.7 \times 10^{-11}$$

$K_{H_2CO_3}$ is larger than $K_{HCO_3^-}$ by a factor of 10^4, so H_2CO_3 is the dominant producer of hydronium ion in the solution. This means that little of the HCO_3^- formed by the ionization of H_2CO_3 ionizes to give hydronium ions (and carbonate ions), and the concentrations of H_3O^+ and HCO_3^- are practically equal in a pure aqueous solution of H_2CO_3.

If the first ionization constant of a weak diprotic acid is larger than the second by a factor of at least 20, it is appropriate to treat the first ionization separately and calculate concentrations resulting from it before calculating concentrations of species resulting from subsequent ionization. This can simplify our work considerably because we can determine the concentration of H_3O^+ and the conjugate base from the first ionization, then determine the concentration of the conjugate base of the second ionization in a solution with concentrations determined by the first ionization.

✓ Example 5.10.1: Ionization of a Diprotic Acid

When we buy soda water (carbonated water), we are buying a solution of carbon dioxide in water. The solution is acidic because CO_2 reacts with water to form carbonic acid, H_2CO_3. What are $[H_3O^+]$, $[HCO_3^-]$, and $[CO_3^{2-}]$ in a saturated solution of CO_2 with an initial $[H_2CO_3]$ = 0.033 *M*?

$$H_2CO_3(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + HCO_3^-(aq) \quad K_{a1} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7} \qquad \text{(equilibrium step 1)}$$

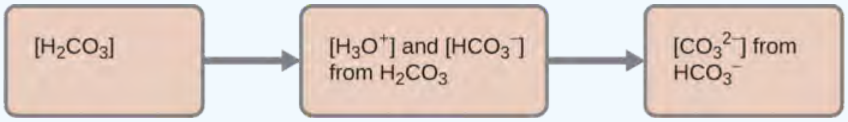
$$HCO_3^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + CO_3^{2-}(aq) \quad K_{a2} = 4.7 \times 10^{-11} \qquad \text{(equilibrium step 2)}$$

Solution

As indicated by the ionization constants, H_2CO_3 is a much stronger acid than HCO_3^-, so H_2CO_3 is the dominant producer of hydronium ion in solution. Thus there are two parts in the solution of this problem:

1. Using the customary four steps, we determine the concentration of H_3O^+ and HCO_3^- produced by ionization of H_2CO_3.
2. Then we determine the concentration of CO_3^{2-} in a solution with the concentration of H_3O^+ and HCO_3^- determined in (1).

To summarize:



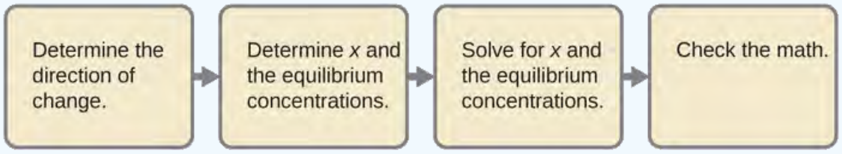
Four tan rectangles are shown that are connected with right pointing arrows. The first is labeled “left bracket H subscript 2 C O subscript 3 right bracket.” The second is labeled “left bracket H subscript 3 O superscript plus right bracket and left bracket H C O subscript 3 superscript negative right bracket from H subscript 2 C O subscript 3.” The third is labeled “left bracket C O subscript 3 superscript 2 negative right bracket from H C O subscript 3 superscript negative.”

1. First Ionization: Determine the concentrations of H_3O^+ *and* HCO_3^-.

Since equilibrium step 1 is has a much bigger $K_{a1} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7}$ than $K_{a2} = 4.7 \times 10^{-11}$ for equilibrium step 2, we can safely ignore the second ionization step and focus only on the first step (but address it in next part of problem).

$$H_2CO_3(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + HCO_3^-(aq) \quad K_{a1} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7}$$

As for the ionization of any other weak acid:



Four tan rectangles are shown that are connected with right pointing arrows. The first is labeled “Determine the direction of change.” The second is labeled “Determine x and the equilibrium concentrations.” The third is labeled “Solve for x and the equilibrium concentrations.” The fourth is labeled “Check the math.”

An abbreviated table of changes and concentrations shows:

Abbreviated table of changes and concentrations

ICE Table	$H_2CO_3(aq)$	$H_2O(l)$	$H_3O^+(aq)$	$HCO_3^-(aq)$
Initial (M)	$0.033\ M$	-	0	0
Change (M)	$-x$	-	$+x$	$+x$
Equilibrium (M)	$0.033\ M - x$	-	x	x

Substituting the equilibrium concentrations into the equilibrium constant gives us:

$$K_{H_2CO_3} = \frac{[H_3O^+][HCO_3^-]}{[H_2CO_3]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{0.033 - x} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7}$$

Solving the preceding equation making our standard assumptions gives:

$$x = 1.2 \times 10^{-4}$$

Thus:

$$[H_2CO_3] = 0.033\ M$$

$$[H_3O^+] = [HCO_3^-] = 1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$$

2. Second Ionization: Determine the concentration of CO_3^{2-} in a solution at equilibrium.

Since the equilibrium step 1 is has a much bigger K_a than equilibrium step 2, we can the equilibrium conditions calculated from first part of example as the initial conditions for an ICER Table for the equilibrium step 2:

$$HCO_3^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + CO_3^{2-}(aq)$$

ICER Table for the equilibrium step 2:

ICE Table	$HCO_3^-(aq)$	$H_2O(l)$	$H_3O^+(aq)$	$CO_3^{2-}(aq)$
Initial (M)	$1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$	-	$1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$	0
Change (M)	$-y$	-	$+y$	$+y$
Equilibrium (M)	$1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M - y$	-	$1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M + y$	y

$$\begin{aligned} K_{HCO_3^-} &= \frac{[H_3O^+][CO_3^{2-}]}{[HCO_3^-]} \\ &= \frac{(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M + y)(y)}{(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M - y)} \end{aligned}$$

To avoid solving a quadratic equation, we can assume $y \ll 1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$ so

$$K_{HCO_3^-} = 4.7 \times 10^{-11} \approx \frac{(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M)(y)}{(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M)}$$

Rearranging to solve for y

$$y \approx \frac{(4.7 \times 10^{-11})(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M)}{1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M}$$

$$[\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}] = y \approx 4.7 \times 10^{-11}$$

To summarize:

In part 1 of this example, we found that the $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$ in a 0.033-M solution ionizes slightly and at equilibrium $[\mathrm{H_2CO_3}] = 0.033\ M$, $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = 1.2 \times 10^{-4}$, and $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}] = 1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$. In part 2, we determined that $[\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}] = 5.6 \times 10^{-11}\ M$.

Exercise 5.10.2: Hydrogen Sulfide

The concentration of H_2S in a saturated aqueous solution at room temperature is approximately 0.1 M. Calculate $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$, $[\mathrm{HS^-}]$, and $[\mathrm{S^{2\ -}}]$ in the solution:

$$\mathrm{H_2S}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HS^-}(aq) \quad K_{\mathrm{a1}} = 8.9 \times 10^{-8}$$

$$\mathrm{HS^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{S^{2-}}(aq) \quad K_{\mathrm{a2}} = 1.0 \times 10^{-19}$$

Answer

$[\mathrm{H_2S}] = 0.1 M$, $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = [HS^-] = 0.0001\ M$, $[S^{2-}] = 1 \times 10^{-19}\ M$

We note that the concentration of the sulfide ion is the same as K_{a2}. This is due to the fact that each subsequent dissociation occurs to a lesser degree (as acid gets weaker).

Triprotic Acids

A triprotic acid is an acid that has three dissociable protons that undergo stepwise ionization: Phosphoric acid is a typical example:

- **The first ionization is**

$$\mathrm{H_3PO_4}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2PO_4^-}(aq)$$

with $K_{\mathrm{a1}} = 7.5 \times 10^{-3}$.

- **The second ionization is**

$$\mathrm{H_2PO_4^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HPO_4^{2-}}(aq)$$

with $K_{\mathrm{a2}} = 6.2 \times 10^{-8}$.

- **The third ionization is**

$$\mathrm{HPO_4^{2-}}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}(aq)$$

with $K_{\mathrm{a3}} = 4.2 \times 10^{-13}$.

As with the diprotic acids, the differences in the ionization constants of these reactions tell us that in each successive step the degree of ionization is significantly weaker. This is a general characteristic of polyprotic acids and successive ionization constants often differ by a factor of about 10^5 to 10^6. This set of three dissociation reactions may appear to make calculations of equilibrium concentrations in a solution of H_3PO_4 complicated. However, because the successive ionization constants differ by a factor of 10^5 to 10^6, the calculations can be broken down into a series of parts similar to those for diprotic acids.

Polyprotic bases can accept more than one hydrogen ion in solution. The carbonate ion is an example of a diprotic base, since it can accept up to two protons. Solutions of alkali metal carbonates are quite alkaline, due to the reactions:

$$\mathrm{H_2O}(l) + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

and

$$H_2O(l) + HCO_3^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

Summary

An acid that contains more than one ionizable proton is a polyprotic acid. The protons of these acids ionize in steps. The differences in the acid ionization constants for the successive ionizations of the protons in a polyprotic acid usually vary by roughly five orders of magnitude. As long as the difference between the successive values of K_a of the acid is greater than about a factor of 20, it is appropriate to break down the calculations of the concentrations of the ions in solution into a series of steps.

Glossary

diprotic acid

acid containing two ionizable hydrogen atoms per molecule. A diprotic acid ionizes in two steps

diprotic base

base capable of accepting two protons. The protons are accepted in two steps

monoprotic acid

acid containing one ionizable hydrogen atom per molecule

stepwise ionization

process in which an acid is ionized by losing protons sequentially

triprotic acid

acid that contains three ionizable hydrogen atoms per molecule; ionization of triprotic acids occurs in three steps

---

5.11: Lewis Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

Make sure you thoroughly understand the following essential ideas which have been presented above. It is especially important that you know the precise meanings of all the highlighted terms in the context of this topic.

- Write the equation for the proton transfer reaction involving a Brønsted-Lowry acid or base, and show how it can be interpreted as an electron-pair transfer reaction, clearly identifying the donor and acceptor.
- Give an example of a *Lewis acid-base reaction* that does not involve protons.
- Write equations illustrating the behavior of a given non-aqueous acid-base system.

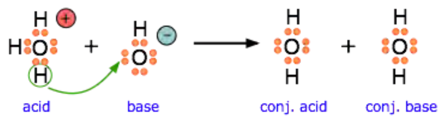
The Brønsted-Lowry proton donor-acceptor concept has been one of the most successful theories of Chemistry. But as with any such theory, it is fair to ask if this is not just a special case of a more general theory that could encompass an even broader range of chemical science. In 1916, G.N. Lewis of the University of California proposed that the *electron pair* is the dominant actor in acid-base chemistry. The Lewis theory did not become very well known until about 1923 (the same year that Brønsted and Lowry published their work), but since then it has been recognized as a very powerful tool for describing chemical reactions of widely different kinds and is widely used in organic and inorganic chemistry. According to Lewis,

- An *acid* is a substance that **accepts** a pair of electrons, and in doing so, forms a covalent bond with the entity that supplies the electrons.
- A *base* is a substance that **donates** an unshared pair of electrons to a recipient species with which the electrons can be shared.

> *In modern chemistry, electron donors are often referred to as nucleophiles, while acceptors are electrophiles.*

Proton-Transfer Reactions Involve Electron-Pair Transfer

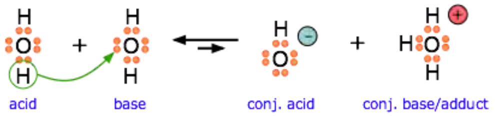
Just as any Arrhenius acid is also a Brønsted acid, any Brønsted acid is also a Lewis acid, so the various acid-base concepts are all "upward compatible". Although we do not really need to think about electron-pair transfers when we deal with ordinary aqueous-solution acid-base reactions, it is important to understand that it is the opportunity for electron-pair sharing that enables proton transfer to take place.



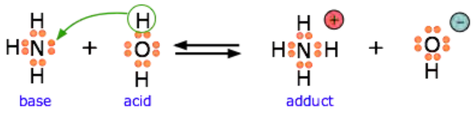
This equation for a simple acid-base neutralization shows how the Brønsted and Lewis definitions are really just different views of the same process. Take special note of the following points:

- The arrow shows the movement of a proton from the hydronium ion to the hydroxide ion.
- Note carefully that the electron-pairs themselves do not move; they remain attached to their central atoms. The electron pair on the base is "donated" to the acceptor (the proton) only in the sense that it ends up being *shared* with the acceptor, rather than being the exclusive property of the oxygen atom in the hydroxide ion.
- Although the hydronium ion is the nominal Lewis acid here, it does not itself accept an electron pair, but acts merely as the source of the proton that coordinates with the Lewis base.

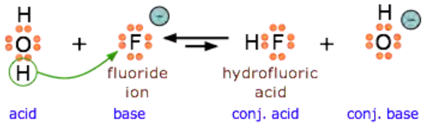
The point about the electron-pair remaining on the donor species is especially important to bear in mind. For one thing, it distinguishes a *Lewis acid-base reaction* from an *oxidation-reduction reaction*, in which a physical transfer of one or more electrons from donor to acceptor does occur. The product of a Lewis acid-base reaction is known formally as an "adduct" or "complex", although we do not ordinarily use these terms for simple proton-transfer reactions such as the one in the above example. Here, the proton combines with the hydroxide ion to form the "adduct" H_2O. The following examples illustrate these points for some other proton-transfer reactions that you should already be familiar with.



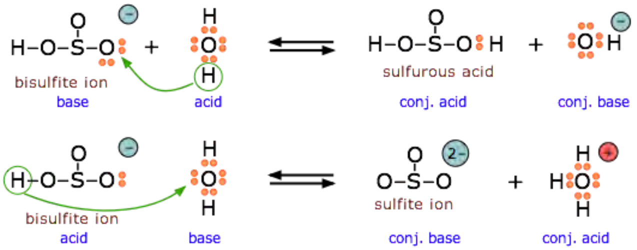
Another example, showing the autoprotolysis of water. Note that the conjugate base is also the adduct.



Ammonia is both a Brønsted and a Lewis base, owing to the unshared electron pair on the nitrogen. The reverse of this reaction represents the *hydrolysis* of the ammonium ion.



Because HF is a weak acid, fluoride salts behave as bases in aqueous solution. As a Lewis base, F^- accepts a proton from water, which is transformed into a hydroxide ion.



The bisulfite ion is *amphiprotic* and can act as an electron donor or acceptor.

Acid-base Reactions without Transferring Protons

The major utility of the Lewis definition is that it extends the concept of acids and bases beyond the realm of proton transfer reactions. The classic example is the reaction of boron trifluoride with ammonia to form an *adduct*:

$$BF_3 + NH_3 \rightarrow F_3B{-}NH_3 \tag{5.11.1}$$

One of the most commonly-encountered kinds of Lewis acid-base reactions occurs when electron-donating ligands form coordination complexes with transition-metal ions.

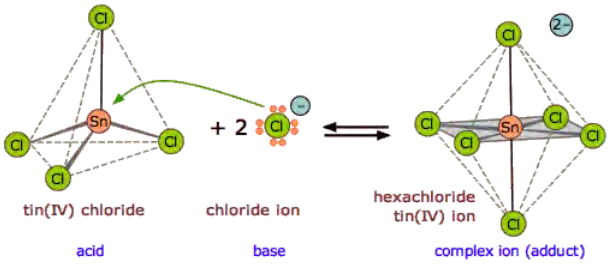


Figure 5.11.1: The tin atom in $SnCl_4$ can expand its valence shell by utilizing a pair of d-orbitals, changing its hybridization from sp^3 to sp^3d^2.

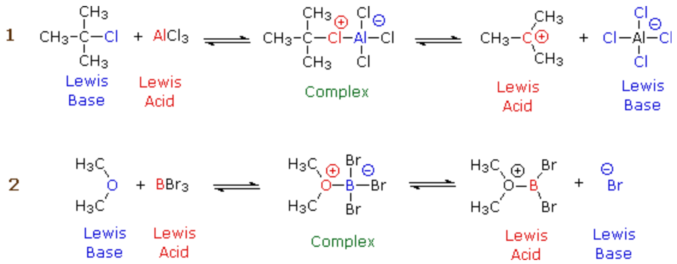
? Exercise 5.11.1

Here are several more examples of Lewis acid-base reactions that **cannot** be accommodated within the Brønsted or Arrhenius models. Identify the Lewis acid and Lewis base in each reaction.

a. $Al(OH)_3 + OH^- \rightarrow Al(OH)_4{}^-$

b. $\mathrm{SnS_2 + S^{2-} \rightarrow SnS_3^{2-}}$
c. $\mathrm{Cd(CN)_2 + 2\,CN- \rightarrow Cd(CN)_4^{2+}}$
d. $\mathrm{AgCl + 2\,NH_3 \rightarrow Ag(NH_3)_2^+ + Cl-}$
e. $\mathrm{Fe^{2+} + NO \rightarrow Fe(NO)^{2+}}$
f. $\mathrm{Ni^{2+} + 6\,NH_3 \rightarrow Ni(NH_3)_5^{2+}}$

Although organic chemistry is beyond the scope of these lessons, it is instructive to see how electron donors and acceptors play a role in chemical reactions. The following two diagrams show the mechanisms of two common types of reactions initiated by simple inorganic Lewis acids:



In each case, the species labeled "Complex" is an intermediate that decomposes into the products, which are conjugates of the original acid and base pairs. The electric charges indicated in the complexes are formal charges, but those in the products are "real".

In reaction 1, the incomplete octet of the aluminum atom in $\mathrm{AlCl_3}$ serves as a better electron acceptor to the chlorine atom than does the isobutyl part of the base. In reaction 2, the pair of non-bonding electrons on the dimethyl ether coordinates with the electron-deficient boron atom, leading to a complex that breaks down by releasing a bromide ion.

Non-aqueous Protonic Acid-Base Systems

We ordinarily think of Brønsted-Lowry acid-base reactions as taking place in aqueous solutions, but this need not always be the case. A more general view encompasses a variety of acid-base *solvent systems*, of which the *water system* is only one (Table 5.11.1). Each of these has as its basis an amphiprotic solvent (one capable of undergoing autoprotolysis), in parallel with the familiar case of water.

The ammonia system is one of the most common non-aqueous system in Chemistry. Liquid ammonia boils at –33° C, and can conveniently be maintained as a liquid by cooling with dry ice (–77° C). It is a good solvent for substances that also dissolve in water, such as ionic salts and organic compounds since it is capable of forming hydrogen bonds. However, many other familiar substances can also serve as the basis of protonic solvent systems as Table 5.11.1indicates:

Table 5.11.1: Popular Solvent systems

solvent	**autoprotolysis reaction**	**pK_{ap}**
water	$2\,H_2O \rightarrow H_3O^+ + OH^-$	14
ammonia	$2\,NH_3 \rightarrow NH_4^+ + NH_2^-$	33
acetic acid	$2\,CH_3COOH \rightarrow CH_3COOH_2^+ + CH_3COO^-$	13
ethanol	$2\,C_2H_5OH \rightarrow C_2H_5OH_2^+ + C_2H_5O^-$	19
hydrogen peroxide	$2\,HO\text{-}OH \rightarrow HO\text{-}OH_2^+ + HO\text{-}O^-$	13
hydrofluoric acid	$2\,HF \rightarrow H_2F^+ + F^-$	10
sulfuric acid	$2\,H_2SO_4 \rightarrow H_3SO_4^+ + HSO_{4^-}$	3.5

One use of nonaqueous acid-base systems is to examine the relative strengths of the strong acids and bases, whose strengths are "leveled" by the fact that they are all totally converted into H_3O^+ or OH^- ions in water. By studying them in appropriate non-aqueous solvents which are poorer acceptors or donors of protons, their relative strengths can be determined.

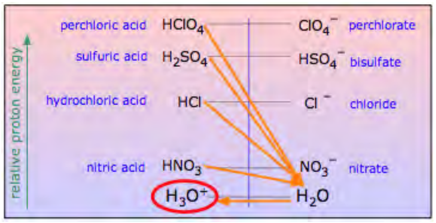


Figure 5.11.2: Use of non-aqueous solvents allows the study of strong acids that are hindered by the "leveling" of the solvent.

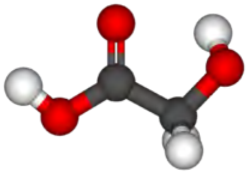
5.12: The Danger of Antifreeze

An antifreeze is an additive which lowers the freezing point of a water-based liquid. An antifreeze mixture is used to achieve freezing-point depression for cold environments and also achieves boiling-point elevation to allow higher coolant temperature. Freezing and boiling points are colligative properties of a solution, which depend on the concentration of the dissolved substance. Because water has good properties as a coolant, water plus antifreeze is used in internal combustion engines and other heat transfer applications. The purpose of antifreeze is to prevent a rigid enclosure from bursting due to expansion when water freezes. Commercially, both the additive (pure concentrate) and the mixture (diluted solution) are called antifreeze, depending on the context. Careful selection of an antifreeze can enable a wide temperature range in which the mixture remains in the liquid phase, which is critical to efficient heat transfer and the proper functioning of heat exchangers.

Fluorescent green-dyed antifreeze is visible in the radiator header tank when car radiator cap is removed. (CC BY-SA 2.0; EvelynGiggles)

Ethylene glycol solutions became available in 1926 and were marketed as "permanent antifreeze" since the higher boiling points provided advantages for summertime use as well as during cold weather. They are used today for a variety of applications, including automobiles, but gradually being replaced by propylene glycol due to its lower toxicity.

When ethylene glycol is used in a system, it may become oxidized to five organic acids (formic, oxalic, glycolic, glyoxalic and acetic acid). Inhibited ethylene glycol antifreeze mixes are available, with additives that buffer the pH and reserve alkalinity of the solution to prevent oxidation of ethylene glycol and formation of these acids. Nitrites, silicates, theodin, borates and azoles may also be used to prevent corrosive attack on metal.



Glycolic acid is the major metabolite of ethylene glycol responsible for toxicity. (Public Domain).

Ethylene glycol is poisonous to humans and other animals,[4][5] and should be handled carefully and disposed of properly. Its sweet taste can lead to accidental ingestion or allow its deliberate use as a murder weapon.[6][7][8] Ethylene glycol is difficult to detect in the body, and causes symptoms—including intoxication, severe diarrhea, and vomiting—that can be confused with other illnesses or diseases.[4][8] Its metabolism produces calcium oxalate, which crystallizes in the brain, heart, lungs, and kidneys, damaging them; depending on the level of exposure, accumulation of the poison in the body can last weeks or months before causing death, but death by acute kidney failure can result within 72 hours if the individual does not receive appropriate medical treatment for the poisoning.[4] Some ethylene glycol antifreeze mixtures contain an embittering agent, such as denatonium, to discourage accidental or deliberate consumption.

The toxic mechanism of ethylene glycol poisoning is mainly due to the metabolites of ethylene glycol. Initially it is metabolized by alcohol dehydrogenase to glycolaldehyde, which is then oxidized to glycolic acid.[7] The increase in metabolites may cause encephalopathy or cerebral edema.[13] The metabolic effects occur 12 to 36 hours post ingestion, causing primarily metabolic acidosis which is due mainly to accumulated glycolic acid. Additionally, as a side effect of the first two steps of metabolism, an increase in the blood concentration of lactic acid occurs contributing to lactic acidosis. The formation of acid metabolites also causes inhibition of other metabolic pathways, such as oxidative phosphorylation.[7]

The kidney toxicity of ethylene glycol occurs 24 to 72 hours post ingestion and is caused by a direct cytotoxic effect of glycolic acid. The glycolic acid is then metabolized to glyoxylic acid and finally to oxalic acid. Oxalic acid binds with calcium to form calcium oxalate crystals which may deposit and cause damage to many areas of the body including the brain, heart, kidneys, and lungs.[7] The most significant effect is accumulation of calcium oxalate crystals in the kidneys which causes kidney damage leading to oliguric or anuric acute kidney failure.[7] The rate-limiting step in this cascade is the conversion of glycolic to glyoxylic acid.[14] Accumulation of glycolic acid in the body is mainly responsible for toxicity.[15]

5.13: Buffers- Solutions That Resist pH Change

Learning Objectives

- Recognize common ions from various salts, acids, and bases.
- Calculate concentrations involving common ions.
- Calculate ion concentrations involving chemical equilibrium.

The common-ion effect is used to describe the effect on an equilibrium involving a substance that adds an ion that is a part of the equilibrium.

Introduction

The solubility products K_{sp}'s are equilibrium constants in heterogeneous equilibria (i.e., between two different phases). If several salts are present in a system, they all ionize in the solution. If the salts contain a common cation or anion, these salts contribute to the concentration of the common ion. Contributions from all salts must be included in the calculation of concentration of the common ion. For example, a solution containing sodium chloride and potassium chloride will have the following relationship:

$$[\mathrm{Na^+}] + [\mathrm{K^+}] = [\mathrm{Cl^-}] \tag{5.13.1}$$

Consideration of *charge balance* or *mass balance* or both leads to the same conclusion.

Common Ions

When NaCl and KCl are dissolved in the same solution, the $\mathrm{Cl^-}$ ions are *common* to both salts. In a system containing NaCl and KCl, the $\mathrm{Cl^-}$ ions are common ions.

$$\mathrm{NaCl \rightleftharpoons Na^+ + Cl^-}$$

$$\mathrm{KCl \rightleftharpoons K^+ + Cl^-}$$

$$\mathrm{CaCl_2 \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+} + 2Cl^-}$$

$$\mathrm{AlCl_3 \rightleftharpoons Al^{3+} + 3Cl^-}$$

$$\mathrm{AgCl \rightleftharpoons Ag^+ + Cl^-}$$

For example, when AgCl is dissolved into a solution already containing NaCl (actually $\mathrm{Na^+}$ and $\mathrm{Cl^-}$ ions), the $\mathrm{Cl^-}$ ions come from the ionization of both AgCl and NaCl. Thus, $[\mathrm{Cl^-}]$ differs from $[\mathrm{Ag^+}]$. The following examples show how the concentration of the common ion is calculated.

Example 5.13.1

What are $[\mathrm{Na^+}]$, $[\mathrm{Cl^-}]$, $[\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}]$, and $[\mathrm{H^+}]$ in a solution containing 0.10 M each of NaCl, $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$, and HCl?

Solution

Due to the conservation of ions, we have

$$[\mathrm{Na^+}] = [\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}] = [\mathrm{H^+}] = 0.10\ \mathrm{M}$$

but

$$\begin{aligned}[\mathrm{Cl^-}] =\ & 0.10 \text{ (due to NaCl)} \\ & + 0.20 \text{ (due to CaCl}_2\text{)} \\ & + 0.10 \text{ (due to HCl)} \\ =\ & 0.40\ \mathrm{M}\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 5.13.1

John poured 10.0 mL of 0.10 M NaCl, 10.0 mL of 0.10 M KOH, and 5.0 mL of 0.20 M HCl solutions together and then he made the total volume to be 100.0 mL. What is $[\mathrm{Cl^-}]$ in the final solution?

Solution

$$[\mathrm{Cl^-}] = \dfrac{0.1\ \mathrm{M} \times 10\ \mathrm{mL} + 0.2\ \mathrm{M} \times 5.0\ \mathrm{mL}}{100.0\ \mathrm{mL}} = 0.020\ \mathrm{M}$$

Le Châtelier's Principle states that if an equilibrium becomes unbalanced, the reaction will shift to restore the balance. If a common ion is added to a weak acid or weak base equilibrium, then the equilibrium will shift towards the reactants, in this case the weak acid or base.

Example 5.13.2: Solubility of Lead Chloride

Consider the lead(II) ion concentration in this *saturated* solution of $\mathrm{PbCl_2}$. The balanced reaction is

$$PbCl_{2(s)} \rightleftharpoons Pb^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2Cl^-_{(aq)}$$

Defining s as the concentration of dissolved lead(II) chloride, then:

$$[Pb^{2+}] = s$$

$$[Cl^-] = 2s$$

These values can be substituted into the solubility product expression, which can be solved for s:

$$
\begin{aligned}
K_{sp} &= [Pb^{2+}][Cl^{-}]^2 && (5.13.2)\\
&= s \times (2s)^2 && (5.13.3)\\
1.7 \times 10^{-5} &= 4s^3 && (5.13.4)\\
s^3 &= \frac{1.7 \times 10^{-5}}{4} && (5.13.5)\\
&= 4.25 \times 10^{-6} && (5.13.6)\\
s &= \sqrt[3]{4.25 \times 10^{-6}} && (5.13.7)\\
&= 1.62 \times 10^{-2}\ mol\ dm^{-3} && (5.13.8)
\end{aligned}
$$

The concentration of lead(II) ions in the solution is 1.62 x 10^{-2} M. Consider what happens if sodium chloride is added to this saturated solution. Sodium chloride shares an ion with lead(II) chloride. The chloride ion is **common** to both of them; this is the origin of the term "common ion effect".

Look at the original equilibrium expression again:

$$PbCl_2\ (s) \rightleftharpoons Pb^{2+}\ (aq) + 2Cl^{-}\ (aq)$$

What happens to that equilibrium if extra chloride ions are added? According to *Le* Châtelier, the position of equilibrium will shift to counter the change, in this case, by removing the chloride ions by making extra solid lead(II) chloride.

Of course, the concentration of lead(II) ions in the solution is so small that only a tiny proportion of the extra chloride ions can be converted into solid lead(II) chloride. The lead(II) chloride becomes even *less soluble*, and the concentration of lead(II) ions in the solution *decreases*. This type of response occurs with any sparingly soluble substance: it is less soluble in a solution which contains any ion which it has in common. This is the common ion effect.

✓ Example 5.13.3

If an attempt is made to dissolve some lead(II) chloride in some 0.100 M sodium chloride solution instead of in water, what is the equilibrium concentration of the lead(II) ions this time? As before, define s to be the concentration of the lead(II) ions.

$$[Pb^{2+}] = s \tag{5.13.9}$$

The calculations are different from before. This time the concentration of the chloride ions is governed by the concentration of the sodium chloride solution. The number of ions coming from the lead(II) chloride is going to be tiny compared with the 0.100 M coming from the sodium chloride solution.

In calculations like this, it can be assumed that the concentration of the common ion is entirely due to the other solution. This simplifies the calculation.

So we assume:

$$[Cl^{-}] = 0.100\ M \tag{5.13.10}$$

The rest of the mathematics looks like this:

$$
\begin{aligned}
K_{sp} &= [Pb^{2+}][Cl^{-}]^2\\
&= s \times (0.100)^2\\
1.7 \times 10^{-5} &= s \times 0.00100
\end{aligned}
$$

therefore:

$$
\begin{aligned}
s &= \frac{1.7 \times 10^{-5}}{0.0100}\\
&= 1.7 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M}
\end{aligned}
\tag{5.13.11}
$$

Finally, compare that value with the simple saturated solution:

Original solution:

$$[Pb^{2+}] = 0.0162\ M \tag{5.13.12}$$

Solution in 0.100 M NaCl solution:

$$[Pb^{2+}] = 0.0017\ M \tag{5.13.13}$$

The concentration of the lead(II) ions has decreased by a factor of about 10. If more concentrated solutions of sodium chloride are used, the solubility decreases further.

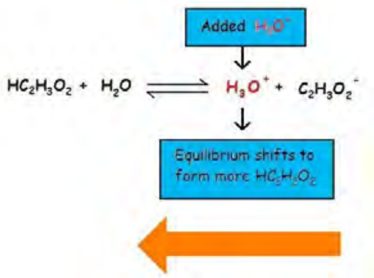
A Video Discussing Finding the Solubility of a Salt: Finding the Solubility of a Salt(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Common Ion Effect with Weak Acids and Bases

Adding a common ion prevents the weak acid or weak base from ionizing as much as it would without the added common ion. The common ion effect suppresses the ionization of a weak acid by adding more of an ion that is a product of this equilibrium.

> *Adding a common ion to a system at equilibrium affects the equilibrium composition, but not the ionization constant.*

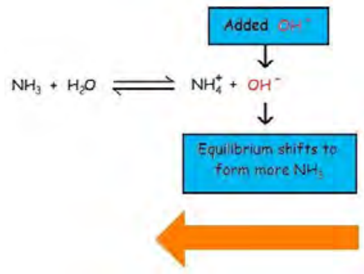
The common ion effect of H_3O^+ on the ionization of acetic acid



HC2H3O2 reactions with H2O to produce H3O plus and C2H3 O2 minus. If more H3O plus is added to the reaction, the equilibrium would shift to form more HC2H3O2.

When a strong acid supplies the common ion H_3O^+ the equilibrium shifts to form more $HC_2H_3O_2$.

The common ion effect suppresses the ionization of a weak base by adding more of an ion that is a product of this equilibrium. Now consider the common ion effect of OH^- on the ionization of ammonia



When a strong base supplies the common ion OH^- the equilibrium shifts to form more NH_3.

NH3 reacts with H2 O to produce NH4 plus and OH minus. If more OH minus is added to the reaction, the equilibrium would shifts to form more NH3.

Adding the common ion of hydroxide shifts the reaction towards the left to decrease the stress (in accordance with Le Chatelier's Principle), forming more reactants. This decreases the reaction quotient, because the reaction is being pushed towards the left to reach equilibrium. The equilibrium constant, $K_b = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$, does not change. The reaction is put out of balance, or equilibrium.

$$Q_a = \frac{[NH_4^+][OH^-]}{[NH_3]}$$

At first, when more hydroxide is added, the quotient is greater than the equilibrium constant. The reaction then shifts right, causing the denominator to increase, decreasing the reaction quotient and pulling towards equilibrium and causing Q to decrease towards K.

Common Ion Effect on Solubility

When a slightly soluble ionic compound is added to water, some of it dissolves to form a solution, establishing an equilibrium between the pure solid and a solution of its ions. For the dissolution of calcium phosphate, one of the two main components of kidney stones, the equilibrium can be written as follows, with the solid salt on the left:

$$Ca_3(PO_4)_2(s) \rightleftharpoons 3\,Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2\,PO_4^{3-}(aq) \tag{5.13.14}$$

As you will discover in more advanced chemistry courses, basic anions, such as S^{2-}, PO_4^{3-}, and CO_3^{2-}, react with water to produce OH^- and the corresponding protonated anion. Consequently, their calculated molarities, assuming no protonation in aqueous solution, are only approximate. The equilibrium constant for the dissolution of a sparingly soluble salt is the **solubility product (K_{sp})** of the salt. Because the concentration of a pure solid such as $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ is a constant, it does not appear explicitly in the equilibrium constant expression. The equilibrium constant expression for the dissolution of calcium phosphate is therefore

$$K = \frac{[Ca^{2+}]^3[PO_4^{3-}]^2}{[Ca_3(PO_4)_2]} \tag{5.13.15}$$

$$[Ca_3(PO_4)_2]K = K_{sp} = [Ca^{2+}]^3[PO_4^{3-}]^2 \tag{5.13.16}$$

At 25°C and pH 7.00, K_{sp} for calcium phosphate is 2.07×10^{-33}, indicating that the concentrations of Ca^{2+} and PO_4^{3-} ions in solution that are in equilibrium with solid calcium phosphate are very low. The values of K_{sp} for some common salts vary dramatically for different compounds (Table E3). Although K_{sp} is not a function of pH in Equation 5.13.15, changes in pH can affect the solubility of a compound.

The solubility product expression tells us that the equilibrium concentrations of the cation and the anion are inversely related. That is, as the concentration of the anion increases, the maximum concentration of the cation needed for precipitation to occur decreases—and vice versa—so that K_{sp} is constant. **Consequently, the solubility of an ionic compound depends on the concentrations of other salts that contain the same ions.** This dependency is another example of the common ion effect where adding a common cation or anion shifts a solubility equilibrium in the direction predicted by Le Chatelier's principle. As a result, the solubility of any sparingly soluble salt is almost always decreased by the presence of a soluble salt that contains a common ion.

Consider, for example, the effect of adding a soluble salt, such as $CaCl_2$, to a saturated solution of calcium phosphate [$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$]. We have seen that the solubility of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in water at 25°C is 1.14×10^{-7} M ($K_{sp} = 2.07 \times 10^{-33}$). Thus a saturated solution of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in water contains

- $3 \times (1.14 \times 10^{-7}\ M) = 3.42 \times 10^{-7} M\ of\ Ca^{2+}$
- $2 \times (1.14 \times 10^{-7} M) = 2.28 \times 10^{-7} M\ of\ PO_4^{3-}$

according to the stoichiometry shown in Equation 5.13.15(neglecting hydrolysis to form HPO_4^{2-}). If $CaCl_2$ is added to a saturated solution of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, the Ca^{2+} ion concentration will increase such that $[Ca^{2+}] > 3.42 \times 10^{-7}$ M, making $Q > K_{sp}$. The only way the system can return to equilibrium is for the reaction in Equation 5.13.15to proceed to the left, resulting in precipitation of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$. This will decrease the concentration of both Ca^{2+} and PO_4^{3-} until $Q = K_{sp}$.

Note

Adding a common ion decreases solubility, as the reaction shifts toward the left to relieve the stress of the excess product. Adding a common ion to a dissociation reaction causes the equilibrium to shift left, toward the reactants, causing precipitation.

Example 5.13.5

Consider the reaction:

$$PbCl_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Pb^{2+}(aq) + 2Cl^-(aq)$$

What happens to the solubility of $PbCl_2(s)$ when 0.1 M NaCl is added?

Solution

$$K_{sp} = 1.7 \times 10^{-5}$$

$$Q_{sp} = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$

Identify the common ion: Cl^-

Notice: $Q_{sp} > K_{sp}$ The addition of NaCl has caused the reaction to shift out of equilibrium because there are more dissociated ions. Typically, solving for the molarities requires the assumption that the solubility of $PbCl_2$ is equivalent to the concentration of Pb^{2+} produced because they are in a 1:1 ratio.

Because K_{sp} for the reaction is 1.7×10^{-5}, the overall reaction would be $(s)(2s)^2 = 1.7\times10^{-5}$. Solving the equation for s gives $s = 1.62\times10^{-2}$ M. The coefficient on Cl^- is 2, so it is assumed that twice as much Cl^- is produced as Pb^{2+}, hence the '2s.' The solubility equilibrium constant can be used to solve for the molarities of the ions at equilibrium.

The molarity of Cl^- added would be 0.1 M because Na^+ and Cl^- are in a 1:1 ration in the ionic salt, NaCl. Therefore, the overall molarity of Cl^- would be 2s + 0.1, with 2s referring to the contribution of the chloride ion from the dissociation of lead chloride.

$$\begin{align} Q_{sp} &= [Pb^{2+}][Cl^-]^2 \tag{5.13.17} \\ 1.8 \times 10^{-5} &= (s)(2s + 0.1)^2 \tag{5.13.18} \\ s &= [Pb^{2+}] \tag{5.13.19} \\ &= 1.8 \times 10^{-3} M \tag{5.13.20} \\ 2s &= [Cl^-] \tag{5.13.21} \\ &\approx 0.1 M \tag{5.13.22} \end{align}$$

Notice that the molarity of Pb^{2+} is lower when NaCl is added. The equilibrium constant remains the same because of the increased concentration of the chloride ion. To simplify the reaction, it can be assumed that $[Cl^-]$ is approximately 0.1M since the formation of the chloride ion from the dissociation of lead chloride is so small. The reaction quotient for $PbCl_2$ is greater than the equilibrium constant because of the added Cl^-. This therefore shift the reaction left towards equilibrium, causing precipitation and lowering the current solubility of the reaction. Overall, the solubility of the reaction decreases with the added sodium chloride.

Exercise 5.13.5

Calculate the solubility of silver carbonate in a 0.25 M solution of sodium carbonate. The solubility of silver carbonate in pure water is 8.45×10^{-12} at 25°C.

Answer

2.9×10^{-6} M (versus 1.3×10^{-4} M in pure water)

A Video Discussing the Common Ion Effect in Solubility Products: The Common Ion Effect in Solubility Products (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

References

1. Harwood, William S., F. G. Herring, Jeffry D. Madura, and Ralph H. Petrucci. General Chemistry Principles and Modern Applications. 9th ed. New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 2007.

Contributors and Attributions

- Emmellin Tung, Mahtab Danai (UCD)
- Jim Clark (ChemGuide)
- Chung (Peter) Chieh (Professor Emeritus, Chemistry @ University of Waterloo)

Learning Objectives

- To understand how adding a common ion affects the position of an acid–base equilibrium.
- To know how to use the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation to calculate the pH of a buffer.

Buffers are solutions that maintain a relatively constant pH when an acid or a base is added. They therefore protect, or "buffer," other molecules in solution from the effects of the added acid or base. Buffers contain either a weak acid (HA) and its conjugate base (A^-) or a weak base (B) and its conjugate acid (BH^+), and they are critically important for the proper functioning of biological systems. In fact, every biological fluid is buffered to maintain its physiological pH.

The Common Ion Effect: Weak Acids Combined with Conjugate Bases

To understand how buffers work, let's look first at how the ionization equilibrium of a weak acid is affected by adding either the conjugate base of the acid or a strong acid (a source of $\mathrm{H^+}$). Le Chatelier's principle can be used to predict the effect on the equilibrium position of the solution. A typical buffer used in biochemistry laboratories contains acetic acid and a salt such as sodium acetate. The dissociation reaction of acetic acid is as follows:

$$\mathrm{CH_3COOH(aq) \rightleftharpoons CH_3COO^-(aq) + H^+(aq)} \tag{5.13.23}$$

and the equilibrium constant expression is as follows:

$$K_a = \frac{\mathrm{[H^+][CH_3COO^-]}}{\mathrm{[CH_3CO_2H]}} \tag{5.13.24}$$

Sodium acetate ($\mathrm{CH_3CO_2Na}$) is a strong electrolyte that ionizes completely in aqueous solution to produce $\mathrm{Na^+}$ and $\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}$ ions. If sodium acetate is added to a solution of acetic acid, Le Chatelier's principle predicts that the equilibrium in Equation 5.13.23will shift to the left, consuming some of the added $\mathrm{CH_3COO^-}$ and some of the $\mathrm{H^+}$ ions originally present in solution.

Because $\mathrm{Na^+}$ is a **spectator ion**, it has no effect on the position of the equilibrium and can be ignored. The addition of sodium acetate produces a new equilibrium composition, in which $\mathrm{[H^+]}$ is less than the initial value. Because $\mathrm{[H^+]}$ has decreased, the pH will be higher. Thus adding a salt of the conjugate base to a solution of a weak acid increases the pH. This makes sense because sodium acetate is a base, and adding any base to a solution of a weak acid should increase the pH.

If we instead add a strong acid such as HCl to the system, $\mathrm{[H^+]}$ increases. Once again the equilibrium is temporarily disturbed, but the excess $\mathrm{H^+}$ ions react with the conjugate base ($\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}$), whether from the parent acid or sodium acetate, to drive the equilibrium to the left. The net result is a new equilibrium composition that has a lower $\mathrm{[CH_3CO_2^-]}$ than before. In both cases, only the equilibrium composition has changed; the ionization constant K_a for acetic acid remains the same. Adding a strong electrolyte that contains one ion in common with a reaction system that is at equilibrium, in this case $\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}$, will therefore shift the equilibrium in the direction that reduces the concentration of the common ion. The shift in equilibrium is via the common ion effect.

> *Adding a common ion to a system at equilibrium affects the equilibrium composition, but not the ionization constant.*

Example 5.13.1

A 0.150 M solution of formic acid at 25°C (pKa = 3.75) has a pH of 2.28 and is 3.5% ionized.

a. Is there a change to the pH of the solution if enough solid sodium formate is added to make the final formate concentration 0.100 M (assume that the formic acid concentration does not change)?
b. What percentage of the formic acid is ionized if 0.200 M HCl is added to the system?

Given: solution concentration and pH, pK_a, and percent ionization of acid; final concentration of conjugate base or strong acid added

Asked for: pH and percent ionization of formic acid

Strategy:

A. Write a balanced equilibrium equation for the ionization equilibrium of formic acid. Tabulate the initial concentrations, the changes, and the final concentrations.
B. Substitute the expressions for the final concentrations into the expression for Ka. Calculate $\mathrm{[H^+]}$ and the pH of the solution.
C. Construct a table of concentrations for the dissociation of formic acid. To determine the percent ionization, determine the anion concentration, divide it by the initial concentration of formic acid, and multiply the result by 100.

Solution:

A Because sodium formate is a strong electrolyte, it ionizes completely in solution to give formate and sodium ions. The $\mathrm{Na^+}$ ions are spectator ions, so they can be ignored in the equilibrium equation. Because water is both a much weaker acid than formic acid and a much weaker base than formate, the acid–base properties of the solution are determined solely by the formic acid ionization equilibrium:

$$\mathrm{HCO_2H(aq) \rightleftharpoons HCO_2^-(aq) + H^+(aq)}$$

The initial concentrations, the changes in concentration that occur as equilibrium is reached, and the final concentrations can be tabulated.

Final Concentration

ICE	$[HCO_2H(aq)]$	$[H^+(aq)]$	$[HCO_2^-(aq)]$
Initial	0.150	1.00×10^{-7}	0.100
Change	−x	+x	+x
Equilibrium	(0.150 − x)	x	(0.100 + x)

B We substitute the expressions for the final concentrations into the equilibrium constant expression and make our usual simplifying assumptions, so

$$\begin{aligned} K_a = \frac{[H^+][HCO_2^-]}{[HCO_2H]} &= \frac{(x)(0.100+x)}{0.150-x} \\ &\approx \frac{x(0.100)}{0.150} \\ &\approx 10^{-3.75} \\ &\approx 1.8 \times 10^{-4} \end{aligned}$$

Rearranging and solving for x,

$$\begin{aligned} x &= (1.8 \times 10^{-4}) \times \frac{0.150\ M}{0.100\ M} \\ &= 2.7 \times 10^{-4} \\ &= [H^+] \end{aligned}$$

The value of x is small compared with 0.150 or 0.100 M, so our assumption about the extent of ionization is justified. Moreover,

$$K_aC_{HA} = (1.8 \times 10^{-4})(0.150) = 2.7 \times 10^{-5}$$

which is greater than 1.0×10^{-6}, so again, our assumption is justified. The final pH is:

$$pH = -\log(2.7 \times 10^{-4}) = 3.57$$

compared with the initial value of 2.29. Thus adding a salt containing the conjugate base of the acid has increased the pH of the solution, as we expect based on Le Chatelier's principle; the stress on the system has been relieved by the consumption of $\mathrm{H^+}$ ions, driving the equilibrium to the left.

C Because HCl is a strong acid, it ionizes completely, and chloride is a spectator ion that can be neglected. Thus the only relevant acid–base equilibrium is again the dissociation of formic acid, and initially the concentration of formate is zero. We can construct a table of initial concentrations, changes in concentration, and final concentrations.

$$HCO_2H(aq) \leftrightharpoons H^+(aq) + HCO_2^-(aq)$$

initial concentrations, changes in concentration, and final concentrations

	$[HCO_2H(aq)]$	$[H^+(aq)]$	$[HCO_2^-(aq)]$
initial	0.150	0.200	0
change	−x	+x	+x
final	(0.150 − x)	(0.200 + x)	x

To calculate the percentage of formic acid that is ionized under these conditions, we have to determine the final $[\mathrm{HCO_2^-}]$. We substitute final concentrations into the equilibrium constant expression and make the usual simplifying assumptions, so

$$K_a = \frac{[H^+][HCO_2^-]}{[HCO_2H]} = \frac{(0.200+x)(x)}{0.150-x} \approx \frac{x(0.200)}{0.150} = 1.80 \times 10^{-4}$$

Rearranging and solving for x,

$$\begin{aligned} x &= (1.80 \times 10^{-4}) \times \frac{0.150\ M}{0.200\ M} \\ &= 1.35 \times 10^{-4} = [HCO_2^-] \end{aligned}$$

Once again, our simplifying assumptions are justified. The percent ionization of formic acid is as follows:

$$\text{percent ionization} = \frac{1.35 \times 10^{-4}\ M}{0.150\ M} \times 100\% = 0.0900\%$$

Adding the strong acid to the solution, as shown in the table, decreased the percent ionization of formic acid by a factor of approximately 38 (3.45%/0.0900%). Again, this is consistent with Le Chatelier's principle: adding $\mathrm{H^+}$ ions drives the dissociation equilibrium to the left.

? Exercise 5.13.1

A 0.225 M solution of ethylamine ($\mathrm{CH_3CH_2NH_2}$ with $pK_b = 3.19$) has a pH of 12.08 and a percent ionization of 5.4% at 20°C. Calculate the following:

a. the pH of the solution if enough solid ethylamine hydrochloride ($\mathrm{EtNH_3Cl}$) is added to make the solution 0.100 M in $\mathrm{EtNH_3^+}$
b. the percentage of ethylamine that is ionized if enough solid NaOH is added to the original solution to give a final concentration of 0.050 M NaOH

Answer a

11.16

Answer b

1.3%

A Video Discussing the Common Ion Effect: The Common Ion Effecr(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

The Common Ion Effect: Weak Bases Combined with Conjugate Acids

Now let's suppose we have a buffer solution that contains equimolar concentrations of a weak base (B) and its conjugate acid (BH^+). The general equation for the ionization of a weak base is as follows:

$$B(aq) + H_2O(l) \leftrightharpoons BH^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \tag{5.13.25}$$

If the equilibrium constant for the reaction as written in Equation 5.13.25is small, for example $K_b = 10^{-5}$, then the equilibrium constant for the reverse reaction is very large: $K = \frac{1}{K_b} = 10^5$. Adding a strong base such as OH^- to the solution therefore causes the equilibrium in Equation 5.13.25to shift to the left, consuming the added OH^-. As a result, the OH^- ion concentration in solution remains relatively constant, and the pH of the solution changes very little. Le Chatelier's principle predicts the same outcome: when the system is stressed by an increase in the OH^- ion concentration, the reaction will proceed to the left to counteract the stress.

If the pK_b of the base is 5.0, the pK_a of its conjugate acid is

$$pK_a = pK_w - pK_b = 14.0 – 5.0 = 9.0.$$

Thus the equilibrium constant for ionization of the conjugate acid is even smaller than that for ionization of the base. The ionization reaction for the conjugate acid of a weak base is written as follows:

$$BH^+(aq) + H_2O(l) \leftrightharpoons B(aq) + H_3O^+(aq) \tag{5.13.26}$$

Again, the equilibrium constant for the reverse of this reaction is very large: K = 1/K$_a$ = 10^9. If a strong acid is added, it is neutralized by reaction with the base as the reaction in Equation 5.13.26 shifts to the left. As a result, the H^+ ion concentration does not increase very much, and the pH changes only slightly. In effect, a buffer solution behaves somewhat like a sponge that can absorb H^+ and OH^- ions, thereby preventing large changes in pH when appreciable amounts of strong acid or base are added to a solution.

Buffers are characterized by the pH range over which they can maintain a more or less constant pH and by their buffer capacity, the amount of strong acid or base that can be absorbed before the pH changes significantly. Although the useful pH range of a buffer depends strongly on the chemical properties of the weak acid and weak base used to prepare the buffer (i.e., on K), its buffer capacity depends solely on the concentrations of the species in the buffered solution. The more concentrated the buffer solution, the greater its buffer capacity. As illustrated in Figure 5.13.1, when $NaOH$ is added to solutions that contain different concentrations of an acetic acid/sodium acetate buffer, the observed change in the pH of the buffer is inversely proportional to the concentration of the buffer. If the buffer capacity is 10 times larger, then the buffer solution can absorb 10 times more strong acid or base before undergoing a significant change in pH.

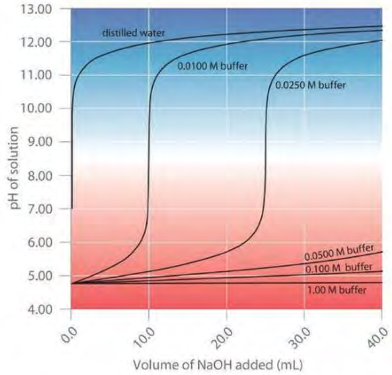


Figure 5.13.1: Effect of Buffer Concentration on the Capacity of a Buffer. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)
Graph of pH of solution against volume of NaOH added. Six different buffer concentrations are plotted.

A buffer maintains a relatively constant pH when acid or base is added to a solution. The addition of even tiny volumes of 0.10 M $NaOH$ to 100.0 mL of distilled water results in a very large change in pH. As the concentration of a 50:50 mixture of sodium acetate/acetic acid buffer in the solution is increased from 0.010 M to 1.00 M, the change in the pH produced by the addition of the same volume of $NaOH$ solution decreases steadily. For buffer concentrations of at least 0.500 M, the addition of even 25 mL of the $NaOH$ solution results in only a relatively small change in pH.

Calculating the pH of a Buffer

The pH of a buffer can be calculated from the concentrations of the weak acid and the weak base used to prepare it, the concentration of the conjugate base and conjugate acid, and the pK_a or pK_b of the weak acid or weak base. The procedure is analogous to that used in Example 5.13.1 to calculate the pH of a solution containing known concentrations of formic acid and formate.

An alternative method frequently used to calculate the pH of a buffer solution is based on a rearrangement of the equilibrium equation for the dissociation of a weak acid. The simplified ionization reaction is $HA \leftrightharpoons H^+ + A^-$, for which the equilibrium constant expression is as follows:

$$K_a = \frac{[H^+][A^-]}{[HA]} \tag{5.13.27}$$

This equation can be rearranged as follows:

$$[H^+] = K_a \frac{[HA]}{[A^-]} \tag{5.13.28}$$

Taking the logarithm of both sides and multiplying both sides by −1,

$$-\log[H^+] = -\log K_a - \log\left(\frac{[HA]}{[A^-]}\right) \tag{5.13.29}$$

$$= -\log K_a + \log\left(\frac{[A^-]}{[HA]}\right) \tag{5.13.30}$$

Replacing the negative logarithms in Equation 5.13.30,

$$pH = pK_a + \log\left(\frac{[A^-]}{[HA]}\right) \tag{5.13.31}$$

or, more generally,

$$pH = pK_a + \log\left(\frac{[base]}{[acid]}\right) \tag{5.13.32}$$

Equation 5.13.31 and Equation 5.13.32 are both forms of the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation, named after the two early 20th-century chemists who first noticed that this rearranged version of the equilibrium constant expression provides an easy way to calculate the pH of a buffer solution. In general, the validity of the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation may be limited to solutions whose concentrations are at least 100 times greater than their K_a values.

There are three special cases where the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation is easily interpreted without the need for calculations:

- $[base] = [acid]$: Under these conditions,

  $$\frac{[base]}{[acid]} = 1$$

  in Equation 5.13.32. Because $\log 1 = 0$,

  $$pH = pK_a$$

regardless of the actual concentrations of the acid and base. Recall that this corresponds to the midpoint in the titration of a weak acid or a weak base.

- $[base]/[acid] = 10$: In Equation 5.13.32, because $\log 10 = 1$,

$$pH = pK_a + 1.$$

- $[base]/[acid] = 100$: In Equation 5.13.32, because $\log 100 = 2$,

$$pH = pK_a + 2.$$

Each time we increase the [base]/[acid] ratio by 10, the pH of the solution increases by 1 pH unit. Conversely, if the [base]/[acid] ratio is 0.1, then pH = pK_a − 1. Each additional factor-of-10 decrease in the [base]/[acid] ratio causes the pH to decrease by 1 pH unit.

> If [base] = [acid] for a buffer, then pH = pK_a. Changing this ratio by a factor of 10 either way changes the pH by ±1 unit.

✓ Example 5.13.2

What is the pH of a solution that contains

a. 0.135 M HCO_2H and 0.215 M HCO_2Na? (The pK_a of formic acid is 3.75.)
b. 0.0135 M HCO_2H and 0.0215 M HCO_2Na?
c. 0.119 M pyridine and 0.234 M pyridine hydrochloride? (The pK_b of pyridine is 8.77.)

Given: concentration of acid, conjugate base, and pK_a; concentration of base, conjugate acid, and pK_b

Asked for: pH

Strategy:

Substitute values into either form of the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation (Equations 5.13.31or 5.13.32) to calculate the pH.

Solution:

According to the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation (Equation 5.13.31), the pH of a solution that contains both a weak acid and its conjugate base is

$$pH = pK_a + \log([A-]/[HA]).$$

A

Inserting the given values into the equation,

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= 3.75 + \log\left(\frac{0.215}{0.135}\right) \\ &= 3.75 + \log 1.593 \\ &= 3.95 \end{aligned}$$

This result makes sense because the $[A^-]/[HA]$ ratio is between 1 and 10, so the pH of the buffer must be between the pK_a (3.75) and $pK_a + 1$, or 4.75.

B

This is identical to part (a), except for the concentrations of the acid and the conjugate base, which are 10 times lower. Inserting the concentrations into the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation,

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= 3.75 + \log\left(\frac{0.0215}{0.0135}\right) \\ &= 3.75 + \log 1.593 \\ &= 3.95 \end{aligned}$$

This result is identical to the result in part (a), which emphasizes the point that the pH of a buffer depends only on the ratio of the concentrations of the conjugate base and the acid, not on the magnitude of the concentrations. Because the [A^-]/[HA] ratio is the same as in part (a), the pH of the buffer must also be the same (3.95).

C

In this case, we have a weak base, pyridine (Py), and its conjugate acid, the pyridinium ion (HPy^+). We will therefore use Equation 5.13.32, the more general form of the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation, in which “base” and “acid” refer to the appropriate species of the conjugate acid–base pair. We are given [base] = [Py] = 0.119 M and $[acid] = [HPy^+] = 0.234\, M$. We also are given $pK_b = 8.77$ for pyridine, but we need pK_a for the pyridinium ion. Recall from Equation 16.23 that the pK_b of a weak base and the pK_a of its conjugate acid are related:

$$pK_a + pK_b = pK_w.$$

Thus pK_a for the pyridinium ion is $pK_w - pK_b = 14.00 - 8.77 = 5.23$. Substituting this pK_a value into the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation,

$$\begin{aligned} pH = pK_a + \log\left(\frac{[base]}{[acid]}\right) \\ &= 5.23 + \log\left(\frac{0.119}{0.234}\right) \\ &= 5.23 \; - 0.294 \\ &= 4.94 \end{aligned}$$

Once again, this result makes sense: the $[B]/[BH^+]$ ratio is about 1/2, which is between 1 and 0.1, so the final pH must be between the pK_a (5.23) and $pK_a - 1$, or 4.23.

? Exercise 5.13.2

What is the pH of a solution that contains

a. 0.333 M benzoic acid and 0.252 M sodium benzoate?
b. 0.050 M trimethylamine and 0.066 M trimethylamine hydrochloride?

The pK_a of benzoic acid is 4.20, and the pK_b of trimethylamine is also 4.20.

Answer a

4.08

Answer b

9.68

A Video Discussing Using the Henderson Hasselbalch Equation: Using the Henderson Hasselbalch Equation(opens in new window) [youtu.be] (opens in new window)

The Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation ((Equation 5.13.31) can also be used to calculate the pH of a buffer solution after adding a given amount of strong acid or strong base, as demonstrated in Example 5.13.3.

Example 5.13.3

The buffer solution in Example 5.13.2 contained 0.135 M HCO_2H and 0.215 M HCO_2Na and had a pH of 3.95.

a. What is the final pH if 5.00 mL of 1.00 M HCl are added to 100 mL of this solution?
b. What is the final pH if 5.00 mL of 1.00 M $NaOH$ are added?

Given: composition and pH of buffer; concentration and volume of added acid or base

Asked for: final pH

Strategy:

A. Calculate the amounts of formic acid and formate present in the buffer solution using the procedure from Example 5.13.1. Then calculate the amount of acid or base added.
B. Construct a table showing the amounts of all species after the neutralization reaction. Use the final volume of the solution to calculate the concentrations of all species. Finally, substitute the appropriate values into the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation (Equation 5.13.32) to obtain the pH.

Solution:

The added HCl (a strong acid) or $NaOH$ (a strong base) will react completely with formate (a weak base) or formic acid (a weak acid), respectively, to give formic acid or formate and water. We must therefore calculate the amounts of formic acid and formate present after the neutralization reaction.

A We begin by calculating the millimoles of formic acid and formate present in 100 mL of the initial pH 3.95 buffer:

$$100\ \cancel{mL}\left(\frac{0.135\,mmol\ HCO_2H}{\cancel{mL}}\right)=13.5\,mmol\,HCO_2H$$

$$100\ \cancel{mL}\left(\frac{0.215\,mmol\ HCO_2^-}{\cancel{mL}}\right)=21.5\,mmol\,HCO_2^-$$

The millimoles of H^+ in 5.00 mL of 1.00 M HCl is as follows:

$$5.00\ \cancel{mL}\left(\frac{1.00\,mmol\ H^+}{\cancel{mL}}\right)=5\,mmol\,H^+$$

B Next, we construct a table of initial amounts, changes in amounts, and final amounts:

$$HCO^{2-}(aq)+H^+(aq)\rightleftharpoons HCO_2H(aq)$$

initial amounts, changes in amounts, and final amounts:

	$HCO^{2-}(aq)$	$H^+(aq)$	$HCO_2H(aq)$
Initial	21.5 mmol	5.00 mmol	13.5 mmol
Change	−5.00 mmol	−5.00 mmol	+5.00 mmol
Final	16.5 mmol	∼0 mmol	18.5 mmol

The final amount of H^+ in solution is given as "∼0 mmol." For the purposes of the stoichiometry calculation, this is essentially true, but remember that the point of the problem is to calculate the final $[H^+]$ and thus the pH. We now have all the information we need to calculate the pH. We can use either the lengthy procedure of Example 5.13.1 or the Henderson–Hasselbach approximation. Because we have performed many equilibrium calculations in this chapter, we'll take the latter approach. The Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation requires the concentrations of HCO_2^- and HCO_2H, which can be calculated using the number of millimoles (n) of each and the total volume (VT). Substituting these values into the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation (Equation 5.13.32):

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= pK_a + \log\left(\frac{[HCO_2^-]}{[HCO_2H]}\right) \\ &= pK_a + \log\left(\frac{n_{HCO_2^-}/V_f}{n_{HCO_2H}/V_f}\right) \\ &= pK_a + \log\left(\frac{n_{HCO_2^-}}{n_{HCO_2H}}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Because the total volume appears in both the numerator and denominator, it cancels. We therefore need to use only the ratio of the number of millimoles of the conjugate base to the number of millimoles of the weak acid. So

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= pK_a + \log\left(\frac{n_{HCO_2^-}}{n_{HCO_2H}}\right) \\ &= 3.75 + \log\left(\frac{16.5\ mmol}{18.5\ mmol}\right) \\ &= 3.75\ - 0.050 = 3.70 \end{aligned}$$

Once again, this result makes sense on two levels. First, the addition of HCl has decreased the pH from 3.95, as expected. Second, the ratio of HCO_2^- to HCO_2H is slightly less than 1, so the pH should be between the pK_a and pK_a − 1.

A The procedure for solving this part of the problem is exactly the same as that used in part (a). We have already calculated the numbers of millimoles of formic acid and formate in 100 mL of the initial pH 3.95 buffer: 13.5 mmol of HCO_2H and 21.5 mmol of HCO_2^-. The number of millimoles of OH^- in 5.00 mL of 1.00 M $NaOH$ is as follows:

B With this information, we can construct a table of initial amounts, changes in amounts, and final amounts.

$$\mathrm{HCO_2H(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons HCO_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l)}$$

initial amounts, changes in amounts, and final amounts

	$HCO_2H(aq)$	OH^-	$HCO_2^-(aq)$
Initial	13.5 mmol	5.00 mmol	21.5 mmol
Change	−5.00 mmol	−5.00 mmol	+5.00 mmol
Final	8.5 mmol	∼0 mmol	26.5 mmol

The final amount of OH^- in solution is not actually zero; this is only approximately true based on the stoichiometric calculation. We can calculate the final pH by inserting the numbers of millimoles of both HCO_2^- and HCO_2H into the simplified Henderson-Hasselbalch expression used in part (a) because the volume cancels:

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= pK_a + \log\left(\frac{n_{HCO_2^-}}{n_{HCO_2H}}\right) \\ &= 3.75 + \log\left(\frac{26.5\ mmol}{8.5\ mmol}\right) \\ &= 3.75 + 0.494 = 4.24 \end{aligned}$$

Once again, this result makes chemical sense: the pH has increased, as would be expected after adding a strong base, and the final pH is between the pK_a and pK_a + 1, as expected for a solution with a HCO_2^-/HCO_2H ratio between 1 and 10.

? Exercise 5.13.3

The buffer solution from Example 5.13.2 contained 0.119 M pyridine and 0.234 M pyridine hydrochloride and had a pH of 4.94.

a. What is the final pH if 12.0 mL of 1.5 M NaOH are added to 250 mL of this solution?
b. What is the final pH if 12.0 mL of 1.5 M HCl are added?

Answer a

5.30

Answer b

4.42

Only the amounts (in moles or millimoles) of the acidic and basic components of the buffer are needed to use the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation, not their concentrations.

A Video Discussing the Change in pH with the Addition of a Strong Acid to a Buffer: The Change in pH with the Addition of a Strong Acid to a Buffer(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

The Change in pH with the Addition of a Strong Base to a Buffer:

The Change in pH with the Addition of a Strong Base to a Buffer (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

The results obtained in Example $5.13.3$ and its corresponding exercise demonstrate how little the pH of a well-chosen buffer solution changes despite the addition of a significant quantity of strong acid or strong base. Suppose we had added the same amount of HCl or $NaOH$ solution to 100 mL of an unbuffered solution at pH 3.95 (corresponding to 1.1×10^{-4} M HCl). In this case, adding 5.00 mL of 1.00 M HCl would lower the final pH to 1.32 instead of 3.70, whereas adding 5.00 mL of 1.00 M $NaOH$ would raise the final pH to 12.68 rather than 4.24. (Try verifying these values by doing the calculations yourself.) Thus the presence of a buffer significantly increases the ability of a solution to maintain an almost constant pH.

> *The most effective buffers contain* ***equal*** *concentrations of an acid and its conjugate base.*

A buffer that contains approximately equal amounts of a weak acid and its conjugate base in solution is equally effective at neutralizing either added base or added acid. This is shown in Figure $5.13.2$ for an acetic acid/sodium acetate buffer. Adding a given amount of strong acid shifts the system along the horizontal axis to the left, whereas adding the same amount of strong base shifts the system the same distance to the right. In either case, the change in the ratio of $CH_3CO_2^-$ to CH_3CO_2H from 1:1 reduces the buffer capacity of the solution.

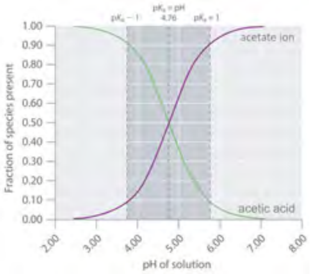


Figure $5.13.2$: Distribution Curve Showing the Fraction of Acetic Acid Molecules and Acetate Ions as a Function of pH in a Solution of Acetic Acid. The pH range over which the acetic acid/sodium acetate system is an effective buffer (the darker shaded region) corresponds to the region in which appreciable concentrations of both species are present (pH 3.76–5.76, corresponding to $pH = pK_a \pm 1$). (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

Graph of mole fraction against pH of solution. The green line is acetic acid and the purple line is the acetate ion.

A Video Discussing The Buffer Region: The Buffer Region (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

The Relationship between Titrations and Buffers

There is a strong correlation between the effectiveness of a buffer solution and the titration curves discussed in Section 16.5. Consider the schematic titration curve of a weak acid with a strong base shown in Figure $5.13.3$ As indicated by the labels, the region around pK_a corresponds to the midpoint of the titration, when approximately half the weak acid has been neutralized. This portion of the titration curve corresponds to a buffer: it exhibits the smallest change in pH per increment of added strong base, as shown by the nearly horizontal nature of the curve in this region. The nearly flat portion of the curve extends only from approximately a pH value of 1 unit less than the pK_a to approximately a pH value of 1 unit greater than the pK_a, which is why buffer solutions usually have a pH that is within ±1 pH units of the pK_a of the acid component of the buffer.

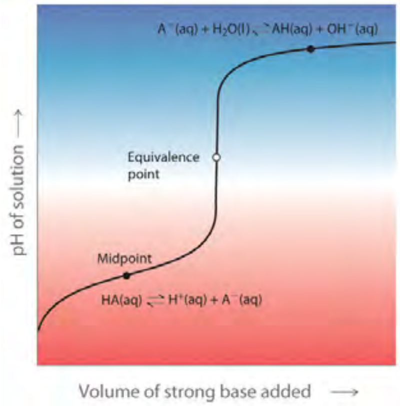


Figure 5.13.3: The Relationship between Titration Curves and Buffers. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)
Titration curves graph pH of solution against volume of strong base added. On the curve we look for the midpoints and equivalence points.

This schematic plot of pH for the titration of a weak acid with a strong base shows the nearly flat region of the titration curve around the midpoint, which corresponds to the formation of a buffer. At the lower left, the pH of the solution is determined by the equilibrium for dissociation of the weak acid; at the upper right, the pH is determined by the equilibrium for reaction of the conjugate base with water.

In the region of the titration curve at the lower left, before the midpoint, the acid–base properties of the solution are dominated by the equilibrium for dissociation of the weak acid, corresponding to K_a. In the region of the titration curve at the upper right, after the midpoint, the acid–base properties of the solution are dominated by the equilibrium for reaction of the conjugate base of the weak acid with water, corresponding to K_b. However, we can calculate either K_a or K_b from the other because they are related by K_w.

Blood: A Most Important Buffer

Metabolic processes produce large amounts of acids and bases, yet organisms are able to maintain an almost constant internal pH because their fluids contain buffers. This is not to say that the pH is uniform throughout all cells and tissues of a mammal. The internal pH of a red blood cell is about 7.2, but the pH of most other kinds of cells is lower, around 7.0. Even within a single cell, different compartments can have very different pH values. For example, one intracellular compartment in white blood cells has a pH of around 5.0.

Because no single buffer system can effectively maintain a constant pH value over the entire physiological range of approximately pH 5.0 to 7.4, biochemical systems use a set of buffers with overlapping ranges. The most important of these is the $\mathrm{CO_2/HCO_3^-}$ system, which dominates the buffering action of blood plasma.

The acid–base equilibrium in the $\mathrm{CO_2/HCO_3^-}$ buffer system is usually written as follows:

$$\mathrm{H_2CO_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + HCO_3^-(aq)} \tag{5.13.33}$$

with $K_a = 4.5 \times 10^{-7}$ and $pK_a = 6.35$ at 25°C. In fact, Equation 5.13.33is a grossly oversimplified version of the $\mathrm{CO_2/HCO_3^-}$ system because a solution of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ in water contains only rather small amounts of H_2CO_3. Thus Equation 5.13.33does not allow us to understand how blood is actually buffered, particularly at a physiological temperature of 37°C.

As shown in Equation 5.13.34, $\mathrm{CO_2}$ is in equilibrium with $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$, but the equilibrium lies far to the left, with an $\mathrm{H_2CO_3/CO_2}$ ratio less than 0.01 under most conditions:

$$\mathrm{CO_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3(aq)} \tag{5.13.34}$$

with $K' = 4.0 \times 10^{-3}$ at 37°C. The true pK_a of carbonic acid at 37°C is therefore 3.70, not 6.35, corresponding to a K_a of 2.0×10^{-4}, which makes it a much stronger acid than Equation 5.13.33suggests. Adding Equation 5.13.33and Equation 5.13.34and canceling $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$ from both sides give the following overall equation for the reaction of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ with water to give a proton and the bicarbonate ion:

$$\mathrm{CO_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3(aq)} \tag{5.13.35}$$

with $K' = 4.0 \times 10^{-3} (37^\circ C)$

$$\mathrm{H_2CO_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + HCO_3^-(aq)} \tag{5.13.36}$$

with $K_a = 2.0 \times 10^{-4} (37^\circ C)$

$$\mathrm{CO_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + HCO_3^-(aq)} \tag{5.13.37}$$

with $K = 8.0 \times 10^{-7} (37^\circ C)$

The K value for the reaction in Equation 5.13.37is the product of the true ionization constant for carbonic acid (K_a) and the equilibrium constant (K) for the reaction of $\mathrm{CO_2(aq)}$ with water to give carbonic acid. The equilibrium equation for the reaction of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ with water to give bicarbonate and a proton is therefore

$$K = \frac{\mathrm{[H^+][HCO_3^-]}}{\mathrm{[CO_2]}} = 8.0 \times 10^{-7} \tag{5.13.38}$$

The presence of a gas in the equilibrium constant expression for a buffer is unusual. According to **Henry's law**,

$$\mathrm{[CO_2]} = kP_{\mathrm{CO_2}}$$

where k is the Henry's law constant for $\mathrm{CO_2}$, which is $3.0 \times 10^{-5}\ M/mmHg$ at 37°C. Substituting this expression for $\mathrm{[CO_2]}$ in Equation 5.13.38,

$$K = \frac{\mathrm{[H^+][HCO_3^-]}}{(3.0 \times 10^{-5}\ M/mmHg)(P_{\mathrm{CO_2}})}$$

where $P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}$ is in mmHg. Taking the negative logarithm of both sides and rearranging,

$$pH = 6.10 + \log \left(\frac{\mathrm{[HCO_3^-]}}{(3.0 \times 10^{-5} M/mm\ Hg)\ (P_{\mathrm{CO_2}})} \right) \tag{5.13.39}$$

Thus the pH of the solution depends on both the $\mathrm{CO_2}$ pressure over the solution and $\mathrm{[HCO_3^-]}$. Figure 5.13.4plots the relationship between pH and $\mathrm{[HCO_3^-]}$ under physiological conditions for several different values of $P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}$, with normal pH and $\mathrm{[HCO_3^-]}$ values indicated by the dashed lines.

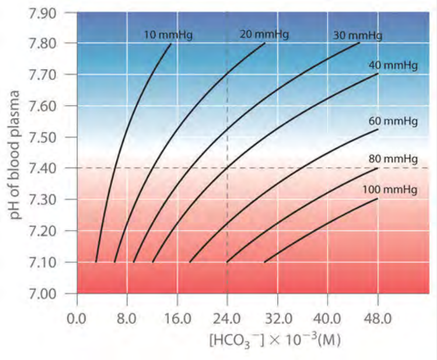


Figure 5.13.4: Buffering in Blood: pH versus $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]$ Curves for Buffers with Different Values of $P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}$. Only those combinations of pH and $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]$ that lie on a given line are allowed for the particular value of $P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}$ indicated. Normal values of blood plasma pH and $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]$ are indicated by dashed lines. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

According to Equation 5.13.39, adding a strong acid to the $\mathrm{CO_2/HCO_3^-}$ system causes $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]$ to decrease as $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$ is converted to $\mathrm{CO_2}$. Excess $\mathrm{CO_2}$ is released in the lungs and exhaled into the atmosphere, however, so there is essentially no change in $P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}$. Because the change in $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]/P_{CO_2}$ is small, Equation 5.13.39predicts that the change in pH will also be rather small. Conversely, if a strong base is added, the $\mathrm{OH^-}$ reacts with $\mathrm{CO_2}$ to form $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$, but $\mathrm{CO_2}$ is replenished by the body, again limiting the change in both $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]/P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}$ and pH. The $\mathrm{CO_2/HCO_3^-}$ buffer system is an example of an open system, in which the total concentration of the components of the buffer change to keep the pH at a nearly constant value.

If a passenger steps out of an airplane in Denver, Colorado, for example, the lower $P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}$ at higher elevations (typically 31 mmHg at an elevation of 2000 m versus 40 mmHg at sea level) causes a shift to a new pH and $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]$. The increase in pH and decrease in $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]$ in response to the decrease in $P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}$ are responsible for the general malaise that many people experience at high altitudes. If their blood pH does not adjust rapidly, the condition can develop into the life-threatening phenomenon known as altitude sickness.

A Video Summary of the pH Curve for a Strong Acid/Strong Base Titration:

Summary of the pH Curve for a Strong Acid/Strong Base Titration(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

Buffers are solutions that resist a change in pH after adding an acid or a base. Buffers contain a weak acid (HA) and its conjugate weak base (A^-). Adding a strong electrolyte that contains one ion in common with a reaction system that is at equilibrium shifts the equilibrium in such a way as to reduce the concentration of the common ion. The shift in equilibrium is called the common ion effect. Buffers are characterized by their pH range and buffer capacity. The useful pH range of a buffer depends strongly on the chemical properties of the conjugate weak acid–base pair used to prepare the buffer (the K_a or K_b), whereas its buffer capacity depends solely on the concentrations of the species in the solution. The pH of a buffer can be calculated using the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation, which is valid for solutions whose concentrations are at least 100 times greater than their K_a values. Because no single buffer system can effectively maintain a constant pH value over the physiological range of approximately 5 to 7.4, biochemical systems use a set of buffers with overlapping ranges. The most important of these is the CO_2/HCO_3^- system, which dominates the buffering action of blood plasma.

5.14: Buffer Effectiveness- Buffer Capacity and Buffer Range

Buffer Capacity

Buffers are characterized by the pH range over which they can maintain a more or less constant pH and by their buffer capacity, the amount of strong acid or base that can be absorbed before the pH changes significantly. Although the useful pH range of a buffer depends strongly on the chemical properties of the weak acid and weak base used to prepare the buffer (i.e., on K), its buffer capacity depends solely on the concentrations of the species in the buffered solution. The more concentrated the buffer solution, the greater its buffer capacity. As illustrated in Figure $5.14.1$, when $NaOH$ is added to solutions that contain different concentrations of an acetic acid/sodium acetate buffer, the observed change in the pH of the buffer is inversely proportional to the concentration of the buffer. If the buffer capacity is 10 times larger, then the buffer solution can absorb 10 times more strong acid or base before undergoing a significant change in pH.

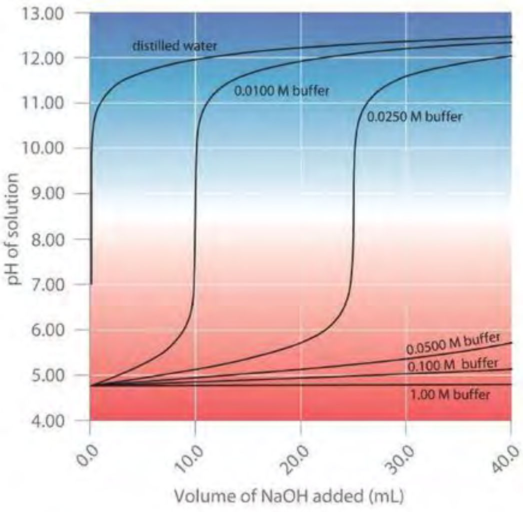


Figure* $5.14.1$*: Effect of Buffer Concentration on the Capacity of a Buffer

A buffer maintains a relatively constant pH when acid or base is added to a solution. The addition of even tiny volumes of 0.10 M $NaOH$ to 100.0 mL of distilled water results in a very large change in pH. As the concentration of a 50:50 mixture of sodium acetate/acetic acid buffer in the solution is increased from 0.010 M to 1.00 M, the change in the pH produced by the addition of the same volume of $NaOH$ solution decreases steadily. For buffer concentrations of at least 0.500 M, the addition of even 25 mL of the $NaOH$ solution results in only a relatively small change in pH.

Selecting proper components for desired pH

Buffers function best when the pK_a of the conjugate weak acid used is close to the desired working range of the buffer. This turns out to be the case when the concentrations of the conjugate acid and conjugate base are approximately equal (within about a factor of 10). For example, we know the K_a for hydroflouric acid is 6.6 x 10^{-4} so its pK_a= -log(6.6 x 10^{-4}) = 3.18. So, a hydrofluoric acid buffer would work best in a buffer range of around pH = 3.18.

For the weak base ammonia (NH_3), the value of K_b is $1.8x10^{-5}$, implying that the K_a for the dissociation of its conjugate acid, NH_4^+, is $K_w/K_b=10^{-14}/1.8x10^{-5} = 5.6x10^{-10}$. Thus, the pK_a for NH_4^+ = 9.25, so buffers using NH_4^+/NH_3 will work best around a pH of 9.25. (It's always the pK_a of the conjugate acid that determines the approximate pH for a buffer system, though this is dependent on the pK_b of the conjugate base, obviously.)

When the desired pH of a buffer solution is near the pK_a of the conjugate acid being used (i.e., when the amounts of conjugate acid and conjugate base in solution are within about a factor of 10 of each other), the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation can be applied as a simple approximation of the solution pH, as we will see in the next section.

✓ Example 1: HF Buffer

In this example we will continue to use the hydrofluoric acid buffer. We will discuss the process for preparing a buffer of HF at a pH of 3.0. We can use the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation to calculate the necessary ratio of F^- and HF.

$$pH = pKa + \log \frac{[Base]}{[Acid]} \tag{5.14.1}$$

$$3.0 = 3.18 + \log \frac{[Base]}{[Acid]} \tag{5.14.2}$$

$$\log \frac{[Base]}{[Acid]} = -0.18 \tag{5.14.3}$$

$$\frac{[Base]}{[Acid]} = 10^{-0.18} \tag{5.14.4}$$

$$\frac{[Base]}{[Acid]} = 0.66 \tag{5.14.5}$$

This is simply the ratio of the concentrations of conjugate base and conjugate acid we will need in our solution. However, what if we have 100 ml of 1 M HF and we want to prepare a buffer using NaF? How much Sodium Fluoride would we need to add in order to create a buffer at said pH (3.0)?

We know from our Henderson-Hasselbalch calculation that the ratio of our base/acid should be equal to 0.66. From a table of molar masses, such as a periodic table, we can calculate the molar mass of NaF to be equal to 41.99 g/mol. HF is a weak acid with a K_a = 6.6 x 10^{-4} and the concentration of HF is given above as 1 M. Using this information, we can calculate the amount of F^- we need to add.

The dissociation reaction is:

$$HF_{(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons F^-_{(aq)} + H_3O^+_{(aq)} \tag{5.14.6}$$

We could use ICE tables to calculate the concentration of F^- from HF dissociation, but, since K_a is so small, we can approximate that virtually all of the HF will remain undissociated, so the amount of F^- in the solution from HF dissociation will be negligible. Thus, the [HF] is about 1 M and the [F^-] is close to 0. This will be especially true once we have added more F^-, the addition of which will even further suppress the dissociation of HF.

We want the ratio of Base/Acid to be 0.66, so we will need [Base]/1M = 0.66. Thus, [F^-] should be about 0.66 M. For 100 mL of solution, then, we will want to add 0.066 moles (0.1 L x 0.66 M) of F^-. Since we are adding NaF as our source of F^-, and since NaF completely dissociates in water, we need 0.066 moles of NaF. Thus, 0.066 moles x 41.99 g/mol = 2.767 g.

Note that, since the conjugate acid and the conjugate base are both mixed into the same volume of solution in the buffer, the ratio of "Base/Acid" is the same whether we use a ratio of the "concentration of base over concentration of acid," OR a ratio of "moles of base over moles of acid." The pH of the solution does not, it turns out, depend on the volume! (This is only true so long as the solution does not get so dilute that the autoionization of water becomes an important source of H^+ or OH^-. Such dilute solutions are rarely used as buffers, however.)

References

1. Brown, et al. Chemistry:The Central Science. 11th ed. Upper Saddle River, New Jersey: Pearson/Prentice Hall, 2008.
2. Chang, Raymond. General Chemistry:The Essential Concepts. 3rd ed. New York: Mcgraw Hill, 2003
3. Petrucci, et al. General Chemistry: Principles & Modern Applications. 9th ed. Upper Saddle River, New Jersey: Pearson/Prentice Hall, 2007.

Outside Links

- Urbansky, Edward T.; Schock, Michael R. "Understanding, Deriving, and Computing Buffer Capacity." *J. Chem. Educ.* **2000** *1640.*.

Contributors

- Jose Pietri (UCD), Donald Land (UCD)

5.15: Titrations and pH Curves

Learning Objectives

- To calculate the pH at any point in an acid–base titration.

In an acid–base titration, a buret is used to deliver measured volumes of an acid or a base solution of known concentration (the titrant) to a flask that contains a solution of a base or an acid, respectively, of unknown concentration (the unknown). If the concentration of the titrant is known, then the concentration of the unknown can be determined. The following discussion focuses on the pH changes that occur during an acid–base titration. Plotting the pH of the solution in the flask against the amount of acid or base added produces a titration curve. The shape of the curve provides important information about what is occurring in solution during the titration.

Titrations of Strong Acids and Bases

Figure $5.15.1a$ shows a plot of the pH as 0.20 M HCl is gradually added to 50.00 mL of pure water. The pH of the sample in the flask is initially 7.00 (as expected for pure water), but it drops very rapidly as HCl is added. Eventually the pH becomes constant at 0.70—a point well beyond its value of 1.00 with the addition of 50.0 mL of HCl (0.70 is the pH of 0.20 M HCl). In contrast, when 0.20 M NaOH is added to 50.00 mL of distilled water, the pH (initially 7.00) climbs very rapidly at first but then more gradually, eventually approaching a limit of 13.30 (the pH of 0.20 M NaOH), again well beyond its value of 13.00 with the addition of 50.0 mL of NaOH as shown in Figure $5.15.1b$ As you can see from these plots, the titration curve for adding a base is the mirror image of the curve for adding an acid.

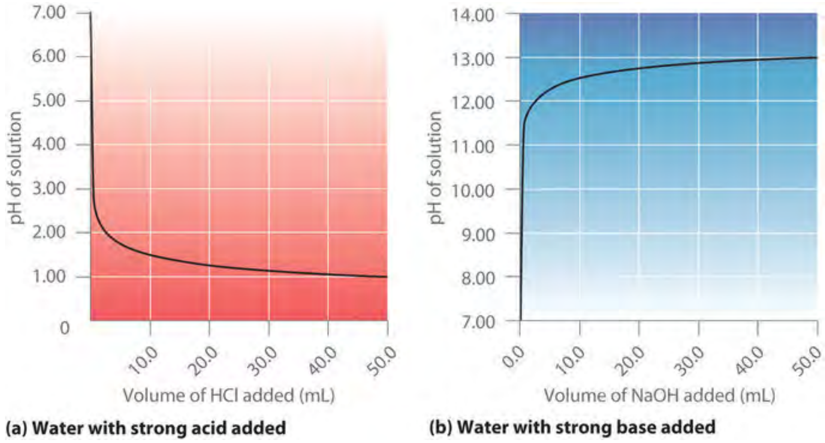


Figure 5.15.1: Solution pH as a Function of the Volume of a Strong Acid or a Strong Base Added to Distilled Water. (a) When 0.20 M HCl is added to 50.0 mL of distilled water, the pH rapidly decreases until it reaches a minimum at the pH of 0.20 M HCl. (b) Conversely, when 0.20 M NaOH is added to 50.0 mL of distilled water, the pH rapidly increases until it reaches a maximum at the pH of 0.20 M $NaOH$. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

The graphs of water with strong acid added and water with strong base added are inverses of each other.

Suppose that we now add 0.20 M NaOH to 50.0 mL of a 0.10 M solution of HCl. Because HCl is a strong acid that is completely ionized in water, the initial $[H^+]$ is 0.10 M, and the initial pH is 1.00. Adding NaOH decreases the concentration of H+ because of the neutralization reaction (Figure $5.15.2a$):

$$\mathrm{OH^- + H^+ \rightleftharpoons H_2O}.$$

Thus the pH of the solution increases gradually. Near the equivalence point, however, the point at which the number of moles of base (or acid) added equals the number of moles of acid (or base) originally present in the solution, the pH increases much more rapidly because most of the $\mathrm{H^+}$ ions originally present have been consumed. For the titration of a monoprotic strong acid (HCl) with a monobasic strong base (NaOH), we can calculate the volume of base needed to reach the equivalence point from the following relationship:

$$moles\ of\ base = (volume)_b(molarity)_b V_b M_b = moles\ of\ acid = (volume)_a(molarity)_a = V_a M_a \tag{5.15.1}$$

If 0.20 M NaOH is added to 50.0 mL of a 0.10 M solution of HCl, we solve for V_b:

$$V_b(0.20 Me) = 0.025 L = 25 mL$$

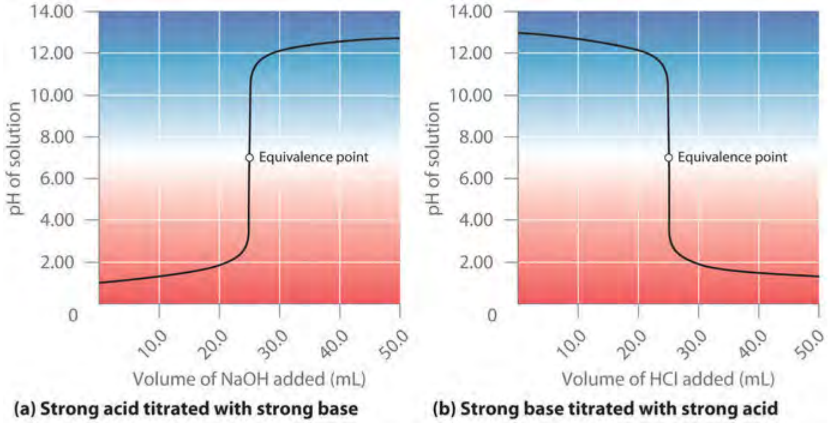


Figure 5.15.2: The Titration of (a) a Strong Acid with a Strong Base and (b) a Strong Base with a Strong Acid(a) As 0.20 M NaOH is slowly added to 50.0 mL of 0.10 M HCl, the pH increases slowly at first, then increases very rapidly as the equivalence point is approached, and finally increases slowly once more. (b) Conversely, as 0.20 M HCl is slowly added to 50.0 mL of 0.10 M $NaOH$, the pH decreases slowly at first, then decreases very rapidly as the equivalence point is approached, and finally decreases slowly once more. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

The titration curves of strong acid titrated with strong base and strong base titrated with strong acid are inverses of each other.

At the equivalence point (when 25.0 mL of $NaOH$ solution has been added), the neutralization is complete: only a salt remains in solution (NaCl), and the pH of the solution is 7.00. Adding more $NaOH$ produces a rapid increase in pH, but eventually the pH levels off at a value of about 13.30, the pH of 0.20 M $NaOH$.

As shown in Figure 5.15.2b, the titration of 50.0 mL of a 0.10 M solution of $NaOH$ with 0.20 M HCl produces a titration curve that is nearly the mirror image of the titration curve in Figure 5.15.2a. The pH is initially 13.00, and it slowly decreases as HCl is added. As the equivalence point is approached, the pH drops rapidly before leveling off at a value of about 0.70, the pH of 0.20 M HCl.

The titration of either a strong acid with a strong base or a strong base with a strong acid produces an S-shaped curve. The curve is somewhat asymmetrical because the steady increase in the volume of the solution during the titration causes the solution to become more dilute. Due to the leveling effect, the shape of the curve for a titration involving a strong acid and a strong base depends on only the concentrations of the acid and base, not their identities.

> The shape of the titration curve involving a strong acid and a strong base depends only on their concentrations, not their identities.

✓ Example 5.15.1: Hydrochloric Acid

Calculate the pH of the solution after 24.90 mL of 0.200 M $NaOH$ has been added to 50.00 mL of 0.100 M HCl.

Given: volumes and concentrations of strong base and acid

Asked for: pH

Strategy:

A. Calculate the number of millimoles of H^+ and OH^- to determine which, if either, is in excess after the neutralization reaction has occurred. If one species is in excess, calculate the amount that remains after the neutralization reaction.
B. Determine the final volume of the solution. Calculate the concentration of the species in excess and convert this value to pH.

Solution

A Because 0.100 mol/L is equivalent to 0.100 mmol/mL, the number of millimoles of H^+ in 50.00 mL of 0.100 M HCl can be calculated as follows:

$$50.00\ m\cancel{L}\left(\frac{0.100\ mmol\ HCl}{m\cancel{L}}\right)=5.00\ mmol\ HCl=5.00\ mmol\ H^{+}$$

The number of millimoles of NaOH added is as follows:

$$24.90\ m\cancel{L}\left(\frac{0.200\ mmol\ NaOH}{m\cancel{L}}\right)=4.98\ mmol\ NaOH=4.98\ mmol\ OH^{-}$$

Thus H^{+} is in excess. To completely neutralize the acid requires the addition of 5.00 mmol of OH^{-} to the HCl solution. Because only 4.98 mmol of OH^{-} has been added, the amount of excess H^{+} is 5.00 mmol − 4.98 mmol = 0.02 mmol of H^{+}.

B The final volume of the solution is 50.00 mL + 24.90 mL = 74.90 mL, so the final concentration of H^{+} is as follows:

$$[H^{+}]=\frac{0.02\ mmol\ H^{+}}{74.90\ mL}=3\times10^{-4}\ M$$

Hence,

$$pH\approx-\log[\mathrm{H}^{+}]=-\log(3\times10^{-4})=3.5$$

This is significantly less than the pH of 7.00 for a neutral solution.

? Exercise 5.15.1

Calculate the pH of a solution prepared by adding $40.00\ mL$ of $0.237\ M\ HCl$ to $75.00\ mL$ of a $0.133M$ solution of $NaOH$.

Answer

11.6

pH after the addition of 10 ml of Strong Base to a Strong Acid:

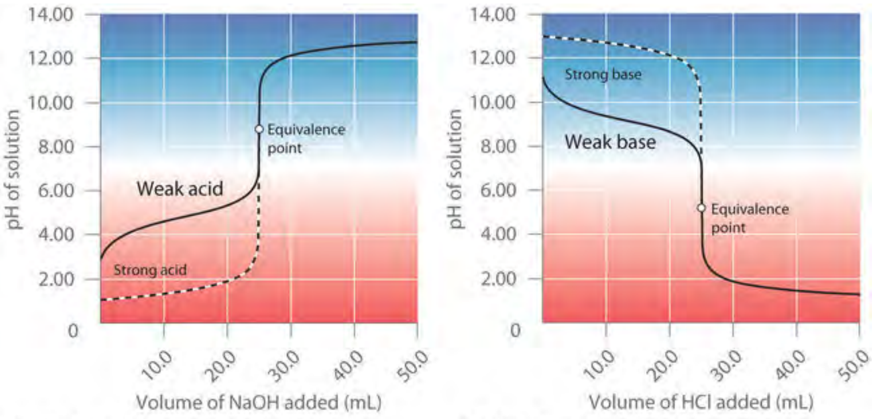
https://youtu.be/_cM1_-kdJ20 (opens in new window) pH at the Equivalence Point in a Strong Acid/Strong Base Titration:

https://youtu.be/7POGDA5Ql2M

Titrations of Weak Acids and Bases

In contrast to strong acids and bases, the shape of the titration curve for a weak acid or a weak base depends dramatically on the identity of the acid or the base and the corresponding K_a or K_b. As we shall see, the pH also changes much more gradually around the equivalence point in the titration of a weak acid or a weak base. As you learned previously, $[\mathrm{H^+}]$ of a solution of a weak acid (HA) is not equal to the concentration of the acid but depends on both its pK_a and its concentration. Because only a fraction of a weak acid dissociates, $[\backslash(\mathrm{H^+}]$ is less than $[\mathrm{HA}]$. Thus the pH of a solution of a weak acid is greater than the pH of a solution of a strong acid of the same concentration.

Figure $5.15.3a$ shows the titration curve for 50.0 mL of a 0.100 M solution of acetic acid with 0.200 M NaOH superimposed on the curve for the titration of 0.100 M HCl shown in part (a) in Figure $5.15.2$ Below the equivalence point, the two curves are very different. Before any base is added, the pH of the acetic acid solution is greater than the pH of the HCl solution, and the pH changes more rapidly during the first part of the titration. Note also that the pH of the acetic acid solution at the equivalence point is greater than 7.00. That is, at the equivalence point, the solution is basic. In addition, the change in pH around the equivalence point is only about half as large as for the HCl titration; the magnitude of the pH change at the equivalence point depends on the pK_a of the acid being titrated. Above the equivalence point, however, the two curves are identical. Once the acid has been neutralized, the pH of the solution is controlled only by the amount of excess NaOH present, regardless of whether the acid is weak or strong.



(a) Weak acid titrated with strong base **(b) Weak base titrated with strong acid**

Figure $5.15.3$: The Titration of (a) a Weak Acid with a Strong Base and (b) a Weak Base with a Strong Acid. (a) As 0.200 M NaOH is slowly added to 50.0 mL of 0.100 M acetic acid, the pH increases slowly at first, then increases rapidly as the equivalence point is approached, and then again increases more slowly. The corresponding curve for the titration of 50.0 mL of 0.100 M HCl with 0.200 M NaOH is shown as a dashed line. (b) As 0.200 M HCl is slowly added to 50.0 mL of 0.100 M NH3, the pH decreases slowly at first, then decreases rapidly as the equivalence point is approached, and then again decreases more slowly. The corresponding curve for the titration of 50.0 mL of 0.100 M NaOH with 0.200 M HCl is shown as a dashed line. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

The titration curves of weak acid titrated with strong base and weak base titrated with strong acid are inverse of each other. These curves are shorter than the titration curves with strong acid and strong base.

> The shape of the titration curve of a weak acid or weak base depends heavily on their identities and the K_a or K_b.

The titration curve in Figure $5.15.3a$ was created by calculating the starting pH of the acetic acid solution before any NaOH is added and then calculating the pH of the solution after adding increasing volumes of $NaOH$. The procedure is illustrated in the following subsection and Example $5.15.2$ for three points on the titration curve, using the pK_a of acetic acid (4.76 at 25°C; $K_a = 1.7 \times 10^{-5}$.

Calculating the pH of a Solution of a Weak Acid or a Weak Base

As explained discussed, if we know K_a or K_b and the initial concentration of a weak acid or a weak base, we can calculate the pH of a solution of a weak acid or a weak base by setting up a ICE table (i.e, initial concentrations, changes in concentrations, and final concentrations). In this situation, the initial concentration of acetic acid is 0.100 M. If we define x as $[\mathrm{H^+}]$ due to the dissociation of the acid, then the table of concentrations for the ionization of 0.100 M acetic acid is as follows:

$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H(aq) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2^-}$$

table of concentrations for the ionization of 0.100 M acetic acid

ICE	$[CH_3CO_2H]$	$[H^+]$	$[CH_3CO_2^-]$
initial	0.100	1.00×10^{-7}	0
change	−x	+x	+x
final	0.100 − x	x	x

In this and all subsequent examples, we will ignore $[H^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ due to the autoionization of water when calculating the final concentration. However, you should use Equation 16.45 and Equation 16.46 to check that this assumption is justified.

Inserting the expressions for the final concentrations into the equilibrium equation (and using approximations),

$$\begin{aligned} K_a &= \frac{[H^+][CH_3CO_2^-]}{[CH_3CO_2H]} \\ &= \frac{(x)(x)}{0.100-x} \\ &\approx \frac{x^2}{0.100} \\ &\approx 1.74 \times 10^{-5} \end{aligned}$$

Solving this equation gives $x=[H^+]=1.32\times10^{-3}\ M$. Thus the pH of a 0.100 M solution of acetic acid is as follows:

$$pH=-\log(1.32\times10^{-3})=2.879$$

pH at the Start of a Weak Acid/Strong Base Titration: https://youtu.be/AtdBKfrfJNg

Calculating the pH during the Titration of a Weak Acid or a Weak Base

Now consider what happens when we add 5.00 mL of 0.200 M NaOH to 50.00 mL of 0.100 M CH_3CO_2H (part (a) in Figure 5.15.3). Because the neutralization reaction proceeds to completion, all of the OH^- ions added will react with the acetic acid to generate acetate ion and water:

$$CH_3CO_2H_{(aq)}+OH^-_{(aq)}\rightarrow CH_3CO^-_{2\ (aq)}+H_2O_{(l)} \tag{5.15.2}$$

All problems of this type must be solved in two steps: a stoichiometric calculation followed by an equilibrium calculation. In the first step, we use the stoichiometry of the neutralization reaction to calculate the amounts of acid and conjugate base present in solution after the neutralization reaction has occurred. In the second step, we use the equilibrium equation to determine $[\mathrm{H^+}]$ of the resulting solution.

Step 1

To determine the amount of acid and conjugate base in solution after the neutralization reaction, we calculate the amount of $\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}$ in the original solution and the amount of $\mathrm{OH^-}$ in the NaOH solution that was added. The acetic acid solution contained

$$50.00\ \cancel{mL}(0.100\ mmol(\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H})/\ \cancel{mL})=5.00\ mmol(\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H})$$

The NaOH solution contained

5.00 mL=1.00 mmol $NaOH$

Comparing the amounts shows that CH_3CO_2H is in excess. Because OH^- reacts with CH_3CO_2H in a 1:1 stoichiometry, the amount of excess CH_3CO_2H is as follows:

5.00 mmol CH_3CO_2H − 1.00 mmol OH^- = 4.00 mmol CH_3CO_2H

Each 1 mmol of OH^- reacts to produce 1 mmol of acetate ion, so the final amount of $CH_3CO_2^-$ is 1.00 mmol.

The stoichiometry of the reaction is summarized in the following ICE table, which shows the numbers of moles of the various species, not their concentrations.

$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l)}$$

ICE table

ICE	$[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}]$	$[\mathrm{OH^-}]$	$[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}]$
initial	5.00 mmol	1.00 mmol	0 mmol
change	−1.00 mmol	−1.00 mmol	+1.00 mmol
final	4.00 mmol	0 mmol	1.00 mmol

This ICE table gives the initial amount of acetate and the final amount of OH^- ions as 0. Because an aqueous solution of acetic acid always contains at least a small amount of acetate ion in equilibrium with acetic acid, however, the initial acetate concentration is not actually 0. The value can be ignored in this calculation because the amount of $CH_3CO_2^-$ in equilibrium is insignificant compared to the amount of OH^- added. Moreover, due to the autoionization of water, no aqueous solution can contain 0 mmol of OH^-, but the amount of OH^- due to the autoionization of water is insignificant compared to the amount of OH^- added. We use the initial amounts of the reactants to determine the stoichiometry of the reaction and defer a consideration of the equilibrium until the second half of the problem.

Step 2

To calculate $[\mathrm{H^+}]$ at equilibrium following the addition of $NaOH$, we must first calculate $[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}]$ and $[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}]$ using the number of millimoles of each and the total volume of the solution at this point in the titration:

$$final\ volume = 50.00\ mL + 5.00\ mL = 55.00\ mL$$

$$[CH_3CO_2H] = \frac{4.00\ mmol\ CH_3CO_2H}{55.00\ mL} = 7.27 \times 10^{-2}\ M$$

$$\left[CH_3CO_2^-\right] = \frac{1.00\ mmol\ CH_3CO_2^-}{55.00\ mL} = 1.82 \times 10^{-2}\ M$$

Knowing the concentrations of acetic acid and acetate ion at equilibrium and K_a for acetic acid (1.74×10^{-5}), we can calculate $[H^+]$ at equilibrium:

$$K_a = \frac{\left[CH_3CO_2^-\right][H^+]}{[CH_3CO_2H]}$$

$$[H^+] = \frac{K_a[CH_3CO_2H]}{\left[CH_3CO_2^-\right]} = \frac{(1.72 \times 10^{-5})(7.27 \times 10^{-2}\ M)}{(1.82 \times 10^{-2})} = 6.95 \times 10^{-5}\ M$$

Calculating $-\log[\mathrm{H^+}]$ gives

$$pH = -\log(6.95 \times 10^{-5}) = 4.158.$$

Comparing the titration curves for HCl and acetic acid in Figure $5.15.3a$, we see that adding the same amount (5.00 mL) of 0.200 M NaOH to 50 mL of a 0.100 M solution of both acids causes a much smaller pH change for HCl (from 1.00 to 1.14) than for acetic acid (2.88 to 4.16). This is consistent with the qualitative description of the shapes of the titration curves at the beginning of this section. In Example $5.15.2$, we calculate another point for constructing the titration curve of acetic acid.

pH Before the Equivalence Point of a Weak Acid/Strong Base Titration:

https://youtu.be/znpwGCsefXc

Example 5.15.2

What is the pH of the solution after 25.00 mL of 0.200 M $NaOH$ is added to 50.00 mL of 0.100 M acetic acid?

Given: volume and molarity of base and acid

Asked for: pH

Strategy:

A. Write the balanced chemical equation for the reaction. Then calculate the initial numbers of millimoles of OH^- and CH_3CO_2H. Determine which species, if either, is present in excess.
B. Tabulate the results showing initial numbers, changes, and final numbers of millimoles.
C. If excess acetate is present after the reaction with OH^-, write the equation for the reaction of acetate with water. Use a tabular format to obtain the concentrations of all the species present.
D. Calculate K_b using the relationship $K_w = K_a K_b$. Calculate [OH−] and use this to calculate the pH of the solution.

Solution

A Ignoring the spectator ion (Na^+), the equation for this reaction is as follows:

$$CH_3CO_2H_{(aq)} + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow CH_3CO_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

The initial numbers of millimoles of OH^- and CH_3CO_2H are as follows:

25.00 mL(0.200 mmol OH−mL=5.00 mmol $OH-$

$$50.00\ mL(0.100CH_3CO_2HL = 5.00mmol\ CH_3CO_2H$$

The number of millimoles of OH^- equals the number of millimoles of CH_3CO_2H, so neither species is present in excess.

B Because the number of millimoles of OH^- added corresponds to the number of millimoles of acetic acid in solution, this is the equivalence point. The results of the neutralization reaction can be summarized in tabular form.

$$CH_3CO_2H_{(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

results of the neutralization reaction

ICE	$[CH_3CO_2H]$	$[OH^-]$	$[CH_3CO_2^-]$
initial	5.00 mmol	5.00 mmol	0 mmol

ICE	$[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}]$	$[\mathrm{OH^-}]$	$[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}]$
change	−5.00 mmol	−5.00 mmol	+5.00 mmol
final	0 mmol	0 mmol	5.00 mmol

C Because the product of the neutralization reaction is a weak base, we must consider the reaction of the weak base with water to calculate [H+] at equilibrium and thus the final pH of the solution. The initial concentration of acetate is obtained from the neutralization reaction:

$$[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2}] = \frac{5.00\ mmol\ CH_3CO_2^-}{(50.00 + 25.00)\ mL} = 6.67 \times 10^{-2}\ M$$

The equilibrium reaction of acetate with water is as follows:

$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2H(aq) + OH^-(aq)}$$

The equilibrium constant for this reaction is

$$K_b = \frac{K_w}{K_a} \tag{5.15.3}$$

where K_a is the acid ionization constant of acetic acid. We therefore define x as $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$ produced by the reaction of acetate with water. Here is the completed table of concentrations:

$$H_2O_{(l)} + CH_3CO^-_{2(aq)} \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2H_{(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)}$$

completed table of concentrations

	$[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}]$	$[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}]$	$[\mathrm{OH^-}]$
initial	0.0667	0	1.00 × 10−7
change	−x	+x	+x
final	(0.0667 − x)	x	x

D We can obtain K_b by substituting the known values into Equation 5.15.3:

$$K_b = \frac{K_w}{K_a} = \frac{1.01 \times 10^{-14}}{1.74 \times 10^{-5}} = 5.80 \times 10^{-10} \tag{5.15.4}$$

Substituting the expressions for the final values from the ICE table into Equation 5.15.4and solving for x:

$$\frac{x^2}{0.0667} = 5.80 \times 10^{-10}$$

$$x = \sqrt{(5.80 \times 10^{-10})(0.0667)}$$

$$= 6.22 \times 10^{-6}$$

Thus $[OH^-] = 6.22 \times 10^{-6}\ M$ and the pH of the final solution is 8.794 (Figure 5.15.3*a*). As expected for the titration of a weak acid, the pH at the equivalence point is greater than 7.00 because the product of the titration is a base, the acetate ion, which then reacts with water to produce $\mathrm{OH^-}$.

? Exercise 5.15.2

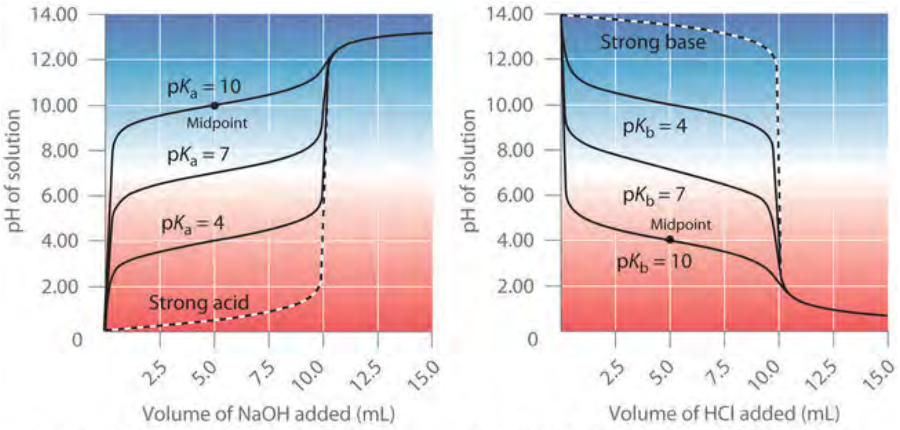
Calculate the pH of a solution prepared by adding 45.0 mL of a 0.213 M HCl solution to 125.0 mL of a 0.150 M solution of ammonia. The pK_b of ammonia is 4.75 at 25°C.

Answer

9.23

As shown in part (b) in Figure 5.15.3, the titration curve for NH3, a weak base, is the reverse of the titration curve for acetic acid. In particular, the pH at the equivalence point in the titration of a weak base is less than 7.00 because the titration produces an acid.

The identity of the weak acid or weak base being titrated strongly affects the shape of the titration curve. Figure 5.15.4 illustrates the shape of titration curves as a function of the pK_a or the pK_b. As the acid or the base being titrated becomes weaker (its pK_a or pK_b becomes larger), the pH change around the equivalence point decreases significantly. With very dilute solutions, the curve becomes so shallow that it can no longer be used to determine the equivalence point.



(a) Weak acids titrated with strong base **(b) Weak bases titrated with strong acid**

Figure 5.15.4: Effect of Acid or Base Strength on the Shape of Titration Curves. Unlike strong acids or bases, the shape of the titration curve for a weak acid or base depends on the pK_a or pK_b of the weak acid or base being titrated. (a) Solution pH as a function of the volume of 1.00 M NaOH added to 10.00 mL of 1.00 M solutions of weak acids with the indicated pK_a values. (b) Solution pH as a function of the volume of 1.00 M HCl added to 10.00 mL of 1.00 M solutions of weak bases with the indicated pK_b values. The shapes of the two sets of curves are essentially identical, but one is flipped vertically in relation to the other. Midpoints are indicated for the titration curves corresponding to pK_a = 10 and pK_b = 10. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

The titration curves of weak acids with strong base and weak bases titrated with strong acid are inverses of each other. Three weak acids and three weak bases with pKa and pKb of 4, 7, and 10 are used.

One point in the titration of a weak acid or a weak base is particularly important: the midpoint of a titration is defined as the point at which exactly enough acid (or base) has been added to neutralize one-half of the acid (or the base) originally present and occurs halfway to the equivalence point. The midpoint is indicated in Figures 5.15.4a and 5.15.4b for the two shallowest curves. By definition, at the midpoint of the titration of an acid, [HA] = [A−]. Recall that the ionization constant for a weak acid is as follows:

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][A^-]}{[HA]}$$

If $[HA] = [A^-]$, this reduces to $K_a = [H_3O^+]$. Taking the negative logarithm of both sides,

$$-\log K_a = -\log [H_3O+]$$

From the definitions of pK_a and pH, we see that this is identical to

$$pK_a = pH \tag{5.15.5}$$

Thus the pH at the midpoint of the titration of a weak acid is equal to the pK_a of the weak acid, as indicated in part (a) in Figure 5.15.4 for the weakest acid where we see that the midpoint for pK_a = 10 occurs at pH = 10. Titration methods can therefore be used to determine both the concentration and the pK_a (or the pK_b) of a weak acid (or a weak base).

> The pH at the midpoint of the titration of a weak acid is equal to the pK_a of the weak acid.

Titrations of Polyprotic Acids or Bases

When a strong base is added to a solution of a polyprotic acid, the neutralization reaction occurs in stages. The most acidic group is titrated first, followed by the next most acidic, and so forth. If the pK_a values are separated by at least three pK_a units, then the overall titration curve shows well-resolved "steps" corresponding to the titration of each proton. A titration of the triprotic acid H_3PO_4 with NaOH is illustrated in Figure 5.15.5 and shows two well-defined steps: the first midpoint corresponds to pK_a1, and the second midpoint corresponds to pK_{a2}. Because HPO_4^{2-} is such a weak acid, pK_{a3} has such a high value that the third step cannot be resolved using 0.100 M $NaOH$ as the titrant.

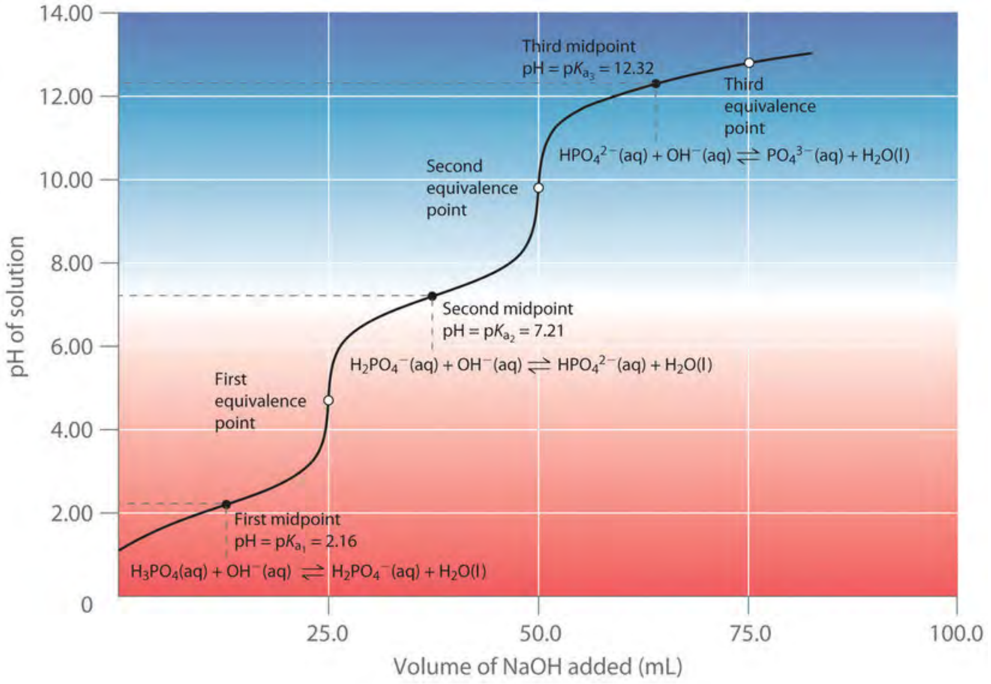
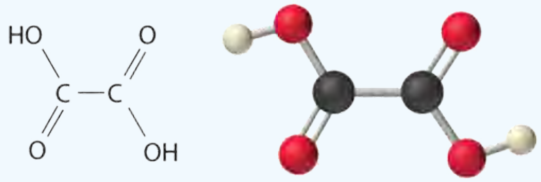


Figure 5.15.5: Titration Curve for Phosphoric Acid (H_3PO_4, a Typical Polyprotic Acid. The curve for the titration of 25.0 mL of a 0.100 M H_3PO_4 solution with 0.100 M NaOH along with the species in solution at each Ka is shown. Note the two distinct equivalence points corresponding to deprotonation of H_3PO_4 at pH ≈ 4.6 and $H_2PO_4^{2-}$ at pH ≈ 9.8. Because HPO_4^{2-} is a very weak acid, the third equivalence point, at pH ≈ 13, is not well defined. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

The titration curve for the reaction of a polyprotic base with a strong acid is the mirror image of the curve shown in Figure 5.15.5. The initial pH is high, but as acid is added, the pH decreases in steps if the successive pK_b values are well separated. Table E1 lists the ionization constants and pK_a values for some common polyprotic acids and bases.

✓ Example 5.15.3

Calculate the pH of a solution prepared by adding 55.0 mL of a 0.120 M $NaOH$ solution to 100.0 mL of a 0.0510 M solution of oxalic acid (HO_2CCO_2H), a diprotic acid (abbreviated as H_2ox). Oxalic acid, the simplest dicarboxylic acid, is found in rhubarb and many other plants. Rhubarb leaves are toxic because they contain the calcium salt of the fully deprotonated form of oxalic acid, the oxalate ion ($O_2CCO_2^{2-}$, abbreviated ox^{2-}).Oxalate salts are toxic for two reasons. First, oxalate salts of divalent cations such as Ca^{2+} are insoluble at neutral pH but soluble at low pH. As a result, calcium oxalate dissolves in the dilute acid of the stomach, allowing oxalate to be absorbed and transported into cells, where it can react with calcium to form tiny calcium oxalate crystals that damage tissues. Second, oxalate forms stable complexes with metal ions, which can alter the distribution of metal ions in biological fluids.



oxalic acid

Given: volume and concentration of acid and base

Asked for: pH

Strategy:

A. Calculate the initial millimoles of the acid and the base. Use a tabular format to determine the amounts of all the species in solution.
B. Calculate the concentrations of all the species in the final solution. Determine $[\mathrm{H}+]$ and convert this value to pH.

Solution:

A Table E5 gives the pK_a values of oxalic acid as 1.25 and 3.81. Again we proceed by determining the millimoles of acid and base initially present:

$$100.00\ m\cancel{L}\left(\frac{0.510\ mmol\ H_2ox}{m\cancel{L}}\right)=5.10\ mmol\ H_2ox$$

$$55.00\ m\cancel{L}\left(\frac{0.120\ mmol\ NaOH}{m\cancel{L}}\right)=6.60\ mmol\ NaOH$$

The strongest acid (H_2ox) reacts with the base first. This leaves (6.60 − 5.10) = 1.50 mmol of OH^- to react with Hox−, forming ox^{2-} and $\mathrm{H_2O}$. The reactions can be written as follows:

$$\underset{5.10\ mmol}{H_2ox}+\underset{6.60\ mmol}{OH^-}\rightarrow\underset{5.10\ mmol}{Hox^-}+\underset{5.10\ mmol}{H_2O}$$

$$\underset{5.10\ mmol}{Hox^-}+\underset{1.50\ mmol}{OH^-}\rightarrow\underset{1.50\ mmol}{ox^{2-}}+\underset{1.50\ mmol}{H_2O}$$

In tabular form,

Solutions to Example 17.3.3

	$\mathrm{H_2ox}$	$\mathrm{OH^-}$	$\mathrm{Hox^-}$	$\mathrm{ox^{2-}}$
initial	5.10 mmol	6.60 mmol	0 mmol	0 mmol
change (step 1)	−5.10 mmol	−5.10 mmol	+5.10 mmol	0 mmol
final (step 1)	0 mmol	1.50 mmol	5.10 mmol	0 mmol
change (step 2)	—	−1.50 mmol	−1.50 mmol	+1.50 mmol
final	0 mmol	0 mmol	3.60 mmol	1.50 mmol

B The equilibrium between the weak acid ($\mathrm{Hox^-}$) and its conjugate base ($\mathrm{ox^{2-}}$) in the final solution is determined by the magnitude of the second ionization constant, $K_{a2}=10^{-3.81}=1.6\times10^{-4}$. To calculate the pH of the solution, we need to know $[\mathrm{H^+}]$, which is determined using exactly the same method as in the acetic acid titration in Example $5.15.2$

$$\text{final volume of solution}=100.0\,mL+55.0\,mL=155.0\,mL$$

Thus the concentrations of $\mathrm{Hox^-}$ and $\mathrm{ox^{2-}}$ are as follows:

$$[Hox^-]=\frac{3.60\ mmol\ Hox^-}{155.0\ mL}=2.32\times10^{-2}\ M$$

$$[ox^{2-}]=\frac{1.50\ mmol\ ox^{2-}}{155.0\ mL}=9.68\times10^{-3}\ M$$

We can now calculate [H+] at equilibrium using the following equation:

$$K_{a2}=\frac{[ox^{2-}]\,[H^+]}{[Hox^-]}$$

Rearranging this equation and substituting the values for the concentrations of $\mathrm{Hox^-}$ and $\mathrm{ox^{2-}}$,

$$[H^+]=\frac{K_{a2}\,[Hox^-]}{[ox^{2-}]}=\frac{(1.6\times10^{-4})\,(2.32\times10^{-2})}{(9.68\times10^{-3})}=3.7\times10^{-4}\ M$$

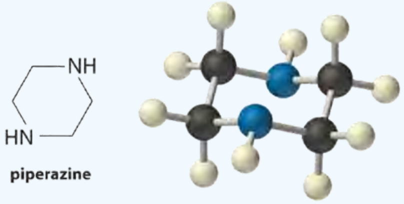
So

$$pH = -\log\left[H^+\right] = -\log\left(3.7 \times 10^{-4}\right) = 3.43$$

This answer makes chemical sense because the pH is between the first and second pK_a values of oxalic acid, as it must be. We added enough hydroxide ion to completely titrate the first, more acidic proton (which should give us a pH greater than pK_{a1}), but we added only enough to titrate less than half of the second, less acidic proton, with pK_{a2}. If we had added exactly enough hydroxide to completely titrate the first proton plus half of the second, we would be at the midpoint of the second step in the titration, and the pH would be 3.81, equal to pK_{a2}.

? Exercise 5.15.3: Piperazine

Piperazine is a diprotic base used to control intestinal parasites (“worms”) in pets and humans. A dog is given 500 mg (5.80 mmol) of piperazine (pK_{b1} = 4.27, pK_{b2} = 8.67). If the dog’s stomach initially contains 100 mL of 0.10 M HCl (pH = 1.00), calculate the pH of the stomach contents after ingestion of the piperazine.



Answer

pH=4.9

Indicators

In practice, most acid–base titrations are not monitored by recording the pH as a function of the amount of the strong acid or base solution used as the titrant. Instead, an acid–base indicator is often used that, if carefully selected, undergoes a dramatic color change at the pH corresponding to the equivalence point of the titration. Indicators are weak acids or bases that exhibit intense colors that vary with pH. The conjugate acid and conjugate base of a good indicator have very different colors so that they can be distinguished easily. Some indicators are colorless in the conjugate acid form but intensely colored when deprotonated (phenolphthalein, for example), which makes them particularly useful.

We can describe the chemistry of indicators by the following general equation:

$$\mathrm{HIn(aq)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H^+(aq)} + \mathrm{In^-(aq)}$$

where the protonated form is designated by HIn and the conjugate base by $\mathrm{In^-}$. The ionization constant for the deprotonation of indicator HIn is as follows:

$$K_{In} = \frac{[\mathrm{H^+}][\mathrm{In^-}]}{[\mathrm{HIn}]} \tag{5.15.6}$$

The pK_{in} (its pK_a) determines the pH at which the indicator changes color.

Many different substances can be used as indicators, depending on the particular reaction to be monitored. For example, red cabbage juice contains a mixture of colored substances that change from deep red at low pH to light blue at intermediate pH to yellow at high pH. Similarly, *Hydrangea macrophylla* flowers can be blue, red, pink, light purple, or dark purple depending on the soil pH (Figure 5.15.6). Acidic soils will produce blue flowers, whereas alkaline soils will produce pinkish flowers.

Irrespective of the origins, a good indicator must have the following properties:

- The color change must be easily detected.
- The color change must be rapid.
- The indicator molecule must not react with the substance being titrated.
- To minimize errors, the indicator should have a pK_{in} that is within one pH unit of the expected pH at the equivalence point of the titration.

Figure 5.15.6: Naturally occurring pH indicators can be found in red cabbage and Hydrangea macrophylla flowers. Red Cabbage image (CC BY-SA 3.0; KENPEI via Wikipedia) and Hydrangea macrophylla flowers (pixabay).

Synthetic indicators have been developed that meet these criteria and cover virtually the entire pH range. Figure 5.15.7 shows the approximate pH range over which some common indicators change color and their change in color. In addition, some indicators (such as thymol blue) are polyprotic acids or bases, which change color twice at widely separated pH values.

Indicator	**pK_{in}**	**Color change**
Alizarin yellow R	11.0	yellow to red
Thymolphthalein	9.9	colorless to blue
Phenolphthalein	9.5	colorless to pink
Thymol blue	9.2	yellow to blue
Phenol red	7.4	yellow to red
Bromothymol blue	7.3	yellow to blue
Bromocresol purple	6.4	yellow to purple
Ethyl red	5.4	colorless to red
Resorcin blue	5.3	red to blue
Resazurin	5.1	orange to violet
Methyl red	5.0	red to yellow
Bromophenol blue	4.1	yellow to blue
Thymol blue	1.7	red to yellow
Malachite green	1.3	yellow to turquoise
Methyl violet	0.8	yellow to blue

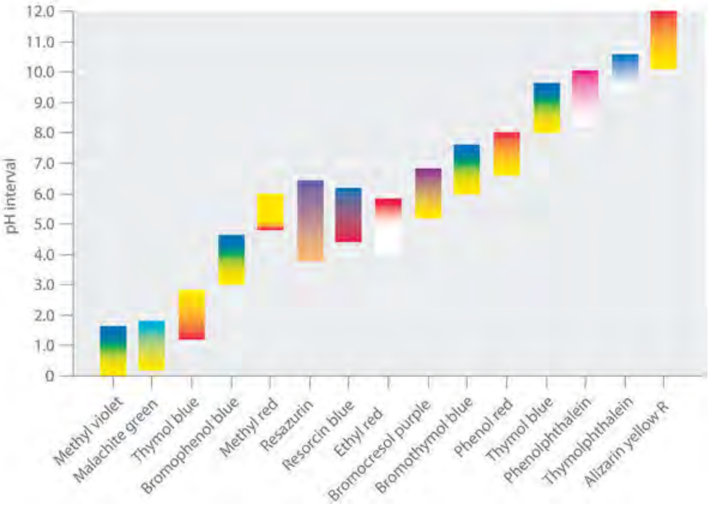


Figure 5.15.7: Some Common Acid–Base Indicators. Approximate colors are shown, along with pK_{in} values and the pH range over which the color changes. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

It is important to be aware that an indicator does not change color abruptly at a particular pH value; instead, it actually undergoes a pH titration just like any other acid or base. As the concentration of HIn decreases and the concentration of In− increases, the color of the solution slowly changes from the characteristic color of HIn to that of In−. As we will see later, the [In−]/[HIn] ratio changes from 0.1 at a pH one unit below pKin to 10 at a pH one unit above pKin. Thus most indicators change color over a pH range of about two pH units.

We have stated that a good indicator should have a pKin value that is close to the expected pH at the equivalence point. For a strong acid–strong base titration, the choice of the indicator is not especially critical due to the very large change in pH that occurs around the equivalence point. In contrast, using the wrong indicator for a titration of a weak acid or a weak base can result in relatively large errors, as illustrated in Figure 5.15.8 This figure shows plots of pH versus volume of base added for the titration of 50.0 mL of a 0.100 M solution of a strong acid (HCl) and a weak acid (acetic acid) with 0.100 M $NaOH$. The pH ranges over which two common indicators (methyl red, $pK_{in} = 5.0$, and phenolphthalein, $pK_{in} = 9.5$) change color are also shown. The horizontal bars indicate the pH ranges over which both indicators change color cross the HCl titration curve, where it is almost vertical. Hence both indicators change color when essentially the same volume of NaOH has been added (about 50 mL), which corresponds to the equivalence point. In contrast, the titration of acetic acid will give very different results depending on whether methyl red or phenolphthalein is used as the indicator. Although the pH range over which phenolphthalein changes color is slightly greater than the pH at the equivalence point of the strong acid titration, the error will be negligible due to the slope of this portion of the titration curve. Just as with the HCl titration, the phenolphthalein indicator will turn pink when about 50 mL of NaOH has been added to the acetic acid solution. In contrast, methyl red begins to change from red to yellow around pH 5, which is near the midpoint of the acetic acid titration, not the equivalence point. Adding only about 25–30 mL of NaOH will therefore cause the methyl red indicator to change color, resulting in a huge error.

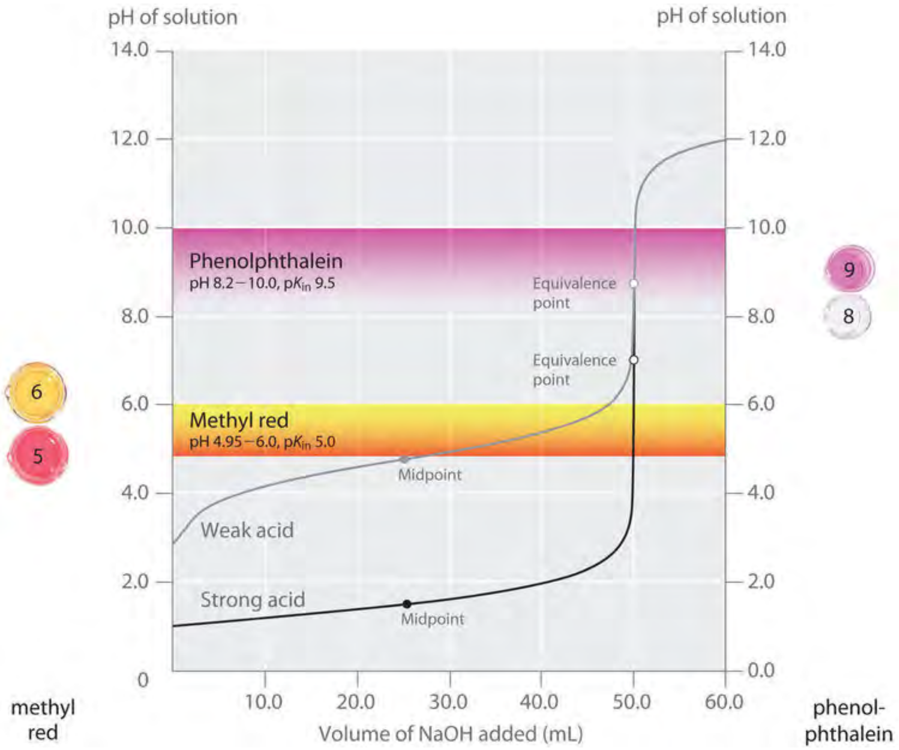


Figure 5.15.8: Choosing the Correct Indicator for an Acid–Base Titration. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

If the pH of the solution is between 4.95 and 6 then methyl red should be used. If the pH is between 8,2 and 10 then phenolphthalein should be used.

The graph shows the results obtained using two indicators (methyl red and phenolphthalein) for the titration of 0.100 M solutions of a strong acid (HCl) and a weak acid (acetic acid) with 0.100 M $NaOH$. Due to the steepness of the titration curve of a strong acid around the equivalence point, either indicator will rapidly change color at the equivalence point for the titration of the strong acid. In contrast, the pKin for methyl red (5.0) is very close to the pK_a of acetic acid (4.76); the midpoint of the color change for methyl red occurs near the midpoint of the titration, rather than at the equivalence point.

In general, for titrations of strong acids with strong bases (and vice versa), any indicator with a pKin between about 4.0 and 10.0 will do. For the titration of a weak acid, however, the pH at the equivalence point is greater than 7.0, so an indicator such as phenolphthalein or thymol blue, with pKin > 7.0, should be used. Conversely, for the titration of a weak base, where the pH at the equivalence point is less than 7.0, an indicator such as methyl red or bromocresol blue, with pKin < 7.0, should be used.

The existence of many different indicators with different colors and pKin values also provides a convenient way to estimate the pH of a solution without using an expensive electronic pH meter and a fragile pH electrode. Paper or plastic strips impregnated with combinations of indicators are used as “pH paper,” which allows you to estimate the pH of a solution by simply dipping a piece of pH paper into it and comparing the resulting color with the standards printed on the container (Figure 5.15.9).

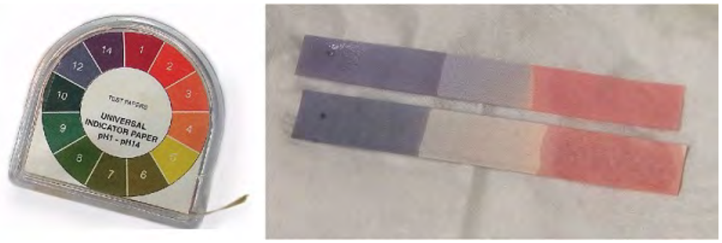


Figure 5.15.9: pH Paper. pH paper contains a set of indicators that change color at different pH values. The approximate pH of a solution can be determined by simply dipping a paper strip into the solution and comparing the color to the standards provided. (CC BY-SA-NC; Anonymous by request)

pH Indicators: pH Indicators(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

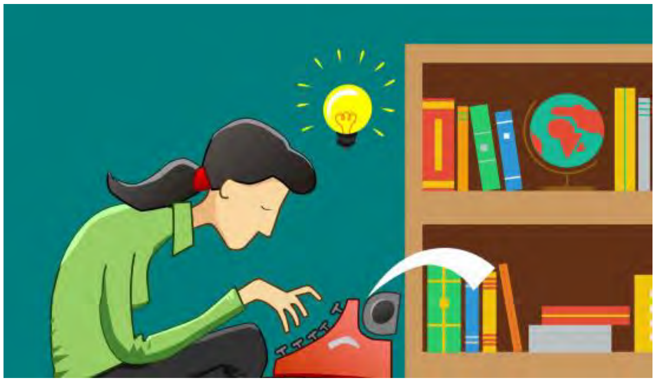
Summary and Takeaway

Plots of acid–base titrations generate titration curves that can be used to calculate the pH, the pOH, the pK_a, and the pK_b of the system. The shape of a titration curve, a plot of pH versus the amount of acid or base added, provides important information about what is occurring in solution during a titration. The shapes of titration curves for weak acids and bases depend dramatically on the identity of the compound. The equivalence point of an acid–base titration is the point at which exactly enough acid or base has been added to react completely with the other component. The equivalence point in the titration of a strong acid or a strong base occurs at pH 7.0. In titrations of weak acids or weak bases, however, the pH at the equivalence point is greater or less than 7.0, respectively. The pH tends to change more slowly before the equivalence point is reached in titrations of weak acids and weak bases than in titrations of strong acids and strong bases. The pH at the midpoint, the point halfway on the titration curve to the equivalence point, is equal to the pK_a of the weak acid or the pK_b of the weak base. Thus titration methods can be used to determine both the concentration and the pK_a (or the pK_b) of a weak acid (or a weak base). Acid–base indicators are compounds that change color at a particular pH. They are typically weak acids or bases whose changes in color correspond to deprotonation or protonation of the indicator itself.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: Free Energy and Thermodynamics

6.1: Energy Spreads Out



Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

6.2: Spontaneous and Nonspontaneous Processes

Learning Objectives

- Distinguish between spontaneous and nonspontaneous processes
- Describe the dispersal of matter and energy that accompanies certain spontaneous processes

In this section, consider the differences between two types of changes in a system: Those that occur spontaneously and those that occur only with the continuous input of energy. In doing so, we'll gain an understanding as to why some systems are naturally inclined to change in one direction under certain conditions. We'll also gain insight into how the spontaneity of a process affects the distribution of energy and matter within the system.

Spontaneous and Nonspontaneous Processes

Processes have a natural tendency to occur in one direction under a given set of conditions. Water will naturally flow downhill, but uphill flow requires outside intervention such as the use of a pump. A spontaneous process is one that occurs naturally under certain conditions. A nonspontaneous process, on the other hand, will not take place unless it is "driven" by the continual input of energy from an external source. A process that is spontaneous in one direction under a particular set of conditions is nonspontaneous in the reverse direction. At room temperature and typical atmospheric pressure, for example, ice will spontaneously melt, but water will not spontaneously freeze.

The spontaneity of a process is *not* correlated to the speed of the process. A spontaneous change may be so rapid that it is essentially instantaneous or so slow that it cannot be observed over any practical period of time. To illustrate this concept, consider the decay of radioactive isotopes, a topic more thoroughly treated in the chapter on nuclear chemistry. Radioactive decay is by definition a spontaneous process in which the nuclei of unstable isotopes emit radiation as they are converted to more stable nuclei. All the decay processes occur spontaneously, but the rates at which different isotopes decay vary widely. Technetium-99m is a popular radioisotope for medical imaging studies that undergoes relatively rapid decay and exhibits a half-life of about six hours. Uranium-238 is the most abundant isotope of uranium, and its decay occurs much more slowly, exhibiting a half-life of more than four billion years (Figure $6.2.1$).

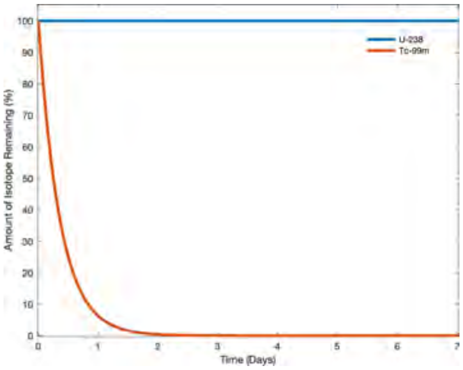


Figure $6.2.1$: Both U-238 and Tc-99m undergo spontaneous radioactive decay, but at drastically different rates. Over the course of one week, essentially all of a Tc-99m sample and none of a U-238 sample will have decayed. (CC by 4.0; Morgan Johnson via LibreTexts)

Two curves are shown to represent U-238 and Tc-99m respectively. The vertical axes represents the percentage of isotope remaining and the horizontal axes is the time that has elapsed in days.

As another example, consider the conversion of diamond into graphite (Figure $6.2.2$).

$$\mathrm{C(s, diamond)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{C(s, graphite)} \tag{6.2.1}$$

The phase diagram for carbon indicates that graphite is the stable form of this element under ambient atmospheric pressure, while diamond is the stable allotrope at very high pressures, such as those present during its geologic formation. Thermodynamic calculations of the sort described in the last section of this chapter indicate that the conversion of diamond to graphite at ambient pressure occurs spontaneously, yet diamonds are observed to exist, and persist, under these conditions. Though the process is spontaneous under typical ambient conditions, its rate is extremely slow, and so for all practical purposes diamonds are indeed "forever." Situations such as these emphasize the important distinction between the thermodynamic and the kinetic aspects of a process. In this particular case, diamonds are said to be *thermodynamically unstable* but *kinetically stable* under ambient conditions.

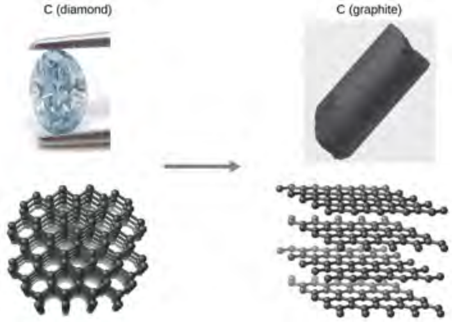


Figure $6.2.2$: The conversion of carbon from the diamond allotrope to the graphite allotrope is spontaneous at ambient pressure, but its rate is immeasurably slow at low to moderate temperatures. This process is known as graphitization, and its rate can be increased to easily measurable values at temperatures in the 1000–2000 K range. (credit "diamond" photo: modification of work by "Fancy Diamonds"/Flickr; credit "graphite" photo: modification of work by images-of-elements.com/carbon.php)

Comparison of diamond and graphite shown in its physical form as well as its molecular arrangement respectively.

Dispersal of Matter and Energy

As we extend our discussion of thermodynamic concepts toward the objective of predicting spontaneity, consider now an isolated system consisting of two flasks connected with a closed valve. Initially there is an ideal gas on the left and a vacuum on the right (Figure $6.2.3$). When the valve is opened, the gas spontaneously expands to fill both flasks. Recalling the definition of pressure-volume work from the chapter on thermochemistry, note that no work has been done because the pressure in a vacuum is zero.

$$w = -P\Delta V \tag{6.2.2}$$

$$= 0 \quad (\mathrm{P = 0\ in\ a\ vaccum}) \tag{6.2.3}$$

Note as well that since the system is isolated, no heat has been exchanged with the surroundings (q = 0). The first law of thermodynamics confirms that there has been no change in the system's internal energy as a result of this process.

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta U &= q + w && \text{(First Law of Thermodynamics)} \\ &= 0 + 0 = 0 && (6.2.4)\end{aligned}$$

The spontaneity of this process is therefore not a consequence of any change in energy that accompanies the process. Instead, the movement of the gas appears to be related to the greater, more *uniform dispersal of matter* that results when the gas is allowed to expand. Initially, the system was comprised of one flask containing matter and another flask containing nothing. After the spontaneous process took place, the matter was distributed both more widely (occupying twice its original volume) and more uniformly (present in equal amounts in each flask).

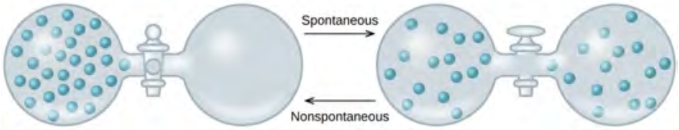


Figure 6.2.3: An isolated system consists of an ideal gas in one flask that is connected by a closed valve to a second flask containing a vacuum. Once the valve is opened, the gas spontaneously becomes evenly distributed between the flasks.

When the valve is closed, all of the gas molecules accumlating only in one side of the flask. The diagram with the open valve shows gas being equally distributed among the two flasks. The dispersion of the gas is labeled as spontaneous while the reverse is labeled as non spontaneous.

Now consider two objects at different temperatures: object X at temperature T_X and object Y at temperature T_Y, with $T_X > T_Y$ (Figure 6.2.4). When these objects come into contact, heat spontaneously flows from the hotter object (X) to the colder one (Y). This corresponds to a loss of thermal energy by X and a gain of thermal energy by Y.

$$q_X < 0 \quad \text{and} \quad q_Y = -q_X > 0 \tag{6.2.5}$$

From the perspective of this two-object system, there was no net gain or loss of thermal energy, rather the available thermal energy was redistributed among the two objects. This spontaneous process resulted in a *more uniform dispersal of energy*.

Figure 6.2.4:When two objects at different temperatures come in contact, heat spontaneously flows from the hotter to the colder object.

Two separated blocks. One is labeled X and the other labeled Y. The diagram next to it shows the two blocks in contact with one another.

As illustrated by the two processes described, an important factor in determining the spontaneity of a process is the extent to which it changes the dispersal or distribution of matter and/or energy. In each case, a spontaneous process took place that resulted in a more uniform distribution of matter or energy.

✓ Example 6.2.1: Redistribution of Matter during a Spontaneous Process

Describe how matter and energy are redistributed when the following spontaneous processes take place:

a. A solid sublimes.
b. A gas condenses.
c. A drop of food coloring added to a glass of water forms a solution with uniform color.

Solution


(a) (b) (c)

Figure 6.2.5:(credit a: modification of work by Jenny Downing; credit b: modification of work by "Fuzzy Gerdes"/Flickr; credit c: modification of work by Sahar Atwa)

This figure has three photos labeled, "a," "b," and "c." Photo a shows a glass with dry ice in water. There is a thick vapor coming from the top of the glass. Photo b shows water forming outside of a glass containing cold beverage. Photo c shows a sealed container that holds a red liquid.

a. *Sublimation* is the conversion of a solid (relatively high density) to a gas (much lesser density). This process yields a much greater dispersal of matter, since the molecules will occupy a much greater volume after the solid-to-gas transition. However, an input of energy from the surroundings ss required for the molecules to leave the solid phase and enter the gas phase.
b. *Condensation* is the conversion of a gas (relatively low density) to a liquid (much greater density). This process yields a much lesser dispersal of matter, since the molecules will occupy a much lesser volume after the gas-to-liquid transition. As the gas molecules move together to form the droplets of liquid, they form intermolecular forces and thus release energy to the surroundings.
c. The process in question is *dilution*. The food dye molecules initially occupy a much smaller volume (the drop of dye solution) than they occupy once the process is complete (in the full glass of water). The process therefore entails a greater dispersal of matter. The process may also yield a more uniform dispersal of matter, since the initial state of the system involves two regions of different dye concentrations (high in the drop, zero in the water), and the final state of the system contains a single dye concentration throughout. This process can occur with out a change in energy because the molecules have kinetic energy relative to the temperature of the water, and so will be constantly in motion.

? Exercise 6.2.1

Describe how matter and energy are redistributed when you empty a canister of compressed air into a room.

Answer

This process entails both a greater and more uniform dispersal of matter as the compressed air in the canister is permitted to expand into the lower-pressure air of the room. The process also requires an input of energy to disrupt the intermolecular forces between the closely-spaced gas molecules that are originally compressed into the container. If you were to touch the nozzle of the canister, you would notice that it is cold because the exiting molecules are taking energy away from their surroundings, and the canister is part of the surroundings.

Summary

Chemical and physical processes have a natural tendency to occur in one direction under certain conditions. A spontaneous process occurs without the need for a continual input of energy from some external source, while a nonspontaneous process requires such. Systems undergoing a spontaneous process may or may not experience a gain or loss of energy, but they will experience a change in the way matter and/or energy is distributed within the system. In this section we have only discussed nuclear decay, physical changes of pure substances, and macroscopic events such as water flowing downhill. In the following sections we will discuss mixtures and chemical reactions, situations in which the description of sponteneity becomes more challenging.

Glossary

nonspontaneous process
process that requires continual input of energy from an external source

spontaneous change
process that takes place without a continuous input of energy from an external source

---

6.3: Entropy and the Second Law of Thermodynamics

Learning Objectives

- To understand the relationship between internal energy and entropy.

The first law of thermodynamics governs changes in the state function we have called internal energy (U). Changes in the internal energy (ΔU) are closely related to changes in the enthalpy (ΔH), which is a measure of the heat flow between a system and its surroundings at constant pressure. You also learned previously that the enthalpy change for a chemical reaction can be calculated using tabulated values of enthalpies of formation. This information, however, does not tell us whether a particular process or reaction will occur spontaneously.

Let's consider a familiar example of spontaneous change. If a hot frying pan that has just been removed from the stove is allowed to come into contact with a cooler object, such as cold water in a sink, heat will flow from the hotter object to the cooler one, in this case usually releasing steam. Eventually both objects will reach the same temperature, at a value between the initial temperatures of the two objects. This transfer of heat from a hot object to a cooler one obeys the first law of thermodynamics: energy is conserved.

Now consider the same process in reverse. Suppose that a hot frying pan in a sink of cold water were to become hotter while the water became cooler. As long as the same amount of thermal energy was gained by the frying pan and lost by the water, the first law of thermodynamics would be satisfied. Yet we all know that such a process cannot occur: heat always flows from a hot object to a cold one, never in the reverse direction. That is, by itself the magnitude of the heat flow associated with a process does not predict whether the process will occur spontaneously.

For many years, chemists and physicists tried to identify a single measurable quantity that would enable them to predict whether a particular process or reaction would occur spontaneously. Initially, many of them focused on enthalpy changes and hypothesized that an exothermic process would always be spontaneous. But although it is true that many, if not most, spontaneous processes are exothermic, there are also many spontaneous processes that are not exothermic. For example, at a pressure of 1 atm, ice melts spontaneously at temperatures greater than 0°C, yet this is an endothermic process because heat is absorbed. Similarly, many salts (such as NH_4NO_3, NaCl, and KBr) dissolve spontaneously in water even though they absorb heat from the surroundings as they dissolve (i.e., $\Delta H_{soln} > 0$). Reactions can also be both spontaneous and highly endothermic, like the reaction of barium hydroxide with ammonium thiocyanate shown in Figure $6.3.1$.

Figure $6.3.1$: An Endothermic Reaction. The reaction of barium hydroxide with ammonium thiocyanate is spontaneous but highly endothermic, so water, one product of the reaction, quickly freezes into slush. When water is placed on a block of wood under the flask, the highly endothermic reaction that takes place in the flask freezes water that has been placed under the beaker, so the flask becomes frozen to the wood. For a full video: see www.youtube.com/watch?v=GQkJI-Nq3Os.

Thus enthalpy is not the only factor that determines whether a process is spontaneous. For example, after a cube of sugar has dissolved in a glass of water so that the sucrose molecules are uniformly dispersed in a dilute solution, they never spontaneously come back together in solution to form a sugar cube. Moreover, the molecules of a gas remain evenly distributed throughout the entire volume of a glass bulb and never spontaneously assemble in only one portion of the available volume. To help explain why these phenomena proceed spontaneously in only one direction requires an additional state function called **entropy (S)**, a thermodynamic property of all substances that is proportional to their degree of "disorder". In Chapter 13, we introduced the concept of entropy in relation to solution formation. Here we further explore the nature of this state function and define it mathematically.

Entropy

Chemical and physical changes in a system may be accompanied by either an increase or a decrease in the disorder of the system, corresponding to an increase in entropy ($\Delta S > 0$) or a decrease in entropy ($\Delta S < 0$), respectively. As with any other state function, the change in entropy is defined as the difference between the entropies of the final and initial states: $\Delta S = S_f - S_i$.

When a gas expands into a vacuum, its entropy increases because the increased volume allows for greater atomic or molecular disorder. The greater the number of atoms or molecules in the gas, the greater the disorder. The magnitude of the entropy of a system depends on the number of microscopic states, or microstates, associated with it (in this case, the number of atoms or molecules); that is, the greater the number of microstates, the greater the entropy.

We can illustrate the concepts of microstates and entropy using a deck of playing cards, as shown in Figure 6.3.2. In any new deck, the 52 cards are arranged by four suits, with each suit arranged in descending order. If the cards are shuffled, however, there are approximately 10^{68} different ways they might be arranged, which corresponds to 10^{68} different microscopic states. The entropy of an ordered new deck of cards is therefore low, whereas the entropy of a randomly shuffled deck is high. Card games assign a higher value to a hand that has a low degree of disorder. In games such as five-card poker, only 4 of the 2,598,960 different possible hands, or microstates, contain the highly ordered and valued arrangement of cards called a royal flush, almost 1.1 million hands contain one pair, and more than 1.3 million hands are completely disordered and therefore have no value. Because the last two arrangements are far more probable than the first, the value of a poker hand is inversely proportional to its entropy.

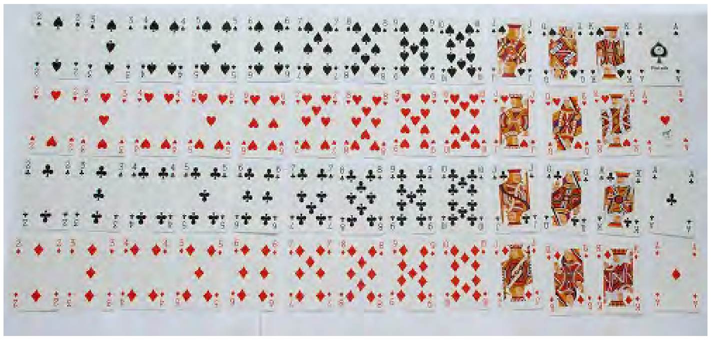


Figure 6.3.2: Illustrating Low- and High-Entropy States with a Deck of Playing Cards. An new, unshuffled deck has only a single arrangement, so there is only one microstate. In contrast, a randomly shuffled deck can have any one of approximately 10^{68} different arrangements, which correspond to 10^{68} different microstates. (CC BY-3.0 ; Trainler).

We can see how to calculate these kinds of probabilities for a chemical system by considering the possible arrangements of a sample of four gas molecules in a two-bulb container (Figure 6.3.3). There are five possible arrangements: all four molecules in the left bulb (I); three molecules in the left bulb and one in the right bulb (II); two molecules in each bulb (III); one molecule in the left bulb and three molecules in the right bulb (IV); and four molecules in the right bulb (V). If we assign a different color to each molecule to keep track of it for this discussion (remember, however, that in reality the molecules are indistinguishable from one another), we can see that there are 16 different ways the four molecules can be distributed in the bulbs, each corresponding to a particular microstate. As shown in Figure 6.3.3, arrangement I is associated with a single microstate, as is arrangement V, so each arrangement has a probability of 1/16. Arrangements II and IV each have a probability of 4/16 because each can exist in four microstates. Similarly, six different microstates can occur as arrangement III, making the probability of this arrangement 6/16. Thus the arrangement that we would expect to encounter, with half the gas molecules in each bulb, is the most probable arrangement. The others are not impossible but simply less likely.

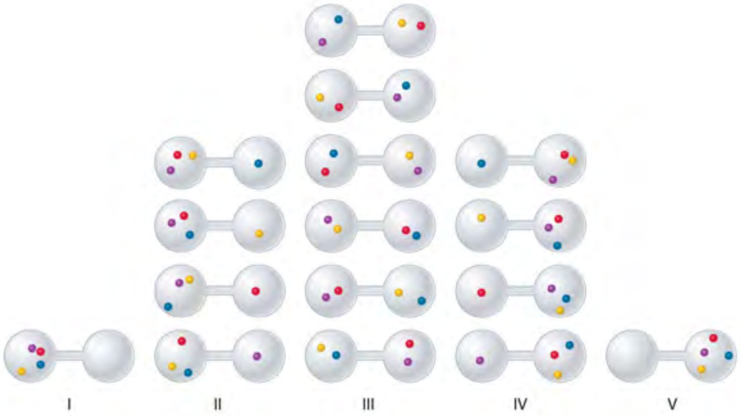


Figure 6.3.3: The Possible Microstates for a Sample of Four Gas Molecules in Two Bulbs of Equal Volume

There are 16 different ways to distribute four gas molecules between the bulbs, with each distribution corresponding to a particular microstate. Arrangements I and V each produce a single microstate with a probability of 1/16. This particular arrangement is so improbable that it is likely not observed. Arrangements II and IV each produce four microstates, with a probability of 4/16. Arrangement III, with half the gas molecules in each bulb, has a probability of 6/16. It is the one encompassing the most microstates, so it is the most probable.

Instead of four molecules of gas, let's now consider 1 L of an ideal gas at standard temperature and pressure (STP), which contains 2.69×10^{22} molecules (6.022×10^{23} molecules/22.4 L). If we allow the sample of gas to expand into a second 1 L container, the probability of finding all 2.69×10^{22} molecules in one container and none in the other at any given time is extremely small, approximately $\frac{2}{2.69 \times 10^{22}}$. The probability of such an occurrence is effectively zero. Although nothing prevents the molecules in the gas sample from occupying only one of the two bulbs, that particular arrangement is so improbable that it is never actually observed. The probability of arrangements with essentially equal numbers of molecules in each bulb is quite high, however, because there are many equivalent microstates in which the molecules are distributed equally. Hence a macroscopic sample of a gas occupies all of the space available to it, simply because this is the most probable arrangement.

A disordered system has a greater number of possible microstates than does an ordered system, so it has a higher entropy. This is most clearly seen in the entropy changes that accompany phase transitions, such as solid to liquid or liquid to gas. As you know, a crystalline solid is composed of an ordered array of molecules, ions, or atoms that occupy fixed positions in a lattice, whereas the molecules in a liquid are free to move and tumble within the volume of the liquid; molecules in a gas have even more freedom to move than those in a liquid. Each degree of motion increases the number of available microstates, resulting in a higher entropy. Thus the entropy of a system must increase during melting ($\Delta S_{fus} > 0$). Similarly, when a liquid is converted to a vapor, the greater freedom of motion of the molecules in the gas phase means that $\Delta S_{vap} > 0$. Conversely, the reverse processes (condensing a vapor to form a liquid or freezing a liquid to form a solid) must be accompanied by a decrease in the entropy of the system: $\Delta S < 0$.

> Entropy (S) is a thermodynamic property of all substances that is proportional to their degree of disorder. The greater the number of possible microstates for a system, the greater the disorder and the higher the entropy.

Experiments show that the magnitude of ΔS_{vap} is 80–90 J/(mol•K) for a wide variety of liquids with different boiling points. However, liquids that have highly ordered structures due to hydrogen bonding or other intermolecular interactions tend to have significantly higher values of ΔS_{vap}. For instance, ΔS_{vap} for water is 102 J/(mol•K). Another process that is accompanied by entropy changes is the formation of a solution. As illustrated in Figure 6.3.4, the formation of a liquid solution from a crystalline solid (the solute) and a liquid solvent is expected to result in an increase in the number of available microstates of the system and hence its entropy. Indeed, dissolving a substance such as NaCl in water disrupts both the ordered crystal lattice of NaCl and the ordered hydrogen-bonded structure of water, leading to an increase in the entropy of the system. At the same time, however, each dissolved Na^+ ion becomes hydrated by an ordered arrangement of at least six water molecules, and the Cl^- ions also cause the water to adopt a particular local structure. Both of these effects increase the order of the system, leading to a decrease in entropy. The overall entropy change for the formation of a solution therefore depends on the relative magnitudes of these opposing factors. In the case of an NaCl solution, disruption of the crystalline NaCl structure and the hydrogen-bonded interactions in water is quantitatively more important, so $\Delta S_{soln} > 0$.

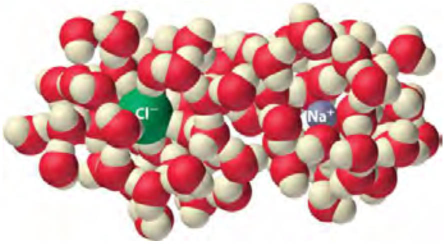


Figure 6.3.4: The Effect of Solution Formation on Entropy

Dissolving NaCl in water results in an increase in the entropy of the system. Each hydrated ion, however, forms an ordered arrangement with water molecules, which decreases the entropy of the system. The magnitude of the increase is greater than the magnitude of the decrease, so the overall entropy change for the formation of an NaCl solution is positive.

✓ Example 6.3.1

Predict which substance in each pair has the higher entropy and justify your answer.

a. 1 mol of NH_3(g) or 1 mol of He(g), both at 25°C
b. 1 mol of Pb(s) at 25°C or 1 mol of Pb(l) at 800°C

Given: amounts of substances and temperature

Asked for: higher entropy

Strategy:

From the number of atoms present and the phase of each substance, predict which has the greater number of available microstates and hence the higher entropy.

Solution:

a. Both substances are gases at 25°C, but one consists of He atoms and the other consists of NH_3 molecules. With four atoms instead of one, the NH_3 molecules have more motions available, leading to a greater number of microstates. Hence we predict that the NH_3 sample will have the higher entropy.
b. The nature of the atomic species is the same in both cases, but the phase is different: one sample is a solid, and one is a liquid. Based on the greater freedom of motion available to atoms in a liquid, we predict that the liquid sample will have the higher entropy.

? Exercise 6.3.1

Predict which substance in each pair has the higher entropy and justify your answer.

a. 1 mol of He(g) at 10 K and 1 atm pressure or 1 mol of He(g) at 250°C and 0.2 atm
b. a mixture of 3 mol of H_2(g) and 1 mol of N_2(g) at 25°C and 1 atm or a sample of 2 mol of NH_3(g) at 25°C and 1 atm

Answer a

1 mol of He(g) at 250°C and 0.2 atm (higher temperature and lower pressure indicate greater volume and more microstates)

Answer a

a mixture of 3 mol of H_2(g) and 1 mol of N_2(g) at 25°C and 1 atm (more molecules of gas are present)

Video Solution

Reversible and Irreversible Changes

Changes in entropy (ΔS), together with changes in enthalpy (ΔH), enable us to predict in which direction a chemical or physical change will occur spontaneously. Before discussing how to do so, however, we must understand the difference between a reversible process and an irreversible one. In a reversible process, every intermediate state between the extremes is an equilibrium state, regardless of the direction of the change. In contrast, an irreversible process is one in which the intermediate states are not equilibrium states, so change occurs spontaneously in only one direction. As a result, a reversible process can change direction at any time, whereas an irreversible process cannot. When a gas expands reversibly against an external pressure such as a piston, for example, the expansion can be reversed at any time by reversing the motion of the piston; once the gas is compressed, it can be allowed to expand again, and the process can continue indefinitely. In contrast, the expansion of a gas into a vacuum (P_{ext} = 0) is irreversible because the external pressure is measurably less than the internal pressure of the gas. No equilibrium states exist, and the gas expands irreversibly. When gas escapes from a microscopic hole in a balloon into a vacuum, for example, the process is irreversible; the direction of airflow cannot change.

Because work done during the expansion of a gas depends on the opposing external pressure ($w = - P_{ext}\Delta V$), work done in a reversible process is always equal to or greater than work done in a corresponding irreversible process: $w_{rev} \geq w_{irrev}$. Whether a process is reversible or irreversible, ΔU = q + w. Because U is a state function, the magnitude of ΔU does not depend on reversibility and is independent of the path taken. So

$$\Delta U = q_{rev} + w_{rev} = q_{irrev} + w_{irrev} \tag{6.3.1}$$

> Work done in a reversible process is always equal to or greater than work done in a corresponding irreversible process: $w_{rev} \geq w_{irrev}$.

In other words, ΔU for a process is the same whether that process is carried out in a reversible manner or an irreversible one. We now return to our earlier definition of entropy, using the magnitude of the heat flow for a reversible process (q_{rev}) to define entropy quantitatively.

The Relationship between Internal Energy and Entropy

Because the quantity of heat transferred (q_{rev}) is directly proportional to the absolute temperature of an object (T) ($q_{rev} \propto T$), the hotter the object, the greater the amount of heat transferred. Moreover, adding heat to a system increases the kinetic energy of the component atoms and molecules and hence their disorder ($\Delta S \propto q_{rev}$). Combining these relationships for any reversible process,

$$q_{\text{rev}} = T\Delta S \text{ and } \Delta S = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T} \tag{6.3.2}$$

Because the numerator (q_{rev}) is expressed in units of energy (joules), the units of ΔS are joules/kelvin (J/K). Recognizing that the work done in a reversible process at constant pressure is $w_{rev} = -P\Delta V$, we can express Equation 6.3.1 as follows:

$$\Delta U = q_{rev} + w_{rev} \tag{6.3.3}$$

$$= T\Delta S - P\Delta V \tag{6.3.4}$$

Thus the change in the internal energy of the system is related to the change in entropy, the absolute temperature, and the PV work done.

To illustrate the use of Equation 6.3.2 and Equation 6.3.4, we consider two reversible processes before turning to an irreversible process. When a sample of an ideal gas is allowed to expand reversibly at constant temperature, heat must be added to the gas during expansion to keep its T constant (Figure $6.3.5$). The internal energy of the gas does not change because the temperature of the gas does not change; that is, $\Delta U = 0$ and $q_{rev} = -w_{rev}$. During expansion, ΔV > 0, so the gas performs work on its surroundings:

$$w_{rev} = -P\Delta V < 0.$$

According to Equation 6.3.4, this means that q_{rev} must increase during expansion; that is, the gas must absorb heat from the surroundings during expansion, and the surroundings must give up that same amount of heat. The entropy change of the system is therefore $\Delta S_{sys} = +q_{rev}/T$, and the entropy change of the surroundings is

$$\Delta S_{surr} = -\frac{q_{rev}}{T}.$$

The corresponding change in entropy of the universe is then as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S_{\text{univ}} &= \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \Delta S_{\text{surr}} \\ &= \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T} + \left(-\frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T}\right) \\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

Thus no change in ΔS_{univ} has occurred.

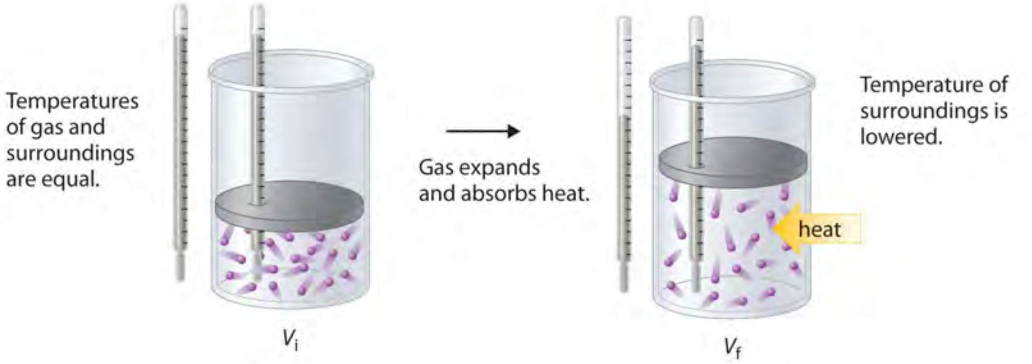


Figure 6.3.5: Expansion of Gas at Constant Temperature

Temperatures of gas and surroundings are equal. Then the gas expands and absorbs heat. Temperature of the surroundings is then lowered.

In the initial state (top), the temperatures of a gas and the surroundings are the same. During the reversible expansion of the gas, heat must be added to the gas to maintain a constant temperature. Thus the internal energy of the gas does not change, but work is performed on the surroundings. In the final state (bottom), the temperature of the surroundings is lower because the gas has absorbed heat from the surroundings during expansion.

Now consider the reversible melting of a sample of ice at 0°C and 1 atm. The enthalpy of fusion of ice is 6.01 kJ/mol, which means that 6.01 kJ of heat are absorbed reversibly from the surroundings when 1 mol of ice melts at 0°C, as illustrated in Figure 6.3.6. The surroundings constitute a sample of low-density carbon foam that is thermally conductive, and the system is the ice cube that has been placed on it. The direction of heat flow along the resulting temperature gradient is indicated with an arrow. From Equation 6.3.2, we see that the entropy of fusion of ice can be written as follows:

$$\Delta S_{\text{fus}} = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T} = \frac{\Delta H_{\text{fus}}}{T}$$

By convention, a thermogram shows cold regions in blue, warm regions in red, and thermally intermediate regions in green. When an ice cube (the system, dark blue) is placed on the corner of a square sample of low-density carbon foam with very high thermal conductivity, the temperature of the foam is lowered (going from red to green). As the ice melts, a temperature gradient appears, ranging from warm to very cold. An arrow indicates the direction of heat flow from the surroundings (red and green) to the ice cube. The amount of heat lost by the surroundings is the same as the amount gained by the ice, so the entropy of the universe does not change.

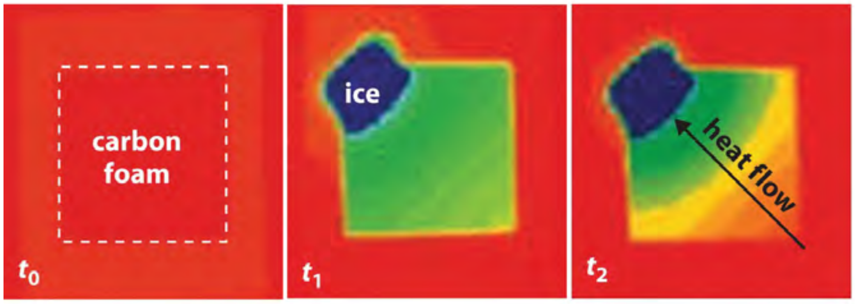


Figure 6.3.6: Thermograms Showing That Heat Is Absorbed from the Surroundings When Ice Melts at 0°C

In this case, ΔS_{fus} = (6.01 kJ/mol)/(273 K) = 22.0 J/(mol•K) = ΔS_{sys}. The amount of heat lost by the surroundings is the same as the amount gained by the ice, so $\Delta S_{\text{surr}} = q_{\text{rev}}/T$ = −(6.01 kJ/mol)/(273 K) = −22.0 J/(mol•K). Once again, we see that the entropy of the universe does not change:

$$\Delta S_{univ} = \Delta S_{sys} + \Delta S_{surr} = 22.0 \text{ J/(mol•K)} - 22.0 \text{ J/(mol•K)} = 0$$

In these two examples of reversible processes, the entropy of the universe is unchanged. This is true of all reversible processes and constitutes part of the second law of thermodynamics: the entropy of the universe remains constant in a reversible process, whereas the entropy of the universe increases in an irreversible (spontaneous) process.

The Second Law of Thermodynamics

The entropy of the universe **increases** during a spontaneous process. It also **increases** during an observable non-spontaneous process.

As an example of an irreversible process, consider the entropy changes that accompany the spontaneous and irreversible transfer of heat from a hot object to a cold one, as occurs when lava spewed from a volcano flows into cold ocean water. The cold substance, the water, gains heat ($q > 0$), so the change in the entropy of the water can be written as $\Delta S_{cold} = q/T_{cold}$. Similarly, the hot substance, the lava, loses heat ($q < 0$), so its entropy change can be written as $\Delta S_{hot} = -q/T_{hot}$, where T_{cold} and T_{hot} are the temperatures of the cold and hot substances, respectively. The total entropy change of the universe accompanying this process is therefore

$$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta S_{\text{cold}} + \Delta S_{\text{hot}} = \frac{q}{T_{\text{cold}}} + \left(-\frac{q}{T_{\text{hot}}}\right) \tag{6.3.5}$$

The numerators on the right side of Equation 6.3.5 are the same in magnitude but opposite in sign. Whether ΔS_{univ} is positive or negative depends on the relative magnitudes of the denominators. By definition, $T_{hot} > T_{cold}$, so $-q/T_{hot}$ must be less than q/T_{cold}, and ΔS_{univ} must be positive. As predicted by the second law of thermodynamics, the entropy of the universe increases during this irreversible process. Any process for which ΔS_{univ} is positive is, by definition, a spontaneous one that will occur as written. Conversely, any process for which ΔS_{univ} is negative will not occur as written but will occur spontaneously in the reverse direction. We see, therefore, that heat is spontaneously transferred from a hot substance, the lava, to a cold substance, the ocean water. In fact, if the lava is hot enough (e.g., if it is molten), so much heat can be transferred that the water is converted to steam (Figure 6.3.7).

Figure 6.3.7: Spontaneous Transfer of Heat from a Hot Substance to a Cold Substance

✓ Example 6.3.2: Tin Pest

Tin has two allotropes with different structures. Gray tin (α-tin) has a structure similar to that of diamond, whereas white tin (β-tin) is denser, with a unit cell structure that is based on a rectangular prism. At temperatures greater than 13.2°C, white tin is the more stable phase, but below that temperature, it slowly converts reversibly to the less dense, powdery gray phase. This phenomenon was argued to have plagued Napoleon's army during his ill-fated invasion of Russia in 1812: the buttons on his soldiers' uniforms were made of tin and may have disintegrated during the Russian winter, adversely affecting the soldiers' health (and morale). The conversion of white tin to gray tin is exothermic, with $\Delta H = -2.1$ kJ/mol at 13.2°C.

a. What is ΔS for this process?
b. Which is the more highly ordered form of tin—white or gray?

Given: ΔH and temperature

Asked for: ΔS and relative degree of order

Strategy:

Use Equation 6.3.2 to calculate the change in entropy for the reversible phase transition. From the calculated value of ΔS, predict which allotrope has the more highly ordered structure.

Solution

a. We know from Equation 6.3.2 that the entropy change for any reversible process is the heat transferred (in joules) divided by the temperature at which the process occurs. Because the conversion occurs at constant pressure, and ΔH and ΔU are essentially equal for reactions that involve only solids, we can calculate the change in entropy for the reversible phase transition where $q_{rev} = \Delta H$. Substituting the given values for ΔH and temperature in kelvins (in this case, T = 13.2°C = 286.4 K),

$$\Delta S = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T} = \frac{(-2.1\ \text{kJ/mol})(1000\ \text{J/kJ})}{286.4\ \text{K}} = -7.3\ \text{J/(mol} \cdot \text{K)}$$

b. The fact that $\Delta S < 0$ means that entropy decreases when white tin is converted to gray tin. Thus gray tin must be the more highly ordered structure.

Video 6.3.1 : *Time lapse tin pest reaction.*

Note: Whether failing buttons were indeed a contributing factor in the failure of the invasion remains disputed; critics of the theory point out that the tin used would have been quite impure and thus more tolerant of low temperatures. Laboratory tests provide evidence that the time required for unalloyed tin to develop significant tin pest damage at lowered temperatures is about 18 months, which is more than twice the length of Napoleon's Russian campaign. It is clear though that some of the regiments employed in the campaign had tin buttons and that the temperature reached sufficiently low values (at least -40 °C)

? Exercise 6.3.2

Elemental sulfur exists in two forms: an orthorhombic form (S_α), which is stable below 95.3°C, and a monoclinic form (S_β), which is stable above 95.3°C. The conversion of orthorhombic sulfur to monoclinic sulfur is endothermic, with ΔH = 0.401 kJ/mol at 1 atm.

a. What is ΔS for this process?
b. Which is the more highly ordered form of sulfur—S_α or S_β?

Answer a

1.09 J/(mol•K)

Answer b

S_α

Entropy: Entropy(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

For a given system, the greater the number of microstates, the higher the entropy. During a spontaneous process, the entropy of the universe increases.

$$\Delta S = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T}$$

A measure of the disorder of a system is its entropy (S), a state function whose value increases with an increase in the number of available microstates. A reversible process is one for which all intermediate states between extremes are equilibrium states; it can change direction at any time. In contrast, an irreversible process occurs in one direction only. The change in entropy of the system or the surroundings is the quantity of heat transferred divided by the temperature. The second law of thermodynamics states that in a reversible process, the entropy of the universe is constant, whereas in an irreversible process, such as the transfer of heat from a hot object to a cold object, the entropy of the universe increases.

6.4: Predicting Entropy and Entropy Changes for Chemical Reactions

Learning Objectives

- To calculate entropy changes for a chemical reaction

We have seen that the energy given off (or absorbed) by a reaction, and monitored by noting the change in temperature of the surroundings, can be used to determine the enthalpy of a reaction (e.g. by using a calorimeter). Tragically, there is no comparable easy way to experimentally measure the change in entropy for a reaction. Suppose we know that energy is going into a system (or coming out of it), and yet we do not observe any change in temperature. What is going on in such a situation? Changes in internal energy, that are not accompanied by a temperature change, might reflect changes in the entropy of the system.

For example, consider water at °0C at 1 atm pressure

- This is the temperature and pressure condition where liquid and solid phases of water are in equilibrium (also known as the melting point of ice)

$$\mathrm{H_2O(s)} \rightarrow \mathrm{H_2O(l)} \tag{6.4.1}$$

- At such a temperature and pressure we have a situation (by definition) where we have some ice and some liquid water
- If a small amount of energy is input into the system the equilibrium will shift slightly to the right (i.e. in favor of the liquid state)
- Likewise if a small amount of energy is withdrawn from the system, the equilibrium will shift to the left (more ice)

> *However, in both of the above situations, the energy change is not accompanied by a change in temperature (the temperature will not change until we no longer have an equilibrium condition; i.e. all the ice has melted or all the liquid has frozen)*

Since the quantitative term that relates the amount of heat energy input vs. the rise in temperature is the heat capacity, it would seem that in some way, information about the heat capacity (and how it changes with temperature) would allow us to determine the entropy change in a system. In fact, values for the "standard molar entropy" of a substance have units of J/mol K, the same units as for molar heat capacity.

Standard Molar Entropy, S^0

The entropy of a substance has an absolute value of 0 entropy at 0 K.

- **Standard molar entropies** are listed for a reference temperature (like 298 K) and 1 atm pressure (i.e. the entropy of a pure substance at 298 K and 1 atm pressure). A table of standard molar entropies at 0K would be pretty useless because it would be 0 for every substance (duh!) Standard molar entropy values are listed for a variety of substances in Table T2.
- When comparing standard molar entropies for a substance that is either a solid, liquid or gas at 298 K and 1 atm pressure, the gas will have more entropy than the liquid, and the liquid will have more entropy than the solid
- Unlike *enthalpies of formation*, standard molar entropies of elements are not 0.

The entropy change in a chemical reaction is given by the sum of the entropies of the products minus the sum of the entropies of the reactants. As with other calculations related to balanced equations, the coefficients of each component must be taken into account in the entropy calculation (the *n*, and *m*, terms below are there to indicate that the coefficients must be accounted for):

$$\Delta S^0 = \sum_n nS^0(products) - \sum_m mS^0(reactants)$$

Example 6.4.1: Haber Process

Calculate the change in entropy associated with the Haber process for the production of ammonia from nitrogen and hydrogen gas.

$$\mathrm{N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g)}$$

At 298K as a standard temperature:

- $S^0(NH_3)$ = 192.5 J/mol K
- $S^0(H_2)$ = 130.6 J/mol K
- $S^0(N_2)$ = 191.5 J/mol K

Solution

From the balanced equation we can write the equation for ΔS^0 (the change in the standard molar entropy for the reaction):

$\Delta S^0 = 2*S^0(NH_3) - [S^0(N_2) + (3*S^0(H_2))]$

$\Delta S^0 = 2*192.5 - [191.5 + (3*130.6)]$

$\Delta S^0 = -198.3$ J/mol K

It would appear that the process results in a ***decrease*** in entropy - i.e. a decrease in disorder. This is expected because we are decreasing the number of gas molecules. In other words the $N_2(g)$ used to float around independently of the H_2 gas molecules. After the reaction, the two are bonded together and can't float around freely from one another. (I guess you can consider marriage as a negative entropy process!)

To calculate ΔS° for a chemical reaction from standard molar entropies, we use the familiar "products minus reactants" rule, in which the absolute entropy of each reactant and product is multiplied by its stoichiometric coefficient in the balanced chemical equation. Example 6.4.2 illustrates this procedure for the combustion of the liquid hydrocarbon isooctane (C_8H_{18}; 2,2,4-trimethylpentane).

> ΔS° for a reaction can be calculated from absolute entropy values using the same "products minus reactants" rule used to calculate ΔH°.

✓ Example 6.4.2: Combustion of Octane

Use the data in Table T2 to calculate ΔS° for the combustion reaction of liquid isooctane with $O_2(g)$ to give $CO_2(g)$ and $H_2O(g)$ at 298 K.

Given: standard molar entropies, reactants, and products

Asked for: ΔS°

Strategy:

Write the balanced chemical equation for the reaction and identify the appropriate quantities in Table T2. Subtract the sum of the absolute entropies of the reactants from the sum of the absolute entropies of the products, each multiplied by their appropriate stoichiometric coefficients, to obtain ΔS° for the reaction.

Solution:

The balanced chemical equation for the complete combustion of isooctane (C_8H_{18}) is as follows:

$$\mathrm{C_8H_{18}(l)} + \tfrac{25}{2}\mathrm{O_2(g)} \rightarrow 8\,\mathrm{CO_2(g)} + 9\,\mathrm{H_2O(g)}$$

We calculate ΔS° for the reaction using the "products minus reactants" rule, where m and n are the stoichiometric coefficients of each product and each reactant:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S^\circ_{\text{rxn}} &= \sum mS^\circ(\text{products}) - \sum nS^\circ(\text{reactants})\\ &= [8S^\circ(\mathrm{CO_2}) + 9S^\circ(\mathrm{H_2O})] - [S^\circ(\mathrm{C_8H_{18}}) + \frac{25}{2}S^\circ(\mathrm{O_2})]\\ &= \{[8\text{ mol }\mathrm{CO_2} \times 213.8\text{ J}/(\text{mol}\cdot\text{K})] + [9\text{ mol }\mathrm{H_2O} \times 188.8\text{ J}/(\text{mol}\cdot\text{K})]\}\\ &- \left\{[1\text{ mol }\mathrm{C_8H_{18}} \times 329.3\text{ J}/(\text{mol}\cdot\text{K})] + \left[\frac{25}{2}\text{ mol }\mathrm{O_2} \times 205.2\text{ J}/(\text{mol}\cdot\text{K})\right]\right\}\\ &= 515.3\text{ J/K}\end{aligned}$$

ΔS° is positive, as expected for a combustion reaction in which one large hydrocarbon molecule is converted to many molecules of gaseous products.

Exercise 6.4.2

Use the data in Table T2 to calculate ΔS° for the reaction of $H_2(g)$ with liquid benzene (C_6H_6) to give cyclohexane (C_6H_{12}).

Answer

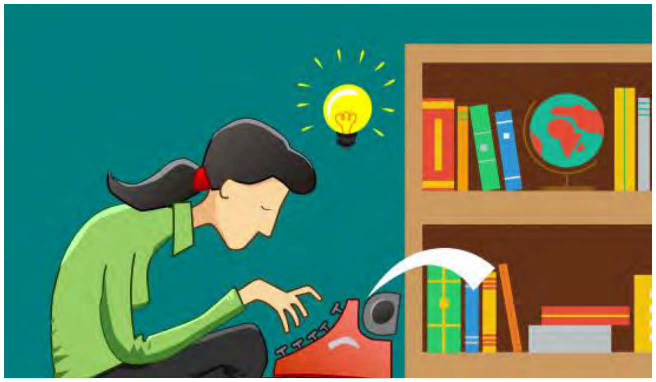
−361.1 J/K

Calculating the Entropy of Reaction using S: Calculating the Entropy of Reaction using S(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

6.4: Predicting Entropy and Entropy Changes for Chemical Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **19.4: Entropy Changes in Chemical Reactions** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

6.5: Heat Transfer and Changes in the Entropy of the Surroundings



6.6: Gibbs Energy

Learning Objectives

- To understand the relationship between Gibbs free energy and work.

One of the major goals of chemical thermodynamics is to establish criteria for predicting whether a particular reaction or process will occur spontaneously. We have developed one such criterion, the change in entropy of the universe: if $\Delta S_{univ} > 0$ for a process or a reaction, then the process will occur spontaneously as written. Conversely, if $\Delta S_{univ} < 0$, a process cannot occur spontaneously; if $\Delta S_{univ} = 0$, the system is at equilibrium. The sign of ΔS_{univ} is a universally applicable and infallible indicator of the spontaneity of a reaction. Unfortunately, using ΔS_{univ} requires that we calculate ΔS for both a system and its surroundings. This is not particularly useful for two reasons: we are normally much more interested in the system than in the surroundings, and it is difficult to make quantitative measurements of the surroundings (i.e., the rest of the universe). A criterion of spontaneity that is based solely on the state functions of a system would be much more convenient and is provided by a new state function: the Gibbs free energy.

Gibbs Free Energy and the Direction of Spontaneous Reactions

The Gibbs free energy (G), often called simply free energy, was named in honor of J. Willard Gibbs (1838–1903), an American physicist who first developed the concept. It is defined in terms of three other state functions with which you are already familiar: enthalpy, temperature, and entropy:

$$G = H - TS \tag{6.6.1}$$

Because it is a combination of state functions, G is also a state function.

J. Willard Gibbs (1839–1903)

Born in Connecticut, Josiah Willard Gibbs attended Yale, as did his father, a professor of sacred literature at Yale, who was involved in the Amistad trial. In 1863, Gibbs was awarded the first engineering doctorate granted in the United States. He was appointed professor of mathematical physics at Yale in 1871, the first such professorship in the United States. His series of papers entitled "On the Equilibrium of Heterogeneous Substances" was the foundation of the field of physical chemistry and is considered one of the great achievements of the 19th century. Gibbs, whose work was translated into French by Le Chatelier, lived with his sister and brother-in-law until his death in 1903, shortly before the inauguration of the Nobel Prizes.

The criterion for predicting spontaneity is based on (ΔG), the change in G, at constant temperature and pressure. Although very few chemical reactions actually occur under conditions of constant temperature and pressure, most systems can be brought back to the initial temperature and pressure without significantly affecting the value of thermodynamic state functions such as G. At constant temperature and pressure,

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S \tag{6.6.2}$$

where all thermodynamic quantities are those of the system. Recall that at constant pressure, $\Delta H = q$, whether a process is reversible or irreversible, and $T\Delta S = q_{rev}$. Using these expressions, we can reduce Equation 6.6.2 to $\Delta G = q - q_{rev}$. Thus ΔG is the difference between the heat released during a process (via a reversible or an irreversible path) and the heat released for the same process occurring in a reversible manner. Under the special condition in which a process occurs reversibly, $q = q_{rev}$ and $\Delta G = 0$. As we shall soon see, if ΔG is zero, the system is at equilibrium, and there will be no net change.

What about processes for which $\Delta G \neq 0$? To understand how the sign of ΔG for a system determines the direction in which change is spontaneous, we can rewrite the relationship between ΔS and q_{rev}, discussed earlier.

$$\Delta S = \frac{q_{rev}}{T}$$

with the definition of ΔH in terms of q_{rev}

$$q_{rev} = \Delta H$$

to obtain

$$\Delta S_{\text{surr}} = -\frac{\Delta H_{\text{sys}}}{T} \tag{6.6.3}$$

Thus the entropy change of the surroundings is related to the enthalpy change of the system. We have stated that for a spontaneous reaction, $\Delta S_{univ} > 0$, so substituting we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta S_{\text{univ}} &= \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \Delta S_{\text{surr}} > 0 \qquad (6.6.4) \\ &= \Delta S_{\text{sys}} - \frac{\Delta H_{\text{sys}}}{T} > 0 \qquad (6.6.5) \end{aligned}$$

Multiplying both sides of the inequality by −T reverses the sign of the inequality; rearranging,

$$\Delta H_{sys} - T\Delta S_{sys} < 0$$

which is equal to ΔG (Equation $6.6.2$). We can therefore see that for a spontaneous process, $\Delta G < 0$.

The relationship between the entropy change of the surroundings and the heat gained or lost by the system provides the key connection between the thermodynamic properties of the system and the change in entropy of the universe. The relationship shown in Equation $6.6.2$ allows us to predict spontaneity by focusing exclusively on the thermodynamic properties and temperature of the system. We predict that highly exothermic processes ($\Delta H \ll 0$) that increase the disorder of a system ($\Delta S_{sys} \gg 0$) would therefore occur spontaneously. An example of such a process is the decomposition of ammonium nitrate fertilizer. Ammonium nitrate was also used to destroy the Murrah Federal Building in Oklahoma City, Oklahoma, in 1995. For a system at constant temperature and pressure, we can summarize the following results:

- If $\Delta G < 0$, the process occurs spontaneously.
- If $\Delta G = 0$, the system is at equilibrium.
- If $\Delta G > 0$, the process is not spontaneous as written but occurs spontaneously in the reverse direction.

To further understand how the various components of ΔG dictate whether a process occurs spontaneously, we now look at a simple and familiar physical change: the conversion of liquid water to water vapor. If this process is carried out at 1 atm and the normal boiling point of 100.00°C (373.15 K), we can calculate ΔG from the experimentally measured value of ΔH_{vap} (40.657 kJ/mol). For vaporizing 1 mol of water, $\Delta H = 40,657; J$, so the process is highly endothermic. From the definition of ΔS (Equation $6.6.3$), we know that for 1 mol of water,

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta S_{\text{vap}} &= \frac{\Delta H_{\text{vap}}}{T_{\text{b}}} \\ &= \frac{\text{40,657 J}}{\text{373.15 K}} \\ &= 108.96 \text{ J/K} \end{aligned}$$

Hence there is an increase in the disorder of the system. At the normal boiling point of water,

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G_{100^\circ\text{C}} &= \Delta H_{100^\circ\text{C}} - T\Delta S_{100^\circ\text{C}} \\ &= \text{40,657 J} - [(373.15 \text{ K})(108.96 \text{ J/K})] \\ &= 0 \text{ J} \end{aligned}$$

The energy required for vaporization offsets the increase in disorder of the system. Thus ΔG = 0, and the liquid and vapor are in equilibrium, as is true of any liquid at its boiling point under standard conditions.

Now suppose we were to superheat 1 mol of liquid water to 110°C. The value of ΔG for the vaporization of 1 mol of water at 110°C, assuming that ΔH and ΔS do not change significantly with temperature, becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G_{110^\circ\text{C}} &= \Delta H - T\Delta S \\ &= \text{40,657 J} - [(383.15 \text{ K})(108.96 \text{ J/K})] \\ &= -1091 \text{ J} \end{aligned}$$

At 110°C, $\Delta G < 0$, and vaporization is predicted to occur spontaneously and irreversibly.

We can also calculate ΔG for the vaporization of 1 mol of water at a temperature below its normal boiling point—for example, 90°C—making the same assumptions:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G_{90^\circ\text{C}} &= \Delta H - T\Delta S \\ &= 40{,}657\text{ J} - [(363.15\text{ K})(108.96\text{ J/K})] \\ &= 1088\text{ J}\end{aligned}$$

At 90°C, $\Delta G > 0$, and water does not spontaneously convert to water vapor. When using all the digits in the calculator display in carrying out our calculations, $\Delta G_{110°C} = 1090\text{ J} = -\Delta G_{90°C}$, as we would predict.

Relating Enthalpy and Entropy changes under Equilibrium Conditions

$\Delta G = 0$ only if $\Delta H = T\Delta S$.

We can also calculate the temperature at which liquid water is in equilibrium with water vapor. Inserting the values of ΔH and ΔS into the definition of ΔG (Equation 6.6.2), setting $\Delta G = 0$, and solving for T,

$$0\text{ J}=40{,}657\text{ J}-T(108.96\text{ J/K})$$
$$T=373.15\text{ K}$$

Thus $\Delta G = 0$ at T = 373.15 K and 1 atm, which indicates that liquid water and water vapor are in equilibrium; this temperature is called the normal boiling point of water. At temperatures greater than 373.15 K, ΔG is negative, and water evaporates spontaneously and irreversibly. Below 373.15 K, ΔG is positive, and water does not evaporate spontaneously. Instead, water vapor at a temperature less than 373.15 K and 1 atm will spontaneously and irreversibly condense to liquid water. Figure 6.6.1 shows how the ΔH and $T\Delta S$ terms vary with temperature for the vaporization of water. When the two lines cross, $\Delta G = 0$, and $\Delta H = T\Delta S$.

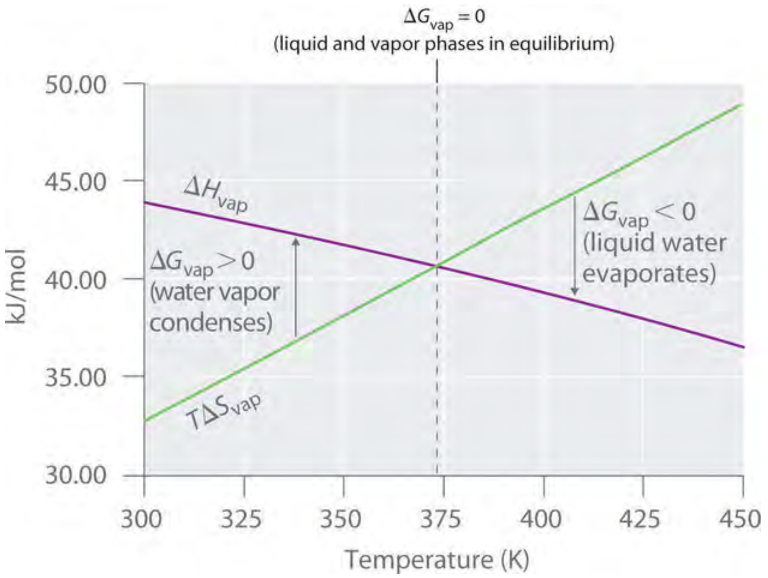


Figure 6.6.1: Temperature Dependence of ΔH and TΔS for the Vaporization of Water. Both ΔH and TΔS are temperature dependent, but the lines have opposite slopes and cross at 373.15 K at 1 atm, where ΔH = TΔS. Because ΔG = ΔH − TΔS, at this temperature ΔG = 0, indicating that the liquid and vapor phases are in equilibrium. The normal boiling point of water is therefore 373.15 K. Above the normal boiling point, the TΔS term is greater than ΔH, making ΔG < 0; hence, liquid water evaporates spontaneously. Below the normal boiling point, the ΔH term is greater than TΔS, making ΔG > 0. Thus liquid water does not evaporate spontaneously, but water vapor spontaneously condenses to liquid.

Graph of kilojoule per mole against temperature. The purple line is the delta H vaporization. the green line is the T delta S vaporization.

A similar situation arises in the conversion of liquid egg white to a solid when an egg is boiled. The major component of egg white is a protein called albumin, which is held in a compact, ordered structure by a large number of hydrogen bonds. Breaking them requires an input of energy (ΔH > 0), which converts the albumin to a highly disordered structure in which the molecules aggregate as a disorganized solid (ΔS > 0). At temperatures greater than 373 K, the TΔS term dominates, and ΔG < 0, so the conversion of a raw egg to a hard-boiled egg is an irreversible and spontaneous process above 373 K.

The Definition of Gibbs Free Energy: The Definition of Gibbs Free Energy (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

The Relationship between ΔG and Work

In the previous subsection, we learned that the value of ΔG allows us to predict the spontaneity of a physical or a chemical change. In addition, the magnitude of ΔG for a process provides other important information. The change in free energy (ΔG) is equal to the maximum amount of work that a system can perform on the surroundings while undergoing a spontaneous change (at constant temperature and pressure): $\Delta G = w_{max}$. To see why this is true, let's look again at the relationships among free energy, enthalpy, and entropy expressed in Equation 6.6.2. We can rearrange this equation as follows:

$$\Delta H = \Delta G + T\Delta S \tag{6.6.6}$$

This equation tells us that when energy is released during an exothermic process ($\Delta H < 0$), such as during the combustion of a fuel, some of that energy can be used to do work ($\Delta G < 0$), while some is used to increase the entropy of the universe ($T\Delta S > 0$). Only if the process occurs infinitely slowly in a perfectly reversible manner will the entropy of the universe be unchanged. (For more information on entropy and reversibility, see the previous section). Because no real system is perfectly reversible, the entropy of the universe increases during all processes that produce energy. As a result, no process that uses stored energy can ever be 100% efficient; that is, ΔH will never equal ΔG because ΔS has a positive value.

One of the major challenges facing engineers is to maximize the efficiency of converting stored energy to useful work or converting one form of energy to another. As indicated in Table 6.6.1, the efficiencies of various energy-converting devices vary widely. For example, an internal combustion engine typically uses only 25%–30% of the energy stored in the hydrocarbon fuel to perform work; the rest of the stored energy is released in an unusable form as heat. In contrast, gas–electric hybrid engines, now used in several models of automobiles, deliver approximately 50% greater fuel efficiency. A large electrical generator is highly efficient (approximately 99%) in converting mechanical to electrical energy, but a typical incandescent light bulb is one of the least efficient devices known (only approximately 5% of the electrical energy is converted to light). In contrast, a mammalian liver cell is a relatively efficient machine and can use fuels such as glucose with an efficiency of 30%–50%.

Table 6.6.1: Approximate Thermodynamic Efficiencies of Various Devices

Device	Energy Conversion	Approximate Efficiency (%)
large electrical generator	mechanical → electrical	99
chemical battery	chemical → electrical	90
home furnace	chemical → heat	65
small electric tool	electrical → mechanical	60
space shuttle engine	chemical → mechanical	50
mammalian liver cell	chemical → chemical	30–50
spinach leaf cell	light → chemical	30
internal combustion engine	chemical → mechanical	25–30

Device	Energy Conversion	Approximate Efficiency (%)
fluorescent light	electrical → light	20
solar cell	light → electricity	10-20
incandescent light bulb	electricity → light	5
yeast cell	chemical → chemical	2–4

Standard Free-Energy Change

We have seen that there is no way to measure absolute enthalpies, although we can measure changes in enthalpy (ΔH) during a chemical reaction. Because enthalpy is one of the components of Gibbs free energy, we are consequently unable to measure absolute free energies; we can measure only changes in free energy. The standard free-energy change (ΔG°) is the change in free energy when one substance or a set of substances in their standard states is converted to one or more other substances, also in their standard states. The standard free-energy change can be calculated from the definition of free energy, if the standard enthalpy and entropy changes are known, using Equation 6.6.7:

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \tag{6.6.7}$$

If ΔS° and ΔH° for a reaction have the same sign, then the sign of ΔG° depends on the relative magnitudes of the ΔH° and TΔS° terms. It is important to recognize that a positive value of ΔG° for a reaction does not mean that no products will form if the reactants in their standard states are mixed; it means only that at equilibrium the concentrations of the products will be less than the concentrations of the reactants.

> A positive ΔG° means that the equilibrium constant is less than 1.

✓ Example 6.6.1

Calculate the standard free-energy change (ΔG^o) at 25°C for the reaction

$$H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons H_2O_2(l)$$

At 25°C, the standard enthalpy change (ΔH°) is −187.78 kJ/mol, and the absolute entropies of the products and reactants are:

- $S°(H_2O_2)$ = 109.6 J/(mol•K),
- $S°(O_2)$ = 205.2 J/(mol•K), and
- $S°(H_2)$ = 130.7 J/(mol•K).

Is the reaction spontaneous as written?

Given: balanced chemical equation, ΔH° and S° for reactants and products

Asked for: spontaneity of reaction as written

Strategy:

A. Calculate ΔS° from the absolute molar entropy values given.
B. Use Equation 6.6.7, the calculated value of ΔS°, and other data given to calculate ΔG° for the reaction. Use the value of ΔG° to determine whether the reaction is spontaneous as written.

Solution

A To calculate ΔG° for the reaction, we need to know ΔH^o, ΔS^o, and T. We are given ΔH^o, and we know that T = 298.15 K. We can calculate ΔS° from the absolute molar entropy values provided using the “products minus reactants” rule:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S^\circ &= S^\circ(\mathrm{H_2O_2}) - [S^\circ(\mathrm{O_2}) + S^\circ(\mathrm{H_2})] \\ &= [1\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2O_2} \times 109.6\ \mathrm{J/(mol\cdot K)}] \\ &\quad - \{[1\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2} \times 130.7\ \mathrm{J/(mol\cdot K)}] + [1\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2} \times 205.2\ \mathrm{J/(mol\cdot K)}]\} \\ &= -226.3\ \mathrm{J/K}\ (\text{per mole of } \mathrm{H_2O_2})\end{aligned}$$

As we might expect for a reaction in which 2 mol of gas is converted to 1 mol of a much more ordered liquid, ΔS^o is very negative for this reaction.

B Substituting the appropriate quantities into Equation 6.6.7,

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G^\circ &= \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \\ &= -187.78\ \text{kJ/mol} - (298.15\ \text{K})[-226.3\ \text{J/(mol}\cdot\text{K)} \times 1\ \text{kJ/1000 J}] \\ &= -187.78\ \text{kJ/mol} + 67.47\ \text{kJ/mol} \\ &= -120.31\ \text{kJ/mol}\end{aligned}$$

The negative value of ΔG^o indicates that the reaction is spontaneous as written. Because ΔS^o and ΔH^o for this reaction have the same sign, the sign of ΔG^o depends on the relative magnitudes of the ΔH^o and $T\Delta S^o$ terms. In this particular case, the enthalpy term dominates, indicating that the strength of the bonds formed in the product more than compensates for the unfavorable ΔS^o term and for the energy needed to break bonds in the reactants.

? Exercise 6.6.1

Calculate the standard free-energy change (ΔG^o) at 25°C for the reaction

$$2H_2(g) + N_2(g) \rightleftharpoons N_2H_4(l).$$

Is the reaction spontaneous as written at 25°C?

Hint

At 25°C, the standard enthalpy change (ΔH^o) is 50.6 kJ/mol, and the absolute entropies of the products and reactants are

- S°(N_2H_4) = 121.2 J/(mol•K),
- S°(N_2) = 191.6 J/(mol•K), and
- S°(H_2) = 130.7 J/(mol•K).

Answer

149.5 kJ/mol

no, not spontaneous

Video Solution

Determining if a Reaction is Spontaneous: Determining if a Reaction is Spontaneous(opens in new window) [youtu.be] (opens in new window)

Tabulated values of standard free energies of formation allow chemists to calculate the values of ΔG° for a wide variety of chemical reactions rather than having to measure them in the laboratory. The standard free energy of formation (ΔG°_f)of a compound is the change in free energy that occurs when 1 mol of a substance in its standard state is formed from the component elements in their standard states. By definition, the standard free energy of formation of an element in its standard state is zero at 298.15 K. One mole of Cl_2 gas at 298.15 K, for example, has $\Delta G_f^\circ = 0$. The standard free energy of formation of a compound can be calculated from the standard enthalpy of formation ($\Delta H^\circ{}_f$) and the standard entropy of formation ($\Delta S^\circ{}_f$) using the definition of free energy:

$$\Delta G_f^o = \Delta H_f^o - T\Delta S_f^o \tag{6.6.8}$$

Using standard free energies of formation to calculate the standard free energy of a reaction is analogous to calculating standard enthalpy changes from standard enthalpies of formation using the familiar "products minus reactants" rule:

$$\Delta G_{rxn}^o = \sum m\Delta G_f^o(products) - \sum n\Delta_f^o(reactants) \tag{6.6.9}$$

where m and n are the stoichiometric coefficients of each product and reactant in the balanced chemical equation. A very large negative ΔG° indicates a strong tendency for products to form spontaneously from reactants; it does not, however, necessarily indicate that the reaction will occur rapidly. To make this determination, we need to evaluate the kinetics of the reaction.

The "Products minus Reactants" Rule

The ΔG^o of a reaction can be calculated from tabulated $\Delta G^\circ{}_f$ values (Table T1) using the "products minus reactants" rule.

Example 6.6.2

Calculate ΔG° for the reaction of isooctane with oxygen gas to give carbon dioxide and water (described in Example 7). Use the following data:

- ΔG°_f(isooctane) = −353.2 kJ/mol,
- $\Delta G^\circ_f(CO_2)$ = −394.4 kJ/mol, and
- $\Delta G^\circ_f(H_2O)$ = −237.1 kJ/mol. Is the reaction spontaneous as written?

Given: balanced chemical equation and values of ΔG°_f for isooctane, CO_2, and H_2O

Asked for: spontaneity of reaction as written

Strategy:

Use the "products minus reactants" rule to obtain $\Delta G^\circ{}_{rxn}$, remembering that ΔG°_f for an element in its standard state is zero. From the calculated value, determine whether the reaction is spontaneous as written.

Solution

The balanced chemical equation for the reaction is as follows:

$$\mathrm{C_8H_{18}(l) + \tfrac{25}{2}O_2(g) \rightarrow 8\,CO_2(g) + 9\,H_2O(l)}$$

We are given $\Delta G^\circ{}_f$ values for all the products and reactants except O_2(g). Because oxygen gas is an element in its standard state, $\Delta G^\circ{}_f$ (O_2) is zero. Using the "products minus reactants" rule,

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G^\circ &= [8\Delta G^\circ_\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{CO_2}) + 9\Delta G^\circ_\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{H_2O})] - \left[1\Delta G^\circ_\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{C_8H_{18}}) + \frac{25}{2}\Delta G^\circ_\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{O_2})\right] \\ &= [(8\text{ mol})(-394.4\text{ kJ/mol}) + (9\text{ mol})(-237.1\text{ kJ/mol})] \\ &\quad - \left[(1\text{ mol})(-353.2\text{ kJ/mol}) + \left(\frac{25}{2}\text{ mol}\right)(0\text{ kJ/mol})\right] \\ &= -4935.9\text{ kJ (per mol of }\mathrm{C_8H_{18}}) \end{aligned}$$

Because ΔG° is a large negative number, there is a strong tendency for the spontaneous formation of products from reactants (though not necessarily at a rapid rate). Also notice that the magnitude of ΔG° is largely determined by the $\Delta G^\circ{}_f$ of the stable products: water and carbon dioxide.

? Exercise 6.6.2

Calculate ΔG° for the reaction of benzene with hydrogen gas to give cyclohexane using the following data

- ΔG°_f(benzene) = 124.5 kJ/mol
- ΔG°_f (cyclohexane) = 217.3 kJ/mol.

Is the reaction spontaneous as written?

Answer

92.8 kJ; no

Video Solution

Calculating Grxn using Gf: Calculating Grxn using Gf(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Calculated values of ΔG° are extremely useful in predicting whether a reaction will occur spontaneously if the reactants and products are mixed under standard conditions. We should note, however, that very few reactions are actually carried out under standard conditions, and calculated values of ΔG° may not tell us whether a given reaction will occur spontaneously under nonstandard conditions. What determines whether a reaction will occur spontaneously is the free-energy change (ΔG) under the actual experimental conditions, which are usually different from ΔG°. If the ΔH and TΔS terms for a reaction have the same sign, for example, then it may be possible to reverse the sign of ΔG by changing the temperature, thereby converting a reaction that is not thermodynamically spontaneous, having $K_{eq} < 1$, to one that is, having a $K_{eq} > 1$, or vice versa. Because ΔH and ΔS usually do not vary greatly with temperature in the absence of a phase change, we can use tabulated values of ΔH° and ΔS° to calculate ΔG° at various temperatures, as long as no phase change occurs over the temperature range being considered.

> In the absence of a phase change, neither ΔH nor ΔS vary greatly with temperature.

✓ Example 6.6.3

Calculate (a) ΔG° and (b) $\Delta G_{300°C}$ for the reaction $N_2(g)+3H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2NH_3(g)$, assuming that ΔH and ΔS do not change between 25°C and 300°C. Use these data:

- $S^\circ(N_2)$ = 191.6 J/(mol•K),
- $S^\circ(H_2)$ = 130.7 J/(mol•K),
- $S^\circ(NH_3)$ = 192.8 J/(mol•K), and
- ΔH°_f (NH_3) = −45.9 kJ/mol.

Given: balanced chemical equation, temperatures, S° values, and ΔH°_f for NH_3

Asked for: ΔG° and ΔG at 300°C

Strategy:

A. Convert each temperature to kelvins. Then calculate ΔS° for the reaction. Calculate ΔH° for the reaction, recalling that ΔH°_f for any element in its standard state is zero.
B. Substitute the appropriate values into Equation 6.6.7 to obtain ΔG° for the reaction.
C. Assuming that ΔH and ΔS are independent of temperature, substitute values into Equation 6.6.2 to obtain ΔG for the reaction at 300°C.

Solution

A To calculate ΔG° for the reaction using Equation 6.6.7, we must know the temperature as well as the values of ΔS° and ΔH°. At standard conditions, the temperature is 25°C, or 298 K. We can calculate ΔS° for the reaction from the absolute molar entropy values given for the reactants and the products using the "products minus reactants" rule:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S^{\circ}_{\text{rxn}} &= 2S^{\circ}(\text{NH}_3) - [S^{\circ}(\text{N}_2) + 3S^{\circ}(\text{H}_2)] \\ &= [2\text{ mol NH}_3 \times 192.8\text{ J}/(\text{mol}\cdot\text{K})] \\ &\quad - \{[1\text{ mol N}_2 \times 191.6\text{ J}/(\text{mol}\cdot\text{K})] + [3\text{ mol H}_2 \times 130.7\text{ J}/(\text{mol}\cdot\text{K})]\} \\ &= -198.1\text{ J/K (per mole of N}_2)\end{aligned} \tag{6.6.10}$$

We can also calculate ΔH° for the reaction using the "products minus reactants" rule. The value of ΔH°_f (NH_3) is given, and ΔH°_f is zero for both N_2 and H_2:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H^{\circ}_{\text{rxn}} &= 2\Delta H^{\circ}_f(\text{NH}_3) - [\Delta H^{\circ}_f(\text{N}_2) + 3\Delta H^{\circ}_f(\text{H}_2)] \\ &= [2 \times (-45.9\text{ kJ/mol})] - [(1 \times 0\text{ kJ/mol}) + (3 \times 0\text{ kJ/mol})] \\ &= -91.8\text{ kJ(per mole of N}_2)\end{aligned}$$

B Inserting the appropriate values into Equation 6.6.7

$$\Delta G^{\circ}_{\text{rxn}} = \Delta H^{\circ} - T\Delta S^{\circ} = (-91.8\text{ kJ}) - (298\text{ K})(-198.1\text{ J/K})(1\text{ kJ}/1000\text{ J}) = -32.7\text{ kJ (per mole of N}_2)$$

C To calculate ΔG for this reaction at 300°C, we assume that ΔH and ΔS are independent of temperature (i.e., $\Delta H_{300°C}$ = H° and $\Delta S_{300°C}$ = ΔS°) and insert the appropriate temperature (573 K) into Equation 6.6.2:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G_{300^{\circ}\text{C}} &= \Delta H_{300^{\circ}\text{C}} - (573\text{ K})(\Delta S_{300^{\circ}\text{C}}) \\ &= \Delta H^{\circ} - (573\text{ K})\Delta S^{\circ} \\ &= (-91.8\text{ kJ}) - (573\text{ K})(-198.1\text{ J/K})(1\text{ kJ}/1000\text{ J}) \\ &= 21.7\text{ kJ (per mole of N}_2)\end{aligned}$$

In this example, changing the temperature has a major effect on the thermodynamic spontaneity of the reaction. Under standard conditions, the reaction of nitrogen and hydrogen gas to produce ammonia is thermodynamically spontaneous, but in practice, it is too slow to be useful industrially. Increasing the temperature in an attempt to make this reaction occur more rapidly also changes the thermodynamics by causing the −TΔS° term to dominate, and the reaction is no longer spontaneous at high temperatures; that is, its K_{eq} is less than one. This is a classic example of the conflict encountered in real systems between thermodynamics and kinetics, which is often unavoidable.

? Exercise 6.6.3

Calculate

a. ΔG° and
b. $\Delta G_{750^{\circ}C}$

for the following reaction

$$2\,\text{NO(g)} + \text{O}_2\text{(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\text{NO}_2\text{(g)}$$

which is important in the formation of urban smog. Assume that ΔH and ΔS do not change between 25.0°C and 750°C and use these data:

- S°(NO) = 210.8 J/(mol•K),
- S°(O_2) = 205.2 J/(mol•K),
- S°(NO_2) = 240.1 J/(mol•K),
- ΔH$^\circ_f$(NO_2) = 33.2 kJ/mol, and
- ΔH$^\circ_f$ (NO) = 91.3 kJ/mol.

Answer a

−72.5 kJ/mol of O_2

Answer b

33.8 kJ/mol of O_2

The effect of temperature on the spontaneity of a reaction, which is an important factor in the design of an experiment or an industrial process, depends on the sign and magnitude of both ΔH° and ΔS°. The temperature at which a given reaction is at equilibrium can be calculated by setting ΔG° = 0 in Equation 6.6.7, as illustrated in Example 6.6.4.

✓ Example 6.6.4

As you saw in Example 6.6.3, the reaction of nitrogen and hydrogen gas to produce ammonia is one in which ΔH° and ΔS° are both negative. Such reactions are predicted to be thermodynamically spontaneous at low temperatures but nonspontaneous at high temperatures. Use the data in Example 9.5.3 to calculate the temperature at which this reaction changes from spontaneous to nonspontaneous, assuming that ΔH° and ΔS° are independent of temperature.

Given: ΔH° and ΔS°

Asked for: temperature at which reaction changes from spontaneous to nonspontaneous

Strategy:

Set ΔG° equal to zero in Equation 6.6.7 and solve for T, the temperature at which the reaction becomes nonspontaneous.

Solution

In Example 6.6.3, we calculated that ΔH° is −91.8 kJ/mol of N_2 and ΔS° is −198.1 J/K per mole of N_2, corresponding to ΔG° = −32.7 kJ/mol of N_2 at 25°C. Thus the reaction is indeed spontaneous at low temperatures, as expected based on the signs of ΔH° and ΔS°. The temperature at which the reaction becomes nonspontaneous is found by setting ΔG° equal to zero and rearranging Equation 6.6.7 to solve for T:

$$\begin{aligned}
\Delta G^\circ &= \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ = 0 \\
\Delta H^\circ &= T\Delta S^\circ \\
T = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{\Delta S^\circ} &= \frac{(-91.8\text{ kJ})(1000\text{ J/kJ})}{-198.1\text{ J/K}} = 463\text{ K}
\end{aligned}$$

This is a case in which a chemical engineer is severely limited by thermodynamics. Any attempt to increase the rate of reaction of nitrogen with hydrogen by increasing the temperature will cause reactants to be favored over products above 463 K.

? Exercise 6.6.4

As you found in the exercise in Example 6.6.3, ΔH° and ΔS° are both negative for the reaction of nitric oxide and oxygen to form nitrogen dioxide. Use those data to calculate the temperature at which this reaction changes from spontaneous to nonspontaneous.

Answer

792.6 K

Video Solution

Summary

- The change in Gibbs free energy, which is based solely on changes in state functions, is the criterion for predicting the spontaneity of a reaction.
- Free-energy change:

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S$$

- Standard free-energy change:

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ$$

We can predict whether a reaction will occur spontaneously by combining the entropy, enthalpy, and temperature of a system in a new state function called Gibbs free energy (G). The change in free energy (ΔG) is the difference between the heat released during a process and the heat released for the same process occurring in a reversible manner. If a system is at equilibrium, $\Delta G = 0$. If the process is spontaneous, $\Delta G < 0$. If the process is not spontaneous as written but is spontaneous in the reverse direction, $\Delta G > 0$. At constant temperature and pressure, ΔG is equal to the maximum amount of work a system can perform on its surroundings while undergoing a spontaneous change. The standard free-energy change (ΔG°) is the change in free energy when one substance or a set of substances in their standard states is converted to one or more other substances, also in their standard states. The standard free energy of formation (ΔG°_f), is the change in free energy that occurs when 1 mol of a substance in its standard state is formed from the component elements in their standard states. Tabulated values of standard free energies of formation are used to calculate ΔG° for a reaction.

6.7: Free Energy Changes in Chemical Reactions- Calculating

Learning Objectives

- To understand the relationship between Gibbs free energy and work.

One of the major goals of chemical thermodynamics is to establish criteria for predicting whether a particular reaction or process will occur spontaneously. We have developed one such criterion, the change in entropy of the universe: if $\Delta S_{univ} > 0$ for a process or a reaction, then the process will occur spontaneously as written. Conversely, if $\Delta S_{univ} < 0$, a process cannot occur spontaneously; if $\Delta S_{univ} = 0$, the system is at equilibrium. The sign of ΔS_{univ} is a universally applicable and infallible indicator of the spontaneity of a reaction. Unfortunately, using ΔS_{univ} requires that we calculate ΔS for both a system and its surroundings. This is not particularly useful for two reasons: we are normally much more interested in the system than in the surroundings, and it is difficult to make quantitative measurements of the surroundings (i.e., the rest of the universe). A criterion of spontaneity that is based solely on the state functions of a system would be much more convenient and is provided by a new state function: the Gibbs free energy.

Gibbs Free Energy and the Direction of Spontaneous Reactions

The Gibbs free energy (G), often called simply free energy, was named in honor of J. Willard Gibbs (1838–1903), an American physicist who first developed the concept. It is defined in terms of three other state functions with which you are already familiar: enthalpy, temperature, and entropy:

$$G = H - TS \tag{6.7.1}$$

Because it is a combination of state functions, G is also a state function.

J. Willard Gibbs (1839–1903)

Born in Connecticut, Josiah Willard Gibbs attended Yale, as did his father, a professor of sacred literature at Yale, who was involved in the Amistad trial. In 1863, Gibbs was awarded the first engineering doctorate granted in the United States. He was appointed professor of mathematical physics at Yale in 1871, the first such professorship in the United States. His series of papers entitled “On the Equilibrium of Heterogeneous Substances” was the foundation of the field of physical chemistry and is considered one of the great achievements of the 19th century. Gibbs, whose work was translated into French by Le Chatelier, lived with his sister and brother-in-law until his death in 1903, shortly before the inauguration of the Nobel Prizes.

The criterion for predicting spontaneity is based on (ΔG), the change in G, at constant temperature and pressure. Although very few chemical reactions actually occur under conditions of constant temperature and pressure, most systems can be brought back to the initial temperature and pressure without significantly affecting the value of thermodynamic state functions such as G. At constant temperature and pressure,

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S \tag{6.7.2}$$

where all thermodynamic quantities are those of the system. Recall that at constant pressure, $\Delta H = q$, whether a process is reversible or irreversible, and $T\Delta S = q_{rev}$. Using these expressions, we can reduce Equation 6.7.2 to $\Delta G = q - q_{rev}$. Thus ΔG is the difference between the heat released during a process (via a reversible or an irreversible path) and the heat released for the same process occurring in a reversible manner. Under the special condition in which a process occurs reversibly, $q = q_{rev}$ and $\Delta G = 0$. As we shall soon see, if ΔG is zero, the system is at equilibrium, and there will be no net change.

What about processes for which $\Delta G \neq 0$? To understand how the sign of ΔG for a system determines the direction in which change is spontaneous, we can rewrite the relationship between ΔS and q_{rev}, discussed earlier.

$$\Delta S = \frac{q_{rev}}{T}$$

with the definition of ΔH in terms of q_{rev}

$$q_{rev} = \Delta H$$

to obtain

$$\Delta S_{\text{surr}} = -\frac{\Delta H_{\text{sys}}}{T} \tag{6.7.3}$$

Thus the entropy change of the surroundings is related to the enthalpy change of the system. We have stated that for a spontaneous reaction, $\Delta S_{univ} > 0$, so substituting we obtain

$$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \Delta S_{\text{surr}} > 0 \tag{6.7.4}$$

$$= \Delta S_{\text{sys}} - \frac{\Delta H_{\text{sys}}}{T} > 0 \tag{6.7.5}$$

Multiplying both sides of the inequality by −T reverses the sign of the inequality; rearranging,

$$\Delta H_{sys} - T\Delta S_{sys} < 0$$

which is equal to ΔG (Equation 6.7.2). We can therefore see that for a spontaneous process, $\Delta G < 0$.

The relationship between the entropy change of the surroundings and the heat gained or lost by the system provides the key connection between the thermodynamic properties of the system and the change in entropy of the universe. The relationship shown in Equation 6.7.2 allows us to predict spontaneity by focusing exclusively on the thermodynamic properties and temperature of the system. We predict that highly exothermic processes ($\Delta H \ll 0$) that increase the disorder of a system ($\Delta S_{sys} \gg 0$) would therefore occur spontaneously. An example of such a process is the decomposition of ammonium nitrate fertilizer. Ammonium nitrate was also used to destroy the Murrah Federal Building in Oklahoma City, Oklahoma, in 1995. For a system at constant temperature and pressure, we can summarize the following results:

- If $\Delta G < 0$, the process occurs spontaneously.
- If $\Delta G = 0$, the system is at equilibrium.
- If $\Delta G > 0$, the process is not spontaneous as written but occurs spontaneously in the reverse direction.

To further understand how the various components of ΔG dictate whether a process occurs spontaneously, we now look at a simple and familiar physical change: the conversion of liquid water to water vapor. If this process is carried out at 1 atm and the normal boiling point of 100.00°C (373.15 K), we can calculate ΔG from the experimentally measured value of ΔH_{vap} (40.657 kJ/mol). For vaporizing 1 mol of water, $\Delta H = 40,657; J$, so the process is highly endothermic. From the definition of ΔS (Equation 6.7.3), we know that for 1 mol of water,

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S_{\text{vap}} &= \frac{\Delta H_{\text{vap}}}{T_{\text{b}}} \\ &= \frac{40{,}657\text{ J}}{373.15\text{ K}} \\ &= 108.96\text{ J/K}\end{aligned}$$

Hence there is an increase in the disorder of the system. At the normal boiling point of water,

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G_{100^\circ\text{C}} &= \Delta H_{100^\circ\text{C}} - T\Delta S_{100^\circ\text{C}} \\ &= 40{,}657\text{ J} - [(373.15\text{ K})(108.96\text{ J/K})] \\ &= 0\text{ J}\end{aligned}$$

The energy required for vaporization offsets the increase in disorder of the system. Thus ΔG = 0, and the liquid and vapor are in equilibrium, as is true of any liquid at its boiling point under standard conditions.

Now suppose we were to superheat 1 mol of liquid water to 110°C. The value of ΔG for the vaporization of 1 mol of water at 110°C, assuming that ΔH and ΔS do not change significantly with temperature, becomes

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G_{110^\circ\text{C}} &= \Delta H - T\Delta S \\ &= 40{,}657\text{ J} - [(383.15\text{ K})(108.96\text{ J/K})] \\ &= -1091\text{ J}\end{aligned}$$

At 110°C, $\Delta G < 0$, and vaporization is predicted to occur spontaneously and irreversibly.

We can also calculate ΔG for the vaporization of 1 mol of water at a temperature below its normal boiling point—for example, 90°C—making the same assumptions:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G_{90^\circ\text{C}} &= \Delta H - T\Delta S \\ &= 40{,}657\text{ J} - [(363.15\text{ K})(108.96\text{ J/K})] \\ &= 1088\text{ J}\end{aligned}$$

At 90°C, $\Delta G > 0$, and water does not spontaneously convert to water vapor. When using all the digits in the calculator display in carrying out our calculations, $\Delta G_{110°C} = 1090\text{ J} = -\Delta G_{90°C}$, as we would predict.

Relating Enthalpy and Entropy changes under Equilibrium Conditions

$\Delta G = 0$ only if $\Delta H = T\Delta S$.

We can also calculate the temperature at which liquid water is in equilibrium with water vapor. Inserting the values of ΔH and ΔS into the definition of ΔG (Equation 6.7.2), setting $\Delta G = 0$, and solving for T,

$$0\text{ J}=40{,}657\text{ J}-T(108.96\text{ J/K})$$
$$T=373.15\text{ K}$$

Thus $\Delta G = 0$ at T = 373.15 K and 1 atm, which indicates that liquid water and water vapor are in equilibrium; this temperature is called the normal boiling point of water. At temperatures greater than 373.15 K, ΔG is negative, and water evaporates spontaneously and irreversibly. Below 373.15 K, ΔG is positive, and water does not evaporate spontaneously. Instead, water vapor at a temperature less than 373.15 K and 1 atm will spontaneously and irreversibly condense to liquid water. Figure 6.7.1 shows how the ΔH and $T\Delta S$ terms vary with temperature for the vaporization of water. When the two lines cross, $\Delta G = 0$, and $\Delta H = T\Delta S$.

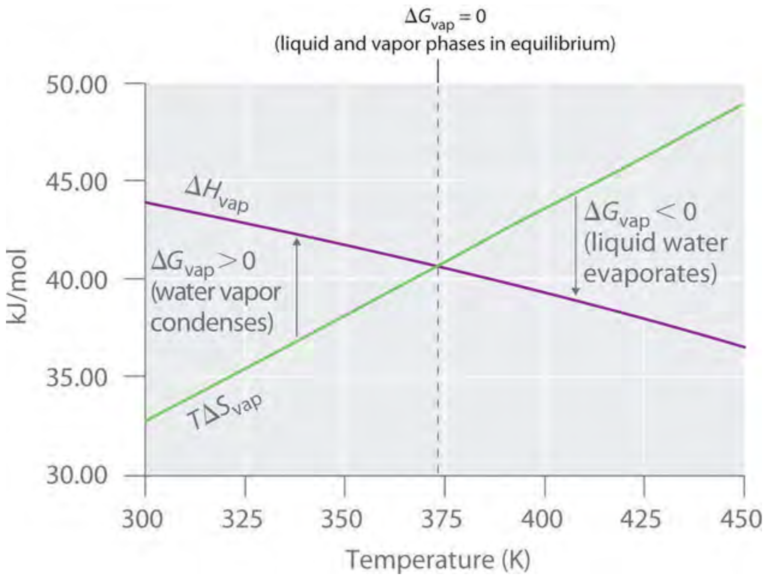


Figure 6.7.1: Temperature Dependence of ΔH and TΔS for the Vaporization of Water. Both ΔH and TΔS are temperature dependent, but the lines have opposite slopes and cross at 373.15 K at 1 atm, where ΔH = TΔS. Because ΔG = ΔH − TΔS, at this temperature ΔG = 0, indicating that the liquid and vapor phases are in equilibrium. The normal boiling point of water is therefore 373.15 K. Above the normal boiling point, the TΔS term is greater than ΔH, making ΔG < 0; hence, liquid water evaporates spontaneously. Below the normal boiling point, the ΔH term is greater than TΔS, making ΔG > 0. Thus liquid water does not evaporate spontaneously, but water vapor spontaneously condenses to liquid.

Graph of kilojoule per mole against temperature. The purple line is the delta H vaporization. the green line is the T delta S vaporization.

A similar situation arises in the conversion of liquid egg white to a solid when an egg is boiled. The major component of egg white is a protein called albumin, which is held in a compact, ordered structure by a large number of hydrogen bonds. Breaking them requires an input of energy (ΔH > 0), which converts the albumin to a highly disordered structure in which the molecules aggregate as a disorganized solid (ΔS > 0). At temperatures greater than 373 K, the TΔS term dominates, and ΔG < 0, so the conversion of a raw egg to a hard-boiled egg is an irreversible and spontaneous process above 373 K.

The Definition of Gibbs Free Energy: The Definition of Gibbs Free Energy (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

The Relationship between ΔG and Work

In the previous subsection, we learned that the value of ΔG allows us to predict the spontaneity of a physical or a chemical change. In addition, the magnitude of ΔG for a process provides other important information. The change in free energy (ΔG) is equal to the maximum amount of work that a system can perform on the surroundings while undergoing a spontaneous change (at constant temperature and pressure): $\Delta G = w_{max}$. To see why this is true, let's look again at the relationships among free energy, enthalpy, and entropy expressed in Equation 6.7.2. We can rearrange this equation as follows:

$$\Delta H = \Delta G + T\Delta S \tag{6.7.6}$$

This equation tells us that when energy is released during an exothermic process ($\Delta H < 0$), such as during the combustion of a fuel, some of that energy can be used to do work ($\Delta G < 0$), while some is used to increase the entropy of the universe ($T\Delta S > 0$). Only if the process occurs infinitely slowly in a perfectly reversible manner will the entropy of the universe be unchanged. (For more information on entropy and reversibility, see the previous section). Because no real system is perfectly reversible, the entropy of the universe increases during all processes that produce energy. As a result, no process that uses stored energy can ever be 100% efficient; that is, ΔH will never equal ΔG because ΔS has a positive value.

One of the major challenges facing engineers is to maximize the efficiency of converting stored energy to useful work or converting one form of energy to another. As indicated in Table 6.7.1, the efficiencies of various energy-converting devices vary widely. For example, an internal combustion engine typically uses only 25%–30% of the energy stored in the hydrocarbon fuel to perform work; the rest of the stored energy is released in an unusable form as heat. In contrast, gas–electric hybrid engines, now used in several models of automobiles, deliver approximately 50% greater fuel efficiency. A large electrical generator is highly efficient (approximately 99%) in converting mechanical to electrical energy, but a typical incandescent light bulb is one of the least efficient devices known (only approximately 5% of the electrical energy is converted to light). In contrast, a mammalian liver cell is a relatively efficient machine and can use fuels such as glucose with an efficiency of 30%–50%.

Table 6.7.1: Approximate Thermodynamic Efficiencies of Various Devices

Device	Energy Conversion	Approximate Efficiency (%)
large electrical generator	mechanical → electrical	99
chemical battery	chemical → electrical	90
home furnace	chemical → heat	65
small electric tool	electrical → mechanical	60
space shuttle engine	chemical → mechanical	50
mammalian liver cell	chemical → chemical	30–50
spinach leaf cell	light → chemical	30
internal combustion engine	chemical → mechanical	25–30

Device	Energy Conversion	Approximate Efficiency (%)
fluorescent light	electrical → light	20
solar cell	light → electricity	10-20
incandescent light bulb	electricity → light	5
yeast cell	chemical → chemical	2–4

Standard Free-Energy Change

We have seen that there is no way to measure absolute enthalpies, although we can measure changes in enthalpy (ΔH) during a chemical reaction. Because enthalpy is one of the components of Gibbs free energy, we are consequently unable to measure absolute free energies; we can measure only changes in free energy. The standard free-energy change (ΔG°) is the change in free energy when one substance or a set of substances in their standard states is converted to one or more other substances, also in their standard states. The standard free-energy change can be calculated from the definition of free energy, if the standard enthalpy and entropy changes are known, using Equation 6.7.7:

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \tag{6.7.7}$$

If ΔS° and ΔH° for a reaction have the same sign, then the sign of ΔG° depends on the relative magnitudes of the ΔH° and TΔS° terms. It is important to recognize that a positive value of ΔG° for a reaction does not mean that no products will form if the reactants in their standard states are mixed; it means only that at equilibrium the concentrations of the products will be less than the concentrations of the reactants.

> A positive ΔG° means that the equilibrium constant is less than 1.

✓ Example 6.7.1

Calculate the standard free-energy change (ΔG^o) at 25°C for the reaction

$$H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons H_2O_2(l)$$

At 25°C, the standard enthalpy change (ΔH°) is −187.78 kJ/mol, and the absolute entropies of the products and reactants are:

- S°(H_2O_2) = 109.6 J/(mol•K),
- S°(O_2) = 205.2 J/(mol•K), and
- S°(H_2) = 130.7 J/(mol•K).

Is the reaction spontaneous as written?

Given: balanced chemical equation, ΔH° and S° for reactants and products

Asked for: spontaneity of reaction as written

Strategy:

A. Calculate ΔS° from the absolute molar entropy values given.
B. Use Equation 6.7.7, the calculated value of ΔS°, and other data given to calculate ΔG° for the reaction. Use the value of ΔG° to determine whether the reaction is spontaneous as written.

Solution

A To calculate ΔG° for the reaction, we need to know ΔH^o, ΔS^o, and T. We are given ΔH^o, and we know that T = 298.15 K. We can calculate ΔS° from the absolute molar entropy values provided using the “products minus reactants” rule:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S^\circ &= S^\circ(\mathrm{H_2O_2}) - [S^\circ(\mathrm{O_2}) + S^\circ(\mathrm{H_2})] \\ &= [1\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2O_2} \times 109.6\ \mathrm{J/(mol\cdot K)}] \\ &\quad - \{[1\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2} \times 130.7\ \mathrm{J/(mol\cdot K)}] + [1\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2} \times 205.2\ \mathrm{J/(mol\cdot K)}]\} \\ &= -226.3\ \mathrm{J/K}\ (\text{per mole of } \mathrm{H_2O_2})\end{aligned}$$

As we might expect for a reaction in which 2 mol of gas is converted to 1 mol of a much more ordered liquid, ΔS^o is very negative for this reaction.

B Substituting the appropriate quantities into Equation 6.7.7,

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G^\circ &= \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \\ &= -187.78\ \text{kJ/mol} - (298.15\ \text{K})[-226.3\ \text{J/(mol}\cdot\text{K)} \times 1\ \text{kJ/1000 J}] \\ &= -187.78\ \text{kJ/mol} + 67.47\ \text{kJ/mol} \\ &= -120.31\ \text{kJ/mol} \end{aligned}$$

The negative value of ΔG^o indicates that the reaction is spontaneous as written. Because ΔS^o and ΔH^o for this reaction have the same sign, the sign of ΔG^o depends on the relative magnitudes of the ΔH^o and $T\Delta S^o$ terms. In this particular case, the enthalpy term dominates, indicating that the strength of the bonds formed in the product more than compensates for the unfavorable ΔS^o term and for the energy needed to break bonds in the reactants.

? Exercise 6.7.1

Calculate the standard free-energy change (ΔG^o) at 25°C for the reaction

$$2H_2(g) + N_2(g) \rightleftharpoons N_2H_4(l).$$

Is the reaction spontaneous as written at 25°C?

Hint

At 25°C, the standard enthalpy change (ΔH^o) is 50.6 kJ/mol, and the absolute entropies of the products and reactants are

- S°(N_2H_4) = 121.2 J/(mol•K),
- S°(N_2) = 191.6 J/(mol•K), and
- S°(H_2) = 130.7 J/(mol•K).

Answer

149.5 kJ/mol

no, not spontaneous

Video Solution

Determining if a Reaction is Spontaneous: Determining if a Reaction is Spontaneous(opens in new window) [youtu.be] (opens in new window)

Tabulated values of standard free energies of formation allow chemists to calculate the values of ΔG° for a wide variety of chemical reactions rather than having to measure them in the laboratory. The standard free energy of formation (ΔG°_f)of a compound is the change in free energy that occurs when 1 mol of a substance in its standard state is formed from the component elements in their standard states. By definition, the standard free energy of formation of an element in its standard state is zero at 298.15 K. One mole of Cl_2 gas at 298.15 K, for example, has $\Delta G^\circ_f = 0$. The standard free energy of formation of a compound can be calculated from the standard enthalpy of formation ($\Delta H^\circ{}_f$) and the standard entropy of formation ($\Delta S^\circ{}_f$) using the definition of free energy:

$$\Delta G^o_f = \Delta H^o_f - T\Delta S^o_f \tag{6.7.8}$$

Using standard free energies of formation to calculate the standard free energy of a reaction is analogous to calculating standard enthalpy changes from standard enthalpies of formation using the familiar "products minus reactants" rule:

$$\Delta G^o_{rxn} = \sum m\Delta G^o_f(products) - \sum n\Delta^o_f(reactants) \tag{6.7.9}$$

where m and n are the stoichiometric coefficients of each product and reactant in the balanced chemical equation. A very large negative ΔG° indicates a strong tendency for products to form spontaneously from reactants; it does not, however, necessarily indicate that the reaction will occur rapidly. To make this determination, we need to evaluate the kinetics of the reaction.

The "Products minus Reactants" Rule

The ΔG^o of a reaction can be calculated from tabulated $\Delta G^\circ{}_f$ values (Table T1) using the "products minus reactants" rule.

Example 6.7.2

Calculate ΔG° for the reaction of isooctane with oxygen gas to give carbon dioxide and water (described in Example 7). Use the following data:

- ΔG°_f(isooctane) = −353.2 kJ/mol,
- $\Delta G^\circ_f(CO_2)$ = −394.4 kJ/mol, and
- $\Delta G^\circ_f(H_2O)$ = −237.1 kJ/mol. Is the reaction spontaneous as written?

Given: balanced chemical equation and values of ΔG°_f for isooctane, CO_2, and H_2O

Asked for: spontaneity of reaction as written

Strategy:

Use the "products minus reactants" rule to obtain $\Delta G^\circ{}_{rxn}$, remembering that ΔG°_f for an element in its standard state is zero. From the calculated value, determine whether the reaction is spontaneous as written.

Solution

The balanced chemical equation for the reaction is as follows:

$$\mathrm{C_8H_{18}(l) + \tfrac{25}{2}O_2(g) \rightarrow 8\,CO_2(g) + 9\,H_2O(l)}$$

We are given $\Delta G^\circ{}_f$ values for all the products and reactants except O_2(g). Because oxygen gas is an element in its standard state, $\Delta G^\circ{}_f$ (O_2) is zero. Using the "products minus reactants" rule,

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G^\circ &= [8\Delta G^\circ_f(CO_2) + 9\Delta G^\circ_f(H_2O)] - \left[1\Delta G^\circ_f(C_8H_{18}) + \frac{25}{2}\Delta G^\circ_f(O_2)\right] \\ &= [(8\text{ mol})(-394.4\text{ kJ/mol}) + (9\text{ mol})(-237.1\text{ kJ/mol})] \\ &- \left[(1\text{ mol})(-353.2\text{ kJ/mol}) + \left(\frac{25}{2}\text{ mol}\right)(0\text{ kJ/mol})\right] \\ &= -4935.9\text{ kJ (per mol of }C_8H_{18})\end{aligned}$$

Because ΔG° is a large negative number, there is a strong tendency for the spontaneous formation of products from reactants (though not necessarily at a rapid rate). Also notice that the magnitude of ΔG° is largely determined by the $\Delta G^\circ{}_f$ of the stable products: water and carbon dioxide.

? Exercise 6.7.2

Calculate ΔG° for the reaction of benzene with hydrogen gas to give cyclohexane using the following data

- ΔG°_f(benzene) = 124.5 kJ/mol
- ΔG°_f (cyclohexane) = 217.3 kJ/mol.

Is the reaction spontaneous as written?

Answer

92.8 kJ; no

Video Solution

Calculating Grxn using Gf: Calculating Grxn using Gf(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Calculated values of ΔG° are extremely useful in predicting whether a reaction will occur spontaneously if the reactants and products are mixed under standard conditions. We should note, however, that very few reactions are actually carried out under standard conditions, and calculated values of ΔG° may not tell us whether a given reaction will occur spontaneously under nonstandard conditions. What determines whether a reaction will occur spontaneously is the free-energy change (ΔG) under the actual experimental conditions, which are usually different from ΔG°. If the ΔH and TΔS terms for a reaction have the same sign, for example, then it may be possible to reverse the sign of ΔG by changing the temperature, thereby converting a reaction that is not thermodynamically spontaneous, having $K_{eq} < 1$, to one that is, having a $K_{eq} > 1$, or vice versa. Because ΔH and ΔS usually do not vary greatly with temperature in the absence of a phase change, we can use tabulated values of ΔH° and ΔS° to calculate ΔG° at various temperatures, as long as no phase change occurs over the temperature range being considered.

> In the absence of a phase change, neither ΔH nor ΔS vary greatly with temperature.

✓ Example 6.7.3

Calculate (a) ΔG° and (b) $\Delta G_{300°C}$ for the reaction $N_2(g)+3H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2NH_3(g)$, assuming that ΔH and ΔS do not change between 25°C and 300°C. Use these data:

- $S°(N_2)$ = 191.6 J/(mol•K),
- $S°(H_2)$ = 130.7 J/(mol•K),
- $S°(NH_3)$ = 192.8 J/(mol•K), and
- ΔH°_f (NH_3) = −45.9 kJ/mol.

Given: balanced chemical equation, temperatures, S° values, and ΔH°_f for NH_3

Asked for: ΔG° and ΔG at 300°C

Strategy:

A. Convert each temperature to kelvins. Then calculate ΔS° for the reaction. Calculate ΔH° for the reaction, recalling that $\Delta H^\circ{}_f$ for any element in its standard state is zero.
B. Substitute the appropriate values into Equation 6.7.7 to obtain ΔG° for the reaction.
C. Assuming that ΔH and ΔS are independent of temperature, substitute values into Equation 6.7.2 to obtain ΔG for the reaction at 300°C.

Solution

A To calculate ΔG° for the reaction using Equation 6.7.7, we must know the temperature as well as the values of ΔS° and ΔH°. At standard conditions, the temperature is 25°C, or 298 K. We can calculate ΔS° for the reaction from the absolute molar entropy values given for the reactants and the products using the “products minus reactants” rule:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S^\circ_{\text{rxn}} &= 2S^\circ(\text{NH}_3) - [S^\circ(\text{N}_2) + 3S^\circ(\text{H}_2)] \\ &= [2 \text{ mol NH}_3 \times 192.8 \text{ J/(mol}\cdot\text{K)}] \\ &\quad - \{[1 \text{ mol N}_2 \times 191.6 \text{ J/(mol}\cdot\text{K)}] + [3 \text{ mol H}_2 \times 130.7 \text{ J/(mol}\cdot\text{K)}]\} \\ &= -198.1 \text{ J/K (per mole of N}_2\text{)}\end{aligned} \tag{6.7.10}$$

We can also calculate ΔH° for the reaction using the “products minus reactants” rule. The value of $\Delta H^\circ{}_f$ (NH_3) is given, and $\Delta H^\circ{}_f$ is zero for both N_2 and H_2:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H^\circ_{\text{rxn}} &= 2\Delta H^\circ_f(\text{NH}_3) - [\Delta H^\circ_f(\text{N}_2) + 3\Delta H^\circ_f(\text{H}_2)] \\ &= [2 \times (-45.9 \text{ kJ/mol})] - [(1 \times 0 \text{ kJ/mol}) + (3 \times 0 \text{ kJ/mol})] \\ &= -91.8 \text{ kJ(per mole of N}_2\text{)}\end{aligned}$$

B Inserting the appropriate values into Equation 6.7.7

$$\Delta G^\circ_{\text{rxn}} = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ = (-91.8 \text{ kJ}) - (298 \text{ K})(-198.1 \text{ J/K})(1 \text{ kJ}/1000 \text{ J}) = -32.7 \text{ kJ (per mole of N}_2\text{)}$$

C To calculate ΔG for this reaction at 300°C, we assume that ΔH and ΔS are independent of temperature (i.e., $\Delta H_{300°C}$ = H° and $\Delta S_{300°C}$ = ΔS°) and insert the appropriate temperature (573 K) into Equation 6.7.2:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G_{300^\circ\text{C}} &= \Delta H_{300^\circ\text{C}} - (573 \text{ K})(\Delta S_{300^\circ\text{C}}) \\ &= \Delta H^\circ - (573 \text{ K})\Delta S^\circ \\ &= (-91.8 \text{ kJ}) - (573 \text{ K})(-198.1 \text{ J/K})(1 \text{ kJ}/1000 \text{ J}) \\ &= 21.7 \text{ kJ (per mole of N}_2\text{)}\end{aligned}$$

In this example, changing the temperature has a major effect on the thermodynamic spontaneity of the reaction. Under standard conditions, the reaction of nitrogen and hydrogen gas to produce ammonia is thermodynamically spontaneous, but in practice, it is too slow to be useful industrially. Increasing the temperature in an attempt to make this reaction occur more rapidly also changes the thermodynamics by causing the −TΔS° term to dominate, and the reaction is no longer spontaneous at high temperatures; that is, its K_{eq} is less than one. This is a classic example of the conflict encountered in real systems between thermodynamics and kinetics, which is often unavoidable.

? Exercise 6.7.3

Calculate

a. ΔG° and
b. $\Delta G_{750^\circ C}$

for the following reaction

$$2\,\text{NO(g)} + \text{O}_2\text{(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\text{NO}_2\text{(g)}$$

which is important in the formation of urban smog. Assume that ΔH and ΔS do not change between 25.0°C and 750°C and use these data:

- S°(NO) = 210.8 J/(mol•K),
- S°(O_2) = 205.2 J/(mol•K),
- S°(NO_2) = 240.1 J/(mol•K),
- ΔH$^\circ_f$(NO_2) = 33.2 kJ/mol, and
- ΔH$^\circ_f$ (NO) = 91.3 kJ/mol.

Answer a

−72.5 kJ/mol of O_2

Answer b

33.8 kJ/mol of O_2

The effect of temperature on the spontaneity of a reaction, which is an important factor in the design of an experiment or an industrial process, depends on the sign and magnitude of both ΔH° and ΔS°. The temperature at which a given reaction is at equilibrium can be calculated by setting ΔG° = 0 in Equation 6.7.7, as illustrated in Example 6.7.4.

✓ Example 6.7.4

As you saw in Example 6.7.3, the reaction of nitrogen and hydrogen gas to produce ammonia is one in which ΔH° and ΔS° are both negative. Such reactions are predicted to be thermodynamically spontaneous at low temperatures but nonspontaneous at high temperatures. Use the data in Example 9.5.3 to calculate the temperature at which this reaction changes from spontaneous to nonspontaneous, assuming that ΔH° and ΔS° are independent of temperature.

Given: ΔH° and ΔS°

Asked for: temperature at which reaction changes from spontaneous to nonspontaneous

Strategy:

Set ΔG° equal to zero in Equation 6.7.7 and solve for T, the temperature at which the reaction becomes nonspontaneous.

Solution

In Example 6.7.3, we calculated that ΔH° is −91.8 kJ/mol of N_2 and ΔS° is −198.1 J/K per mole of N_2, corresponding to ΔG° = −32.7 kJ/mol of N_2 at 25°C. Thus the reaction is indeed spontaneous at low temperatures, as expected based on the signs of ΔH° and ΔS°. The temperature at which the reaction becomes nonspontaneous is found by setting ΔG° equal to zero and rearranging Equation 6.7.7 to solve for T:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G^\circ &= \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ = 0 \\ \Delta H^\circ &= T\Delta S^\circ \\ T = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{\Delta S^\circ} &= \frac{(-91.8\ \text{kJ})(1000\ \text{J/kJ})}{-198.1\ \text{J/K}} = 463\ \text{K} \end{aligned}$$

This is a case in which a chemical engineer is severely limited by thermodynamics. Any attempt to increase the rate of reaction of nitrogen with hydrogen by increasing the temperature will cause reactants to be favored over products above 463 K.

? Exercise 6.7.4

As you found in the exercise in Example 6.7.3, ΔH° and ΔS° are both negative for the reaction of nitric oxide and oxygen to form nitrogen dioxide. Use those data to calculate the temperature at which this reaction changes from spontaneous to nonspontaneous.

Answer

792.6 K

Video Solution

Summary

- The change in Gibbs free energy, which is based solely on changes in state functions, is the criterion for predicting the spontaneity of a reaction.
- Free-energy change:

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S$$

- Standard free-energy change:

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ$$

We can predict whether a reaction will occur spontaneously by combining the entropy, enthalpy, and temperature of a system in a new state function called Gibbs free energy (G). The change in free energy (ΔG) is the difference between the heat released during a process and the heat released for the same process occurring in a reversible manner. If a system is at equilibrium, $\Delta G = 0$. If the process is spontaneous, $\Delta G < 0$. If the process is not spontaneous as written but is spontaneous in the reverse direction, $\Delta G > 0$. At constant temperature and pressure, ΔG is equal to the maximum amount of work a system can perform on its surroundings while undergoing a spontaneous change. The standard free-energy change (ΔG°) is the change in free energy when one substance or a set of substances in their standard states is converted to one or more other substances, also in their standard states. The standard free energy of formation (ΔG°_f), is the change in free energy that occurs when 1 mol of a substance in its standard state is formed from the component elements in their standard states. Tabulated values of standard free energies of formation are used to calculate ΔG° for a reaction.

6.8: Free Energy Changes for Nonstandard States - The Relationship between and

Learning Objectives

- To know the relationship between free energy and the equilibrium constant.

We have identified three criteria for whether a given reaction will occur spontaneously:

1. $\Delta S_{univ} > 0$,
2. $\Delta G_{sys} < 0$ (applicable under constant temperature and constant pressure conditions), and
3. the relative magnitude of the reaction quotient Q versus the equilibrium constant K.

Recall that if $Q < K$, then the reaction proceeds spontaneously to the right as written, resulting in the net conversion of reactants to products. Conversely, if $Q > K$, then the reaction proceeds spontaneously to the left as written, resulting in the net conversion of products to reactants. If $Q = K$, then the system is at equilibrium, and no net reaction occurs. Table 6.8.1 summarizes these criteria and their relative values for spontaneous, nonspontaneous, and equilibrium processes.

Table 6.8.1: Criteria for the Spontaneity of a Process as Written

Spontaneous	Equilibrium	Nonspontaneous*
$\Delta S_{univ} > 0$	$\Delta S_{univ} = 0$	$\Delta S_{univ} < 0$
$\Delta G_{sys} < 0$	$\Delta G_{sys} = 0$	$\Delta G_{sys} > 0$
Q < K	Q = K	Q > K
*Spontaneous in the reverse direction.		

Because all three criteria are assessing the same thing—the spontaneity of the process—it would be most surprising indeed if they were not related. In this section, we explore the relationship between the standard free energy of reaction (ΔG^o) and the equilibrium constant (K).

Free Energy and the Equilibrium Constant

Because ΔH^o and ΔS^o determine the magnitude and sign of ΔG^o and also because K is a measure of the ratio of the concentrations of products to the concentrations of reactants, we should be able to express K in terms of ΔG^o and vice versa. "Free Energy", ΔG is equal to the maximum amount of work a system can perform on its surroundings while undergoing a spontaneous change. For a reversible process that does not involve external work, we can express the change in free energy in terms of volume, pressure, entropy, and temperature, thereby eliminating ΔH from the equation for ΔG. The general relationship can be shown as follows (derivation not shown):

$$\Delta G = V\Delta P - S\Delta T \tag{6.8.1}$$

If a reaction is carried out at constant temperature ($\Delta T = 0$), then Equation 6.8.1 simplifies to

$$\Delta G = V\Delta P \tag{6.8.2}$$

Under normal conditions, the pressure dependence of free energy is not important for solids and liquids because of their small molar volumes. For reactions that involve gases, however, the effect of pressure on free energy is very important.

Assuming ideal gas behavior, we can replace the V in Equation 6.8.2 by nRT/P (where n is the number of moles of gas and R is the ideal gas constant) and express ΔG in terms of the initial and final pressures (P_i and P_f, respectively):

$$\Delta G = \left(\frac{nRT}{P}\right)\Delta P \tag{6.8.3}$$

$$= nRT\frac{\Delta P}{P} \tag{6.8.4}$$

$$= nRT\ln\left(\frac{P_\text{f}}{P_\text{i}}\right) \tag{6.8.5}$$

If the initial state is the standard state with $P_i = 1\,atm$, then the change in free energy of a substance when going from the standard state to any other state with a pressure P can be written as follows:

$$G - G^\circ = nRT\ln P$$

This can be rearranged as follows:

$$G = G^\circ + nRT\ln P \tag{6.8.6}$$

As you will soon discover, Equation 6.8.6 allows us to relate ΔG^o and K_p. Any relationship that is true for K_p must also be true for K because K_p and K are simply different ways of expressing the equilibrium constant using different units.

Let's consider the following hypothetical reaction, in which all the reactants and the products are ideal gases and the lowercase letters correspond to the stoichiometric coefficients for the various species:

$$aA + bB \rightleftharpoons cC + dD \tag{6.8.7}$$

Because the free-energy change for a reaction is the difference between the sum of the free energies of the products and the reactants, we can write the following expression for ΔG:

$$\Delta G = \sum_m G_{products} - \sum_n G_{reactants} \tag{6.8.8}$$

$$= (cG_C + dG_D) - (aG_A + bG_B) \tag{6.8.9}$$

Substituting Equation 6.8.6 for each term into Equation 6.8.9,

$$\Delta G = [(cG^o_C + cRT\ln P_C) + (dG^o_D + dRT\ln P_D)] - [(aG^o_A + aRT\ln P_A) + (bG^o_B + bRT\ln P_B)]$$

Combining terms gives the following relationship between ΔG and the reaction quotient Q:

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^\circ + RT\ln\left(\frac{P^c_{\mathrm{C}}P^d_{\mathrm{D}}}{P^a_{\mathrm{A}}P^b_{\mathrm{B}}}\right) \tag{6.8.10}$$

$$= \Delta G^\circ + RT\ln Q \tag{6.8.11}$$

where ΔG^o indicates that all reactants and products are in their standard states. For gases at equilibrium ($Q = K_p$), and as you've learned in this chapter, $\Delta G = 0$ for a system at equilibrium. Therefore, we can describe the relationship between ΔG^o and K_p for gases as follows:

$$0 = \Delta G^o + RT\ln K_p \tag{6.8.12}$$

$$\Delta G^o = -RT\ln K_p \tag{6.8.13}$$

If the products and reactants are in their standard states and $\Delta G^o < 0$, then $K_p > 1$, and products are favored over reactants when the reaction is at equilibrium. Conversely, if $\Delta G^o > 0$, then $K_p < 1$, and reactants are favored over products when the reaction is at equilibrium. If $\Delta G^o = 0$, then $K_p = 1$, and neither reactants nor products are favored when the reaction is at equilibrium.

> *For a spontaneous process under standard conditions, K_{eq} and K_p are greater than 1.*

✓ Example 6.8.1

ΔG^o is −32.7 kJ/mol of N_2 for the reaction

$$\mathrm{N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g)}$$

This calculation was for the reaction under standard conditions—that is, with all gases present at a partial pressure of 1 atm and a temperature of 25°C. Calculate ΔG for the same reaction under the following nonstandard conditions:

- $P_{\mathrm{N_2}}$ = 2.00 atm,
- $P_{\mathrm{H_2}}$ = 7.00 atm,
- $P_{\mathrm{NH_3}}$ = 0.021 atm, and
- $T = 100^o C$.

Does the reaction proceed to the right, as written, or to the left to reach equilibrium?

Given: balanced chemical equation, partial pressure of each species, temperature, and ΔG°

Asked for: whether the reaction proceeds to the right or to the left to reach equilibrium

Strategy:

A. Using the values given and Equation 6.8.11, calculate Q.
B. Determine if Q is >, <, or = to K
C. Substitute the values of ΔG^o and Q into Equation 6.8.11 to obtain ΔG for the reaction under nonstandard conditions.

Solution:

A The relationship between ΔG^o and ΔG under nonstandard conditions is given in Equation 6.8.11. Substituting the partial pressures given, we can calculate Q:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= \frac{P^2_{\mathrm{NH_3}}}{P_{\mathrm{N_2}}P^3_{\mathrm{H_2}}} \\ &= \frac{(0.021)^2}{(2.00)(7.00)^3} = 6.4 \times 10^{-7} \end{aligned}$$

B Because ΔG^o is −, K must be a number greater than 1

C Substituting the values of ΔG^o and Q into Equation 6.8.11,

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G &= \Delta G^\circ + RT\ln Q \\ &= -32.7\text{ kJ} + \left[(8.314\text{ J/K})(373\text{ K})\left(\frac{1\text{ kJ}}{1000\text{ J}}\right)\ln(6.4\times 10^{-7})\right] \\ &= -32.7\text{ kJ} + (-44\text{ kJ}) \\ &= -77\text{ kJ/mol of N}_2 \end{aligned}$$

Because $\Delta G < 0$ and $Q < K$ (because $Q < 1$), the reaction proceeds spontaneously to the right, as written, in order to reach equilibrium.

? Exercise 6.8.1

Calculate ΔG for the reaction of nitric oxide with oxygen to give nitrogen dioxide under these conditions: T = 50°C, P_{NO} = 0.0100 atm, $P_{\mathrm{O_2}}$ = 0.200 atm, and $P_{\mathrm{NO_2}} = 1.00 \times 10^{-4} atm$. The value of ΔG^o for this reaction is −72.5 kJ/mol of O_2. Are products or reactants favored?

Answer

−92.9 kJ/mol of O_2; the reaction is spontaneous to the right as written. The reaction will proceed in the forward direction to reach equilibrium.

✓ Example 6.8.2

Calculate K_p for the reaction of H_2 with N_2 to give NH_3 at 25°C. ΔG^o for this reaction is −32.7 kJ/mol of N_2.

Given: balanced chemical equation from Example 6.8.1, ΔG^o, and temperature

Asked for: K_p

Strategy:

Substitute values for ΔG^o and T (in kelvin) into Equation 6.8.13 to calculate K_p, the equilibrium constant for the formation of ammonia.

Solution

In Example 6.8.1, we used tabulated values of ΔG°_f to calculate ΔG^o for this reaction (−32.7 kJ/mol of N_2). For equilibrium conditions, rearranging Equation 6.8.13,

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G^\circ &= -RT \ln K_\mathrm{p} \\ \frac{-\Delta G^\circ}{RT} &= \ln K_\mathrm{p} \end{aligned}$$

Inserting the value of ΔG^o and the temperature (25°C = 298 K) into this equation,

$$\begin{aligned} \ln K_\mathrm{p} &= -\frac{(-32.7\ \mathrm{kJ})(1000\ \mathrm{J/kJ})}{(8.314\ \mathrm{J/K})(298\ \mathrm{K})} = 13.2 \\ K_\mathrm{p} &= 5.4 \times 10^5 \end{aligned}$$

Thus the equilibrium constant for the formation of ammonia at room temperature is product-favored. However, the rate at which the reaction occurs at room temperature is too slow to be useful.

? Exercise 6.8.3

Calculate K_p for the reaction of NO with O_2 to give NO_2 at 25°C. ΔG^o for this reaction is −70.5 kJ/mol of O_2.

Answer

2.3×10^{12}

Although K_p is defined in terms of the partial pressures of the reactants and the products, the equilibrium constant K is defined in terms of the concentrations of the reactants and the products. The numerical magnitude of K_p and K are related:

$$K_p = K(RT)^{\Delta n} \tag{6.8.14}$$

where Δn is the number of moles of gaseous product minus the number of moles of gaseous reactant. For reactions that involve only solutions, liquids, and solids, $\Delta n = 0$, so $K_p = K$. For all reactions that do not involve a change in the number of moles of gas present, the relationship in Equation 6.8.13 can be written in a more general form:

$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K \tag{6.8.15}$$

Only when a reaction results in a net production or consumption of gases is it necessary to correct Equation 6.8.15 for the difference between K_p and K.

Non-Ideal Behavior

Although we typically use concentrations or pressures in our equilibrium calculations, recall that equilibrium constants are generally expressed as unitless numbers because of the use of **activities** or **fugacities** in precise thermodynamic work. Systems that contain gases at high pressures or concentrated solutions that deviate substantially from ideal behavior require the use of fugacities or activities, respectively.

Combining Equation 6.8.15 with $\Delta G^o = \Delta H^o - T\Delta S^o$ provides insight into how the components of ΔG^o influence the magnitude of the equilibrium constant:

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \tag{6.8.16}$$

$$= -RT \ln K \tag{6.8.17}$$

Notice that K becomes larger as ΔS^o becomes more positive, indicating that the magnitude of the equilibrium constant is directly influenced by the tendency of a system to move toward maximum disorder. Moreover, K increases as ΔH^o decreases. Thus the magnitude of the equilibrium constant is also directly influenced by the tendency of a system to seek the lowest energy state possible.

> *The magnitude of the equilibrium constant is directly influenced by the tendency of a system to move toward maximum entropy and seek the lowest energy state possible.*

Relating Grxn and Kp: Relating Grxn and Kp(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Temperature Dependence of the Equilibrium Constant

The fact that ΔG^o and K are related provides us with another explanation of why equilibrium constants are temperature dependent. This relationship is shown explicitly in Equation 6.8.17, which can be rearranged as follows:

$$\ln K = -\frac{\Delta H^\circ}{RT} + \frac{\Delta S^\circ}{R} \tag{6.8.18}$$

Assuming ΔH^o and ΔS^o are temperature independent, for an exothermic reaction ($\Delta H^o < 0$), the magnitude of K decreases with increasing temperature, whereas for an endothermic reaction ($\Delta H° > 0$), the magnitude of K increases with increasing temperature. The quantitative relationship expressed in Equation 6.8.18 agrees with the qualitative predictions made by applying Le Chatelier’s principle. Because heat is produced in an exothermic reaction, adding heat (by increasing the temperature) will shift the equilibrium to the left, favoring the reactants and decreasing the magnitude of K. Conversely, because heat is consumed in an endothermic reaction, adding heat will shift the equilibrium to the right, favoring the products and increasing the magnitude of K. Equation 6.8.18 also shows that the magnitude of ΔH^o dictates how rapidly K changes as a function of temperature. In contrast, the magnitude and sign of ΔS^o affect the magnitude of K but not its temperature dependence.

If we know the value of K at a given temperature and the value of ΔH^o for a reaction, we can estimate the value of K at any other temperature, even in the absence of information on ΔS^o. Suppose, for example, that K_1 and K_2 are the equilibrium constants for a reaction at temperatures T_1 and T_2, respectively. Applying Equation 6.8.18 gives the following relationship at each temperature:

$$\ln K_1 = \frac{-\Delta H^\circ}{RT_1} + \frac{\Delta S^\circ}{R}$$

and

$$\ln K_2 = \frac{-\Delta H^\circ}{RT_2} + \frac{\Delta S^\circ}{R}$$

Subtracting $\ln K_1$ from $\ln K_2$,

$$\ln K_2 - \ln K_1 = \ln \frac{K_2}{K_1} = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right) \tag{6.8.19}$$

Thus calculating ΔH^o from tabulated enthalpies of formation and measuring the equilibrium constant at one temperature (K_1) allow us to calculate the value of the equilibrium constant at any other temperature (K_2), assuming that ΔH^o and ΔS^o are independent of temperature.

Example 6.8.4

The equilibrium constant for the formation of NH_3 from H_2 and N_2 at 25°C was calculated to be $K_p = 5.4 \times 10^5$ in Example 6.8.3. What is K_p at 500°C? (Use the data from Example 6.8.1.)

Given: balanced chemical equation, $\Delta H^{o\,\circ}$, initial and final T, and K_p at 25°C

Asked for: K_p at 500°C

Strategy:

Convert the initial and final temperatures to kelvin. Then substitute appropriate values into Equation 6.8.19 to obtain K_2, the equilibrium constant at the final temperature.

Solution:

The value of ΔH^o for the reaction obtained using Hess's law is −91.8 kJ/mol of N_2. If we set T_1 = 25°C = 298.K and T_2 = 500°C = 773 K, then from Equation 6.8.19 we obtain the following:

$$\begin{aligned} \ln \frac{K_2}{K_1} &= \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1}-\frac{1}{T_2}\right) \\ &= \frac{(-91.8\text{ kJ})(1000\text{ J/kJ})}{8.314\text{ J/K}}\left(\frac{1}{298\text{ K}}-\frac{1}{773\text{ K}}\right) = -22.8 \\ \frac{K_2}{K_1} &= 1.3\times 10^{-10} \\ K_2 &= (5.4\times 10^5)(1.3\times 10^{-10}) = 7.0\times 10^{-5} \end{aligned}$$

Thus at 500°C, the equilibrium strongly favors the reactants over the products.

? Exercise 6.8.4

In the exercise in Example 6.8.3, you calculated $K_p = 2.2 \times 10^{12}$ for the reaction of NO with O_2 to give NO_2 at 25°C. Use the ΔH^o_f values in the exercise in Example 6.8.1 to calculate K_p for this reaction at 1000°C.

Answer

5.6×10^{-4}

The Van't Hoff Equation: The Van't Hoff Equation (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

For a reversible process that does not involve external work, we can express the change in free energy in terms of volume, pressure, entropy, and temperature. If we assume ideal gas behavior, the ideal gas law allows us to express ΔG in terms of the partial pressures of the reactants and products, which gives us a relationship between ΔG and K_p, the equilibrium constant of a reaction involving gases, or K, the equilibrium constant expressed in terms of concentrations. If ΔG^o < 0, then K > 1, and products are favored over reactants at equilibrium. Conversely, if ΔG^o > 0, then K < 1, and reactants are favored over products at equilibrium. If ΔG^o = 0, then K=1, and neither reactants nor products are favored at equilibrium. We can use the measured equilibrium constant K at one temperature and ΔH° to estimate the equilibrium constant for a reaction at any other temperature.

Contributors and Attributions

- Mike Blaber (Florida State University)
- Modified by Tom Neils (Grand Rapids Community College)

6.9: Free Energy and Equilibrium- Relating to the Equilibrium Constant (K)

Learning Objectives

- To know the relationship between free energy and the equilibrium constant.

We have identified three criteria for whether a given reaction will occur spontaneously:

1. $\Delta S_{univ} > 0$,
2. $\Delta G_{sys} < 0$ (applicable under constant temperature and constant pressure conditions), and
3. the relative magnitude of the reaction quotient Q versus the equilibrium constant K.

Recall that if $Q < K$, then the reaction proceeds spontaneously to the right as written, resulting in the net conversion of reactants to products. Conversely, if $Q > K$, then the reaction proceeds spontaneously to the left as written, resulting in the net conversion of products to reactants. If $Q = K$, then the system is at equilibrium, and no net reaction occurs. Table $6.9.1$ summarizes these criteria and their relative values for spontaneous, nonspontaneous, and equilibrium processes.

Table $6.9.1$: Criteria for the Spontaneity of a Process as Written

Spontaneous	Equilibrium	Nonspontaneous*
$\Delta S_{univ} > 0$	$\Delta S_{univ} = 0$	$\Delta S_{univ} < 0$
$\Delta G_{sys} < 0$	$\Delta G_{sys} = 0$	$\Delta G_{sys} > 0$
Q < K	Q = K	Q > K
*Spontaneous in the reverse direction.		

Because all three criteria are assessing the same thing—the spontaneity of the process—it would be most surprising indeed if they were not related. In this section, we explore the relationship between the standard free energy of reaction (ΔG^o) and the equilibrium constant (K).

Free Energy and the Equilibrium Constant

Because ΔH^o and ΔS^o determine the magnitude and sign of ΔG^o and also because K is a measure of the ratio of the concentrations of products to the concentrations of reactants, we should be able to express K in terms of ΔG^o and vice versa. "Free Energy", ΔG is equal to the maximum amount of work a system can perform on its surroundings while undergoing a spontaneous change. For a reversible process that does not involve external work, we can express the change in free energy in terms of volume, pressure, entropy, and temperature, thereby eliminating ΔH from the equation for ΔG. The general relationship can be shown as follows (derivation not shown):

$$\Delta G = V\Delta P - S\Delta T \tag{6.9.1}$$

If a reaction is carried out at constant temperature ($\Delta T = 0$), then Equation $6.9.1$ simplifies to

$$\Delta G = V\Delta P \tag{6.9.2}$$

Under normal conditions, the pressure dependence of free energy is not important for solids and liquids because of their small molar volumes. For reactions that involve gases, however, the effect of pressure on free energy is very important.

Assuming ideal gas behavior, we can replace the V in Equation $6.9.2$ by nRT/P (where n is the number of moles of gas and R is the ideal gas constant) and express ΔG in terms of the initial and final pressures (P_i and P_f, respectively):

$$\Delta G = \left(\frac{nRT}{P}\right)\Delta P \tag{6.9.3}$$

$$= nRT\frac{\Delta P}{P} \tag{6.9.4}$$

$$= nRT\ln\left(\frac{P_\text{f}}{P_\text{i}}\right) \tag{6.9.5}$$

If the initial state is the standard state with $P_i = 1\, atm$, then the change in free energy of a substance when going from the standard state to any other state with a pressure P can be written as follows:

$$G - G^\circ = nRT\ln P$$

This can be rearranged as follows:

$$G = G^\circ + nRT\ln P \tag{6.9.6}$$

As you will soon discover, Equation 6.9.6 allows us to relate ΔG^o and K_p. Any relationship that is true for K_p must also be true for K because K_p and K are simply different ways of expressing the equilibrium constant using different units.

Let’s consider the following hypothetical reaction, in which all the reactants and the products are ideal gases and the lowercase letters correspond to the stoichiometric coefficients for the various species:

$$aA + bB \rightleftharpoons cC + dD \tag{6.9.7}$$

Because the free-energy change for a reaction is the difference between the sum of the free energies of the products and the reactants, we can write the following expression for ΔG:

$$\Delta G = \sum_m G_{products} - \sum_n G_{reactants} \tag{6.9.8}$$

$$= (cG_C + dG_D) - (aG_A + bG_B) \tag{6.9.9}$$

Substituting Equation 6.9.6 for each term into Equation 6.9.9,

$$\Delta G = [(cG^o_C + cRT\ln P_C) + (dG^o_D + dRT\ln P_D)] - [(aG^o_A + aRT\ln P_A) + (bG^o_B + bRT\ln P_B)]$$

Combining terms gives the following relationship between ΔG and the reaction quotient Q:

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^\circ + RT\ln\left(\frac{P^c_{\mathrm{C}}P^d_{\mathrm{D}}}{P^a_{\mathrm{A}}P^b_{\mathrm{B}}}\right) \tag{6.9.10}$$

$$= \Delta G^\circ + RT\ln Q \tag{6.9.11}$$

where ΔG^o indicates that all reactants and products are in their standard states. For gases at equilibrium ($Q = K_p$), and as you’ve learned in this chapter, $\Delta G = 0$ for a system at equilibrium. Therefore, we can describe the relationship between ΔG^o and K_p for gases as follows:

$$0 = \Delta G^o + RT\ln K_p \tag{6.9.12}$$

$$\Delta G^o = -RT\ln K_p \tag{6.9.13}$$

If the products and reactants are in their standard states and $\Delta G^o < 0$, then $K_p > 1$, and products are favored over reactants when the reaction is at equilibrium. Conversely, if $\Delta G^o > 0$, then $K_p < 1$, and reactants are favored over products when the reaction is at equilibrium. If $\Delta G^o = 0$, then $K_p = 1$, and neither reactants nor products are favored when the reaction is at equilibrium.

> *For a spontaneous process under standard conditions, K_{eq} and K_p are greater than 1.*

✓ Example 6.9.1

ΔG^o is −32.7 kJ/mol of N_2 for the reaction

$$\mathrm{N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g)}$$

This calculation was for the reaction under standard conditions—that is, with all gases present at a partial pressure of 1 atm and a temperature of 25°C. Calculate ΔG for the same reaction under the following nonstandard conditions:

- $P_{\mathrm{N_2}}$ = 2.00 atm,
- $P_{\mathrm{H_2}}$ = 7.00 atm,
- $P_{\mathrm{NH_3}}$ = 0.021 atm, and
- $T = 100^o C$.

Does the reaction proceed to the right, as written, or to the left to reach equilibrium?

Given: balanced chemical equation, partial pressure of each species, temperature, and ΔG°

Asked for: whether the reaction proceeds to the right or to the left to reach equilibrium

Strategy:

A. Using the values given and Equation 6.9.11, calculate Q.
B. Determine if Q is >, <, or = to K
C. Substitute the values of ΔG^o and Q into Equation 6.9.11 to obtain ΔG for the reaction under nonstandard conditions.

Solution:

A The relationship between ΔG^o and ΔG under nonstandard conditions is given in Equation 6.9.11. Substituting the partial pressures given, we can calculate Q:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= \frac{P^2_{\text{NH}_3}}{P_{\text{N}_2} P^3_{\text{H}_2}} \\ &= \frac{(0.021)^2}{(2.00)(7.00)^3} = 6.4 \times 10^{-7} \end{aligned}$$

B Because ΔG^o is −, K must be a number greater than 1

C Substituting the values of ΔG^o and Q into Equation 6.9.11,

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G &= \Delta G^\circ + RT \ln Q \\ &= -32.7\ \text{kJ} + \left[(8.314\ \text{J/K})(373\ \text{K}) \left(\frac{1\ \text{kJ}}{1000\ \text{J}} \right) \ln(6.4 \times 10^{-7}) \right] \\ &= -32.7\ \text{kJ} + (-44\ \text{kJ}) \\ &= -77\ \text{kJ/mol of N}_2 \end{aligned}$$

Because $\Delta G < 0$ and $Q < K$ (because $Q < 1$), the reaction proceeds spontaneously to the right, as written, in order to reach equilibrium.

? Exercise 6.9.1

Calculate ΔG for the reaction of nitric oxide with oxygen to give nitrogen dioxide under these conditions: T = 50°C, P_{NO} = 0.0100 atm, P_{O_2} = 0.200 atm, and $P_{\text{NO}_2} = 1.00 \times 10^{-4} atm$. The value of ΔG^o for this reaction is −72.5 kJ/mol of O_2. Are products or reactants favored?

Answer

> −92.9 kJ/mol of O_2; the reaction is spontaneous to the right as written. The reaction will proceed in the forward direction to reach equilibrium.

✓ Example 6.9.2

Calculate K_p for the reaction of H_2 with N_2 to give NH_3 at 25°C. ΔG^o for this reaction is −32.7 kJ/mol of N_2.

Given: balanced chemical equation from Example 6.9.1, ΔG^o, and temperature

Asked for: K_p

Strategy:

Substitute values for ΔG^o and T (in kelvin) into Equation 6.9.13 to calculate K_p, the equilibrium constant for the formation of ammonia.

Solution

In Example 6.9.1, we used tabulated values of $\Delta G^\circ{}_f$ to calculate ΔG^o for this reaction (−32.7 kJ/mol of N_2). For equilibrium conditions, rearranging Equation 6.9.13,

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G^\circ &= -RT \ln K_\mathrm{p} \\ \frac{-\Delta G^\circ}{RT} &= \ln K_\mathrm{p} \end{aligned}$$

Inserting the value of ΔG^o and the temperature (25°C = 298 K) into this equation,

$$\begin{aligned} \ln K_\mathrm{p} &= -\frac{(-32.7\ \mathrm{kJ})(1000\ \mathrm{J/kJ})}{(8.314\ \mathrm{J/K})(298\ \mathrm{K})} = 13.2 \\ K_\mathrm{p} &= 5.4 \times 10^5 \end{aligned}$$

Thus the equilibrium constant for the formation of ammonia at room temperature is product-favored. However, the rate at which the reaction occurs at room temperature is too slow to be useful.

? Exercise 6.9.3

Calculate K_p for the reaction of NO with O_2 to give NO_2 at 25°C. ΔG^o for this reaction is −70.5 kJ/mol of O_2.

Answer

2.3×10^{12}

Although K_p is defined in terms of the partial pressures of the reactants and the products, the equilibrium constant K is defined in terms of the concentrations of the reactants and the products. The numerical magnitude of K_p and K are related:

$$K_p = K(RT)^{\Delta n} \tag{6.9.14}$$

where Δn is the number of moles of gaseous product minus the number of moles of gaseous reactant. For reactions that involve only solutions, liquids, and solids, $\Delta n = 0$, so $K_p = K$. For all reactions that do not involve a change in the number of moles of gas present, the relationship in Equation 6.9.13 can be written in a more general form:

$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K \tag{6.9.15}$$

Only when a reaction results in a net production or consumption of gases is it necessary to correct Equation 6.9.15 for the difference between K_p and K.

Non-Ideal Behavior

Although we typically use concentrations or pressures in our equilibrium calculations, recall that equilibrium constants are generally expressed as unitless numbers because of the use of **activities** or **fugacities** in precise thermodynamic work. Systems that contain gases at high pressures or concentrated solutions that deviate substantially from ideal behavior require the use of fugacities or activities, respectively.

Combining Equation 6.9.15 with $\Delta G^o = \Delta H^o - T\Delta S^o$ provides insight into how the components of ΔG^o influence the magnitude of the equilibrium constant:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G^\circ &= \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \qquad (6.9.16) \\ &= -RT \ln K \qquad (6.9.17) \end{aligned}$$

Notice that K becomes larger as ΔS^o becomes more positive, indicating that the magnitude of the equilibrium constant is directly influenced by the tendency of a system to move toward maximum disorder. Moreover, K increases as ΔH^o decreases. Thus the magnitude of the equilibrium constant is also directly influenced by the tendency of a system to seek the lowest energy state possible.

> *The magnitude of the equilibrium constant is directly influenced by the tendency of a system to move toward maximum entropy and seek the lowest energy state possible.*

Relating Grxn and Kp: Relating Grxn and Kp(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Temperature Dependence of the Equilibrium Constant

The fact that ΔG^o and K are related provides us with another explanation of why equilibrium constants are temperature dependent. This relationship is shown explicitly in Equation 6.9.17, which can be rearranged as follows:

$$\ln K = -\frac{\Delta H^\circ}{RT} + \frac{\Delta S^\circ}{R} \tag{6.9.18}$$

Assuming ΔH^o and ΔS^o are temperature independent, for an exothermic reaction ($\Delta H^o < 0$), the magnitude of K decreases with increasing temperature, whereas for an endothermic reaction (ΔH° > 0), the magnitude of K increases with increasing temperature. The quantitative relationship expressed in Equation 6.9.18 agrees with the qualitative predictions made by applying Le Chatelier’s principle. Because heat is produced in an exothermic reaction, adding heat (by increasing the temperature) will shift the equilibrium to the left, favoring the reactants and decreasing the magnitude of K. Conversely, because heat is consumed in an endothermic reaction, adding heat will shift the equilibrium to the right, favoring the products and increasing the magnitude of K. Equation 6.9.18 also shows that the magnitude of ΔH^o dictates how rapidly K changes as a function of temperature. In contrast, the magnitude and sign of ΔS^o affect the magnitude of K but not its temperature dependence.

If we know the value of K at a given temperature and the value of ΔH^o for a reaction, we can estimate the value of K at any other temperature, even in the absence of information on ΔS^o. Suppose, for example, that K_1 and K_2 are the equilibrium constants for a reaction at temperatures T_1 and T_2, respectively. Applying Equation 6.9.18 gives the following relationship at each temperature:

$$\ln K_1 = \frac{-\Delta H^\circ}{RT_1} + \frac{\Delta S^\circ}{R}$$

and

$$\ln K_2 = \frac{-\Delta H^\circ}{RT_2} + \frac{\Delta S^\circ}{R}$$

Subtracting $\ln K_1$ from $\ln K_2$,

$$\ln K_2 - \ln K_1 = \ln \frac{K_2}{K_1} = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right) \tag{6.9.19}$$

Thus calculating ΔH^o from tabulated enthalpies of formation and measuring the equilibrium constant at one temperature (K_1) allow us to calculate the value of the equilibrium constant at any other temperature (K_2), assuming that ΔH^o and ΔS^o are independent of temperature.

Example 6.9.4

The equilibrium constant for the formation of NH_3 from H_2 and N_2 at 25°C was calculated to be $K_p = 5.4 \times 10^5$ in Example 6.9.3. What is K_p at 500°C? (Use the data from Example 6.9.1.)

Given: balanced chemical equation, $\Delta H^{o\,\circ}$, initial and final T, and K_p at 25°C

Asked for: K_p at 500°C

Strategy:

Convert the initial and final temperatures to kelvin. Then substitute appropriate values into Equation 6.9.19 to obtain K_2, the equilibrium constant at the final temperature.

Solution:

The value of ΔH^o for the reaction obtained using Hess's law is −91.8 kJ/mol of N_2. If we set $T_1 = 25°C = 298.K$ and $T_2 = 500°C = 773\ K$, then from Equation 6.9.19 we obtain the following:

$$\begin{aligned}
\ln \frac{K_2}{K_1} &= \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right) \\
&= \frac{(-91.8\ \text{kJ})(1000\ \text{J/kJ})}{8.314\ \text{J/K}}\left(\frac{1}{298\ \text{K}} - \frac{1}{773\ \text{K}}\right) = -22.8 \\
\frac{K_2}{K_1} &= 1.3 \times 10^{-10} \\
K_2 &= (5.4 \times 10^5)(1.3 \times 10^{-10}) = 7.0 \times 10^{-5}
\end{aligned}$$

Thus at 500°C, the equilibrium strongly favors the reactants over the products.

Exercise 6.9.4

In the exercise in Example 6.9.3, you calculated $K_p = 2.2 \times 10^{12}$ for the reaction of NO with O_2 to give NO_2 at 25°C. Use the ΔH^o_f values in the exercise in Example 6.9.1 to calculate K_p for this reaction at 1000°C.

Answer

5.6×10^{-4}

The Van't Hoff Equation: The Van't Hoff Equation (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

For a reversible process that does not involve external work, we can express the change in free energy in terms of volume, pressure, entropy, and temperature. If we assume ideal gas behavior, the ideal gas law allows us to express ΔG in terms of the partial pressures of the reactants and products, which gives us a relationship between ΔG and K_p, the equilibrium constant of a reaction involving gases, or K, the equilibrium constant expressed in terms of concentrations. If ΔG^o < 0, then K > 1, and products are favored over reactants at equilibrium. Conversely, if ΔG^o > 0, then K < 1, and reactants are favored over products at equilibrium. If ΔG^o = 0, then K=1, and neither reactants nor products are favored at equilibrium. We can use the measured equilibrium constant K at one temperature and ΔH° to estimate the equilibrium constant for a reaction at any other temperature.

Contributors and Attributions

- Mike Blaber (Florida State University)
- Modified by Tom Neils (Grand Rapids Community College)

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

7: Electrochemistry

Topic hierarchy

7.1: Lightning and Batteries

7.2: Balancing Oxidation-Reduction Equations

Learning Objectives

- To identify oxidation–reduction reactions in solution.

We described the defining characteristics of oxidation–reduction, or redox, reactions. Most of the reactions we considered there were relatively simple, and balancing them was straightforward. When oxidation–reduction reactions occur in aqueous solution, however, the equations are more complex and can be more difficult to balance by inspection. Because a balanced chemical equation is the most important prerequisite for solving any stoichiometry problem, we need a method for balancing oxidation–reduction reactions in aqueous solution that is generally applicable. One such method uses *oxidation states*, and a second is referred to as the *half-reaction* method.

Balancing Redox Equations Using Oxidation States

To balance a redox equation using the oxidation state method, we conceptually separate the overall reaction into two parts: an oxidation—in which the atoms of one element lose electrons—and a reduction—in which the atoms of one element gain electrons. Consider, for example, the reaction of Cr^{2+}(aq) with manganese dioxide (MnO_2) in the presence of dilute acid. Equation 7.2.1 is the net ionic equation for this reaction before balancing; the oxidation state of each element in each species has been assigned using the procedure described previously (in red above each element):

$$\overset{+2}{\mathrm{Cr}}{}^{2+}(aq) + \overset{+4}{\mathrm{Mn}}\overset{-2}{\mathrm{O}}{}_2(aq) + \overset{+1}{\mathrm{H}}{}^{+}(aq) \rightarrow \overset{+3}{\mathrm{Cr}}{}^{3+}(aq) + \overset{+2}{\mathrm{Mn}}{}^{2+}(aq) + \overset{+1}{\mathrm{H}}{}_2\overset{-2}{\mathrm{O}}(l) \tag{7.2.1}$$

Notice that chromium is oxidized from the +2 to the +3 oxidation state, while manganese is reduced from the +4 to the +2 oxidation state. We can write an equation for this reaction that shows only the atoms that are oxidized and reduced (ignoring the oxygen and hydrogen atoms):

$$\mathrm{Cr^{2+} + Mn^{4+} \longrightarrow Cr^{3+} + Mn^{2+}} \tag{7.2.2}$$

The oxidation can be written as

$$\underbrace{\mathrm{Cr^{2+} \longrightarrow Cr^{3+} + e^-}}_{\text{oxidation with 1 electron lost}} \tag{7.2.3}$$

and the reduction as

$$\underbrace{\mathrm{Mn^{4+} + 2\,e^- \rightarrow Mn^{2+}}}_{\text{reduction with 2 electrons gained}} \tag{7.2.4}$$

For the overall chemical equation to be balanced, the number of electrons lost by the reductant must equal the number gained by the oxidant. We must therefore multiply the oxidation and the reduction equations by appropriate coefficients to give us the same number of electrons in both. In this example, we must multiply the oxidation (Equation 7.2.3) by 2 to give

$$\mathrm{2\,Cr^{2+} \longrightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+} + 2\,e^-} \tag{7.2.5}$$

The number of electrons lost in the oxidation now equals the number of electrons gained in the reduction (Equation 7.2.4):

$$\mathrm{2\,Cr^{2+} \rightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+} + 2\,e^-}$$

$$\mathrm{Mn^{4+} + 2\,e^- \rightarrow Mn^{2+}}$$

We then add the equations for the oxidation and the reduction and cancel the electrons on both sides of the equation, using the actual chemical forms of the reactants and products:

$$\mathrm{2\,Cr^{2+} \rightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+} +\ 2\,\cancel{e^-}}$$

$$\mathrm{Mn^{4+} +\ 2\,\cancel{e^-} \rightarrow Mn^{2+}}$$

to result in the balanced redox reaction (metals only)

$$Mn^{4+} + 2\,Cr^{2+} \rightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+} + Mn^{2+} \tag{7.2.6}$$

now we can add the non-redox active atoms back into the equation (ignoring water and hydronium for now)

$$MnO_2(aq) + 2\,Cr^{2+}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+}(aq) + Mn^{2+}(aq) \tag{7.2.7}$$

> *In a balanced redox reaction, the number of electrons lost by the reductant equals the number of electrons gained by the oxidant.*

Although the electrons cancel and the metal atoms are balanced, the total charge on the left side of Equation 7.2.7 (+4) does not equal the charge on the right side (+8). Because the reaction is carried out in the presence of aqueous acid, we can add H^+ as necessary to either side of the equation to balance the charge. By the same token, if the reaction were carried out in the presence of aqueous base, we could balance the charge by adding OH^- as necessary to either side of the equation to balance the charges.

In this case, adding four H^+ ions to the left side of Equation 7.2.7 to give

$$MnO_2(s) + 2\,Cr^{2+}(aq) + 4\,H^+(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+}(aq) + Mn^{2+}(aq) \tag{7.2.8}$$

Although the charges are now balanced in Equation 7.2.8, we have two oxygen atoms on the left side of the equation and none on the right. We can balance the oxygen atoms without affecting the overall charge balance by adding H_2O as necessary to either side of the equation. Here, we need to add two H_2O molecules to the right side of Equation 7.2.8:

$$MnO_2(s) + 2\,Cr^{2+}(aq) + 4\,H^+(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+}(aq) + Mn^{2+}(aq) + 2\,H_2O(l) \tag{7.2.9}$$

Although we did not explicitly balance the hydrogen atoms, we can see by inspection that the overall chemical equation is now balanced with respect to all atoms and charge. All that remains is to check to make sure that we have not made a mistake. This procedure for balancing reactions is summarized below and illustrated in Example 7.2.1 below.

Procedure for Balancing Oxidation–Reduction Reactions by the Oxidation State Method

1. Write the unbalanced chemical equation for the reaction, showing the reactants and the products.
2. Assign oxidation states to all atoms in the reactants and the products and determine which atoms change oxidation state.
3. Write separate equations for oxidation and reduction, showing (a) the atom(s) that is (are) oxidized and reduced and (b) the number of electrons accepted or donated by each.
4. Multiply the oxidation and reduction equations by appropriate coefficients so that both contain the same number of electrons.
5. Write the oxidation and reduction equations showing the actual chemical forms of the reactants and the products, adjusting the coefficients as necessary to give the numbers of atoms in step 4.
6. Add the two equations and cancel the electrons.
7. Balance the charge by adding H^+ or OH^- ions as necessary for reactions in acidic or basic solution, respectively.
8. Balance the oxygen atoms by adding H_2O molecules to one side of the equation.
9. Check to make sure that the equation is balanced in both atoms and total charges.

✓ Example 7.2.1: Balancing in Acid Solutions

Arsenic acid (H_3AsO_4) is a highly poisonous substance that was once used as a pesticide. The reaction of elemental zinc with arsenic acid in acidic solution yields arsine (AsH_3, a highly toxic and unstable gas) and $Zn^{2+}(aq)$. Balance the equation for this reaction using oxidation states:

$$H_3AsO_4(aq) + Zn(s) \longrightarrow AsH_3(g) + Zn^{2+}(aq)$$

Given: reactants and products in acidic solution

Asked for: balanced chemical equation using oxidation states

Strategy:

Follow the procedure given above for balancing a redox equation using oxidation states. When you are done, be certain to check that the equation is balanced.

Solution:

1. *Write a chemical equation showing the reactants and the products.* Because we are given this information, we can skip this step.
2. *Assign oxidation states and determine which atoms change oxidation state.* The oxidation state of arsenic in arsenic acid is +5, and the oxidation state of arsenic in arsine is −3. Conversely, the oxidation state of zinc in elemental zinc is 0, and the oxidation state of zinc in $Zn^{2+}(aq)$ is +2:

$$H_3\overset{+5}{As}O_4(aq)+\overset{0}{Zn}(s)\rightarrow \overset{-3}{As}H_3(g)+\overset{+2}{Zn^{2+}}(aq)$$

3. *Write separate equations for oxidation and reduction.* The arsenic atom in H_3AsO_4 is reduced from the +5 to the −3 oxidation state, which requires the addition of eight electrons:

$$\underbrace{\overset{+5}{As}+8e^-\rightarrow\overset{-3}{As}}_{\text{Reduction with gain of 8 electrons}}$$

   Each zinc atom in elemental zinc is oxidized from 0 to +2, which requires the loss of two electrons per zinc atom:

$$\underbrace{\overset{0}{Zn}\rightarrow\overset{+2}{Zn^{2+}}+2e^-}_{\text{Oxidation with loss of 2 electrons}}$$

4. *Multiply the oxidation and reduction equations by appropriate coefficients so that both contain the same number of electrons.* The reduction equation has eight electrons, and the oxidation equation has two electrons, so we need to multiply the oxidation equation by 4 to obtain

$$\overset{+5}{\mathrm{As}}+8\,\mathrm{e}^-\rightarrow\overset{-3}{\mathrm{As}}$$
$$4\,\overset{0}{\mathrm{Zn}}\rightarrow 4\,\overset{+2}{\mathrm{Zn}^{2+}}+8\,\mathrm{e}^-$$

5. *Write the oxidation and reduction equations showing the actual chemical forms of the reactants and the products, adjusting coefficients as necessary to give the numbers of atoms shown in step 4.* Inserting the actual chemical forms of arsenic and zinc and adjusting the coefficients gives
   - Reduction:

$$\mathrm{H_3AsO_4(aq)+8\,e^-\rightarrow AsH_3(g)}$$

   - Oxidation:

$$\mathrm{4\,Zn(s)\longrightarrow 4\,Zn^{2+}(aq)+8\,e^-}$$

6. *Add the two equations and cancel the electrons.* The sum of the two equations in step 5 is

$$\mathrm{H_3AsO_4(aq)+4\,Zn(s)+\ 8\cancel{e^-}\rightarrow AsH_3(g)+4\,Zn^{2+}(aq)+\ 8\cancel{e^-}}$$

   which then yields after canceling electrons

$$\mathrm{H_3AsO_4(aq)+4\,Zn(s)\rightarrow AsH_3(g)+4\,Zn^{2+}(aq)}$$

7. *Balance the charge by adding H^+ or OH^- ions as necessary for reactions in acidic or basic solution, respectively.* Because the reaction is carried out in acidic solution, we can add H^+ ions to whichever side of the equation requires them to balance the charge. The overall charge on the left side is zero, and the total charge on the right side is 4 × (+2) = +8. Adding eight H^+ ions to the left side gives a charge of +8 on both sides of the equation:

$$\mathrm{H_3AsO_4(aq)+4\,Zn(s)+8\,H^+(aq)\rightarrow AsH_3(g)+4\,Zn^{2+}(aq)}$$

8. *Balance the oxygen atoms by adding H_2O molecules to one side of the equation.* There are 4 O atoms on the left side of the equation. Adding 4 H_2O molecules to the right side balances the O atoms:

$$H_3AsO_4(aq) + 4\,Zn(s) + 8\,H^+(aq) \rightarrow AsH_3(g) + 4\,Zn^{2+}(aq) + 4\,H_2O(l)$$

   Although we have not explicitly balanced H atoms, each side of the equation has 11 H atoms.
9. *Check to make sure that the equation is balanced in both atoms and total charges.* To guard against careless errors, it is important to check that both the total number of atoms of each element and the total charges are the same on both sides of the equation:
   - Atoms:

$$1\,As + 4\,Zn + 4\,O + 11\,H \overset{\checkmark}{=} 1\,As + 4\,Zn + 4\,O + 11\,H$$

   - Charge:

$$8(+1) \overset{\checkmark}{=} 4(+2)$$

The balanced chemical equation (both for charge and for atoms) for this reaction is therefore:

$$H_3AsO_4(aq) + 4\,Zn(s) + 8\,H^+(aq) \longrightarrow AsH_3(g) + 4\,Zn^{2+}(aq) + 4\,H_2O(l)$$

? Exercise 7.2.1: Oxidizing Copper

Copper commonly occurs as the sulfide mineral CuS. The first step in extracting copper from CuS is to dissolve the mineral in nitric acid, which oxidizes the sulfide to sulfate and reduces nitric acid to NO. Balance the equation for this reaction using oxidation states:

$$CuS(s) + H^+(aq) + NO_3^-(aq) \longrightarrow Cu^{2+}(aq) + NO(g) + SO_4^{2-}(aq)$$

Answer

$$3\,CuS(s) + 8\,H^+(aq) + 8\,NO_3^-(aq) \rightarrow 3\,Cu^{2+}(aq) + 8\,NO(g) + 3\,SO_4^{2-}(aq) + 4\,H_2O(l)$$

Reactions in basic solutions are balanced in exactly the same manner. To make sure you understand the procedure, consider Example $7.2.2$.

✓ Example 7.2.2: Balancing in Basic Solution

The commercial solid drain cleaner, Drano, contains a mixture of sodium hydroxide and powdered aluminum. The sodium hydroxide dissolves in standing water to form a strongly basic solution, capable of slowly dissolving organic substances, such as hair, that may be clogging the drain. The aluminum dissolves in the strongly basic solution to produce bubbles of hydrogen gas that agitate the solution to help break up the clogs. The reaction is as follows:

$$Al(s) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow [Al(OH)_4]^-(aq) + H_2(g)$$

Balance this equation using oxidation states.

Given: reactants and products in a basic solution

Asked for: balanced chemical equation

Strategy:

Follow the procedure given above for balancing a redox reaction using oxidation states. When you are done, be certain to check that the equation is balanced.

Solution:

We will apply the same procedure used in Example $7.2.1$, but in a more abbreviated form.

1. The equation for the reaction is given, so we can skip this step.
2. The oxidation state of aluminum changes from 0 in metallic Al to +3 in $[Al(OH)_4]^-$. The oxidation state of hydrogen changes from +1 in H_2O to 0 in H_2. Aluminum is oxidized, while hydrogen is reduced:

   $$\overset{0}{Al}_{(s)} + \overset{+1}{H}_2O_{(aq)} \rightarrow [\overset{+3}{Al}(OH)_4]^-_{(aq)} + \overset{0}{H}_{2(g)}$$

3. Write separate equations for oxidation and reduction.
   - Reduction:

     $$\overset{+1}{H} + e^- \rightarrow \overset{0}{H}\ (in\ H_2)$$

   - Oxidation:

     $$\overset{0}{Al} \rightarrow \overset{+3}{Al} + 3e^-$$

4. Multiply the reduction equation by 3 to obtain an equation with the same number of electrons as the oxidation equation:
   - Reduction:

     $$3\,H^+ + 3\,e^- \longrightarrow 3\,H^0\ (in\ H_2)$$

   - Oxidation:

     $$Al^0 \longrightarrow Al^{3+} + 3\,e^-$$

5. Insert the actual chemical forms of the reactants and products, adjusting the coefficients as necessary to obtain the correct numbers of atoms as in step 4. Because a molecule of H_2O contains two protons, in this case, $3\,H^+$ corresponds to $\frac{3}{2}H_2O$. Similarly, each molecule of hydrogen gas contains two H atoms, so $3\,H$ corresponds to $\frac{3}{2}H_2$.
   - Reduction:

     $$\tfrac{3}{2}H_2O + 3\,e^- \longrightarrow \tfrac{3}{2}H_2$$

   - Oxidation:

     $$Al \longrightarrow [Al(OH)_4]^- + 3\,e^-$$

6. Adding the equations and canceling the electrons gives

   $$Al + \tfrac{3}{2}H_2O + 3\,\cancel{e^-} \longrightarrow [Al(OH)_4]^- + \tfrac{3}{2}H_2 + 3\,\cancel{e^-}$$
   $$Al + \tfrac{3}{2}H_2O \longrightarrow [Al(OH)_4]^- + \tfrac{3}{2}H_2$$

   To remove the fractional coefficients, multiply both sides of the equation by 2:

   $$2\,Al + 3\,H_2O \rightarrow 2\,[Al(OH)_4]^- + 3\,H_2$$

7. The right side of the equation has a total charge of −2, whereas the left side has a total charge of 0. Because the reaction is carried out in basic solution, we can balance the charge by adding two OH^- ions to the left side:

   $$2\,Al + 2\,OH^- + 3\,H_2O \longrightarrow 2\,[Al(OH)_4]^- + 3\,H_2$$

8. The left side of the equation contains five O atoms, and the right side contains eight O atoms. We can balance the O atoms by adding three H_2O molecules to the left side:

   $$2\,Al + 2\,OH^- + 6\,H_2O \longrightarrow 2\,[Al(OH)_4]^- + 3\,H_2$$

9. Be sure the equation is balanced:
   1. Atoms:

      $$2\,Al + 8\,O + 14\,H \overset{\checkmark}{=} 2\,Al + 8\,O + 14\,H$$

2. Charge:

$$(2)(0)+(2)(-1)+(6)(0)\overset{\checkmark}{=}(2)(-1)+(3)(0)$$

The balanced chemical equation is therefore

$$2\,\mathrm{Al(s)}+2\,\mathrm{OH^-(aq)}+6\,\mathrm{H_2O(l)}\rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{[Al(OH)_4]^-(aq)}+3\,\mathrm{H_2(g)}$$

Thus 3 mol of H_2 gas are produced for every 2 mol of Al consumed.

? Exercise 7.2.2: Reducing Manganese in permanganate

The permanganate ion reacts with nitrite ion in basic solution to produce manganese (IV) oxide and nitrate ion. Write a balanced chemical equation for the reaction.

Answer

$$2\,\mathrm{MnO_4^-(aq)}+3\,\mathrm{NO_2^-(aq)}+\mathrm{H_2O(l)}\longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{MnO_2(s)}+3\,\mathrm{NO_3^-(aq)}+2\,\mathrm{OH^-(aq)}$$

As suggested in Examples $7.2.1$ and $7.2.2$, a wide variety of redox reactions are possible in aqueous solutions. The identity of the products obtained from a given set of reactants often depends on both the ratio of oxidant to reductant and whether the reaction is carried out in acidic or basic solution, which is one reason it can be difficult to predict the outcome of a reaction. Because oxidation–reduction reactions in solution are so common and so important, however, chemists have developed two general guidelines for predicting whether a redox reaction will occur and the identity of the products:

1. Compounds of elements in high oxidation states (such as ClO_4^-, NO_3^-, MnO_4^-, $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$, and UF_6) tend to act as *oxidants* and *become reduced* in chemical reactions.
2. Compounds of elements in low oxidation states (such as CH_4, NH_3, H_2S, and HI) tend to act as *reductants* and *become oxidized* in chemical reactions.

When an aqueous solution of a compound that contains an element in a high oxidation state is mixed with an aqueous solution of a compound that contains an element in a low oxidation state, an oxidation–reduction reaction is likely to occur.

> *Species in high oxidation states act as oxidants, whereas species in low oxidation states act as reductants.*

Balancing a Redox Reaction in Acidic Conditions: Balancing a Redox Reaction in Acidic Conditions (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

Oxidation–reduction reactions are balanced by separating the overall chemical equation into an oxidation equation and a reduction equation. In oxidation–reduction reactions, electrons are transferred from one substance or atom to another. We can balance oxidation–reduction reactions in solution using the oxidation state method, in which the overall reaction is separated into an oxidation equation and a reduction equation.

Contributors and Attributions

- Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

7.3: Voltaic (or Galvanic) Cells- Generating Electricity from Spontaneous Chemical Reactions

Learning Objectives

- To understand the basics of voltaic cells
- To connect voltage from a voltaic cell to underlying redox chemistry

In any electrochemical process, electrons flow from one chemical substance to another, driven by an oxidation–reduction (redox) reaction. A redox reaction occurs when electrons are transferred from a substance that is oxidized to one that is being reduced. The **reductant** is the substance that loses electrons and is oxidized in the process; the **oxidant** is the species that gains electrons and is reduced in the process. The associated potential energy is determined by the potential difference between the valence electrons in atoms of different elements.

Because it is impossible to have a reduction without an oxidation and vice versa, a redox reaction can be described as two **half-reactions**, one representing the oxidation process and one the reduction process. For the reaction of zinc with bromine, the overall chemical reaction is as follows:

$$\mathrm{Zn(s) + Br_2(aq) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + 2\,Br^-(aq)}$$

The half-reactions are as follows:

reduction half-reaction:

$$\mathrm{Br_2(aq) + 2\,e^- \rightarrow 2\,Br^-(aq)}$$

oxidation half-reaction:

$$\mathrm{Zn(s) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + 2\,e^-}$$

Each half-reaction is written to show what is actually occurring in the system; Zn is the *reductant* in this reaction (it loses electrons), and $\mathrm{Br_2}$ is the *oxidant* (it gains electrons). Adding the two half-reactions gives the overall chemical reaction (Equation $7.3.1$). A redox reaction is balanced when the number of electrons lost by the reductant equals the number of electrons gained by the oxidant. Like any balanced chemical equation, the overall process is electrically neutral; that is, the net charge is the same on both sides of the equation.

> *In any redox reaction, the number of electrons lost by the oxidation reaction(s) equals the number of electrons gained by the reduction reaction(s).*

In most of our discussions of chemical reactions, we have assumed that the reactants are in intimate physical contact with one another. Acid–base reactions, for example, are usually carried out with the acid and the base dispersed in a single phase, such as a liquid solution. With redox reactions, however, it is possible to physically separate the oxidation and reduction half-reactions in space, as long as there is a complete circuit, including an external electrical connection, such as a wire, between the two half-reactions. As the reaction progresses, the electrons flow from the reductant to the oxidant over this electrical connection, producing an electric current that can be used to do work. An apparatus that is used to generate electricity from a spontaneous redox reaction or, conversely, that uses electricity to drive a nonspontaneous redox reaction is called an **electrochemical cell**.

There are two types of electrochemical cells: galvanic cells and electrolytic cells. Galvanic cells are named for the Italian physicist and physician Luigi Galvani (1737–1798), who observed that dissected frog leg muscles twitched when a small electric shock was applied, demonstrating the electrical nature of nerve impulses. A **galvanic (voltaic) cell** uses the energy released during a spontaneous redox reaction ($\Delta G < 0$) to generate electricity. This type of electrochemical cell is often called a voltaic cell after its inventor, the Italian physicist Alessandro Volta (1745–1827). In contrast, an **electrolytic cell** consumes electrical energy from an external source, using it to cause a nonspontaneous redox reaction to occur ($\Delta G > 0$). Both types contain two **electrodes**, which are solid metals connected to an external circuit that provides an electrical connection between the two parts of the system (Figure $7.3.1$). The oxidation half-reaction occurs at one electrode (the **anode**), and the reduction half-reaction occurs at the other (the **cathode**). When the circuit is closed, electrons flow from the anode to the cathode. The electrodes are also connected by an electrolyte, an ionic substance or solution that allows ions to transfer between the electrode compartments, thereby maintaining the system's electrical neutrality. In this section, we focus on reactions that occur in galvanic cells.

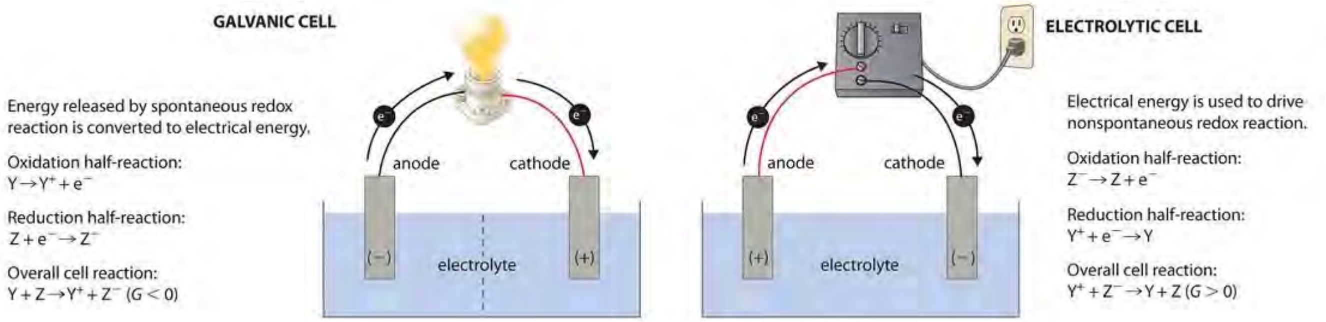


Figure $7.3.1$: Electrochemical Cells. A galvanic cell (left) transforms the energy released by a spontaneous redox reaction into electrical energy that can be used to perform work. The oxidative and reductive half-reactions usually occur in separate compartments that are connected by an external electrical circuit; in addition, a second connection that allows ions to flow between the compartments (shown here as a vertical dashed line to represent a porous barrier) is necessary to maintain electrical neutrality. The potential difference between the electrodes (voltage) causes electrons to flow from the reductant to the oxidant through the external circuit, generating an electric current. In an electrolytic cell (right), an external source of electrical energy is used to generate a potential difference between the electrodes that forces electrons to flow, driving a nonspontaneous redox reaction; only a single compartment is employed in most applications. In both kinds of electrochemical cells, the anode is the electrode at which the oxidation half-reaction occurs, and the cathode is the electrode at which the reduction half-reaction occurs.

Voltaic (Galvanic) Cells

To illustrate the basic principles of a galvanic cell, let's consider the reaction of metallic zinc with cupric ion (Cu^{2+}) to give copper metal and Zn^{2+} ion. The balanced chemical equation is as follows:

$$\mathrm{Zn(s)} + \mathrm{Cu^{2+}(aq)} \rightarrow \mathrm{Zn^{2+}(aq)} + \mathrm{Cu(s)} \tag{7.3.1}$$

We can cause this reaction to occur by inserting a zinc rod into an aqueous solution of copper(II) sulfate. As the reaction proceeds, the zinc rod dissolves, and a mass of metallic copper forms. These changes occur spontaneously, but all the energy released is in the form of heat rather than in a form that can be used to do work.

Figure $7.3.2$: The Reaction of Metallic Zinc with Aqueous Copper(II) Ions in a Single Compartment. When a zinc rod is inserted into a beaker that contains an aqueous solution of copper(II) sulfate, a spontaneous redox reaction occurs: the zinc electrode dissolves to give $\mathrm{Zn^{2+}(aq)}$ ions, while $\mathrm{Cu^{2+}(aq)}$ ions are simultaneously reduced to metallic copper. The reaction occurs so rapidly that the copper is deposited as very fine particles that appear black, rather than the usual reddish color of copper. (youtu.be/2gPRK0HmYu4)

This same reaction can be carried out using the galvanic cell illustrated in Figure $7.3.3a$. To assemble the cell, a copper strip is inserted into a beaker that contains a 1 M solution of $\mathrm{Cu^{2+}}$ ions, and a zinc strip is inserted into a different beaker that contains a 1 M solution of $\mathrm{Zn^{2+}}$ ions. The two metal strips, which serve as electrodes, are connected by a wire, and the compartments are connected by a **salt bridge**, a U-shaped tube inserted into both solutions that contains a concentrated liquid or gelled electrolyte. The ions in the salt bridge are selected so that they do not interfere with the electrochemical reaction by being oxidized or reduced themselves or by forming a precipitate or complex; commonly used cations and anions are Na^+ or K^+ and NO_3^- or SO_4^{2-}, respectively. (The ions in the salt bridge do not have to be the same as those in the redox couple in either compartment.) When the circuit is closed, a spontaneous reaction occurs: zinc metal is oxidized to Zn^{2+} ions at the zinc electrode (the anode), and Cu^{2+} ions are reduced to Cu metal at the copper electrode (the cathode). As the reaction progresses, the zinc strip dissolves, and the concentration of Zn^{2+} ions in the solution increases; simultaneously, the copper strip gains mass, and the concentration of Cu^{2+} ions in the solution decreases (Figure $7.3.3b$). Thus we have carried out the same reaction as we did using a single beaker, but this time the oxidative and reductive half-reactions are physically separated from each other. The electrons that are released at the anode flow through the wire, producing an electric current. Galvanic cells therefore transform chemical energy into electrical energy that can then be used to do work.

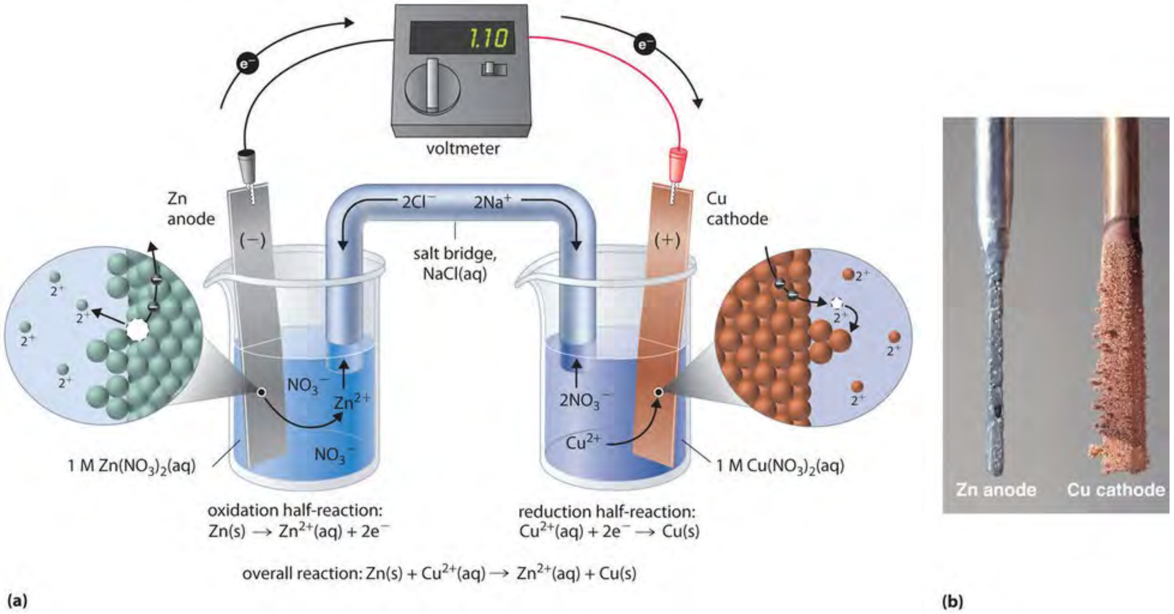


Figure 7.3.3: The Reaction of Metallic Zinc with Aqueous Copper(II) Ions in a Galvanic Cell. (a) A galvanic cell can be constructed by inserting a copper strip into a beaker that contains an aqueous 1 M solution of Cu^{2+} ions and a zinc strip into a different beaker that contains an aqueous 1 M solution of Zn^{2+} ions. The two metal strips are connected by a wire that allows electricity to flow, and the beakers are connected by a salt bridge. When the switch is closed to complete the circuit, the zinc electrode (the anode) is spontaneously oxidized to Zn^{2+} ions in the left compartment, while Cu^{2+} ions are simultaneously reduced to copper metal at the copper electrode (the cathode). (b) As the reaction progresses, the Zn anode loses mass as it dissolves to give Zn^{2+}(aq) ions, while the Cu cathode gains mass as Cu^{2+}(aq) ions are reduced to copper metal that is deposited on the cathode. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

The electrolyte in the salt bridge serves two purposes: it completes the circuit by carrying electrical charge and maintains electrical neutrality in both solutions by allowing ions to migrate between them. The identity of the salt in a salt bridge is unimportant, as long as the component ions do not react or undergo a redox reaction under the operating conditions of the cell. Without such a connection, the total positive charge in the Zn^{2+} solution would increase as the zinc metal dissolves, and the total positive charge in the Cu^{2+} solution would decrease. The salt bridge allows charges to be neutralized by a flow of anions into the Zn^{2+} solution and a flow of cations into the Cu^{2+} solution. In the absence of a salt bridge or some other similar connection, the reaction would rapidly cease because electrical neutrality could not be maintained.

A voltmeter can be used to measure the difference in electrical potential between the two compartments. Opening the switch that connects the wires to the anode and the cathode prevents a current from flowing, so no chemical reaction occurs. With the switch closed, however, the external circuit is closed, and an electric current can flow from the anode to the cathode. The **potential** (E_{cell}) of the cell, measured in volts, is the difference in electrical potential between the two half-reactions and is related to the energy needed to move a charged particle in an electric field. In the cell we have described, the voltmeter indicates a potential of 1.10 V (Figure $7.3.3a$). Because electrons from the oxidation half-reaction are released at the anode, the anode in a galvanic cell is negatively charged. The cathode, which attracts electrons, is positively charged.

Not all electrodes undergo a chemical transformation during a redox reaction. The electrode can be made from an inert, highly conducting metal such as platinum to prevent it from reacting during a redox process, where it does not appear in the overall electrochemical reaction. This phenomenon is illustrated in Example $7.3.1$.

> *A galvanic (voltaic) cell converts the energy released by a* ***spontaneous*** *chemical reaction to electrical energy. An electrolytic cell consumes electrical energy from an external source to drive a* ***nonspontaneous*** *chemical reaction.*

✓ Example 7.3.1

A chemist has constructed a galvanic cell consisting of two beakers. One beaker contains a strip of tin immersed in aqueous sulfuric acid, and the other contains a platinum electrode immersed in aqueous nitric acid. The two solutions are connected by a salt bridge, and the electrodes are connected by a wire. Current begins to flow, and bubbles of a gas appear at the platinum electrode. The spontaneous redox reaction that occurs is described by the following balanced chemical equation:

$$3\,\mathrm{Sn(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{NO_3^-(aq)} + 8\,\mathrm{H^+(aq)} \rightarrow 3\,\mathrm{Sn^{2+}(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{NO(g)} + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O(l)}$$

For this galvanic cell,

a. write the half-reaction that occurs at each electrode.
b. indicate which electrode is the cathode and which is the anode.
c. indicate which electrode is the positive electrode and which is the negative electrode.

Given: galvanic cell and redox reaction

Asked for: half-reactions, identity of anode and cathode, and electrode assignment as positive or negative

Strategy:

A. Identify the oxidation half-reaction and the reduction half-reaction. Then identify the anode and cathode from the half-reaction that occurs at each electrode.
B. From the direction of electron flow, assign each electrode as either positive or negative.

Solution

A In the reduction half-reaction, nitrate is reduced to nitric oxide. (The nitric oxide would then react with oxygen in the air to form NO_2, with its characteristic red-brown color.) In the oxidation half-reaction, metallic tin is oxidized. The half-reactions corresponding to the actual reactions that occur in the system are as follows:

reduction:

$$\mathrm{NO_3^-(aq)} + 4\,\mathrm{H^+(aq)} + 3\,\mathrm{e^-} \rightarrow \mathrm{NO(g)} + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O(l)}$$

oxidation:

$$\mathrm{Sn(s)} \rightarrow \mathrm{Sn^{2+}(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-}$$

Thus nitrate is reduced to NO, while the tin electrode is oxidized to Sn^{2+}.

Because the reduction reaction occurs at the Pt electrode, it is the cathode. Conversely, the oxidation reaction occurs at the tin electrode, so it is the anode.

B Electrons flow from the tin electrode through the wire to the platinum electrode, where they transfer to nitrate. The electric circuit is completed by the salt bridge, which permits the diffusion of cations toward the cathode and anions toward the anode. Because electrons flow from the tin electrode, it must be electrically negative. In contrast, electrons flow toward the Pt electrode, so that electrode must be electrically positive.

? Exercise 7.3.1

Consider a simple galvanic cell consisting of two beakers connected by a salt bridge. One beaker contains a solution of $\mathrm{MnO_4^-}$ in dilute sulfuric acid and has a Pt electrode. The other beaker contains a solution of $\mathrm{Sn^{2+}}$ in dilute sulfuric acid, also with a Pt electrode. When the two electrodes are connected by a wire, current flows and a spontaneous reaction occurs that is described by the following balanced chemical equation:

$$2\,\mathrm{MnO_4^-(aq)} + 5\,\mathrm{Sn^{2+}(aq)} + 16\,\mathrm{H^+(aq)} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Mn^{2+}(aq)} + 5\,\mathrm{Sn^{4+}(aq)} + 8\,\mathrm{H_2O(l)}$$

For this galvanic cell,

a. write the half-reaction that occurs at each electrode.
b. indicate which electrode is the cathode and which is the anode.
c. indicate which electrode is positive and which is negative.

Answer a

$$\mathrm{MnO_4^-(aq)} + 8\,\mathrm{H^+(aq)} + 5\,\mathrm{e^-} \rightarrow \mathrm{Mn^{2+}(aq)} + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O(l)}$$
$$\mathrm{Sn^{2+}(aq)} \rightarrow \mathrm{Sn^{4+}(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-}$$

Answer b

The Pt electrode in the permanganate solution is the cathode; the one in the tin solution is the anode.

Answer c

The cathode (electrode in beaker that contains the permanganate solution) is positive, and the anode (electrode in beaker that contains the tin solution) is negative.

Electrochemical Cells: Electrochemical Cells(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Constructing Cell Diagrams (Cell Notation)

Because it is somewhat cumbersome to describe any given galvanic cell in words, a more convenient notation has been developed. In this line notation, called a cell diagram, the identity of the electrodes and the chemical contents of the compartments are indicated by their chemical formulas, with the anode written on the far left and the cathode on the far right. Phase boundaries are shown by single vertical lines, and the salt bridge, which has two phase boundaries, by a double vertical line. Thus the cell diagram for the $\mathrm{Zn/Cu}$ cell shown in Figure $7.3.3a$ is written as follows:

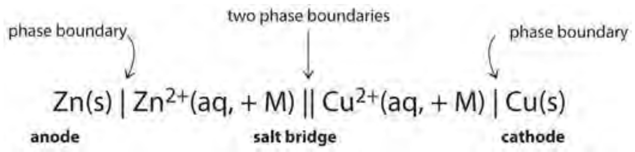


Figure $7.3.4$: A cell diagram includes solution concentrations when they are provided. The + M term is meant to indicate the applicable concentration of the species. If the species is a gas, then you substitute the pressure instead.

At the anode is solid zinc. after the phase boundary is aq Zinc two plus and plus M. After the two phase boundary is aq copper two plus and plus M. At the cathode is solid copper.

Galvanic cells can have arrangements other than the examples we have seen so far. For example, the voltage produced by a redox reaction can be measured more accurately using two electrodes immersed in a single beaker containing an electrolyte that completes the circuit. This arrangement reduces errors caused by resistance to the flow of charge at a boundary, called the **junction potential**. One example of this type of galvanic cell is as follows:

$$\mathrm{Pt(s)\,|\,H_2(g)|HCl(aq,\ 1\ M)\,|\,AgCl(s)\ Ag(s)}$$

This cell diagram does not include a double vertical line representing a salt bridge because there is no salt bridge providing a junction between two dissimilar solutions. Moreover, solution concentrations have not been specified, so they are not included in the cell diagram. The half-reactions and the overall reaction for this cell are as follows:

cathode reaction:

$$\mathrm{AgCl(s) + e^- \rightarrow Ag(s) + Cl^-(aq)}$$

anode reaction:

$$\mathrm{\tfrac{1}{2}H_2(g) \longrightarrow H^+(aq) + e^-}$$

overall:

$$\mathrm{AgCl(s) + \tfrac{1}{2}H_2(g) \longrightarrow Ag(s) + Cl^- + H^+(aq)}$$

A single-compartment galvanic cell will initially exhibit the same voltage as a galvanic cell constructed using separate compartments, but it will discharge rapidly because of the direct reaction of the reactant at the anode with the oxidized member of the cathodic redox couple. Consequently, cells of this type are not particularly useful for producing electricity.

✓ Example $7.3.2$

Draw a cell diagram for the galvanic cell described in Example $7.3.1$. The balanced chemical reaction is as follows:

$$\mathrm{3\,Sn(s) + 2\,NO_3^-(aq) + 8\,H^+(aq) \rightarrow 3\,Sn^{2+}(aq) + 2\,NO(g) + 4\,H_2O(l)}$$

Given: galvanic cell and redox reaction

Asked for: cell diagram

Strategy:

Using the symbols described, write the cell diagram beginning with the oxidation half-reaction on the left.

Solution

The anode is the tin strip, and the cathode is the Pt electrode. Beginning on the left with the anode, we indicate the phase boundary between the electrode and the tin solution by a vertical bar. The anode compartment is thus $\mathrm{Sn(s)\,|\,Sn^{2+}(aq)}$. We could include $\mathrm{H_2SO_4(aq)}$ with the contents of the anode compartment, but the sulfate ion (as $\mathrm{HSO_4^-}$) does not participate in the overall reaction, so it does not need to be specifically indicated. The cathode compartment contains aqueous nitric acid, which does participate in the overall reaction, together with the product of the reaction $\mathrm{(NO)}$ and the Pt electrode. These are written as $\mathrm{HNO_3(aq)\,|\,NO(g)\,|\,Pt(s)}$, with single vertical bars indicating the phase boundaries. Combining the two compartments and using a double vertical bar to indicate the salt bridge,

$$\mathrm{Sn(s)\,|\,Sn^{2+}(aq)\,||\,HNO_3(aq)\,|\,NO(g)\,|\,Pt(s)}$$

The solution concentrations were not specified, so they are not included in this cell diagram.

Exercise 7.3.2

Draw the cell diagram for the following reaction, assuming the concentration of $\mathrm{Ag^+}$ and $\mathrm{Mg^{2+}}$ are each 1 M:

$$\mathrm{Mg(s) + 2\,Ag^+(aq) \rightarrow Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2\,Ag(s)}$$

Answer

$$\mathrm{Mg(s)\,|\,Mg^{2+}(aq,\ 1\ M)\,||\,Ag^+(aq,\ 1\ M)\,|\,Ag(s)}$$

Cell Diagrams: Cell Diagrams(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

A galvanic (voltaic) cell uses the energy released during a spontaneous redox reaction to generate electricity, whereas an electrolytic cell consumes electrical energy from an external source to force a reaction to occur. Electrochemistry is the study of the relationship between electricity and chemical reactions. The oxidation–reduction reaction that occurs during an electrochemical process consists of two half-reactions, one representing the oxidation process and one the reduction process. The sum of the half-reactions gives the overall chemical reaction. The overall redox reaction is balanced when the number of electrons lost by the reductant equals the number of electrons gained by the oxidant. An electric current is produced from the flow of electrons from the reductant to the oxidant. An electrochemical cell can either generate electricity from a spontaneous redox reaction or consume electricity to drive a nonspontaneous reaction. In a galvanic (voltaic) cell, the energy from a spontaneous reaction generates electricity, whereas in an electrolytic cell, electrical energy is consumed to drive a nonspontaneous redox reaction. Both types of cells use two electrodes that provide an electrical connection between systems that are separated in space. The oxidative half-reaction occurs at the anode, and the reductive half-reaction occurs at the cathode. A salt bridge connects the separated solutions, allowing ions to migrate to either solution to ensure the system’s electrical neutrality. A voltmeter is a device that measures the flow of electric current between two half-reactions. The potential of a cell, measured in volts, is the energy needed to move a charged particle in an electric field. An electrochemical cell can be described using line notation called a cell diagram, in which vertical lines indicate phase boundaries and the location of the salt bridge. Resistance to the flow of charge at a boundary is called the junction potential.

7.4: Standard Reduction Potentials

Learning Objectives

- To use redox potentials to predict whether a reaction is spontaneous.
- To balance redox reactions using half-reactions.

In a galvanic cell, current is produced when electrons flow externally through the circuit from the anode to the cathode because of a difference in potential energy between the two electrodes in the electrochemical cell. In the Zn/Cu system, the valence electrons in zinc have a substantially higher potential energy than the valence electrons in copper because of shielding of the s electrons of zinc by the electrons in filled d orbitals. Hence electrons flow spontaneously from zinc to copper(II) ions, forming zinc(II) ions and metallic copper. Just like water flowing spontaneously downhill, which can be made to do work by forcing a waterwheel, the flow of electrons from a higher potential energy to a lower one can also be harnessed to perform work.

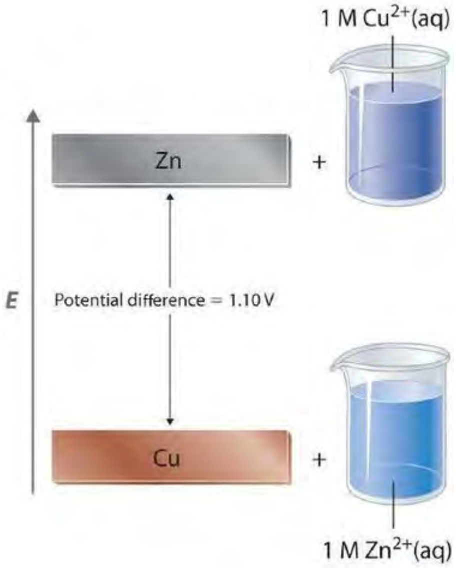


Figure 7.4.1: Potential Energy Difference in the Zn/Cu System. The potential energy of a system consisting of metallic Zn and aqueous Cu^{2+} ions is greater than the potential energy of a system consisting of metallic Cu and aqueous Zn^{2+} ions. Much of this potential energy difference is because the valence electrons of metallic Zn are higher in energy than the valence electrons of metallic Cu. Because the $Zn(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq)$ system is higher in energy by 1.10 V than the $Cu(s) + Zn^{2+}(aq)$ system, energy is released when electrons are transferred from Zn to Cu^{2+} to form Cu and Zn^{2+}.

Because the potential energy of valence electrons differs greatly from one substance to another, the voltage of a galvanic cell depends partly on the identity of the reacting substances. If we construct a galvanic cell similar to the one in part (a) in Figure 7.4.1 but instead of copper use a strip of cobalt metal and 1 M Co^{2+} in the cathode compartment, the measured voltage is not 1.10 V but 0.51 V. Thus we can conclude that the difference in potential energy between the valence electrons of cobalt and zinc is less than the difference between the valence electrons of copper and zinc by 0.59 V.

The measured potential of a cell also depends strongly on the concentrations of the reacting species and the temperature of the system. To develop a scale of relative potentials that will allow us to predict the direction of an electrochemical reaction and the magnitude of the driving force for the reaction, the potentials for oxidations and reductions of different substances must be measured under comparable conditions. To do this, chemists use the **standard cell potential** ($E°_{cell}$), defined as the potential of a cell measured under standard conditions—that is, with all species in their standard states (1 M for solutions, concentrated solutions of salts (about 1 M) generally do not exhibit ideal behavior, and the actual standard state corresponds to an activity of 1 rather than a concentration of 1 M. Corrections for non ideal behavior are important for precise quantitative work but not for the more qualitative approach that we are taking here. 1 atm for gases, pure solids or pure liquids for other substances) and at a fixed temperature, usually 25°C.

> *Measured redox potentials depend on the potential energy of valence electrons, the concentrations of the species in the reaction, and the temperature of the system.*

Measuring Standard Electrode Potentials

It is physically impossible to measure the potential of a single electrode: only the difference between the potentials of two electrodes can be measured (this is analogous to measuring **absolute enthalpies** or **free energies**; recall that only differences in enthalpy and free energy can be measured.) We can, however, compare the standard cell potentials for two different galvanic cells that have one kind of electrode in common. This allows us to measure the potential difference between two dissimilar electrodes. For example, the measured standard cell potential (E°) for the Zn/Cu system is 1.10 V, whereas E° for the corresponding Zn/Co system is 0.51 V. This implies that the potential difference between the Co and Cu electrodes is 1.10 V − 0.51 V = 0.59 V. In fact, that is exactly the potential measured under standard conditions if a cell is constructed with the following cell diagram:

$$Co_{(s)} \mid Co^{2+}(aq, 1M) \parallel Cu^{2+}(aq, 1M) \mid Cu(s) \qquad E^\circ = 0.59\ V \tag{7.4.1}$$

This cell diagram corresponds to the oxidation of a cobalt anode and the reduction of Cu^{2+} in solution at the copper cathode.

All tabulated values of standard electrode potentials by convention are listed for a reaction written as a reduction, not as an oxidation, to be able to compare standard potentials for different substances (Table P1). The standard cell potential ($E°_{cell}$) is therefore the difference between the tabulated reduction potentials of the two half-reactions, not their sum:

$$E^\circ{}_{cell} = E^\circ{}_{cathode} - E^\circ{}_{anode} \tag{7.4.2}$$

In contrast, recall that half-reactions are written to show the reduction and oxidation reactions that actually occur in the cell, so the overall cell reaction is written as the sum of the two half-reactions. According to Equation 7.4.2, when we know the standard potential for any single half-reaction, we can obtain the value of the standard potential of many other half-reactions by measuring the standard potential of the corresponding cell.

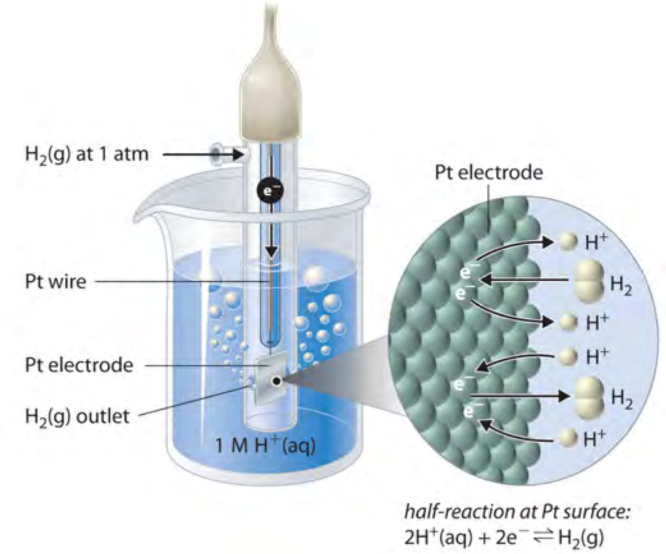


Figure 7.4.2: The Standard Hydrogen Electrode. The SHE consists of platinum wire that is connected to a Pt surface in contact with an aqueous solution containing 1 M H^+ in equilibrium with H_2 gas at a pressure of 1 atm. In the molecular view, the Pt surface catalyzes the oxidation of hydrogen molecules to protons or the reduction of protons to hydrogen gas. (Water is omitted for clarity.) The standard potential of the SHE is arbitrarily assigned a value of 0 V.

Although it is impossible to measure the potential of any electrode directly, we can choose a reference electrode whose potential is defined as 0 V under standard conditions. The **standard hydrogen electrode (SHE)** is universally used for this purpose and is assigned a standard potential of 0 V. It consists of a strip of platinum wire in contact with an aqueous solution containing 1 M H^+. The $[H^+]$ in solution is in equilibrium with H_2 gas at a pressure of 1 atm at the Pt-solution interface (Figure 7.4.2). Protons are reduced or hydrogen molecules are oxidized at the Pt surface according to the following equation:

$$2H^+_{(aq)} + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons H_{2(g)} \tag{7.4.3}$$

One especially attractive feature of the SHE is that the Pt metal electrode is not consumed during the reaction.

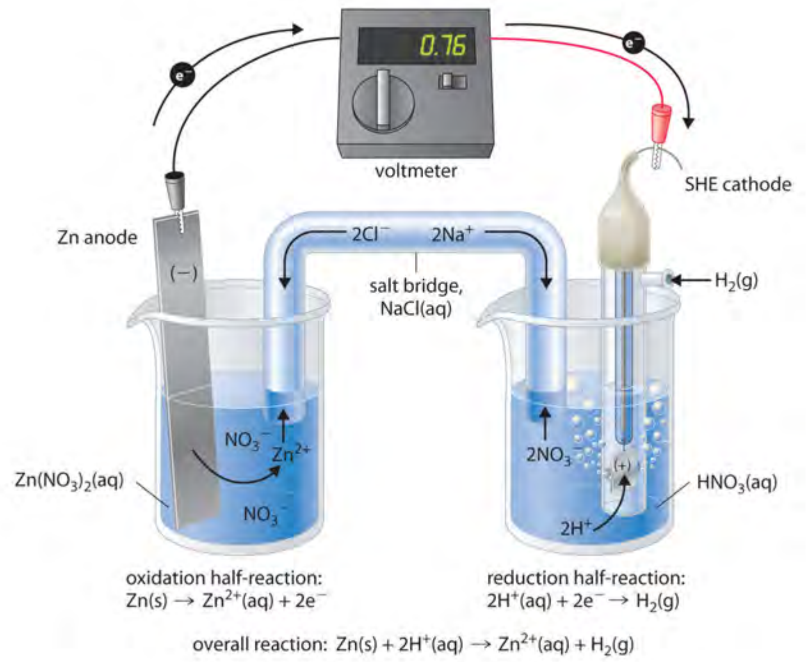


Figure 7.4.3: Determining a Standard Electrode Potential Using a Standard Hydrogen Electrode. The voltmeter shows that the standard cell potential of a galvanic cell consisting of a SHE and a Zn/Zn^{2+} couple is E°_{cell} = 0.76 V. Because the zinc electrode in this cell dissolves spontaneously to form Zn^{2+}(aq) ions while H^+(aq) ions are reduced to H_2 at the platinum surface, the standard electrode potential of the Zn^{2+}/Zn couple is −0.76 V.

Figure 7.4.3 shows a galvanic cell that consists of a SHE in one beaker and a Zn strip in another beaker containing a solution of Zn^{2+} ions. When the circuit is closed, the voltmeter indicates a potential of 0.76 V. The zinc electrode begins to dissolve to form Zn^{2+}, and H^+ ions are reduced to H_2 in the other compartment. Thus the hydrogen electrode is the cathode, and the zinc electrode is the anode. The diagram for this galvanic cell is as follows:

$$Zn_{(s)} \mid Zn^{2+}_{(aq)} \parallel H^+(aq, 1M) \mid H_2(g, 1atm) \mid Pt_{(s)} \tag{7.4.4}$$

The half-reactions that actually occur in the cell and their corresponding electrode potentials are as follows:

- cathode:

$$2H^+_{(aq)} + 2e^- \rightarrow H_{2(g)} \qquad E^\circ{}_{cathode} = 0V \tag{7.4.5}$$

- anode:

$$Zn_{(s)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2e^- \qquad E^\circ{}_{anode} = -0.76\ V \tag{7.4.6}$$

- overall:

$$Zn_{(s)} + 2H^+_{(aq)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}_{(aq)} + H_{2(g)} \tag{7.4.7}$$

We then use Equation 7.4.2 to calculate the cell potential

$$\begin{aligned} E^\circ{}_{cell} &= E^\circ{}_{cathode} - E^\circ{}_{anode} \\ &= 0.76\ V \end{aligned}$$

Although the reaction at the anode is an oxidation, by convention its tabulated E° value is reported as a reduction potential. The potential of a half-reaction measured against the SHE under standard conditions is called the **standard electrode potential** for that half-reaction. In this example, the standard reduction potential for Zn^{2+}(aq) + 2e⁻ → Zn(s) is −0.76 V, which means that the standard electrode potential for the reaction that occurs at the anode, the oxidation of Zn to Zn^{2+}, often called the Zn/Zn^{2+} redox couple, or the Zn/Zn^{2+} couple, is −(−0.76 V) = 0.76 V. We must therefore subtract $E°_{anode}$ from $E°_{cathode}$ to obtain

$$E^\circ{}_{cell} : 0\,V - (-0.76\,V) = 0.76\,V$$

Because electrical potential is the energy needed to move a charged particle in an electric field, standard electrode potentials for half-reactions are intensive properties and do not depend on the amount of substance involved. Consequently, E° values are independent of the stoichiometric coefficients for the half-reaction, and, most important, the coefficients used to produce a balanced overall reaction do not affect the value of the cell potential.

> *E° values do NOT depend on the stoichiometric coefficients for a half-reaction, because it is an intensive property.*

The Standard Hydrogen Electrode (SHE): The Standard Hydrogen Electrode (SHE)(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Standard Electrode Potentials

To measure the potential of the Cu/Cu^{2+} couple, we can construct a galvanic cell analogous to the one shown in Figure 7.4.3 but containing a Cu/Cu^{2+} couple in the sample compartment instead of Zn/Zn^{2+}. When we close the circuit this time, the measured potential for the cell is negative (−0.34 V) rather than positive. The negative value of $E^\circ{}_{cell}$ indicates that the direction of spontaneous electron flow is the opposite of that for the Zn/Zn^{2+} couple. Hence the reactions that occur spontaneously, indicated by a positive $E^\circ{}_{cell}$, are the reduction of Cu^{2+} to Cu at the copper electrode. The copper electrode gains mass as the reaction proceeds, and H_2 is oxidized to H^+ at the platinum electrode. In this cell, the copper strip is the cathode, and the hydrogen electrode is the anode. The cell diagram therefore is written with the SHE on the left and the Cu^{2+}/Cu couple on the right:

$$Pt_{(s)} \mid H_2(g, 1atm) \mid H^+(aq, 1\ M) \parallel Cu^{2+}(aq, 1M) \mid Cu_{(s)} \tag{7.4.8}$$

The half-cell reactions and potentials of the spontaneous reaction are as follows:

- Cathode:

$$Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Cu_{(g)} \quad E^\circ{}_{cathode} = 0.34\ V \tag{7.4.9}$$

- Anode:

$$H_{2(g)} \rightarrow 2H^+_{(aq)} + 2e^- \quad E^\circ{}_{anode} = 0\ V \tag{7.4.10}$$

- Overall:

$$H_{2(g)} + Cu^{2+}_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2H^+_{(aq)} + Cu_{(s)} \tag{7.4.11}$$

We then use Equation 7.4.2 to calculate the cell potential

$$\begin{aligned} E^\circ{}_{cell} &= E^\circ{}_{cathode} - E^\circ{}_{anode} \\ &= 0.34\ V \end{aligned}$$

Thus the standard electrode potential for the Cu^{2+}/Cu couple is 0.34 V.

Electrode Potentials and ECell: Electrode and Potentials and Ecell(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Balancing Redox Reactions Using the Half-Reaction Method

In Section 4.4, we described a method for balancing redox reactions using oxidation numbers. Oxidation numbers were assigned to each atom in a redox reaction to identify any changes in the oxidation states. Here we present an alternative approach to balancing redox reactions, the half-reaction method, in which the overall redox reaction is divided into an oxidation half-reaction and a reduction half-reaction, each balanced for mass and charge. This method more closely reflects the events that take place in an electrochemical cell, where the two half-reactions may be physically separated from each other.

We can illustrate how to balance a redox reaction using half-reactions with the reaction that occurs when Drano, a commercial solid drain cleaner, is poured into a clogged drain. Drano contains a mixture of sodium hydroxide and powdered aluminum, which in solution reacts to produce hydrogen gas:

$$Al_{(s)} + OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} + H_{2(g)} \tag{7.4.12}$$

In this reaction, $Al_{(s)}$ is oxidized to Al^{3+}, and H^+ in water is reduced to H_2 gas, which bubbles through the solution, agitating it and breaking up the clogs.

The overall redox reaction is composed of a reduction half-reaction and an oxidation half-reaction. From the standard electrode potentials listed Table P1, we find the corresponding half-reactions that describe the reduction of H^+ ions in water to $H_2$and the oxidation of Al to Al^{3+} in basic solution:

- reduction:

$$2H_2O_{(l)} + 2e^- \rightarrow 2OH^-_{(aq)} + H_{2(g)} \tag{7.4.13}$$

- oxidation:

$$Al_{(s)} + 4OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} + 3e^- \tag{7.4.14}$$

The half-reactions chosen must exactly reflect the reaction conditions, such as the basic conditions shown here. Moreover, the physical states of the reactants and the products must be identical to those given in the overall reaction, whether gaseous, liquid, solid, or in solution.

In Equation 7.4.13, two H^+ ions gain one electron each in the reduction; in Equation 7.4.14, the aluminum atom loses three electrons in the oxidation. The charges are balanced by multiplying the reduction half-reaction (Equation 7.4.13) by 3 and the oxidation half-reaction (Equation 7.4.14) by 2 to give the same number of electrons in both half-reactions:

- reduction:

$$6H_2O_{(l)} + 6e^- \rightarrow 6OH^-_{(aq)} + 3H_{2(g)} \tag{7.4.15}$$

- oxidation:

$$2Al_{(s)} + 8OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} + 6e^- \tag{7.4.16}$$

Adding the two half-reactions,

$$6H_2O_{(l)} + 2Al_{(s)} + 8OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2Al(OH)^-4(aq) + 3H_{2(g)} + 6OH^-_{(aq)} \tag{7.4.17}$$

Simplifying by canceling substances that appear on both sides of the equation,

$$6H_2O_{(l)} + 2Al_{(s)} + 2OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} + 3H_{2(g)} \tag{7.4.18}$$

We have a −2 charge on the left side of the equation and a −2 charge on the right side. Thus the charges are balanced, but we must also check that atoms are balanced:

$$2Al + 8O + 14H = 2Al + 8O + 14H \tag{7.4.19}$$

The atoms also balance, so Equation 7.4.18 is a balanced chemical equation for the redox reaction depicted in Equation 7.4.12.

> *The half-reaction method requires that half-reactions exactly reflect reaction conditions, and the physical states of the reactants and the products must be identical to those in the overall reaction.*

We can also balance a redox reaction by first balancing the atoms in each half-reaction and then balancing the charges. With this alternative method, we do not need to use the half-reactions listed in Table P1, but instead focus on the atoms whose oxidation states change, as illustrated in the following steps:

Step 1: Write the reduction half-reaction and the oxidation half-reaction.

For the reaction shown in Equation 7.4.12, hydrogen is reduced from H^+ in $OH^−$ to H_2, and aluminum is oxidized from Al° to Al^{3+}:

- reduction:

$$OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow H_{2(g)} \tag{7.4.20}$$

- oxidation:

$$Al_{(s)} \rightarrow Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} \tag{7.4.21}$$

Step 2: Balance the atoms by balancing elements other than O and H. Then balance O atoms by adding H_2O and balance H atoms by adding H^+.

Elements other than O and H in the previous two equations are balanced as written, so we proceed with balancing the O atoms. We can do this by adding water to the appropriate side of each half-reaction:

- reduction:

$$OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow H_{2(g)} + H_2O_{(l)} \tag{7.4.22}$$

- oxidation:

$$Al_{(s)} + 4H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} \tag{7.4.23}$$

Balancing H atoms by adding H^+, we obtain the following:

- reduction:

$$OH^-_{(aq)} + 3H^+_{(aq)} \rightarrow H_{2(g)} + H_2O_{(l)} \tag{7.4.24}$$

- oxidation:

$$Al_{(s)} + 4H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} + 4H^+_{(aq)} \tag{7.4.25}$$

We have now balanced the atoms in each half-reaction, but the charges are not balanced.

Step 3: Balance the charges in each half-reaction by adding electrons.

Two electrons are gained in the reduction of H^+ ions to H_2, and three electrons are lost during the oxidation of Al° to Al^{3+}:

- reduction:

$$OH^-_{(aq)} + 3H^+_{(aq)} + 2e^- \rightarrow H_{2(g)} + H_2O_{(l)} \tag{7.4.26}$$

- oxidation:

$$Al_{(s)} + 4H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} + 4H^+_{(aq)} + 3e^- \tag{7.4.27}$$

Step 4: Multiply the reductive and oxidative half-reactions by appropriate integers to obtain the same number of electrons in both half-reactions.

In this case, we multiply Equation 7.4.26 (the reductive half-reaction) by 3 and Equation 7.4.27 (the oxidative half-reaction) by 2 to obtain the same number of electrons in both half-reactions:

- reduction:

$$3OH^-_{(aq)} + 9H^+_{(aq)} + 6e^- \rightarrow 3H_{2(g)} + 3H_2O_{(l)} \tag{7.4.28}$$

- oxidation:

$$2Al_{(s)} + 8H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow 2Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} + 8H^+_{(aq)} + 6e^- \tag{7.4.29}$$

Step 5: Add the two half-reactions and cancel substances that appear on both sides of the equation.

Adding and, in this case, canceling $8H^+$, $3H_2O$, and $6e^-$,

$$2Al_{(s)} + 5H_2O_{(l)} + 3OH^-_{(aq)} + H^+_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} + 3H_{2(g)} \tag{7.4.30}$$

We have three OH^- and one H^+ on the left side. Neutralizing the H^+ gives us a total of $5H_2O + H_2O = 6H_2O$ and leaves $2OH^-$ on the left side:

$$2Al_{(s)} + 6H_2O_{(l)} + 2OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2Al(OH)^-_{4(aq)} + 3H_{2(g)} \tag{7.4.31}$$

Step 6: Check to make sure that all atoms and charges are balanced.

Equation 7.4.31 is identical to Equation 7.4.18, obtained using the first method, so the charges and numbers of atoms on each side of the equation balance.

✓ Example 7.4.1

In acidic solution, the redox reaction of dichromate ion ($Cr_2O_7^{2-}$) and iodide (I^-) can be monitored visually. The yellow dichromate solution reacts with the colorless iodide solution to produce a solution that is deep amber due to the presence of a green $Cr^{3+}(aq)$ complex and brown $I_2(aq)$ ions (Figure 7.4.4):

$$Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + I^-(aq) \longrightarrow Cr^{3+}(aq) + I_2(aq)$$

Balance this equation using half-reactions.

Given: redox reaction and Table P1

Asked for: balanced chemical equation using half-reactions

Strategy:

Follow the steps to balance the redox reaction using the half-reaction method.

Solution

From the standard electrode potentials listed in Table P1, we find the half-reactions corresponding to the overall reaction:

- reduction:

$$Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + 14\,H^+(aq) + 6\,e^- \longrightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+}(aq) + 7\,H_2O(l)$$

- oxidation:

$$2\,\mathrm{I}^{-}(\mathrm{aq}) \longrightarrow \mathrm{I}_2(\mathrm{aq}) + 2\,\mathrm{e}^{-}$$

Balancing the number of electrons by multiplying the oxidation reaction by 3,

- oxidation:

$$6\,\mathrm{I}^{-}(\mathrm{aq}) \longrightarrow 3\,\mathrm{I}_2(\mathrm{aq}) + 6\,\mathrm{e}^{-}$$

Adding the two half-reactions and canceling electrons,

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}}(\mathrm{aq}) + 14\,\mathrm{H}^{+}(\mathrm{aq}) + 6\,\mathrm{I}^{-}(\mathrm{aq}) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Cr}^{3+}(\mathrm{aq}) + 7\,\mathrm{H_2O}(\mathrm{l}) + 3\,\mathrm{I}_2(\mathrm{aq})$$

We must now check to make sure the charges and atoms on each side of the equation balance:

$$\begin{aligned}(-2)+14+(-6) &= +6 \\ +6 &\overset{\checkmark}{=} +6\end{aligned}$$

and atoms

$$2\,\mathrm{Cr} + 7\,\mathrm{O} + 14\,\mathrm{H} + 6\,\mathrm{I} \overset{\checkmark}{=} 2\,\mathrm{Cr} + 7\,\mathrm{O} + 14\,\mathrm{H} + 6\,\mathrm{I}$$

Both the charges and atoms balance, so our equation is balanced.

We can also use the alternative procedure, which does not require the half-reactions listed in Table P1.

Step 1: Chromium is reduced from Cr^{6+} in $\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}}$ to Cr^{3+}, and I^{-} ions are oxidized to I_2. Dividing the reaction into two half-reactions,

- reduction:

$$Cr_2O^{2-}_{7(aq)} \rightarrow Cr^{3+}_{(aq)}$$

- oxidation:

$$I^{-}_{(aq)} \rightarrow I_{2(aq)}$$

Step 2: Balancing the atoms other than oxygen and hydrogen,

- reduction:

$$Cr_2O^{2-}_{7(aq)} \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}_{(aq)}$$

- oxidation:

$$2I^{-}_{(aq)} \rightarrow I_{2(aq)}$$

We now balance the O atoms by adding H_2O—in this case, to the right side of the reduction half-reaction. Because the oxidation half-reaction does not contain oxygen, it can be ignored in this step.

- reduction:

$$Cr_2O^{2-}_{7(aq)} \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}_{(aq)} + 7H_2O_{(l)}$$

Next we balance the H atoms by adding H^+ to the left side of the reduction half-reaction. Again, we can ignore the oxidation half-reaction.

- reduction:

$$Cr_2O^{2-}_{7(aq)} + 14H^{+}_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}_{(aq)} + 7H_2O_{(l)}$$

Step 3: We must now add electrons to balance the charges. The reduction half-reaction ($2Cr^{+6}$ to $2Cr^{+3}$) has a +12 charge on the left and a +6 charge on the right, so six electrons are needed to balance the charge. The oxidation half-reaction ($2I^{-}$ to I_2) has a −2 charge on the left side and a 0 charge on the right, so it needs two electrons to balance the charge:

- reduction: $Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + 14H^+(aq) + 6e^- \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}(aq) + 7H_2O(l)$
- oxidation: $2I^-(aq) \rightarrow I_2(aq) + 2e^-$

Step 4: To have the same number of electrons in both half-reactions, we must multiply the oxidation half-reaction by 3:

- oxidation: $6I^-(aq) \rightarrow 3I_2(s) + 6e^-$

Step 5: Adding the two half-reactions and canceling substances that appear in both reactions,

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + 14\,H^+(aq) + 6\,I^-(aq) \rightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+}(aq) + 7\,H_2O(l) + 3\,I_2(aq)}$$

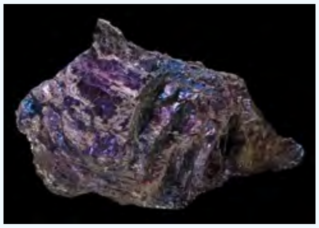
Step 6: This is the same equation we obtained using the first method. Thus the charges and atoms on each side of the equation balance.

? Exercise 7.4.1

Copper is found as the mineral covellite (CuS). The first step in extracting the copper is to dissolve the mineral in nitric acid ($\mathrm{HNO_3}$), which oxidizes sulfide to sulfate and reduces nitric acid to NO:

$$\mathrm{CuS(s) + HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow NO(g) + CuSO_4(aq)}$$

Balance this equation using the half-reaction method.



Covellite (also known as covelline) is a rare copper sulfide mineral with an indigo blue color that is ubiquitous in copper ores. (CC SA-BY 3.0;'Didier Descouens).

Answer

$$\mathrm{3\,CuS(s) + 8\,HNO_3(aq) \longrightarrow 8\,NO(g) + 3\,CuSO_4(aq) + 4\,H_2O(l)}$$

Calculating Standard Cell Potentials

The standard cell potential for a redox reaction ($E°_{cell}$) is a measure of the tendency of reactants in their standard states to form products in their standard states; consequently, it is a measure of the driving force for the reaction, which earlier we called voltage. We can use the two standard electrode potentials we found earlier to calculate the standard potential for the Zn/Cu cell represented by the following cell diagram:

$$Zn(s) \mid Zn^{2+}(aq, 1M) \parallel Cu^{2+}(aq, 1M) \mid Cu_{(s)} \tag{7.4.32}$$

We know the values of $E°_{anode}$ for the reduction of Zn^{2+} and $E°_{cathode}$ for the reduction of Cu^{2+}, so we can calculate $E^\circ{}_{cell}$:

- cathode:

$$Cu^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2e^- \rightarrow Cu_{(s)} \qquad E^\circ{}_{cathode} = 0.34\ V \tag{7.4.33}$$

- anode:

$$Zn_{(s)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq, 1M) + 2e^- \qquad E^\circ{}_{anode} = -0.76\ V \tag{7.4.34}$$

- overall:

$$Zn_{(s)} + Cu^{2+}_{(aq)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}_{(aq)} + Cu_{(s)} \tag{7.4.35}$$

$$E^\circ{}_{cell} = E^\circ{}_{cathode} - E^\circ{}_{anode} = 1.10\ V$$

This is the same value that is observed experimentally. If the value of $E^\circ{}_{cell}$ is positive, the reaction will occur spontaneously as written. If the value of $E^\circ{}_{cell}$ is negative, then the reaction is not spontaneous, and it will not occur as written under standard conditions; it will, however, proceed spontaneously in the opposite direction. As we shall see in Section 20.9, this does not mean that the reaction cannot be made to occur at all under standard conditions. With a sufficient input of electrical energy, virtually any reaction can be forced to occur. Example $7.4.2$ and its corresponding exercise illustrate how we can use measured cell potentials to calculate standard potentials for redox couples.

> *A positive $E^\circ{}_{cell}$ means that the reaction will occur spontaneously as written. A negative $E^\circ{}_{cell}$ means that the reaction will proceed spontaneously in the opposite direction.*

✓ Example 7.4.2

A galvanic cell with a measured standard cell potential of 0.27 V is constructed using two beakers connected by a salt bridge. One beaker contains a strip of gallium metal immersed in a 1 M solution of $GaCl_3$, and the other contains a piece of nickel immersed in a 1 M solution of $NiCl_2$. The half-reactions that occur when the compartments are connected are as follows:

$$\text{cathode: } Ni^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Ni(s)$$

$$\text{anode: } Ga(s) \rightarrow Ga^{3+}(aq) + 3e^-$$

If the potential for the oxidation of Ga to Ga^{3+} is 0.55 V under standard conditions, what is the potential for the oxidation of Ni to Ni^{2+}?

Given: galvanic cell, half-reactions, standard cell potential, and potential for the oxidation half-reaction under standard conditions

Asked for: standard electrode potential of reaction occurring at the cathode

Strategy:

A. Write the equation for the half-reaction that occurs at the anode along with the value of the standard electrode potential for the half-reaction.
B. Use Equation 7.4.2 to calculate the standard electrode potential for the half-reaction that occurs at the cathode. Then reverse the sign to obtain the potential for the corresponding oxidation half-reaction under standard conditions.

Solution

A We have been given the potential for the oxidation of Ga to Ga^{3+} under standard conditions, but to report the standard electrode potential, we must reverse the sign. For the reduction reaction $Ga^{3+}(aq) + 3e^- \rightarrow Ga(s)$, $E°_{anode} = -0.55$ V.

B Using the value given for $E^\circ{}_{cell}$ and the calculated value of $E°_{anode}$, we can calculate the standard potential for the reduction of Ni^{2+} to Ni from Equation 7.4.2:

$$\begin{aligned} E^\circ{}_{cell} &= E^\circ{}_{cathode} - E^\circ{}_{anode} \\ 0.27\,V &= E^{o\,\circ}{}_{cathhode} - (-0.55\,V) \\ E^\circ_{cathode} &= -0.28\,V \end{aligned}$$

This is the standard electrode potential for the reaction $Ni^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow Ni(s)$. Because we are asked for the potential for the oxidation of Ni to Ni^{2+} under standard conditions, we must reverse the sign of $E°_{cathode}$. Thus E° = −(−0.28 V) = 0.28 V for the oxidation. With three electrons consumed in the reduction and two produced in the oxidation, the overall reaction is not balanced. Recall, however, that standard potentials are independent of stoichiometry.

? Exercise 7.4.2

A galvanic cell is constructed with one compartment that contains a mercury electrode immersed in a 1 M aqueous solution of mercuric acetate $Hg(CH_3CO_2)_2$ and one compartment that contains a strip of magnesium immersed in a 1 M aqueous solution of $\mathrm{MgCl_2}$. When the compartments are connected, a potential of 3.22 V is measured and the following half-reactions occur:

- cathode: $\mathrm{Hg^{2+}(aq) + 2\,e^- \rightarrow Hg(l)}$
- anode: $\mathrm{Mg(s) \rightarrow Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2\,e^-}$

If the potential for the oxidation of Mg to $\mathrm{Mg^{2+}}$ is 2.37 V under standard conditions, what is the standard electrode potential for the reaction that occurs at the cathode?

Answer

0.85 V

Reference Electrodes and Measuring Concentrations

When using a galvanic cell to measure the concentration of a substance, we are generally interested in the potential of only one of the electrodes of the cell, the so-called **indicator electrode**, whose potential is related to the concentration of the substance being measured. To ensure that any change in the measured potential of the cell is due to only the substance being analyzed, the potential of the other electrode, the **reference electrode**, must be constant. You are already familiar with one example of a reference electrode: the SHE. The potential of a reference electrode must be unaffected by the properties of the solution, and if possible, it should be physically isolated from the solution of interest. To measure the potential of a solution, we select a reference electrode and an appropriate indicator electrode. Whether reduction or oxidation of the substance being analyzed occurs depends on the potential of the half-reaction for the substance of interest (the sample) and the potential of the reference electrode.

> *The potential of any reference electrode should not be affected by the properties of the solution to be analyzed, and it should also be physically isolated.*

There are many possible choices of reference electrode other than the SHE. The SHE requires a constant flow of highly flammable hydrogen gas, which makes it inconvenient to use. Consequently, two other electrodes are commonly chosen as reference electrodes. One is the **silver–silver chloride electrode**, which consists of a silver wire coated with a very thin layer of AgCl that is dipped into a chloride ion solution with a fixed concentration. The cell diagram and reduction half-reaction are as follows:

$$Cl^-_{(aq)} \mid AgCl_{(s)} \mid Ag_{(s)} \tag{7.4.36}$$

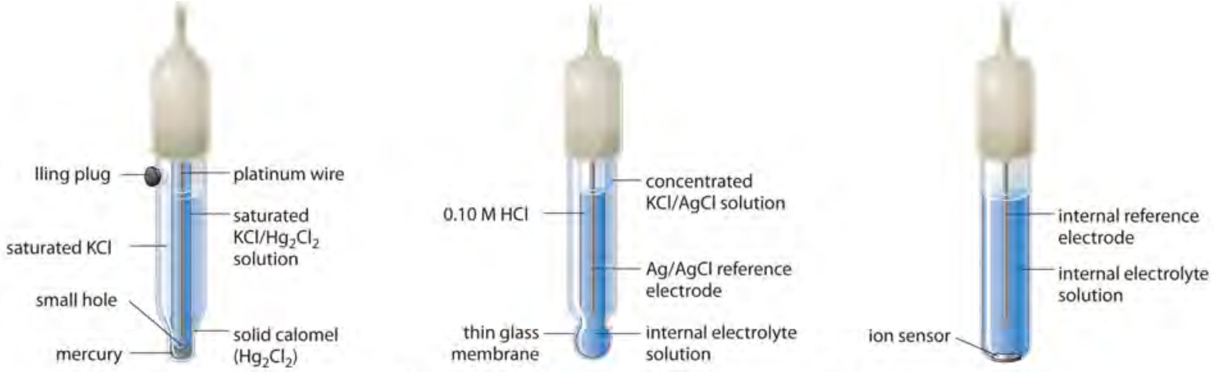
$$AgCl_{(s)} + e^- \rightarrow Ag_{(s)} + Cl^-_{(aq)}$$

If a saturated solution of KCl is used as the chloride solution, the potential of the silver–silver chloride electrode is 0.197 V versus the SHE. That is, 0.197 V must be subtracted from the measured value to obtain the standard electrode potential measured against the SHE.

A second common reference electrode is the **saturated calomel electrode (SCE)**, which has the same general form as the silver–silver chloride electrode. The SCE consists of a platinum wire inserted into a moist paste of liquid mercury (Hg_2Cl_2; called calomel in the old chemical literature) and KCl. This interior cell is surrounded by an aqueous KCl solution, which acts as a salt bridge between the interior cell and the exterior solution (part (a) in Figure $7.4.5$. Although it sounds and looks complex, this cell is actually easy to prepare and maintain, and its potential is highly reproducible. The SCE cell diagram and corresponding half-reaction are as follows:

$$Pt_{(s)} \mid Hg_2Cl_{2(s)} \mid KCl_{(aq,sat)} \tag{7.4.37}$$

$$Hg_2Cl_{2(s)} + 2e^- \rightarrow 2Hg_{(l)} + 2Cl^-(aq) \tag{7.4.38}$$



(a) Saturated calomel electrode (SCE) **(b) Glass electrode** **(c) Ion-selective electrode**

Figure 7.4.5: Three Common Types of Electrodes. (a) The SCE is a reference electrode that consists of a platinum wire inserted into a moist paste of liquid mercury (calomel; Hg_2Cl_2) and KCl. The interior cell is surrounded by an aqueous KCl solution, which acts as a salt bridge between the interior cell and the exterior solution. (b) In a glass electrode, an internal Ag/AgCl electrode is immersed in a 1 M HCl solution that is separated from the sample solution by a very thin glass membrane. The potential of the electrode depends on the H^+ ion concentration of the sample. (c) The potential of an ion-selective electrode depends on the concentration of only a single ionic species in solution. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

At 25°C, the potential of the SCE is 0.2415 V versus the SHE, which means that 0.2415 V must be subtracted from the potential versus an SCE to obtain the standard electrode potential.

One of the most common uses of electrochemistry is to measure the H^+ ion concentration of a solution. A **glass electrode** is generally used for this purpose, in which an internal Ag/AgCl electrode is immersed in a 0.10 M HCl solution that is separated from the solution by a very thin glass membrane (part (b) in Figure 7.4.5. The glass membrane absorbs protons, which affects the measured potential. The extent of the adsorption on the inner side is fixed because $[H^+]$ is fixed inside the electrode, but the adsorption of protons on the outer surface depends on the pH of the solution. The potential of the glass electrode depends on $[H^+]$ as follows (recall that pH = $-\log[H^+]$):

$$E_{glass} = E' + (0.0591\ V \times \log[H^+]) = E' - 0.0591\ V \times pH \tag{7.4.39}$$

The voltage E′ is a constant that depends on the exact construction of the electrode. Although it can be measured, in practice, a glass electrode is calibrated; that is, it is inserted into a solution of known pH, and the display on the pH meter is adjusted to the known value. Once the electrode is properly calibrated, it can be placed in a solution and used to determine an unknown pH.

Ion-selective electrodes are used to measure the concentration of a particular species in solution; they are designed so that their potential depends on only the concentration of the desired species (part (c) in Figure 7.4.5). These electrodes usually contain an internal reference electrode that is connected by a solution of an electrolyte to a crystalline inorganic material or a membrane, which acts as the sensor. For example, one type of ion-selective electrode uses a single crystal of Eu-doped LaF_3 as the inorganic material. When fluoride ions in solution diffuse to the surface of the solid, the potential of the electrode changes, resulting in a so-called fluoride electrode. Similar electrodes are used to measure the concentrations of other species in solution. Some of the species whose concentrations can be determined in aqueous solution using ion-selective electrodes and similar devices are listed in Table 7.4.1.

Table 7.4.1: Some Species Whose Aqueous Concentrations Can Be Measured Using Electrochemical Methods

Species	Type of Sample
H^+	laboratory samples, blood, soil, and ground and surface water
NH_3/NH_4^+	wastewater and runoff water
K^+	blood, wine, and soil
CO_2/HCO_3^-	blood and groundwater
F^-	groundwater, drinking water, and soil
Br^-	grains and plant extracts
I^-	milk and pharmaceuticals
NO_3^-	groundwater, drinking water, soil, and fertilizer

Summary

Redox reactions can be balanced using the half-reaction method. The standard cell potential is a measure of the driving force for the reaction. \(E°_{cell} = E°_{cathode} − E°_{anode} \nonumber \] The flow of electrons in an electrochemical cell depends on the identity of the reacting substances, the difference in the potential energy of their valence electrons, and their concentrations. The potential of the cell under standard conditions (1 M for solutions, 1 atm for gases, pure solids or liquids for other substances) and at a fixed temperature (25°C) is called the standard cell potential ($E°_{\text{cell}}$). Only the difference between the potentials of two electrodes can be measured. By convention, all tabulated values of standard electrode potentials are listed as standard reduction potentials. The overall cell potential is the reduction potential of the reductive half-reaction minus the reduction potential of the oxidative half-reaction ($E°_{\text{cell}} = E°_{\text{cathode}} − E°_{\text{anode}}$). The potential of the standard hydrogen electrode (SHE) is defined as 0 V under standard conditions. The potential of a half-reaction measured against the SHE under standard conditions is called its standard electrode potential. The standard cell potential is a measure of the driving force for a given redox reaction. All E° values are independent of the stoichiometric coefficients for the half-reaction. Redox reactions can be balanced using the half-reaction method, in which the overall redox reaction is divided into an oxidation half-reaction and a reduction half-reaction, each balanced for mass and charge. The half-reactions selected from tabulated lists must exactly reflect reaction conditions. In an alternative method, the atoms in each half-reaction are balanced, and then the charges are balanced. Whenever a half-reaction is reversed, the sign of E° corresponding to that reaction must also be reversed. If E°_{cell} is positive, the reaction will occur spontaneously under standard conditions. If E°_{cell} is negative, then the reaction is not spontaneous under standard conditions, although it will proceed spontaneously in the opposite direction. The potential of an indicator electrode is related to the concentration of the substance being measured, whereas the potential of the reference electrode is held constant. Whether reduction or oxidation occurs depends on the potential of the sample versus the potential of the reference electrode. In addition to the SHE, other reference electrodes are the silver–silver chloride electrode; the saturated calomel electrode (SCE); the glass electrode, which is commonly used to measure pH; and ion-selective electrodes, which depend on the concentration of a single ionic species in solution. Differences in potential between the SHE and other reference electrodes must be included when calculating values for E°.

7.5: Cell Potential, Gibbs Energy, and the Equilibrium Constant

Learning Objectives

- To understand the relationship between cell potential and the equilibrium constant.
- To use cell potentials to calculate solution concentrations.

Changes in reaction conditions can have a tremendous effect on the course of a redox reaction. For example, under standard conditions, the reaction of $\mathrm{Co(s)}$ with $\mathrm{Ni^{2+}(aq)}$ to form $\mathrm{Ni(s)}$ and $\mathrm{Co^{2+}(aq)}$ occurs spontaneously, but if we reduce the concentration of $\mathrm{Ni^{2+}}$ by a factor of 100, so that $[\mathrm{Ni^{2+}}]$ is 0.01 M, then the reverse reaction occurs spontaneously instead. The relationship between voltage and concentration is one of the factors that must be understood to predict whether a reaction will be spontaneous.

The Relationship between Cell Potential & Gibbs Energy

Electrochemical cells convert chemical energy to electrical energy and vice versa. The total amount of energy produced by an electrochemical cell, and thus the amount of energy available to do electrical work, depends on both the cell potential and the total number of electrons that are transferred from the reductant to the oxidant during the course of a reaction. The resulting electric current is measured in **coulombs (C)**, an SI unit that measures the number of electrons passing a given point in 1 s. A coulomb relates energy (in joules) to electrical potential (in volts). Electric current is measured in **amperes (A)**; 1 A is defined as the flow of 1 C/s past a given point (1 C = 1 A·s):

$$\frac{1\ \mathrm{J}}{1\ \mathrm{V}} = 1\ \mathrm{C} = \mathrm{A}\cdot\mathrm{s} \tag{7.5.1}$$

In chemical reactions, however, we need to relate the coulomb to the charge on a mole of electrons. Multiplying the charge on the electron by Avogadro's number gives us the charge on 1 mol of electrons, which is called the **faraday (F)**, named after the English physicist and chemist Michael Faraday (1791–1867):

$$\begin{align} F &= (1.60218 \times 10^{-19}\ \mathrm{C}) \left(\frac{6.02214 \times 10^{23}\ J}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ e^-}} \right) \tag{7.5.2} \\ &= 9.64833212 \times 10^{4}\ \mathrm{C/mol\ e^-} \tag{7.5.3} \\ &\simeq 96,485\ J/(\mathrm{V}\cdot\mathrm{mol\ e^-}) \tag{7.5.4} \end{align}$$

The total charge transferred from the reductant to the oxidant is therefore nF, where n is the number of moles of electrons.

Michael Faraday (1791–1867)

Faraday was a British physicist and chemist who was arguably one of the greatest experimental scientists in history. The son of a blacksmith, Faraday was self-educated and became an apprentice bookbinder at age 14 before turning to science. His experiments in electricity and magnetism made electricity a routine tool in science and led to both the electric motor and the electric generator. He discovered the phenomenon of electrolysis and laid the foundations of electrochemistry. In fact, most of the specialized terms introduced in this chapter (electrode, anode, cathode, and so forth) are due to Faraday. In addition, he discovered benzene and invented the system of oxidation state numbers that we use today. Faraday is probably best known for "The Chemical History of a Candle," a series of public lectures on the chemistry and physics of flames.

The maximum amount of work that can be produced by an electrochemical cell (w_{max}) is equal to the product of the cell potential (E°_{cell}) and the total charge transferred during the reaction (nF):

$$w_{max} = nFE_{cell} \tag{7.5.5}$$

Work is expressed as a negative number because work is being done by a system (an electrochemical cell with a positive potential) on its surroundings.

The change in free energy (ΔG) is also a measure of the maximum amount of work that can be performed during a chemical process ($\Delta G = w_{max}$). Consequently, there must be a relationship between the potential of an electrochemical cell and ΔG; this relationship is as follows:

$$\Delta G = -nFE_{cell} \tag{7.5.6}$$

A spontaneous redox reaction is therefore characterized by a negative value of ΔG and a positive value of E°_{cell}, consistent with our earlier discussions. When both reactants and products are in their standard states, the relationship between ΔG° and E°_{cell} is as follows:

$$\Delta G^\circ = -nFE^\circ_{cell} \tag{7.5.7}$$

A spontaneous redox reaction is characterized by a negative value of ΔG°, which corresponds to a positive value of $\mathrm{E°_{cell}}$.

Example 7.5.1

Suppose you want to prepare elemental bromine from bromide using the dichromate ion as an oxidant. Using the data in Table P2, calculate the free-energy change (ΔG°) for this redox reaction under standard conditions. Is the reaction spontaneous?

Given: redox reaction

Asked for: ΔG^o for the reaction and spontaneity

Strategy:

A. From the relevant half-reactions and the corresponding values of E^o, write the overall reaction and calculate E°_{cell}.
B. Determine the number of electrons transferred in the overall reaction. Then use Equation 7.5.7 to calculate ΔG^o. If ΔG^o is negative, then the reaction is spontaneous.

Solution

A

As always, the first step is to write the relevant half-reactions and use them to obtain the overall reaction and the magnitude of E^o. From Table P2, we can find the reduction and oxidation half-reactions and corresponding E^o values:

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{cathode:} & \mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + 14H^+(aq) + 6e^- \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}(aq) + 7H_2O(l)} & E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = 1.36\ \mathrm{V} \\ \text{anode:} & \mathrm{2Br^-(aq) \rightarrow Br_2(aq) + 2e^-} & E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = 1.09\ \mathrm{V} \end{array}$$

To obtain the overall balanced chemical equation, we must multiply both sides of the oxidation half-reaction by 3 to obtain the same number of electrons as in the reduction half-reaction, remembering that the magnitude of E^o is not affected:

$$\begin{array}{lll}
\text{cathode:} & \mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + 14H^+(aq) + 6e^- \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}(aq) + 7H_2O(l)} & E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = 1.36\text{ V} \\
\text{anode:} & \mathrm{6Br^-(aq) \rightarrow 3Br_2(aq) + 6e^-} & E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = 1.09\text{ V} \\
\hline
\text{overall:} & \mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + 6Br^-(aq) + 14H^+(aq) \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}(aq) + 3Br_2(aq) + 7H_2O(l)} & E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = 0.27\text{ V}
\end{array}$$

B

We can now calculate ΔG° using Equation 7.5.7. Because six electrons are transferred in the overall reaction, the value of n is 6:

$$\begin{aligned}
\Delta G^\circ &= -(n)(F)(E^\circ_{\text{cell}}) \\
&= -(6\text{ mole})[96,485\text{ J}/(\text{V}\cdot\text{mol})(0.27\text{ V})] \\
&= -15.6\ \times 10^4\text{ J} \\
&= -156\text{ kJ/mol }\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}}
\end{aligned}$$

Thus ΔG^o is −168 kJ/mol for the reaction as written, and the reaction is spontaneous.

Exercise 7.5.1

Use the data in Table P2 to calculate ΔG^o for the reduction of ferric ion by iodide:

$$2\,\mathrm{Fe^{3\,+}(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{I^-(aq)} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Fe^{2\,+}(aq)} + \mathrm{I_2(s)}$$

Is the reaction spontaneous?

Answer

−44 kJ/mol I_2; yes

Relating G and Ecell: Relating G and Ecell(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Potentials for the Sums of Half-Reactions

Although Table P2 list several half-reactions, many more are known. When the standard potential for a half-reaction is not available, we can use relationships between standard potentials and free energy to obtain the potential of any other half-reaction that can be written as the sum of two or more half-reactions whose standard potentials are available. For example, the potential for the reduction of $\mathrm{Fe^{3\,+}(aq)}$ to $\mathrm{Fe(s)}$ is not listed in the table, but two related reductions are given:

$$\mathrm{Fe^{3\,+}(aq)} + \mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe^{2\,+}(aq)} \quad E^\circ = +0.77V \tag{7.5.8}$$

$$\mathrm{Fe^{2\,+}(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe(s)} \quad E^\circ = -0.45V \tag{7.5.9}$$

Although the sum of these two half-reactions gives the desired half-reaction, we cannot simply add the potentials of two reductive half-reactions to obtain the potential of a third reductive half-reaction because E^o is not a state function. However, because ΔG^o is a state function, the sum of the ΔG^o values for the individual reactions gives us ΔG^o for the overall reaction, which is proportional to both the potential and the number of electrons (n) transferred. To obtain the value of E^o for the overall half-reaction, we first must add the values of $\Delta G^o (= -nFE^o)$ for each individual half-reaction to obtain ΔG^o for the overall half-reaction:

$$\begin{array}{ll}
\mathrm{Fe^{3\,+}(aq)} + \mathrm{e^-} \rightarrow \mathrm{Fe^{2+}(aq)} & \Delta G^\circ = -(1)(F)(0.77\text{ V}) \\
\mathrm{Fe^{2\,+}(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \rightarrow \mathrm{Fe(s)} & \Delta G^\circ = -(2)(F)(-0.45\text{ V}) \\
\mathrm{Fe^{3\,+}(aq)} + 3\,\mathrm{e^-} \rightarrow \mathrm{Fe(s)} & \Delta G^\circ = [-(1)(F)(0.77\text{ V})] + [-(2)(F)(-0.45\text{ V})]
\end{array}$$

Solving the last expression for ΔG° for the overall half-reaction,

$$\Delta G^\circ = F[(-0.77V) + (-2)(-0.45V)] = F(0.13V) \tag{7.5.10}$$

Three electrons ($n = 3$) are transferred in the overall reaction, so substituting into Equation 7.5.7and solving for E^o gives the following:

$$\begin{aligned}
\Delta G^\circ &= -nFE^\circ_{\text{cell}} \\
F(0.13\text{ V}) &= -(3)(F)(E^\circ_{\text{cell}}) \\
E^\circ &= -\frac{0.13\text{ V}}{3} = -0.043\text{ V}
\end{aligned}$$

This value of E^o is very different from the value that is obtained by simply adding the potentials for the two half-reactions (0.32 V) and even has the opposite sign.

> *Values of E^o for half-reactions cannot be added to give E^o for the sum of the half-reactions; only values of $\Delta G^o = -nFE^\circ_{cell}$ for half-reactions can be added.*

The Relationship between Cell Potential & the Equilibrium Constant

We can use the relationship between ΔG° and the equilibrium constant K, to obtain a relationship between E°_{cell} and K. Recall that for a general reaction of the type $aA + bB \rightarrow cC + dD$, the standard free-energy change and the equilibrium constant are related by the following equation:

$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT\ln K \tag{7.5.11}$$

Given the relationship between the standard free-energy change and the standard cell potential (Equation 7.5.7), we can write

$$-nFE^\circ_{cell} = -RT\ln K \tag{7.5.12}$$

Rearranging this equation,

$$E^\circ_{\mathrm{cell}} = \left(\frac{RT}{nF}\right)\ln K \tag{7.5.13}$$

For $T = 298\ K$, Equation 7.5.13can be simplified as follows:

$$E^\circ_{\mathrm{cell}} = \left(\frac{RT}{nF}\right)\ln K \tag{7.5.14}$$

$$= \left[\frac{[8.314\ \mathrm{J/(mol\cdot K)}(298\ \mathrm{K})]}{n[96,485\ \mathrm{J/(V\cdot mol)}]}\right] 2.303\log K \tag{7.5.15}$$

$$= \left(\frac{0.0592\ \mathrm{V}}{n}\right)\log K \tag{7.5.16}$$

Thus E°_{cell} is directly proportional to the logarithm of the equilibrium constant. This means that large equilibrium constants correspond to large positive values of E°_{cell} and vice versa.

✓ Example 7.5.2

Use the data in Table P2 to calculate the equilibrium constant for the reaction of metallic lead with PbO_2 in the presence of sulfate ions to give $PbSO_4$ under standard conditions. (This reaction occurs when a car battery is discharged.) Report your answer to two significant figures.

Given: redox reaction

Asked for: K

Strategy:

A. Write the relevant half-reactions and potentials. From these, obtain the overall reaction and E^o_{cell}.
B. Determine the number of electrons transferred in the overall reaction. Use Equation 7.5.16to solve for $\log K$ and then K.

Solution

A The relevant half-reactions and potentials from Table P2 are as follows:

$$\begin{array}{lll}
\text{cathode:} & \mathrm{PbO_2(s) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) + 4H^+(aq) + 2e^- \rightarrow PbSO_4(s) + 2H_2O(l)} & E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = 1.69\ \mathrm{V} \\
\text{anode:} & \mathrm{Pb(s) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) \rightarrow PbSO_4(s) + 2e^-} & E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = -0.36\ \mathrm{V} \\
\hline
\text{overall:} & \mathrm{Pb(s) + PbO_2(s) + 2SO_4^{2-}(aq) + 4H^+(aq) \rightarrow 2PbSO_4(s) + 2H_2O(l)} & E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = 2.05\ \mathrm{V}
\end{array}$$

B Two electrons are transferred in the overall reaction, so $n = 2$. Solving Equation 7.5.16for log K and inserting the values of n and E^o,

$$\begin{aligned}
\log K &= \frac{nE^\circ}{0.0591\ \mathrm{V}} = \frac{2(2.05\ \mathrm{V})}{0.0591\ \mathrm{V}} = 69.37 \\
K &= 2.3 \times 10^{69}
\end{aligned}$$

Thus the equilibrium lies far to the right, favoring a discharged battery (as anyone who has ever tried unsuccessfully to start a car after letting it sit for a long time will know).

? Exercise 7.5.2

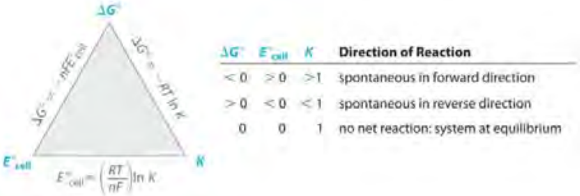
Use the data in Table P2 to calculate the equilibrium constant for the reaction of $Sn^{2+}(aq)$ with oxygen to produce $Sn^{4+}(aq)$ and water under standard conditions. Report your answer to two significant figures. The reaction is as follows:

$$2\,\mathrm{Sn^{2+}(aq)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)} + 4\,\mathrm{H^+(aq)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{Sn^{4+}(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O(l)}$$

Answer

5.7×10^{72}

Figure 7.5.1 summarizes the relationships that we have developed based on properties of the system—that is, based on the equilibrium constant, standard free-energy change, and standard cell potential—and the criteria for spontaneity ($\Delta G^\circ < 0$). Unfortunately, these criteria apply only to systems in which all reactants and products are present in their standard states, a situation that is seldom encountered in the real world. A more generally useful relationship between cell potential and reactant and product concentrations, as we are about to see, uses the relationship between ΔG and the reaction quotient Q.



$\Delta G°$	$E°_{cell}$	K	Direction of Reaction
< 0	> 0	> 1	spontaneous in forward direction
> 0	< 0	< 1	spontaneous in reverse direction
0	0	1	no net reaction: system at equilibrium

Figure 7.5.1: The Relationships among Criteria for Thermodynamic Spontaneity. The three properties of a system that can be used to predict the spontaneity of a redox reaction under standard conditions are K, ΔG°, and $E°_{cell}$. If we know the value of one of these quantities, then these relationships enable us to calculate the value of the other two. The signs of ΔG° and $E°_{cell}$ and the magnitude of K determine the direction of spontaneous reaction under standard conditions. (CC BY-NC-SA; Anonymous by request)

If delta G is less than zero, E is greater than zero and K is greater than 1 then the direction of the reaction is spontaneous in forward direction. If delta G is greater than zero, E is less than zero and K is less than one then the direction of reaction is spontaneous in reverse direction. If delta G is zero, E is zero and k is one that there is no net reaction and the system is at equilibrium .

Electrode Potentials and E_{Cell}: Electrode Potentials and Ecell(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

A coulomb (C) relates electrical potential, expressed in volts, and energy, expressed in joules. The current generated from a redox reaction is measured in amperes (A), where 1 A is defined as the flow of 1 C/s past a given point. The faraday (F) is Avogadro's number multiplied by the charge on an electron and corresponds to the charge on 1 mol of electrons. The product of the cell potential and the total charge is the maximum amount of energy available to do work, which is related to the change in free energy that occurs during the chemical process. Adding together the ΔG values for the half-reactions gives ΔG for the overall reaction, which is proportional to both the potential and the number of electrons (n) transferred. Spontaneous redox reactions have a negative ΔG and therefore a positive E_{cell}. Because the equilibrium constant K is related to ΔG, $E°_{cell}$ and K are also related. Large equilibrium constants correspond to large positive values of E°.

7.6: Cell Potential and Concentration

Learning Objectives

- Relate cell potentials to Gibbs energy changes
- Use the Nernst equation to determine cell potentials at nonstandard conditions
- Perform calculations that involve converting between cell potentials, free energy changes, and equilibrium constants

The *Nernst Equation* enables the determination of cell potential under non-standard conditions. It relates the measured cell potential to the reaction quotient and allows the accurate determination of equilibrium constants (including solubility constants).

The Effect of Concentration on Cell Potential: The Nernst Equation

Recall that the actual free-energy change for a reaction under nonstandard conditions, ΔG, is given as follows:

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^\circ + RT \ln Q \tag{7.6.1}$$

We also know that $\Delta G = -nFE_{cell}$ (under non-standard conditions) and $\Delta G^o = -nFE^o_{cell}$ (under standard conditions). Substituting these expressions into Equation 7.6.1, we obtain

$$-nFE_{cell} = -nFE^o_{cell} + RT \ln Q \tag{7.6.2}$$

Dividing both sides of this equation by $-nF$,

$$E_\text{cell} = E^\circ_\text{cell} - \left(\dfrac{RT}{nF}\right) \ln Q \tag{7.6.3}$$

Equation 7.6.3 is called the **Nernst equation**, after the German physicist and chemist Walter Nernst (1864–1941), who first derived it. The Nernst equation is arguably the most important relationship in electrochemistry. When a redox reaction is at equilibrium ($\Delta G = 0$), then Equation 7.6.3 reduces to Equation 7.6.4 and 7.6.5 because $Q = K$, and there is no net transfer of electrons (i.e., $E_\text{cell} = 0$).

$$E_\text{cell} = E^\circ_\text{cell} - \left(\dfrac{RT}{nF}\right) \ln K = 0 \tag{7.6.4}$$

since

$$E^\circ_\text{cell} = \left(\dfrac{RT}{nF}\right) \ln K \tag{7.6.5}$$

Substituting the values of the constants into Equation 7.6.3 with $T = 298\,K$ and converting to base-10 logarithms give the relationship of the actual cell potential (E_cell), the standard cell potential ($E°_\text{cell}$), and the reactant and product concentrations at room temperature (contained in Q):

$$E_\text{cell} = E^\circ_\text{cell} - \left(\dfrac{0.0591\text{ V}}{n}\right) \log Q \tag{7.6.6}$$

The Power of the Nernst Equation

The Nernst Equation (7.6.3) can be used to determine the value of E_cell, and thus the direction of spontaneous reaction, for any redox reaction under any conditions.

Equation 7.6.6 allows us to calculate the potential associated with any electrochemical cell at 298 K for any combination of reactant and product concentrations under any conditions. We can therefore determine the spontaneous direction of any redox reaction under any conditions, as long as we have tabulated values for the relevant standard electrode potentials. Notice in Equation 7.6.6 that the cell potential changes by 0.0591/n V for each 10-fold change in the value of Q because log 10 = 1.

✓ Example 7.6.1

The following reaction proceeds spontaneously under standard conditions because E°$_{cell}$ > 0 (which means that ΔG° < 0):

$$2\,\mathrm{Ce}^{4+}(\mathrm{aq}) + 2\,\mathrm{Cl}^{-}(\mathrm{aq}) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Ce}^{3+}(\mathrm{aq}) + \mathrm{Cl}_2(\mathrm{g}) \qquad E^{\circ}_{cell} = 0.25\ V$$

Calculate E_{cell} for this reaction under the following nonstandard conditions and determine whether it will occur spontaneously: [Ce^{4+}] = 0.013 M, [Ce^{3+}] = 0.60 M, [Cl^{-}] = 0.0030 M, P_{Cl_2} = 1.0 atm, and T = 25°C.

Given: balanced redox reaction, standard cell potential, and nonstandard conditions

Asked for: cell potential

Strategy:

Determine the number of electrons transferred during the redox process. Then use the Nernst equation to find the cell potential under the nonstandard conditions.

Solution

We can use the information given and the Nernst equation to calculate E$_{cell}$. Moreover, because the temperature is 25°C (298 K), we can use Equation 7.6.6 instead of Equation 7.6.3. The overall reaction involves the net transfer of two electrons:

$$2Ce^{4+}_{(aq)} + 2e^{-} \rightarrow 2Ce^{3+}_{(aq)}$$

$$2Cl^{-}_{(aq)} \rightarrow Cl_{2(g)} + 2e^{-}$$

so n = 2. Substituting the concentrations given in the problem, the partial pressure of Cl$_2$, and the value of E°$_{cell}$ into Equation 7.6.6,

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\mathrm{cell}} &= E^{\circ}_{\mathrm{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \mathrm{V}}{n}\right)\log Q \\ &= 0.25\ \mathrm{V} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \mathrm{V}}{2}\right)\log\left(\frac{[\mathrm{Ce}^{3+}]^2 P_{\mathrm{Cl}_2}}{[\mathrm{Ce}^{4+}]^2[\mathrm{Cl}^{-}]^2}\right) \\ &= 0.25\ \mathrm{V} - [(0.0296\ \mathrm{V})(8.37)] = 0.00\ \mathrm{V} \end{aligned}$$

Thus the reaction will not occur spontaneously under these conditions (because E = 0 V and ΔG = 0). The composition specified is that of an equilibrium mixture

? Exercise 7.6.1

Molecular oxygen will not oxidize MnO_2 to permanganate via the reaction

$$4\,\mathrm{MnO}_2(\mathrm{s}) + 3\,\mathrm{O}_2(\mathrm{g}) + 4\,\mathrm{OH}^{-}(\mathrm{aq}) \longrightarrow 4\,\mathrm{MnO}_4^{-}(\mathrm{aq}) + 2\,\mathrm{H}_2\mathrm{O}(\mathrm{l}) \quad E^{\circ}{cell} = -0.20\ V$$

Calculate E_{cell} for the reaction under the following nonstandard conditions and decide whether the reaction will occur spontaneously: pH 10, P_{O_2} = 0.20 atm, [MNO$_4^{-}$] = 1.0 × 10^{-4} M, and T = 25°C.

Answer

E$_{cell}$ = −0.22 V; the reaction will not occur spontaneously.

Applying the Nernst equation to a simple electrochemical cell such as the Zn/Cu cell allows us to see how the cell voltage varies as the reaction progresses and the concentrations of the dissolved ions change. Recall that the overall reaction for this cell is as follows:

$$Zn(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + Cu(s) \quad E^{\circ}cell = 1.10V \tag{7.6.7}$$

The reaction quotient is therefore $Q = [Zn^{2+}]/[Cu^{2+}]$. Suppose that the cell initially contains 1.0 M Cu^{2+} and 1.0 × 10^{-6} M Zn^{2+}. The initial voltage measured when the cell is connected can then be calculated from Equation 7.6.6:

$$E_{\text{cell}} = E^{\circ}_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\text{ V}}{n}\right)\log\frac{[\text{Zn}^{2+}]}{[\text{Cu}^{2+}]} \tag{7.6.8}$$

$$= 1.10\text{ V} - \left(\frac{0.0591\text{ V}}{2}\right)\log\left(\frac{1.0\times10^{-6}}{1.0}\right) = 1.28\text{ V} \tag{7.6.9}$$

Thus the initial voltage is greater than E° because $Q < 1$. As the reaction proceeds, $[Zn^{2+}]$ in the anode compartment increases as the zinc electrode dissolves, while $[Cu^{2+}]$ in the cathode compartment decreases as metallic copper is deposited on the electrode. During this process, the ratio Q = $[Zn^{2+}]/[Cu^{2+}]$ steadily increases, and the cell voltage therefore steadily decreases. Eventually, $[Zn^{2+}] = [Cu^{2+}]$, so Q = 1 and $E_{cell} = E°_{cell}$. Beyond this point, $[Zn^{2+}]$ will continue to increase in the anode compartment, and $[Cu^{2+}]$ will continue to decrease in the cathode compartment. Thus the value of Q will increase further, leading to a further decrease in E_{cell}. When the concentrations in the two compartments are the opposite of the initial concentrations (i.e., 1.0 M Zn^{2+} and 1.0 × 10^{-6} M Cu^{2+}), Q = 1.0 × 10^6, and the cell potential will be reduced to 0.92 V.

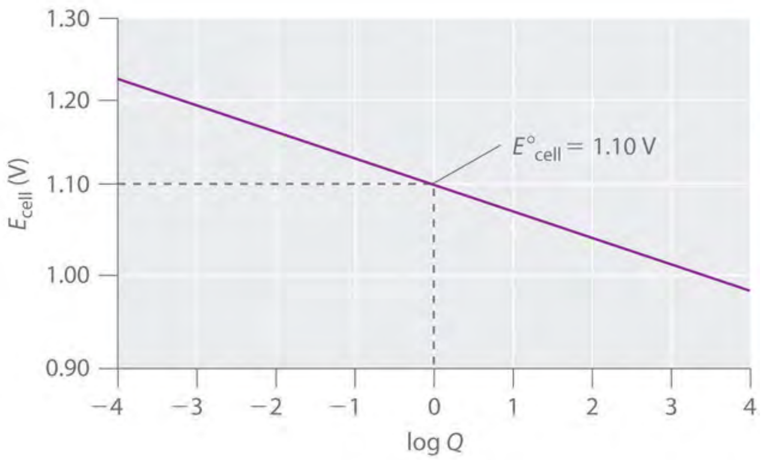


Figure 7.6.1: The Variation of E_{cell} with Log Q for a Zn/Cu Cell. Initially, log Q < 0, and the voltage of the cell is greater than $E°_{cell}$. As the reaction progresses, log Q increases, and E_{cell} decreases. When $[Zn^{2+}] = [Cu^{2+}]$, log Q = 0 and $E_{cell} = E°_{cell}$ = 1.10 V. As long as the electrical circuit remains intact, the reaction will continue, and log Q will increase until Q = K and the cell voltage reaches zero. At this point, the system will have reached equilibrium.

The variation of E_{cell} with log Q over this range is linear with a slope of −0.0591/n, as illustrated in Figure 7.6.1. As the reaction proceeds still further, Q continues to increase, and E_{cell} continues to decrease. If neither of the electrodes dissolves completely, thereby breaking the electrical circuit, the cell voltage will eventually reach zero. This is the situation that occurs when a battery is "dead." The value of Q when E_{cell} = 0 is calculated as follows:

$$E_{\text{cell}} = E^{\circ}_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\text{ V}}{n}\right)\log Q = 0 \tag{7.6.10}$$

$$E^{\circ} = \left(\frac{0.0591\text{ V}}{n}\right)\log Q \tag{7.6.11}$$

$$\log Q = \frac{E^{\circ}n}{0.0591\text{ V}} = \frac{(1.10\text{ V})(2)}{0.0591\text{ V}} = 37.23 \tag{7.6.12}$$

$$Q = 10^{37.23} = 1.7\times10^{37} \tag{7.6.13}$$

Recall that at equilibrium, $Q = K$. Thus the equilibrium constant for the reaction of Zn metal with Cu^{2+} to give Cu metal and Zn^{2+} is 1.7 × 10^{37} at 25°C.

The Nernst Equation: The Nernst Equation (opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Concentration Cells

A voltage can also be generated by constructing an electrochemical cell in which each compartment contains the same redox active solution but at different concentrations. The voltage is produced as the concentrations equilibrate. Suppose, for example, we have a cell with 0.010 M $AgNO_3$ in one compartment and 1.0 M $AgNO_3$ in the other. The cell diagram and corresponding half-reactions are as follows:

$$\mathrm{Ag(s)} \,|\, \mathrm{Ag}^+(aq, 0.010\ M) \,||\, \mathrm{Ag}^+(aq, 1.0\ M) \,|\, \mathrm{Ag(s)} \tag{7.6.14}$$

cathode:

$$\mathrm{Ag}^+(aq, 1.0\ M) + \mathrm{e}^- \rightarrow \mathrm{Ag(s)} \tag{7.6.15}$$

anode:

$$\mathrm{Ag(s)} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ag}^+(aq, 0.010\ M) + \mathrm{e}^- \tag{7.6.16}$$

Overall

$$\mathrm{Ag}^+(aq, 1.0\ M) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ag}^+(aq, 0.010\ M) \tag{7.6.17}$$

As the reaction progresses, the concentration of Ag^+ will increase in the left (oxidation) compartment as the silver electrode dissolves, while the Ag^+ concentration in the right (reduction) compartment decreases as the electrode in that compartment gains mass. The total mass of $Ag(s)$ in the cell will remain constant, however. We can calculate the potential of the cell using the Nernst equation, inserting 0 for $E°_{cell}$ because $E°_{cathode} = -E°_{anode}$:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{cell}} &= E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{n}\right)\log Q \\ &= 0 - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{1}\right)\log\left(\frac{0.010}{1.0}\right) \\ &= 0.12\ \text{V} \end{aligned}$$

An electrochemical cell of this type, in which the anode and cathode compartments are identical except for the concentration of a reactant, is called a **concentration cell**. As the reaction proceeds, the difference between the concentrations of Ag^+ in the two compartments will decrease, as will E_{cell}. Finally, when the concentration of Ag^+ is the same in both compartments, equilibrium will have been reached, and the measured potential difference between the two compartments will be zero ($E_{cell} = 0$).

✓ Example 7.6.2

Calculate the voltage in a galvanic cell that contains a manganese electrode immersed in a 2.0 M solution of $MnCl_2$ as the cathode, and a manganese electrode immersed in a 5.2×10^{-2} M solution of $MnSO_4$ as the anode (T = 25°C).

Given: galvanic cell, identities of the electrodes, and solution concentrations

Asked for: voltage

Strategy:

A. Write the overall reaction that occurs in the cell.
B. Determine the number of electrons transferred. Substitute this value into the Nernst equation to calculate the voltage.

Solution

A This is a concentration cell, in which the electrode compartments contain the same redox active substance but at different concentrations. The anions (Cl^- and SO_4^{2-}) do not participate in the reaction, so their identity is not important. The overall reaction is as follows:

$$\mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq, 2.0\ M) \rightarrow \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq, 5.2\times 10^{-2}\ M)$$

B For the reduction of $Mn^{2+}(aq)$ to Mn(s), n = 2. We substitute this value and the given Mn^{2+} concentrations into Equation 7.6.6:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{cell}} &= E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{n}\right)\log Q \\ &= 0\ \text{V} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{2}\right)\log\left(\frac{5.2\times 10^{-2}}{2.0}\right) \\ &= 0.047\ \text{V} \end{aligned}$$

Thus manganese will dissolve from the electrode in the compartment that contains the more dilute solution and will be deposited on the electrode in the compartment that contains the more concentrated solution.

? Exercise 7.6.2

Suppose we construct a galvanic cell by placing two identical platinum electrodes in two beakers that are connected by a salt bridge. One beaker contains 1.0 M HCl, and the other a 0.010 M solution of Na_2SO_4 at pH 7.00. Both cells are in contact with the atmosphere, with P_{O_2} = 0.20 atm. If the relevant electrochemical reaction in both compartments is the four-electron reduction of oxygen to water:

$$\mathrm{O_2(g) + 4\,H^+(aq) + 4\,e^- \rightarrow 2\,H_2O(l)}$$

What will be the potential when the circuit is closed?

Answer

0.41 V

Using Cell Potentials to Measure Solubility Products

Because voltages are relatively easy to measure accurately using a voltmeter, electrochemical methods provide a convenient way to determine the concentrations of very dilute solutions and the solubility products (K_{sp}) of sparingly soluble substances. As you learned previously, solubility products can be very small, with values of less than or equal to 10^{-30}. Equilibrium constants of this magnitude are virtually impossible to measure accurately by direct methods, so we must use alternative methods that are more sensitive, such as electrochemical methods.

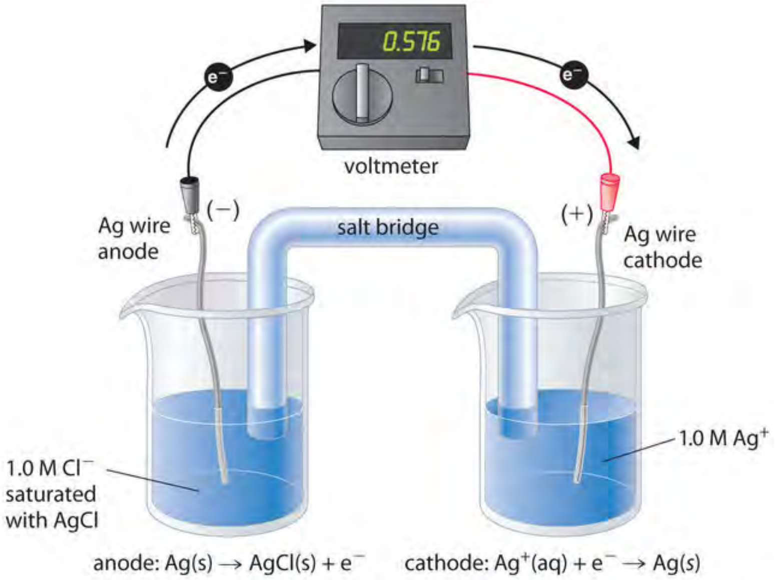


Figure 7.6.1: A Galvanic ("Concentration") Cell for Measuring the Solubility Product of AgCl. One compartment contains a silver wire inserted into a 1.0 M solution of Ag^+, and the other compartment contains a silver wire inserted into a 1.0 M Cl^- solution saturated with AgCl. The potential due to the difference in $[Ag^+]$ between the two cells can be used to determine K_{sp}. (CC BY-NC-SA; Anonymous by request)

To understand how an electrochemical cell is used to measure a solubility product, consider the cell shown in Figure 7.6.1, which is designed to measure the solubility product of silver chloride:

$$K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Ag}^+][\mathrm{Cl}^-].$$

In one compartment, the cell contains a silver wire inserted into a 1.0 M solution of Ag^+; the other compartment contains a silver wire inserted into a 1.0 M Cl^- solution saturated with AgCl. In this system, the Ag^+ ion concentration in the first compartment equals K_{sp}. We can see this by dividing both sides of the equation for K_{sp} by $[Cl^-]$ and substituting:

$$\begin{aligned}[\mathrm{Ag}^+] &= \frac{K_{sp}}{[\mathrm{Cl}^-]} \\ &= \frac{K_{sp}}{1.0} = K_{sp}.\end{aligned}$$

The overall cell reaction is as follows:

$$\mathrm{Ag}^+(\text{aq, concentrated}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ag}^+(\text{aq, dilute})$$

Thus the voltage of the concentration cell due to the difference in $[Ag^+]$ between the two cells is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}E_{\text{cell}} &= 0\text{ V} - \left(\frac{0.0591\text{ V}}{1}\right)\log\left(\frac{[\mathrm{Ag}^+]_{\text{dilute}}}{[\mathrm{Ag}^+]_{\text{concentrated}}}\right) \\ &= -0.0591\text{ V}\log\left(\frac{K_{\text{sp}}}{1.0}\right) \\ &= -0.0591\text{ V}\log K_{\text{sp}}\end{aligned} \tag{7.6.18}$$

By closing the circuit, we can measure the potential caused by the difference in [Ag+] in the two cells. In this case, the experimentally measured voltage of the concentration cell at 25°C is 0.580 V. Solving Equation 7.6.18for K_{sp},

$$\begin{aligned}\log K_{\text{sp}} &= \frac{-E_{\text{cell}}}{0.0591\text{ V}} = \frac{-0.580\text{ V}}{0.0591\text{ V}} = -9.81 \\ K_{\text{sp}} &= 1.5\times10^{-10}\end{aligned}$$

Thus a single potential measurement can provide the information we need to determine the value of the solubility product of a sparingly soluble salt.

✓ Example 7.6.3: Solubility of lead(II) sulfate

To measure the solubility product of lead(II) sulfate ($PbSO_4$) at 25°C, you construct a galvanic cell like the one shown in Figure 7.6.1, which contains a 1.0 M solution of a very soluble Pb^{2+} salt [lead(II) acetate trihydrate] in one compartment that is connected by a salt bridge to a 1.0 M solution of Na_2SO_4 saturated with $PbSO_4$ in the other. You then insert a Pb electrode into each compartment and close the circuit. Your voltmeter shows a voltage of 230 mV. What is K_{sp} for $PbSO_4$? Report your answer to two significant figures.

Given: galvanic cell, solution concentrations, electrodes, and voltage

Asked for: K_{sp}

Strategy:

A. From the information given, write the equation for K_{sp}. Express this equation in terms of the concentration of Pb^{2+}.
B. Determine the number of electrons transferred in the electrochemical reaction. Substitute the appropriate values into Equation ??? and solve for K_{sp}.

Solution

A You have constructed a concentration cell, with one compartment containing a 1.0 M solution of Pb^{2+} and the other containing a dilute solution of Pb^{2+} in 1.0 M Na_2SO_4. As for any concentration cell, the voltage between the two compartments can be calculated using the Nernst equation. The first step is to relate the concentration of Pb^{2+} in the dilute solution to K_{sp}:

$$\begin{aligned}[\mathrm{Pb}^{2+}][\mathrm{SO}_4^{2-}] &= K_{\mathrm{sp}} \\ [\mathrm{Pb}^{2+}] &= \frac{K_{\mathrm{sp}}}{[\mathrm{SO}_4^{2-}]} = \frac{K_{\mathrm{sp}}}{1.0\ \mathrm{M}} = K_{\mathrm{sp}}\end{aligned}$$

B The reduction of Pb^{2+} to Pb is a two-electron process and proceeds according to the following reaction:

$$\mathrm{Pb}^{2+}(\mathrm{aq,\ concentrated}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Pb}^{2+}(\mathrm{aq,\ dilute})$$

so

$$\begin{aligned}E_{\mathrm{cell}} &= E^{\circ}_{\mathrm{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591}{n}\right)\log Q \\ 0.230\ \mathrm{V} &= 0\ \mathrm{V} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \mathrm{V}}{2}\right)\log\left(\frac{[\mathrm{Pb}^{2+}]_{\mathrm{dilute}}}{[\mathrm{Pb}^{2+}]_{\mathrm{concentrated}}}\right) = -0.0296\ \mathrm{V}\log\left(\frac{K_{\mathrm{sp}}}{1.0}\right) \\ -7.77 &= \log K_{\mathrm{sp}} \\ 1.7\times10^{-8} &= K_{\mathrm{sp}}\end{aligned}$$

? Exercise 7.6.3

A concentration cell similar to the one described in Example 7.6.3 contains a 1.0 M solution of lanthanum nitrate $[La(NO_3)_3]$ in one compartment and a 1.0 M solution of sodium fluoride saturated with LaF_3 in the other. A metallic La strip is inserted into each compartment, and the circuit is closed. The measured potential is 0.32 V. What is the K_{sp} for LaF_3? Report your answer to two significant figures.

Answer

5.7×10^{-17}

Using Cell Potentials to Measure Concentrations

Another use for the Nernst equation is to calculate the concentration of a species given a measured potential and the concentrations of all the other species. We saw an example of this in Example 7.6.3, in which the experimental conditions were defined in such a way that the concentration of the metal ion was equal to K_{sp}. Potential measurements can be used to obtain the concentrations of dissolved species under other conditions as well, which explains the widespread use of electrochemical cells in many analytical devices. Perhaps the most common application is in the determination of $[H^+]$ using a pH meter, as illustrated below.

✓ Example 7.6.4: Measuring pH

Suppose a galvanic cell is constructed with a standard Zn/Zn^{2+} couple in one compartment and a modified hydrogen electrode in the second compartment. The pressure of hydrogen gas is 1.0 atm, but $[H^+]$ in the second compartment is unknown. The cell diagram is as follows:

$$\mathrm{Zn(s)}|\mathrm{Zn}^{2\,+}(aq, 1.0\,M)||\mathrm{H}^+(aq, ?\,M)|\mathrm{H}_2(g, 1.0\,atm)|Pt(s)$$

What is the pH of the solution in the second compartment if the measured potential in the cell is 0.26 V at 25°C?

Given: galvanic cell, cell diagram, and cell potential

Asked for: pH of the solution

Strategy:

A. Write the overall cell reaction.
B. Substitute appropriate values into the Nernst equation and solve for $-\log[H^+]$ to obtain the pH.

Solution

A Under standard conditions, the overall reaction that occurs is the reduction of protons by zinc to give H_2 (note that Zn lies below H_2 in Table P2):

$$\mathrm{Zn(s) + 2H^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + H_2(g)} \quad E° = 0.76\ \mathrm{V}$$

B By substituting the given values into the simplified Nernst equation (Equation 7.6.6), we can calculate $[H^+]$ under nonstandard conditions:

$$\begin{aligned}
E_{\text{cell}} &= E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{n}\right)\log\left(\frac{[\text{Zn}^{2+}]P_{\text{H}_2}}{[\text{H}^+]^2}\right) \\
0.26\ \text{V} &= 0.76\ \text{V} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{2}\right)\log\left(\frac{(1.0)(1.0)}{[\text{H}^+]^2}\right) \\
16.9 &= \log\left(\frac{1}{[\text{H}^+]^2}\right) = \log[\text{H}^+]^{-2} = (-2)\log[\text{H}^+] \\
8.46 &= -\log[\text{H}^+] \\
8.5 &= \text{pH}
\end{aligned}$$

Thus the potential of a galvanic cell can be used to measure the pH of a solution.

? Exercise 7.6.4

Suppose you work for an environmental laboratory and you want to use an electrochemical method to measure the concentration of Pb^{2+} in groundwater. You construct a galvanic cell using a standard oxygen electrode in one compartment ($E°_{cathode}$ = 1.23 V). The other compartment contains a strip of lead in a sample of groundwater to which you have added sufficient acetic acid, a weak organic acid, to ensure electrical conductivity. The cell diagram is as follows:

$$Pb_{(s)} \mid Pb^{2+}(aq, ?M) \parallel H^+(aq), 1.0M \mid O_2(g, 1.0atm) \mid Pt_{(s)}$$

When the circuit is closed, the cell has a measured potential of 1.62 V. Use Table P2 to determine the concentration of Pb^{2+} in the groundwater.

Answer

$1.2 \times 10^{-9}\ M$

Summary

The Nernst equation can be used to determine the direction of spontaneous reaction for any redox reaction in aqueous solution. The Nernst equation allows us to determine the spontaneous direction of any redox reaction under any reaction conditions from values of the relevant standard electrode potentials. Concentration cells consist of anode and cathode compartments that are identical except for the concentrations of the reactant. Because ΔG = 0 at equilibrium, the measured potential of a concentration cell is zero at equilibrium (the concentrations are equal). A galvanic cell can also be used to measure the solubility product of a sparingly soluble substance and calculate the concentration of a species given a measured potential and the concentrations of all the other species.

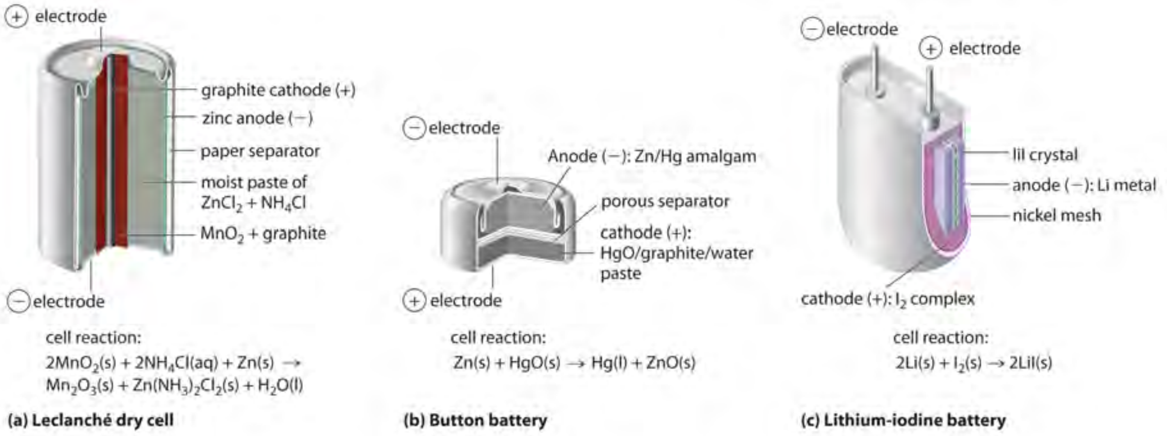
7.7: Batteries- Using Chemistry to Generate Electricity

Because galvanic cells can be self-contained and portable, they can be used as batteries and fuel cells. A **battery (storage cell)** is a galvanic cell (or a series of galvanic cells) that contains all the reactants needed to produce electricity. In contrast, a **fuel cell** is a galvanic cell that requires a constant external supply of one or more reactants to generate electricity. In this section, we describe the chemistry behind some of the more common types of batteries and fuel cells.

Batteries

There are two basic kinds of batteries: disposable, or primary, batteries, in which the electrode reactions are effectively irreversible and which cannot be recharged; and rechargeable, or secondary, batteries, which form an insoluble product that adheres to the electrodes. These batteries can be recharged by applying an electrical potential in the reverse direction. The recharging process temporarily converts a rechargeable battery from a galvanic cell to an electrolytic cell.

Batteries are cleverly engineered devices that are based on the same fundamental laws as galvanic cells. The major difference between batteries and the galvanic cells we have previously described is that commercial batteries use solids or pastes rather than solutions as reactants to maximize the electrical output per unit mass. The use of highly concentrated or solid reactants has another beneficial effect: the concentrations of the reactants and the products do not change greatly as the battery is discharged; consequently, the output voltage remains remarkably constant during the discharge process. This behavior is in contrast to that of the Zn/Cu cell, whose output decreases logarithmically as the reaction proceeds (Figure $7.7.1$). When a battery consists of more than one galvanic cell, the cells are usually connected in series—that is, with the positive (+) terminal of one cell connected to the negative (−) terminal of the next, and so forth. The overall voltage of the battery is therefore the sum of the voltages of the individual cells.



(a) Leclanché dry cell **(b) Button battery** **(c) Lithium-iodine battery**

Figure $7.7.1$: Three Kinds of Primary (Nonrechargeable) Batteries. (a) A Leclanché dry cell is actually a “wet cell,” in which the electrolyte is an acidic water-based paste containing MnO_2, NH_4Cl, $ZnCl_2$, graphite, and starch. Though inexpensive to manufacture, the cell is not very efficient in producing electrical energy and has a limited shelf life. (b) In a button battery, the anode is a zinc–mercury amalgam, and the cathode can be either HgO (shown here) or Ag_2O as the oxidant. Button batteries are reliable and have a high output-to-mass ratio, which allows them to be used in applications such as calculators and watches, where their small size is crucial. (c) A lithium–iodine battery consists of two cells separated by a metallic nickel mesh that collects charge from the anodes. The anode is lithium metal, and the cathode is a solid complex of I_2. The electrolyte is a layer of solid LiI that allows Li^+ ions to diffuse from the cathode to the anode. Although this type of battery produces only a relatively small current, it is highly reliable and long-lived.

> The major difference between batteries and the galvanic cells is that commercial typically batteries use solids or pastes rather than solutions as reactants to maximize the electrical output per unit mass. An obvious exception is the standard car battery which used solution phase chemistry.

Leclanché Dry Cell

The dry cell, by far the most common type of battery, is used in flashlights, electronic devices such as the Walkman and Game Boy, and many other devices. Although the dry cell was patented in 1866 by the French chemist Georges Leclanché and more than 5 billion such cells are sold every year, the details of its electrode chemistry are still not completely understood. In spite of its name, the **Leclanché dry cell** is actually a “wet cell”: the electrolyte is an acidic water-based paste containing MnO_2, NH_4Cl, $ZnCl_2$, graphite, and starch (part (a) in Figure $7.7.1$). The half-reactions at the anode and the cathode can be summarized as follows:

- cathode (reduction):

$$2\,\mathrm{MnO_2(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{NH_4^+(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn_2O_3(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{NH_3(aq)} + \mathrm{H_2O(l)}$$

- anode (oxidation):

$$\mathrm{Zn(s)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Zn^{2+}(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-}$$

The Zn^{2+} ions formed by the oxidation of $Zn(s)$ at the anode react with NH_3 formed at the cathode and Cl^- ions present in solution, so the overall cell reaction is as follows:

- overall reaction:

$$2\,MnO_2(s) + 2\,NH_4Cl(aq) + Zn(s) \longrightarrow Mn_2O_3(s) + Zn(NH_3)_2Cl_2(s) + H_2O(l) \tag{7.7.1}$$

The dry cell produces about 1.55 V and is inexpensive to manufacture. It is not, however, very efficient in producing electrical energy because only the relatively small fraction of the MnO_2 that is near the cathode is actually reduced and only a small fraction of the zinc cathode is actually consumed as the cell discharges. In addition, dry cells have a limited shelf life because the Zn anode reacts spontaneously with NH_4Cl in the electrolyte, causing the case to corrode and allowing the contents to leak out.

Close up of a hand holding one double <span class=
AA
battery" style="width: 287px; height: 215px;" width="287px" height="215px" data-cke-saved-src="/@api/deki/files/16647/battery.jpg" src="/@api/deki/files/16647/battery.jpg" data-quail-id="34">

Source: Photo courtesy of Mitchclanky2008, www.flickr.com/photos/25597837@N05/2422765479/.

The **alkaline battery** is essentially a Leclanché cell adapted to operate under alkaline, or basic, conditions. The half-reactions that occur in an alkaline battery are as follows:

- cathode (reduction)

$$2\,MnO_2(s) + H_2O(l) + 2\,e^- \longrightarrow Mn_2O_3(s) + 2\,OH^-(aq)$$

- anode (oxidation):

$$Zn(s) + 2\,OH^-(aq) \longrightarrow ZnO(s) + H_2O(l) + 2\,e^-$$

- overall reaction:

$$Zn(s) + 2\,MnO_2(s) \longrightarrow ZnO(s) + Mn_2O_3(s)$$

This battery also produces about 1.5 V, but it has a longer shelf life and more constant output voltage as the cell is discharged than the Leclanché dry cell. Although the alkaline battery is more expensive to produce than the Leclanché dry cell, the improved performance makes this battery more cost-effective.

Button Batteries

Although some of the small button batteries used to power watches, calculators, and cameras are miniature alkaline cells, most are based on a completely different chemistry. In these "button" batteries, the anode is a zinc–mercury amalgam rather than pure zinc, and the cathode uses either HgO or Ag_2O as the oxidant rather than MnO_2 in Figure $7.7.1b$).

Button batteries. (Gerhard H Wrodnigg via Wikipedia)

The cathode, anode and overall reactions and cell output for these two types of button batteries are as follows (two half-reactions occur at the anode, but the overall oxidation half-reaction is shown):

- cathode (mercury battery):

$$HgO(s) + H_2O(l) + 2\,e^- \longrightarrow Hg(l) + 2\,OH^-(aq)$$

- Anode (mercury battery):

$$Zn + 2\,OH^- \longrightarrow ZnO + H_2O + 2\,e^-$$

- overall reaction (mercury battery):

$$Zn(s) + 2\,HgO(s) \longrightarrow 2\,Hg(l) + ZnO(s)$$

  with $E_{cell} = 1.35\,V$.
- cathode reaction (silver battery):

$$Ag_2O(s) + H_2O(l) + 2\,e^- \longrightarrow 2\,Ag(s) + 2\,OH^-(aq)$$

- anode (silver battery):

$$\mathrm{Zn} + 2\,\mathrm{OH}^- \longrightarrow \mathrm{ZnO} + \mathrm{H_2O} + 2\,\mathrm{e}^-$$

- Overall reaction (silver battery):

$$\mathrm{Zn(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{Ag_2O(s)} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Ag(s)} + \mathrm{ZnO(s)}$$

  with $E_{cell} = 1.6\,V$.

The major advantages of the mercury and silver cells are their reliability and their high output-to-mass ratio. These factors make them ideal for applications where small size is crucial, as in cameras and hearing aids. The disadvantages are the expense and the environmental problems caused by the disposal of heavy metals, such as Hg and Ag.

Lithium–Iodine Battery

None of the batteries described above is actually "dry." They all contain small amounts of liquid water, which adds significant mass and causes potential corrosion problems. Consequently, substantial effort has been expended to develop water-free batteries. One of the few commercially successful water-free batteries is the **lithium–iodine battery**. The anode is lithium metal, and the cathode is a solid complex of I_2. Separating them is a layer of solid LiI, which acts as the electrolyte by allowing the diffusion of Li^+ ions. The electrode reactions are as follows:

- cathode (reduction):

$$I_{2(s)} + 2e^- \rightarrow 2I^-{}_{(LiI)} \tag{7.7.2}$$

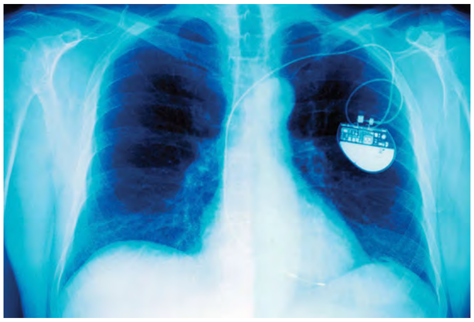
- anode (oxidation):

$$2Li_{(s)} \rightarrow 2Li^+_{(LiI)} + 2e^- \tag{7.7.3}$$

- overall:

$$2Li_{(s)} + I_{2(s)} \rightarrow 2LiI_{(s)} \tag{7.7.4}$$

with $E_{cell} = 3.5\,V$



Cardiac pacemaker: An x-ray of a patient showing the location and size of a pacemaker powered by a lithium–iodine battery.

As shown in part (c) in Figure $7.7.1$, a typical lithium–iodine battery consists of two cells separated by a nickel metal mesh that collects charge from the anode. Because of the high internal resistance caused by the solid electrolyte, only a low current can be drawn. Nonetheless, such batteries have proven to be long-lived (up to 10 yr) and reliable. They are therefore used in applications where frequent replacement is difficult or undesirable, such as in cardiac pacemakers and other medical implants and in computers for memory protection. These batteries are also used in security transmitters and smoke alarms. Other batteries based on lithium anodes and solid electrolytes are under development, using TiS_2, for example, for the cathode.

Dry cells, button batteries, and lithium–iodine batteries are disposable and cannot be recharged once they are discharged. Rechargeable batteries, in contrast, offer significant economic and environmental advantages because they can be recharged and discharged numerous times. As a result, manufacturing and disposal costs drop dramatically for a given number of hours of battery usage. Two common rechargeable batteries are the nickel–cadmium battery and the lead–acid battery, which we describe next.

Nickel–Cadmium (NiCad) Battery

The **nickel–cadmium**, or NiCad, battery is used in small electrical appliances and devices like drills, portable vacuum cleaners, and AM/FM digital tuners. It is a water-based cell with a cadmium anode and a highly oxidized nickel cathode that is usually described as the nickel(III) oxo-hydroxide, NiO(OH). As shown in Figure $7.7.2$, the design maximizes the surface area of the electrodes and minimizes the distance between them, which decreases internal resistance and makes a rather high discharge current possible.

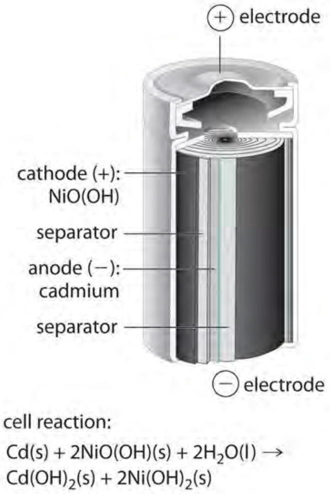


Figure 7.7.2: The Nickel–Cadmium (NiCad) Battery, a Rechargeable Battery. NiCad batteries contain a cadmium anode and a highly oxidized nickel cathode. This design maximizes the surface area of the electrodes and minimizes the distance between them, which gives the battery both a high discharge current and a high capacity.

The electrode reactions during the discharge of a $NiCad$ battery are as follows:

- cathode (reduction):

$$2NiO(OH)_{(s)} + 2H_2O_{(l)} + 2e^- \rightarrow 2Ni(OH)_{2(s)} + 2OH^-_{(aq)} \tag{7.7.5}$$

- anode (oxidation):

$$Cd_{(s)} + 2OH^-_{(aq)} \rightarrow Cd(OH)_{2(s)} + 2e^- \tag{7.7.6}$$

- overall:

$$Cd_{(s)} + 2NiO(OH)_{(s)} + 2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow Cd(OH)_{2(s)} + 2Ni(OH)_{2(s)} \tag{7.7.7}$$

$$E_{cell} = 1.4V$$

Because the products of the discharge half-reactions are solids that adhere to the electrodes [$Cd(OH)_2$ and $2Ni(OH)_2$], the overall reaction is readily reversed when the cell is recharged. Although NiCad cells are lightweight, rechargeable, and high capacity, they have certain disadvantages. For example, they tend to lose capacity quickly if not allowed to discharge fully before recharging, they do not store well for long periods when fully charged, and they present significant environmental and disposal problems because of the toxicity of cadmium.

A variation on the NiCad battery is the nickel–metal hydride battery (NiMH) used in hybrid automobiles, wireless communication devices, and mobile computing. The overall chemical equation for this type of battery is as follows:

\[NiO(OH)_{(s)} + MH \rightarrow Ni(OH)_{2(s)} + M_{(s)} \label{Eq16} \]

The NiMH battery has a 30%–40% improvement in capacity over the NiCad battery; it is more environmentally friendly so storage, transportation, and disposal are not subject to environmental control; and it is not as sensitive to recharging memory. It is, however, subject to a 50% greater self-discharge rate, a limited service life, and higher maintenance, and it is more expensive than the NiCad battery.

> Directive 2006/66/EC of the European Union prohibits the placing on the market of portable batteries that contain more than 0.002% of cadmium by weight. The aim of this directive was to improve "the environmental performance of batteries and accumulators"

Lead–Acid (Lead Storage) Battery

The **lead–acid battery** is used to provide the starting power in virtually every automobile and marine engine on the market. Marine and car batteries typically consist of multiple cells connected in series. The total voltage generated by the battery is the potential per cell ($E°_{cell}$) times the number of cells.

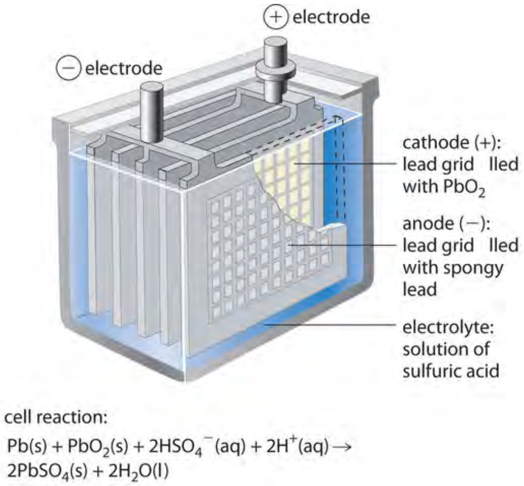


Figure $7.7.3$: One Cell of a Lead–Acid Battery. The anodes in each cell of a rechargeable battery are plates or grids of lead containing spongy lead metal, while the cathodes are similar grids containing powdered lead dioxide (PbO_2). The electrolyte is an aqueous solution of sulfuric acid. The value of E° for such a cell is about 2 V. Connecting three such cells in series produces a 6 V battery, whereas a typical 12 V car battery contains six cells in series. When treated properly, this type of high-capacity battery can be discharged and recharged many times over.

As shown in Figure $7.7.3$, the anode of each cell in a lead storage battery is a plate or grid of spongy lead metal, and the cathode is a similar grid containing powdered lead dioxide (PbO_2). The electrolyte is usually an approximately 37% solution (by mass) of sulfuric acid in water, with a density of 1.28 g/mL (about 4.5 M H_2SO_4). Because the redox active species are solids, there is no need to separate the electrodes. The electrode reactions in each cell during discharge are as follows:

- cathode (reduction):

\[PbO_{2(s)} + HSO^−_{4(aq)} + 3H^+_{(aq)} + 2e^− \rightarrow PbSO_{4(s)} + 2H_2O_{(l)} \label{Eq17} \]

with $E^\circ_{cathode} = 1.685\ V$

- anode (oxidation):

$$Pb_{(s)} + HSO^-_{4(aq)} \rightarrow PbSO_{4(s)} + H^+_{(aq)} + 2e^- \tag{7.7.8}$$

with $E^\circ_{anode} = -0.356\ V$

- overall:

$$Pb_{(s)} + PbO_{2(s)} + 2HSO^-_{4(aq)} + 2H^+_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2PbSO_{4(s)} + 2H_2O_{(l)} \tag{7.7.9}$$

and $E^\circ_{cell} = 2.041\ V$

As the cell is discharged, a powder of $PbSO_4$ forms on the electrodes. Moreover, sulfuric acid is consumed and water is produced, decreasing the density of the electrolyte and providing a convenient way of monitoring the status of a battery by simply measuring the density of the electrolyte. This is often done with the use of a hydrometer.

A hydrometer can be used to test the specific gravity of each cell as a measure of its state of charge (www.youtube.com/watch?v=SRcOqfL6GqQ).

When an external voltage in excess of 2.04 V per cell is applied to a lead–acid battery, the electrode reactions reverse, and $PbSO_4$ is converted back to metallic lead and PbO_2. If the battery is recharged too vigorously, however, electrolysis of water can occur:

$$2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow 2H_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)} \tag{7.7.10}$$

This results in the evolution of potentially explosive hydrogen gas. The gas bubbles formed in this way can dislodge some of the $PbSO_4$ or PbO_2 particles from the grids, allowing them to fall to the bottom of the cell, where they can build up and cause an internal short circuit. Thus the recharging process must be carefully monitored to optimize the life of the battery. With proper care, however, a lead–acid battery can be discharged and recharged thousands of times. In automobiles, the alternator supplies the electric current that causes the discharge reaction to reverse.

Fuel Cells

A fuel cell is a galvanic cell that requires a constant external supply of reactants because the products of the reaction are continuously removed. Unlike a battery, it does not store chemical or electrical energy; a fuel cell allows electrical energy to be extracted directly from a chemical reaction. In principle, this should be a more efficient process than, for example, burning the fuel to drive an internal combustion engine that turns a generator, which is typically less than 40% efficient, and in fact, the efficiency of a fuel cell is generally between 40% and 60%. Unfortunately, significant cost and reliability problems have hindered the wide-scale adoption of fuel cells. In practice, their use has been restricted to applications in which mass may be a significant cost factor, such as US manned space vehicles.

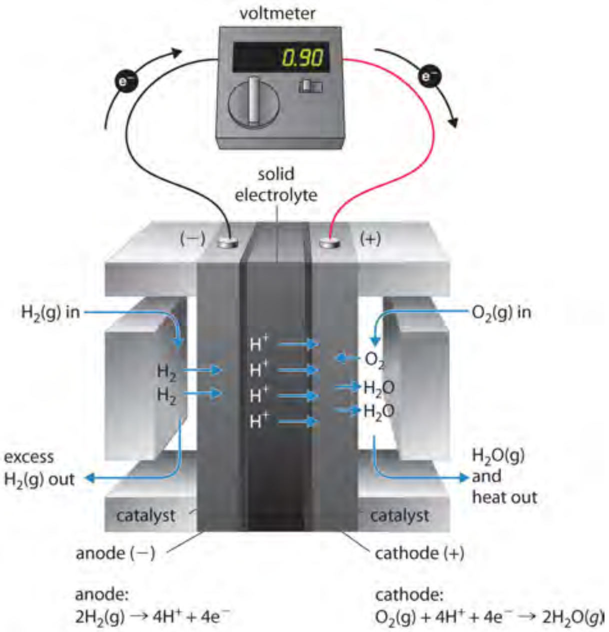


Figure 7.7.4: A Hydrogen Fuel Cell Produces Electrical Energy Directly from a Chemical Reaction. Hydrogen is oxidized to protons at the anode, and the electrons are transferred through an external circuit to the cathode, where oxygen is reduced and combines with H^+ to form water. A solid electrolyte allows the protons to diffuse from the anode to the cathode. Although fuel cells are an essentially pollution-free means of obtaining electrical energy, their expense and technological complexity have thus far limited their applications.

These space vehicles use a hydrogen/oxygen fuel cell that requires a continuous input of H_2(g) and O_2(g), as illustrated in Figure 7.7.4. The electrode reactions are as follows:

- cathode (reduction):

$$O_{2(g)} + 4H^+ + 4e^- \rightarrow 2H_2O_{(g)} \tag{7.7.11}$$

- anode (oxidation):

$$2H_{2(g)} \rightarrow 4H^+ + 4e^- \tag{7.7.12}$$

- overall:

$$2H_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)} \rightarrow 2H_2O_{(g)} \tag{7.7.13}$$

The overall reaction represents an essentially pollution-free conversion of hydrogen and oxygen to water, which in space vehicles is then collected and used. Although this type of fuel cell should produce 1.23 V under standard conditions, in practice the device achieves only about 0.9 V. One of the major barriers to achieving greater efficiency is the fact that the four-electron reduction of $O_2(g)$ at the cathode is intrinsically rather slow, which limits current that can be achieved. All major automobile manufacturers have major research programs involving fuel cells: one of the most important goals is the development of a better catalyst for the reduction of $O_2(g)$.

Summary

Commercial batteries are galvanic cells that use solids or pastes as reactants to maximize the electrical output per unit mass. A battery is a contained unit that produces electricity, whereas a fuel cell is a galvanic cell that requires a constant external supply of one or more reactants to generate electricity. One type of battery is the Leclanché dry cell, which contains an electrolyte in an acidic water-based paste. This battery is called an alkaline battery when adapted to operate under alkaline conditions. Button batteries have a high output-to-mass ratio; lithium–iodine batteries consist of a solid electrolyte; the nickel–cadmium (NiCad) battery is rechargeable; and the lead–acid battery, which is also rechargeable, does not require the electrodes to be in separate compartments. A fuel cell requires an external supply of reactants as the products of the reaction are continuously removed. In a fuel cell, energy is not stored; electrical energy is provided by a chemical reaction.

7.8: Electrolysis- Driving Non-spontaneous Chemical Reactions with Electricity

Learning Objectives

- To understand electrolysis and describe it quantitatively.

In this chapter, we have described various galvanic cells in which a spontaneous chemical reaction is used to generate electrical energy. In an electrolytic cell, however, the opposite process, called **electrolysis**, occurs: an external voltage is applied to drive a nonspontaneous reaction. In this section, we look at how electrolytic cells are constructed and explore some of their many commercial applications.

Electrolytic Cells

If we construct an electrochemical cell in which one electrode is copper metal immersed in a 1 M Cu^{2+} solution and the other electrode is cadmium metal immersed in a $1\ M\ Cd^{2+}$ solution and then close the circuit, the potential difference between the two compartments will be 0.74 V. The cadmium electrode will begin to dissolve (Cd is oxidized to Cd^{2+}) and is the anode, while metallic copper will be deposited on the copper electrode (Cu^{2+} is reduced to Cu), which is the cathode (Figure $7.8.1a$).

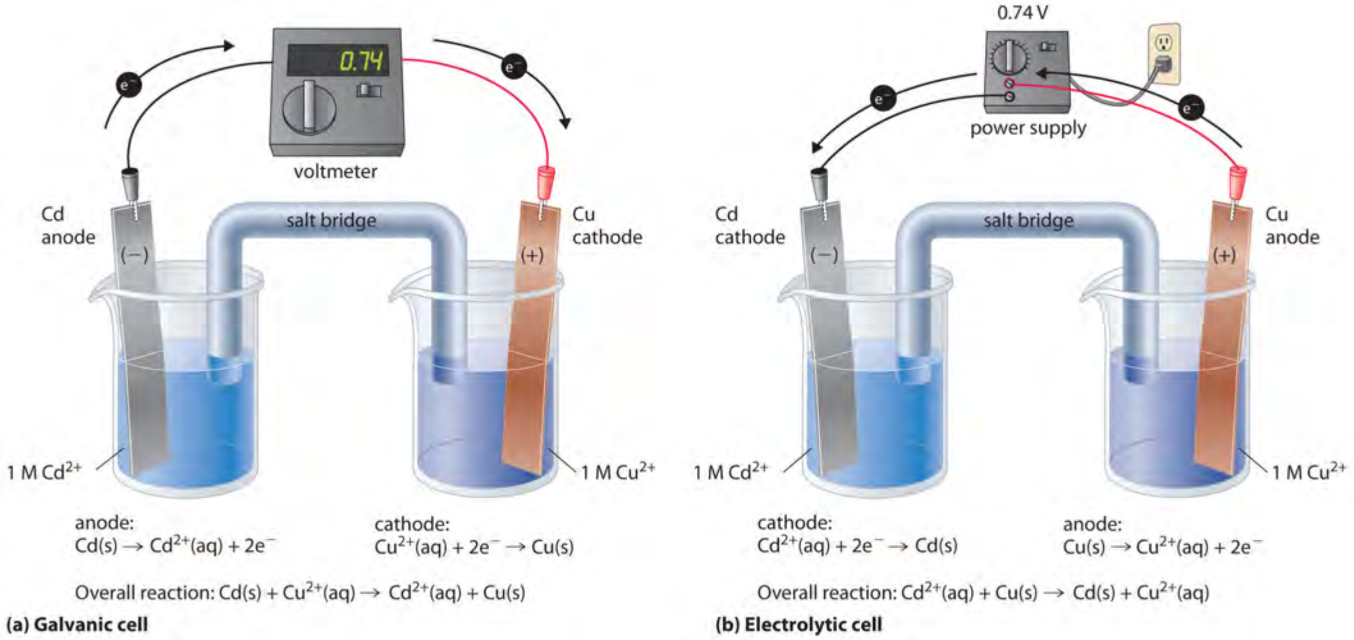


Figure 7.8.1: An Applied Voltage Can Reverse the Flow of Electrons in a Galvanic Cd/Cu Cell. (a) When compartments that contain a Cd electrode immersed in 1 M $Cd^{2+}(aq)$ and a Cu electrode immersed in 1 M $Cu^{2+}(aq)$ are connected to create a galvanic cell, Cd(s) is spontaneously oxidized to $Cd^{2+}(aq)$ at the anode, and $Cu^{2+}(aq)$ is spontaneously reduced to Cu(s) at the cathode. The potential of the galvanic cell is 0.74 V. (b) Applying an external potential greater than 0.74 V in the reverse direction forces electrons to flow from the Cu electrode [which is now the anode, at which metallic Cu(s) is oxidized to $Cu^{2+}(aq)$] and into the Cd electrode [which is now the cathode, at which $Cd^{2+}(aq)$ is reduced to Cd(s)]. The anode in an electrolytic cell is positive because electrons are flowing from it, whereas the cathode is negative because electrons are flowing into it. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

The overall reaction is as follows:

$$\mathrm{Cd(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Cd^{2+}(aq) + Cu(s)}$$

with $E^\circ{}_{cell} = 0.74\ V$

This reaction is thermodynamically spontaneous as written ($\Delta G^o < 0$):

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G^\circ &= -nFE^\circ_\text{cell} \\ &= -(\mathrm{2\ mol\ e^-})[\mathrm{96,485\ J/(V\cdot mol)}](\mathrm{0.74\ V}) \\ &= -\mathrm{140\ kJ\ (per\ mole\ Cd)} \end{aligned}$$

In this direction, the system is acting as a galvanic cell.

> *In an electrolytic cell, an external voltage is applied to drive a nonspontaneous reaction.*

The reverse reaction, the reduction of Cd^{2+} by Cu, is thermodynamically nonspontaneous and will occur only with an input of 140 kJ. We can force the reaction to proceed in the reverse direction by applying an electrical potential greater than 0.74 V from an external power supply. The applied voltage forces electrons through the circuit in the reverse direction, converting a galvanic cell to an electrolytic cell. Thus the copper electrode is now the anode (Cu is oxidized), and the cadmium electrode is now the cathode (Cd^{2+} is reduced) (Figure $7.8.1b$). The signs of the cathode and the anode have switched to reflect the flow of electrons in the circuit. The half-reactions that occur at the cathode and the anode are as follows:

- half-reaction at the cathode:

$$\mathrm{Cd^{2+}(aq) + 2\,e^- \rightarrow Cd(s)} \tag{7.8.1}$$

with $E^\circ_{cathode} = -0.40\,V$

- half-reaction at the anode:

$$\mathrm{Cu(s) \rightarrow Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2\,e^-} \tag{7.8.2}$$

with $E^\circ_{anode} = 0.34\,V$

- Overall Reaction:

$$\mathrm{Cd^{2+}(aq) + Cu(s) \rightarrow Cd(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq)} \tag{7.8.3}$$

with $E^\circ_{cell} = -0.74\,V$

Because $E^\circ_{cell} < 0$, the overall reaction—the reduction of Cd^{2+} by Cu—clearly **cannot** occur spontaneously and proceeds only when sufficient electrical energy is applied. The differences between galvanic and electrolytic cells are summarized in Table $7.8.1$.

Table $7.8.1$: Comparison of Galvanic and Electrolytic Cells

Property	**Galvanic Cell**	**Electrolytic Cell**
ΔG	< 0	> 0
E_{cell}	> 0	< 0
Electrode Process		
anode	oxidation	oxidation
cathode	reduction	reduction
Sign of Electrode		
anode	−	+
cathode	+	−

Electrolytic Reactions

At sufficiently high temperatures, ionic solids melt to form liquids that conduct electricity extremely well due to the high concentrations of ions. If two inert electrodes are inserted into molten NaCl, for example, and an electrical potential is applied, $\mathrm{Cl^-}$ is oxidized at the anode, and $\mathrm{Na^+}$ is reduced at the cathode. The overall reaction is as follows:

$$\mathrm{2\,NaCl(l) \rightarrow 2\,Na(l) + Cl_2(g)} \tag{7.8.4}$$

This is the reverse of the formation of NaCl from its elements. The product of the reduction reaction is liquid sodium because the melting point of sodium metal is 97.8°C, well below that of NaCl (801°C). Approximately 20,000 tons of sodium metal are produced commercially in the United States each year by the electrolysis of molten NaCl in a Downs cell (Figure $7.8.2$). In this specialized cell, $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$ (melting point = 772°C) is first added to the NaCl to lower the melting point of the mixture to about 600°C, thereby lowering operating costs.

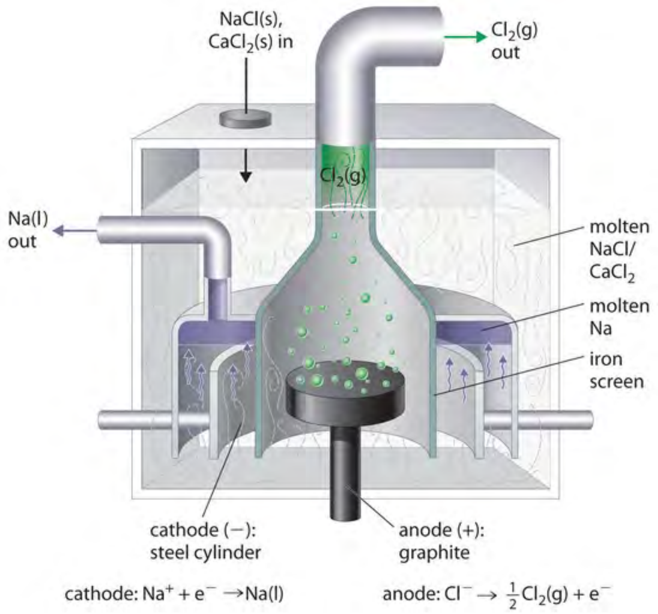


Figure 7.8.2: A Downs Cell for the Electrolysis of Molten NaCl. The electrolysis of a molten mixture of NaCl and $CaCl_2$ results in the formation of elemental sodium and chlorine gas. Because sodium is a liquid under these conditions and liquid sodium is less dense than molten sodium chloride, the sodium floats to the top of the melt and is collected in concentric capped iron cylinders surrounding the cathode. Gaseous chlorine collects in the inverted cone over the anode. An iron screen separating the cathode and anode compartments ensures that the molten sodium and gaseous chlorine do not come into contact. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Similarly, in the Hall–Heroult process used to produce aluminum commercially, a molten mixture of about 5% aluminum oxide (Al_2O_3; melting point = 2054°C) and 95% cryolite (Na_3AlF_6; melting point = 1012°C) is electrolyzed at about 1000°C, producing molten aluminum at the cathode and CO_2 gas at the carbon anode. The overall reaction is as follows:

$$2\,Al_2O_3(l) + 3\,C(s) \longrightarrow 4\,Al(l) + 3\,CO_2(g) \tag{7.8.5}$$

Oxide ions react with oxidized carbon at the anode, producing $CO_2(g)$.

There are two important points to make about these two commercial processes and about the electrolysis of molten salts in general.

1. The electrode potentials for molten salts are likely to be very different from the standard cell potentials listed in Table P2, which are compiled for the reduction of the hydrated ions in aqueous solutions under standard conditions.
2. Using a mixed salt system means there is a possibility of competition between different electrolytic reactions. When a mixture of NaCl and $CaCl_2$ is electrolyzed, Cl^- is oxidized because it is the only anion present, but either Na^+ or Ca^{2+} can be reduced. Conversely, in the Hall–Heroult process, only one cation is present that can be reduced (Al^{3+}), but there are three species that can be oxidized: C, O^{2-}, and F^-.

In the Hall–Heroult process, C is oxidized instead of O^{2-} or F^- because oxygen and fluorine are more electronegative than carbon, which means that C is a weaker oxidant than either O_2 or F_2. Similarly, in the Downs cell, we might expect electrolysis of a $NaCl/CaCl_2$ mixture to produce calcium rather than sodium because Na is slightly less electronegative than Ca (χ = 0.93 versus 1.00, respectively), making Na easier to oxidize and, conversely, Na^+ more difficult to reduce. In fact, the reduction of Na^+ to Na is the observed reaction. In cases where the electronegativities of two species are similar, other factors, such as the formation of complex ions, become important and may determine the outcome.

✓ Example 7.8.1

If a molten mixture of $MgCl_2$ and KBr is electrolyzed, what products will form at the cathode and the anode, respectively?

Given: identity of salts

Asked for: electrolysis products

Strategy:

A. List all the possible reduction and oxidation products. Based on the electronegativity values shown in Figure 7.5, determine which species will be reduced and which species will be oxidized.
B. Identify the products that will form at each electrode.

Solution

A The possible reduction products are Mg and K, and the possible oxidation products are Cl_2 and Br_2. Because Mg is more electronegative than K (χ = 1.31 versus 0.82), it is likely that Mg will be reduced rather than K. Because Cl is more electronegative than Br (3.16 versus 2.96), Cl_2 is a stronger oxidant than Br_2.

B Electrolysis will therefore produce Br_2 at the anode and Mg at the cathode.

? Exercise 7.8.1

Predict the products if a molten mixture of $AlBr_3$ and LiF is electrolyzed.

Answer

Br_2 and Al

Electrolysis can also be used to drive the thermodynamically nonspontaneous decomposition of water into its constituent elements: H_2 and O_2. However, because pure water is a very poor electrical conductor, a small amount of an ionic solute (such as H_2SO_4 or Na_2SO_4) must first be added to increase its electrical conductivity. Inserting inert electrodes into the solution and applying a voltage between them will result in the rapid evolution of bubbles of H_2 and O_2 (Figure 7.8.3).

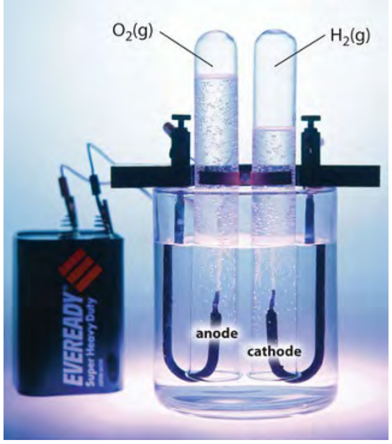


Figure 7.8.3: The Electrolysis of Water. Applying an external potential of about 1.7–1.9 V to two inert electrodes immersed in an aqueous solution of an electrolyte such as H_2SO_4 or Na_2SO_4 drives the thermodynamically nonspontaneous decomposition of water into H_2 at the cathode and O_2 at the anode. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

The reactions that occur are as follows:

- cathode:

$$2H^+_{(aq)} + 2e^- \rightarrow H_{2(g)} \qquad E^\circ_{cathode} = 0V \tag{7.8.6}$$

- anode:

$$2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow O_{2(g)} + 4H^+_{(aq)} + 4e^- \qquad E^\circ_{anode} = 1.23\ V \tag{7.8.7}$$

- overall:

$$2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow O_{2(g)} + 2H_{2(g)} \qquad E^\circ_{cell} = -1.23\ V \tag{7.8.8}$$

For a system that contains an electrolyte such as Na_2SO_4, which has a negligible effect on the ionization equilibrium of liquid water, the pH of the solution will be 7.00 and $[H^+] = [OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-7}$. Assuming that $P_{O_2} = P_{H_2} = 1$ atm, we can use the standard potentials to calculate E for the overall reaction:

$$E_{\text{cell}} = E^{\circ}_{\text{cell}} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{n}\right)\log(P_{\text{O}_2}P^2_{\text{H}_2}) \tag{7.8.9}$$

$$= -1.23\ \text{V} - \left(\frac{0.0591\ \text{V}}{4}\right)\log(1) = -1.23\ \text{V} \tag{7.8.10}$$

Thus E_{cell} is −1.23 V, which is the value of $E°_{cell}$ if the reaction is carried out in the presence of 1 M H^+ rather than at pH 7.0.

In practice, a voltage about 0.4–0.6 V greater than the calculated value is needed to electrolyze water. This added voltage, called an **overvoltage**, represents the additional driving force required to overcome barriers such as the large activation energy for the formation of a gas at a metal surface. Overvoltages are needed in all electrolytic processes, which explain why, for example, approximately 14 V must be applied to recharge the 12 V battery in your car.

In general, any metal that does not react readily with water to produce hydrogen can be produced by the electrolytic reduction of an aqueous solution that contains the metal cation. The p-block metals and most of the transition metals are in this category, but metals in high oxidation states, which form oxoanions, cannot be reduced to the metal by simple electrolysis. Active metals, such as aluminum and those of groups 1 and 2, react so readily with water that they can be prepared only by the electrolysis of molten salts. Similarly, any nonmetallic element that does not readily oxidize water to O_2 can be prepared by the electrolytic oxidation of an aqueous solution that contains an appropriate anion. In practice, among the nonmetals, only F_2 cannot be prepared using this method. Oxoanions of nonmetals in their highest oxidation states, such as NO_3^-, SO_4^{2-}, PO_4^{3-}, are usually difficult to reduce electrochemically and usually behave like spectator ions that remain in solution during electrolysis.

> *In general, any metal that does not react readily with water to produce hydrogen can be produced by the electrolytic reduction of an aqueous solution that contains the metal cation.*

Electroplating

In a process called **electroplating**, a layer of a second metal is deposited on the metal electrode that acts as the cathode during electrolysis. Electroplating is used to enhance the appearance of metal objects and protect them from corrosion. Examples of electroplating include the chromium layer found on many bathroom fixtures or (in earlier days) on the bumpers and hubcaps of cars, as well as the thin layer of precious metal that coats silver-plated dinnerware or jewelry. In all cases, the basic concept is the same. A schematic view of an apparatus for electroplating silverware and a photograph of a commercial electroplating cell are shown in Figure 7.8.4.

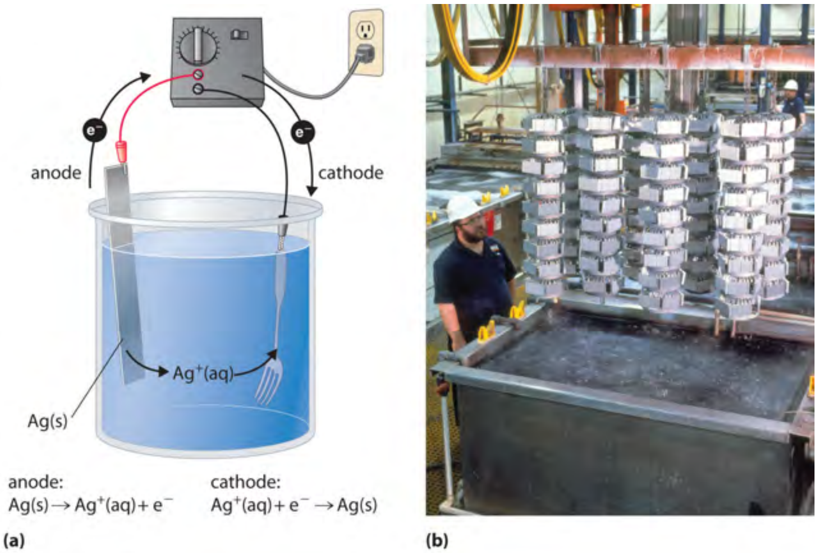


Figure 7.8.3: Electroplating. (a) Electroplating uses an electrolytic cell in which the object to be plated, such as a fork, is immersed in a solution of the metal to be deposited. The object being plated acts as the cathode, on which the desired metal is deposited in a thin layer, while the anode usually consists of the metal that is being deposited (in this case, silver) that maintains the solution concentration as it dissolves. (b) In this commercial electroplating apparatus, a large number of objects can be plated simultaneously by lowering the rack into the $\mathrm{Ag^+}$ solution and applying the correct potential. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

The half-reactions in electroplating a fork, for example, with silver are as follows:

- cathode (fork):

$$\mathrm{Ag^+(aq) + e^- \longrightarrow Ag(s)} \qquad E^\circ{}_{cathode} = 0.80V$$

- anode (silver bar):

$$\mathrm{Ag(s) \longrightarrow Ag^+(aq) + e^-} \qquad E^\circ{}_{anode} = 0.80V$$

The overall reaction is the transfer of silver metal from one electrode (a silver bar acting as the anode) to another (a fork acting as the cathode). Because $E^o_{cell} = 0\,V$, it takes only a small applied voltage to drive the electroplating process. In practice, various other substances may be added to the plating solution to control its electrical conductivity and regulate the concentration of free metal ions, thus ensuring a smooth, even coating.

Quantitative Considerations

If we know the stoichiometry of an electrolysis reaction, the amount of current passed, and the length of time, we can calculate the amount of material consumed or produced in a reaction. Conversely, we can use stoichiometry to determine the combination of current and time needed to produce a given amount of material.

The quantity of material that is oxidized or reduced at an electrode during an electrochemical reaction is determined by the stoichiometry of the reaction and the amount of charge that is transferred. For example, in the reaction

$$\mathrm{Ag^+(aq) + e^- \rightarrow Ag(s)}$$

1 mol of electrons reduces 1 mol of $\mathrm{Ag^+}$ to Ag metal. In contrast, in the reaction

$$\mathrm{Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2\,e^- \rightarrow Cu(s)}$$

1 mol of electrons reduces only 0.5 mol of $\mathrm{Cu^{2+}}$ to Cu metal. Recall that the charge on 1 mol of electrons is 1 faraday (1 F), which is equal to 96,485 C. We can therefore calculate the number of moles of electrons transferred when a known current is passed through a cell for a given period of time. The total charge (q in coulombs) transferred is the product of the current (I in amperes) and the time (t, in seconds):

$$q = I \times t \tag{7.8.11}$$

The stoichiometry of the reaction and the total charge transferred enable us to calculate the amount of product formed during an electrolysis reaction or the amount of metal deposited in an electroplating process.

For example, if a current of 0.60 A passes through an aqueous solution of $\mathrm{CuSO_4}$ for 6.0 min, the total number of coulombs of charge that passes through the cell is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} q &= (0.60 \text{ A})(6.0 \text{ min})(60 \text{ s/min}) \\ &= 220 \text{ A} \cdot \text{s} \\ &= 220 \text{ C} \end{aligned}$$

The number of moles of electrons transferred to $\mathrm{Cu^{2+}}$ is therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \text{moles e}^- &= \frac{220 \text{ C}}{96{,}485 \text{ C/mol}} \\ &= 2.3 \times 10^{-3} \text{ mol e}^- \end{aligned}$$

Because two electrons are required to reduce a single $\mathrm{Cu^{2+}}$ ion, the total number of moles of Cu produced is half the number of moles of electrons transferred, or 1.2×10^{-3} mol. This corresponds to 76 mg of Cu. In commercial electrorefining processes, much higher currents (greater than or equal to 50,000 A) are used, corresponding to approximately 0.5 F/s, and reaction times are on the order of 3–4 weeks.

✓ Example 7.8.2

A silver-plated spoon typically contains about 2.00 g of Ag. If 12.0 h are required to achieve the desired thickness of the Ag coating, what is the average current per spoon that must flow during the electroplating process, assuming an efficiency of 100%?

Given: mass of metal, time, and efficiency

Asked for: current required

Strategy:

A. Calculate the number of moles of metal corresponding to the given mass transferred.
B. Write the reaction and determine the number of moles of electrons required for the electroplating process.
C. Use the definition of the faraday to calculate the number of coulombs required. Then convert coulombs to current in amperes.

Solution

A We must first determine the number of moles of Ag corresponding to 2.00 g of Ag:

$$\text{moles Ag} = \frac{2.00 \text{ g}}{107.868 \text{ g/mol}} = 1.85 \times 10^{-2} \text{ mol Ag}$$

B The reduction reaction is $\mathrm{Ag^+(aq) + e^- \rightarrow Ag(s)}$, so 1 mol of electrons produces 1 mol of silver.

C Using the definition of the faraday,

$$\text{coulombs} = (1.85 \times 10^{-2} \text{mol e}^-)(96{,}485 \text{ C/mol e}^-) = 1.78 \times 10^{3} \text{ C / mole}$$

The current in amperes needed to deliver this amount of charge in 12.0 h is therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \text{amperes} &= \frac{1.78 \times 10^3 \text{ C}}{(12.0 \text{ h})(60 \text{ min/h})(60 \text{ s/min})} \\ &= 4.12 \times 10^{-2} \text{ C/s} = 4.12 \times 10^{-2} \text{ A} \end{aligned}$$

Because the electroplating process is usually much less than 100% efficient (typical values are closer to 30%), the actual current necessary is greater than 0.1 A.

Exercise 7.8.2

A typical aluminum soft-drink can weighs about 29 g. How much time is needed to produce this amount of Al(s) in the Hall–Heroult process, using a current of 15 A to reduce a molten Al_2O_3/Na_3AlF_6 mixture?

Answer

5.8 h

Electroplating: Electroplating(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

In electrolysis, an external voltage is applied to drive a **nonspontaneous** reaction. The quantity of material oxidized or reduced can be calculated from the stoichiometry of the reaction and the amount of charge transferred. Relationship of charge, current and time:

$$q = I \times t$$

In electrolysis, an external voltage is applied to drive a nonspontaneous reaction. Electrolysis can also be used to produce H_2 and O_2 from water. In practice, an additional voltage, called an overvoltage, must be applied to overcome factors such as a large activation energy and a junction potential. Electroplating is the process by which a second metal is deposited on a metal surface, thereby enhancing an object’s appearance or providing protection from corrosion. The amount of material consumed or produced in a reaction can be calculated from the stoichiometry of an electrolysis reaction, the amount of current passed, and the duration of the electrolytic reaction.

7.9: Corrosion- Undesirable Redox Reactions

Learning Objectives

- To understand the process of corrosion.

Corrosion is a galvanic process by which metals deteriorate through oxidation—usually but not always to their oxides. For example, when exposed to air, iron rusts, silver tarnishes, and copper and brass acquire a bluish-green surface called a patina. Of the various metals subject to corrosion, iron is by far the most important commercially. An estimated $100 billion per year is spent in the United States alone to replace iron-containing objects destroyed by corrosion. Consequently, the development of methods for protecting metal surfaces from corrosion constitutes a very active area of industrial research. In this section, we describe some of the chemical and electrochemical processes responsible for corrosion. We also examine the chemical basis for some common methods for preventing corrosion and treating corroded metals.

> *Corrosion is a REDOX process.*

Under ambient conditions, the oxidation of most metals is thermodynamically spontaneous, with the notable exception of gold and platinum. Hence it is actually somewhat surprising that any metals are useful at all in Earth's moist, oxygen-rich atmosphere. Some metals, however, are resistant to corrosion for kinetic reasons. For example, aluminum in soft-drink cans and airplanes is protected by a thin coating of metal oxide that forms on the surface of the metal and acts as an impenetrable barrier that prevents further destruction. Aluminum cans also have a thin plastic layer to prevent reaction of the oxide with acid in the soft drink. Chromium, magnesium, and nickel also form protective oxide films. Stainless steels are remarkably resistant to corrosion because they usually contain a significant proportion of chromium, nickel, or both.

In contrast to these metals, when iron corrodes, it forms a red-brown hydrated metal oxide ($\mathrm{Fe_2O_3 \cdot xH_2O}$), commonly known as rust, that does not provide a tight protective film (Figure $7.9.1$). Instead, the rust continually flakes off to expose a fresh metal surface vulnerable to reaction with oxygen and water. Because both oxygen and water are required for rust to form, an iron nail immersed in deoxygenated water will not rust—even over a period of several weeks. Similarly, a nail immersed in an organic solvent such as kerosene or mineral oil will not rust because of the absence of water even if the solvent is saturated with oxygen.

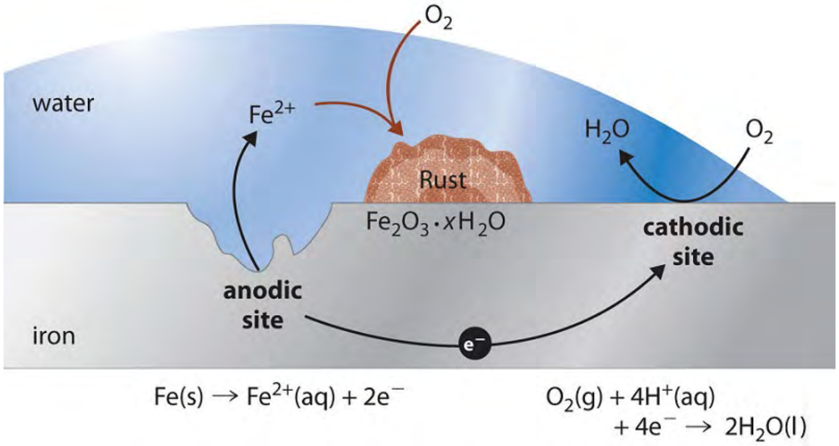


Figure $7.9.1$: Rust, the Result of Corrosion of Metallic Iron. Iron is oxidized to Fe^{2+}(aq) at an anodic site on the surface of the iron, which is often an impurity or a lattice defect. Oxygen is reduced to water at a different site on the surface of the iron, which acts as the cathode. Electrons are transferred from the anode to the cathode through the electrically conductive metal. Water is a solvent for the Fe^{2+} that is produced initially and acts as a salt bridge. Rust ($Fe_2O_3 \cdot xH_2O$) is formed by the subsequent oxidation of Fe^{2+} by atmospheric oxygen. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous)

In the corrosion process, iron metal acts as the anode in a galvanic cell and is oxidized to Fe^{2+}; oxygen is reduced to water at the cathode. The relevant reactions are as follows:

- at cathode:

$$\mathrm{O_2(g) + 4\,H^+(aq) + 4\,e^- \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O(l)}$$

with $E^o_{SRP} = 1.23\ V$.

- at anode:

$$\mathrm{Fe(s)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe^{2+}(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-}$$

with $E^o_{SRP} = -0.45\ V$.

- overall:

$$2\,\mathrm{Fe(s)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)} + 4\,\mathrm{H^+(aq)} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Fe^{2+}(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O(l)} \tag{7.9.1}$$

with $E^o_{cell} = 1.68\ V$.

The $\mathrm{Fe^{2+}}$ ions produced in the initial reaction are then oxidized by atmospheric oxygen to produce the insoluble hydrated oxide containing $\mathrm{Fe^{3+}}$, as represented in the following equation:

$$4\,\mathrm{Fe^{2+}(aq)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)} + (2+4\,x)\mathrm{H_2O} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Fe_2O_3} \cdot x\mathrm{H_2O} + 4\,\mathrm{H^+(aq)} \tag{7.9.2}$$

The sign and magnitude of E^o_{cell} for the corrosion process (Equation 7.9.1) indicate that there is a strong driving force for the oxidation of iron by O_2 under standard conditions (1 M H^+). Under neutral conditions, the driving force is somewhat less but still appreciable (E = 1.25 V at pH 7.0). Normally, the reaction of atmospheric CO_2 with water to form H^+ and HCO_3^- provides a low enough pH to enhance the reaction rate, as does acid rain. Automobile manufacturers spend a great deal of time and money developing paints that adhere tightly to the car's metal surface to prevent oxygenated water, acid, and salt from coming into contact with the underlying metal. Unfortunately, even the best paint is subject to scratching or denting, and the electrochemical nature of the corrosion process means that two scratches relatively remote from each other can operate together as anode and cathode, leading to sudden mechanical failure (Figure 7.9.2).

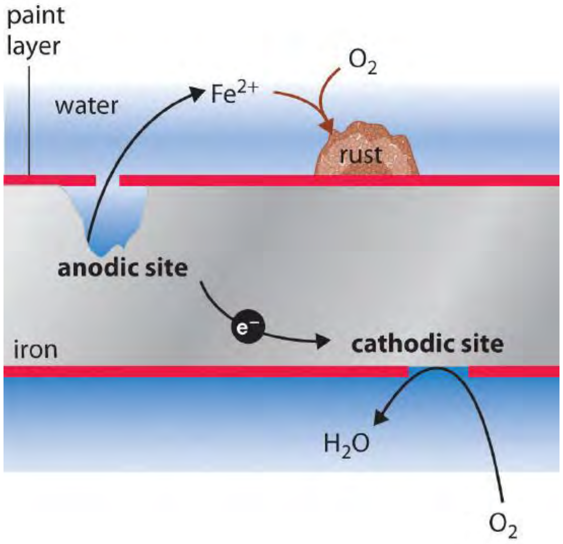


Figure 7.9.2: Small Scratches in a Protective Paint Coating Can Lead to the Rapid Corrosion of Iron. Holes in a protective coating allow oxygen to be reduced at the surface with the greater exposure to air (the cathode), while metallic iron is oxidized to Fe^{2+}(aq) at the less exposed site (the anode). Rust is formed when Fe^{2+}(aq) diffuses to a location where it can react with atmospheric oxygen, which is often remote from the anode. The electrochemical interaction between cathodic and anodic sites can cause a large pit to form under a painted surface, eventually resulting in sudden failure with little visible warning that corrosion has occurred.

Prophylactic Protection

One of the most common techniques used to prevent the corrosion of iron is applying a protective coating of another metal that is more difficult to oxidize. Faucets and some external parts of automobiles, for example, are often coated with a thin layer of chromium using an electrolytic process. With the increased use of polymeric materials in cars, however, the use of chrome-plated steel has diminished in recent years. Similarly, the "tin cans" that hold soups and other foods are actually consist of steel container that is coated with a thin layer of tin. While neither chromium nor tin metals are intrinsically resistant to corrosion, they both form protective oxide coatings that hinder access of oxygen and water to the underlying steel (iron alloy).

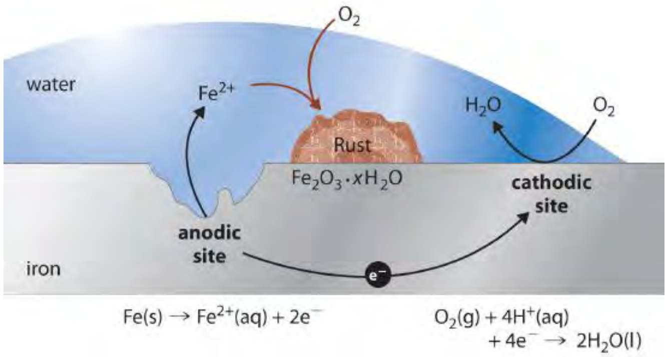


Figure 7.9.3: Galvanic Corrosion. If iron is in contact with a more corrosion-resistant metal such as tin, copper, or lead, the other metal can act as a large cathode that greatly increases the rate of reduction of oxygen. Because the reduction of oxygen is coupled to the oxidation of iron, this can result in a dramatic increase in the rate at which iron is oxidized at the anode. Galvanic corrosion is likely to occur whenever two dissimilar metals are connected directly, allowing electrons to be transferred from one to the other.

As with a protective paint, scratching a protective metal coating will allow corrosion to occur. In this case, however, the presence of the second metal can actually increase the rate of corrosion. The values of the standard electrode potentials for Sn^{2+} (E° = −0.14 V) and Fe^{2+} (E° = −0.45 V) in Table P2 show that Fe is more easily oxidized than Sn. As a result, the more corrosion-resistant metal (in this case, tin) accelerates the corrosion of iron by acting as the cathode and providing a large surface area for the reduction of oxygen (Figure 7.9.3). This process is seen in some older homes where copper and iron pipes have been directly connected to each other. The less easily oxidized copper acts as the cathode, causing iron to dissolve rapidly near the connection and occasionally resulting in a catastrophic plumbing failure.

Cathodic Protection

One way to avoid these problems is to use a more easily oxidized metal to protect iron from corrosion. In this approach, called cathodic protection, a more reactive metal such as Zn (E° = −0.76 V for $Zn^{2+} + 2\,e^- \longrightarrow Zn$) becomes the anode, and iron becomes the cathode. This prevents oxidation of the iron and protects the iron object from corrosion. The reactions that occur under these conditions are as follows:

$$\underbrace{O_{2(g)} + 4e^- + 4H^+_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2H_2O_{(l)}}_{\text{reduction at cathode}} \tag{7.9.3}$$

$$\underbrace{Zn_{(s)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2e^-}_{\text{oxidation at anode}} \tag{7.9.4}$$

$$\underbrace{2Zn_{(s)} + O_{2(g)} + 4H^+_{(aq)} \rightarrow 2Zn^{2+}_{(aq)} + 2H_2O_{(l)}}_{\text{overall}} \tag{7.9.5}$$

The more reactive metal reacts with oxygen and will eventually dissolve, "sacrificing" itself to protect the iron object. Cathodic protection is the principle underlying galvanized steel, which is steel protected by a thin layer of zinc. Galvanized steel is used in objects ranging from nails to garbage cans.

Crystalline surface of a hot-dip galvanized steel surface. This served both as prophylactic protection (protecting the underlying steel from the oxygen in the air) and cathodic protection (once exposed, the zinc will oxidize before the underlying steel).

In a similar strategy, **sacrificial electrodes** using magnesium, for example, are used to protect underground tanks or pipes (Figure 7.9.4). Replacing the sacrificial electrodes is more cost-effective than replacing the iron objects they are protecting.

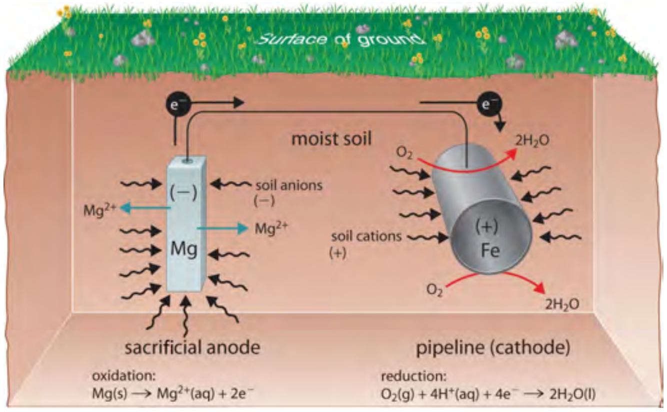


Figure 7.9.4: The Use of a Sacrificial Electrode to Protect Against Corrosion. Connecting a magnesium rod to an underground steel pipeline protects the pipeline from corrosion. Because magnesium (E° = −2.37 V) is much more easily oxidized than iron (E° = −0.45 V), the Mg rod acts as the anode in a galvanic cell. The pipeline is therefore forced to act as the cathode at which oxygen is reduced. The soil between the anode and the cathode acts as a salt bridge that completes the electrical circuit and maintains electrical neutrality. As Mg(s) is oxidized to Mg^{2+} at the anode, anions in the soil, such as nitrate, diffuse toward the anode to neutralize the positive charge. Simultaneously, cations in the soil, such as H^+ or NH_4^+, diffuse toward the cathode, where they replenish the protons that are consumed as oxygen is reduced. A similar strategy uses many miles of somewhat less reactive zinc wire to protect the Alaska oil pipeline.

✓ Example 7.9.1

Suppose an old wooden sailboat, held together with iron screws, has a bronze propeller (recall that bronze is an alloy of copper containing about 7%–10% tin).

a. If the boat is immersed in seawater, what corrosion reaction will occur? What is $E^{o\circ}{}_{cell}$?
b. How could you prevent this corrosion from occurring?

Given: identity of metals

Asked for: corrosion reaction, $E^{o\circ}{}_{cell}$, and preventive measures

Strategy:

A. Write the reactions that occur at the anode and the cathode. From these, write the overall cell reaction and calculate $E^{o\circ}{}_{cell}$.
B. Based on the relative redox activity of various substances, suggest possible preventive measures.

Solution

a. **A** According to Table P2, both copper and tin are less active metals than iron (i.e., they have higher positive values of $E^{o\circ}{}_{cell}$ than iron). Thus if tin or copper is brought into electrical contact by seawater with iron in the presence of oxygen, corrosion will occur. We therefore anticipate that the bronze propeller will act as the cathode at which O_2 is reduced, and the iron screws will act as anodes at which iron dissolves:

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{cathode:} & \mathrm{O_2(s) + 4H^+(aq) + 4e^- \rightarrow 2H_2O(l)} & E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = 1.23\text{ V} \\ \text{anode:} & \mathrm{Fe(s) \rightarrow Fe^{2+} + 2e^-} & E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = -0.45\text{ V} \\ \text{overall:} & \mathrm{2Fe(s) + O_2(g) + 4H^+(aq) \rightarrow 2Fe^{2+}(aq) + 2H_2O(l)} & E^\circ_{\text{overall}} = 1.68\text{ V} \end{array}$$

Over time, the iron screws will dissolve, and the boat will fall apart.

b. **B** Possible ways to prevent corrosion, in order of decreasing cost and inconvenience, are as follows: disassembling the boat and rebuilding it with bronze screws; removing the boat from the water and storing it in a dry place; or attaching an inexpensive piece of zinc metal to the propeller shaft to act as a sacrificial electrode and replacing it once or twice a year.

Because zinc is a more active metal than iron, it will act as the sacrificial anode in the electrochemical cell and dissolve (Equation 7.9.5).

Zinc sacrificial anode (rounded object screwed to underside of hull) used to prevent corrosion on the screw in a boat via cathodic protection. Image by Rémi Kaupp and used with permission.

? Exercise 7.9.1

Suppose the water pipes leading into your house are made of lead, while the rest of the plumbing in your house is iron. To eliminate the possibility of lead poisoning, you call a plumber to replace the lead pipes. He quotes you a very low price if he can use up his existing supply of copper pipe to do the job.

a. Do you accept his proposal?
b. What else should you have the plumber do while at your home?

Answer a

Not unless you plan to sell the house very soon because the Cu/Fe pipe joints will lead to rapid corrosion.

Answer b

Any existing Pb/Fe joints should be examined carefully for corrosion of the iron pipes due to the $Pb–Fe$ junction; the less active Pb will have served as the cathode for the reduction of O_2, promoting oxidation of the more active Fe nearby.

Summary

Corrosion is a galvanic process that can be prevented using cathodic protection. The deterioration of metals through oxidation is a galvanic process called corrosion. Protective coatings consist of a second metal that is more difficult to oxidize than the metal being protected. Alternatively, a more easily oxidized metal can be applied to a metal surface, thus providing cathodic protection of the surface. A thin layer of zinc protects galvanized steel. Sacrificial electrodes can also be attached to an object to protect it.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

8: Transition Metals and Coordination Compounds

Topic hierarchy

8.1: The Colors of Rubies and Emeralds

Why is a ruby red? The mineral **corundum** is a crystalline form of alumina: Al_2O_3. A pure crystal of corundum is colorless. However, if just 1% of the Al^{3+} ions are replaced with Cr^{3+} ions, the mineral becomes deep red in color and is known as **ruby** ($Al_2O_3:Cr^{3+}$). Why does replacing Al^{3+} with Cr^{3+}in the corundum structure produce a red color?

Ruby is an *allochromatic* mineral, which means its color arises from trace impurities. The color of an *idiochromatic* mineral arises from the essential components of the mineral. In some minerals the color arises from defects in the crystal structure. Such defects are called *color centers*.

The mineral **beryl** is a crystalline beryllium aluminosilicate with the chemical formula $Be_3Al_2Si_6O_{18}$. A pure crystal of beryl is colorless. However, if just 1% of the Al^{3+} ions are replaced with Cr^{3+} ions, the mineral becomes green in color and is known as **emerald** ($Be_3Al_2Si_6O_{18}:Cr^{3+}$).

Why does replacing Al^{3+} with Cr^{3+} in corundum produce a red mineral (ruby) while replacing Al^{3+} with Cr^{3+} in beryl produces a green mineral (emerald)?

Recall that the color we observe when we look at an object or a compound is due to light that is transmitted or reflected, not light that is absorbed, and that reflected or transmitted light is complementary in color to the light that is absorbed. Thus a green compound absorbs light in the red portion of the visible spectrum and vice versa, as indicated by the color wheel. Because the energy of a photon of light is inversely proportional to its wavelength, the color of a complex depends on the magnitude of Δ_o, which depends on the structure of the complex. For example, the complex $[Cr(NH_3)_6]^{3+}$ has strong-field ligands and a relatively large Δ_o. Consequently, it absorbs relatively high-energy photons, corresponding to blue-violet light, which gives it a yellow color. A related complex with weak-field ligands, the $[Cr(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ ion, absorbs lower-energy photons corresponding to the yellow-green portion of the visible spectrum, giving it a deep violet color.

We can now understand why emeralds and rubies have such different colors, even though both contain Cr^{3+} in an octahedral environment provided by six oxide ions. Although the chemical identity of the six ligands is the same in both cases, the Cr–O distances are different because the compositions of the host lattices are different (Al_2O_3 in rubies and $Be_3Al_2Si_6O_{18}$ in emeralds). In ruby, the Cr–O distances are relatively short because of the constraints of the host lattice, which increases the d orbital–ligand interactions and makes Δ_o relatively large. Consequently, rubies absorb green light and the transmitted or reflected light is red, which gives the gem its characteristic color. In emerald, the Cr–O distances are longer due to relatively large $[Si_6O_{18}]^{12-}$ silicate rings; this results in decreased d orbital–ligand interactions and a smaller Δ_o. Consequently, emeralds absorb light of a longer wavelength (red), which gives the gem its characteristic green color. It is clear that the environment of the transition-metal ion, which is determined by the host lattice, dramatically affects the spectroscopic properties of a metal ion.

A piece of ruby and emerald is shown with a glassy crystalline exterior. Ruby is deep red in color and emerald is deep green.

Gem-quality crystals of ruby and emerald. The colors of both minerals are due to the presence of small amounts of Cr^{3+} impurities in octahedral sites in an otherwise colorless metal oxide lattice.

Contributors and Attributions

- Prof. David Blauch (Davidson College)

8.2: Properties of Transition Metals

Learning Objectives

- Outline the general approach for the isolation of transition metals from natural sources
- Describe typical physical and chemical properties of the transition metals
- Identify simple compound classes for transition metals and describe their chemical properties

We have daily contact with many transition metals. Iron occurs everywhere—from the rings in your spiral notebook and the cutlery in your kitchen to automobiles, ships, buildings, and in the hemoglobin in your blood. Titanium is useful in the manufacture of lightweight, durable products such as bicycle frames, artificial hips, and jewelry. Chromium is useful as a protective plating on plumbing fixtures and automotive detailing.

Transition metals are defined as those elements that have (or readily form) partially filled *d* orbitals. As shown in Figure $8.2.2$, the *d*-block elements in groups 3–11 are transition elements. The *f*-block elements, also called *inner transition metals* (the lanthanides and actinides), also meet this criterion because the *d* orbital is partially occupied before the *f* orbitals. The *d* orbitals fill with the copper family (group 11); for this reason, the next family (group 12) are technically not transition elements. However, the group 12 elements do display some of the same chemical properties and are commonly included in discussions of transition metals. Some chemists do treat the group 12 elements as transition metals.

Figure $8.2.1$: Transition metals often form vibrantly colored complexes. The minerals malachite (green), azurite (blue), and proustite (red) are some examples. (credit left: modification of work by James St. John; credit middle: modification of work by Stephanie Clifford; credit right: modification of work by Terry Wallace)

The first crystal is a jade green mineral chunk. The second is a crystalline chunk which is primarily bright royal blue. The third shows long red crystals.

The *d*-block elements are divided into the first transition series (the elements Sc through Cu), the second transition series (the elements Y through Ag), and the third transition series (the element La and the elements Hf through Au). Actinium, Ac, is the first member of the fourth transition series, which also includes Rf through Rg.

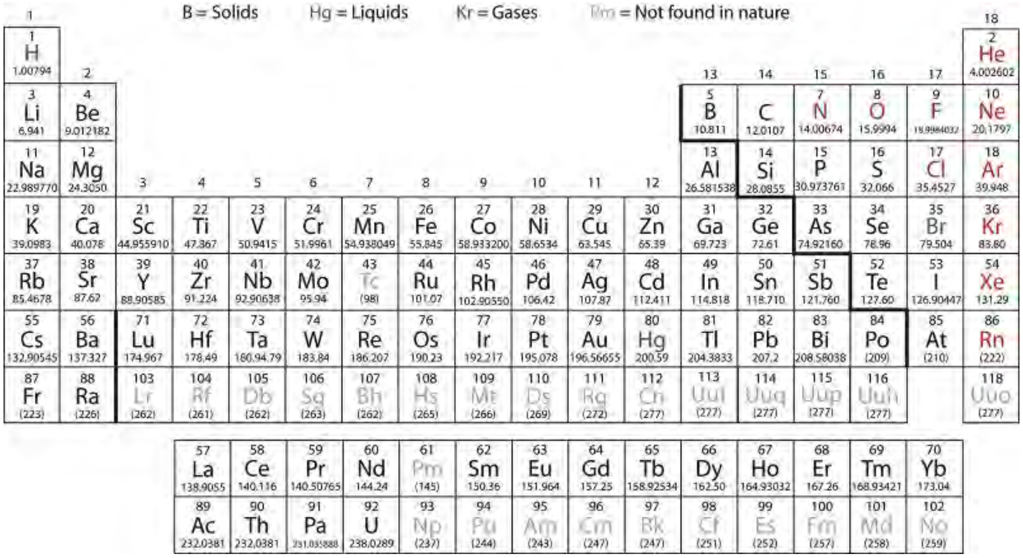


Figure $8.2.2$: The transition metals are located in groups 3–11 of the periodic table. The inner transition metals are in the two rows below the body of the table.

The *f*-block elements are the elements Ce through Lu, which constitute the lanthanide series (or lanthanoid series), and the elements Th through Lr, which constitute the actinide series (or actinoid series). Because lanthanum behaves very much like the lanthanide elements, it is considered a lanthanide element, even though its electron configuration makes it the first member of the third transition series. Similarly, the behavior of actinium means it is part of the actinide series, although its electron configuration makes it the first member of the fourth transition series.

✓ Example 8.2.1: Valence Electrons in Transition Metals

Review how to write electron configurations, covered in the chapter on electronic structure and periodic properties of elements. Recall that for the transition and inner transition metals, it is necessary to remove the *s* electrons before the *d* or *f* electrons. Then, for each ion, give the electron configuration:

a. cerium(III)
b. lead(II)
c. Ti^{2+}
d. Am^{3+}
e. Pd^{2+}

For the examples that are transition metals, determine to which series they belong.

Solution

For ions, the *s*-valence electrons are lost prior to the *d* or *f* electrons.

a. $Ce^{3+}[Xe]4f^1$; Ce^{3+} is an inner transition element in the lanthanide series.
b. $Pb^{2+}[Xe]6s^2 5d^{10} 4f^{14}$; the electrons are lost from the *p* orbital. This is a main group element.
c. titanium(II) $[Ar]3d^2$; first transition series
d. americium(III) $[Rn]5f^6$; actinide
e. palladium(II) $[Kr]4d^8$; second transition series

? Exercise 8.2.1

Check Your Learning Give an example of an ion from the first transition series with no *d* electrons.

Answer

V^{5+} is one possibility. Other examples include Sc^{3+}, Ti^{4+}, Cr^{6+}, and Mn^{7+}.

Uses of Lanthanides in Devices

Lanthanides (elements 57–71) are fairly abundant in the earth’s crust, despite their historic characterization as rare earth elements. Thulium, the rarest naturally occurring lanthanoid, is more common in the earth’s crust than silver (4.5×10^{-5}% versus 0.79×10^{-5}% by mass). There are 17 rare earth elements, consisting of the 15 lanthanoids plus scandium and yttrium. They are called rare because they were once difficult to extract economically, so it was rare to have a pure sample; due to similar chemical properties, it is difficult to separate any one lanthanide from the others. However, newer separation methods, such as ion exchange resins similar to those found in home water softeners, make the separation of these elements easier and more economical. Most ores that contain these elements have low concentrations of all the rare earth elements mixed together.

The commercial applications of lanthanides are growing rapidly. For example, europium is important in flat screen displays found in computer monitors, cell phones, and televisions. Neodymium is useful in laptop hard drives and in the processes that convert crude oil into gasoline (Figure 8.2.3). Holmium is found in dental and medical equipment. In addition, many alternative energy technologies rely heavily on lanthanoids. Neodymium and dysprosium are key components of hybrid vehicle engines and the magnets used in wind turbines.

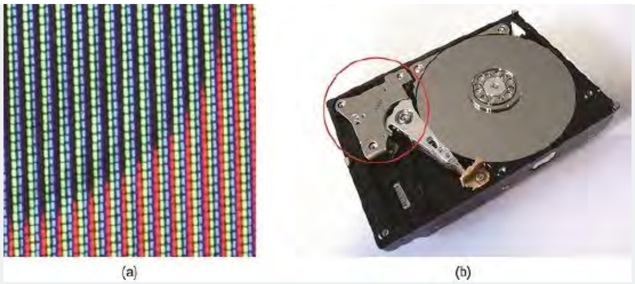


Figure 8.2.3: (a) Europium is used in display screens for televisions, computer monitors, and cell phones. (b) Neodymium magnets are commonly found in computer hard drives. (credit b: modification of work by “KUERT Datenrettung”/Flickr)

A. Closeup of a flat screen shows the many individual pixels which are red green and blue in color. B. A computer hard drive is shown with a metallic component highlighted in a red circle.

As the demand for lanthanide materials has increased faster than supply, prices have also increased. In 2008, dysprosium cost \$110/kg; by 2014, the price had increased to \$470/kg. Increasing the supply of lanthanoid elements is one of the most significant challenges facing the industries that rely on the optical and magnetic properties of these materials.

The transition elements have many properties in common with other metals. They are almost all hard, high-melting solids that conduct heat and electricity well. They readily form alloys and lose electrons to form stable cations. In addition, transition metals form a wide variety of stable coordination compounds, in which the central metal atom or ion acts as a Lewis acid and accepts one or more pairs of electrons. Many different molecules and ions can donate lone pairs to the metal center, serving as Lewis bases. In this chapter, we shall focus primarily on the chemical behavior of the elements of the first transition series.

Properties of the Transition Elements

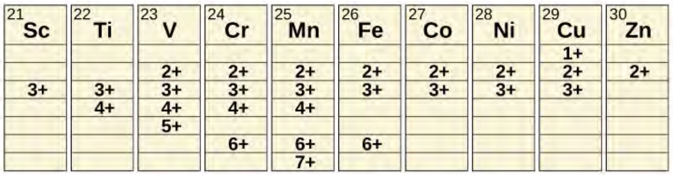
Transition metals demonstrate a wide range of chemical behaviors. As can be seen from their reduction potentials (Table P1), some transition metals are strong reducing agents, whereas others have very low reactivity. For example, the lanthanides all form stable 3+ aqueous cations. The driving force for such oxidations is similar to that of alkaline earth metals such as Be or Mg, forming Be^{2+} and Mg^{2+}. On the other hand, materials like platinum and gold have much higher reduction potentials. Their ability to resist oxidation makes them useful materials for constructing circuits and jewelry.

Ions of the lighter *d*-block elements, such as Cr^{3+}, Fe^{3+}, and Co^{2+}, form colorful hydrated ions that are stable in water. However, ions in the period just below these (Mo^{3+}, Ru^{3+}, and Ir^{2+}) are unstable and react readily with oxygen from the air. The majority of simple, water-stable ions formed by the heavier *d*-block elements are oxyanions such as $\mathrm{MoO_4^{2-}}$ and $\mathrm{ReO_4^-}$.

Ruthenium, osmium, rhodium, iridium, palladium, and platinum are the platinum metals. With difficulty, they form simple cations that are stable in water, and, unlike the earlier elements in the second and third transition series, they do not form stable oxyanions.

Both the *d*- and *f*-block elements react with nonmetals to form binary compounds; heating is often required. These elements react with halogens to form a variety of halides ranging in oxidation state from 1+ to 6+. On heating, oxygen reacts with all of the transition elements except palladium, platinum, silver, and gold. The oxides of these latter metals can be formed using other reactants, but they decompose upon heating. The *f*-block elements, the elements of group 3, and the elements of the first transition series except copper react with aqueous solutions of acids, forming hydrogen gas and solutions of the corresponding salts.

Transition metals can form compounds with a wide range of oxidation states. Some of the observed oxidation states of the elements of the first transition series are shown in Figure 8.2.4. As we move from left to right across the first transition series, we see that the number of common oxidation states increases at first to a maximum towards the middle of the table, then decreases. The values in the table are typical values; there are other known values, and it is possible to synthesize new additions. For example, in 2014, researchers were successful in synthesizing a new oxidation state of iridium (9+).



21 Sc	22 Ti	23 V	24 Cr	25 Mn	26 Fe	27 Co	28 Ni	29 Cu	30 Zn
								1+	
		2+	2+	2+	2+	2+	2+	2+	2+
3+	3+	3+	3+	3+	3+	3+	3+	3+	
	4+	4+	4+	4+					
		5+							
			6+	6+	6+				
				7+					

Figure 8.2.4:Transition metals of the first transition series can form compounds with varying oxidation states.

Scandium has oxidation state of positive 3. Titanium has values of positive 3 and 4. Vanadium has values of positive 2 to 5. Chromium has values of positive 2,3,4, and 6. Manganese has positive 2,3,4,6, and 7. Iron has positive 2,3, and 6. Cobalt and Nickel has positive 2 and 3. Copper has positive 1,2, and 3. Zinc only has positive 2.

For the elements scandium through manganese (the first half of the first transition series), the highest oxidation state corresponds to the loss of all of the electrons in both the *s* and *d* orbitals of their valence shells. The titanium(IV) ion, for example, is formed when the titanium atom loses its two 3*d* and two 4*s* electrons. These highest oxidation states are the most stable forms of scandium, titanium, and vanadium. However, it is not possible to continue to remove all of the valence electrons from metals as we continue through the series. Iron is known to form oxidation states from 2+ to 6+, with iron(II) and iron(III) being the most common. Most of the elements of the first transition series form ions with a charge of 2+ or 3+ that are stable in water, although those of the early members of the series can be readily oxidized by air.

The elements of the second and third transition series generally are more stable in higher oxidation states than are the elements of the first series. In general, the atomic radius increases down a group, which leads to the ions of the second and third series being larger than are those in the first series. Removing electrons from orbitals that are located farther from the nucleus is easier than removing electrons close to the nucleus. For example, molybdenum and tungsten, members of group 6, are limited mostly to an oxidation state of 6+ in aqueous solution. Chromium, the lightest member of the group, forms stable Cr^{3+} ions in water and, in the absence of air, less stable Cr^{2+} ions. The sulfide with the highest oxidation state for chromium is Cr_2S_3, which contains the Cr^{3+} ion. Molybdenum and tungsten form sulfides in which the metals exhibit oxidation states of 4+ and 6+.

✓ Example 8.2.2: Activity of the Transition Metals

Which is the strongest oxidizing agent in acidic solution: dichromate ion, which contains chromium(VI), permanganate ion, which contains manganese(VII), or titanium dioxide, which contains titanium(IV)?

Solution

First, we need to look up the reduction half reactions (Table P1) for each oxide in the specified oxidation state:

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-} + 14\,H^+ + 6\,e^- \longrightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+} + 7\,H_2O} \quad +1.33\ \mathrm{V}$$

$$\mathrm{MnO_4^- + 8\,H^+ + 5\,e^- \longrightarrow Mn^{2+} + H_2O} \quad +1.51\ \mathrm{V}$$

$$\mathrm{TiO_2 + 4\,H^+ + 2\,e^- \longrightarrow Ti^{2+} + 2\,H_2O} \quad -0.50\ \mathrm{V}$$

A larger reduction potential means that it is easier to reduce the reactant. Permanganate, with the largest reduction potential, is the strongest oxidizer under these conditions. Dichromate is next, followed by titanium dioxide as the weakest oxidizing agent (the hardest to reduce) of this set.

? Exercise 8.2.2

Predict what reaction (if any) will occur between HCl and Co(*s*), and between HBr and Pt(*s*). You will need to use the standard reduction potentials from (Table P1).

Answer

$\mathrm{Co}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{HCl} \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2} + \mathrm{CoCl_2}(aq)$; no reaction because Pt(*s*) will not be oxidized by H^+

Preparation of the Transition Elements

Ancient civilizations knew about iron, copper, silver, and gold. The time periods in human history known as the Bronze Age and Iron Age mark the advancements in which societies learned to isolate certain metals and use them to make tools and goods. Naturally occurring ores of copper, silver, and gold can contain high concentrations of these metals in elemental form (Figure $8.2.5$). Iron, on the other hand, occurs on earth almost exclusively in oxidized forms, such as rust (Fe_2O_3). The earliest known iron implements were made from iron meteorites. Surviving iron artifacts dating from approximately 4000 to 2500 BC are rare, but all known examples contain specific alloys of iron and nickel that occur only in extraterrestrial objects, not on earth. It took thousands of years of technological advances before civilizations developed iron smelting, the ability to extract a pure element from its naturally occurring ores and for iron tools to become common.

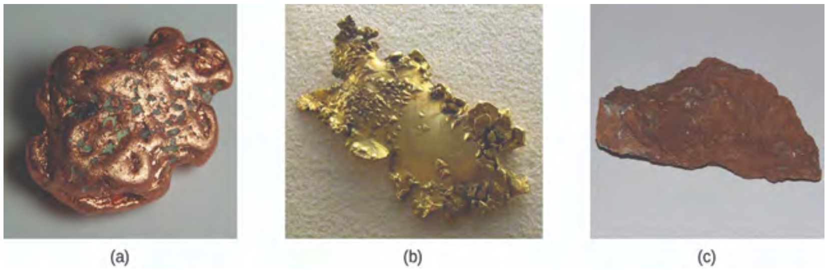


Figure $8.2.5$: Transition metals occur in nature in various forms. Examples include (a) a nugget of copper, (b) a deposit of gold, and (c) an ore containing oxidized iron. (credit a: modification of work by Copper [images-of-elements.com]; credit c: modification of work by Iron ore [images-of-elements.com])

Generally, the transition elements are extracted from minerals found in a variety of ores. However, the ease of their recovery varies widely, depending on the concentration of the element in the ore, the identity of the other elements present, and the difficulty of reducing the element to the free metal.

In general, it is not difficult to reduce ions of the *d*-block elements to the free element. Carbon is a sufficiently strong reducing agent in most cases. However, like the ions of the more active main group metals, ions of the *f*-block elements must be isolated by electrolysis or by reduction with an active metal such as calcium.

We shall discuss the processes used for the isolation of iron, copper, and silver because these three processes illustrate the principal means of isolating most of the *d*-block metals. In general, each of these processes involves three principal steps: preliminary treatment, smelting, and refining.

1. Preliminary treatment. In general, there is an initial treatment of the ores to make them suitable for the extraction of the metals. This usually involves crushing or grinding the ore, concentrating the metal-bearing components, and sometimes treating these substances chemically to convert them into compounds that are easier to reduce to the metal.
2. Smelting. The next step is the extraction of the metal in the molten state, a process called smelting, which includes reduction of the metallic compound to the metal. Impurities may be removed by the addition of a compound that forms a slag—a substance with a low melting point that can be readily separated from the molten metal.
3. Refining. The final step in the recovery of a metal is refining the metal. Low boiling metals such as zinc and mercury can be refined by distillation. When fused on an inclined table, low melting metals like tin flow away from higher-melting impurities. Electrolysis is another common method for refining metals.

Isolation of Iron

The early application of iron to the manufacture of tools and weapons was possible because of the wide distribution of iron ores and the ease with which iron compounds in the ores could be reduced by carbon. For a long time, charcoal was the form of carbon used in the reduction process. The production and use of iron became much more widespread about 1620, when coke was introduced as the reducing agent. Coke is a form of carbon formed by heating coal in the absence of air to remove impurities.

The first step in the metallurgy of iron is usually roasting the ore (heating the ore in air) to remove water, decomposing carbonates into oxides, and converting sulfides into oxides. The oxides are then reduced in a blast furnace that is 80–100 feet high and about 25 feet in diameter (Figure $8.2.6$) in which the roasted ore, coke, and limestone (impure $CaCO_3$) are introduced continuously into the top. Molten iron and slag are withdrawn at the bottom. The entire stock in a furnace may weigh several hundred tons.

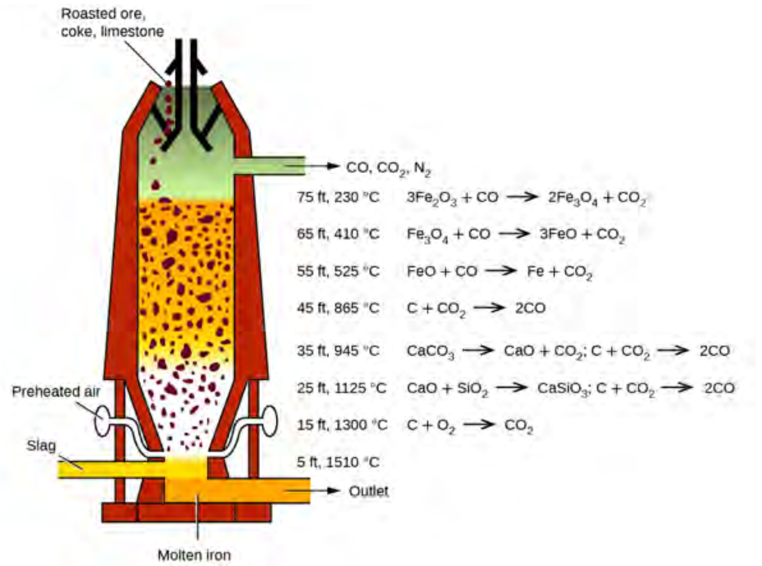


Figure $8.2.6$:Within a blast furnace, different reactions occur in different temperature zones. Carbon monoxide is generated in the hotter bottom regions and rises upward to reduce the iron oxides to pure iron through a series of reactions that take place in the upper regions.

At the right side of the figure, furnace heights are labeled in order of increasing height between the outlet pipes, followed by temperatures and associated chemical reactions. Just above the pipe labeled, “Outlet,” no chemical equation at 5 f t, 1510 degrees C. At 15 f t, 1300 degrees C is the eC plus O subscript 2 right pointing arrow C O subscript 2. At 25 f t, 1125 degrees C are the two reactions, C a O plus S i O subscript 2 right pointing arrow C a S i O subscript 3 and C plus C O subscript 2 right pointing arrow 2 C O. At 35 f t, 945 degrees C, are the two reactions C a C O subscript 3 right pointing arrow C a O plus C O subscript 2, and C plus C O subscript 2 right pointing arrow 2 C O. At 45 f t, 865 degrees C is C plus C O subscript 2 right pointing arrow 2 C O. At 55 f t, 525 degrees C is the equation F e O plus C O right pointing arrow F e plus C O subscript 2. At 65 f t, 410 degrees C, is F e subscript 3 O subscript 4 plus C O right pointing arrow 3 F e O plus C O subscript 2. At 75 f t, 230 degrees C, is the equation, 3 F e subscript 2 O subscript 3 plus C O right pointing arrow 2 F e subscript 3 O subscript 4 plus C O subscript 2.

Near the bottom of a furnace are nozzles through which preheated air is blown into the furnace. As soon as the air enters, the coke in the region of the nozzles is oxidized to carbon dioxide with the liberation of a great deal of heat. The hot carbon dioxide passes upward through the overlying layer of white-hot coke, where it is reduced to carbon monoxide:

$$\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{C}(s) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{CO}(g)$$

The carbon monoxide serves as the reducing agent in the upper regions of the furnace. The individual reactions are indicated in Figure $8.2.6$.

The iron oxides are reduced in the upper region of the furnace. In the middle region, limestone (calcium carbonate) decomposes, and the resulting calcium oxide combines with silica and silicates in the ore to form slag. The slag is mostly calcium silicate and contains most of the commercially unimportant components of the ore:

$$\mathrm{CaO}(s) + \mathrm{SiO_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CaSiO_3}(l)$$

Just below the middle of the furnace, the temperature is high enough to melt both the iron and the slag. They collect in layers at the bottom of the furnace; the less dense slag floats on the iron and protects it from oxidation. Several times a day, the slag and molten iron are withdrawn from the furnace. The iron is transferred to casting machines or to a steelmaking plant (Figure $8.2.7$).

Figure 8.2.7:Molten iron is shown being cast as steel. (credit: Clint Budd)

Much of the iron produced is refined and converted into steel. Steel is made from iron by removing impurities and adding substances such as manganese, chromium, nickel, tungsten, molybdenum, and vanadium to produce alloys with properties that make the material suitable for specific uses. Most steels also contain small but definite percentages of carbon (0.04%–2.5%). However, a large part of the carbon contained in iron must be removed in the manufacture of steel; otherwise, the excess carbon would make the iron brittle.

Isolation of Copper

The most important ores of copper contain copper sulfides (such as covellite, CuS), although copper oxides (such as tenorite, CuO) and copper hydroxycarbonates [such as malachite, $Cu_2(OH)_2CO_3$] are sometimes found. In the production of copper metal, the concentrated sulfide ore is roasted to remove part of the sulfur as sulfur dioxide. The remaining mixture, which consists of Cu_2S, FeS, FeO, and SiO_2, is mixed with limestone, which serves as a flux (a material that aids in the removal of impurities), and heated. Molten slag forms as the iron and silica are removed by Lewis acid-base reactions:

$$\mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) + \mathrm{SiO_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CaSiO_3}(l) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g)$$

$$\mathrm{FeO}(s) + \mathrm{SiO_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{FeSiO_3}(l)$$

In these reactions, the silicon dioxide behaves as a Lewis acid, which accepts a pair of electrons from the Lewis base (the oxide ion).

Reduction of the Cu_2S that remains after smelting is accomplished by blowing air through the molten material. The air converts part of the Cu_2S into Cu_2O. As soon as copper(I) oxide is formed, it is reduced by the remaining copper(I) sulfide to metallic copper:

$$2\,\mathrm{Cu_2S}(l) + 3\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Cu_2O}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g)$$

$$2\,\mathrm{Cu_2O}(l) + \mathrm{Cu_2S}(l) \longrightarrow 6\,\mathrm{Cu}(l) + \mathrm{SO_2}(g)$$

The copper obtained in this way is called blister copper because of its characteristic appearance, which is due to the air blisters it contains (Figure 8.2.8). This impure copper is cast into large plates, which are used as anodes in the electrolytic refining of the metal (which is described in the chapter on electrochemistry).

Figure 8.2.8: Blister copper is obtained during the conversion of copper-containing ore into pure copper. (credit: “Tortie tude”/Wikimedia Commons)

This figure shows a dull, black, lumpy mass with small, metallic flecks displayed on a clear, colorless rectangular solid base.

Isolation of Silver

Silver sometimes occurs in large nuggets (Figure 8.2.9) but more frequently in veins and related deposits. At one time, panning was an effective method of isolating both silver and gold nuggets. Due to their low reactivity, these metals, and a few others, occur in deposits as nuggets. The discovery of platinum was due to Spanish explorers in Central America mistaking platinum nuggets for silver. When the metal is not in the form of nuggets, it often useful to employ a process called hydrometallurgy to separate silver from its ores.

Figure 8.2.9: Naturally occurring free silver may be found as nuggets (a) or in veins (b). (credit a: modification of work by “Teravolt”/Wikimedia Commons; credit b: modification of work by James St. John)

A. A small clump of bronze-colored metal with a very rough, irregular surface. B. A layer-like region of silver metal embedded in rock.

Hydrology involves the separation of a metal from a mixture by first converting it into soluble ions and then extracting and reducing them to precipitate the pure metal. In the presence of air, alkali metal cyanides readily form the soluble dicyanoargentate(I) ion, $[\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-$, from silver metal or silver-containing compounds such as Ag_2S and AgCl. Representative equations are:

$$4\,\mathrm{Ag}(s) + 8\,\mathrm{CN}^-(aq) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow 4\,[\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{OH}^-(aq)$$

$$2\,\mathrm{Ag_2S}(s) + 8\,\mathrm{CN}^-(aq) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow 4\,[\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{S}(s) + 4\,\mathrm{OH}^-(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{AgCl}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{CN}^-(aq) \longrightarrow [\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-(aq) + \mathrm{Cl}^-(aq)$$

The silver is precipitated from the cyanide solution by the addition of either zinc or iron(II) ions, which serves as the reducing agent:

$$2\,[\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-(aq) + \mathrm{Zn}(s) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Ag}(s) + [\mathrm{Zn(CN)_4}]^{2-}(aq)$$

✓ Example 8.2.3: Refining Redox

One of the steps for refining silver involves converting silver into dicyanoargenate(I) ions:

$$4\,\mathrm{Ag}(s) + 8\,\mathrm{CN}^-(aq) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow 4\,[\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{OH}^-(aq)$$

Explain why oxygen must be present to carry out the reaction. Why does the reaction not occur as:

$$4\,\mathrm{Ag}(s)+8\,\mathrm{CN}^{-}(aq)\longrightarrow 4\,[\mathrm{Ag}(\mathrm{CN})_2]^{-}(aq)?$$

Solution

The charges, as well as the atoms, must balance in reactions. The silver atom is being oxidized from the 0 oxidation state to the 1+ state. Whenever something loses electrons, something must also gain electrons (be reduced) to balance the equation. Oxygen is a good oxidizing agent for these reactions because it can gain electrons to go from the 0 oxidation state to the 2− state.

? Exercise 8.2.3

During the refining of iron, carbon must be present in the blast furnace. Why is carbon necessary to convert iron oxide into iron?

Answer

> The carbon is converted into CO, which is the reducing agent that accepts electrons so that iron(III) can be reduced to iron(0).

Transition Metal Compounds

The bonding in the simple compounds of the transition elements ranges from ionic to covalent. In their lower oxidation states, the transition elements form ionic compounds; in their higher oxidation states, they form covalent compounds or polyatomic ions. The variation in oxidation states exhibited by the transition elements gives these compounds a metal-based, oxidation-reduction chemistry. The chemistry of several classes of compounds containing elements of the transition series follows.

Halides

Anhydrous halides of each of the transition elements can be prepared by the direct reaction of the metal with halogens. For example:

$$2\,\mathrm{Fe}(s)+3\,\mathrm{Cl}_2(g)\longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{FeCl}_3(s)$$

Heating a metal halide with additional metal can be used to form a halide of the metal with a lower oxidation state:

$$\mathrm{Fe}(s)+2\,\mathrm{FeCl}_3(s)\longrightarrow 3\,\mathrm{FeCl}_2(s)$$

The stoichiometry of the metal halide that results from the reaction of the metal with a halogen is determined by the relative amounts of metal and halogen and by the strength of the halogen as an oxidizing agent. Generally, fluorine forms fluoride-containing metals in their highest oxidation states. The other halogens may not form analogous compounds.

In general, the preparation of stable water solutions of the halides of the metals of the first transition series is by the addition of a hydrohalic acid to carbonates, hydroxides, oxides, or other compounds that contain basic anions. Sample reactions are:

$$\mathrm{NiCO}_3(s)+2\,\mathrm{HF}(aq)\longrightarrow \mathrm{NiF}_2(aq)+\mathrm{H}_2\mathrm{O}(l)+\mathrm{CO}_2(g)$$

$$\mathrm{Co(OH)}_2(s)+2\,\mathrm{HBr}(aq)\longrightarrow \mathrm{CoBr}_2(aq)+2\,\mathrm{H}_2\mathrm{O}(l)$$

Most of the first transition series metals also dissolve in acids, forming a solution of the salt and hydrogen gas. For example:

$$\mathrm{Cr}(s)+2\,\mathrm{HCl}(aq)\longrightarrow \mathrm{CrCl}_2(aq)+\mathrm{H}_2(g)$$

The polarity of bonds with transition metals varies based not only upon the electronegativities of the atoms involved but also upon the oxidation state of the transition metal. Remember that bond polarity is a continuous spectrum with electrons being shared evenly (covalent bonds) at one extreme and electrons being transferred completely (ionic bonds) at the other. No bond is ever 100% ionic, and the degree to which the electrons are evenly distributed determines many properties of the compound. Transition metal halides with low oxidation numbers form more ionic bonds. For example, titanium(II) chloride and titanium(III) chloride ($TiCl_2$ and $TiCl_3$) have high melting points that are characteristic of ionic compounds, but titanium(IV) chloride ($TiCl_4$) is a volatile liquid, consistent with having covalent titanium-chlorine bonds. All halides of the heavier *d*-block elements have significant covalent characteristics.

The covalent behavior of the transition metals with higher oxidation states is exemplified by the reaction of the metal tetrahalides with water. Like covalent silicon tetrachloride, both the titanium and vanadium tetrahalides react with water to give solutions containing the corresponding hydrohalic acids and the metal oxides:

$$\mathrm{SiCl_4}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{SiO_2}(s) + 4\,\mathrm{HCl}(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{TiCl_4}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{TiO_2}(s) + 4\,\mathrm{HCl}(aq)$$

Oxides

As with the halides, the nature of bonding in oxides of the transition elements is determined by the oxidation state of the metal. Oxides with low oxidation states tend to be more ionic, whereas those with higher oxidation states are more covalent. These variations in bonding are because the electronegativities of the elements are not fixed values. The electronegativity of an element increases with increasing oxidation state. Transition metals in low oxidation states have lower electronegativity values than oxygen; therefore, these metal oxides are ionic. Transition metals in very high oxidation states have electronegativity values close to that of oxygen, which leads to these oxides being covalent.

The oxides of the first transition series can be prepared by heating the metals in air. These oxides are Sc_2O_3, TiO_2, V_2O_5, Cr_2O_3, Mn_3O_4, Fe_3O_4, Co_3O_4, NiO, and CuO.

Alternatively, these oxides and other oxides (with the metals in different oxidation states) can be produced by heating the corresponding hydroxides, carbonates, or oxalates in an inert atmosphere. Iron(II) oxide can be prepared by heating iron(II) oxalate, and cobalt(II) oxide is produced by heating cobalt(II) hydroxide:

$$\mathrm{FeC_2O_4}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{FeO}(s) + \mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g)$$

$$\mathrm{Co(OH)_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CoO}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g)$$

With the exception of CrO_3 and Mn_2O_7, transition metal oxides are not soluble in water. They can react with acids and, in a few cases, with bases. Overall, oxides of transition metals with the lowest oxidation states are basic (and react with acids), the intermediate ones are amphoteric, and the highest oxidation states are primarily acidic. Basic metal oxides at a low oxidation state react with aqueous acids to form solutions of salts and water. Examples include the reaction of cobalt(II) oxide accepting protons from nitric acid, and scandium(III) oxide accepting protons from hydrochloric acid:

$$\mathrm{CoO}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{HNO_3}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Co(NO_3)_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

$$\mathrm{Sc_2O_3}(s) + 6\,\mathrm{HCl}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{ScCl_3}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

The oxides of metals with oxidation states of 4+ are amphoteric, and most are not soluble in either acids or bases. Vanadium(V) oxide, chromium(VI) oxide, and manganese(VII) oxide are acidic. They react with solutions of hydroxides to form salts of the oxyanions $\mathrm{VO_4^{3-}}$, $\mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}$, and $\mathrm{MnO_4^-}$. For example, the complete ionic equation for the reaction of chromium(VI) oxide with a strong base is given by:

$$\mathrm{CrO_3}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{Na^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Na^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

Chromium(VI) oxide and manganese(VII) oxide react with water to form the acids H_2CrO_4 and $HMnO_4$, respectively.

Hydroxides

When a soluble hydroxide is added to an aqueous solution of a salt of a transition metal of the first transition series, a gelatinous precipitate forms. For example, adding a solution of sodium hydroxide to a solution of cobalt sulfate produces a gelatinous pink or blue precipitate of cobalt(II) hydroxide. The net ionic equation is:

$$\mathrm{Co^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Co(OH)_2}(s)$$

In this and many other cases, these precipitates are hydroxides containing the transition metal ion, hydroxide ions, and water coordinated to the transition metal. In other cases, the precipitates are hydrated oxides composed of the metal ion, oxide ions, and water of hydration:

$$4\,Fe^{3+}(aq) + 6\,OH^{-}(aq) + nH_2O(l) \longrightarrow 2\,Fe_2O_3 \cdot (n+3\,)H_2O(s)$$

These substances do not contain hydroxide ions. However, both the hydroxides and the hydrated oxides react with acids to form salts and water. When precipitating a metal from solution, it is necessary to avoid an excess of hydroxide ion, as this may lead to complex ion formation as discussed later in this chapter. The precipitated metal hydroxides can be separated for further processing or for waste disposal.

Carbonates

Many of the elements of the first transition series form insoluble carbonates. It is possible to prepare these carbonates by the addition of a soluble carbonate salt to a solution of a transition metal salt. For example, nickel carbonate can be prepared from solutions of nickel nitrate and sodium carbonate according to the following net ionic equation:

$$Ni^{2+}(aq) + CO_3^{2-} \longrightarrow NiCO_3(s)$$

The reactions of the transition metal carbonates are similar to those of the active metal carbonates. They react with acids to form metals salts, carbon dioxide, and water. Upon heating, they decompose, forming the transition metal oxides.

Other Salts

In many respects, the chemical behavior of the elements of the first transition series is very similar to that of the main group metals. In particular, the same types of reactions that are used to prepare salts of the main group metals can be used to prepare simple ionic salts of these elements.

A variety of salts can be prepared from metals that are more active than hydrogen by reaction with the corresponding acids: Scandium metal reacts with hydrobromic acid to form a solution of scandium bromide:

$$2\,Sc(s) + 6\,HBr(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,ScBr_3(aq) + 3\,H_2(g)$$

The common compounds that we have just discussed can also be used to prepare salts. The reactions involved include the reactions of oxides, hydroxides, or carbonates with acids. For example:

$$Ni(OH)_2(s) + 2\,H_3O^{+}(aq) + 2\,ClO_4^{-}(aq) \longrightarrow Ni^{2+}(aq) + 2\,ClO_4^{-}(aq) + 4\,H_2O(l)$$

Substitution reactions involving soluble salts may be used to prepare insoluble salts. For example:

$$Ba^{2+}(aq) + 2\,Cl^{-}(aq) + 2\,K^{+}(aq) + CrO_4^{2-}(aq) \longrightarrow BaCrO_4(s) + 2\,K^{+}(aq) + 2\,Cl^{-}(aq)$$

In our discussion of oxides in this section, we have seen that reactions of the covalent oxides of the transition elements with hydroxides form salts that contain oxyanions of the transition elements.

High Temperature Superconductors

A superconductor is a substance that conducts electricity with no resistance. This lack of resistance means that there is no energy loss during the transmission of electricity. This would lead to a significant reduction in the cost of electricity.

Most currently used, commercial superconducting materials, such as NbTi and Nb_3Sn, do not become superconducting until they are cooled below 23 K (−250 °C). This requires the use of liquid helium, which has a boiling temperature of 4 K and is expensive and difficult to handle. The cost of liquid helium has deterred the widespread application of superconductors.

One of the most exciting scientific discoveries of the 1980s was the characterization of compounds that exhibit superconductivity at temperatures above 90 K. (Compared to liquid helium, 90 K is a high temperature.) Typical among the high-temperature superconducting materials are oxides containing yttrium (or one of several rare earth elements), barium, and copper in a 1:2:3 ratio. The formula of the ionic yttrium compound is $YBa_2Cu_3O_7$.

The new materials become superconducting at temperatures close to 90 K (Figure 8.2.10), temperatures that can be reached by cooling with liquid nitrogen (boiling temperature of 77 K). Not only are liquid nitrogen-cooled materials easier to handle, but the cooling costs are also about 1000 times lower than for liquid helium.

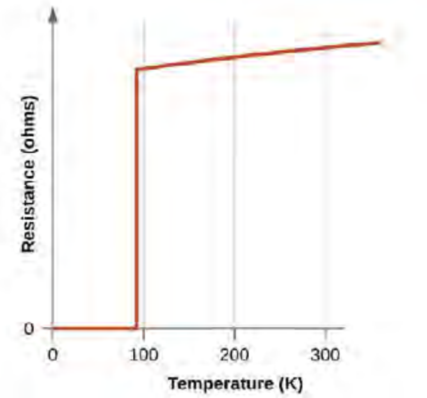


Figure 8.2.10: The resistance of the high-temperature superconductor $YBa_2Cu_3O_7$ varies with temperature. Note how the resistance falls to zero below 92 K, when the substance becomes superconducting.

A graph of resistance (ohms) against temperature (Kelvin) is shown. The line remains constant at 0 ohms up until 92 Kelvin in which there is a sharp increase in resistance which continues increasing with a low slope.

Although the brittle, fragile nature of these materials presently hampers their commercial applications, they have tremendous potential that researchers are hard at work improving their processes to help realize. Superconducting transmission lines would carry current for hundreds of miles with no loss of power due to resistance in the wires. This could allow generating stations to be located in areas remote from population centers and near the natural resources necessary for power production. The first project demonstrating the viability of high-temperature superconductor power transmission was established in New York in 2008.

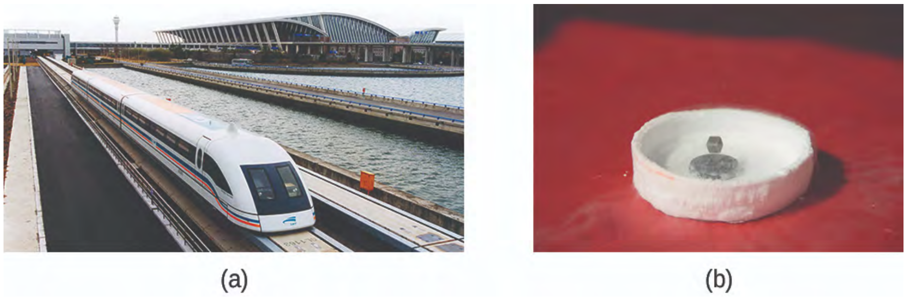


Figure 8.2.11: (a) This magnetic levitation train (or maglev) uses superconductor technology to move along its tracks. (b) A magnet can be levitated using a dish like this as a superconductor. (credit a: modification of work by Alex Needham; credit b: modification of work by Kevin Jarrett)

A. a white train is on a track with a building standing on a bed of water in the background. B. A magnet is floating in a dish with frost emerging from the dish.

Researchers are also working on using this technology to develop other applications, such as smaller and more powerful microchips. In addition, high-temperature superconductors can be used to generate magnetic fields for applications such as medical devices, magnetic levitation trains, and containment fields for nuclear fusion reactors (Figure 8.2.11).

Video 8.2.1: Watch how a high-temperature superconductor levitates around a magnetic racetrack in the video.

Summary

The transition metals are elements with partially filled *d* orbitals, located in the *d*-block of the periodic table. The reactivity of the transition elements varies widely from very active metals such as scandium and iron to almost inert elements, such as the platinum metals. The type of chemistry used in the isolation of the elements from their ores depends upon the concentration of the element in its ore and the difficulty of reducing ions of the elements to the metals. Metals that are more active are more difficult to reduce.

Transition metals exhibit chemical behavior typical of metals. For example, they oxidize in air upon heating and react with elemental halogens to form halides. Those elements that lie above hydrogen in the activity series react with acids, producing salts and hydrogen gas. Oxides, hydroxides, and carbonates of transition metal compounds in low oxidation states are basic. Halides and other salts are generally stable in water, although oxygen must be excluded in some cases. Most transition metals form a variety of stable oxidation states, allowing them to demonstrate a wide range of chemical reactivity.

Glossary

actinide series

(also, actinoid series) actinium and the elements in the second row or the *f*-block, atomic numbers 89–103

coordination compound

stable compound in which the central metal atom or ion acts as a Lewis acid and accepts one or more pairs of electrons

***d*-block element**

one of the elements in groups 3–11 with valence electrons in *d* orbitals

***f*-block element**

(also, inner transition element) one of the elements with atomic numbers 58–71 or 90–103 that have valence electrons in *f* orbitals; they are frequently shown offset below the periodic table

first transition series

transition elements in the fourth period of the periodic table (first row of the *d*-block), atomic numbers 21–29

fourth transition series

transition elements in the seventh period of the periodic table (fourth row of the *d*-block), atomic numbers 89 and 104–111

hydrometallurgy

process in which a metal is separated from a mixture by first converting it into soluble ions, extracting the ions, and then reducing the ions to precipitate the pure metal

lanthanide series

(also, lanthanoid series) lanthanum and the elements in the first row or the *f*-block, atomic numbers 57–71

platinum metals

group of six transition metals consisting of ruthenium, osmium, rhodium, iridium, palladium, and platinum that tend to occur in the same minerals and demonstrate similar chemical properties

rare earth element

collection of 17 elements including the lanthanides, scandium, and yttrium that often occur together and have similar chemical properties, making separation difficult

second transition series

transition elements in the fifth period of the periodic table (second row of the *d*-block), atomic numbers 39–47

smelting

process of extracting a pure metal from a molten ore

steel

material made from iron by removing impurities in the iron and adding substances that produce alloys with properties suitable for specific uses

superconductor

material that conducts electricity with no resistance

third transition series

transition elements in the sixth period of the periodic table (third row of the *d*-block), atomic numbers 57 and 72–79

8.3: Coordination Compounds

Learning Objectives

- List the defining traits of coordination compounds
- Describe the structures of complexes containing monodentate and polydentate ligands
- Use standard nomenclature rules to name coordination compounds
- Explain and provide examples of geometric and optical isomerism
- Identify several natural and technological occurrences of coordination compounds

The hemoglobin in your blood, the chlorophyll in green plants, vitamin B_{12}, and the catalyst used in the manufacture of polyethylene all contain coordination compounds. Ions of the metals, especially the transition metals, are likely to form complexes. Many of these compounds are highly colored (Figure 8.3.1). In the remainder of this chapter, we will consider the structure and bonding of these remarkable compounds.

Figure 8.3.1: Metal ions that contain partially filled d subshell usually form colored complex ions; ions with empty d subshell (d^0) or with filled d subshells (d^{10}) usually form colorless complexes. This figure shows, from left to right, solutions containing $[M(H_2O)_6]^{n+}$ ions with M = Sc^{3+}(d^0), Cr^{3+}(d^3), Co^{2+}(d^7), Ni^{2+}(d^8), Cu^{2+}(d^9), and Zn^{2+}(d^{10}). (credit: Sahar Atwa)

There are six containers that are each filled with a different color liquid. The first is clear, followed by purple, red, teal, blue, and the last one is also clear.

Remember that in most main group element compounds, the valence electrons of the isolated atoms combine to form chemical bonds that satisfy the octet rule. For instance, the four valence electrons of carbon overlap with electrons from four hydrogen atoms to form CH_4. The one valence electron leaves sodium and adds to the seven valence electrons of chlorine to form the ionic formula unit NaCl (Figure 8.3.2). Transition metals do not normally bond in this fashion. They primarily form coordinate covalent bonds, a form of the Lewis acid-base interaction in which both of the electrons in the bond are contributed by a donor (Lewis base) to an electron acceptor (Lewis acid). The Lewis acid in coordination complexes, often called a central metal ion (or atom), is often a transition metal or inner transition metal, although main group elements can also form coordination compounds. The Lewis base donors, called ligands, can be a wide variety of chemicals—atoms, molecules, or ions. The only requirement is that they have one or more electron pairs, which can be donated to the central metal. Most often, this involves a donor atom with a lone pair of electrons that can form a coordinate bond to the metal.

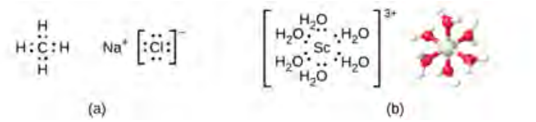


Figure 8.3.2: (a) Covalent bonds involve the sharing of electrons, and ionic bonds involve the transferring of electrons associated with each bonding atom, as indicated by the colored electrons. (b) However, coordinate covalent bonds involve electrons from a Lewis base being donated to a metal center. The lone pairs from six water molecules form bonds to the scandium ion to form an octahedral complex. (Only the donated pairs are shown.)

The coordination sphere consists of the central metal ion or atom plus its attached ligands. Brackets in a formula enclose the coordination sphere; species outside the brackets are not part of the coordination sphere. The coordination number of the central metal ion or atom is the number of donor atoms bonded to it. The coordination number for the silver ion in $[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$ is two (Figure 8.3.3). For the copper(II) ion in $[CuCl_4]^{2-}$, the coordination number is four, whereas for the cobalt(II) ion in $[Co(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ the coordination number is six. Each of these ligands is monodentate, from the Greek for "one toothed," meaning that they connect with the central metal through only one atom. In this case, the number of ligands and the coordination number are equal.

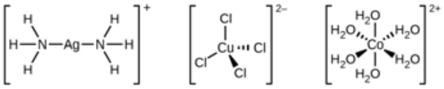


Figure 8.3.3: The complexes (a) $[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$, (b) $[Cu(Cl)_4]^{2-}$, and (c) $[Co(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ have coordination numbers of two, four, and six, respectively. The geometries of these complexes are the same as we have seen with VSEPR theory for main group elements: linear, tetrahedral, and octahedral.

The structural formulas for Ag N H 3 subscript 2, C u C l subscript 4, and C o H 2 O subscript 6 is shown in enclosing brackets showing their individual charges on the top right of positive 1, negative 2 and positive 2 respectively.

Many other ligands coordinate to the metal in more complex fashions. Bidentate ligands are those in which two atoms coordinate to the metal center. For example, ethylenediamine (en, $H_2NCH_2CH_2NH_2$) contains two nitrogen atoms, each of which has a lone pair and can serve as a Lewis base (Figure 8.3.4). Both of the atoms can coordinate to a single metal center. In the complex $[Co(en)_3]^{3+}$, there are three bidentate en ligands, and the coordination number of the cobalt(III) ion is six. The most common coordination numbers are two, four, and six, but examples of all coordination numbers from 1 to 15 are known.

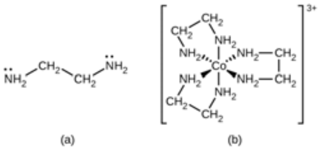


Figure 8.3.4: (a) The ethylenediamine (en) ligand contains two atoms with lone pairs that can coordinate to the metal center. (b) The cobalt(III) complex $[Co(en)_3]^{3+}$ *contains three of these ligands, each forming two bonds to the cobalt ion.*

Any ligand that bonds to a central metal ion by more than one donor atom is a polydentate ligand (or "many teeth") because it can bite into the metal center with more than one bond. The term chelate (pronounced "KEY-late") from the Greek for "claw" is also used to describe this type of interaction. Many polydentate ligands are chelating ligands, and a complex consisting of one or more of these ligands and a central metal is a chelate. A chelating ligand is also known as a chelating agent. A chelating ligand holds the metal ion rather like a crab's claw would hold a marble. Figure 8.3.4 showed one example of a chelate and the heme complex in hemoglobin is another important example (Figure 8.3.5). It contains a polydentate ligand with four donor atoms that coordinate to iron.

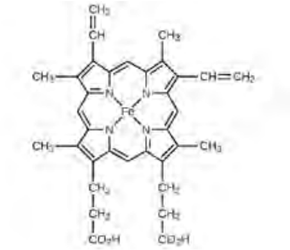


Figure 8.3.5: The single ligand heme contains four nitrogen atoms that coordinate to iron in hemoglobin to form a chelate.

Polydentate ligands are sometimes identified with prefixes that indicate the number of donor atoms in the ligand. As we have seen, ligands with one donor atom, such as NH_3, Cl^-, and H_2O, are monodentate ligands. Ligands with two donor groups are bidentate ligands. Ethylenediamine, $H_2NCH_2CH_2NH_2$, and the anion of the acid glycine, $NH_2CH_2CO_2^-$ (Figure 8.3.6) are examples of bidentate ligands. Tridentate ligands, tetradentate ligands, pentadentate ligands, and hexadentate ligands contain three, four, five, and six donor atoms, respectively. The heme ligand (Figure 8.3.5) is a tetradentate ligand.

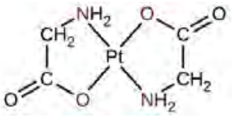


Figure 8.3.6: Each of the anionic ligands shown attaches in a bidentate fashion to platinum(II), with both a nitrogen and oxygen atom coordinating to the metal.

The Naming of Complexes

The nomenclature of the complexes is patterned after a system suggested by Alfred Werner, a Swiss chemist and Nobel laureate, whose outstanding work more than 100 years ago laid the foundation for a clearer understanding of these compounds. The following five rules are used for naming complexes:

1. If a coordination compound is ionic, name the cation first and the anion second, in accordance with the usual nomenclature.
2. Name the ligands first, followed by the central metal. Name the ligands alphabetically. Negative ligands (anions) have names formed by adding -*o* to the stem name of the group (e.g., Table 8.3.1. For most neutral ligands, the name of the molecule is used. The four common exceptions are *aqua* (H_2O), *amine* (NH_3), *carbonyl* (CO), and *nitrosyl* (NO). For example, name $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_4]$ as diaminetetrachloroplatinum(IV).
3. If more than one ligand of a given type is present, the number is indicated by the prefixes *di*- (for two), *tri*- (for three), *tetra*- (for four), *penta*- (for five), and *hexa*- (for six). Sometimes, the prefixes *bis*- (for two), *tris*- (for three), and *tetrakis*- (for four) are used when the name of the ligand already includes *di*-, *tri*-, or *tetra*-, or when the ligand name begins with a vowel. For example, the ion bis(bipyridyl)osmium(II) uses bis- to signify that there are two ligands attached to Os, and each bipyridyl ligand contains two pyridine groups (C_5H_4N).

Table 8.3.1: Examples of Anionic Ligands

Anionic Ligand	Name
F^-	fluoro
Cl^-	chloro
Br^-	bromo
I^-	iodo
CN^-	cyano
NO_3^-	nitrato
OH^-	hydroxo
O^{2-}	oxo
$C_2O_4^{2-}$	oxalato
CO_3^{2-}	carbonato

When the complex is either a cation or a neutral molecule, the name of the central metal atom is spelled exactly like the name of the element and is followed by a Roman numeral in parentheses to indicate its oxidation state (Tables 8.3.2, 8.3.3, and 8.3.3). When the complex is an anion, the suffix -ate is added to the stem of the name of the metal, followed by the Roman numeral designation of its oxidation state.

Table 8.3.2: Select Coordination Complexes based on total Charge

Examples in Which the Complex Is Cation	
$[Co(NH_3)_6]Cl_3$	hexaaminecobalt(III) chloride
$[Pt(NH_3)_4Cl_2]^{2+}$	tetraaminedichloroplatinum(IV) ion
$[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$	diaminesilver(I) ion
$[Cr(H_2O)_4Cl_2]Cl$	tetraaquadichlorochromium(III) chloride
$[Co(H_2NCH_2CH_2NH_2)_3]_2(SO_4)_3$	tris(ethylenediamine)cobalt(III) sulfate
Examples in Which the Complex Is Neutral	
$[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_4]$	diaminetetrachloroplatinum(IV)
$[Ni(H_2NCH_2CH_2NH_2)_2Cl_2]$	dichlorobis(ethylenediamine)nickel(II)
Examples in Which the Complex Is an Anion	
$[PtCl_6]^{2-}$	hexachloroplatinate(IV) ion
$Na_2[SnCl_6]$	sodium hexachlorostannate(IV)

Sometimes, the Latin name of the metal is used when the English name is clumsy. For example, *ferrate* is used instead of *ironate*, *plumbate* instead *leadate*, and *stannate* instead of *tinate*. The oxidation state of the metal is determined based on the charges of each ligand and the overall charge of the coordination compound. For example, in $[Cr(H_2O)_4Cl_2]Br$, the coordination sphere (in brackets) has a charge of 1+ to balance the bromide ion. The water ligands are neutral, and the chloride ligands are anionic with a charge of 1− each. To determine the oxidation state of the metal, we set the overall charge equal to the sum of the ligands and the metal: $+1 = -2 + x$, so the oxidation state (x) is equal to 3+.

✓ Example 8.3.1: Coordination Numbers and Oxidation States

Determine the name of the following complexes and give the coordination number of the central metal atom.

a. $Na_2[PtCl_6]$
b. $K_3[Fe(C_2O_4)_3]$
c. $[Co(NH_3)_5Cl]Cl_2$

Solution

a. There are two Na^+ ions, so the coordination sphere has a negative two charge: $[PtCl_6]^{2-}$. There are six anionic chloride ligands, so $-2 = -6 + x$, and the oxidation state of the platinum is 4+. The name of the complex is sodium hexachloroplatinate(IV), and the coordination number is six.
b. The coordination sphere has a charge of 3− (based on the potassium) and the oxalate ligands each have a charge of 2−, so the metal oxidation state is given by $-3 = -6 + x$, and this is an iron(III) complex. The name is potassium trisoxalatoferrate(III) (note that tris is used instead of tri because the ligand name starts with a vowel). Because oxalate is a bidentate ligand, this complex has a coordination number of six.
c. In this example, the coordination sphere has a cationic charge of 2+. The NH_3 ligand is neutral, but the chloro ligand has a charge of 1−. The oxidation state is found by $+2 = -1 + x$ and is 3+, so the complex is pentaaminechlorocobalt(III) chloride and the coordination number is six.

? Exercise 8.3.1

The complex potassium dicyanoargenate(I) is used to make antiseptic compounds. Give the formula and coordination number.

Answer

$K[Ag(CN)_2]$; coordination number two

The Structures of Complexes

The most common structures of the complexes in coordination compounds are octahedral, tetrahedral, and square planar (Figure 8.3.7). For transition metal complexes, the coordination number determines the geometry around the central metal ion. Table 8.3.3 compares coordination numbers to the molecular geometry:

Figure 8.3.7: These are geometries of some complexes with coordination numbers of seven and eight.

Table 8.3.3: Coordination Numbers and Molecular Geometry

Coordination Number	Molecular Geometry	Example
2	linear	$[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$
3	trigonal planar	$[Cu(CN)_3]^{2-}$
4	tetrahedral(d^0 or d^{10}), low oxidation states for M	$[Ni(CO)_4]$
4	square planar (d^8)	$[NiCl_4]^{2-}$
5	trigonal bipyramidal	$[CoCl_5]^{2-}$
5	square pyramidal	$[VO(CN)_4]^{2-}$
6	octahedral	$[CoCl_6]^{3-}$
7	pentagonal bipyramid	$[ZrF_7]^{3-}$
8	square antiprism	$[ReF_8]^{2-}$
8	dodecahedron	$[Mo(CN)_8]^{4-}$
9 and above	more complicated structures	$[ReH_9]^{2-}$

Unlike main group atoms in which both the bonding and nonbonding electrons determine the molecular shape, the nonbonding *d*-electrons do not change the arrangement of the ligands. Octahedral complexes have a coordination number of six, and the six donor atoms are arranged at the corners of an octahedron around the central metal ion. Examples are shown in Figure 8.3.8. The chloride and nitrate anions in $[Co(H_2O)_6]Cl_2$ and $[Cr(en)_3](NO_3)_3$, and the potassium cations in $K_2[PtCl_6]$, are outside the brackets and are not bonded to the metal ion.

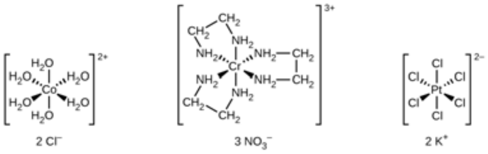


Figure 8.3.8: Many transition metal complexes adopt octahedral geometries, with six donor atoms forming bond angles of 90° about the central atom with adjacent ligands. Note that only ligands within the coordination sphere affect the geometry around the metal center.

The structural formulas for C o H 2 O subscript 6, C r e n subscript 3, and P t c l subscript 6 is shown in enclosing brackets showing their individual charges on the top right. These charges are positive 2, positive 3 and negative 2 respectively. 2 chloride ions, 3 nitrate ions, and 2 potassium ions are shown outside of the three brackets respectively.

For transition metals with a coordination number of four, two different geometries are possible: tetrahedral or square planar. Unlike main group elements, where these geometries can be predicted from VSEPR theory, a more detailed discussion of transition metal orbitals (discussed in the section on Crystal Field Theory) is required to predict which complexes will be tetrahedral and which will be square planar. In tetrahedral complexes such as $[Zn(CN)_4]^{2-}$ (Figure 8.3.9), each of the ligand pairs forms an angle of 109.5°. In square planar complexes, such as $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$, each ligand has two other ligands at 90° angles (called the *cis* positions) and one additional ligand at an 180° angle, in the *trans* position.

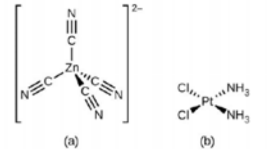


Figure 8.3.9: Transition metals with a coordination number of four can adopt a tetrahedral geometry (a) as in $K_2[Zn(CN)_4]$ or a square planar geometry (b) as shown in $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$.
Structural formulas of K subscript 2 Z n C N subscript 4 and P t N H subscript 3 subscript 2 C l subscript 2 are shown with wedge and dashed lines to show a more three dimensional structure.

Isomerism in Complexes

Isomers are different chemical species that have the same chemical formula. Transition metals often form **geometric isomers**, in which the same atoms are connected through the same types of bonds but with differences in their orientation in space. Coordination complexes with two different ligands in the *cis* and *trans* positions from a ligand of interest form isomers. For example, the octahedral $[Co(NH_3)_4Cl_2]^+$ ion has two isomers. In the *cis* configuration, the two chloride ligands are adjacent to each other (Figure 8.3.1). The other isomer, the *trans* configuration, has the two chloride ligands directly across from one another.

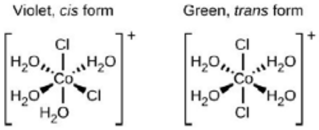


Figure 8.3.10: The cis and trans isomers of $[Co(H_2O)_4Cl_2]^+$ contain the same ligands attached to the same metal ion, but the spatial arrangement causes these two compounds to have very different properties.
For the Violet, cis form the two chlorine is adjacent to one another. For the green, trans form, the two chlorine is opposite from one another.

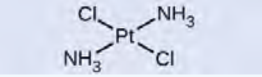
Different geometric isomers of a substance are different chemical compounds. They exhibit different properties, even though they have the same formula. For example, the two isomers of $[Co(NH_3)_4Cl_2]NO_3$ differ in color; the *cis* form is violet, and the *trans* form is green. Furthermore, these isomers have different dipole moments, solubilities, and reactivities. As an example of how the arrangement in space can influence the molecular properties, consider the polarity of the two $[Co(NH_3)_4Cl_2]NO_3$ isomers. Remember that the polarity of a molecule or ion is determined by the bond dipoles (which are due to the difference in electronegativity of the bonding atoms) and their arrangement in space. In one isomer, *cis* chloride ligands cause more electron density on one side of the molecule than on the other, making it polar. For the *trans* isomer, each ligand is directly across from an identical ligand, so the bond dipoles cancel out, and the molecule is nonpolar.

✓ Example 8.3.2: Geometric Isomers

Identify which geometric isomer of $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$ is shown in Figure 8.3.9b. Draw the other geometric isomer and give its full name.

Solution

In the Figure 8.3.9b, the two chlorine ligands occupy *cis* positions. The other form is shown in below. When naming specific isomers, the descriptor is listed in front of the name. Therefore, this complex is *trans*-diaminedichloroplatinum(II).



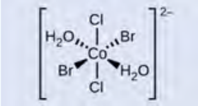
Structural formula of trans-diaminedichloroplatinum(II). The chlorine atoms are opposite each other in the same plane. This is also the case for the two amines.

The *trans* isomer of $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$ has each ligand directly across from an adjacent ligand.

? Exercise 8.3.2

Draw the ion *trans*-diaqua-*trans*-dibromo-*trans*-dichlorocobalt(II).

Answer



Cobalt is located at the center with the left and right wedges connected to bromine and H 2 O respectively. The left and right dash lines are connected to H 2 O and bromine respectively.
Pointing directly upwards and downwards opposite from one another are the chlorine. The entire structural formula is enclosed in square bracket with a superscript of 2 negative.

Another important type of isomers are optical isomers, or enantiomers, in which two objects are exact mirror images of each other but cannot be lined up so that all parts match. This means that optical isomers are nonsuperimposable mirror images. A classic example of this is a pair of hands, in which the right and left hand are mirror images of one another but cannot be superimposed. Optical isomers are very important in organic and biochemistry because living systems often incorporate one specific optical isomer and not the other. Unlike geometric isomers, pairs of optical isomers have identical properties (boiling point, polarity, solubility, etc.). Optical isomers differ only in the way they affect polarized light and how they react with other optical isomers. For coordination complexes, many coordination compounds such as $[M(en)_3]^{n+}$ [in which M^{n+} is a central metal ion such as iron(III) or cobalt(II)] form enantiomers, as shown in Figure 8.3.11. These two isomers will react differently with other optical isomers. For example, DNA helices are optical isomers, and the form that occurs in nature (right-handed DNA) will bind to only one isomer of $[M(en)_3]^{n+}$ and not the other.

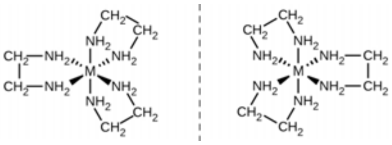


Figure 8.3.11: The complex $[M(en)_3]^{n+}$ (M^{n+} = a metal ion, en = ethylenediamine) has a nonsuperimposable mirror image.
Two structural formulas of open bracket M e n subscript 3 close bracket superscript n positive are shown as mirror images with the dashed vertical line in the center as the mirror plane.

The $[Co(en)_2Cl_2]^+$ ion exhibits geometric isomerism (*cis*/*trans*), and its *cis* isomer exists as a pair of optical isomers (Figure 8.3.12).

Figure 8.3.12: Three isomeric forms of $[Co(en)_2Cl_2]^+$ exist. The trans isomer, formed when the chlorines are positioned at a 180° angle, has very different properties from the cis isomers. The mirror images of the cis isomer form a pair of optical isomers, which have identical behavior except when reacting with other enantiomers.

For the cis isomers, the structural formula shown are mirror images of one another. The two chlorine atoms are adjacent to one another in each cis structure. The trans form is also shown with the chlorine directly opposite from one another.

Linkage isomers occur when the coordination compound contains a ligand that can bind to the transition metal center through two different atoms. For example, the CN ligand can bind through the carbon atom (cyano) or through the nitrogen atom (isocyano). Similarly, SCN− can be bound through the sulfur or nitrogen atom, affording two distinct compounds ($[Co(NH_3)_5SCN]^{2+}$ or $[Co(NH_3)_5NCS]^{2+}$).

Ionization isomers (or coordination isomers) occur when one anionic ligand in the inner coordination sphere is replaced with the counter ion from the outer coordination sphere. A simple example of two ionization isomers are $[CoCl_6][Br]$ and $[CoCl_5Br][Cl]$.

Coordination Complexes in Nature and Technology

Chlorophyll, the green pigment in plants, is a complex that contains magnesium (Figure 8.3.13). This is an example of a main group element in a coordination complex. Plants appear green because chlorophyll absorbs red and purple light; the reflected light consequently appears green. The energy resulting from the absorption of light is used in photosynthesis.

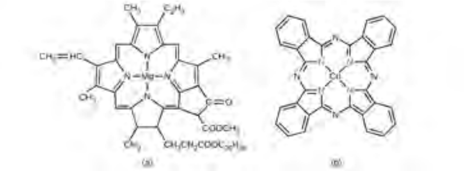


Figure 8.3.13: (a) Chlorophyll comes in several different forms, which all have the same basic structure around the magnesium center. (b) Copper phthalocyanine blue, a square planar copper complex, is present in some blue dyes.

Transition Metal Catalysts

One of the most important applications of transition metals is as industrial catalysts. As you recall from the chapter on kinetics, a catalyst increases the rate of reaction by lowering the activation energy and is regenerated in the catalytic cycle. Over 90% of all manufactured products are made with the aid of one or more catalysts. The ability to bind ligands and change oxidation states makes transition metal catalysts well suited for catalytic applications. Vanadium oxide is used to produce 230,000,000 tons of sulfuric acid worldwide each year, which in turn is used to make everything from fertilizers to cans for food. Plastics are made with the aid of transition metal catalysts, along with detergents, fertilizers, paints, and more (Figure 8.3.14). Very complicated pharmaceuticals are manufactured with catalysts that are selective, reacting with one specific bond out of a large number of possibilities. Catalysts allow processes to be more economical and more environmentally friendly. Developing new catalysts and better understanding of existing systems are important areas of current research.

Figure 8.3.14: (a) Detergents, (b) paints, and (c) fertilizers are all made using transition metal catalysts. (credit a: modification of work by “Mr. Brian”/Flickr; credit b: modification of work by Ewen Roberts; credit c: modification of work by “osseous”/Flickr)

Many other coordination complexes are also brightly colored. The square planar copper(II) complex phthalocyanine blue (from Figure 8.3.13) is one of many complexes used as pigments or dyes. This complex is used in blue ink, blue jeans, and certain blue paints.

The structure of heme (Figure 8.3.15), the iron-containing complex in hemoglobin, is very similar to that in chlorophyll. In hemoglobin, the red heme complex is bonded to a large protein molecule (globin) by the attachment of the protein to the heme ligand. Oxygen molecules are transported by hemoglobin in the blood by being bound to the iron center. When the hemoglobin loses its oxygen, the color changes to a bluish red. Hemoglobin will only transport oxygen if the iron is Fe^{2+}; oxidation of the iron to Fe^{3+} prevents oxygen transport.

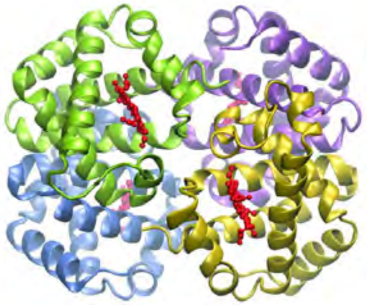


Figure 8.3.15: Hemoglobin contains four protein subunits, each of which has an iron center attached to a heme ligand (shown in red), which is coordinated to a globin protein. Each subunit is shown in a different color.

Three dimensional structure of hemoglobin has many ribbon like structures forming helices and are entangled with one another in a disordered manner. The four subunits are colored differently. Around the center of hemoglobin are multiple linear structures composed of red globules.

Complexing agents often are used for water softening because they tie up such ions as Ca^{2+}, Mg^{2+}, and Fe^{2+}, which make water hard. Many metal ions are also undesirable in food products because these ions can catalyze reactions that change the color of food. Coordination complexes are useful as preservatives. For example, the ligand EDTA, $(HO_2CCH_2)_2NCH_2CH_2N(CH_2CO_2H)_2$, coordinates to metal ions through six donor atoms and prevents the metals from reacting (Figure 8.3.16). This ligand also is used to sequester metal ions in paper production, textiles, and detergents, and has pharmaceutical uses.

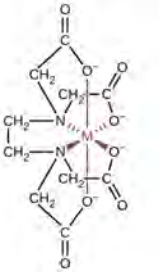


Figure 8.3.16: The ligand EDTA binds tightly to a variety of metal ions by forming hexadentate complexes.

Complexing agents that tie up metal ions are also used as drugs. British Anti-Lewisite (BAL), $HSCH_2CH(SH)CH_2OH$, is a drug developed during World War I as an antidote for the arsenic-based war gas Lewisite. BAL is now used to treat poisoning by heavy metals, such as arsenic, mercury, thallium, and chromium. The drug is a ligand and functions by making a water-soluble chelate of the metal; the kidneys eliminate this metal chelate (Figure 8.3.17). Another polydentate ligand, enterobactin, which is isolated from certain bacteria, is used to form complexes of iron and thereby to control the severe iron buildup found in patients suffering from blood diseases such as Cooley’s anemia, who require frequent transfusions. As the transfused blood breaks down, the usual metabolic processes that remove iron are overloaded, and excess iron can build up to fatal levels. Enterobactin forms a water-soluble complex with excess iron, and the body can safely eliminate this complex.

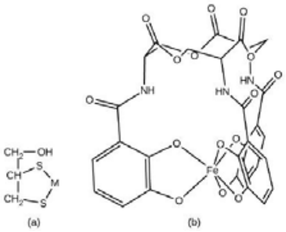


Figure 8.3.17: Coordination complexes are used as drugs. (a) British Anti-Lewisite is used to treat heavy metal poisoning by coordinating metals (M), and enterobactin (b) allows excess iron in the blood to be removed.

✔ Example 8.3.3: Chelation Therapy

Ligands like BAL and enterobactin are important in medical treatments for heavy metal poisoning. However, chelation therapies can disrupt the normal concentration of ions in the body, leading to serious side effects, so researchers are searching for new chelation drugs. One drug that has been developed is dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA), shown in Figure 8.3.18 Identify which atoms in this molecule could act as donor atoms.

Structural formula for <span class=
DMSA
is shown with all of the lone pairs on O and S drawn out. " style="width: 650px; height: 191px;" width="650px" height="191px" data-cke-saved-src="/@api/deki/files/65922/
CNX
_Chem_19_02_DMSA.jpg" src="/@api/deki/files/65922/CNX_Chem_19_02_DMSA.jpg" data-quail-id="607">

Figure 8.3.18: Dimercaptosuccinic acid is used to treat heavy metal poisoning.

Solution

All of the oxygen and sulfur atoms have lone pairs of electrons that can be used to coordinate to a metal center, so there are six possible donor atoms. Geometrically, only two of these atoms can be coordinated to a metal at once. The most common binding mode involves the coordination of one sulfur atom and one oxygen atom, forming a five-member ring with the metal.

? Exercise 8.3.3

Some alternative medicine practitioners recommend chelation treatments for ailments that are not clearly related to heavy metals, such as cancer and autism, although the practice is discouraged by many scientific organizations.[1] Identify at least two biologically important metals that could be disrupted by chelation therapy.

Answer

Ca, Fe, Zn, and Cu

Ligands are also used in the electroplating industry. When metal ions are reduced to produce thin metal coatings, metals can clump together to form clusters and nanoparticles. When metal coordination complexes are used, the ligands keep the metal atoms isolated from each other. It has been found that many metals plate out as a smoother, more uniform, better-looking, and more adherent surface when plated from a bath containing the metal as a complex ion. Thus, complexes such as $[Ag(CN)_2]^-$ and $[Au(CN)_2]^-$ are used extensively in the electroplating industry.

In 1965, scientists at Michigan State University discovered that there was a platinum complex that inhibited cell division in certain microorganisms. Later work showed that the complex was *cis*-diaminedichloroplatinum(II), $[Pt(NH_3)_2(Cl)_2]$, and that the *trans* isomer was not effective. The inhibition of cell division indicated that this square planar compound could be an anticancer agent. In 1978, the US Food and Drug Administration approved this compound, known as cisplatin, for use in the treatment of certain forms of cancer. Since that time, many similar platinum compounds have been developed for the treatment of cancer. In all cases, these are the *cis* isomers and never the *trans* isomers. The diamine $(NH_3)_2$ portion is retained with other groups, replacing the dichloro $[(Cl)_2]$ portion. The newer drugs include carboplatin, oxaliplatin, and satraplatin.

Summary

The transition elements and main group elements can form coordination compounds, or complexes, in which a central metal atom or ion is bonded to one or more ligands by coordinate covalent bonds. Ligands with more than one donor atom are called polydentate ligands and form chelates. The common geometries found in complexes are tetrahedral and square planar (both with a coordination number of four) and octahedral (with a coordination number of six). *Cis* and *trans* configurations are possible in some octahedral and square planar complexes. In addition to these geometrical isomers, optical isomers (molecules or ions that are mirror images but not superimposable) are possible in certain octahedral complexes. Coordination complexes have a wide variety of uses including oxygen transport in blood, water purification, and pharmaceutical use.

Footnotes

1. National Council against Health Fraud, *NCAHF Policy Statement on Chelation Therapy*, (Peabody, MA, 2002).

Glossary

bidentate ligand

ligand that coordinates to one central metal through coordinate bonds from two different atoms

central metal

ion or atom to which one or more ligands is attached through coordinate covalent bonds

chelate

complex formed from a polydentate ligand attached to a central metal

chelating ligand

ligand that attaches to a central metal ion by bonds from two or more donor atoms

***cis* configuration**

configuration of a geometrical isomer in which two similar groups are on the same side of an imaginary reference line on the molecule

coordination compound

substance consisting of atoms, molecules, or ions attached to a central atom through Lewis acid-base interactions

coordination number

number of coordinate covalent bonds to the central metal atom in a complex or the number of closest contacts to an atom in a crystalline form

coordination sphere

central metal atom or ion plus the attached ligands of a complex

donor atom

atom in a ligand with a lone pair of electrons that forms a coordinate covalent bond to a central metal

ionization isomer

(or coordination isomer) isomer in which an anionic ligand is replaced by the counter ion in the inner coordination sphere

ligand

ion or neutral molecule attached to the central metal ion in a coordination compound

linkage isomer

coordination compound that possesses a ligand that can bind to the transition metal in two different ways (CN^- vs. NC^-)

monodentate

ligand that attaches to a central metal through just one coordinate covalent bond

optical isomer

(also, enantiomer) molecule that is a nonsuperimposable mirror image with identical chemical and physical properties, except when it reacts with other optical isomers

polydentate ligand

ligand that is attached to a central metal ion by bonds from two or more donor atoms, named with prefixes specifying how many donors are present (e.g., hexadentate = six coordinate bonds formed)

***trans* configuration**

configuration of a geometrical isomer in which two similar groups are on opposite sides of an imaginary reference line on the molecule

---

8.4: Structure and Isomerization

Learning Objectives

- To understand that there may be more than one way to arrange the same groups around the same atom with the same geometry (stereochemistry).

Two compounds that have the same formula and the same connectivity do not always have the same shape. There are two reasons why this may happen. In one case, the molecule may be flexible, so that it can twist into different shapes via rotation around individual sigma bonds. This phenomenon is called conformation, and it is covered in a different chapter. The second case occurs when two molecules appear to be connected the same way on paper, but are connected in two different ways in three dimensional space. These two, different molecules are called **stereoisomers**.

One simple example of stereoisomers from inorganic chemistry is diammine platinum dichloride, $(NH_3)_2PtCl_2$. This important compound is sometimes called "platin" for short. As the formula implies, it contains a platinum ion that is coordinated to two ammonia ligands and two chloride ligands (remember, a ligand in inorganic chemistry is an electron donor that is attached to a metal atom, donating a pair of electrons to form a bond).

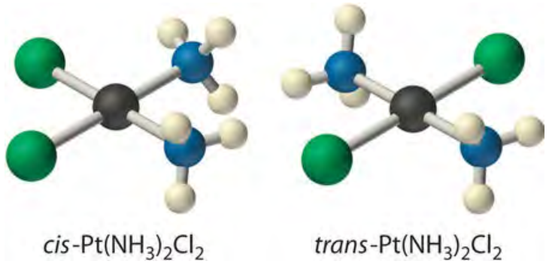


Figure 8.4.1: Two stereoisomers. The atoms are connected to each other in the same order, but differ in their three-dimensional relationships. (left) The cis-Platin compound is square planar at platinum and is flat when viewed from the edge, and square when viewed from the face. (right) The trans-Platin compound is connected in the same way as in cis-platin, and is still square planar, but there is a different 3-dimensional arrangement

Platin is an example of a coordination compound. The way the different pieces of coordination compounds bond together is discussed in the chapter of Lewis acids and bases. For reasons arising from molecular orbital interactions, platin has a square planar geometry at the platinum atom. That arrangement results in two possible ways the ligands could be connected. The two sets of like ligands could be connected on the same side of the square or on opposite corners.

These two arrangements result in two different compounds; they are isomers that differ only in three-dimensional space.

- The one with the two amines beside each other is called cis-platin.
- These two ligands are 90 degrees from each other.
- The one with the amines across from each other is trans-platin.
- These two ligands are 180 degrees from each other.

CIS/TRANS isomers have different physical properties

Although these two compounds are very similar, they have slightly different physical properties. Both are yellow compounds that decompose when heated to 270 degrees C, but trans-platin forms pale yellow crystals and is more soluble than cis-platin in water.

CIS/TRANS isomers have different biological properties

Cis-platin has clinical importance in the treatment of ovarian and testicular cancers. The biological mechanism of the drug's action was long suspected to involve binding of the platinum by DNA. Further details were worked out by MIT chemist Steve Lippard and graduate student Amy Rosenzweig in the 1990's. Inside the cell nucleus, the two ammines in cis-platin can be replaced by nitrogen donors from a DNA strand. To donate to the Lewis acidic platinum, the DNA molecule must bend slightly. Normally that bend is detected and repaired by proteins in the cell. However, ovarian and testicular cells happen to contain a protein that is just the right shape to fit around this slightly bent DNA strand. The DNA strand becomes lodged in the protein and can't be displaced, and so it is unable to bind with other proteins used in DNA replication. The cell becomes unable to replicate, and so cancerous growth is stopped.

? Exercise 8.4.1

Draw the cis and trans isomers of the following compounds:

a. $(NH_3)_2IrCl(CO)$
b. $(H_3P)_2PtHBr$
c. $(AsH_3)_2PtH(CO)$

? Exercise 8.4.2

Only one isomer of (tmeda)$PtCl_2$ is possible [tmeda = $(CH_3)_2NCH_2CH_2N(CH_3)_2$; both nitrogens connect to the platinum]. Draw this isomer and explain why the other isomer is not possible.

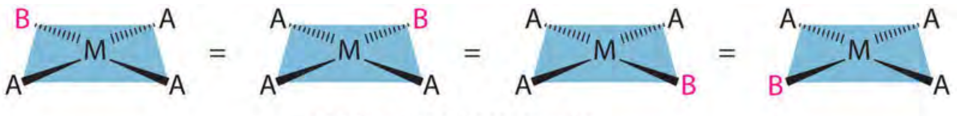
Geometric Isomers

The existence of coordination compounds with the same formula but different arrangements of the ligands was crucial in the development of coordination chemistry. Two or more compounds with the same formula but different arrangements of the atoms are called **isomers**. Because isomers usually have different physical and chemical properties, it is important to know which isomer we are dealing with if more than one isomer is possible. Recall that in many cases more than one structure is possible for organic compounds with the same molecular formula; examples discussed previously include n-butane versus isobutane and cis-2-butene versus trans-2-butene. As we will see, coordination compounds exhibit the same types of isomers as organic compounds, as well as several kinds of isomers that are unique.

Planar Isomers

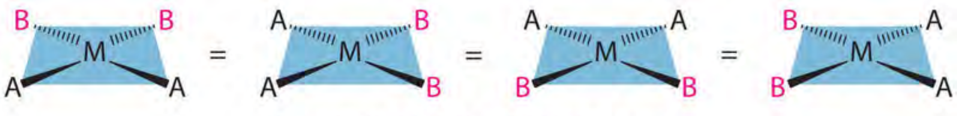
Metal complexes that differ only in which ligands are adjacent to one another (**cis**) or directly across from one another (**trans**) in the coordination sphere of the metal are called geometrical isomers. They are most important for square planar and octahedral complexes.

Because all vertices of a square are equivalent, it does not matter which vertex is occupied by the ligand B in a square planar MA_3B complex; hence only a single geometrical isomer is possible in this case (and in the analogous MAB_3 case). All four structures shown here are chemically identical because they can be superimposed simply by rotating the complex in space:

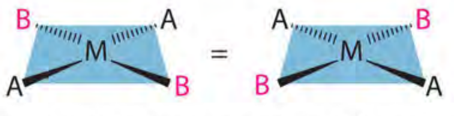


MA_3B square planar complex

For an MA_2B_2 complex, there are two possible isomers: either the A ligands can be adjacent to one another (cis), in which case the B ligands must also be cis, or the A ligands can be across from one another (trans), in which case the B ligands must also be trans. Even though it is possible to draw the cis isomer in four different ways and the trans isomer in two different ways, all members of each set are chemically equivalent:



MA_2B_2 square planar complex, *cis* isomer

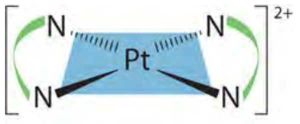


MA_2B_2 square planar complex, *trans* isomer

Figure 8.4.1).

The anticancer drug cisplatin and its inactive trans isomer. Cisplatin is especially effective against tumors of the reproductive organs, which primarily affect individuals in their 20s and were notoriously difficult to cure. For example, after being diagnosed with metastasized testicular cancer in 1991 and given only a 50% chance of survival, Lance Armstrong was cured by treatment with cisplatin.

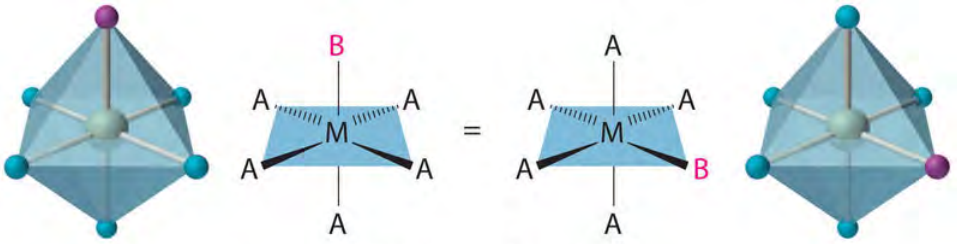
Square planar complexes that contain symmetrical bidentate ligands, such as $[Pt(en)_2]^{2+}$, have only one possible structure, in which curved lines linking the two N atoms indicate the ethylenediamine ligands:



$[Pt(en)_2]^{2+}$

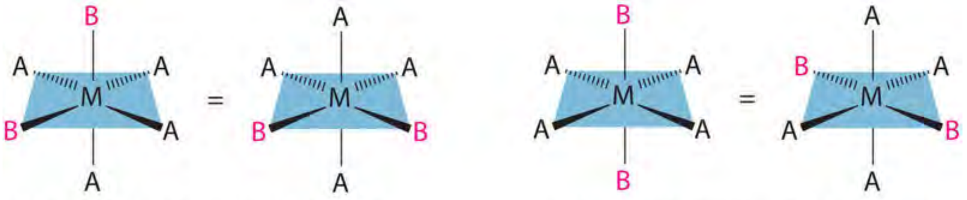
Octahedral Isomers

Octahedral complexes also exhibit cis and trans isomers. Like square planar complexes, only one structure is possible for octahedral complexes in which only one ligand is different from the other five (MA_5B). Even though we usually draw an octahedron in a way that suggests that the four “in-plane” ligands are different from the two “axial” ligands, in fact all six vertices of an octahedron are equivalent. Consequently, no matter how we draw an MA_5B structure, it can be superimposed on any other representation simply by rotating the molecule in space. Two of the many possible orientations of an MA_5B structure are as follows:



MA_5B octahedral complex

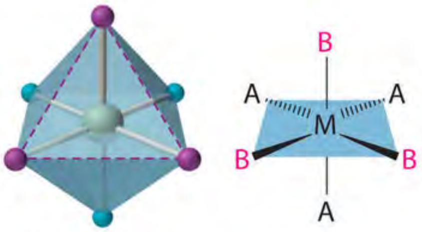
If two ligands in an octahedral complex are different from the other four, giving an MA_4B_2 complex, two isomers are possible. The two B ligands can be cis or trans. Cis- and trans-$[Co(NH_3)_4Cl_2]Cl$ are examples of this type of system:



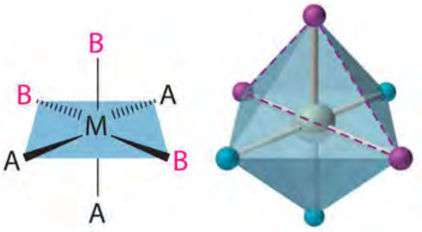
MA_4B_2 octahedral complex, *cis* isomer

MA_4B_2 octahedral complex, *trans* isomer

Replacing another A ligand by B gives an MA_3B_3 complex for which there are also two possible isomers. In one, the three ligands of each kind occupy opposite triangular faces of the octahedron; this is called the fac isomer (for facial). In the other, the three ligands of each kind lie on what would be the meridian if the complex were viewed as a sphere; this is called the mer isomer (for meridional):



MA_3B_3 octahedral complex, *fac* isomer



MA_3B_3 octahedral complex, *mer* isomer

Example 8.4.1

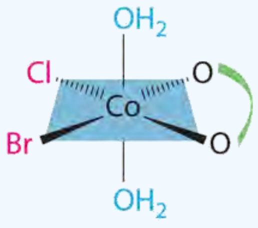
Draw all the possible geometrical isomers for the complex $[Co(H_2O)_2(ox)BrCl]^-$, where ox is $^-O_2CCO_2^-$, which stands for oxalate.

Given: formula of complex

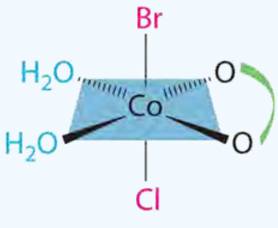
Asked for: structures of geometrical isomers

Solution

This complex contains one bidentate ligand (oxalate), which can occupy only adjacent (cis) positions, and four monodentate ligands, two of which are identical (H_2O). The easiest way to attack the problem is to go through the various combinations of ligands systematically to determine which ligands can be trans. Thus either the water ligands can be trans to one another or the two halide ligands can be trans to one another, giving the two geometrical isomers shown here:

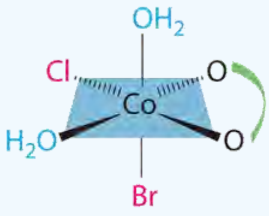


H₂O's *trans*

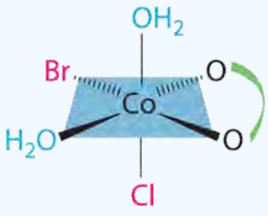


Br, Cl *trans*

In addition, two structures are possible in which one of the halides is trans to a water ligand. In the first, the chloride ligand is in the same plane as the oxalate ligand and trans to one of the oxalate oxygens. Exchanging the chloride and bromide ligands gives the other, in which the bromide ligand is in the same plane as the oxalate ligand and trans to one of the oxalate oxygens:



H₂O's *cis*; Br, Cl *cis*;
Cl *trans* to O



H₂O's *cis*; Br, Cl *cis*;
Br *trans* to O

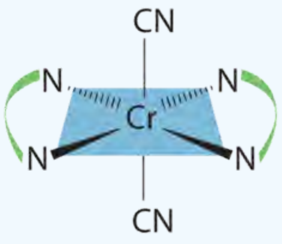
This complex can therefore exist as four different geometrical isomers.

Exercise 8.4.1

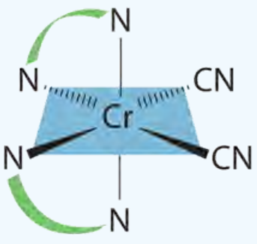
Draw all the possible geometrical isomers for the complex $[Cr(en)_2(CN)_2]^+$.

Answer

Two geometrical isomers are possible: trans and cis.



trans



cis

Summary

Many metal complexes form isomers, which are two or more compounds with the same formula but different arrangements of atoms. Structural isomers differ in which atoms are bonded to one another, while geometrical isomers differ only in the arrangement of ligands around the metal ion. Ligands adjacent to one another are cis, while ligands across from one another are trans.

Contributors and Attributions

- Chris P Schaller, Ph.D., (College of Saint Benedict / Saint John's University)

8.5: Bonding in Coordinate Compounds

Learning Objectives

- To understand how crystal field theory explains the electronic structures and colors of metal complexes.

One of the most striking characteristics of transition-metal complexes is the wide range of colors they exhibit. In this section, we describe crystal field theory (CFT), a bonding model that explains many important properties of transition-metal complexes, including their colors, magnetism, structures, stability, and reactivity. The central assumption of CFT is that metal–ligand interactions are purely electrostatic in nature. Even though this assumption is clearly not valid for many complexes, such as those that contain neutral ligands like CO, CFT enables chemists to explain many of the properties of transition-metal complexes with a reasonable degree of accuracy. The Learning Objective of this Module is to understand how crystal field theory explains the electronic structures and colors of metal complexes.

d-Orbital Splittings

CFT focuses on the interaction of the five (n − 1)d orbitals with ligands arranged in a regular array around a transition-metal ion. We will focus on the application of CFT to octahedral complexes, which are by far the most common and the easiest to visualize. Other common structures, such as square planar complexes, can be treated as a distortion of the octahedral model. According to CFT, an octahedral metal complex forms because of the electrostatic interaction of a positively charged metal ion with six negatively charged ligands or with the negative ends of dipoles associated with the six ligands. In addition, the ligands interact with one other electrostatically. As you learned in our discussion of the valence-shell electron-pair repulsion (VSEPR) model, the lowest-energy arrangement of six identical negative charges is an octahedron, which minimizes repulsive interactions between the ligands.

We begin by considering how the energies of the d orbitals of a transition-metal ion are affected by an octahedral arrangement of six negative charges. Recall that the five d orbitals are initially degenerate (have the same energy). If we distribute six negative charges uniformly over the surface of a sphere, the d orbitals remain degenerate, but their energy will be higher due to repulsive electrostatic interactions between the spherical shell of negative charge and electrons in the d orbitals (Figure $8.5.1a$). Placing the six negative charges at the vertices of an octahedron does not change the average energy of the d orbitals, but it does remove their degeneracy: the five d orbitals split into two groups whose energies depend on their orientations. As shown in Figure $8.5.1b$, the d_{z^2} and $d_{x^2-y^2}$ orbitals point directly at the six negative charges located on the x, y, and z axes. Consequently, the energy of an electron in these two orbitals (collectively labeled the e_g orbitals) will be greater than it will be for a spherical distribution of negative charge because of increased electrostatic repulsions. In contrast, the other three d orbitals (d_{xy}, d_{xz}, and d_{yz}, collectively called the t_{2g} orbitals) are all oriented at a 45° angle to the coordinate axes, so they point between the six negative charges. The energy of an electron in any of these three orbitals is lower than the energy for a spherical distribution of negative charge.

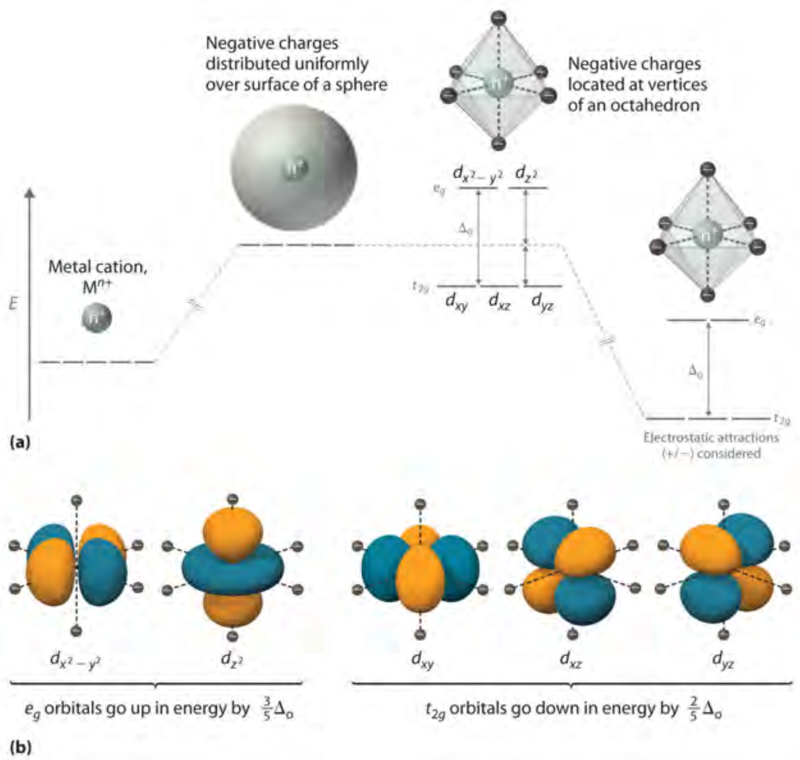


Figure 8.5.1: An Octahedral Arrangement of Six Negative Charges around a Metal Ion Causes the Five d Orbitals to Split into Two Sets with Different Energies. (a) Distributing a charge of −6 uniformly over a spherical surface surrounding a metal ion causes the energy of all five d orbitals to increase due to electrostatic repulsions, but the five d orbitals remain degenerate. Placing a charge of −1 at each vertex of an octahedron causes the d orbitals to split into two groups with different energies: the $d_{x^2-y^2}$ and d_{z^2} orbitals increase in energy, while the, d_{xy}, d_{xz}, and d_{yz} orbitals decrease in energy. The average energy of the five d orbitals is the same as for a spherical distribution of a −6 charge, however. Attractive electrostatic interactions between the negatively charged ligands and the positively charged metal ion (far right) cause all five d orbitals to decrease in energy but does not affect the splittings of the orbitals. (b) The two e_g orbitals (left) point directly at the six negatively charged ligands, which increases their energy compared with a spherical distribution of negative charge. In contrast, the three t_{2g} orbitals (right) point between the negatively charged ligands, which decreases their energy compared with a spherical distribution of charge.

The difference in energy between the two sets of d orbitals is called the crystal field splitting energy (Δ_o), where the subscript o stands for octahedral. As we shall see, the magnitude of the splitting depends on the charge on the metal ion, the position of the metal in the periodic table, and the nature of the ligands. (Crystal field splitting energy also applies to tetrahedral complexes: Δ_t.) It is important to note that the splitting of the d orbitals in a crystal field does not change the total energy of the five d orbitals: the two e_g orbitals increase in energy by $0.6\Delta_o$, whereas the three t_{2g} orbitals decrease in energy by $0.4\Delta_o$. Thus the total change in energy is

$$2(0.6\Delta_o)+3(-0.4\Delta_o)=0.$$

> *Crystal field splitting does not change the total energy of the d orbitals.*

Thus far, we have considered only the effect of repulsive electrostatic interactions between electrons in the d orbitals and the six negatively charged ligands, which increases the total energy of the system and splits the d orbitals. Interactions between the positively charged metal ion and the ligands results in a net stabilization of the system, which decreases the energy of all five d orbitals without affecting their splitting (as shown at the far right in Figure 8.5.1a).

Electronic Structures of Metal Complexes

We can use the d-orbital energy-level diagram in Figure 8.5.1 to predict electronic structures and some of the properties of transition-metal complexes. We start with the Ti^{3+} ion, which contains a single d electron, and proceed across the first row of the transition metals by adding a single electron at a time. We place additional electrons in the lowest-energy orbital available, while keeping their spins parallel as required by Hund's rule. As shown in Figure 24.6.2, for d^1–d^3 systems—such as $[Ti(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$, $[V(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$, and $[Cr(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$, respectively—the electrons successively occupy the three degenerate t_{2g} orbitals with their spins parallel, giving one, two, and three unpaired electrons, respectively. We can summarize this for the complex $[Cr(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$, for example, by saying that the chromium ion has a d^3 electron configuration or, more succinctly, Cr^{3+} is a d^3 ion.

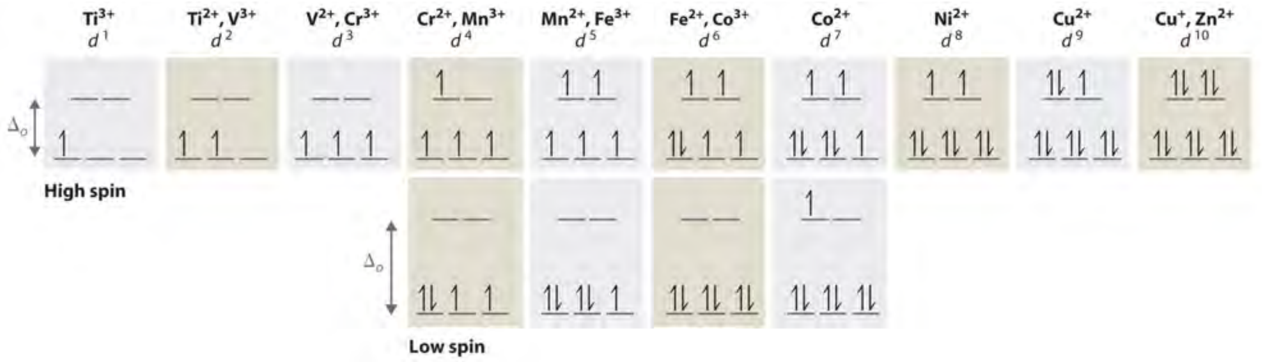


Figure 8.5.2: The Possible Electron Configurations for Octahedral d^n Transition-Metal Complexes (n = 1–10). Two different configurations are possible for octahedral complexes of metals with d^4, d^5, d^6, and d^7 configurations; the magnitude of Δ_o determines which configuration is observed.

When we reach the d^4 configuration, there are two possible choices for the fourth electron: it can occupy either one of the empty e_g orbitals or one of the singly occupied t_{2g} orbitals. Recall that placing an electron in an already occupied orbital results in electrostatic repulsions that increase the energy of the system; this increase in energy is called the spin-pairing energy (P). If Δ_o is less than P, then the lowest-energy arrangement has the fourth electron in one of the empty e_g orbitals. Because this arrangement results in four unpaired electrons, it is called a high-spin configuration, and a complex with this electron configuration, such as the $[Cr(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ ion, is called a high-spin complex. Conversely, if Δ_o is greater than P, then the lowest-energy arrangement has the fourth electron in one of the occupied t_{2g} orbitals. Because this arrangement results in only two unpaired electrons, it is called a low-spin configuration, and a complex with this electron configuration, such as the $[Mn(CN)_6]^{3-}$ ion, is called a low-spin complex. Similarly, metal ions with the d^5, d^6, or d^7 electron configurations can be either high spin or low spin, depending on the magnitude of Δ_o.

In contrast, only one arrangement of d electrons is possible for metal ions with d^8–d^{10} electron configurations. For example, the $[Ni(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ ion is d^8 with two unpaired electrons, the $[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ ion is d^9 with one unpaired electron, and the $[Zn(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ ion is d^{10} with no unpaired electrons.

> *If Δ_o is less than the spin-pairing energy, a high-spin configuration results. Conversely, if Δ_o is greater, a low-spin configuration forms.*

Factors That Affect the Magnitude of Δ_o

The magnitude of Δ_o dictates whether a complex with four, five, six, or seven d electrons is high spin or low spin, which affects its magnetic properties, structure, and reactivity. Large values of Δ_o (i.e., $\Delta_o > P$) yield a low-spin complex, whereas small values of Δ_o (i.e., $\Delta_o < P$) produce a high-spin complex. As we noted, the magnitude of Δ_o depends on three factors: the charge on the metal ion, the principal quantum number of the metal (and thus its location in the periodic table), and the nature of the ligand. Values of Δ_o for some representative transition-metal complexes are given in Table 8.5.1.

Table 8.5.1: Crystal Field Splitting Energies for Some Octahedral (Δ_o)* and Tetrahedral (Δ_t) Transition-Metal Complexes

Octahedral Complexes	**Δ_o (cm^{-1})**	**Octahedral Complexes**	**Δ_o (cm^{-1})**	**Tetrahedral Complexes**	**Δ_t (cm^{-1})**
$[Ti(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$	20,300	$[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$	32,800	VCl_4	9010
$[V(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$	12,600	$[Fe(CN)_6]^{3-}$	35,000	$[CoCl_4]^{2-}$	3300
$[V(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$	18,900	$[CoF_6]^{3-}$	13,000	$[CoBr_4]^{2-}$	2900
$[CrCl_6]^{3-}$	13,000	$[Co(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$	9300	$[CoI_4]^{2-}$	2700
$[Cr(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$	13,900	$[Co(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$	27,000		

*Energies obtained by spectroscopic measurements are often given in units of wave numbers (cm^{-1}); the wave number is the reciprocal of the wavelength of the corresponding electromagnetic radiation expressed in centimeters: 1 cm^{-1} = 11.96 J/mol.

Octahedral Complexes	**Δ_o (cm^{-1})**	**Octahedral Complexes**	**Δ_o (cm^{-1})**	**Tetrahedral Complexes**	**Δ_t (cm^{-1})**
$[Cr(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$	17,400	$[Co(NH_3)_6]^{3+}$	22,900		
$[Cr(NH_3)_6]^{3+}$	21,500	$[Co(CN)_6]^{3-}$	34,800		
$[Cr(CN)_6]^{3-}$	26,600	$[Ni(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$	8500		
$Cr(CO)_6$	34,150	$[Ni(NH_3)_6]^{2+}$	10,800		
$[MnCl_6]^{4-}$	7500	$[RhCl_6]^{3-}$	20,400		
$[Mn(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$	8500	$[Rh(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$	27,000		
$[MnCl_6]^{3-}$	20,000	$[Rh(NH_3)_6]^{3+}$	34,000		
$[Mn(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$	21,000	$[Rh(CN)_6]^{3-}$	45,500		
$[Fe(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$	10,400	$[IrCl_6]^{3-}$	25,000		
$[Fe(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$	14,300	$[Ir(NH_3)_6]^{3+}$	41,000		

*Energies obtained by spectroscopic measurements are often given in units of wave numbers (cm^{-1}); the wave number is the reciprocal of the wavelength of the corresponding electromagnetic radiation expressed in centimeters: 1 cm^{-1} = 11.96 J/mol.

Source of data: Duward F. Shriver, Peter W. Atkins, and Cooper H. Langford, Inorganic Chemistry, 2nd ed. (New York: W. H. Freeman and Company, 1994).

Charge on the Metal Ion

Increasing the charge on a metal ion has two effects: the radius of the metal ion decreases, and negatively charged ligands are more strongly attracted to it. Both factors decrease the metal–ligand distance, which in turn causes the negatively charged ligands to interact more strongly with the d orbitals. Consequently, the magnitude of Δ_o increases as the charge on the metal ion increases. Typically, Δ_o for a tripositive ion is about 50% greater than for the dipositive ion of the same metal; for example, for $[V(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$, Δ_o = 11,800 cm^{-1}; for $[V(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$, Δ_o = 17,850 cm^{-1}.

Principal Quantum Number of the Metal

For a series of complexes of metals from the same group in the periodic table with the same charge and the same ligands, the magnitude of Δ_o increases with increasing principal quantum number: Δ_o (3d) < Δ_o (4d) < Δ_o (5d). The data for hexaammine complexes of the trivalent group 9 metals illustrate this point:

$$[Co(NH_3)_6]^{3+}: \Delta_o = 22{,}900 \text{ cm}^{-1}$$

$$[Rh(NH_3)_6]^{3+}: \Delta_o = 34{,}100 \text{ cm}^{-1}$$

$$[Ir(NH_3)_6]^{3+}: \Delta_o = 40{,}000 \text{ cm}^{-1}$$

The increase in Δ_o with increasing principal quantum number is due to the larger radius of valence orbitals down a column. In addition, repulsive ligand–ligand interactions are most important for smaller metal ions. Relatively speaking, this results in shorter M–L distances and stronger d orbital–ligand interactions.

The Nature of the Ligands

Experimentally, it is found that the Δ_o observed for a series of complexes of the same metal ion depends strongly on the nature of the ligands. For a series of chemically similar ligands, the magnitude of Δ_o decreases as the size of the donor atom increases. For example, Δ_o values for halide complexes generally decrease in the order F$^-$ > Cl$^-$ > Br$^-$ > I− because smaller, more localized charges, such as we see for F$^-$, interact more strongly with the d orbitals of the metal ion. In addition, a small neutral ligand with a highly localized lone pair, such as NH_3, results in significantly larger Δ_o values than might be expected. Because the lone pair points directly at the metal ion, the electron density along the M–L axis is greater than for a spherical anion such as F$^-$. The experimentally observed order of the crystal field splitting energies produced by different ligands is called the spectrochemical series, shown here in order of decreasing Δ_o:

$$\underset{\text{strong-field ligands}}{CO \approx CN^-} > NO_2^- > en > NH_3 > \underset{\text{intermediate-field ligands}}{SCN^- > H_2O > oxalate^{2-}} > OH^- > F > acetate^- > Cl^- > \underset{\text{weak-field ligands}}{Br^- > I^-}$$

The values of Δ_o listed in Table 8.5.1 illustrate the effects of the charge on the metal ion, the principal quantum number of the metal, and the nature of the ligand.

> *The largest Δ_o splittings are found in complexes of metal ions from the third row of the transition metals with charges of at least +3 and ligands with localized lone pairs of electrons.*

Colors of Transition-Metal Complexes

The striking colors exhibited by transition-metal complexes are caused by excitation of an electron from a lower-energy d orbital to a higher-energy d orbital, which is called a d–d transition (Figure 24.6.3). For a photon to effect such a transition, its energy must be equal to the difference in energy between the two d orbitals, which depends on the magnitude of Δ_o.

Figure 8.5.3: A d–d Transition. In a d–d transition, an electron in one of the t_{2g} orbitals of an octahedral complex such as the $[Cr(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ ion absorbs a photon of light with energy equal to Δ_o, which causes the electron to move to an empty or singly occupied e_g orbital.

Recall that the color we observe when we look at an object or a compound is due to light that is transmitted or reflected, not light that is absorbed, and that reflected or transmitted light is complementary in color to the light that is absorbed. Thus a green compound absorbs light in the red portion of the visible spectrum and vice versa, as indicated by the color wheel. Because the energy of a photon of light is inversely proportional to its wavelength, the color of a complex depends on the magnitude of Δ_o, which depends on the structure of the complex. For example, the complex $[Cr(NH_3)_6]^{3+}$ has strong-field ligands and a relatively large Δ_o. Consequently, it absorbs relatively high-energy photons, corresponding to blue-violet light, which gives it a yellow color. A related complex with weak-field ligands, the $[Cr(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ ion, absorbs lower-energy photons corresponding to the yellow-green portion of the visible spectrum, giving it a deep violet color.

We can now understand why emeralds and rubies have such different colors, even though both contain Cr^{3+} in an octahedral environment provided by six oxide ions. Although the chemical identity of the six ligands is the same in both cases, the Cr–O distances are different because the compositions of the host lattices are different (Al_2O_3 in rubies and $Be_3Al_2Si_6O_{18}$ in emeralds). In ruby, the Cr–O distances are relatively short because of the constraints of the host lattice, which increases the d orbital–ligand interactions and makes Δ_o relatively large. Consequently, rubies absorb green light and the transmitted or reflected light is red, which gives the gem its characteristic color. In emerald, the Cr–O distances are longer due to relatively large $[Si_6O_{18}]^{12-}$ silicate rings; this results in decreased d orbital–ligand interactions and a smaller Δ_o. Consequently, emeralds absorb light of a longer wavelength (red), which gives the gem its characteristic green color. It is clear that the environment of the transition-metal ion, which is determined by the host lattice, dramatically affects the spectroscopic properties of a metal ion.

Gem-quality crystals of ruby and emerald. The colors of both minerals are due to the presence of small amounts of Cr^{3+} impurities in octahedral sites in an otherwise colorless metal oxide lattice.

Crystal Field Stabilization Energies

Recall that stable molecules contain more electrons in the lower-energy (bonding) molecular orbitals in a molecular orbital diagram than in the higher-energy (antibonding) molecular orbitals. If the lower-energy set of d orbitals (the t_{2g} orbitals) is selectively populated by electrons, then the stability of the complex increases. For example, the single d electron in a d^1 complex such as $[Ti(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ is located in one of the t_{2g} orbitals. Consequently, this complex will be more stable than expected on purely electrostatic grounds by $0.4\Delta_o$. The additional stabilization of a metal complex by selective population of the lower-energy d orbitals is called its crystal field stabilization energy (CFSE). The CFSE of a complex can be calculated by multiplying the number of electrons in t_{2g} orbitals by the energy of those orbitals ($-0.4\Delta_o$), multiplying the number of electrons in e_g orbitals by the energy of those orbitals ($+0.6\Delta_o$), and summing the two. Table 8.5.2 gives CFSE values for octahedral complexes with different d electron configurations. The CFSE is highest for low-spin d^6 complexes, which accounts in part for the extraordinarily large number of Co(III) complexes known. The other low-spin configurations also have high CFSEs, as does the d^3 configuration.

Table 8.5.2: CFSEs for Octahedral Complexes with Different Electron Configurations (in Units of Δo)

	High Spin	CFSE (Δ_o)	Low Spin	CFSE (Δ_o)

	High Spin		CFSE (Δ_o)	Low Spin		CFSE (Δ_o)
d^0			0			
d^1	↿		0.4			
d^2	↿ ↿		0.8			
d^3	↿ ↿ ↿		1.2			
d^4	↿ ↿ ↿	↿	0.6	↿⇂ ↿ ↿		1.6
d^5	↿ ↿ ↿	↿ ↿	0.0	↿⇂ ↿⇂ ↿		2.0
d^6	↿⇂ ↿ ↿	↿ ↿	0.4	↿⇂ ↿⇂ ↿⇂		2.4
d^7	↿⇂ ↿⇂ ↿	↿ ↿	0.8	↿⇂ ↿⇂ ↿⇂	↿	1.8
d^8	↿⇂ ↿⇂ ↿⇂	↿ ↿	1.2			
d^9	↿⇂ ↿⇂ ↿⇂	↿⇂ ↿	0.6			
d^{10}	↿⇂ ↿⇂ ↿⇂	↿⇂ ↿⇂	0.0			

CFSEs are important for two reasons. First, the existence of CFSE nicely accounts for the difference between experimentally measured values for bond energies in metal complexes and values calculated based solely on electrostatic interactions. Second, CFSEs represent relatively large amounts of energy (up to several hundred kilojoules per mole), which has important chemical consequences.

> *Octahedral d^3 and d^8 complexes and low-spin d^6, d^5, d^7, and d^4 complexes exhibit large CFSEs.*

✓ Example 8.5.1

For each complex, predict its structure, whether it is high spin or low spin, and the number of unpaired electrons present.

a. $[CoF_6]^{3-}$
b. $[Rh(CO)_2Cl_2]^-$

Given: complexes

Asked for: structure, high spin versus low spin, and the number of unpaired electrons

Strategy:

a. From the number of ligands, determine the coordination number of the compound.
b. Classify the ligands as either strong field or weak field and determine the electron configuration of the metal ion.
c. Predict the relative magnitude of Δ_o and decide whether the compound is high spin or low spin.
d. Place the appropriate number of electrons in the d orbitals and determine the number of unpaired electrons.

Solution

a. A With six ligands, we expect this complex to be octahedral.

B The fluoride ion is a small anion with a concentrated negative charge, but compared with ligands with localized lone pairs of electrons, it is weak field. The charge on the metal ion is +3, giving a d^6 electron configuration.

C Because of the weak-field ligands, we expect a relatively small Δ_o, making the compound high spin.

D In a high-spin octahedral d^6 complex, the first five electrons are placed individually in each of the d orbitals with their spins parallel, and the sixth electron is paired in one of the t_{2g} orbitals, giving four unpaired electrons.

b. A This complex has four ligands, so it is either square planar or tetrahedral.

B C Because rhodium is a second-row transition metal ion with a d^8 electron configuration and CO is a strong-field ligand, the complex is likely to be square planar with a large Δ_o, making it low spin. Because the strongest d-orbital interactions are along the x and y axes, the orbital energies increase in the order $d_{z^2}d_{yz}$, and d_{xz} (these are degenerate); d_{xy}; and $d_{x^2-y^2}$.

D The eight electrons occupy the first four of these orbitals, leaving the $d_{x^2-y^2}$. orbital empty. Thus there are no unpaired electrons.

? Exercise 8.5.1

For each complex, predict its structure, whether it is high spin or low spin, and the number of unpaired electrons present.

a. $[Mn(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$
b. $[PtCl_4]^{2-}$

Answers

a. octahedral; high spin; five
b. square planar; low spin; no unpaired electrons

Summary

Crystal field theory, which assumes that metal–ligand interactions are only electrostatic in nature, explains many important properties of transition-metal complexes, including their colors, magnetism, structures, stability, and reactivity. Crystal field theory (CFT) is a bonding model that explains many properties of transition metals that cannot be explained using valence bond theory. In CFT, complex formation is assumed to be due to electrostatic interactions between a central metal ion and a set of negatively charged ligands or ligand dipoles arranged around the metal ion. Depending on the arrangement of the ligands, the d orbitals split into sets of orbitals with different energies. The difference between the energy levels in an octahedral complex is called the crystal field splitting energy (Δ_o), whose magnitude depends on the charge on the metal ion, the position of the metal in the periodic table, and the nature of the ligands. The spin-pairing energy (P) is the increase in energy that occurs when an electron is added to an already occupied orbital. A high-spin configuration occurs when the Δ_o is less than P, which produces complexes with the maximum number of unpaired electrons possible. Conversely, a low-spin configuration occurs when the Δ_o is greater than P, which produces complexes with the minimum number of unpaired electrons possible. Strong-field ligands interact strongly with the d orbitals of the metal ions and give a large Δ_o, whereas weak-field ligands interact more weakly and give a smaller Δ_o. The colors of transition-metal complexes depend on the environment of the metal ion and can be explained by CFT.

8.6: Applications of Coordination Compounds

Chelating Agents for Poising (EDTA)

Biomolecules (Porphorins and Hemoglogin)

Drugs and Health (cis-Platin)

Learning Objectives

- To become familiar with some of the roles of transition-metal complexes in biological systems.

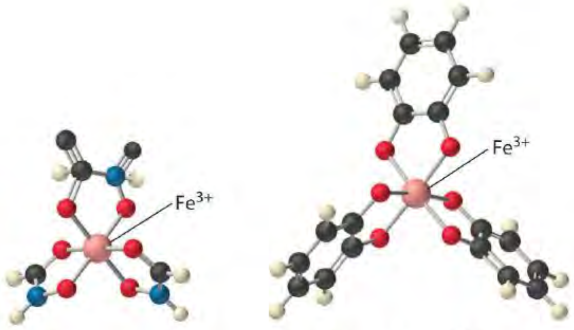
In this section, we describe several systems that illustrate the roles transition metals play in biological systems. Our goal is for you to understand why the chemical properties of these elements make them essential for life. We begin with a discussion of the strategies organisms use to extract transition metals from their environment. The section continues with a brief discussion of the use of transition metals in reactions that involve the transfer of electrons, reactions of small molecules such as O_2, Lewis-acid catalysis, and the generation of reactive organic radicals.

Uptake and Storage of Transition Metals

There are three possible dietary levels for any essential element: deficient, optimal, and toxic, in order of increasing concentration in the diet. If the concentration of an essential element in the diet is too low, an organism must be able to extract the element from the environment and concentrate it. If the concentration of an essential element in the diet is too high, an organism must be able to limit its intake to avoid toxic effects. Moreover, organisms must be able to switch off the uptake process rapidly if dietary levels rise suddenly, and they must be able to store essential elements for future use.

Three distinct steps are involved in transition metal uptake. First, the metal must be “mobilized” from the environment and brought into contact with a cell in a form that can be absorbed. Second, the metal must be transported across the cell membrane into the cell. Third, the element must be transported to its point of utilization within a cell or to other cells within the organism. In our discussion, we focus on the uptake, transport, and storage of iron, which illustrates the most important points. Because iron deficiency (anemia) is the most widespread nutritional deficiency known in humans, the uptake of iron is especially well understood.

Hydroxamate ligand (1−) Catecholate ligand (2−)



Fe(hydroxamate)$_3$ Fe(catecholate)$_3^{3-}$

Iron complexes in biological systems. Iron(III) forms very stable octahedral complexes with hydroxamate and catecholate ligands.

The solubility of metal ions such as Fe^{3+}, which form highly insoluble hydroxides, depends on the pH and the presence of complexing agents. In an oxygen-containing atmosphere, iron exists as Fe(III) because of the positive reduction potential of Fe^{3+} ($Fe^{3+} + e^- \rightarrow Fe^{2+}$; $E° = +0.77$ V). Because ferric hydroxide [$Fe(OH)_3$] is highly insoluble ($K_{sp} \approx 1 \times 10^{-39}$), the equilibrium concentration of $Fe^{3+}(aq)$ at pH 7.0 is very low, about 10^{-18} M. You would have to drink 2×10^{13} L of iron-saturated water per day (roughly 5 mi^3) to consume the recommended daily intake of Fe for humans, which is about 1 mg/day. Animals such as humans can overcome this problem by consuming concentrated sources of iron, such as red meat, but microorganisms cannot.

Consequently, most microorganisms synthesize and secrete organic molecules called siderophores to increase the total concentration of available iron in the surrounding medium. Siderophores are generally cyclic compounds that use bidentate ligands, such as the hydroxamate and catecholate groups shown here, to bind Fe^{3+} in an octahedral arrangement. Typical siderophores are ferrichrome, a cyclic peptide produced by fungi, and enterobactin, a cyclic ester produced by bacteria (Figure $8.6.1$). Attaching the three iron ligands to a cyclic framework greatly increases the stability of the resulting Fe^{3+} complex due to the chelate effect described in Section 23.4. The formation constants for the Fe^{3+} complexes of ferrichrome and enterobactin are about 10^{32} and 10^{40}, respectively, which are high enough to allow them to dissolve almost any Fe(III) compound.

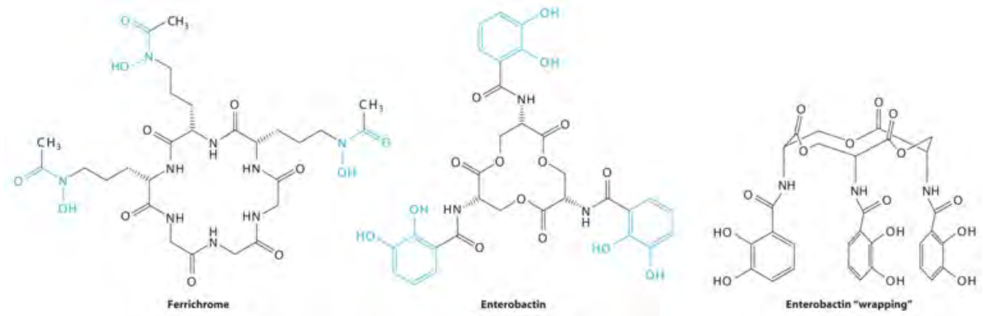


Figure $8.6.1$: Siderophores. Ferrichrome (a) and enterobactin (b) are siderophores that use hydroxamate and catecholate ligands, respectively, to bind Fe^{3+}. The "wrapped" drawing of enterobactin (c) shows how the cyclic ester framework places the three catecholate ligands in the correct orientation to bind to a single Fe^{3+} ion, which is an application of the chelate effect. The actual structure of ferrichrome is similar to that of enterobactin, with the three hydroxamate ligands adjacent to one another for optimal binding of Fe^{3+}. Note: For clarity, most or all hydrogen atoms have been omitted in this and the following structures.

Siderophores increase the $[Fe^{3+}]$ in solution, providing the bacterium that synthesized them (as well as any competitors) with a supply of iron. In addition, siderophores neutralize the positive charge on the metal ion and provide a hydrophobic "wrapping" that enables the Fe^{3+}–siderophore complex to be recognized by a specific protein that transports it into the interior of a cell. Once it is inside a cell, the iron is reduced to Fe^{2+}, which has a much lower affinity for the siderophore and spontaneously dissociates.

In contrast, multicellular organisms can increase the concentration of iron in their diet by lowering the pH in the gastrointestinal tract. At pH 1.0 (the approximate pH of the stomach), most Fe(III) salts dissolve to form $Fe^{3+}(aq)$, which is absorbed by specific proteins in the intestinal wall. A protein called transferrin forms a complex with iron(III), allowing it to be transported to other cells. Proteins that bind tightly to Fe(III) can also be used as antibacterial agents because iron is absolutely essential for bacterial growth. For example, milk, tears, and egg white all contain proteins similar to transferrin, and their high affinity for Fe^{3+} allows them to sequester iron, thereby preventing bacteria from growing in these nutrient-rich media.

Iron is released from transferrin by reduction to Fe^{2+}, and then it is either used immediately (e.g., for the synthesis of hemoglobin) or stored in a very large protein called ferritin for future use (Figure $8.6.2$). Ferritin uses oxygen to oxidize Fe^{2+} to Fe^{3+}, which at neutral pH precipitates in the central cavity of the protein as a polymeric mixture of $Fe(OH)_3$ and $FePO_4$. Because a fully loaded ferritin molecule can contain as many as 4500 Fe atoms, which corresponds to about 25% Fe by mass, ferritin is an effective way to store iron in a highly concentrated form. When iron is needed by a cell, the Fe^{3+} is reduced to the much more soluble Fe^{2+} by a reductant such as ascorbic acid (vitamin C). The structure of ferritin contains channels at the junctions of the subunits, which provide pathways for iron to enter and leave the interior of a molecule.

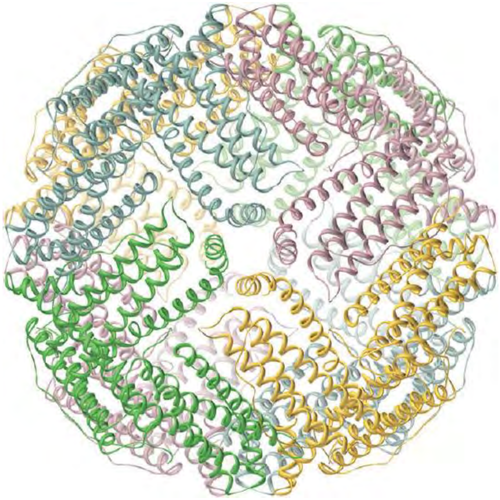


Figure 8.6.2: Ferritin, an Iron Storage Protein. A schematic drawing of the structure of iron-loaded ferritin, showing the almost spherical protein shell inside which the iron hydroxide/phosphate core is formed.

Metalloproteins and Metalloenzymes

A protein that contains one or more metal ions tightly bound to amino acid side chains is called a metalloprotein; some of the most common ligands provided by amino acids are shown here. A metalloprotein that catalyzes a chemical reaction is a metalloenzyme. Thus all metalloenzymes are metalloproteins, but the converse is not true. Recent estimates suggest that more than 40% of all known enzymes require at least one metal ion for activity, including almost all the enzymes responsible for the synthesis, duplication, and repair of DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) and RNA (ribonucleic acid).

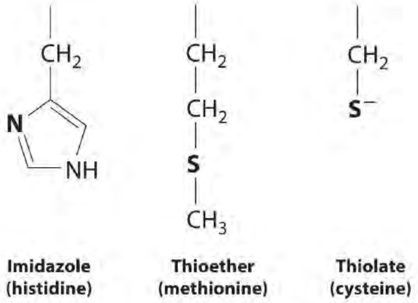


Figure 8.6.2b: Ligands used in biological systems. These metal ligands are commonly found in metalloproteins.

Electron-Transfer Proteins

Proteins whose function is to transfer electrons from one place to another are called electron-transfer proteins. Because they do not catalyze a chemical reaction, electron-transfer proteins are not enzymes; they are biochemical reductants or oxidants consumed in an enzymatic reaction. The general reaction for an electron-transfer protein is as follows:

$$M^{n+} + e^- \rightleftharpoons M^{(n-1)+} \tag{8.6.1}$$

Because many transition metals can exist in more than one oxidation state, electron-transfer proteins usually contain one or more metal ions that can undergo a redox reaction. Incorporating a metal ion into a protein has three important biological consequences:

1. The protein environment can adjust the redox potential ($E^{0\prime}$), of the metal ion over a rather large potential range, whereas the redox potential of the simple hydrated metal ion [M_n^+(aq)], is essentially fixed.
2. The protein can adjust the structure of the metal complex to ensure that electron transfer is rapid.
3. The protein environment provides specificity, ensuring that the electron is transferred to only the desired site.

Three important classes of metalloproteins transfer electrons: blue copper proteins, cytochromes, and iron–sulfur proteins, which generally transfer electrons at high (> 0.20 V), intermediate (±0 V), and low (−0.20 to −0.50 V) potentials, respectively (Table 23.12). Although these electron-transfer proteins contain different metals with different structures, they are all designed to ensure rapid electron transfer to and from the metal. Thus when the protein collides with its physiological oxidant or reductant, electron transfer can occur before the two proteins diffuse apart. For electron transfer to be rapid, the metal sites in the oxidized and reduced forms of the protein must have similar structures.

Table 8.6.1: Some Properties of the Most Common Electron-Transfer Proteins

Protein	Metal Center	M/e− Transferred	Reduction Potential (V)
iron–sulfur proteins*	$[Fe(SR)_4]^{2-}$	1 Fe	−0.1 to +0.1
	$[(RS)_2FeS_2Fe(SR)_2]^{2-}$	2 Fe	−0.2 to −0.4
	$[Fe_3S_4(SR)_3]^{3-}$	3 Fe	−0.1 to −0.2
	$[Fe_4S_4(SR)_4]^{2-}$	4 Fe	−0.3 to −0.5
cytochromes	Fe-heme (low spin)	1 Fe	~0
blue copper proteins†	$[Cu(Im)_2(SR)(SR_2)]^-$	1 Cu	≥ +0.20

* A sulfur bound to an organic group is represented as SR.

† See Figure 8.6.2*b*: for the structure of imidazole (Im).

Blue Copper Proteins

Blue copper proteins were first isolated from bacteria in the 1950s and from plant tissues in the early 1960s. The intense blue color of these proteins is due to a strong absorption band at a wavelength of about 600 nm. Although simple Cu^{2+} complexes, such as $[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ and $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$, are also blue due to an absorption band at 600 nm, the intensity of the absorption band is about 100 times less than that of a blue copper protein. Moreover, the reduction potential for the Cu^{2+}/Cu^+ couple in a blue copper protein is usually +0.3 to +0.5 V, considerably more positive than that of the aqueous Cu^{2+}/Cu^+ couple (+0.15 V).

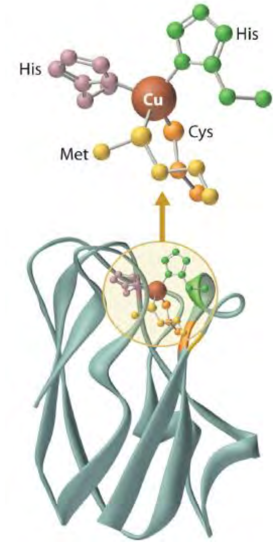


Figure 8.6.3: A Blue Copper Protein. In both the oxidized and reduced forms of a blue copper protein, the copper is coordinated by four ligands (two histidine imidazole nitrogen atoms, a cysteine thiolate sulfur, and a thioether sulfur of a methionine) in a roughly tetrahedral arrangement.

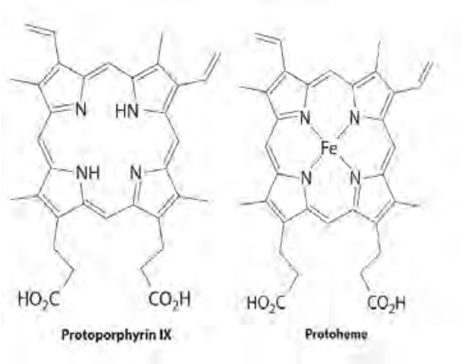
The copper center in blue copper proteins has a distorted tetrahedral structure, in which the copper is bound to four amino acid side chains (Figure 8.6.3). Although the most common structures for four-coordinate Cu^{2+} and Cu^+ complexes are square planar and tetrahedral, respectively, the structures of the oxidized (Cu^{2+}) and reduced (Cu^+) forms of the protein are essentially identical. Thus the protein forces the Cu^{2+} ion to adopt a higher-energy structure that is more suitable for Cu^+, which makes the Cu^{2+} form easier to reduce and raises its reduction potential.

Moreover, by forcing the oxidized and reduced forms of the metal complex to have essentially the same structure, the protein ensures that electron transfer to and from the copper site is rapid because only minimal structural reorganization of the metal center is required. Kinetics studies on simple metal complexes have shown that electron-transfer reactions tend to be slow when the structures of the oxidized and reduced forms of a metal complex are very different, and fast when they are similar. You will see that other metal centers used for biological electron-transfer reactions are also set up for minimal structural reorganization after electron transfer, which ensures the rapid transfer of electrons.

Cytochromes

The cytochromes (from the Greek cytos, meaning “cell”, and chroma, meaning “color”) were first identified in the 1920s by spectroscopic studies of cell extracts. Based on the wavelength of the maximum absorption in the visible spectrum, they were classified as cytochromes a (with the longest wavelength), cytochromes b (intermediate wavelength), and cytochromes c (shortest wavelength). It quickly became apparent that there was a correlation between their spectroscopic properties and other physical properties. For examples, cytochromes c are generally small, soluble proteins with a reduction potential of about +0.25 V, whereas cytochromes b are larger, less-soluble proteins with reduction potentials of about 0 V.

All cytochromes contain iron, and the iron atom in all cytochromes is coordinated by a planar array of four nitrogen atoms provided by a cyclic tetradentate ligand called a porphyrin. The iron–porphyrin unit is called a heme group. The structures of a typical porphyrin (protoporphyrin IX) and its iron complex (protoheme) are shown here. In addition to the four nitrogen atoms of the porphyrin, the iron in a cytochrome is usually bonded to two additional ligands provided by the protein, as shown in Figure 8.6.4.



A cytochrome. Shown here is protoporphyrin IX and its iron complex, protoheme.

Figure 8.6.4: A Cytochrome c. In a cytochrome c, the heme iron is coordinated to the nitrogen atom of a histidine imidazole and the sulfur atom of a methionine thioether, in addition to the four nitrogen atoms provided by the porphyrin.

In contrast to the blue copper proteins, two electron configurations are possible for both the oxidized and reduced forms of a cytochrome, and this has significant structural consequences. Thus Fe^{2+} is d^6 and can be either high spin (with four unpaired electrons) or low spin (with no unpaired electrons). Similarly, Fe^{3+} is d^5 and can also be high spin (with five unpaired electrons) or low spin (with one unpaired electron). In low-spin heme complexes, both the Fe^{2+} and the Fe^{3+} ions are small enough to fit into the “hole” in the center of the porphyrin; hence the iron atom lies almost exactly in the plane of the four porphyrin nitrogen atoms in both cases. Because cytochromes b and c are low spin in both their oxidized and reduced forms, the structures of the oxidized and reduced cytochromes are essentially identical. Hence minimal structural changes occur after oxidation or reduction, which makes electron transfer to or from the heme very rapid.

> *Electron transfer reactions occur most rapidly when minimal structural changes occur during oxidation or reduction.*

Iron–Sulfur Proteins

Although all known bacteria, plants, and animals use iron–sulfur proteins to transfer electrons, the existence of these proteins was not recognized until the late 1950s. Iron–sulfur proteins transfer electrons over a wide range of reduction potentials, and their iron content can range from 1 to more than 12 Fe atoms per protein molecule. In addition, most iron–sulfur proteins contain stoichiometric amounts of sulfide (S^{2-}).

These properties are due to the presence of four different kinds of iron–sulfur units, which contain one, two, three, or four iron atoms per Fe–S complex (Figure 8.6.5). In all cases, the Fe^{2+} and Fe^{3+} ions are coordinated to four sulfur ligands in a tetrahedral environment. Due to tetrahedral coordination by weak-field sulfur ligands, the iron is high spin in both the Fe^{3+} and Fe^{2+} oxidation states, which results in similar structures for the oxidized and reduced forms of the Fe–S complexes. Consequently, only small structural changes occur after oxidation or reduction of the Fe–S center, which results in rapid electron transfer.

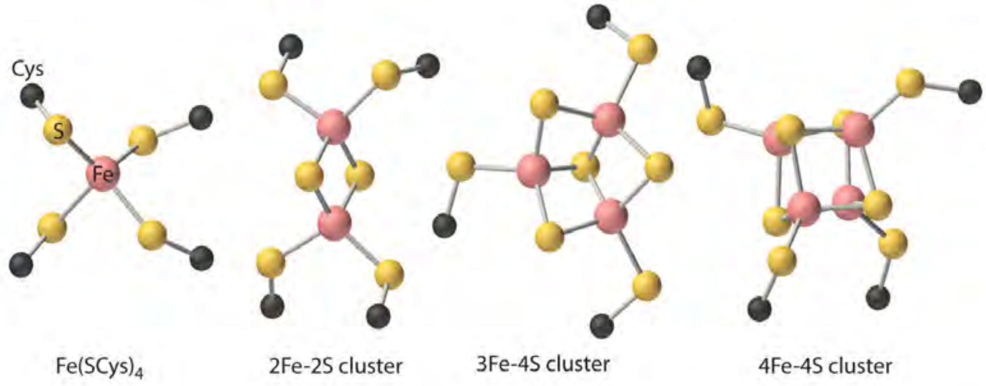


Figure 8.6.5: Fe–S Centers in Proteins: Four kinds of iron–sulfur centers, containing one, two, three, and four iron atoms, respectively, are known in electron-transfer proteins. Although they differ in the number of sulfur atoms provided by cysteine thiolates versus sulfide, in all cases the iron is coordinated to four sulfur ligands in a roughly tetrahedral environment.

Reactions of Small Molecules

Although small molecules, such as O_2, N_2, and H_2, do not react with organic compounds under ambient conditions, they do react with many transition-metal complexes. Consequently, virtually all organisms use metalloproteins to bind, transport, and catalyze the reactions of these molecules. Probably the best-known example is hemoglobin, which is used to transport O_2 in many multicellular organisms.

> *Under ambient conditions, small molecules, such as O_2, N_2, and H_2, react with transition-metal complexes but not with organic compounds.*

Oxygen Transport

Many microorganisms and most animals obtain energy by respiration, the oxidation of organic or inorganic molecules by O_2. At 25°C, however, the concentration of dissolved oxygen in water in contact with air is only about 0.25 mM. Because of their high surface area-to-volume ratio, aerobic microorganisms can obtain enough oxygen for respiration by passive diffusion of O_2 through the cell membrane. As the size of an organism increases, however, its volume increases much more rapidly than its surface area, and the need for oxygen depends on its volume. Consequently, as a multicellular organism grows larger, its need for O_2 rapidly outstrips the supply available through diffusion. Unless a transport system is available to provide an adequate supply of oxygen for the interior cells, organisms that contain more than a few cells cannot exist. In addition, O_2 is such a powerful oxidant that the oxidation reactions used to obtain metabolic energy must be carefully controlled to avoid releasing so much heat that the water in the cell boils. Consequently, in higher-level organisms, the respiratory apparatus is located in internal compartments called mitochondria, which are the power plants of a cell. Oxygen must therefore be transported not only to a cell but also to the proper compartment within a cell.

Three different chemical solutions to the problem of oxygen transport have developed independently in the course of evolution, as indicated in Table 8.6.2. Mammals, birds, reptiles, fish, and some insects use a heme protein called hemoglobin to transport oxygen from the lungs to the cells, and they use a related protein called myoglobin to temporarily store oxygen in the tissues. Several classes of invertebrates, including marine worms, use an iron-containing protein called hemerythrin to transport oxygen, whereas other classes of invertebrates (arthropods and mollusks) use a copper-containing protein called hemocyanin. Despite the presence of the hem- prefix, hemerythrin and hemocyanin do not contain a metal–porphyrin complex.

Table 8.6.2: Some Properties of the Three Classes of Oxygen-Transport Proteins

Protein	Source	M per Subunit	M per O_2 Bound	Color (deoxy form)	Color (oxy form)
hemoglobin	mammals, birds, fish, reptiles, some insects	1 Fe	1 Fe	red-purple	red
hemerythrin	marine worms	2 Fe	2 Fe	colorless	red
hemocyanin	mollusks, crustaceans, spiders	2 Cu	2 Cu	colorless	blue

Myoglobin and Hemoglobin

Myoglobin is a relatively small protein that contains 150 amino acids. The functional unit of myoglobin is an iron–porphyrin complex that is embedded in the protein (Figure 26.8.1). In myoglobin, the heme iron is five-coordinate, with only a single histidine imidazole ligand from the protein (called the proximal histidine because it is near the iron) in addition to the four nitrogen atoms of the porphyrin. A second histidine imidazole (the distal histidine because it is more distant from the iron) is located on the other side of the heme group, too far from the iron to be bonded to it. Consequently, the iron atom has a vacant coordination site, which is where O_2 binds.

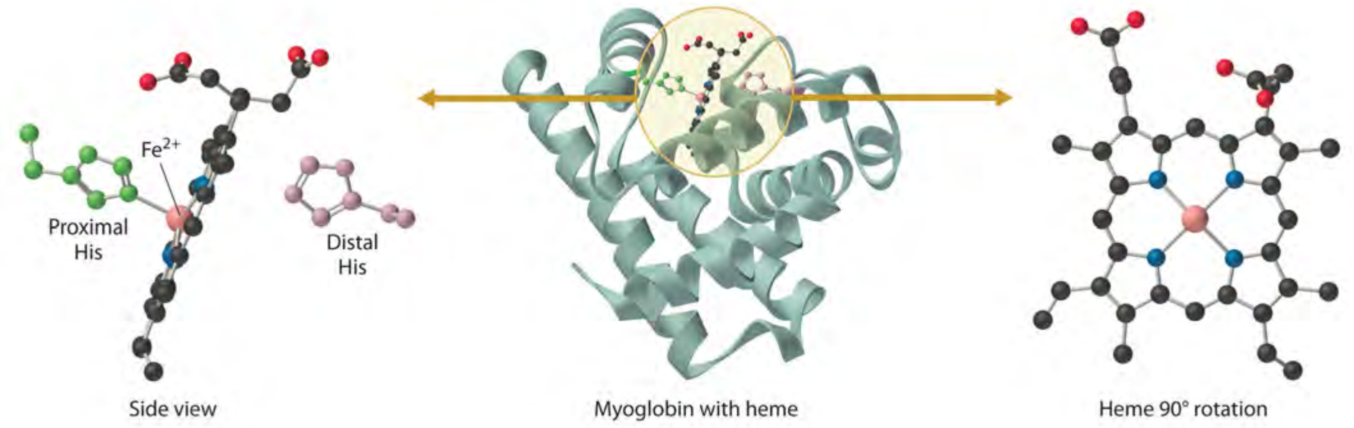


Figure 8.6.6: The Structure of Deoxymyoglobin, Showing the Heme Group. The iron in deoxymyoglobin is five-coordinate, with one histidine imidazole ligand from the protein. Oxygen binds at the vacant site on iron.

In the ferrous form (deoxymyoglobin), the iron is five-coordinate and high spin. Because high-spin Fe^{2+} is too large to fit into the "hole" in the center of the porphyrin, it is about 60 pm above the plane of the porphyrin. When O_2 binds to deoxymyoglobin to form oxymyoglobin, the iron is converted from five-coordinate (high spin) to six-coordinate (low spin; Figure 26.8.2). Because low-spin Fe^{2+} and Fe^{3+} are smaller than high-spin Fe^{2+}, the iron atom moves into the plane of the porphyrin ring to form an octahedral complex. The O_2 pressure at which half of the molecules in a solution of myoglobin are bound to O_2 ($P_{1/2}$) is about 1 mm Hg (1.3×10^{-3} atm).

> *A vacant coordination site at a metal center in a protein usually indicates that a small molecule will bind to the metal ion, whereas a coordinatively saturated metal center is usually involved in electron transfer.*

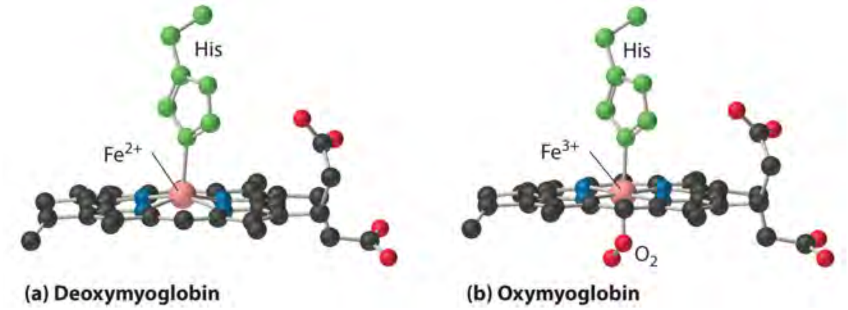


Figure 8.6.7: Oxygen Binding to Myoglobin and Hemoglobin. (a) The Fe^{2+} ion in deoxymyoglobin is high spin, which makes it too large to fit into the "hole" in the center of the porphyrin. (b) When O_2 binds to deoxymyoglobin, the iron is converted to low-spin Fe^{3+}, which is smaller, allowing the iron to move into the plane of the four nitrogen atoms of the porphyrin to form an octahedral complex.

Hemoglobin consists of two subunits of 141 amino acids and two subunits of 146 amino acids, both similar to myoglobin; it is called a tetramer because of its four subunits. Because hemoglobin has very different O_2-binding properties, however, it is not simply a "super myoglobin" that can carry four O_2 molecules simultaneously (one per heme group). The shape of the O_2-binding curve of myoglobin (Mb; Figure 8.6.7) can be described mathematically by the following equilibrium:

$$MbO_2 \rightleftharpoons Mb + O_2 \tag{8.6.2}$$

$$K_{diss} = \frac{[Mb][O_2]}{[MbO_2]} \tag{8.6.3}$$

In contrast, the O_2-binding curve of hemoglobin is S shaped (Figure 8.6.8). As shown in the curves, at low oxygen pressures, the affinity of deoxyhemoglobin for O_2 is substantially lower than that of myoglobin, whereas at high O_2 pressures the two proteins have comparable O_2 affinities. The physiological consequences of the unusual S-shaped O_2-binding curve of hemoglobin are enormous. In the lungs, where O_2 pressure is highest, the high oxygen affinity of deoxyhemoglobin allows it to be completely loaded with O_2, giving four O_2 molecules per hemoglobin. In the tissues, however, where the oxygen pressure is much lower, the decreased oxygen affinity of hemoglobin allows it to release O_2, resulting in a net transfer of oxygen to myoglobin.

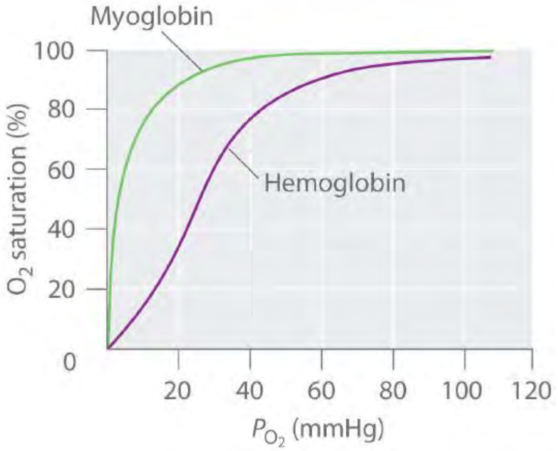


Figure 8.6.8: The O_2-Binding Curves of Myoglobin and Hemoglobin. The curve for myoglobin can be described by a simple equilibrium between deoxy- and oxymyoglobin, but the S-shaped curve for hemoglobin can be described only in terms of a cooperative interaction between the four hemes.

The S-shaped O_2-binding curve of hemoglobin is due to a phenomenon called cooperativity, in which the affinity of one heme for O_2 depends on whether the other hemes are already bound to O_2. Cooperativity in hemoglobin requires an interaction between the four heme groups in the hemoglobin tetramer, even though they are more than 3000 pm apart, and depends on the change in structure of the heme group that occurs with oxygen binding. The structures of deoxyhemoglobin and oxyhemoglobin are slightly different, and as a result, deoxyhemoglobin has a much lower O_2 affinity than myoglobin, whereas the O_2 affinity of oxyhemoglobin is essentially identical to that of oxymyoglobin. Binding of the first two O_2 molecules to deoxyhemoglobin causes the overall structure of the protein to change to that of oxyhemoglobin; consequently, the last two heme groups have a much higher affinity for O_2 than the first two.

Oxygen is not unique in its ability to bind to a ferrous heme complex; small molecules such as CO and NO bind to deoxymyoglobin even more tightly than does O_2. The interaction of the heme iron with oxygen and other diatomic molecules involves the transfer of electron density from the filled t_{2g} orbitals of the low-spin d^6 Fe^{2+} ion to the empty π* orbitals of the ligand. In the case of the Fe^{2+}–O_2 interaction, the transfer of electron density is so great that the Fe–O_2 unit can be described as containing low-spin Fe^{3+} (d^5) and O_2^-. We can therefore represent the binding of O_2 to deoxyhemoglobin and its release as a reversible redox reaction:

$$Fe^{2+} + O_2 \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Fe^{3\,+}{-}O_2{-}} \tag{8.6.4}$$

As shown in Figure 8.6.9, the Fe–O_2 unit is bent, with an Fe–O–O angle of about 130°. Because the π* orbitals in CO are empty and those in NO are singly occupied, these ligands interact more strongly with Fe^{2+} than does O_2, in which the π* orbitals of the neutral ligand are doubly occupied.

Figure 8.6.9: Binding of O_2 and CO to the Iron of Myoglobin. Because the Fe–O–O unit is bent, while the Fe–C–O unit is linear, the imidazole group of the distal histidine in hemoglobin interferes with CO binding and decreases the affinity of hemoglobin for CO.

Although CO has a much greater affinity for a ferrous heme than does O_2 (by a factor of about 25,000), the affinity of CO for deoxyhemoglobin is only about 200 times greater than that of O_2, which suggests that something in the protein is decreasing its affinity for CO by a factor of about 100. Both CO and NO bind to ferrous hemes in a linear fashion, with an Fe–C(N)–O angle of about 180°, and the difference in the preferred geometry of O_2 and CO provides a plausible explanation for the difference in affinities. As shown in Figure 8.6.9, the imidazole group of the distal histidine is located precisely where the oxygen atom of bound CO would be if the Fe–C–O unit were linear. Consequently, CO cannot bind to the heme in a linear fashion; instead, it is forced to bind in a bent mode that is similar to the preferred structure for the Fe–O_2 unit. This results in a significant decrease in the affinity of the heme for CO, while leaving the O_2 affinity unchanged, which is important because carbon monoxide is produced continuously in the body by degradation of the porphyrin ligand (even in nonsmokers). Under normal conditions, CO occupies approximately 1% of the heme sites in hemoglobin and myoglobin. If the affinity of hemoglobin and myoglobin for CO were 100 times greater (due to the absence of the distal histidine), essentially 100% of the heme sites would be occupied by CO, and no oxygen could be transported to the tissues. Severe carbon-monoxide poisoning, which is frequently fatal, has exactly the same effect. Thus the primary function of the distal histidine appears to be to decrease the CO affinity of hemoglobin and myoglobin to avoid self-poisoning by CO.

Hemerythrin

Hemerythrin is used to transport O_2 in a variety of marine invertebrates. It is an octamer (eight subunits), with each subunit containing two iron atoms and binding one molecule of O_2. Deoxyhemerythrin contains two Fe^{2+} ions per subunit and is colorless, whereas oxyhemerythrin contains two Fe^{3+} ions and is bright reddish violet. These invertebrates also contain a monomeric form of hemerythrin that is located in the tissues, analogous to myoglobin. The binding of oxygen to hemerythrin and its release can be described by the following reaction, where the HO_2^- ligand is the hydroperoxide anion derived by the deprotonation of hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2):

$$2\,Fe^{2\,+} + O_2 + H^+ \rightleftharpoons 2\,Fe^{3\,+}{-}\,O_2H \tag{8.6.5}$$

Thus O_2 binding is accompanied by the transfer of two electrons (one from each Fe^{2+}) and a proton to O_2.

Hemocyanin

Hemocyanin is used for oxygen transport in many arthropods (spiders, crabs, lobsters, and centipedes) and in mollusks (shellfish, octopi, and squid); it is responsible for the bluish-green color of their blood. The protein is a polymer of subunits that each contain two copper atoms (rather than iron), with an aggregate molecular mass of greater than 1,000,000 amu. Deoxyhemocyanin contains two Cu^+ ions per subunit and is colorless, whereas oxyhemocyanin contains two Cu^{2+} ions and is bright blue. As with hemerythrin, the binding and release of O_2 correspond to a two-electron reaction:

$$2\,Cu^+ + O_2 \rightleftharpoons Cu^{2\,+}{-}\,O_2^{2\,-}{-}\,Cu^{2\,+} \tag{8.6.6}$$

Although hemocyanin and hemerythrin perform the same basic function as hemoglobin, these proteins are not interchangeable. In fact, hemocyanin is so foreign to humans that it is one of the major factors responsible for the common allergies to shellfish.

> *Myoglobin, hemoglobin, hemerythrin, and hemocyanin all use a transition-metal complex to transport oxygen.*

Enzymes Involved in Oxygen Activation

Many of the enzymes involved in the biological reactions of oxygen contain metal centers with structures that are similar to those used for O_2 transport. Many of these enzymes also contain metal centers that are used for electron transfer, which have structures similar to those of the electron-transfer proteins discussed previously. In this section, we briefly describe two of the most important examples: dioxygenases and methane monooxygenase.

Dioxygenases are enzymes that insert both atoms of O_2 into an organic molecule. In humans, dioxygenases are responsible for cross-linking collagen in connective tissue and for synthesizing complex organic molecules called prostaglandins, which trigger inflammation and immune reactions. Iron is by far the most common metal in dioxygenases; and the target of the most commonly used drug in the world, aspirin, is an iron enzyme that synthesizes a specific prostaglandin. Aspirin inhibits this enzyme by binding to the iron atom at the active site, which prevents oxygen from binding.

Methane monooxygenase catalyzes the conversion of methane to methanol. The enzyme is a monooxygenase because only one atom of O_2 is inserted into an organic molecule, while the other is reduced to water:

$$CH_4 + O_2 + 2\,e^- + 2\,H^+ \rightarrow CH_3OH + H_2O \tag{8.6.7}$$

Because methane is the major component of natural gas, there is enormous interest in using this reaction to convert methane to a liquid fuel (methanol) that is much more convenient to ship and store. Because the C–H bond in methane is one of the strongest C–H bonds known, however, an extraordinarily powerful oxidant is needed for this reaction. The active site of methane monooxygenase contains two Fe atoms that bind O_2, but the details of how the bound O_2 is converted to such a potent oxidant remain unclear.

Metal Ions as Lewis Acids

Reactions catalyzed by metal ions that do not change their oxidation states during the reaction are usually group transfer reactions, in which a group such as the phosphoryl group ($-PO_3^{2-}$) is transferred. These enzymes usually use metal ions such as Zn^{2+}, Mg^{2+}, and Mn^{2+}, and they range from true metalloenzymes, in which the metal ion is tightly bound, to metal-activated enzymes, which require the addition of metal ions for activity. Because tight binding is usually the result of specific metal–ligand interactions, metalloenzymes tend to be rather specific for a particular metal ion. In contrast, the binding of metal ions to metal-activated enzymes is largely electrostatic in nature; consequently, several different metal ions with similar charges and sizes can often be used to give an active enzyme.

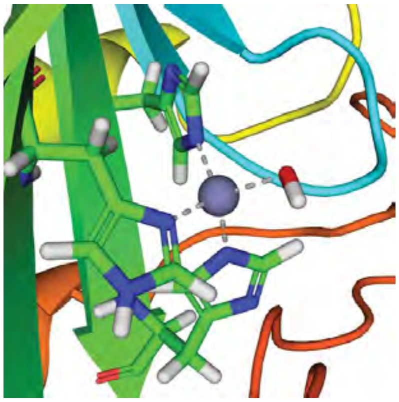
> *Metalloenzymes generally contain a specific metal ion, whereas metal-activated enzymes can use any of several metal ions of similar size and charge.*

A metal ion that acts as a Lewis acid can catalyze a group transfer reaction in many different ways, but we will focus on only one of these, using a zinc enzyme as an example. Carbonic anhydrase is found in red blood cells and catalyzes the reaction of CO_2 with water to give carbonic acid.

$$CO_2(g) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + HCO_3^-(aq) \tag{8.6.8}$$

Although this reaction occurs spontaneously in the absence of a catalyst, it is too slow to absorb all the CO_2 generated during respiration. Without a catalyst, tissues would explode due to the buildup of excess CO_2 pressure. Carbonic anhydrase contains a single Zn^{2+} ion per molecule, which is coordinated by three histidine imidazole ligands and a molecule of water. Because Zn^{2+} is a Lewis acid, the pK_a of the Zn^{2+}–OH_2 unit is about 8 versus 14 for pure water. Thus at pH 7–8, a significant fraction of the enzyme molecules contain the Zn^{2+}–OH^- group, which is much more reactive than bulk water. When carbon dioxide binds in a nonpolar site next to the Zn^{2+}–OH^- unit, it reacts rapidly to give a coordinated bicarbonate ion that dissociates from the enzyme:

$$Zn^{2+}{-}OH^- + CO_2 \rightleftharpoons Zn^{2+}{-}OCO_2H^- \rightleftharpoons Zn^{2+} + HCO_3^- \tag{8.6.9}$$



The active site of carbonic anhydrase.

Thus the function of zinc in carbonic anhydrase is to generate the hydroxide ion at pH 7.0, far less than the pH required in the absence of the metal ion.

Enzymes That Use Metals to Generate Organic Radicals

An organic radical is an organic species that contains one or more unpaired electrons. Chemists often consider organic radicals to be highly reactive species that produce undesirable reactions. For example, they have been implicated in some of the irreversible chemical changes that accompany aging. It is surprising, however, that organic radicals are also essential components of many important enzymes, almost all of which use a metal ion to generate the organic radical within the enzyme. These enzymes are involved in the synthesis of hemoglobin and DNA, among other important biological molecules, and they are the targets of pharmaceuticals for the treatment of diseases such as anemia, sickle-cell anemia, and cancer. In this section, we discuss one class of radical enzymes that use vitamin B_{12}.

Vitamin B_{12} was discovered in the 1940s as the active agent in the cure of pernicious anemia, which does not respond to increased iron in the diet. Humans need only tiny amounts of vitamin B_{12}, and the average blood concentration in a healthy adult is only about 3.5×10^{-8} M. The structure of vitamin B_{12}, shown in Figure $8.6.10$, is similar to that of a heme, but it contains cobalt instead of iron, and its structure is much more complex. In fact, vitamin B_{12} has been called the most complex nonpolymeric biological molecule known and was the first naturally occurring organometallic compound to be isolated. When vitamin B_{12} (the form present in vitamin tablets) is ingested, the axial cyanide ligand is replaced by a complex organic group.

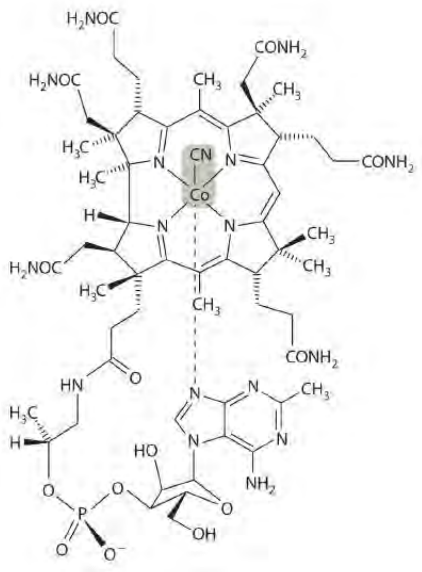
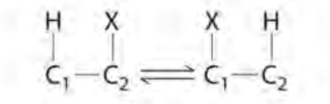


Figure 8.6.10: Vitamin B_{12} In the body, the axial cyanide ligand found in the vitamin is replaced by a complex organic unit. Heterolytic cleavage of the Co–C bond in the resulting organometallic complex generates an organic radical for the catalysis of rearrangement reactions.

The cobalt–carbon bond in the enzyme-bound form of vitamin B_{12} and related compounds is unusually weak, and it is particularly susceptible to homolytic cleavage:

$$\mathrm{CoCH_2R} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Co^{2+\cdot}} + \cdot\mathrm{CH_2R} \tag{8.6.10}$$

Homolytic cleavage of the Co^{3+}–CH_2R bond produces two species, each of which has an unpaired electron: a d^7 Co^{2+} derivative and an organic radical, $\cdot CH_2R$, which is used by vitamin B_{12}-dependent enzymes to catalyze a wide variety of reactions. Virtually all vitamin B_{12}-catalyzed reactions are rearrangements in which an H atom and an adjacent substituent exchange positions:



In the conversion of ethylene glycol to acetaldehyde, the initial product is the hydrated form of acetaldehyde, which rapidly loses water:

The enzyme uses the $\cdot CH_2R$ radical to temporarily remove a hydrogen atom from the organic substrate, which then rearranges to give a new radical. Transferring the hydrogen atom back to the rearranged radical gives the product and regenerates the $\cdot CH_2R$ radical.

The metal is not involved in the actual catalytic reaction; it provides the enzyme with a convenient mechanism for generating an organic radical, which does the actual work. Many examples of similar reactions are now known that use metals other than cobalt to generate an enzyme-bound organic radical.

> *Nearly all vitamin B_{12}-catalyzed reactions are rearrangements that occur via a radical reaction.*

Summary

Three separate steps are required for organisms to obtain essential transition metals from their environment: mobilization of the metal, transport of the metal into the cell, and transfer of the metal to where it is needed within a cell or an organism. The process of iron uptake is best understood. To overcome the insolubility of $Fe(OH)_3$, many bacteria use organic ligands called siderophores, which have high affinity for Fe(III) and are secreted into the surrounding medium to increase the total concentration of dissolved iron. The iron–siderophore complex is absorbed by a cell, and the iron is released by reduction to Fe(II). Mammals use the low pH of the stomach to increase the concentration of dissolved iron. Iron is absorbed in the intestine, where it forms an Fe(III) complex with a protein called transferrin that is transferred to other cells for immediate use or storage in the form of ferritin.

Proteins that contain one or more tightly bound metal ions are called metalloproteins, and metalloproteins that catalyze biochemical reactions are called metalloenzymes. Proteins that transfer electrons from one place to another are called electron-transfer proteins. Most electron-transfer proteins are metalloproteins, such as iron–sulfur proteins, cytochromes, and blue copper proteins that accept and donate electrons. The oxidized and reduced centers in all electron-transfer proteins have similar structures to ensure that electron transfer to and from the metal occurs rapidly. Metalloproteins also use the ability of transition metals to bind small molecules, such as O_2, N_2, and H_2, to transport or catalyze the reactions of these small molecules. For example, hemoglobin, hemerythrin, and hemocyanin, which contain heme iron, nonheme iron, and copper, respectively, are used by different kinds of organisms to bind and transfer O_2. Other metalloenzymes use transition-metal ions as Lewis acids to catalyze group transfer reactions. Finally, some metalloenzymes use homolytic cleavage of the cobalt–carbon bond in derivatives of vitamin B_{12} to generate an organic radical that can abstract a hydrogen atom and thus cause molecular rearrangements to occur.

Key Takeaway

- Organisms have developed strategies to extract transition metals from the environment and use the metals in electron-transfer reactions, reactions of small molecules, Lewis-acid catalysis, and the generation of reactive organic radicals.

Conceptual Problems

1. What are the advantages of having a metal ion at the active site of an enzyme?
2. Why does the structure of the metal center in a metalloprotein that transfers electrons show so little change after oxidation or reduction?

Structure and Reactivity

1. In enzymes, explain how metal ions are particularly suitable for generating organic radicals.
2. A common method for treating carbon-monoxide poisoning is to have the patient inhale pure oxygen. Explain why this treatment is effective.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

9: Radioactivity and Nuclear Chemistry

9.1: Diagnosing Appendicitis

9.2: The Discovery of Radioactivity

Learning Objectives

- List the most common emissions from naturally radioactive nuclei.
- Compare the energy released per gram of matter in nuclear reactions to that in chemical reactions.
- Express the relationship between nuclear stability and the nuclei's binding energy per nucleon ratio.

No one could have known in the 1800's that the discovery of the fascinating science and art form of photography would eventually lead to the splitting of the atom. The basis of photography is the fact that visible light causes certain chemical reactions. If the chemicals are spread thinly on a surface but protected from light by a covering, no reaction occurs. When the covering is removed, however, light acting on the chemicals causes them to darken. With millions of cameras in use today, we do not think of it as a strange phenomenon—but at the time of its discovery, photography was a strange and wonderful thing.

Even stranger was the discovery by Wilhelm Roentgen—that radiation other than visible light could expose photographic film. He found that film wrapped in dark paper would react when x-rays went through the paper and struck the film.

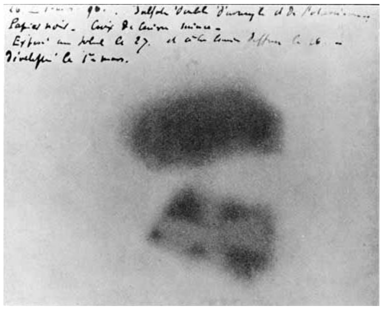


Figure 9.2.1: Image of Becquerel's photographic plate, which has been fogged by exposure to radiation from a uranium salt. The shadow of a metal Maltese Cross placed between the plate and the uranium salt is clearly visible (Public Domain).

When Henri Becquerel heard about Roentgen's discovery, he wondered if his fluorescent minerals would give the same x-rays. Becquerel placed some of his rock crystals on top of a well-covered photographic plate and sat them in the sunlight. The sunlight made the crystals glow with a bright fluorescent light, but when Becquerel developed the film he was very disappointed. He found that only one of his minerals, a uranium salt, had fogged the photographic plate. He decided to try again, and this time, to leave them out in the sun for a longer period of time. Fortunately, the weather didn't cooperate, and Becquerel had to leave the crystals and film stored in a drawer for several cloudy days. Before continuing his experiments, Becquerel decided to check one of the photographic plates to make sure the chemicals were still good. To his amazement, he found that the plate had been exposed in spots where it had been near the uranium containing rocks, and some of these rocks had not been exposed to sunlight at all. In later experiments, Becquerel confirmed that the radiation from the uranium had no connection with light or fluorescence, but the amount of radiation was directly proportional to the concentration of uranium in the rock. Becquerel had discovered **radioactivity**.

The Curies and Radium

One of Becquerel's assistants, a young Polish scientist named Maria Sklowdowska (to become Marie Curie after she married Pierre Curie), became interested in the phenomenon of radioactivity. With her husband, she decided to find out if chemicals other than uranium were radioactive. The Austrian government was happy to send the Curies a ton of pitchblende from the mining region of Joachimstahl, because it was waste material that had to be disposed of anyway. The Curies wanted the pitchblende because it was the residue of uranium mining. From the ton of pitchblende, the Curies separated $0.10\,\text{g}$ of a previously unknown element, radium, in the form of the compound radium chloride. This radium was many times more radioactive than uranium.

By 1902, the world was aware of a new phenomenon called radioactivity and of new elements which exhibited natural radioactivity. For this work, Becquerel and the Curies shared the 1903 Nobel Prize and for subsequent work; Marie Cure received a second Nobel Prize in 1911. She is the only person ever to receive two Nobel Prizes in science.

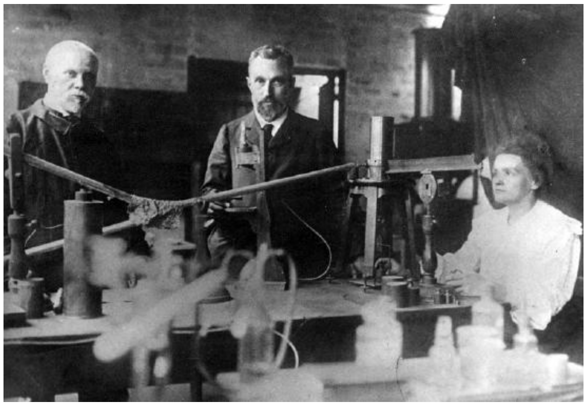


Figure 9.2.2: Marie Curie (right) and Pierre Curie (middle) with Henri Becquerel (left) shared the 1903 Nobel Prize.

Further experiments provided information about the characteristics of the penetrating emissions from radioactive substances. It was soon discovered that there were three common types of radioactive emissions. Some of the radiation could pass easily through aluminum foil while some of the radiation was stopped by the foil. Some of the radiation could even pass through foil up to a centimeter thick. The three basic types of radiation were named alpha, beta, and gamma radiation. The actual composition of the three types of radiation was still not known.

Eventually, scientists were able to demonstrate experimentally that the alpha particle, α, was a helium nucleus (a particle containing two protons and two neutrons), a beta particle, β, was a high speed electron, and gamma rays, γ, were a very high energy form of light (even higher energy than x-rays).

Unstable Nuclei May Disintegrate

A nucleus (with one exception, hydrogen-1) consists of some number of protons and neutrons pulled together in an extremely tiny volume. Since protons are positively charged and like charges repel, it is clear that protons cannot remain together in the nucleus unless there is a powerful force holding them there. The force which holds the nucleus together is generated by **nuclear binding energy**.

A nucleus with a large amount of binding energy per nucleon (proton or neutron) will be held together tightly and is referred to as stable. These nuclei do not break apart. When there is too little binding energy per nucleon, the nucleus will be less stable and may disintegrate (come apart). Such disintegration is referred to as **natural radioactivity**. It is also possible for scientists to smash nuclear particles together and cause nuclear reactions between normally stable nuclei. This disintegration is referred to as **artificial radioactivity**. None of the elements above #92 on the periodic table occur on earth naturally—they are all products of artificial (manmade) radioactivity.

When nuclei come apart, they come apart violently accompanied by a tremendous release of energy in the form of heat, light, and radiation. This energy comes from some of the nuclear binding energy. In nuclear changes, the energy involved comes from the nuclear binding energy. However, in chemical reactions, the energy comes from electrons moving energy levels. A typical nuclear change (such as fission) may involve millions of times more energy per atom changing compared to a chemical change (such as burning)!

Summary

- Henri Becquerel, Marie Curie, and Pierre Curie shared the discovery of radioactivity.

Contributions & Attributions

- Wikibooks
-

- **17.2: The Discovery of Radioactivity** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

9.3: Types of Radioactivity

Learning Objectives

- Write and balance nuclear equations
- To know the different kinds of radioactive decay.
- To balance a nuclear reaction.

Nuclear chemistry is the study of reactions that involve changes in nuclear structure. The chapter on atoms, molecules, and ions introduced the basic idea of nuclear structure, that the nucleus of an atom is composed of protons and, with the exception of $^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}$, neutrons. Recall that the number of protons in the nucleus is called the atomic number (Z) of the element, and the sum of the number of protons and the number of neutrons is the mass number (A). Atoms with the same atomic number but different mass numbers are isotopes of the same element. When referring to a single type of nucleus, we often use the term nuclide and identify it by the notation:

$$^{\mathrm{A}}_{\mathrm{Z}}\mathrm{X} \tag{9.3.1}$$

where

- X is the symbol for the element,
- A is the mass number, and
- Z is the atomic number.

Often a nuclide is referenced by the name of the element followed by a hyphen and the mass number. For example, $^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ is called "carbon-14."

Protons and neutrons, collectively called nucleons, are packed together tightly in a nucleus. With a radius of about 10^{-15} meters, a nucleus is quite small compared to the radius of the entire atom, which is about 10^{-10} meters. Nuclei are extremely dense compared to bulk matter, averaging 1.8×10^{14} grams per cubic centimeter. For example, water has a density of 1 gram per cubic centimeter, and iridium, one of the densest elements known, has a density of 22.6 g/cm^3. If the earth's density were equal to the average nuclear density, the earth's radius would be only about 200 meters (earth's actual radius is approximately 6.4×10^{6} meters, 30,000 times larger).

Changes of nuclei that result in changes in their atomic numbers, mass numbers, or energy states are nuclear reactions. To describe a nuclear reaction, we use an equation that identifies the nuclides involved in the reaction, their mass numbers and atomic numbers, and the other particles involved in the reaction.

Nuclear Equations

A balanced chemical reaction equation reflects the fact that during a chemical reaction, bonds break and form, and atoms are rearranged, but the total numbers of atoms of each element are conserved and do not change. A balanced nuclear reaction equation indicates that there is a rearrangement during a nuclear reaction, but of subatomic particles rather than atoms. Nuclear reactions also follow conservation laws, and they are balanced in two ways:

1. The sum of the mass numbers of the reactants equals the sum of the mass numbers of the products.
2. The sum of the charges of the reactants equals the sum of the charges of the products.

If the atomic number and the mass number of all but one of the particles in a nuclear reaction are known, we can identify the particle by balancing the reaction. For instance, we could determine that $^{17}_{8}\mathrm{O}$ is a product of the nuclear reaction of $^{14}_{7}\mathrm{N}$ and $^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$ if we knew that a proton, $^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}$, was one of the two products. Example $9.3.1$ shows how we can identify a nuclide by balancing the nuclear reaction.

✓ Example $9.3.1$: Balancing Equations for Nuclear Reactions

The reaction of an α particle with magnesium-25 $(^{25}_{12}\mathrm{Mg})$ produces a proton and a nuclide of another element. Identify the new nuclide produced.

Solution

The nuclear reaction can be written as:

$$^{25}_{12}\mathrm{Mg}+^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}\rightarrow ^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}+^{\mathrm{A}}_{\mathrm{Z}}\mathrm{X}$$

where

- A is the mass number and
- Z is the atomic number of the new nuclide, X.

Because the sum of the mass numbers of the reactants must equal the sum of the mass numbers of the products:

$$25+4=\mathrm{A}+1$$

so

$$\mathrm{A}=28$$

Similarly, the charges must balance, so:

$$12+2=\mathrm{Z}+1$$

so

$$\mathrm{Z}=13$$

Check the periodic table: The element with nuclear charge = +13 is aluminum. Thus, the product is $^{28}_{13}\mathrm{Al}$.

? Exercise 9.3.1

The nuclide $^{125}_{53}\mathrm{I}$ combines with an electron and produces a new nucleus and no other massive particles. What is the equation for this reaction?

Answer

$$^{125}_{53}\mathrm{I}+^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e}\rightarrow ^{125}_{52}\mathrm{Te}$$

The two general kinds of nuclear reactions are nuclear decay reactions and nuclear transmutation reactions**.** In a **nuclear decay reaction**, also called radioactive decay, an unstable nucleus emits radiation and is transformed into the nucleus of one or more other elements. The resulting daughter nuclei have a lower mass and are lower in energy (more stable) than the parent nucleus that decayed. In contrast, in a **nuclear transmutation reaction**, a nucleus reacts with a subatomic particle or another nucleus to form a product nucleus that is *more massive* than the starting material. As we shall see, nuclear decay reactions occur spontaneously under all conditions, but nuclear transmutation reactions occur only under very special conditions, such as the collision of a beam of highly energetic particles with a target nucleus or in the interior of stars. We begin this section by considering the different classes of radioactive nuclei, along with their characteristic nuclear decay reactions and the radiation they emit.

> *Nuclear decay reactions occur spontaneously under all conditions, whereas nuclear transmutation reactions are induced.*

Nuclear Decay Reactions

Just as we use the number and type of atoms present to balance a chemical equation, we can use the number and type of nucleons present to write a balanced nuclear equation for a nuclear decay reaction. This procedure also allows us to predict the identity of either the parent or the daughter nucleus if the identity of only one is known. Regardless of the mode of decay, the total number of nucleons is conserved in all nuclear reactions.

To describe nuclear decay reactions, chemists have extended the $^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}$ notation for nuclides to include radioactive emissions. Table $9.3.1$ lists the name and symbol for each type of emitted radiation. The most notable addition is the **positron**, a particle that has the same mass as an electron but a positive charge rather than a negative charge.

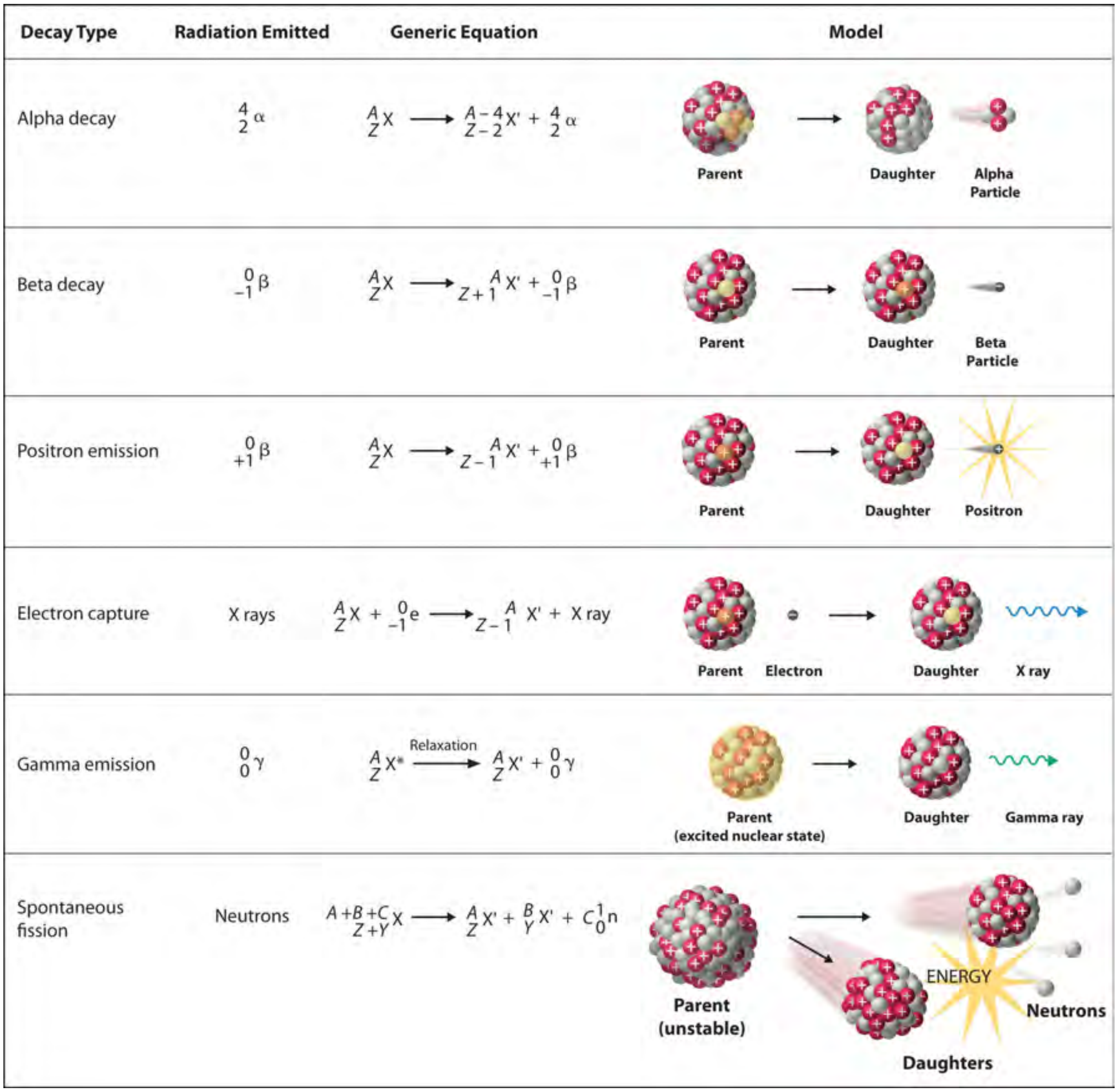
Table $9.3.1$: Nuclear Decay Emissions and Their Symbols

Identity	Symbol	Charge	Mass (amu)
helium nucleus	${}^{4}_{2}\alpha$	+2	4.001506
electron	${}^{0}_{-1}\beta$ or β^-	−1	0.000549
photon	${}^{0}_{0}\gamma$	—	—
neutron	${}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$	0	1.008665
proton	${}^{1}_{1}\mathrm{p}$	+1	1.007276
positron	${}^{0}_{+1}\beta$ or β^+	+1	0.000549

Like the notation used to indicate isotopes, the upper left superscript in the symbol for a particle gives the mass number, which is the total number of protons and neutrons. For a proton or a neutron, $A = 1$. Because neither an electron nor a positron contains protons or neutrons, its mass number is 0. The numbers should not be taken literally, however, as meaning that these particles have zero mass; ejection of a beta particle (an electron) simply has a negligible effect on the mass of a nucleus.

Similarly, the lower left subscript gives the charge of the particle. Because protons carry a positive charge, $Z = +1$ for a proton. In contrast, a neutron contains no protons and is electrically neutral, so $Z = 0$. In the case of an electron, $Z = -1$, and for a positron, $Z = +1$. Because γ rays are high-energy photons, both A and Z are 0. In some cases, two different symbols are used for particles that are identical but produced in different ways. For example, the symbol ${}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e}$, which is usually simplified to e^-, represents a free electron or an electron associated with an atom, whereas the symbol ${}^{0}_{-1}\beta$, which is often simplified to β^-, denotes an electron that originates from within the nucleus, which is a β particle. Similarly, ${}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}^{2+}$ refers to the nucleus of a helium atom, and ${}^{4}_{2}\alpha$ denotes an identical particle that has been ejected from a heavier nucleus.

There are six fundamentally different kinds of nuclear decay reactions, and each releases a different kind of particle or energy. The essential features of each reaction are shown in Figure 9.3.1. The most common are alpha and beta decay and gamma emission, but the others are essential to an understanding of nuclear decay reactions.



Decay Type	Radiation Emitted	Generic Equation	Model
Alpha decay	${}^4_2\alpha$	${}^A_ZX \longrightarrow {}^{A-4}_{Z-2}X' + {}^4_2\alpha$	Parent → Daughter Alpha Particle
Beta decay	${}^0_{-1}\beta$	${}^A_ZX \longrightarrow {}^{A}_{Z+1}X' + {}^0_{-1}\beta$	Parent → Daughter Beta Particle
Positron emission	${}^0_{+1}\beta$	${}^A_ZX \longrightarrow {}^{A}_{Z-1}X' + {}^0_{+1}\beta$	Parent → Daughter Positron
Electron capture	X rays	${}^A_ZX + {}^0_{-1}e \longrightarrow {}^{A}_{Z-1}X' + \text{X ray}$	Parent Electron → Daughter X ray
Gamma emission	${}^0_0\gamma$	${}^A_ZX^* \xrightarrow{\text{Relaxation}} {}^A_ZX' + {}^0_0\gamma$	Parent (excited nuclear state) → Daughter Gamma ray
Spontaneous fission	Neutrons	${}^{A+B+C}_{Z+Y}X \longrightarrow {}^A_ZX' + {}^B_YX' + C\,{}^1_0n$	Parent (unstable) → ENERGY Neutrons Daughters

Figure 9.3.1: Common Modes of Nuclear Decay
The different types of decay are alpha, beta, positron emission, electron capture, gamma emission, and spontaneous fission.

Alpha α Decay

Many nuclei with mass numbers greater than 200 undergo **alpha (α) decay**, which results in the emission of a helium-4 nucleus as an **alpha (α) particle**, ${}^4_2\alpha$. The general reaction is as follows:

$$\underset{\text{parent}}{{}^A_Z\text{X}} \rightarrow \underset{\text{daughter}}{{}^{A-4}_{Z-2}\text{X}'} + \underset{\substack{\text{alpha}\\\text{particle}}}{{}^4_2\alpha} \tag{9.3.2}$$

The daughter nuclide contains two fewer protons and two fewer neutrons than the parent. Thus α-particle emission produces a daughter nucleus with a mass number $A - 4$ and a nuclear charge $Z - 2$ compared to the parent nucleus. Radium-226, for example, undergoes alpha decay to form radon-222:

$${}^{226}_{88}\text{Ra} \rightarrow^{222}_{86}\text{Rn} +^4_2\alpha \tag{9.3.3}$$

Because nucleons are conserved in this and all other nuclear reactions, the sum of the mass numbers of the products, 222 + 4 = 226, equals the mass number of the parent. Similarly, the sum of the atomic numbers of the products, 86 + 2 = 88, equals the atomic number of the parent. Thus the nuclear equation is balanced.

> *Just as the total number of atoms is conserved in a chemical reaction, the total number of nucleons is conserved in a nuclear reaction.*

Beta β^- Decay

Nuclei that contain too many neutrons often undergo **beta (β) decay**, in which a neutron is converted to a proton and a high-energy electron that is ejected from the nucleus as a β particle:

$$\underset{\substack{\text{unstable}\\\text{neutron in}\\\text{nucleus}}}{{}^1_0\text{n}} \rightarrow \underset{\substack{\text{proton}\\\text{retained}\\\text{by nucleus}}}{{}^1_1\text{p}} + \underset{\substack{\text{beta particle}\\\text{emitted by}\\\text{nucleus}}}{{}^0_{-1}\beta} \tag{9.3.4}$$

The general reaction for beta decay is therefore

$$\underset{\text{parent}}{{}^A_Z\text{X}} \rightarrow \underset{\text{daughter}}{{}^A_{Z+1}\text{X}'} + \underset{\text{beta particle}}{{}^0_{-1}\beta} \tag{9.3.5}$$

Although beta decay does not change the mass number of the nucleus, it does result in an increase of +1 in the atomic number because of the addition of a proton in the daughter nucleus. Thus beta decay decreases the neutron-to-proton ratio, moving the nucleus toward the band of stable nuclei. For example, carbon-14 undergoes beta decay to form nitrogen-14:

$${}^{14}_6\text{C} \rightarrow {}^{14}_7\text{N} + {}^0_{-1}\beta$$

Once again, the number of nucleons is conserved, and the charges are balanced. The parent and the daughter nuclei have the same mass number, 14, and the sum of the atomic numbers of the products is 6, which is the same as the atomic number of the carbon-14 parent.

Positron β^+ Emission

Because a positron has the same mass as an electron but opposite charge, **positron emission** is the opposite of beta decay. Thus positron emission is characteristic of neutron-poor nuclei, which decay by transforming a proton to a neutron and emitting a high-energy positron:

$${}^1_1\text{p}^+ \rightarrow {}^1_0\text{n} + {}^0_{+1}\beta^+ \tag{9.3.6}$$

The general reaction for positron emission is therefore

$$\underset{\text{parent}}{{}^A_Z\text{X}} \rightarrow \underset{\text{daughter}}{{}^A_{Z-1}\text{X}'} + \underset{\text{positron}}{{}^0_{+1}\beta^+}$$

Like beta decay, positron emission does not change the mass number of the nucleus. In this case, however, the atomic number of the daughter nucleus is lower by 1 than that of the parent. Thus the neutron-to-proton ratio has increased, again moving the nucleus closer to the band of stable nuclei. For example, carbon-11 undergoes positron emission to form boron-11:

$${}^{11}_6\text{C} \rightarrow {}^{11}_5\text{B} + {}^0_{+1}\beta^+$$

Nucleons are conserved, and the charges balance. The mass number, 11, does not change, and the sum of the atomic numbers of the products is 6, the same as the atomic number of the parent carbon-11 nuclide.

Electron Capture

A neutron-poor nucleus can decay by either positron emission or **electron capture (EC)**, in which an electron in an inner shell reacts with a proton to produce a neutron:

$${}^1_1\text{p} + {}^0_{-1}\text{e} \rightarrow {}^1_0\text{n} \tag{9.3.7}$$

When a second electron moves from an outer shell to take the place of the lower-energy electron that was absorbed by the nucleus, an x-ray is emitted. The overall reaction for electron capture is thus

$$\underset{\text{parent}}{{}^A_Z\text{X}} + \underset{\text{electron}}{{}^0_{-1}\text{e}} \rightarrow \underset{\text{daughter}}{{}^A_{Z-1}\text{X}'} + \text{x-ray}$$

Electron capture does not change the mass number of the nucleus because both the proton that is lost and the neutron that is formed have a mass number of 1. As with positron emission, however, the atomic number of the daughter nucleus is lower by 1 than that of the parent. Once again, the neutron-to-proton ratio has increased, moving the nucleus toward the band of stable nuclei. For example, iron-55 decays by electron capture to form manganese-55, which is often written as follows:

$$^{55}_{26}\text{Fe} \overset{\text{EC}}{\rightarrow} {}^{55}_{25}\text{Mn} + \text{x-ray}$$

The atomic numbers of the parent and daughter nuclides differ in Equation 20.2.11, although the mass numbers are the same. To write a balanced nuclear equation for this reaction, we must explicitly include the captured electron in the equation:

$$^{55}_{26}\text{Fe} + {}^{0}_{-1}\text{e} \rightarrow {}^{55}_{25}\text{Mn} + \text{x-ray}$$

Both positron emission and electron capture are usually observed for nuclides with low neutron-to-proton ratios, but the decay rates for the two processes can be very different.

Gamma γ Emission

Many nuclear decay reactions produce daughter nuclei that are in a nuclear excited state, which is similar to an atom in which an electron has been excited to a higher-energy orbital to give an electronic excited state. Just as an electron in an electronic excited state emits energy in the form of a photon when it returns to the ground state, a nucleus in an excited state releases energy in the form of a photon when it returns to the ground state. These high-energy photons are γ rays. **Gamma** (γ) **emission** can occur virtually instantaneously, as it does in the alpha decay of uranium-238 to thorium-234, where the asterisk denotes an excited state:

$$^{238}_{92}\text{U} \rightarrow \underset{\substack{\text{excited}\\\text{nuclear}\\\text{state}}}{^{234}_{90}\text{Th*}} + {}^{4}_{2}\alpha \xrightarrow{\text{relaxation}} {}^{234}_{90}\text{Th} + {}^{0}_{0}\gamma$$

If we disregard the decay event that created the excited nucleus, then

$$^{234}_{88}\text{Th*} \rightarrow {}^{234}_{88}\text{Th} + {}^{0}_{0}\gamma$$

or more generally,

$$^{A}_{Z}\text{X*} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z}\text{X} + {}^{0}_{0}\gamma$$

Gamma emission can also occur after a significant delay. For example, technetium-99*m* has a half-life of about 6 hours before emitting a γ ray to form technetium-99 (the *m* is for metastable). Because γ rays are energy, their emission does not affect either the mass number or the atomic number of the daughter nuclide. Gamma-ray emission is therefore the only kind of radiation that does not necessarily involve the conversion of one element to another, although it is almost always observed in conjunction with some other nuclear decay reaction.

Spontaneous Fission

Only very massive nuclei with high neutron-to-proton ratios can undergo **spontaneous fission**, in which the nucleus breaks into two pieces that have different atomic numbers and atomic masses. This process is most important for the transactinide elements, with $Z \geq 104$. Spontaneous fission is invariably accompanied by the release of large amounts of energy, and it is usually accompanied by the emission of several neutrons as well. An example is the spontaneous fission of $^{254}_{98}\text{Cf}$, which gives a distribution of fission products; one possible set of products is shown in the following equation:

$$^{254}_{98}\text{Cf} \rightarrow {}^{118}_{46}\text{Pd} + {}^{132}_{52}\text{Te} + 4{}^{1}_{0}\text{n}$$

Once again, the number of nucleons is conserved. Thus the sum of the mass numbers of the products (118 + 132 + 4 = 254) equals the mass number of the reactant. Similarly, the sum of the atomic numbers of the products [46 + 52 + (4 × 0) = 98] is the same as the atomic number of the parent nuclide.

Example 9.3.2

Write a balanced nuclear equation to describe each reaction.

a. the beta decay of $^{35}_{16}\text{S}$

b. the decay of ${}^{201}_{80}\text{Hg}$ by electron capture
c. the decay of ${}^{30}_{15}\text{P}$ by positron emission

Given: radioactive nuclide and mode of decay

Asked for: balanced nuclear equation

Strategy:

A Identify the reactants and the products from the information given.

B Use the values of *A* and *Z* to identify any missing components needed to balance the equation.

Solution

a.

A We know the identities of the reactant and one of the products (a β particle). We can therefore begin by writing an equation that shows the reactant and one of the products and indicates the unknown product as ${}^{A}_{Z}\text{X}$:

$${}^{35}_{16}\text{S} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z}\text{X} + {}^{0}_{-1}\beta$$

B Because both protons and neutrons must be conserved in a nuclear reaction, the unknown product must have a mass number of $A = 35 - 0 = 35$ and an atomic number of $Z = 16 - (-1) = 17$. The element with $Z = 17$ is chlorine, so the balanced nuclear equation is as follows:

$${}^{35}_{16}\text{S} \rightarrow {}^{35}_{17}\text{Cl} + {}^{0}_{-1}\beta$$

b.

A We know the identities of both reactants: ${}^{201}_{80}\text{Hg}$ and an inner electron, ${}^{0}_{-1}\text{e}$. The reaction is as follows:

$${}^{201}_{80}\text{Hg} + {}^{0}_{-1}\text{e} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z}\text{X}$$

B Both protons and neutrons are conserved, so the mass number of the product must be $A = 201 + 0 = 201$, and the atomic number of the product must be $Z = 80 + (-1) = 79$, which corresponds to the element gold. The balanced nuclear equation is thus

$${}^{201}_{80}\text{Hg} + {}^{0}_{-1}\text{e} \rightarrow {}^{201}_{79}\text{Au}$$

c.

A As in part (a), we are given the identities of the reactant and one of the products—in this case, a positron. The unbalanced nuclear equation is therefore

$${}^{30}_{15}\text{P} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z}\text{X} + {}^{0}_{+1}\beta$$

B The mass number of the second product is $A = 30 - 0 = 30$, and its atomic number is $Z = 15 - 1 = 14$, which corresponds to silicon. The balanced nuclear equation for the reaction is as follows:

$${}^{30}_{15}\text{P} \rightarrow {}^{30}_{14}\text{Si} + {}^{0}_{+1}\beta$$

? Exercise 9.3.2

Write a balanced nuclear equation to describe each reaction.

a. ${}^{11}_{6}\text{C}$ by positron emission
b. the beta decay of molybdenum-99
c. the emission of an α particle followed by gamma emission from ${}^{185}_{74}\text{W}$

Answer a

$$^{11}_{6}\mathrm{C} \rightarrow {}^{11}_{5}\mathrm{B} + {}^{0}_{+1}\beta$$

Answer d

$$^{99}_{42}\mathrm{Mo} \rightarrow {}^{99m}_{43}\mathrm{Tc} + {}^{0}_{-1}\beta$$

Answer c

$$^{185}_{74}\mathrm{W} \rightarrow {}^{181}_{72}\mathrm{Hf} + {}^{4}_{2}\alpha + {}^{0}_{0}\gamma$$

✓ Example 9.3.3

Predict the kind of nuclear change each unstable nuclide undergoes when it decays.

a. $^{45}_{22}\mathrm{Ti}$
b. $^{242}_{94}\mathrm{Pu}$
c. $^{12}_{5}\mathrm{B}$
d. $^{256}_{100}\mathrm{Fm}$

Given: nuclide

Asked for: type of nuclear decay

Strategy:

Based on the neutron-to-proton ratio and the value of Z, predict the type of nuclear decay reaction that will produce a more stable nuclide.

Solution

a. This nuclide has a neutron-to-proton ratio of only 1.05, which is much less than the requirement for stability for an element with an atomic number in this range. Nuclei that have low neutron-to-proton ratios decay by converting a proton to a neutron. The two possibilities are positron emission, which converts a proton to a neutron and a positron, and electron capture, which converts a proton and a core electron to a neutron. In this case, both are observed, with positron emission occurring about 86% of the time and electron capture about 14% of the time.
b. Nuclei with $Z > 83$ are too heavy to be stable and usually undergo alpha decay, which decreases both the mass number and the atomic number. Thus $^{242}_{94}\mathrm{Pu}$ is expected to decay by alpha emission.
c. This nuclide has a neutron-to-proton ratio of 1.4, which is very high for a light element. Nuclei with high neutron-to-proton ratios decay by converting a neutron to a proton and an electron. The electron is emitted as a β particle, and the proton remains in the nucleus, causing an increase in the atomic number with no change in the mass number. We therefore predict that $^{12}_{5}\mathrm{B}$ will undergo beta decay.
d. This is a massive nuclide, with an atomic number of 100 and a mass number much greater than 200. Nuclides with $A \geq 200$ tend to decay by alpha emission, and even heavier nuclei tend to undergo spontaneous fission. We therefore predict that $^{256}_{100}\mathrm{Fm}$ will decay by either or both of these two processes. In fact, it decays by both spontaneous fission and alpha emission, in a 97:3 ratio.

? Exercise 9.3.3

Predict the kind of nuclear change each unstable nuclide undergoes when it decays.

a. $^{32}_{14}\mathrm{Si}$
b. $^{43}_{21}\mathrm{Sc}$
c. $^{231}_{91}\mathrm{Pa}$

Answer a

beta decay

Answer d

positron emission or electron capture

Answer c

alpha decay

Radioactive Decay Series

The nuclei of all elements with atomic numbers greater than 83 are unstable. Thus all isotopes of all elements beyond bismuth in the periodic table are radioactive. Because alpha decay decreases *Z* by only 2, and positron emission or electron capture decreases *Z* by only 1, it is impossible for any nuclide with $Z > 85$ to decay to a stable daughter nuclide in a single step, except via nuclear fission. Consequently, radioactive isotopes with $Z > 85$ usually decay to a daughter nucleus that is radiactive, which in turn decays to a second radioactive daughter nucleus, and so forth, until a stable nucleus finally results. This series of sequential alpha- and beta-decay reactions is called a **radioactive decay series**. The most common is the uranium-238 decay series, which produces lead-206 in a series of 14 sequential alpha- and beta-decay reactions (Figure 9.3.2). Although a radioactive decay series can be written for almost any isotope with $Z > 85$, only two others occur naturally: the decay of uranium-235 to lead-207 (in 11 steps) and thorium-232 to lead-208 (in 10 steps). A fourth series, the decay of neptunium-237 to bismuth-209 in 11 steps, is known to have occurred on the primitive Earth. With a half-life of "only" 2.14 million years, all the neptunium-237 present when Earth was formed decayed long ago, and today all the neptunium on Earth is synthetic.

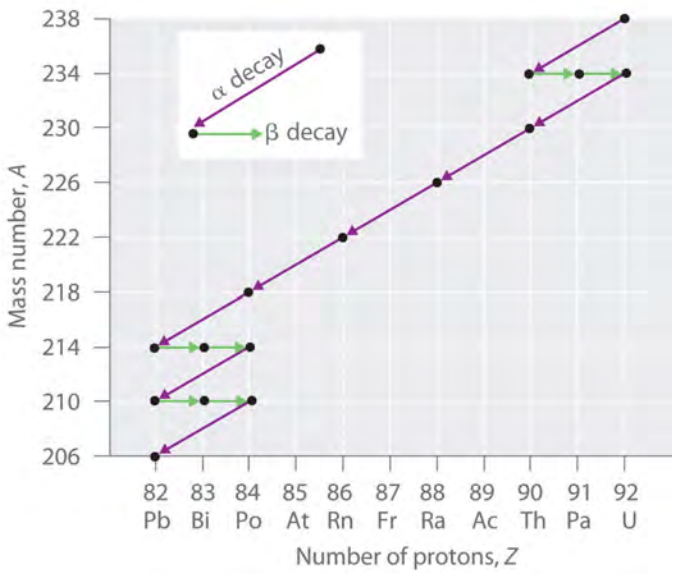


Figure 9.3.2 A Radioactive Decay Series. Three naturally occurring radioactive decay series are known to occur currently: the uranium-238 decay series, the decay of uranium-235 to lead-207, and the decay of thorium-232 to lead-208.

Graph of mass number against number of protons. The purple lines are alpha decay which are linear while the green lines are beta decay and are horizontal and parallel to the x axis.

Due to these radioactive decay series, small amounts of very unstable isotopes are found in ores that contain uranium or thorium. These rare, unstable isotopes should have decayed long ago to stable nuclei with a lower atomic number, and they would no longer be found on Earth. Because they are generated continuously by the decay of uranium or thorium, however, their amounts have reached a steady state, in which their rate of formation is equal to their rate of decay. In some cases, the abundance of the daughter isotopes can be used to date a material or identify its origin.

Induced Nuclear Reactions

The discovery of radioactivity in the late 19th century showed that some nuclei spontaneously transform into nuclei with a different number of protons, thereby producing a different element. When scientists realized that these naturally occurring radioactive isotopes decayed by emitting subatomic particles, they realized that—in principle—it should be possible to carry out the reverse reaction, converting a stable nucleus to another more massive nucleus by bombarding it with subatomic particles in a nuclear transmutation reaction.

The first successful nuclear transmutation reaction was carried out in 1919 by Ernest Rutherford, who showed that α particles emitted by radium could react with nitrogen nuclei to form oxygen nuclei. As shown in the following equation, a proton is emitted in the process:

$$^{4}_{2}\alpha + ^{14}_{7}\mathrm{N} \rightarrow ^{17}_{8}\mathrm{O} + ^{1}_{1}\mathrm{p}$$

Rutherford’s nuclear transmutation experiments led to the discovery of the neutron. He found that bombarding the nucleus of a light target element with an α particle usually converted the target nucleus to a product that had an atomic number higher by 1 and a mass number higher by 3 than the target nucleus. Such behavior is consistent with the emission of a proton after reaction with the α particle. Very light targets such as Li, Be, and B reacted differently, however, emitting a new kind of highly penetrating radiation rather than a proton. Because neither a magnetic field nor an electrical field could deflect these high-energy particles, Rutherford concluded that they were electrically neutral. Other observations suggested that the mass of the neutral particle was similar to the mass of the proton. In 1932, James Chadwick (Nobel Prize in Physics, 1935), who was a student of Rutherford’s at the time, named these neutral particles neutrons and proposed that they were fundamental building blocks of the atom. The reaction that Chadwick initially used to explain the production of neutrons was as follows:

$$^{4}_{2}\alpha + ^{9}_{4}\mathrm{Be} \rightarrow ^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C} + ^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} \tag{9.3.8}$$

Because α particles and atomic nuclei are both positively charged, electrostatic forces cause them to repel each other. Only α particles with very high kinetic energy can overcome this repulsion and collide with a nucleus (Figure 9.3.3). Neutrons have no electrical charge, however, so they are not repelled by the nucleus. Hence bombardment with neutrons is a much easier way to prepare new isotopes of the lighter elements. In fact, carbon-14 is formed naturally in the atmosphere by bombarding nitrogen-14 with neutrons generated by cosmic rays:

$$^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} + ^{14}_{7}\mathrm{N} \rightarrow ^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C} + ^{1}_{1}\mathrm{p} \tag{9.3.9}$$

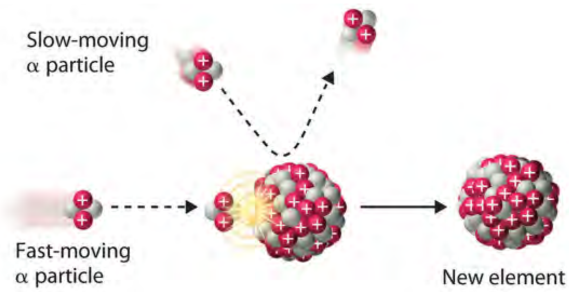


Figure 9.3.3: A Nuclear Transmutation Reaction. Bombarding a target of one element with high-energy nuclei or subatomic particles can create new elements. Electrostatic repulsions normally prevent a positively charged particle from colliding and reacting with a positively charged nucleus. If the positively charged particle is moving at a very high speed, however, its kinetic energy may be great enough to overcome the electrostatic repulsions, and it may collide with the target nucleus. Such collisions can result in a nuclear transmutation reaction.

✓ Example 9.3.4

In 1933, Frédéric Joliot and Iréne Joliot-Curie (daughter of Marie and Pierre Curie) prepared the first artificial radioactive isotope by bombarding aluminum-27 with α particles. For each $^{27}\mathrm{Al}$ that reacted, one neutron was released. Identify the product nuclide and write a balanced nuclear equation for this transmutation reaction.

Given: reactants in a nuclear transmutation reaction

Asked for: product nuclide and balanced nuclear equation

Strategy:

A Based on the reactants and one product, identify the other product of the reaction. Use conservation of mass and charge to determine the values of Z and A of the product nuclide and thus its identity.

B Write the balanced nuclear equation for the reaction.

Solution

A Bombarding an element with α particles usually produces an element with an atomic number that is 2 greater than the atomic number of the target nucleus. Thus we expect that aluminum (*Z* = 13) will be converted to phosphorus (*Z* = 15). With one neutron released, conservation of mass requires that the mass number of the other product be 3 greater than the mass number of the target. In this case, the mass number of the target is 27, so the mass number of the product will be 30. The second product is therefore phosphorus-30, $^{30}_{15}\text{P}$.

B The balanced nuclear equation for the reaction is as follows:

$$^{27}_{13}\text{Al} + ^{4}_{2}\alpha \rightarrow ^{30}_{15}\text{P} + ^{1}_{0}\text{n}$$

? Exercise 9.3.4

Because all isotopes of technetium are radioactive and have short half-lives, it does not exist in nature. Technetium can, however, be prepared by nuclear transmutation reactions. For example, bombarding a molybdenum-96 target with deuterium nuclei $\left(^{2}_{1}\text{H}\right)$ produces technetium-97. Identify the other product of the reaction and write a balanced nuclear equation for this transmutation reaction.

Answer

neutron, $^{1}_{0}\text{n}$; $^{96}_{42}\text{Mo} + ^{2}_{1}\text{H} \rightarrow ^{97}_{43}\text{Tc} + ^{1}_{0}\text{n}$:

We noted earlier in this section that very heavy nuclides, corresponding to *Z* ≥ 104, tend to decay by spontaneous fission. Nuclides with slightly lower values of *Z*, such as the isotopes of uranium (*Z* = 92) and plutonium (*Z* = 94), do not undergo spontaneous fission at any significant rate. Some isotopes of these elements, however, such as $^{235}_{92}\text{U}$ and $^{239}_{94}\text{Pu}$ undergo induced nuclear fission when they are bombarded with relatively low-energy neutrons, as shown in the following equation for uranium-235 and in Figure 9.3.4:

$$^{235}_{92}\text{U} + ^{1}_{0}\text{n} \rightarrow ^{236}_{92}\text{U} \rightarrow ^{141}_{56}\text{Ba} + ^{92}_{36}\text{Kr} + 3^{1}_{0}\text{n} \tag{9.3.10}$$

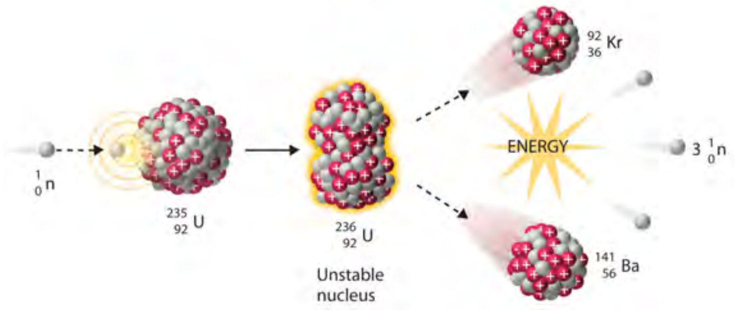


Figure 9.3.4 Neutron-Induced Nuclear Fission. Collision of a relatively slow-moving neutron with a fissile nucleus can split it into two smaller nuclei with the same or different masses. Neutrons are also released in the process, along with a great deal of energy.

Any isotope that can undergo a nuclear fission reaction when bombarded with neutrons is called a **fissile isotope**.

During nuclear fission, the nucleus usually divides asymmetrically rather than into two equal parts, as shown in Figure 9.3.4. Moreover, every fission event of a given nuclide does not give the same products; more than 50 different fission modes have been identified for uranium-235, for example. Consequently, nuclear fission of a fissile nuclide can never be described by a single equation. Instead, as shown in Figure 9.3.5, a distribution of many pairs of fission products with different yields is obtained, but the mass ratio of each pair of fission products produced by a single fission event is always roughly 3:2.

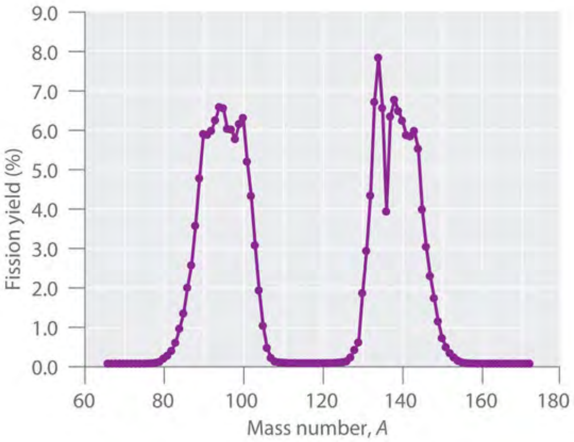


Figure 9.3.5: Mass Distribution of Nuclear Fission Products of ^{235}U. Nuclear fission usually produces a range of products with different masses and yields, although the mass ratio of each pair of fission products from a fission event is approximately 3:2. As shown in this plot, more than 50 different fission products are known for^{235}U. Data source: T. R. England and B. F. Rider, Los Alamos National Laboratory, LA-UR-94-3106, ENDF-349 (1993).

Synthesis of Transuranium Elements

Uranium (Z = 92) is the heaviest naturally occurring element. Consequently, all the elements with Z > 92, the **transuranium elements**, are artificial and have been prepared by bombarding suitable target nuclei with smaller particles. The first of the transuranium elements to be prepared was neptunium (Z = 93), which was synthesized in 1940 by bombarding a ^{238}U target with neutrons. As shown in Equation 20.21, this reaction occurs in two steps. Initially, a neutron combines with a ^{238}U nucleus to form ^{239}U, which is unstable and undergoes beta decay to produce ^{239}Np:

$$^{238}_{92}\text{U} + {}^{1}_{0}\text{n} \rightarrow {}^{239}_{92}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{239}_{93}\text{Np} + {}^{0}_{-1}\beta$$

Subsequent beta decay of ^{239}Np produces the second transuranium element, plutonium (Z = 94):

$$^{239}_{93}\text{Np} \rightarrow {}^{239}_{94}\text{Pu} + {}^{0}_{-1}\beta$$

Bombarding the target with more massive nuclei creates elements that have atomic numbers significantly greater than that of the target nucleus (Table 9.3.2). Such techniques have resulted in the creation of the superheavy elements 114 and 116, both of which lie in or near the “island of stability."

Table 9.3.2: Some Reactions Used to Synthesize Transuranium Elements

$^{239}_{94}\text{Pu} + {}^{4}_{2}\alpha \rightarrow {}^{242}_{96}\text{Cm} + {}^{1}_{0}\text{n}$
$^{239}_{94}\text{Pu} + {}^{4}_{2}\alpha \rightarrow {}^{241}_{95}\text{Am} + {}^{1}_{1}\text{p} + {}^{1}_{0}\text{n}$
$^{242}_{96}\text{Cm} + {}^{4}_{2}\alpha \rightarrow {}^{243}_{97}\text{Bk} + {}^{1}_{1}\text{p} + 2{}^{1}_{0}\text{n}$
$^{253}_{99}\text{Es} + {}^{4}_{2}\alpha \rightarrow {}^{256}_{101}\text{Md} + {}^{1}_{0}\text{n}$
$^{238}_{92}\text{U} + {}^{12}_{6}\text{C} \rightarrow {}^{246}_{98}\text{Cf} + 4{}^{1}_{0}\text{n}$
$^{252}_{98}\text{Cf} + {}^{10}_{5}\text{B} \rightarrow {}^{256}_{103}\text{Lr} + 6{}^{1}_{0}\text{n}$

A device called a particle accelerator is used to accelerate positively charged particles to the speeds needed to overcome the electrostatic repulsions between them and the target nuclei by using electrical and magnetic fields. Operationally, the simplest particle accelerator is the linear accelerator (Figure 9.3.6), in which a beam of particles is injected at one end of a long evacuated tube. Rapid alternation of the polarity of the electrodes along the tube causes the particles to be alternately accelerated toward a region of opposite charge and repelled by a region with the same charge, resulting in a tremendous acceleration as the particle travels down the tube. A modern linear accelerator such as the Stanford Linear Accelerator (SLAC) at Stanford University is about 2 miles long.

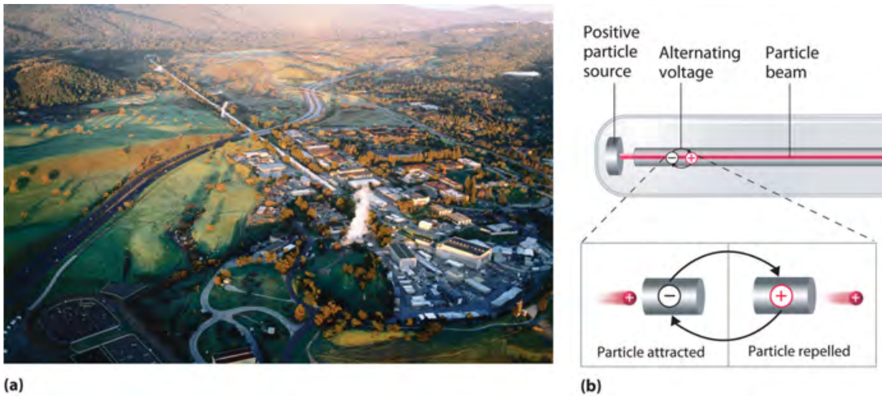


Figure 9.3.6: A Linear Particle Accelerator. (a) An aerial view of the SLAC, the longest linear particle accelerator in the world; the overall length of the tunnel is 2 miles. (b) Rapidly reversing the polarity of the electrodes in the tube causes the charged particles to be alternately attracted as they enter one section of the tube and repelled as they leave that section. As a result, the particles are continuously accelerated along the length of the tube.

To achieve the same outcome in less space, a particle accelerator called a cyclotron forces the charged particles to travel in a circular path rather than a linear one. The particles are injected into the center of a ring and accelerated by rapidly alternating the polarity of two large D-shaped electrodes above and below the ring, which accelerates the particles outward along a spiral path toward the target.

The length of a linear accelerator and the size of the D-shaped electrodes in a cyclotron severely limit the kinetic energy that particles can attain in these devices. These limitations can be overcome by using a synchrotron, a hybrid of the two designs. A synchrotron contains an evacuated tube similar to that of a linear accelerator, but the tube is circular and can be more than a mile in diameter. Charged particles are accelerated around the circle by a series of magnets whose polarities rapidly alternate.

Summary and Key Takeaway

- Nuclear decay reactions occur spontaneously under all conditions and produce more stable daughter nuclei, whereas nuclear transmutation reactions are induced and form a product nucleus that is more massive than the starting material.

In **nuclear decay reactions (or radioactive decay)**, the parent nucleus is converted to a more stable daughter nucleus. Nuclei with too many neutrons decay by converting a neutron to a proton, whereas nuclei with too few neutrons decay by converting a proton to a neutron. Very heavy nuclei (with $A \geq 200$ and $Z > 83$) are unstable and tend to decay by emitting an **α particle**. When an unstable nuclide undergoes radioactive decay, the total number of nucleons is conserved, as is the total positive charge. Six different kinds of nuclear decay reactions are known. *Alpha decay* results in the emission of an α particle, ${}^{4}_{2}\alpha$, and produces a daughter nucleus with a mass number that is lower by 4 and an atomic number that is lower by 2 than the parent nucleus. **Beta decay** converts a neutron to a proton and emits a high-energy electron, producing a daughter nucleus with the same mass number as the parent and an atomic number that is higher by 1. **Positron emission** is the opposite of beta decay and converts a proton to a neutron plus a positron. Positron emission does not change the mass number of the nucleus, but the atomic number of the daughter nucleus is lower by 1 than the parent. In **electron capture (EC)**, an electron in an inner shell reacts with a proton to produce a neutron, with emission of an x-ray. The mass number does not change, but the atomic number of the daughter is lower by 1 than the parent. In **gamma emission**, a daughter nucleus in a nuclear excited state undergoes a transition to a lower-energy state by emitting a γ ray. Very heavy nuclei with high neutron-to-proton ratios can undergo **spontaneous fission**, in which the nucleus breaks into two pieces that can have different atomic numbers and atomic masses with the release of neutrons. Many very heavy nuclei decay via a **radioactive decay series**—a succession of some combination of alpha- and beta-decay reactions. In **nuclear transmutation reactions**, a target nucleus is bombarded with energetic subatomic particles to give a product nucleus that is more massive than the original. All **transuranium elements**—elements with $Z > 92$—are artificial and must be prepared by nuclear transmutation reactions. These reactions are carried out in particle accelerators such as linear accelerators, cyclotrons, and synchrotrons.

Key Equations

alpha decay

$$ {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X} \rightarrow {}^{A-4}_{Z-2}\mathrm{X}' + {}^{4}_{2}\alpha $$

beta decay

$$^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z+1}\mathrm{X}' + {}^{0}_{-1}\beta$$

positron emission

$$^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z-1}\mathrm{X}' + {}^{0}_{+1}\beta$$

electron capture

$$^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X} + {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z-1}\mathrm{X}' + \text{x-ray}$$

gamma emission

$$^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}^{*} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X} + {}^{0}_{0}\gamma$$

9.4: The Valley of Stability- Predicting the Type of Radioactivity

Learning Objectives

- To understand the factors that affect nuclear stability.

Although most of the known elements have at least one isotope whose atomic nucleus is stable indefinitely, all elements have isotopes that are unstable and disintegrate, or decay, at measurable rates by emitting radiation. Some elements have no stable isotopes and eventually decay to other elements. In contrast to the chemical reactions that were the main focus of earlier chapters and are due to changes in the arrangements of the valence electrons of atoms, the process of nuclear decay results in changes inside an atomic nucleus. We begin our discussion of nuclear reactions by reviewing the conventions used to describe the components of the nucleus.

The Atomic Nucleus

Each element can be represented by the notation ^A_ZX, where A, the mass number, is the sum of the number of protons and the number of neutrons, and Z, the atomic number, is the number of protons. The protons and neutrons that make up the nucleus of an atom are called **nucleons**, and an atom with a particular number of protons and neutrons is called a **nuclide**. Nuclides with the same number of protons but different numbers of neutrons are called **isotopes**. Isotopes can also be represented by an alternative notation that uses the name of the element followed by the mass number, such as carbon-12. The stable isotopes of oxygen, for example, can be represented in any of the following ways:

stable isotopes of oxygen represented in different ways

^A_ZX	$^{16}_8\text{O}$	$^{17}_8\text{O}$	$^{18}_8\text{O}$
^AX	^{16}O	^{17}O	^{18}O
element-A:	oxygen-16	oxygen-17	oxygen-18

Because the number of neutrons is equal to $A - Z$, we see that the first isotope of oxygen has 8 neutrons, the second isotope 9 neutrons, and the third isotope 10 neutrons. Isotopes of all naturally occurring elements on Earth are present in nearly fixed proportions, with each proportion constituting an isotope's *natural abundance*. For example, in a typical terrestrial sample of oxygen, 99.76% of the O atoms is oxygen-16, 0.20% is oxygen-18, and 0.04% is oxygen-17. Any nucleus that is unstable and decays spontaneously is said to be **radioactive**, emitting subatomic particles and electromagnetic radiation. The emissions are collectively called *radioactivity* and can be measured. Isotopes that emit radiation are called **radioisotopes**.

Nuclear Stability

The nucleus of an atom occupies a tiny fraction of the volume of an atom and contains the number of protons and neutrons that is characteristic of a given isotope. Electrostatic repulsions would normally cause the positively charged protons to repel each other, but the nucleus does not fly apart because of the **strong nuclear force**, an extremely powerful but very short-range attractive force between nucleons (Figure 9.4.1). All stable nuclei except the hydrogen-1 nucleus (^1H) contain at least one neutron to overcome the electrostatic repulsion between protons. As the number of protons in the nucleus increases, the number of neutrons needed for a stable nucleus increases even more rapidly. Too many protons (or too few neutrons) in the nucleus result in an imbalance between forces, which leads to nuclear instability.

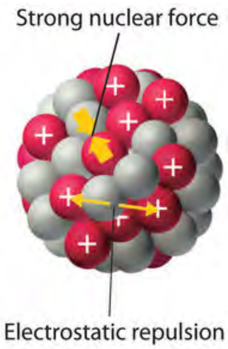


Figure 9.4.1: Competing Interactions within the Atomic Nucleus. Electrostatic repulsions between positively charged protons would normally cause the nuclei of atoms (except H) to fly apart. In stable atomic nuclei, these repulsions are overcome by the strong nuclear force, a short-range but powerful attractive interaction between nucleons. If the attractive interactions due to the strong nuclear force are weaker than the electrostatic repulsions between protons, the nucleus is unstable, and it will eventually decay.

The relationship between the number of protons and the number of neutrons in stable nuclei, arbitrarily defined as having a half-life longer than 10 times the age of Earth, is shown graphically in Figure 9.4.2. The stable isotopes form a “peninsula of stability” in a “sea of instability.” Only two stable isotopes, ^{1}H and ^{3}He, have a neutron-to-proton ratio less than 1. Several stable isotopes of light atoms have a neutron-to-proton ratio equal to 1 (e.g., $^{4}_{2}He$, $^{10}_{5}B$, and $^{40}_{20}Ca$). All other stable nuclei have a higher neutron-to-proton ratio, which increases steadily to about 1.5 for the heaviest nuclei. Regardless of the number of neutrons, however, all elements with Z > 83 are unstable and radioactive.

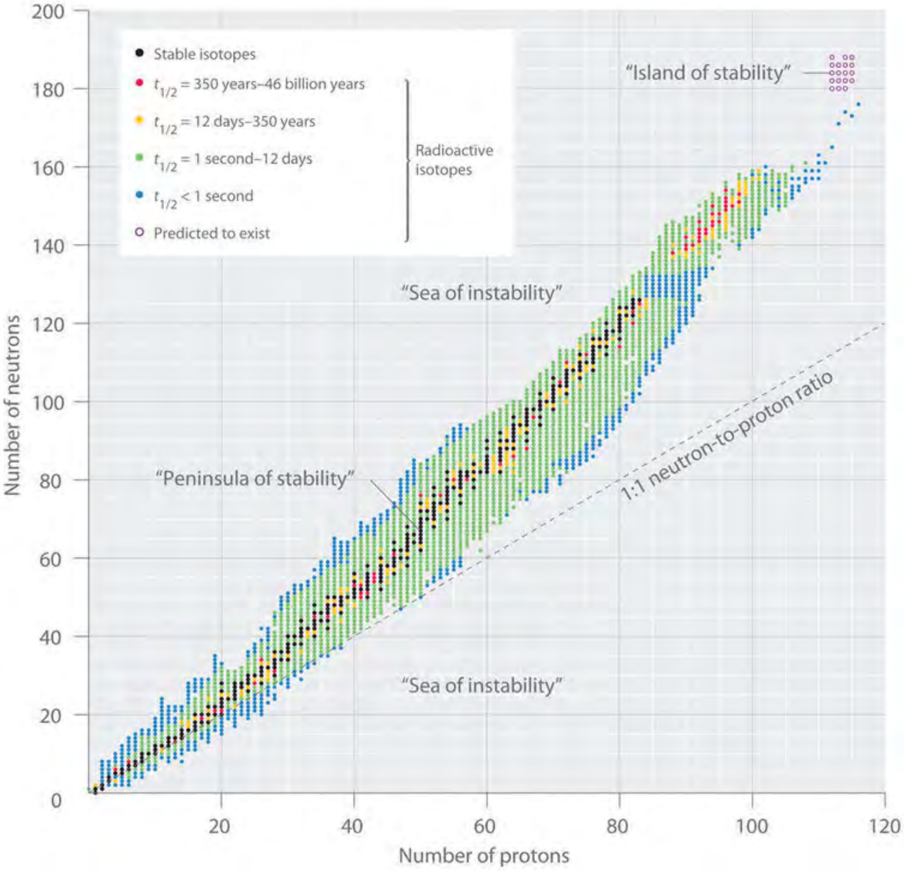


Figure $9.4.2$: The Relationship between Nuclear Stability and the Neutron-to-Proton Ratio. In this plot of the number of neutrons versus the number of protons, each black point corresponds to a stable nucleus. In this classification, a stable nucleus is arbitrarily defined as one with a half-life longer than 46 billion years (10 times the age of Earth). As the number of protons (the atomic number) increases, the number of neutrons required for a stable nucleus increases even more rapidly. Isotopes shown in red, yellow, green, and blue are progressively less stable and more radioactive; the farther an isotope is from the diagonal band of stable isotopes, the shorter its half-life. The purple dots indicate superheavy nuclei that are predicted to be relatively stable, meaning that they are expected to be radioactive but to have relatively long half-lives. In most cases, these elements have not yet been observed or synthesized. Data source: National Nuclear Data Center, Brookhaven National Laboratory, Evaluated Nuclear Structure Data File (ENSDF), Chart of Nuclides, http://www.nndc.bnl.gov/chart.

Graph of number or neutrons against the number or protons. The graph is divided into sections of "sea of instability", "peninsula of stability", "sea of instability" and "island of stability"

As shown in Figure $9.4.3$, more than half of the stable nuclei (166 out of 279) have *even* numbers of both neutrons and protons; only 6 of the 279 stable nuclei do not have odd numbers of both. Moreover, certain numbers of neutrons or protons result in especially stable nuclei; these are the so-called *magic numbers* 2, 8, 20, 50, 82, and 126. For example, tin (Z = 50) has 10 stable isotopes, but the elements on either side of tin in the periodic table, indium (Z = 49) and antimony (Z = 51), have only 2 stable isotopes each. Nuclei with magic numbers of *both* protons *and* neutrons are said to be "doubly magic" and are even more stable. Examples of elements with doubly magic nuclei are $^{4}_{2}\text{He}$, with 2 protons and 2 neutrons, and $^{208}_{82}\text{Pb}$, with 82 protons and 126 neutrons, which is the heaviest known stable isotope of any element.

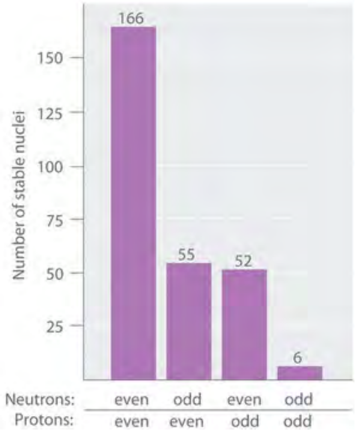


Figure 9.4.3: The Relationship between the Number of Protons and the Number of Neutrons and Nuclear Stability.

> *Most stable nuclei contain **even** numbers of both neutrons and protons*

The pattern of stability suggested by the magic numbers of nucleons is reminiscent of the stability associated with the closed-shell electron configurations of the noble gases in group 18 and has led to the hypothesis that the nucleus contains shells of nucleons that are in some ways analogous to the shells occupied by electrons in an atom. As shown in Figure 9.4.2, the "peninsula" of stable isotopes is surrounded by a "reef" of radioactive isotopes, which are stable enough to exist for varying lengths of time before they eventually decay to produce other nuclei.

Origin of the Magic Numbers

Multiple models have been formulated to explain the origin of the magic numbers and two popular ones are the Nuclear Shell Model and the Liquid Drop Model. Unfortuneatly, both require advanced quantum mechanics to fully understand and are beyond the scope of this text.

Example 9.4.1

Classify each nuclide as stable or radioactive.

a. $^{30}_{15}\text{P}$
b. $^{98}_{43}\text{Tc}$
c. tin-118
d. $^{239}_{94}\text{Pu}$

Given: mass number and atomic number

Asked for: predicted nuclear stability

Strategy:

Use the number of protons, the neutron-to-proton ratio, and the presence of even or odd numbers of neutrons and protons to predict the stability or radioactivity of each nuclide.

Solution:

a. This isotope of phosphorus has 15 neutrons and 15 protons, giving a neutron-to-proton ratio of 1.0. Although the atomic number, 15, is much less than the value of 83 above which all nuclides are unstable, the neutron-to-proton ratio is less than that expected for stability for an element with this mass. As shown in Figure 9.4.2, its neutron-to-proton ratio should be greater than 1. Moreover, this isotope has an odd number of both neutrons and protons, which also tends to make a nuclide unstable. Consequently, $^{30}_{15}\text{P}$ is predicted to be radioactive, and it is.

b. This isotope of technetium has 55 neutrons and 43 protons, giving a neutron-to-proton ratio of 1.28, which places $^{98}_{43}\text{Tc}$ near the edge of the band of stability. The atomic number, 55, is much less than the value of 83 above which all isotopes are unstable. These facts suggest that $^{98}_{43}\text{Tc}$ might be stable. However, $^{98}_{43}\text{Tc}$ has an odd number of both neutrons and protons, a combination that seldom gives a stable nucleus. Consequently, $^{98}_{43}\text{Tc}$ is predicted to be radioactive, and it is.

c. Tin-118 has 68 neutrons and 50 protons, for a neutron-to-proton ratio of 1.36. As in part b, this value and the atomic number both suggest stability. In addition, the isotope has an even number of both neutrons and protons, which tends to increase nuclear stability. Most important, the nucleus has 50 protons, and 50 is one of the magic numbers associated with especially stable nuclei. Thus $^{118}_{50}\text{Sn}$should be particularly stable.

d. This nuclide has an atomic number of 94. Because all nuclei with Z > 83 are unstable, $^{239}_{94}\text{Pu}$ must be radioactive.

Exercise 9.4.1

Classify each nuclide as stable or radioactive.

a. $^{232}_{90}\text{Th}$
b. $^{40}_{20}\text{Ca}$
c. $^{15}_{8}\text{O}$
d. $^{139}_{57}\text{La}$

Answer a

radioactive

Answer b

stable

Answer c

radioactive

Answer d

stable

Superheavy Elements

In addition to the “peninsula of stability” there is a small “island of stability” that is predicted to exist in the upper right corner. This island corresponds to the **superheavy elements**, with atomic numbers near the magic number 126. Because the next magic number for neutrons should be 184, it was suggested that an element with 114 protons and 184 neutrons might be stable enough to exist in nature. Although these claims were met with skepticism for many years, since 1999 a few atoms of isotopes with Z = 114 and Z = 116 have been prepared and found to be surprisingly stable. One isotope of element 114 lasts 2.7 seconds before decaying, described as an “eternity” by nuclear chemists. Moreover, there is recent evidence for the existence of a nucleus with A = 292 that was found in ^{232}Th. With an estimated half-life greater than 10^8 years, the isotope is particularly stable. Its measured mass is consistent with predictions for the mass of an isotope with Z = 122. Thus a number of relatively long-lived nuclei may well be accessible among the superheavy elements.

Summary

Subatomic particles of the nucleus (protons and neutrons) are called **nucleons**. A **nuclide** is an atom with a particular number of protons and neutrons. An unstable nucleus that decays spontaneously is **radioactive**, and its emissions are collectively called *radioactivity*. Isotopes that emit radiation are called **radioisotopes**. Each nucleon is attracted to other nucleons by the **strong nuclear force**. Stable nuclei generally have even numbers of both protons and neutrons and a neutron-to-proton ratio of at least 1. Nuclei that contain *magic numbers* of protons and neutrons are often especially stable. **Superheavy elements**, with atomic numbers near 126, may even be stable enough to exist in nature.

9.5: Detecting Radioactivity

Learning Objectives

- Understand how the Geiger counter can be used to quantify the rate of ionization radiation.

When alpha, beta or gamma particles collide with a target, some of the energy in the particle is transferred to the target, typically resulting in the promotion of an electron to an “excited state”. In many “targets”, especially gasses, this results in *ionization*. Alpha, beta and gamma radiation are broadly referred to as **ionizing radiation**. A **Geiger counter** (or Geiger-Müller counter) takes advantage of this in order to detect these particles. In a Geiger tube, the electron produced by ionization of a captive gas travels to the anode and the change in voltage is detected by the attached circuitry. Most counters of this type are designed to emit an audible “click” in response to the change in voltage, and to also show it on a digital or analog meter. A simple schematic of a Geiger counter is shown in Figure $9.5.1$.

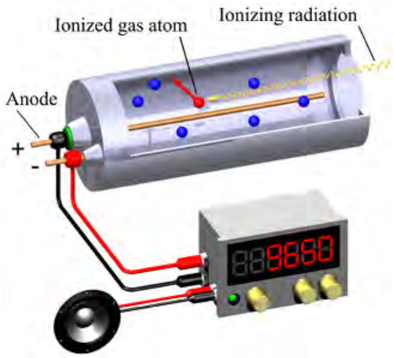


Figure $9.5.1$: Schematic of a Geiger-Müller counter using an "end window" tube for low penetration radiation. A loudspeaker is also used for indication. (CC-BY-SA-3.0 Svjo-2 vai Wikipedia(opens in new window)).

Although scientists were not aware at the time of the Geiger counter's invention, all of us are subjected to a certain amount of radiation every day. This radiation is called **background radiation** and comes from a variety of natural and artificial radiation sources. Approximately 82% of background radiation comes from natural sources. These natural sources include:

1. Sources in the earth—including naturally occurring radioactive elements—which are incorporated in building materials, and also in the human body.
2. Sources from space in the form of cosmic rays.
3. Sources in the atmosphere, such as radioactive radon gas released from the earth; and radioactive atoms like carbon-14, produced in the atmosphere by bombardment from high-energy cosmic rays.

Measuring Radiation Exposure

9.6: The Kinetics of Radioactive Decay and Radiometric Dating

Learning Objectives

- To know how to use half-lives to describe the rates of first-order reactions

Another approach to describing reaction rates is based on the time required for the concentration of a reactant to decrease to one-half its initial value. This period of time is called the **half-life** of the reaction, written as $t_{1/2}$. Thus the half-life of a reaction is the time required for the reactant concentration to decrease from $[A]_0$ to $[A]_{0/2}$. If two reactions have the same order, the faster reaction will have a shorter half-life, and the slower reaction will have a longer half-life.

The half-life of a first-order reaction under a given set of reaction conditions is a constant. This is not true for zeroth- and second-order reactions. The half-life of a first-order reaction is independent of the concentration of the reactants. This becomes evident when we rearrange the integrated rate law for a first-order reaction to produce the following equation:

$$\ln \frac{[\mathrm{A}]_0}{[\mathrm{A}]} = kt \tag{9.6.1}$$

Substituting $[A]_{0/2}$ for $[A]$ and $t_{1/2}$ for t (to indicate a half-life) into Equation 9.6.1 gives

$$\ln \frac{[\mathrm{A}]_0}{[\mathrm{A}]_0/2} = \ln 2 = kt_{1/2} \tag{9.6.2}$$

Substituting $\ln 2 \approx 0.693$ into the equation results in the expression for the half-life of a first-order reaction:

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{0.693}{k} \tag{9.6.3}$$

Thus, for a first-order reaction, each successive half-life is the same length of time, as shown in Figure $9.6.1$, and is *independent* of [A].

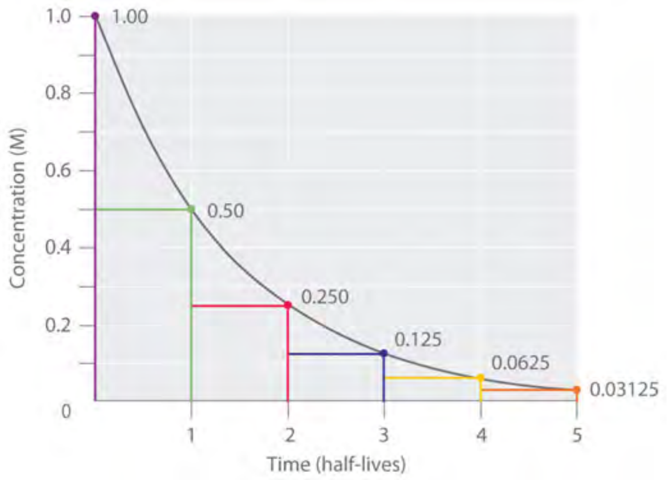


Figure $9.6.1$: The Half-Life of a First-Order Reaction. This plot shows the concentration of the reactant in a first-order reaction as a function of time and identifies a series of half-lives, intervals in which the reactant concentration decreases by a factor of 2. In a first-order reaction, every half-life is the same length of time.

If we know the rate constant for a first-order reaction, then we can use half-lives to predict how much time is needed for the reaction to reach a certain percent completion.

Number of Half-Lives	Percentage of Reactant Remaining	
1	$\frac{100\%}{2} = 50\%$	$\frac{1}{2}(100\%) = 50\%$
2	$\frac{50\%}{2} = 25\%$	$\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(100\%) = 25\%$

Number of Half-Lives	Percentage of Reactant Remaining	
3	$\frac{25\%}{2}=12.5\%$	$\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(100\%)=12.5\%$
n	$\frac{100\%}{2^n}$	$\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n(100\%)=\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n\%$

As you can see from this table, the amount of reactant left after n half-lives of a first-order reaction is $(1/2)^n$ times the initial concentration.

> *For a first-order reaction, the concentration of the reactant decreases by a constant with each half-life and is independent of [A].*

✓ Example 9.6.1

The anticancer drug cis-platin hydrolyzes in water with a rate constant of 1.5×10^{-3} min^{-1} at pH 7.0 and 25°C. Calculate the half-life for the hydrolysis reaction under these conditions. If a freshly prepared solution of cis-platin has a concentration of 0.053 M, what will be the concentration of cis-platin after 5 half-lives? after 10 half-lives? What is the percent completion of the reaction after 5 half-lives? after 10 half-lives?

Given: rate constant, initial concentration, and number of half-lives

Asked for: half-life, final concentrations, and percent completion

Strategy:

A. Use Equation 9.6.3 to calculate the half-life of the reaction.
B. Multiply the initial concentration by 1/2 to the power corresponding to the number of half-lives to obtain the remaining concentrations after those half-lives.
C. Subtract the remaining concentration from the initial concentration. Then divide by the initial concentration, multiplying the fraction by 100 to obtain the percent completion.

Solution

A We can calculate the half-life of the reaction using Equation 9.6.3:

$$t_{1/2}=\frac{0.693}{k}=\frac{0.693}{1.5\times 10^{-3}\ \text{min}^{-1}}=4.6\times 10^{2}\ \text{min}$$

Thus it takes almost 8 h for half of the cis-platin to hydrolyze.

B After 5 half-lives (about 38 h), the remaining concentration of cis-platin will be as follows:

$$\frac{0.053\ \text{M}}{2^5}=\frac{0.053\ \text{M}}{32}=0.0017\ \text{M}$$

After 10 half-lives (77 h), the remaining concentration of cis-platin will be as follows:

$$\frac{0.053\ \text{M}}{2^{10}}=\frac{0.053\ \text{M}}{1024}=5.2\times 10^{-5}\ \text{M}$$

C The percent completion after 5 half-lives will be as follows:

$$\text{percent completion}=\frac{(0.053\ \text{M}-0.0017\ \text{M})(100)}{0.053}=97\%$$

The percent completion after 10 half-lives will be as follows:

$$\text{percent completion}=\frac{(0.053\ \text{M}-5.2\times 10^{-5}\ \text{M})(100)}{0.053\ \text{M}}=100\%$$

Thus a first-order chemical reaction is 97% complete after 5 half-lives and 100% complete after 10 half-lives.

? Exercise 9.6.1

Ethyl chloride decomposes to ethylene and HCl in a first-order reaction that has a rate constant of $1.6 \times 10^{-6}\ s^{-1}$ at 650°C.

a. What is the half-life for the reaction under these conditions?
b. If a flask that originally contains 0.077 M ethyl chloride is heated at 650°C, what is the concentration of ethyl chloride after 4 half-lives?

Answer a

4.3×10^{5} s = 120 h = 5.0 days;

Answer b

4.8×10^{-3} M

Radioactive Decay Rates

Radioactivity, or radioactive decay, is the emission of a particle or a photon that results from the spontaneous decomposition of the unstable nucleus of an atom. The rate of radioactive decay is an intrinsic property of each radioactive isotope that is independent of the chemical and physical form of the radioactive isotope. The rate is also independent of temperature. In this section, we will describe radioactive decay rates and how half-lives can be used to monitor radioactive decay processes.

In any sample of a given radioactive substance, the number of atoms of the radioactive isotope must decrease with time as their nuclei decay to nuclei of a more stable isotope. Using N to represent the number of atoms of the radioactive isotope, we can define the **rate of decay** of the sample, which is also called its **activity (*A*)** as the decrease in the number of the radioisotope’s nuclei per unit time:

$$A=-\frac{\Delta N}{\Delta t} \tag{9.6.4}$$

Activity is usually measured in disintegrations per second (dps) or disintegrations per minute (dpm).

The activity of a sample is directly proportional to the number of atoms of the radioactive isotope in the sample:

$$A=kN \tag{9.6.5}$$

Here, the symbol k is the radioactive decay constant, which has units of inverse time (e.g., s^{-1}, yr^{-1}) and a characteristic value for each radioactive isotope. If we combine Equation 9.6.4 and Equation 9.6.5, we obtain the relationship between the number of decays per unit time and the number of atoms of the isotope in a sample:

$$-\frac{\Delta N}{\Delta t}=kN \tag{9.6.6}$$

Equation 9.6.6 is the same as the equation for the reaction rate of a first-order reaction, except that it uses numbers of atoms instead of concentrations. In fact, radioactive decay is a first-order process and can be described in terms of either the differential rate law (Equation 9.6.6) or the integrated rate law:

$$N=N_0e^{-kt} \tag{9.6.7}$$

$$\ln\frac{N}{N_0}=-kt \tag{9.6.8}$$

Because radioactive decay is a first-order process, the time required for half of the nuclei in any sample of a radioactive isotope to decay is a constant, called the half-life of the isotope. The half-life tells us how radioactive an isotope is (the number of decays per unit time); thus it is the most commonly cited property of any radioisotope. For a given number of atoms, isotopes with shorter half-lives decay more rapidly, undergoing a greater number of radioactive decays per unit time than do isotopes with longer half-lives. The half-lives of several isotopes are listed in Table 14.6, along with some of their applications.

Table 9.6.2: Half-Lives and Applications of Some Radioactive Isotopes

Radioactive Isotope	Half-Life	Typical Uses
*The *m* denotes metastable, where an excited state nucleus decays to the ground state of the same isotope.		

Radioactive Isotope	Half-Life	Typical Uses
hydrogen-3 (tritium)	12.32 yr	biochemical tracer
carbon-11	20.33 min	positron emission tomography (biomedical imaging)
carbon-14	5.70×10^3 yr	dating of artifacts
sodium-24	14.951 h	cardiovascular system tracer
phosphorus-32	14.26 days	biochemical tracer
potassium-40	1.248×10^9 yr	dating of rocks
iron-59	44.495 days	red blood cell lifetime tracer
cobalt-60	5.2712 yr	radiation therapy for cancer
technetium-99*m**	6.006 h	biomedical imaging
iodine-131	8.0207 days	thyroid studies tracer
radium-226	1.600×10^3 yr	radiation therapy for cancer
uranium-238	4.468×10^9 yr	dating of rocks and Earth’s crust
americium-241	432.2 yr	smoke detectors

*The *m* denotes metastable, where an excited state nucleus decays to the ground state of the same isotope.

Note

Radioactive decay is a first-order process.

Radioisotope Dating Techniques

In our earlier discussion, we used the half-life of a first-order reaction to calculate how long the reaction had been occurring. Because nuclear decay reactions follow first-order kinetics and have a rate constant that is independent of temperature and the chemical or physical environment, we can perform similar calculations using the half-lives of isotopes to estimate the ages of geological and archaeological artifacts. The techniques that have been developed for this application are known as radioisotope dating techniques.

The most common method for measuring the age of ancient objects is carbon-14 dating. The carbon-14 isotope, created continuously in the upper regions of Earth’s atmosphere, reacts with atmospheric oxygen or ozone to form $^{14}CO_2$. As a result, the CO_2 that plants use as a carbon source for synthesizing organic compounds always includes a certain proportion of $^{14}CO_2$ molecules as well as nonradioactive $^{12}CO_2$ and $^{13}CO_2$. Any animal that eats a plant ingests a mixture of organic compounds that contains approximately the same proportions of carbon isotopes as those in the atmosphere. When the animal or plant dies, the carbon-14 nuclei in its tissues decay to nitrogen-14 nuclei by a radioactive process known as beta decay, which releases low-energy electrons (β particles) that can be detected and measured:

$$^{14}\text{C} \rightarrow {}^{14}\text{N} + \beta^- \tag{9.6.9}$$

The half-life for this reaction is 5700 ± 30 yr.

The $^{14}C/^{12}C$ ratio in living organisms is 1.3×10^{-12}, with a decay rate of 15 dpm/g of carbon (Figure 9.6.2). Comparing the disintegrations per minute per gram of carbon from an archaeological sample with those from a recently living sample enables scientists to estimate the age of the artifact, as illustrated in Example 11.Using this method implicitly assumes that the $^{14}CO_2/^{12}CO_2$ ratio in the atmosphere is constant, which is not strictly correct. Other methods, such as tree-ring dating, have been used to calibrate the dates obtained by radiocarbon dating, and all radiocarbon dates reported are now corrected for minor changes in the $^{14}CO_2/^{12}CO_2$ ratio over time.

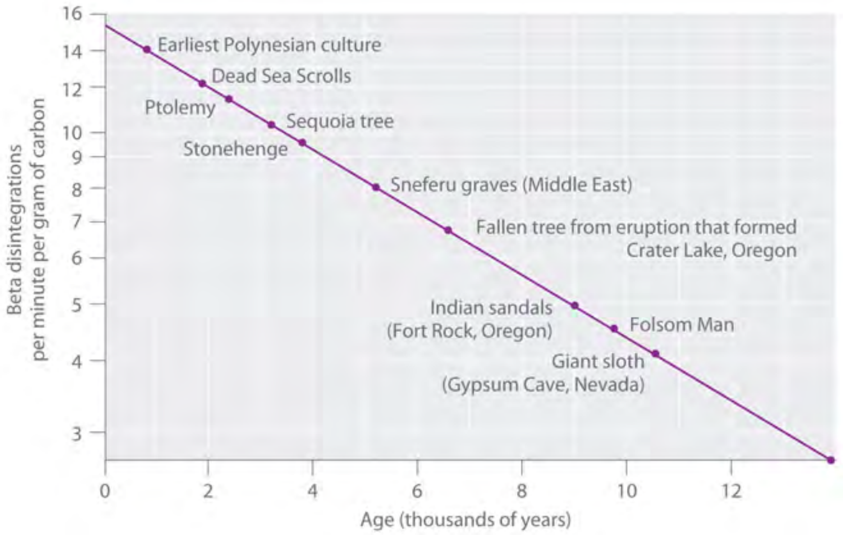


Figure 9.6.2: Radiocarbon Dating. A plot of the specific activity of ^{14}C versus age for a number of archaeological samples shows an inverse linear relationship between ^{14}C content (a log scale) and age (a linear scale).

✓ Example 9.6.2

In 1990, the remains of an apparently prehistoric man were found in a melting glacier in the Italian Alps. Analysis of the ^{14}C content of samples of wood from his tools gave a decay rate of 8.0 dpm/g carbon. How long ago did the man die?

Given: isotope and final activity

Asked for: elapsed time

Strategy:

A Use Equation 9.6.5 to calculate N_0/N. Then substitute the value for the half-life of ^{14}C into Equation 9.6.3 to find the rate constant for the reaction.

B Using the values obtained for N_0/N and the rate constant, solve Equation 9.6.8 to obtain the elapsed time.

Solution

We know the initial activity from the isotope’s identity (15 dpm/g), the final activity (8.0 dpm/g), and the half-life, so we can use the integrated rate law for a first-order nuclear reaction (Equation 9.6.8) to calculate the elapsed time (the amount of time elapsed since the wood for the tools was cut and began to decay).

$$\ln \frac{N}{N_0} = -kt \tag{9.6.10}$$

$$\frac{\ln(N/N_0)}{k} = t \tag{9.6.11}$$

A From Equation 9.6.5, we know that $A = kN$. We can therefore use the initial and final activities (A_0 = 15 dpm and A = 8.0 dpm) to calculate N_0/N:

$$\frac{A_0}{A} = \frac{kN_0}{kN} = \frac{N_0}{N} = \frac{15}{8.0}$$

Now we need only calculate the rate constant for the reaction from its half-life (5730 yr) using Equation 9.6.3:

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{0.693}{k}$$

This equation can be rearranged as follows:

$$k = \frac{0.693}{t_{1/2}} = \frac{0.693}{5730 \text{ yr}} = 1.22 \times 10^{-4} \text{ yr}^{-1}$$

B Substituting into the equation for *t*,

$$t = \frac{\ln(N_0/N)}{k} = \frac{\ln(15/8.0)}{1.22 \times 10^{-4} \text{ yr}^{-1}} = 5.2 \times 10^3 \text{ yr}$$

From our calculations, the man died 5200 yr ago.

? Exercise 9.6.2

It is believed that humans first arrived in the Western Hemisphere during the last Ice Age, presumably by traveling over an exposed land bridge between Siberia and Alaska. Archaeologists have estimated that this occurred about 11,000 yr ago, but some argue that recent discoveries in several sites in North and South America suggest a much earlier arrival. Analysis of a sample of charcoal from a fire in one such site gave a ^{14}C decay rate of 0.4 dpm/g of carbon. What is the approximate age of the sample?

Answer

30,000 yr

Summary

- The half-life of a first-order reaction is independent of the concentration of the reactants.
- The half-lives of radioactive isotopes can be used to date objects.

The half-life of a reaction is the time required for the reactant concentration to decrease to one-half its initial value. The half-life of a first-order reaction is a constant that is related to the rate constant for the reaction: $t_{1/2} = 0.693/k$. Radioactive decay reactions are first-order reactions. The rate of decay, or activity, of a sample of a radioactive substance is the decrease in the number of radioactive nuclei per unit time.

9.7: The Discovery of Fission- The Atomic Bomb and Nuclear Power

Learning Objectives

- Explain nuclear fission
- Relate the concepts of critical mass and nuclear chain reactions
- Summarize basic requirements for nuclear fission

Many heavier elements with smaller binding energies per nucleon can decompose into more stable elements that have intermediate mass numbers and larger binding energies per nucleon—that is, mass numbers and binding energies per nucleon that are closer to the "peak" of the binding energy graph near 56. Sometimes neutrons are also produced. This decomposition is called fission, the breaking of a large nucleus into smaller pieces. The breaking is rather random with the formation of a large number of different products. Fission usually does not occur naturally, but is induced by bombardment with neutrons. The first reported nuclear fission occurred in 1939 when three German scientists, Lise Meitner, Otto Hahn, and Fritz Strassman, bombarded uranium-235 atoms with slow-moving neutrons that split the U-238 nuclei into smaller fragments that consisted of several neutrons and elements near the middle of the periodic table. Since then, fission has been observed in many other isotopes, including most actinide isotopes that have an odd number of neutrons. A typical nuclear fission reaction is shown in Figure $9.7.1$.

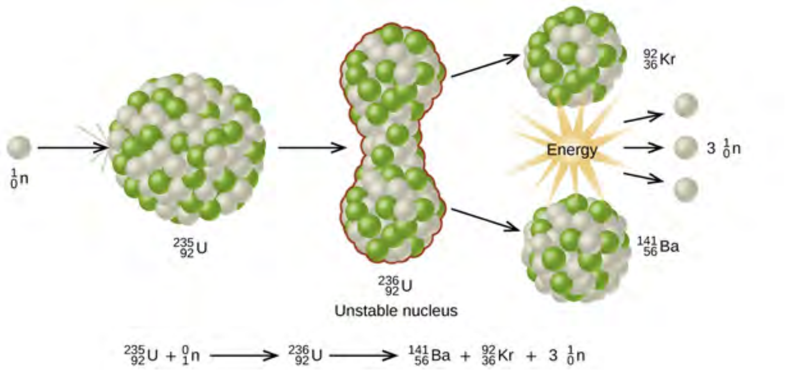


Figure $9.7.1$: When a slow neutron hits a fissionable U-235 nucleus, it is absorbed and forms an unstable U-236 nucleus. The U-236 nucleus then rapidly breaks apart into two smaller nuclei (in this case, Ba-141 and Kr-92) along with several neutrons (usually two or three), and releases a very large amount of energy.

Among the products of Meitner, Hahn, and Strassman's fission reaction were barium, krypton, lanthanum, and cerium, all of which have nuclei that are more stable than uranium-235. Since then, hundreds of different isotopes have been observed among the products of fissionable substances. A few of the many reactions that occur for U-235, and a graph showing the distribution of its fission products and their yields, are shown in Figure $9.7.2$. Similar fission reactions have been observed with other uranium isotopes, as well as with a variety of other isotopes such as those of plutonium.

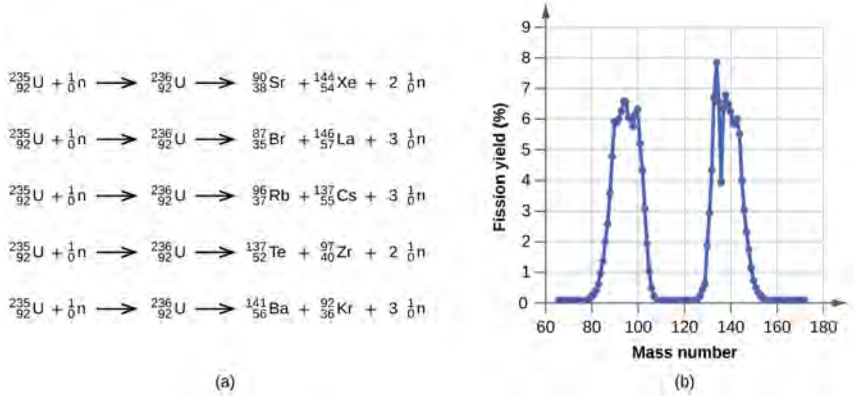


Figure $9.7.2$: (a) Nuclear fission of U-235 produces a range of fission products. (b) The larger fission products of U-235 are typically one isotope with a mass number around 85–105, and another isotope with a mass number that is about 50% larger, that is, about 130–150.

A tremendous amount of energy is produced by the fission of heavy elements. For instance, when one mole of U-235 undergoes fission, the products weigh about 0.2 grams less than the reactants; this "lost" mass is converted into a very large amount of energy, about 1.8×10^{10} kJ per mole of U-235. Nuclear fission reactions produce incredibly large amounts of energy compared to chemical reactions. The fission of 1 kilogram of uranium-235, for example, produces about 2.5 million times as much energy as is produced by burning 1 kilogram of coal.

As described earlier, when undergoing fission U-235 produces two "medium-sized" nuclei, and two or three neutrons. These neutrons may then cause the fission of other uranium-235 atoms, which in turn provide more neutrons that can cause fission of even more nuclei, and so on. If this occurs, we have a nuclear chain reaction (Figure 9.7.3). On the other hand, if too many neutrons escape the bulk material without interacting with a nucleus, then no chain reaction will occur.

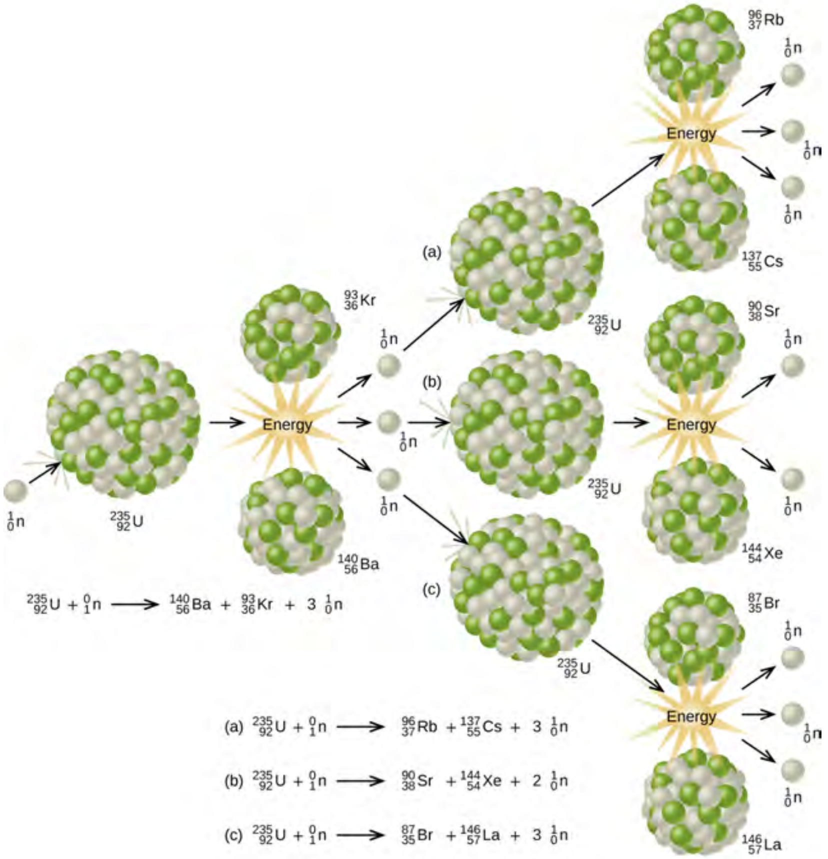


Figure 9.7.3: The fission of a large nucleus, such as U-235, produces two or three neutrons, each of which is capable of causing fission of another nucleus by the reactions shown. If this process continues, a nuclear chain reaction occurs.

Material that can sustain a nuclear fission chain reaction is said to be fissile or fissionable. (Technically, fissile material can undergo fission with neutrons of any energy, whereas fissionable material requires high-energy neutrons.) Nuclear fission becomes self-sustaining when the number of neutrons produced by fission equals or exceeds the number of neutrons absorbed by splitting nuclei plus the number that escape into the surroundings. The amount of a fissionable material that will support a self-sustaining chain reaction is a critical mass. An amount of fissionable material that cannot sustain a chain reaction is a subcritical mass. An amount of material in which there is an increasing rate of fission is known as a supercritical mass. The critical mass depends on the type of material: its purity, the temperature, the shape of the sample, and how the neutron reactions are controlled (Figure 9.7.4).

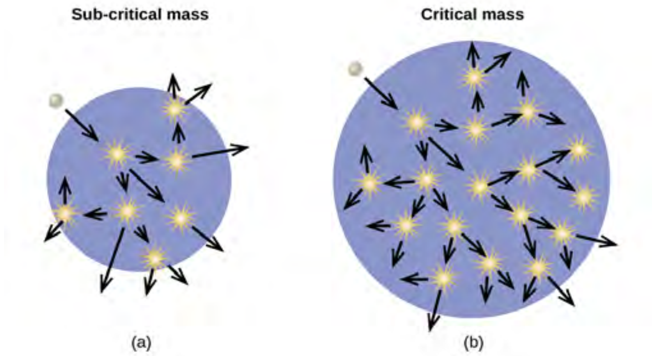


Figure 9.7.4: (a) In a subcritical mass, the fissile material is too small and allows too many neutrons to escape the material, so a chain reaction does not occur. (b) In a critical mass, a large enough number of neutrons in the fissile material induce fission to create a chain reaction.

An atomic bomb (Figure 9.7.5) contains several pounds of fissionable material, $^{235}_{92}\text{U}$ or $^{239}_{94}\text{Pu}$, a source of neutrons, and an explosive device for compressing it quickly into a small volume. When fissionable material is in small pieces, the proportion of neutrons that escape through the relatively large surface area is great, and a chain reaction does not take place. When the small pieces of fissionable material are brought together quickly to form a body with a mass larger than the critical mass, the relative number of escaping neutrons decreases, and a chain reaction and explosion result.

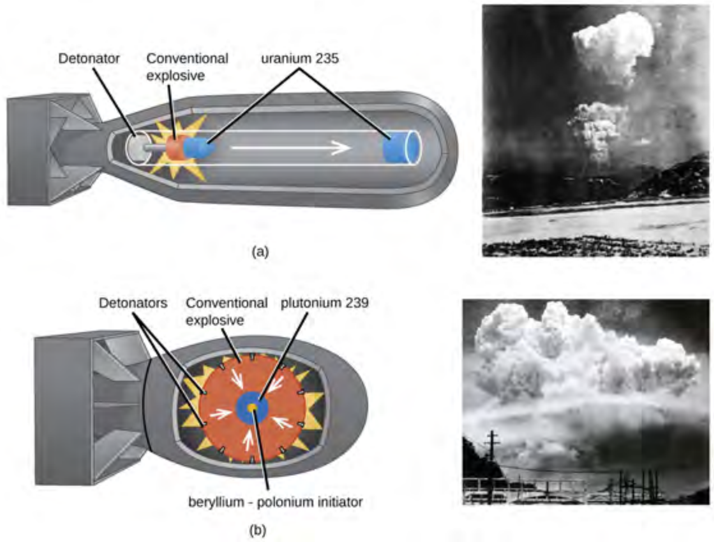


Figure 9.7.5: (a) The nuclear fission bomb that destroyed Hiroshima on August 6, 1945, consisted of two subcritical masses of U-235, where conventional explosives were used to fire one of the subcritical masses into the other, creating the critical mass for the nuclear explosion. (b) The plutonium bomb that destroyed Nagasaki on August 12, 1945, consisted of a hollow sphere of plutonium that was rapidly compressed by conventional explosives. This led to a concentration of plutonium in the center that was greater than the critical mass necessary for the nuclear explosion.

Fission Reactors

Chain reactions of fissionable materials can be controlled and sustained without an explosion in a nuclear reactor (Figure 9.7.6). Any nuclear reactor that produces power via the fission of uranium or plutonium by bombardment with neutrons must have at least five components: nuclear fuel consisting of fissionable material, a nuclear moderator, reactor coolant, control rods, and a shield and containment system. We will discuss these components in greater detail later in the section. The reactor works by separating the fissionable nuclear material such that a critical mass cannot be formed, controlling both the flux and absorption of neutrons to allow shutting down the fission reactions. In a nuclear reactor used for the production of electricity, the energy released by fission reactions is trapped as thermal energy and used to boil water and produce steam. The steam is used to turn a turbine, which powers a generator for the production of electricity.

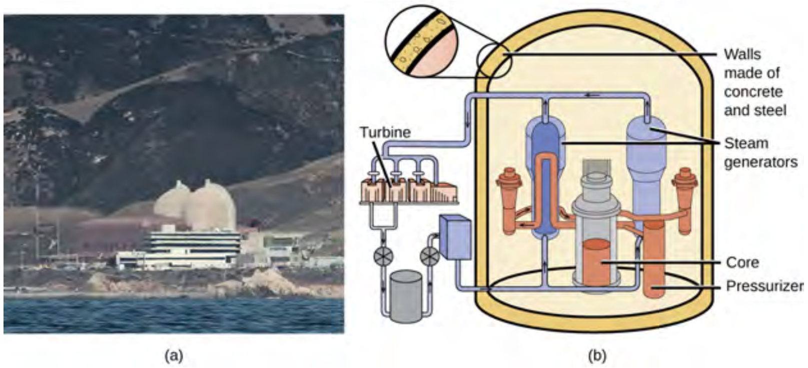


Figure 9.7.6: (a) The Diablo Canyon Nuclear Power Plant near San Luis Obispo is the only nuclear power plant currently in operation in California. The domes are the containment structures for the nuclear reactors, and the brown building houses the turbine where electricity is generated. Ocean water is used for cooling. (b) The Diablo Canyon uses a pressurized water reactor, one of a few different fission reactor designs in use around the world, to produce electricity. Energy from the nuclear fission reactions in the core heats water in a closed, pressurized system. Heat from this system produces steam that drives a turbine, which in turn produces electricity. (credit a: modification of work by “Mike” Michael L. Baird; credit b: modification of work by the Nuclear Regulatory Commission)

Nuclear Fuels

Nuclear fuel consists of a fissionable isotope, such as uranium-235, which must be present in sufficient quantity to provide a self-sustaining chain reaction. In the United States, uranium ores contain from 0.05–0.3% of the uranium oxide U_3O_8; the uranium in the ore is about 99.3% nonfissionable U-238 with only 0.7% fissionable U-235. Nuclear reactors require a fuel with a higher concentration of U-235 than is found in nature; it is normally enriched to have about 5% of uranium mass as U-235. At this concentration, it is not possible to achieve the supercritical mass necessary for a nuclear explosion. Uranium can be enriched by gaseous diffusion (the only method currently used in the US), using a gas centrifuge, or by laser separation.

In the gaseous diffusion enrichment plant where U-235 fuel is prepared, UF_6 (uranium hexafluoride) gas at low pressure moves through barriers that have holes just barely large enough for UF_6 to pass through. The slightly lighter $^{235}UF_6$ molecules diffuse through the barrier slightly faster than the heavier $^{238}UF_6$ molecules. This process is repeated through hundreds of barriers, gradually increasing the concentration of $^{235}UF_6$ to the level needed by the nuclear reactor. The basis for this process, Graham's law, is described in the chapter on gases. The enriched UF_6 gas is collected, cooled until it solidifies, and then taken to a fabrication facility where it is made into fuel assemblies. Each fuel assembly consists of fuel rods that contain many thimble-sized, ceramic-encased, enriched uranium (usually UO_2) fuel pellets. Modern nuclear reactors may contain as many as 10 million fuel pellets. The amount of energy in each of these pellets is equal to that in almost a ton of coal or 150 gallons of oil.

Nuclear Moderators

Neutrons produced by nuclear reactions move too fast to cause fission (Figure $9.7.4$). They must first be slowed to be absorbed by the fuel and produce additional nuclear reactions. A nuclear moderator is a substance that slows the neutrons to a speed that is low enough to cause fission. Early reactors used high-purity graphite as a moderator. Modern reactors in the US exclusively use heavy water $\left({}^2_1H_2O\right)$ or light water (ordinary H_2O), whereas some reactors in other countries use other materials, such as carbon dioxide, beryllium, or graphite.

Reactor Coolants

A nuclear reactor coolant is used to carry the heat produced by the fission reaction to an external boiler and turbine, where it is transformed into electricity. Two overlapping coolant loops are often used; this counteracts the transfer of radioactivity from the reactor to the primary coolant loop. All nuclear power plants in the US use water as a coolant. Other coolants include molten sodium, lead, a lead-bismuth mixture, or molten salts.

Control Rods

Nuclear reactors use control rods (Figure $9.7.8$) to control the fission rate of the nuclear fuel by adjusting the number of slow neutrons present to keep the rate of the chain reaction at a safe level. Control rods are made of boron, cadmium, hafnium, or other elements that are able to absorb neutrons. Boron-10, for example, absorbs neutrons by a reaction that produces lithium-7 and alpha particles:

$$ {}^{10}_{5}B + {}^{1}_{0}n \longrightarrow {}^{7}_{3}Li + {}^{4}_{2}He \tag{9.7.1}$$

When control rod assemblies are inserted into the fuel element in the reactor core, they absorb a larger fraction of the slow neutrons, thereby slowing the rate of the fission reaction and decreasing the power produced. Conversely, if the control rods are removed, fewer neutrons are absorbed, and the fission rate and energy production increase. In an emergency, the chain reaction can be shut down by fully inserting all of the control rods into the nuclear core between the fuel rods.

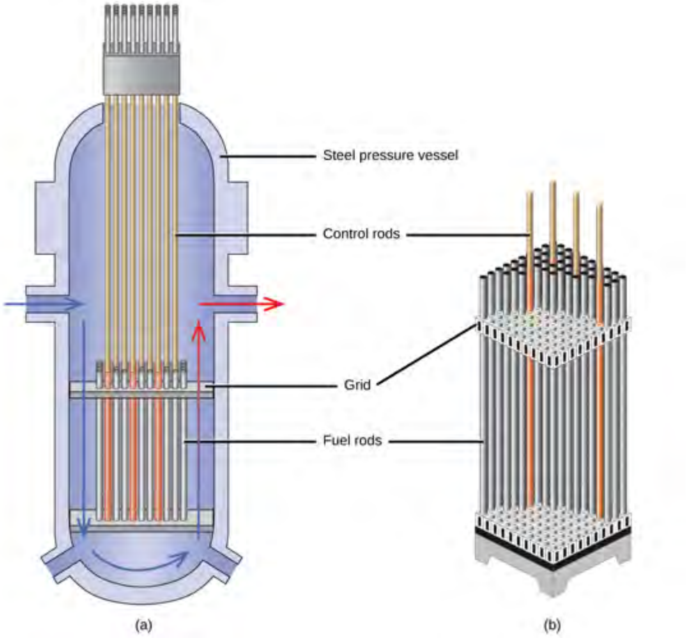


Figure $9.7.7$: The nuclear reactor core shown in (a) contains the fuel and control rod assembly shown in (b). (credit: modification of work by E. Generalic, glossary.periodni.com/glossar...en=control+rod)

Shield and Containment System

During its operation, a nuclear reactor produces neutrons and other radiation. Even when shut down, the decay products are radioactive. In addition, an operating reactor is thermally very hot, and high pressures result from the circulation of water or another coolant through it. Thus, a reactor must withstand high temperatures and pressures, and must protect operating personnel from the radiation. Reactors are equipped with a containment system (or shield) that consists of three parts:

1. The reactor vessel, a steel shell that is 3–20-centimeters thick and, with the moderator, absorbs much of the radiation produced by the reactor
2. A main shield of 1–3 meters of high-density concrete
3. A personnel shield of lighter materials that protects operators from γ rays and X-rays

In addition, reactors are often covered with a steel or concrete dome that is designed to contain any radioactive materials might be released by a reactor accident.

Video $9.7.1$*: Click here to watch a 3-minute video from the Nuclear Energy Institute on how nuclear reactors work.*

Nuclear power plants are designed in such a way that they cannot form a supercritical mass of fissionable material and therefore cannot create a nuclear explosion. But as history has shown, failures of systems and safeguards can cause catastrophic accidents, including chemical explosions and nuclear meltdowns (damage to the reactor core from overheating). The following Chemistry in Everyday Life feature explores three infamous meltdown incidents.

Nuclear Accidents

The importance of cooling and containment are amply illustrated by three major accidents that occurred with the nuclear reactors at nuclear power generating stations in the United States (Three Mile Island), the former Soviet Union (Chernobyl), and Japan (Fukushima).

In March 1979, the cooling system of the Unit 2 reactor at Three Mile Island Nuclear Generating Station in Pennsylvania failed, and the cooling water spilled from the reactor onto the floor of the containment building. After the pumps stopped, the reactors overheated due to the high radioactive decay heat produced in the first few days after the nuclear reactor shut down. The temperature of the core climbed to at least 2200 °C, and the upper portion of the core began to melt. In addition, the zirconium alloy cladding of the fuel rods began to react with steam and produced hydrogen:

$$\mathrm{Zr}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ZrO_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \tag{9.7.2}$$

The hydrogen accumulated in the confinement building, and it was feared that there was danger of an explosion of the mixture of hydrogen and air in the building. Consequently, hydrogen gas and radioactive gases (primarily krypton and xenon) were vented from the building. Within a week, cooling water circulation was restored and the core began to cool. The plant was closed for nearly 10 years during the cleanup process.

Although zero discharge of radioactive material is desirable, the discharge of radioactive krypton and xenon, such as occurred at the Three Mile Island plant, is among the most tolerable. These gases readily disperse in the atmosphere and thus do not produce highly radioactive areas. Moreover, they are noble gases and are not incorporated into plant and animal matter in the food chain. Effectively none of the heavy elements of the core of the reactor were released into the environment, and no cleanup of the area outside of the containment building was necessary (Figure $9.7.8$).

(a) (b)

Figure 9.7.8: (a) In this 2010 photo of Three Mile Island, the remaining structures from the damaged Unit 2 reactor are seen on the left, whereas the separate Unit 1 reactor, unaffected by the accident, continues generating power to this day (right). (b) President Jimmy Carter visited the Unit 2 control room a few days after the accident in 1979.

Another major nuclear accident involving a reactor occurred in April 1986, at the Chernobyl Nuclear Power Plant in Ukraine, which was still a part of the former Soviet Union. While operating at low power during an unauthorized experiment with some of its safety devices shut off, one of the reactors at the plant became unstable. Its chain reaction became uncontrollable and increased to a level far beyond what the reactor was designed for. The steam pressure in the reactor rose to between 100 and 500 times the full power pressure and ruptured the reactor. Because the reactor was not enclosed in a containment building, a large amount of radioactive material spewed out, and additional fission products were released, as the graphite (carbon) moderator of the core ignited and burned. The fire was controlled, but over 200 plant workers and firefighters developed acute radiation sickness and at least 32 soon died from the effects of the radiation. It is predicted that about 4000 more deaths will occur among emergency workers and former Chernobyl residents from radiation-induced cancer and leukemia. The reactor has since been encapsulated in steel and concrete, a now-decaying structure known as the sarcophagus. Almost 30 years later, significant radiation problems still persist in the area, and Chernobyl largely remains a wasteland.

In 2011, the Fukushima Daiichi Nuclear Power Plant in Japan was badly damaged by a 9.0-magnitude earthquake and resulting tsunami. Three reactors up and running at the time were shut down automatically, and emergency generators came online to power electronics and coolant systems. However, the tsunami quickly flooded the emergency generators and cut power to the pumps that circulated coolant water through the reactors. High-temperature steam in the reactors reacted with zirconium alloy to produce hydrogen gas. The gas escaped into the containment building, and the mixture of hydrogen and air exploded. Radioactive material was released from the containment vessels as the result of deliberate venting to reduce the hydrogen pressure, deliberate discharge of coolant water into the sea, and accidental or uncontrolled events.

An evacuation zone around the damaged plant extended over 12.4 miles away, and an estimated 200,000 people were evacuated from the area. All 48 of Japan's nuclear power plants were subsequently shut down, remaining shuttered as of December 2014. Since the disaster, public opinion has shifted from largely favoring to largely opposing increasing the use of nuclear power plants, and a restart of Japan's atomic energy program is still stalled (Figure 9.7.10).

(a) (b)

Figure 9.7.9: (a) After the accident, contaminated waste had to be removed, and (b) an evacuation zone was set up around the plant in areas that received heavy doses of radioactive fallout. (credit a: modification of work by "Live Action Hero"/Flickr)

The energy produced by a reactor fueled with enriched uranium results from the fission of uranium as well as from the fission of plutonium produced as the reactor operates. As discussed previously, the plutonium forms from the combination of neutrons and the uranium in the fuel. In any nuclear reactor, only about 0.1% of the mass of the fuel is converted into energy. The other 99.9% remains in the fuel rods as fission products and unused fuel. All of the fission products absorb neutrons, and after a period of several months to a few years, depending on the reactor, the fission products must be removed by changing the fuel rods. Otherwise, the concentration of these fission products would increase and absorb more neutrons until the reactor could no longer operate.

Spent fuel rods contain a variety of products, consisting of unstable nuclei ranging in atomic number from 25 to 60, some transuranium elements, including plutonium and americium, and unreacted uranium isotopes. The unstable nuclei and the transuranium isotopes give the spent fuel a dangerously high level of radioactivity. The long-lived isotopes require thousands of years to decay to a safe level. The ultimate fate of the nuclear reactor as a significant source of energy in the United States probably rests on whether or not a politically and scientifically satisfactory technique for processing and storing the components of spent fuel rods can be developed.

Contributors and Attributions

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

9.8: Converting Mass to Energy- Mass Defect and Nuclear Binding Energy

Learning Objectives

- To calculate a mass-energy balance and a nuclear binding energy.
- To understand the differences between nuclear fission and fusion.

Nuclear reactions, like chemical reactions, are accompanied by changes in energy. The energy changes in nuclear reactions, however, are enormous compared with those of even the most energetic chemical reactions. In fact, the energy changes in a typical nuclear reaction are so large that they result in a measurable change of mass. In this section, we describe the relationship between mass and energy in nuclear reactions and show how the seemingly small changes in mass that accompany nuclear reactions result in the release of enormous amounts of energy.

Mass–Energy Balance

The relationship between mass (m) and energy (E) is expressed in the following equation:

$$E = mc^2 \tag{9.8.1}$$

where

- c is the speed of light ($2.998 \times 10^8\ m/s$), and
- E and m are expressed in units of joules and kilograms, respectively.

Albert Einstein first derived this relationship in 1905 as part of his special theory of relativity: the mass of a particle is directly proportional to its energy. Thus according to Equation 9.8.1, every mass has an associated energy, and similarly, any reaction that involves a change in energy must be accompanied by a change in mass. This implies that all exothermic reactions should be accompanied by a decrease in mass, and all endothermic reactions should be accompanied by an increase in mass. Given the law of conservation of mass, how can this be true? The solution to this apparent contradiction is that chemical reactions are indeed accompanied by changes in mass, but these changes are simply too small to be detected. As you may recall, all particles exhibit wavelike behavior, but the wavelength is inversely proportional to the mass of the particle (actually, to its momentum, the product of its mass and velocity). Consequently, wavelike behavior is detectable only for particles with very small masses, such as electrons. For example, the chemical equation for the combustion of graphite to produce carbon dioxide is as follows:

$$\mathrm{C(graphite)} + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2(g)} \rightarrow \mathrm{CO_2(g)} \quad \Delta H^\circ = -393.5\ \mathrm{kJ/mol} \tag{9.8.2}$$

Combustion reactions are typically carried out at constant pressure, and under these conditions, the heat released or absorbed is equal to ΔH. When a reaction is carried out at constant volume, the heat released or absorbed is equal to ΔE. For most chemical reactions, however, ΔE ≈ ΔH. If we rewrite Einstein’s equation as

$$\Delta E = (\Delta m)c^2 \tag{9.8.3}$$

we can rearrange the equation to obtain the following relationship between the change in mass and the change in energy:

$$\Delta m = \frac{\Delta E}{c^2} \tag{9.8.4}$$

Because 1 J = 1 (kg•m^2)/s^2, the change in mass is as follows:

$$\Delta m = \frac{-393.5\ \mathrm{kJ/mol}}{(2.998 \times 10^8\ \mathrm{m/s})^2} = \frac{-3.935 \times 10^5 (\mathrm{kg \cdot m^2})/(\mathrm{s^2 \cdot mol})}{(2.998 \times 10^8\ \mathrm{m/s})^2} = -4.38 \times 10^{-12}\ \mathrm{kg/mol} \tag{9.8.5}$$

This is a mass change of about 3.6×10^{-10} g/g carbon that is burned, or about 100-millionths of the mass of an electron per atom of carbon. In practice, this mass change is much too small to be measured experimentally and is negligible.

In contrast, for a typical nuclear reaction, such as the radioactive decay of ^{14}C to ^{14}N and an electron (a β particle), there is a much larger change in mass:

$$^{14}\mathrm{C} \rightarrow {}^{14}\mathrm{N} + {}^{0}_{-1}\beta \tag{9.8.6}$$

We can use the experimentally measured masses of subatomic particles and common isotopes given in Table 20.1 to calculate the change in mass directly. The reaction involves the conversion of a neutral ^{14}C atom to a positively charged ^{14}N ion (with six, not seven, electrons) and a negatively charged β particle (an electron), so the mass of the products is identical to the mass of a neutral ^{14}N atom. The total change in mass during the reaction is therefore the difference between the mass of a neutral ^{14}N atom (14.003074 amu) and the mass of a ^{14}C atom (14.003242 amu):

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta m &= \text{mass}_{\text{products}} - \text{mass}_{\text{reactants}} \qquad (9.8.7)\\ &= 14.003074 \text{ amu} - 14.003242 \text{ amu} = -0.000168 \text{ amu} \qquad (9.8.8)\end{aligned}$$

The difference in mass, which has been released as energy, corresponds to almost one-third of an electron. The change in mass for the decay of 1 mol of ^{14}C is −0.000168 g = -1.68×10^{-4} g = -1.68×10^{-7} kg. Although a mass change of this magnitude may seem small, it is about 1000 times larger than the mass change for the combustion of graphite. The energy change is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta E &= (\Delta m)c^2 = (-1.68 \times 10^{-7} \text{ kg})(2.998 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})^2 \qquad (9.8.9)\\ &= -1.51 \times 10^{10} (\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2)/\text{s}^2 = -1.51 \times 10^{10} \text{ J} = -1.51 \times 10^7 \text{ kJ} \qquad (9.8.10)\end{aligned}$$

The energy released in this nuclear reaction is more than 100,000 times greater than that of a typical chemical reaction, even though the decay of ^{14}C is a relatively low-energy nuclear reaction.

Because the energy changes in nuclear reactions are so large, they are often expressed in kiloelectronvolts (1 keV = 10^3 eV), megaelectronvolts (1 MeV = 10^6 eV), and even gigaelectronvolts (1 GeV = 10^9 eV) per atom or particle. The change in energy that accompanies a nuclear reaction can be calculated from the change in mass using the relationship 1 amu = 931 MeV. The energy released by the decay of one atom of ^{14}C is thus

$$(-1.68 \times 10^{-4} \text{ amu}) \left(\frac{931 \text{ MeV}}{\text{amu}}\right) = -0.156 \text{ MeV} = -156 \text{ keV}$$

✓ Example 9.8.1

Calculate the changes in mass (in atomic mass units) and energy (in joules per mole and electronvolts per atom) that accompany the radioactive decay of ^{238}U to ^{234}Th and an α particle. The α particle absorbs two electrons from the surrounding matter to form a helium atom.

Given: nuclear decay reaction

Asked for: changes in mass and energy

Strategy:

A Use the mass values in Table 20.1 to calculate the change in mass for the decay reaction in atomic mass units.

B Use Equation 9.8.4 to calculate the change in energy in joules per mole.

C Use the relationship between atomic mass units and megaelectronvolts to calculate the change in energy in electronvolts per atom.

Solution

A Using particle and isotope masses from Table 20.1, we can calculate the change in mass as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta m &= \text{mass}_{\text{products}} - \text{mass}_{\text{reactants}} = (\text{mass } ^{234}\text{Th} + \text{mass } ^4_2\text{He}) - \text{mass } ^{238}\text{U} \qquad (9.8.11)\\ &= (234.043601 \text{ amu} + 4.002603 \text{ amu}) - 238.050788 \text{ amu} = -0.004584 \text{ amu} \qquad (9.8.12)\end{aligned}$$

B Thus the change in mass for 1 mol of ^{238}U is −0.004584 g or -4.584×10^{-6} kg. The change in energy in joules per mole is as follows:

$$\Delta E = (\Delta m)c^2 = (-4.584 \times 10^{-6} \text{ kg})(2.998 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})^2 = -4.120 \times 10^{11} \text{ J/mol}$$

C The change in energy in electronvolts per atom is as follows:

$$\Delta E = -4.584 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{amu} \times \frac{931\ \text{MeV}}{\text{amu}} \times \frac{1 \times 10^{6}\ \text{eV}}{1\ \text{MeV}} = -4.27 \times 10^{6}\ \text{eV/atom}$$

? Exercise 9.8.1

Calculate the changes in mass (in atomic mass units) and energy (in kilojoules per mole and kiloelectronvolts per atom) that accompany the radioactive decay of tritium (^{3}H) to ^{3}He and a β particle.

Answer

Δm = −2.0 × 10^{-5} amu; ΔE = −1.9 × 10^{6} kJ/mol = −19 keV/atom

Nuclear Binding Energies

We have seen that energy changes in both chemical and nuclear reactions are accompanied by changes in mass. Einstein's equation, which allows us to interconvert mass and energy, has another interesting consequence: The mass of an atom is always less than the sum of the masses of its component particles. The only exception to this rule is hydrogen-1 (^{1}H), whose measured mass of 1.007825 amu is identical to the sum of the masses of a proton and an electron. In contrast, the experimentally measured mass of an atom of deuterium (^{2}H) is 2.014102 amu, although its calculated mass is 2.016490 amu:

$$m_{^2\text{H}} = m_{\text{neutron}} + m_{\text{proton}} + m_{\text{electron}} \tag{9.8.13}$$

$$= 1.008665\ \text{amu} + 1.007276\ \text{amu} + 0.000549\ \text{amu} = 2.016490\ \text{amu} \tag{9.8.14}$$

The difference between the sum of the masses of the components and the measured atomic mass is called the **mass defect** of the nucleus. Just as a molecule is more stable than its isolated atoms, a nucleus is more stable (lower in energy) than its isolated components. Consequently, when isolated nucleons assemble into a stable nucleus, energy is released. According to Equation 9.8.4, this release of energy must be accompanied by a decrease in the mass of the nucleus.

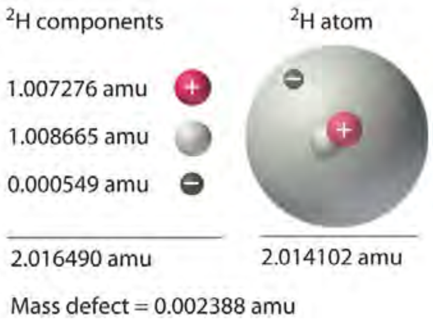


Figure 9.8.1: Nuclear Binding Energy in Deuterium. The mass of a ^{2}H atom is less than the sum of the masses of a proton, a neutron, and an electron by 0.002388 amu; the difference in mass corresponds to the nuclear binding energy. The larger the value of the mass defect, the greater the nuclear binding energy and the more stable the nucleus.

The amount of energy released when a nucleus forms from its component nucleons is the **nuclear binding energy** (Figure 9.8.1). In the case of deuterium, the mass defect is 0.002388 amu, which corresponds to a nuclear binding energy of 2.22 MeV for the deuterium nucleus. Because the magnitude of the mass defect is proportional to the nuclear binding energy, both values indicate the stability of the nucleus.

> *Just as a molecule is more stable (lower in energy) than its isolated atoms, a nucleus is more stable than its isolated components.*

Not all nuclei are equally stable. Chemists describe the relative stability of different nuclei by comparing the binding energy per nucleon, which is obtained by dividing the nuclear binding energy by the mass number (A) of the nucleus. As shown in Figure 9.8.2, the binding energy per nucleon increases rapidly with increasing atomic number until about Z = 26, where it levels off to about 8–9 MeV per nucleon and then decreases slowly. The initial increase in binding energy is not a smooth curve but exhibits sharp peaks corresponding to the light nuclei that have equal numbers of protons and neutrons (e.g., ^{4}He, ^{12}C, and ^{16}O). As mentioned earlier, these are particularly stable combinations.

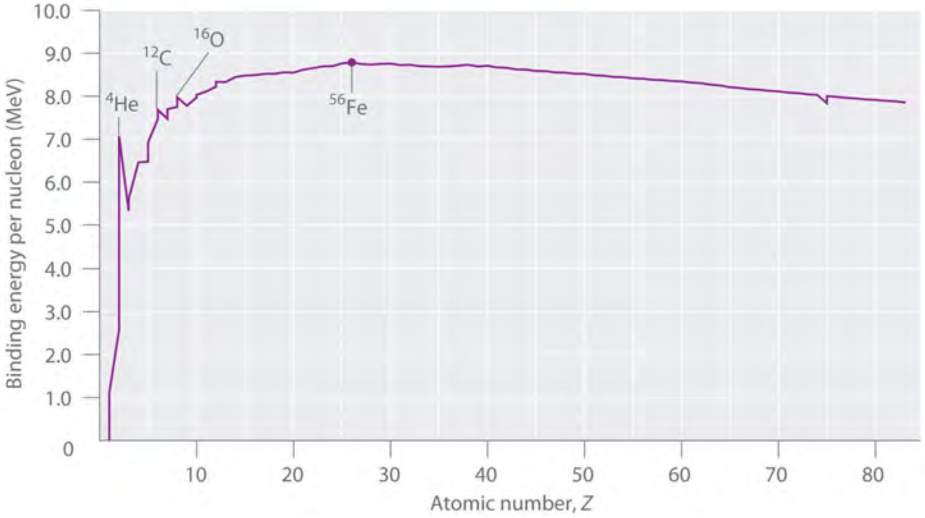


Figure 9.8.2: The Curve of Nuclear Binding Energy. This plot of the average binding energy per nucleon as a function of atomic number shows that the binding energy per nucleon increases with increasing atomic number until about Z = 26, levels off, and then decreases. The sharp peaks correspond to light nuclei that have equal numbers of protons and neutrons.

Because the maximum binding energy per nucleon is reached at ^{56}Fe, all other nuclei are thermodynamically unstable with regard to the formation of ^{56}Fe. Consequently, heavier nuclei (toward the right in Figure 9.8.2) should spontaneously undergo reactions such as alpha decay, which result in a decrease in atomic number. Conversely, lighter elements (on the left in Figure 9.8.2) should spontaneously undergo reactions that result in an increase in atomic number. This is indeed the observed pattern.

> *Heavier nuclei spontaneously undergo nuclear reactions that decrease their atomic number. Lighter nuclei spontaneously undergo nuclear reactions that increase their atomic number.*

✓ Example 9.8.2

Calculate the total nuclear binding energy (in megaelectronvolts) and the binding energy per nucleon for ^{56}Fe. The experimental mass of the nuclide is given in Table A4.

Given: nuclide and mass

Asked for: nuclear binding energy and binding energy per nucleon

Strategy:

A Sum the masses of the protons, electrons, and neutrons or, alternatively, use the mass of the appropriate number of ^{1}H atoms (because its mass is the same as the mass of one electron and one proton).

B Calculate the mass defect by subtracting the experimental mass from the calculated mass.

C Determine the nuclear binding energy by multiplying the mass defect by the change in energy in electronvolts per atom. Divide this value by the number of nucleons to obtain the binding energy per nucleon.

Solution

A An iron-56 atom has 26 protons, 26 electrons, and 30 neutrons. We could add the masses of these three sets of particles; however, noting that 26 protons and 26 electrons are equivalent to 26 ^{1}H atoms, we can calculate the sum of the masses more quickly as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{calculated mass } &= 26(\text{mass } {}^1_1\text{H}) + 30(\text{mass } {}^1_0\text{n}) \\ &= 26(1.007825)\text{amu} + 30(1.008665)\text{amu} = 56.463400 \text{ amu} \\ \text{experimental mass } &= 55.934938\end{aligned}$$

B We subtract to find the mass defect:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{mass defect } &= \text{calculated mass} - \text{experimental mass} \\ &= 56.463400 \text{ amu} - 55.934938 \text{ amu} = 0.528462 \text{ amu}\end{aligned}$$

C The nuclear binding energy is thus 0.528462 amu × 931 MeV/amu = 492 MeV. The binding energy per nucleon is 492 MeV/56 nucleons = 8.79 MeV/nucleon.

? Exercise 9.8.2

Calculate the total nuclear binding energy (in megaelectronvolts) and the binding energy per nucleon for ^{238}U.

Answer

1800 MeV/^{238}U; 7.57 MeV/nucleon

Summary

Unlike a chemical reaction, a nuclear reaction results in a significant change in mass and an associated change of energy, as described by Einstein’s equation. Nuclear reactions are accompanied by large changes in energy, which result in detectable changes in mass. The change in mass is related to the change in energy according to Einstein’s equation: $\Delta E = (\Delta m)c^2$. Large changes in energy are usually reported in kiloelectronvolts or megaelectronvolts (thousands or millions of electronvolts). With the exception of ^{1}H, the experimentally determined mass of an atom is always less than the sum of the masses of the component particles (protons, neutrons, and electrons) by an amount called the mass defect of the nucleus. The energy corresponding to the mass defect is the nuclear binding energy, the amount of energy released when a nucleus forms from its component particles. In nuclear fission, nuclei split into lighter nuclei with an accompanying release of multiple neutrons and large amounts of energy. The critical mass is the minimum mass required to support a self-sustaining nuclear chain reaction. Nuclear fusion is a process in which two light nuclei combine to produce a heavier nucleus plus a great deal of energy.

9.9: Nuclear Fusion - The Power of the Sun

Learning Objectives

- Describe the nuclear reactions in a nuclear fusion reaction
- Quantify the energy released or absorbed in a fusion reaction

The process of converting very light nuclei into heavier nuclei is also accompanied by the conversion of mass into large amounts of energy, a process called fusion. The principal source of energy in the sun is a net fusion reaction in which four hydrogen nuclei fuse and produce one helium nucleus and two positrons. This is a net reaction of a more complicated series of events:

$$4\,{}^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H} \longrightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} + 2\,{}^{0}_{+1}\mathrm{n} \tag{9.9.1}$$

A helium nucleus has a mass that is 0.7% less than that of four hydrogen nuclei; this lost mass is converted into energy during the fusion. This reaction produces about 3.6 × 10^{11} kJ of energy per mole of ${}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$ produced. This is somewhat larger than the energy produced by the nuclear fission of one mole of U-235 (1.8 × 10^{10} kJ), and over 3 million times larger than the energy produced by the (chemical) combustion of one mole of octane (5471 kJ).

It has been determined that the nuclei of the heavy isotopes of hydrogen, a deuteron, ${}^{2}_{1}H$ and a triton, ${}^{3}_{1}H$, undergo fusion at extremely high temperatures (thermonuclear fusion). They form a helium nucleus and a neutron:

$${}^{2}_{1}\mathrm{H} + {}^{3}_{1}\mathrm{H} \longrightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} + 2\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} \tag{9.9.2}$$

This change proceeds with a mass loss of 0.0188 amu, corresponding to the release of 1.69 × 10^{9} kilojoules per mole of ${}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$ formed. The very high temperature is necessary to give the nuclei enough kinetic energy to overcome the very strong repulsive forces resulting from the positive charges on their nuclei so they can collide.

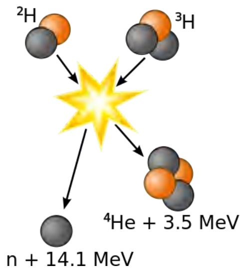


Figure 9.9.1: Fusion of deuterium with tritium creating helium-4, freeing a neutron, and releasing 17.59 MeV of energy, as an appropriate amount of mass changing forms to appear as the kinetic energy of the products, in agreement with kinetic $E = \Delta mc^2$, where Δm is the change in rest mass of particles.[Image use with permission via Wikipedia (Wykis)

The most important fusion process in nature is the one that powers stars. In the 20th century, it was realized that the energy released from nuclear fusion reactions accounted for the longevity of the Sun and other stars as a source of heat and light. The fusion of nuclei in a star, starting from its initial hydrogen and helium abundance, provides that energy and synthesizes new nuclei as a byproduct of that fusion process. The prime energy producer in the Sun is the fusion of hydrogen to form helium, which occurs at a solar-core temperature of 14 million kelvin. The net result is the fusion of four protons into one alpha particle, with the release of two positrons, two neutrinos (which changes two of the protons into neutrons), and energy (Figure $9.9.2$).

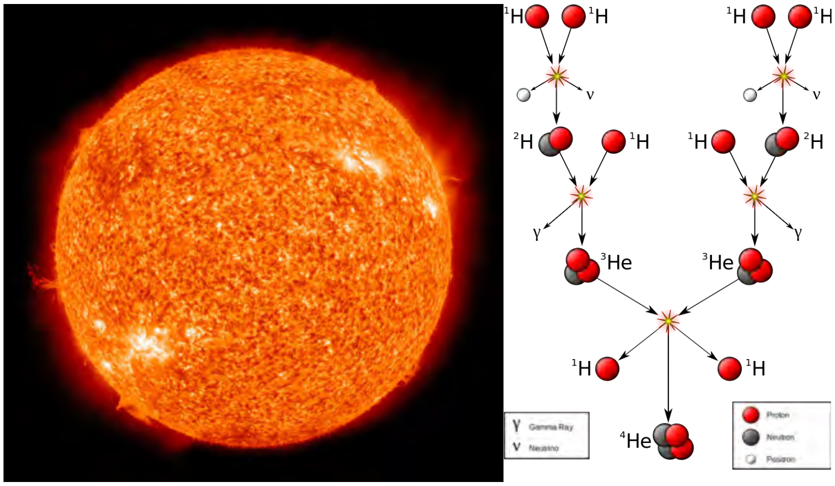


Figure 9.9.2: (left) The Sun is a main-sequence star, and thus generates its energy by nuclear fusion of hydrogen nuclei into helium. In its core, the Sun fuses 620 million metric tons of hydrogen each second. (right) The proton-proton chain dominates in stars the size of the Sun or smaller.

Example 9.9.1

Calculate the energy released in each of the following hypothetical processes.

a. $3\,{}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} \rightarrow {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$
b. $6\,{}^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H} + 6\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} \rightarrow {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$
c. $6\,{}^{2}_{1}\mathrm{D} \rightarrow {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$

Solution

a. $Q_a = 3 \times 4.0026 - 12.000)\,amu \times (1.4924 \times 10^{-10}\ J/amu) = 1.17 \times 10^{-12}\ J$
b. $Q_b = (6 \times (1.007825 + 1.008665) - 12.00000)\,amu \times (1.4924 \times 10^{1-0} J/amu) = 1.476 \times 10^{-11}\ J$
c. $Q_c = 6 \times 2.014102 - 12.00000\,amu \times (1.4924 \times 10^{-10}\ J/amu) = 1.263 \times 10^{-11}\ J$

Fusion of He to give C releases the least amount of energy, because the fusion to produce He has released a large amount. The difference between the second and the third is the binding energy of deuterium. The conservation of mass-and-energy is well illustrated in these calculations. On the other hand, the calculation is based on the conservation of mass-and-energy.

Nuclear Reactors

Useful fusion reactions require very high temperatures for their initiation—about 15,000,000 K or more. At these temperatures, all molecules dissociate into atoms, and the atoms ionize, forming plasma. These conditions occur in an extremely large number of locations throughout the universe—stars are powered by fusion. Humans have already figured out how to create temperatures high enough to achieve fusion on a large scale in thermonuclear weapons. A thermonuclear weapon such as a hydrogen bomb contains a nuclear fission bomb that, when exploded, gives off enough energy to produce the extremely high temperatures necessary for fusion to occur.

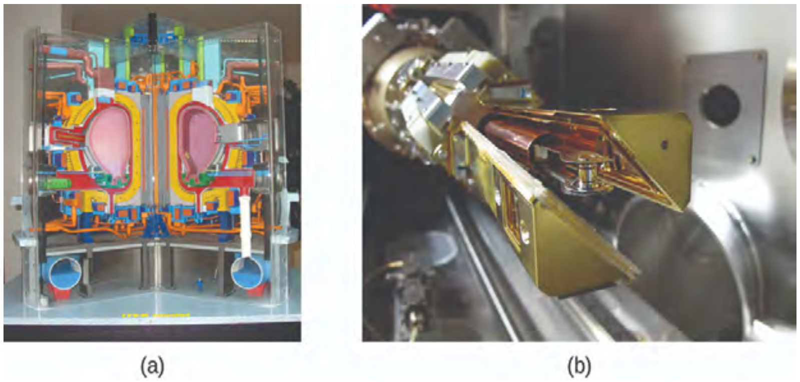


Figure 9.9.3: (a) This model is of the International Thermonuclear Experimental Reactor (ITER) reactor. Currently under construction in the south of France with an expected completion date of 2027, the ITER will be the world’s largest experimental Tokamak nuclear fusion reactor with a goal of achieving larg\times 10^{scale sustained energy production. (b) In 2012, the National Ignition Facility at Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory briefly produced over 500,000,000,000 watts (500 terawatts, or 500 TW) of peak power and delivered 1,850,000 joules (1.85 MJ) of energy, the largest laser energy ever produced and 1000 times the power usage of the entire United States in any given moment. Although lasting only a few billionths of a second, the 192 lasers attained the conditions needed for nuclear fusion ignition. This image shows the target prior to the laser shot. (credit a: modification of work by Stephan Mosel)

Another much more beneficial way to create fusion reactions is in a fusion reactor, a nuclear reactor in which fusion reactions of light nuclei are controlled. Because no solid materials are stable at such high temperatures, mechanical devices cannot contain the plasma in which fusion reactions occur. Two techniques to contain plasma at the density and temperature necessary for a fusion reaction are currently the focus of intensive research efforts: containment by a magnetic field and by the use of focused laser beams (Figure 9.9.3). A number of large projects are working to attain one of the biggest goals in science: getting hydrogen fuel to ignite and produce more energy than the amount supplied to achieve the extremely high temperatures and pressures that are required for fusion. At the time of this writing, there are no self-sustaining fusion reactors operating in the world, although small-scale controlled fusion reactions have been run for very brief periods.Contributors

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

9.10: Nuclear Transmutation and Transuranium Elements

Learning Objectives

- Describe the synthesis of transuranium nuclides

After the discovery of radioactivity, the field of nuclear chemistry was created and developed rapidly during the early twentieth century. A slew of new discoveries in the 1930s and 1940s, along with World War II, combined to usher in the Nuclear Age in the mid-twentieth century. Science learned how to create new substances, and certain isotopes of certain elements were found to possess the capacity to produce unprecedented amounts of energy, with the potential to cause tremendous damage during war, as well as produce enormous amounts of power for society's needs during peace.

Synthesis of Nuclides

Nuclear transmutation is the conversion of one nuclide into another. It can occur by the radioactive decay of a nucleus, or the reaction of a nucleus with another particle. The first manmade nucleus was produced in Ernest Rutherford's laboratory in 1919 by a transmutation reaction, the bombardment of one type of nuclei with other nuclei or with neutrons. Rutherford bombarded nitrogen atoms with high-speed α particles from a natural radioactive isotope of radium and observed protons resulting from the reaction:

$$^{14}_{7}\mathrm{N}+^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}\longrightarrow ^{17}_{8}\mathrm{O}+^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}$$

The $^{17}_{8}\mathrm{O}$ and $^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}$ nuclei that are produced are stable, so no further (nuclear) changes occur.

To reach the kinetic energies necessary to produce transmutation reactions, devices called **particle accelerators** are used. These devices use magnetic and electric fields to increase the speeds of nuclear particles. In all accelerators, the particles move in a vacuum to avoid collisions with gas molecules. When neutrons are required for transmutation reactions, they are usually obtained from radioactive decay reactions or from various nuclear reactions occurring in nuclear reactors.

CERN Particle Accelerator

Located near Geneva, the CERN ("Conseil Européen pour la Recherche Nucléaire," or European Council for Nuclear Research) Laboratory is the world's premier center for the investigations of the fundamental particles that make up matter. It contains the 27-kilometer (17 mile) long, circular Large Hadron Collider (LHC), the largest particle accelerator in the world (Figure 9.10.1). In the LHC, particles are boosted to high energies and are then made to collide with each other or with stationary targets at nearly the speed of light. Superconducting electromagnets are used to produce a strong magnetic field that guides the particles around the ring. Specialized, purpose-built detectors observe and record the results of these collisions, which are then analyzed by CERN scientists using powerful computers.

Figure 9.10.1: A small section of the LHC is shown with workers traveling along it. (credit: Christophe Delaere)

In 2012, CERN announced that experiments at the LHC showed the first observations of the Higgs boson, an elementary particle that helps explain the origin of mass in fundamental particles. This long-anticipated discovery made worldwide news and resulted in the awarding of the 2103 Nobel Prize in Physics to François Englert and Peter Higgs, who had predicted the existence of this particle almost 50 years previously.

Prior to 1940, the heaviest-known element was uranium, whose atomic number is 92. Now, many artificial elements have been synthesized and isolated, including several on such a large scale that they have had a profound effect on society. One of these—element 93, neptunium (Np)—was first made in 1940 by McMillan and Abelson by bombarding uranium-238 with neutrons. The reaction creates unstable uranium-239, with a half-life of 23.5 minutes, which then decays into neptunium-239. Neptunium-239 is also radioactive, with a half-life of 2.36 days, and it decays into plutonium-239. The nuclear reactions are:

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{238}_{92}\mathrm{U} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} &\longrightarrow {}^{239}_{92}\mathrm{U} \\ {}^{239}_{92}\mathrm{U} &\longrightarrow {}^{239}_{93}\mathrm{Np} + {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e} \qquad \text{half-life} = 23.5\text{ min} \\ {}^{239}_{93}\mathrm{Np} &\longrightarrow {}^{239}_{94}\mathrm{Pu} + {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e} \qquad \text{half-life} = 2.36\text{ days} \end{aligned}$$

Plutonium is now mostly formed in nuclear reactors as a byproduct during the decay of uranium. Some of the neutrons that are released during U-235 decay combine with U-238 nuclei to form uranium-239; this undergoes β decay to form neptunium-239, which in turn undergoes β decay to form plutonium-239 as illustrated in the preceding three equations. It is possible to summarize these equations as:

$${}^{238}_{92}\mathrm{U} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} \longrightarrow {}^{239}_{92}\mathrm{U} \xrightarrow{\beta^-} {}^{239}_{93}\mathrm{Np} \xrightarrow{\beta^-} {}^{239}_{94}\mathrm{Pu} \tag{9.10.1}$$

Heavier isotopes of plutonium—Pu-240, Pu-241, and Pu-242—are also produced when lighter plutonium nuclei capture neutrons. Some of this highly radioactive plutonium is used to produce military weapons, and the rest presents a serious storage problem because they have half-lives from thousands to hundreds of thousands of years.

Although they have not been prepared in the same quantity as plutonium, many other synthetic nuclei have been produced. Nuclear medicine has developed from the ability to convert atoms of one type into other types of atoms. Radioactive isotopes of several dozen elements are currently used for medical applications. The radiation produced by their decay is used to image or treat various organs or portions of the body, among other uses.

The elements beyond element 92 (uranium) are called transuranium elements. As of this writing, 22 transuranium elements have been produced and officially recognized by IUPAC; several other elements have formation claims that are waiting for approval. Some of these elements are shown in Table 9.10.1.

Table 9.10.1: Preparation of Some of the Transuranium Elements

Name	Symbol	Atomic Number	Reaction
americium	Am	95	${}^{239}_{94}\mathrm{Pu} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} \longrightarrow {}^{240}_{95}\mathrm{Am} + {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e}$
curium	Cm	96	${}^{239}_{94}\mathrm{Pu} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} \longrightarrow {}^{242}_{96}\mathrm{Cm} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
californium	Cf	98	${}^{242}_{96}\mathrm{Cm} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} \longrightarrow {}^{243}_{97}\mathrm{Bk} + 2\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
einsteinium	Es	99	${}^{238}_{92}\mathrm{U} + 15\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} \longrightarrow {}^{253}_{99}\mathrm{Es} + 7\,{}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e}$
mendelevium	Md	101	${}^{253}_{99}\mathrm{Es} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} \longrightarrow {}^{256}_{101}\mathrm{Md} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
nobelium	No	102	${}^{246}_{96}\mathrm{Cm} + {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C} \longrightarrow {}^{254}_{102}\mathrm{No} + 4\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
rutherfordium	Rf	104	${}^{249}_{98}\mathrm{Cf} + {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C} \longrightarrow {}^{257}_{104}\mathrm{Rf} + 4\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
seaborgium	Sg	106	${}^{206}_{82}\mathrm{Pb} + {}^{54}_{24}\mathrm{Cr} \longrightarrow {}^{257}_{106}\mathrm{Sg} + 3\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$ ${}^{249}_{98}\mathrm{Cf} + {}^{18}_{8}\mathrm{O} \longrightarrow {}^{263}_{106}\mathrm{Sg} + 4\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
meitnerium	Mt	107	${}^{209}_{83}\mathrm{Bi} + {}^{58}_{26}\mathrm{Fe} \longrightarrow {}^{266}_{109}\mathrm{Mt} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$

Contributors and Attributions

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

9.11: The Effects of Radiation on Life

Learning Objectives

- To know the differences between ionizing and nonionizing radiation and their effects on matter.
- To identify natural and artificial sources of radiation.

Because nuclear reactions do not typically affect the valence electrons of the atom (although electron capture draws an electron from an orbital of the lowest energy level), they do not directly cause chemical changes. Nonetheless, the particles and the photons emitted during nuclear decay are very energetic, and they can indirectly produce chemical changes in the matter surrounding the nucleus that has decayed. For instance, an α particle is an ionized helium nucleus (He^{2+}) that can act as a powerful oxidant. In this section, we describe how radiation interacts with matter and the some of the chemical and biological effects of radiation.

Ionizing versus Nonionizing Radiation

The effects of radiation on matter are determined primarily by the energy of the radiation, which depends on the nuclear decay reaction that produced it. **Nonionizing radiation** is relatively low in energy; when it collides with an atom in a molecule or an ion, most or all of its energy can be absorbed without causing a structural or a chemical change. Instead, the kinetic energy of the radiation is transferred to the atom or molecule with which it collides, causing it to rotate, vibrate, or move more rapidly. Because this energy can be transferred to adjacent molecules or ions in the form of heat, many radioactive substances are warm to the touch. Highly radioactive elements such as polonium, for example, have been used as heat sources in the US space program. As long as the intensity of the nonionizing radiation is not great enough to cause overheating, it is relatively harmless, and its effects can be neutralized by cooling.

In contrast, **ionizing radiation** is higher in energy, and some of its energy can be transferred to one or more atoms with which it collides as it passes through matter. If enough energy is transferred, electrons can be excited to very high energy levels, resulting in the formation of positively charged ions:

$$\text{atom} + \text{ionizing radiation} \rightarrow \text{ion}^+ + e^- \tag{9.11.1}$$

Molecules that have been ionized in this way are often highly reactive, and they can decompose or undergo other chemical changes that create a cascade of reactive molecules that can damage biological tissues and other materials (Figure 9.11.1). Because the energy of ionizing radiation is very high, we often report its energy in units such as megaelectronvolts (MeV) per particle:

$$1\ \text{MeV/particle} = 96\ \text{billion J/mol.}$$

Figure 9.11.1: Radiation Damage. When high-energy particles emitted by radioactive decay interact with matter, they can break bonds or ionize molecules, resulting in changes in physical properties such as ductility or color. The glass electrical insulator on the left has not been exposed to radiation, but the insulator on the right has received intense radiation doses over a long period of time. Radiation damage changed the chemical structure of the glass, causing it to become bright blue. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

The Effects of Ionizing Radiation on Matter

The effects of ionizing radiation depend on four factors:

1. The type of radiation, which dictates how far it can penetrate into matter
2. The energy of the individual particles or photons
3. The number of particles or photons that strike a given area per unit time
4. The chemical nature of the substance exposed to the radiation

The relative abilities of the various forms of ionizing radiation to penetrate biological tissues are illustrated in Figure $9.11.2$ Because of its high charge and mass, α radiation interacts strongly with matter. Consequently, it does not penetrate deeply into an object, and it can be stopped by a piece of paper, clothing, or skin. In contrast, γ rays, with no charge and essentially no mass, do not interact strongly with matter and penetrate deeply into most objects, including the human body. Several inches of lead or more than 12 inches of special concrete are needed to completely stop γ rays. Because β particles are intermediate in mass and charge between α particles and γ rays, their interaction with matter is also intermediate. Beta particles readily penetrate paper or skin, but they can be stopped by a piece of wood or a relatively thin sheet of metal.

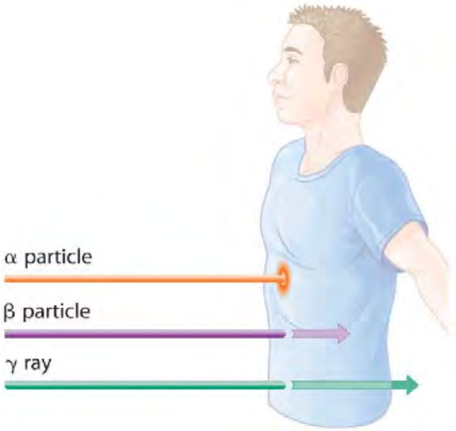


Figure $9.11.2$: Depth of Penetration of Ionizing Radiation. The depth of penetration of alpha, beta, and gamma radiation varies with the particle. Because α particles interact strongly with matter, they do not penetrate deeply into the human body. In contrast, β particles do not interact as strongly with matter and penetrate more deeply. Gamma rays, which have no charge, are stopped by only very dense materials and can pass right through the human body without being absorbed. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Because of their great penetrating ability, γ rays are by far the most dangerous type of radiation when they come from a source *outside* the body. Alpha particles, however, are the most damaging if their source is *inside* the body because internal tissues absorb all of their energy. Thus danger from radiation depends strongly on the type of radiation emitted and the extent of exposure, which allows scientists to safely handle many radioactive materials if they take precautions to avoid, for example, inhaling fine particulate dust that contains alpha emitters. Some properties of ionizing radiation are summarized in Table $9.11.1$

Table 9.11.1: Some Properties of Ionizing Radiation

Type	Energy Range (MeV)	Penetration Distance in Water*	Penetration Distance in Air*
α particles	3–9	< 0.05 mm	< 10 cm
β particles	≤ 3	< 4 mm	1 m
x-rays	$<10^{-2}$	< 1 cm	< 3 m
γ rays	10^{-2}–10^{1}	< 20 cm	> 3 m
*Distance at which half of the radiation has been absorbed.			

There are many different ways to measure radiation exposure, or the dose. The **roentgen (R)**, which measures the amount of energy absorbed by dry air, can be used to describe quantitative exposure.Named after the German physicist Wilhelm Röntgen (1845–1923; Nobel Prize in Physics, 1901), who discovered x-rays. The roentgen is actually defined as the amount of radiation needed to produce an electrical charge of 2.58×10^{-4} C in 1 kg of dry air. Damage to biological tissues, however, is proportional to the amount of energy absorbed by tissues, not air. The most common unit used to measure the effects of radiation on biological tissue is the **rad (radiation absorbed dose)**; the SI equivalent is the gray (Gy). The rad is defined as the amount of radiation that causes 0.01 J of energy to be absorbed by 1 kg of matter, and the gray is defined as the amount of radiation that causes 1 J of energy to be absorbed per kilogram:

$$1 \text{ rad} = 0.010 \text{ J/kg} \qquad 1 \text{ Gy} = 1 \text{ J/kg} \tag{9.11.2}$$

Thus a 70 kg human who receives a dose of 1.0 rad over his or her entire body absorbs 0.010 J/70 kg = 1.4×10^{-4} J, or 0.14 mJ. To put this in perspective, 0.14 mJ is the amount of energy transferred to your skin by a 3.8×10^{-5} g droplet of boiling water. Because the energy of the droplet of water is transferred to a relatively large area of tissue, it is harmless. A radioactive particle, however, transfers its energy to a single molecule, which makes it the atomic equivalent of a bullet fired from a high-powered rifle.

Because α particles have a much higher mass and charge than β particles or γ rays, the difference in mass between α and β particles is analogous to being hit by a bowling ball instead of a table tennis ball traveling at the same speed. Thus the amount of tissue damage caused by 1 rad of α particles is much greater than the damage caused by 1 rad of β particles or γ rays. Thus a unit called the **rem (roentgen equivalent in man)** was devised to describe the actual amount of tissue damage caused by a given amount of radiation. The number of rems of radiation is equal to the number of rads multiplied by the RBE (relative biological effectiveness) factor, which is 1 for β particles, γ rays, and x-rays and about 20 for α particles. Because actual radiation doses tend to be very small, most measurements are reported in millirems (1 mrem = 10^{-3} rem).

Wilhelm Röntgen

Born in the Lower Rhine Province of Germany, Röntgen was the only child of a cloth manufacturer and merchant. His family moved to the Netherlands where he showed no particular aptitude in school, but where he was fond of roaming the countryside. Röntgen was expelled from technical school in Utrecht after being unjustly accused of drawing a caricature of one of the teachers. He began studying mechanical engineering in Zurich, which he could enter without having the credentials of a regular student, and received a PhD at the University of Zurich in 1869. In 1876 he became professor of physics.

Natural Sources of Radiation

We are continuously exposed to measurable background radiation from a variety of natural sources, which, on average, is equal to about 150–600 mrem/yr (Figure 9.11.3). One component of background radiation is *cosmic rays*, high-energy particles and γ rays emitted by the sun and other stars, which bombard Earth continuously. Because cosmic rays are partially absorbed by the atmosphere before they reach Earth's surface, the exposure of people living at sea level (about 30 mrem/yr) is significantly less than the exposure of people living at higher altitudes (about 50 mrem/yr in Denver, Colorado). Every 4 hours spent in an airplane at greater than 30,000 ft adds about 1 mrem to a person's annual radiation exposure.

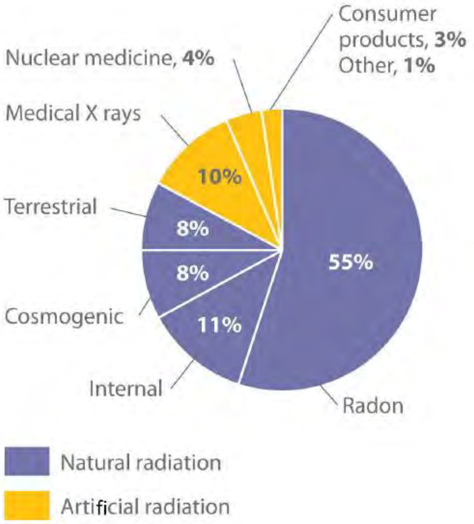


Figure 9.11.3: The Radiation Exposure of a Typical Adult in the United States. The average radiation dose from natural sources for an adult in the United States is about 150–600 mrem/yr. Radon accounts for more than half of an adult's total radiation exposure, whereas background radiation (terrestrial and cosmogenic) and exposure from medical sources account for about 15% each. Data source: Office of Civilian Radioactive Waste Management (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

A second component of background radiation is *cosmogenic radiation*, produced by the interaction of cosmic rays with gases in the upper atmosphere. When high-energy cosmic rays collide with oxygen and nitrogen atoms, neutrons and protons are released. These, in turn, react with other atoms to produce radioactive isotopes, such as ^{14}C:

$$^{14}_{7}\text{N} + ^{1}_{0}\text{n} \rightarrow ^{14}_{6}\text{C} + ^{1}_{1}\text{p} \tag{9.11.3}$$

The carbon atoms react with oxygen atoms to form CO_2, which is eventually washed to Earth's surface in rain and taken up by plants. About 1 atom in 1×10^{12} of the carbon atoms in our bodies is radioactive ^{14}C, which decays by beta emission. About 5000 ^{14}C nuclei disintegrate in your body during the 15 s or so that it takes you to read this paragraph. Tritium (^{3}H) is also produced in the upper atmosphere and falls to Earth in precipitation. The total radiation dose attributable to ^{14}C is estimated to be 1 mrem/yr, while that due to ^{3}H is about 1000 times less.

The third major component of background radiation is *terrestrial radiation*, which is due to the remnants of radioactive elements that were present on primordial Earth and their decay products. For example, many rocks and minerals in the soil contain small amounts of radioactive isotopes, such as $^{232}\mathrm{Th}$ and $^{238}\mathrm{U}$ as well as radioactive daughter isotopes, such as$^{226}\mathrm{Ra}$. The amount of background radiation from these sources is about the same as that from cosmic rays (approximately 30 mrem/yr). These isotopes are also found in small amounts in building materials derived from rocks and minerals, which significantly increases the radiation exposure for people who live in brick or concrete-block houses (60–160 mrem/yr) instead of houses made of wood (10–20 mrem/yr). Our tissues also absorb radiation (about 40 mrem/yr) from naturally occurring radioactive elements that are present in our bodies. For example, the average adult contains about 140 g of potassium as the K^+ ion. Naturally occurring potassium contains 0.0117% ^{40}K, which decays by emitting both a β particle and a (\gamma\) ray. In the last 20 seconds, about the time it took you to read this paragraph, approximately 40,000 ^{40}K nuclei disintegrated in your body.

By far the most important source of background radiation is radon, the heaviest of the noble gases (group 18). Radon-222 is produced during the decay of^{238}U, and other isotopes of radon are produced by the decay of other heavy elements. Even though radon is chemically inert, all its isotopes are radioactive. For example, ^{222}Rn undergoes two successive alpha-decay events to give ^{214}Pb:

$$^{222}_{86}\mathrm{Rn} \rightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\alpha + {}^{218}_{84}\mathrm{Po} + {}^{4}_{2}\alpha + {}^{214}_{82}\mathrm{Pb} \tag{9.11.4}$$

Because radon is a dense gas, it tends to accumulate in enclosed spaces such as basements, especially in locations where the soil contains greater-than-average amounts of naturally occurring uranium minerals. Under most conditions, radioactive decay of radon poses no problems because of the very short range of the emitted α particle. If an atom of radon happens to be in your lungs when it decays, however, the chemically reactive daughter isotope polonium-218 can become irreversibly bound to molecules in the lung tissue. Subsequent decay of $^{218}\mathrm{Po}$ releases an α particle directly into one of the cells lining the lung, and the resulting damage can eventually cause lung cancer. The $^{218}\mathrm{Po}$ isotope is also readily absorbed by particles in cigarette smoke, which adhere to the surface of the lungs and can hold the radioactive isotope in place. Recent estimates suggest that radon exposure is a contributing factor in about 15% of the deaths due to lung cancer. Because of the potential health problem radon poses, many states require houses to be tested for radon before they can be sold. By current estimates, radon accounts for more than half of the radiation exposure of a typical adult in the United States.

Artificial Sources of Radiation

In addition to naturally occurring background radiation, humans are exposed to small amounts of radiation from a variety of artificial sources. The most important of these are the x-rays used for diagnostic purposes in medicine and dentistry, which are photons with much lower energy than γ rays. A single chest x-ray provides a radiation dose of about 10 mrem, and a dental x-ray about 2–3 mrem. Other minor sources include television screens and computer monitors with cathode-ray tubes, which also produce x-rays. Luminescent paints for watch dials originally used radium, a highly toxic alpha emitter if ingested by those painting the dials. Radium was replaced by tritium (^{3}H) and promethium (^{147}Pr), which emit low-energy β particles that are absorbed by the watch crystal or the glass covering the instrument. Radiation exposure from television screens, monitors, and luminescent dials totals about 2 mrem/yr. Residual fallout from previous atmospheric nuclear-weapons testing is estimated to account for about twice this amount, and the nuclear power industry accounts for less than 1 mrem/yr (about the same as a single 4 h jet flight).

✓ Example 9.11.1

Calculate the annual radiation dose in rads a typical 70 kg chemistry student receives from the naturally occurring ^{40}K in his or her body, which contains about 140 g of potassium (as the K^+ ion). The natural abundance of ^{40}K is 0.0117%. Each 1.00 mol of ^{40}K undergoes 1.05×10^7 decays/s, and each decay event is accompanied by the emission of a 1.32 MeV β particle.

Given: mass of student, mass of isotope, natural abundance, rate of decay, and energy of particle

Asked for: annual radiation dose in rads

Strategy:

A. Calculate the number of moles of ^{40}K present using its mass, molar mass, and natural abundance.
B. Determine the number of decays per year for this amount of ^{40}K.
C. Multiply the number of decays per year by the energy associated with each decay event. To obtain the annual radiation dose, use the mass of the student to convert this value to rads.

Solution

A The number of moles of ^{40}K present in the body is the total number of potassium atoms times the natural abundance of potassium atoms present as ^{40}K divided by the atomic mass of ^{40}K:

$$\text{moles }^{40}\text{K} = 140 \text{ g K} \times \frac{0.0117 \text{ mol }^{40}\text{K}}{100 \text{ mol K}} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol K}}{40.0 \text{ g K}} = 4.10 \times 10^{-4} \text{ mol }^{40}\text{K}$$

B We are given the number of atoms of ^{40}K that decay per second in 1.00 mol of ^{40}K, so the number of decays per year is as follows:

$$\frac{\text{decays}}{\text{year}} = 4.10 \times 10^{-4} \text{ mol}^{40}\text{ K} \times \frac{1.05 \times 10^{7} \text{ decays/s}}{1.00 \text{ mol }^{40}\text{K}} \times \frac{60 \text{ s}}{1 \text{ min}} \times \frac{60 \text{ min}}{1 \text{ h}} \times \frac{24 \text{ h}}{1 \text{ day}} \times \frac{365 \text{ days}}{1 \text{ yr}}$$

C The total energy the body receives per year from the decay of ^{40}K is equal to the total number of decays per year multiplied by the energy associated with each decay event:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{total energy per year} &= \frac{1.36 \times 10^{11} \text{ decays}}{\text{yr}} \times \frac{1.32 \text{ MeV}}{\text{decays}} \times \frac{10^{6} \text{ eV}}{\text{MeV}} \times \frac{1.602 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J}}{\text{eV}} \\ &= 2.87 \times 10^{-2} \text{ J/yr}\end{aligned}$$

We use the definition of the rad (1 rad = 10^{-2} J/kg of tissue) to convert this figure to a radiation dose in rads. If we assume the dose is equally distributed throughout the body, then the radiation dose per year is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{radiation dose per year} &= \frac{2.87 \times 10^{-2} \text{ J/yr}}{70.0 \text{ kg}} \times \frac{1 \text{ rad}}{1 \times 10^{-2} \text{ J/kg}} \\ &= 4.10 \times 10^{-2} \text{ rad/yr} = 41 \text{ mrad/yr}\end{aligned}$$

This corresponds to almost half of the normal background radiation most people experience.

? Exercise 9.11.1

Because strontium is chemically similar to calcium, small amounts of the Sr^{2+} ion are taken up by the body and deposited in calcium-rich tissues such as bone, using the same mechanism that is responsible for the absorption of Ca^{2+}. Consequently, the radioactive strontium (^{90}Sr) found in fission waste and released by atmospheric nuclear-weapons testing is a major health concern. A normal 70 kg human body has about 280 mg of strontium, and each mole of ^{90}Sr undergoes 4.55×10^{14} decays/s by the emission of a 0.546 MeV β particle. What would be the annual radiation dose in rads for a 70 kg person if 0.10% of the strontium ingested were ^{90}Sr?

Answer

5.7×10^{3} rad/yr (which is 10 times the fatal dose)

Assessing the Impact of Radiation Exposure

One of the more controversial public policy issues debated today is whether the radiation exposure from artificial sources, when combined with exposure from natural sources, poses a significant risk to human health. The effects of single radiation doses of different magnitudes on humans are listed in Table 9.11.2 Because of the many factors involved in radiation exposure (length of exposure, intensity of the source, and energy and type of particle), it is difficult to quantify the specific dangers of one radioisotope versus another. Nonetheless, some general conclusions regarding the effects of radiation exposure are generally accepted as valid.

Table 9.11.2: The Effects of a Single Radiation Dose on a 70 kg Human

Dose (rem)	Symptoms/Effects
< 5	no observable effect
5–20	possible chromosomal damage
20–100	temporary reduction in white blood cell count
50–100	temporary sterility in men (up to a year)
100–200	mild radiation sickness, vomiting, diarrhea, fatigue; immune system suppressed; bone growth in children retarded
> 300	permanent sterility in women
> 500	fatal to 50% within 30 days; destruction of bone marrow and intestine
> 3000	fatal within hours

Radiation doses of 600 rem and higher are invariably fatal, while a dose of 500 rem kills half the exposed subjects within 30 days. Smaller doses (≤ 50 rem) appear to cause only limited health effects, even though they correspond to tens of years of natural radiation. This does not, however, mean that such doses have no ill effects; they may cause long-term health problems, such as cancer or genetic changes that affect offspring. The possible detrimental effects of the much smaller doses attributable to artificial sources (< 100 mrem/yr) are more difficult to assess.

The tissues most affected by large, whole-body exposures are bone marrow, intestinal tissue, hair follicles, and reproductive organs, all of which contain rapidly dividing cells. The susceptibility of rapidly dividing cells to radiation exposure explains why cancers are often treated by radiation. Because cancer cells divide faster than normal cells, they are destroyed preferentially by radiation. Long-term radiation-exposure studies on fruit flies show a linear relationship between the number of genetic defects and both the magnitude of the dose and the exposure time. In contrast, similar studies on mice show a much lower number of defects when a given dose of radiation is spread out over a long period of time rather than received all at once. Both patterns are plotted in Figure 9.11.4, but which of the two is applicable to humans? According to one hypothesis, mice have very low risk from low doses because their bodies have ways of dealing with the damage caused by natural radiation. At much higher doses, however, their natural repair mechanisms are overwhelmed, leading to irreversible damage. Because mice are biochemically much more similar to humans than are fruit flies, many scientists believe that this model also applies to humans. In contrast, the linear model assumes that all exposure to radiation is intrinsically damaging and suggests that stringent regulation of low-level radiation exposure is necessary. Which view is more accurate? The answer—while yet unknown—has extremely important consequences for regulating radiation exposure.

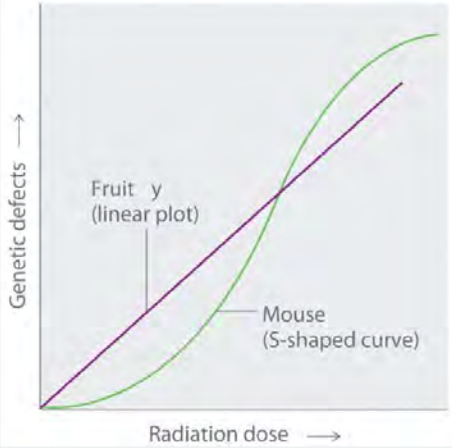


Figure 9.11.4: Two Possible Relationships between the Number of Genetic Defects and Radiation Exposure. Studies on fruit flies show a linear relationship between the number of genetic defects and the magnitude of the radiation dose and exposure time, which is consistent with a cumulative effect of radiation. In contrast, studies on mice show an S-shaped curve, which suggests that the number of defects is lower when radiation exposure occurs over a longer time. Which of these relationships is more applicable to humans is a matter of considerable debate. (CC BY-SA-NC; anonymous)

Graph of genetic defects against radiation dose. Fruit is graphed in purple and has a linear plot. Mouse is graphed in green and has a S shaped curve.

Summary

Nonionizing radiation is relatively low in energy and can be used as a heat source, whereas ionizing radiation, which is higher in energy, can penetrate biological tissues and is highly reactive. The effects of radiation on matter depend on the energy of the radiation. Nonionizing radiation is relatively low in energy, and the energy is transferred to matter in the form of heat. Ionizing radiation is relatively high in energy, and when it collides with an atom, it can completely remove an electron to form a positively charged ion that can damage biological tissues. Alpha particles do not penetrate very far into matter, whereas γ rays penetrate more deeply. Common units of radiation exposure, or dose, are the roentgen (R), the amount of energy absorbed by dry air, and the rad (radiation absorbed dose), the amount of radiation that produces 0.01 J of energy in 1 kg of matter. The rem (roentgen equivalent in man) measures the actual amount of tissue damage caused by a given amount of radiation. Natural sources of radiation include cosmic radiation, consisting of high-energy particles and γ rays emitted by the sun and other stars; cosmogenic radiation, which is produced by the interaction of cosmic rays with gases in the upper atmosphere; and terrestrial radiation, from radioactive elements present on primordial Earth and their decay products. The risks of ionizing radiation depend on the intensity of the radiation, the mode of exposure, and the duration of the exposure.

9.12: Radioactivity in Medicine and Other Applications

Learning Objectives

- List common applications of radioactive isotopes

Radioactive isotopes have the same chemical properties as stable isotopes of the same element, but they emit radiation, which can be detected. If we replace one (or more) atom(s) with radioisotope(s) in a compound, we can track them by monitoring their radioactive emissions. This type of compound is called a radioactive tracer (or radioactive label). Radioisotopes are used to follow the paths of biochemical reactions or to determine how a substance is distributed within an organism. Radioactive tracers are also used in many medical applications, including both diagnosis and treatment. They are used to measure engine wear, analyze the geological formation around oil wells, and much more.

Radioisotopes have revolutionized medical practice, where they are used extensively. Over 10 million nuclear medicine procedures and more than 100 million nuclear medicine tests are performed annually in the United States. Four typical examples of radioactive tracers used in medicine are technetium-99 $({}^{99}_{43}\mathrm{Tc})$, thallium-201 $({}^{201}_{81}\mathrm{Tl})$, iodine-131 $({}^{131}_{53}\mathrm{I})$, and sodium-24 $({}^{24}_{11}\mathrm{Na})$. Damaged tissues in the heart, liver, and lungs absorb certain compounds of technetium-99 preferentially. After it is injected, the location of the technetium compound, and hence the damaged tissue, can be determined by detecting the γ rays emitted by the Tc-99 isotope. Thallium-201 (Figure $9.12.1$) becomes concentrated in healthy heart tissue, so the two isotopes, Tc-99 and Tl-201, are used together to study heart tissue. Iodine-131 concentrates in the thyroid gland, the liver, and some parts of the brain. It can therefore be used to monitor goiter and treat thyroid conditions, such as Grave's disease, as well as liver and brain tumors. Salt solutions containing compounds of sodium-24 are injected into the bloodstream to help locate obstructions to the flow of blood.

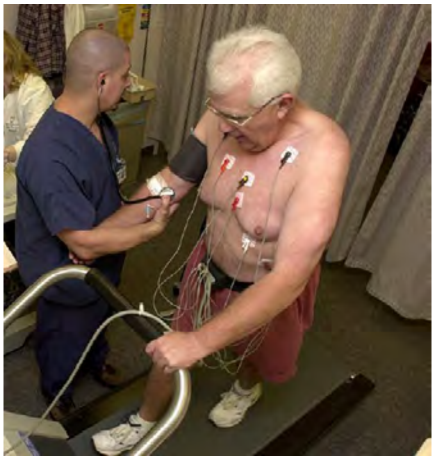


Figure 9.12.1: Administering thallium-201 to a patient and subsequently performing a stress test offer medical professionals an opportunity to visually analyze heart function and blood flow. (credit: modification of work by "Blue0ctane"/Wikimedia Commons)

A medical professional is assisting a topless elderly man on a treadmill with sensors and electrical wires connected to his torso.

Radioisotopes used in medicine typically have short half-lives—for example, the ubiquitous Tc-99m has a half-life of 6.01 hours. This makes Tc-99m essentially impossible to store and prohibitively expensive to transport, so it is made on-site instead. Hospitals and other medical facilities use Mo-99 (which is primarily extracted from U-235 fission products) to generate Tc-99. Mo-99 undergoes β decay with a half-life of 66 hours, and the Tc-99 is then chemically extracted (Figure $9.12.2$). The parent nuclide Mo-99 is part of a molybdate ion, $\mathrm{MoO_4^{2-}}$; when it decays, it forms the pertechnetate ion, $\mathrm{TcO_4^-}$. These two water-soluble ions are separated by column chromatography, with the higher charge molybdate ion adsorbing onto the alumina in the column, and the lower charge pertechnetate ion passing through the column in the solution. A few micrograms of Mo-99 can produce enough Tc-99 to perform as many as 10,000 tests.

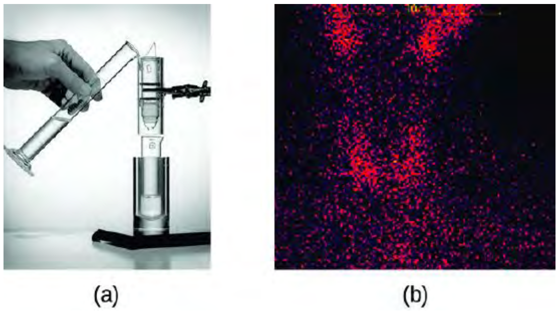


Figure 9.12.2: (a) The first Tc-99m generator (circa 1958) is used to separate Tc-99 from Mo-99. The MoO_4^{2-} *is retained by the matrix in the column, whereas the* TcO_4^- *passes through and is collected. (b) Tc-99 was used in this scan of the neck of a patient with Grave's disease. The scan shows the location of high concentrations of Tc-99. (credit a: modification of work by the Department of Energy; credit b: modification of work by "MBq"/Wikimedia Commons)*

The first image shows a hand pouring a liquid from a measuring cylinder into a column held up by a clamp. Below the column is a glass tube. The second picture shows red dots on a dark background dispersed everywhere with four spots of heavily concentrated regions.

Radioisotopes can also be used, typically in higher doses than as a tracer, as treatment. Radiation therapy is the use of high-energy radiation to damage the DNA of cancer cells, which kills them or keeps them from dividing (Figure 9.12.3). A cancer patient may receive external beam radiation therapy delivered by a machine outside the body, or internal radiation therapy (brachytherapy) from a radioactive substance that has been introduced into the body. Note that chemotherapy is similar to internal radiation therapy in that the cancer treatment is injected into the body, but differs in that chemotherapy uses chemical rather than radioactive substances to kill the cancer cells.

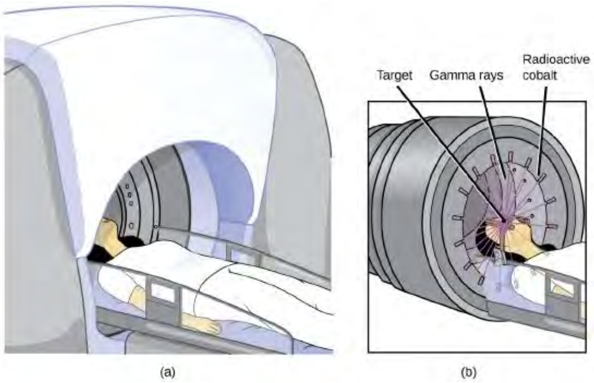


Figure 9.12.3: The cartoon in (a) shows a cobalt-60 machine used in the treatment of cancer. The diagram in (b) shows how the gantry of the Co-60 machine swings through an arc, focusing radiation on the targeted region (tumor) and minimizing the amount of radiation that passes through nearby regions.

A. A woman lies down as she goes into a dome shaped medical machine. B. A closer view of the women's head shows gamma rays from radioactive cobalt attacks the target on the woman's head.

Cobalt-60 is a synthetic radioisotope produced by the neutron activation of Co-59, which then undergoes β decay to form Ni-60, along with the emission of γ radiation. The overall process is:

$$^{59}_{27}\text{Co} + ^{1}_{0}\text{n} \longrightarrow ^{60}_{27}\text{Co} \longrightarrow ^{60}_{28}\text{Ni} + ^{0}_{-1}\beta + 2\,^{0}_{0}\gamma$$

The overall decay scheme for this is shown graphically in Figure 9.12.4

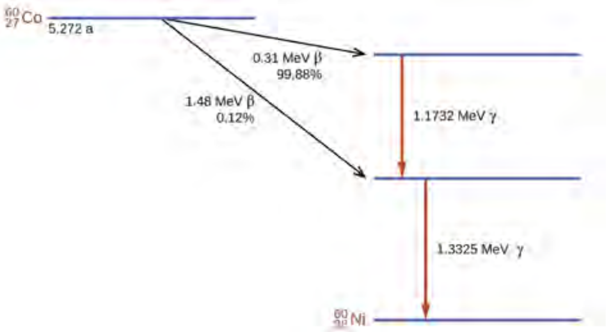


Figure 9.12.4: Co-60 undergoes a series of radioactive decays. The γ emissions are used for radiation therapy.

Radioisotopes are used in diverse ways to study the mechanisms of chemical reactions in plants and animals. These include labeling fertilizers in studies of nutrient uptake by plants and crop growth, investigations of digestive and milk-producing processes in cows, and studies on the growth and metabolism of animals and plants.

For example, the radioisotope C-14 was used to elucidate the details of how photosynthesis occurs. The overall reaction is:

$$6\,\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 6\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{C_6H_{12}O_6}(s) + 6\,\mathrm{O_2}(g),$$

but the process is much more complex, proceeding through a series of steps in which various organic compounds are produced. In studies of the pathway of this reaction, plants were exposed to CO_2 containing a high concentration of $^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C}$. At regular intervals, the plants were analyzed to determine which organic compounds contained carbon-14 and how much of each compound was present. From the time sequence in which the compounds appeared and the amount of each present at given time intervals, scientists learned more about the pathway of the reaction.

Commercial applications of radioactive materials are equally diverse (Figure $9.12.5$). They include determining the thickness of films and thin metal sheets by exploiting the penetration power of various types of radiation. Flaws in metals used for structural purposes can be detected using high-energy gamma rays from cobalt-60 in a fashion similar to the way X-rays are used to examine the human body. In one form of pest control, flies are controlled by sterilizing male flies with γ radiation so that females breeding with them do not produce offspring. Many foods are preserved by radiation that kills microorganisms that cause the foods to spoil.

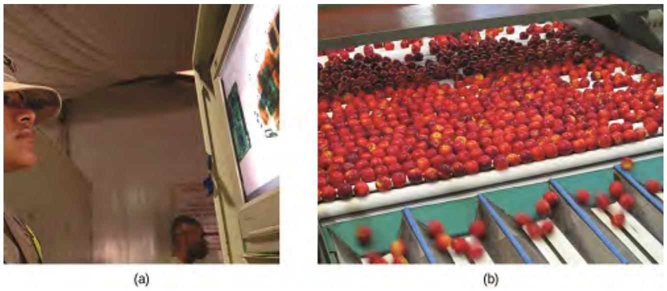


Figure 9.12.5: Common commercial uses of radiation include (a) X-ray examination of luggage at an airport and (b) preservation of food. (credit a: modification of work by the Department of the Navy; credit b: modification of work by the US Department of Agriculture)

A. A man is observing a monitor which shows the X-ray of luggages. B. Many apples on processing belts.

Americium-241, an α emitter with a half-life of 458 years, is used in tiny amounts in ionization-type smoke detectors (Figure $9.12.6$). The α emissions from Am-241 ionize the air between two electrode plates in the ionizing chamber. A battery supplies a potential that causes movement of the ions, thus creating a small electric current. When smoke enters the chamber, the movement of the ions is impeded, reducing the conductivity of the air. This causes a marked drop in the current, triggering an alarm.

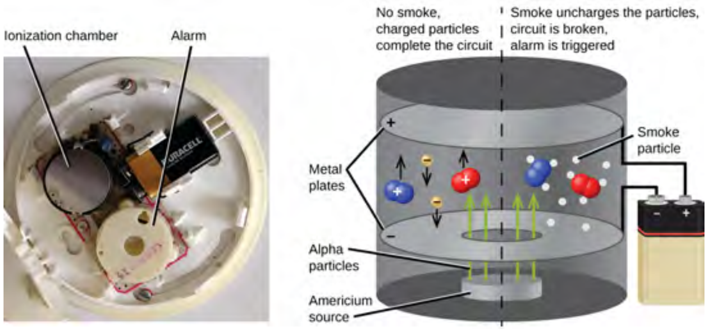


Figure 9.12.6: Inside a smoke detector, Am-241 emits α particles that ionize the air, creating a small electric current. During a fire, smoke particles impede the flow of ions, reducing the current and triggering an alarm. (credit a: modification of work by “Muffet”/Wikimedia Commons)

The inside of a smoke detector is shown with the alarm and ionization chamber labeled. In the picture beside it, a schematic shows the mechanisms of a smoke detector. The two oppositely charged metals plates in the detector are shown along with the Americium source on the bottom part emitting alpha particles. The schematic is divided into two parts, one to show the presence and the other for the absence of smoke.

Summary

Compounds known as radioactive tracers can be used to follow reactions, track the distribution of a substance, diagnose and treat medical conditions, and much more. Other radioactive substances are helpful for controlling pests, visualizing structures, providing fire warnings, and for many other applications. Hundreds of millions of nuclear medicine tests and procedures, using a wide variety of radioisotopes with relatively short half-lives, are performed every year in the US. Most of these radioisotopes have relatively short half-lives; some are short enough that the radioisotope must be made on-site at medical facilities. Radiation therapy uses high-energy radiation to kill cancer cells by damaging their DNA. The radiation used for this treatment may be delivered externally or internally.

Glossary

chemotherapy

similar to internal radiation therapy, but chemical rather than radioactive substances are introduced into the body to kill cancer cells

external beam radiation therapy

radiation delivered by a machine outside the body

internal radiation therapy

(also, brachytherapy) radiation from a radioactive substance introduced into the body to kill cancer cells

radiation therapy

use of high-energy radiation to damage the DNA of cancer cells, which kills them or keeps them from dividing

radioactive tracer

(also, radioactive label) radioisotope used to track or follow a substance by monitoring its radioactive emissions

---

Index

Glossary

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: Chemistry 201: General Chemistry II (Garces)

Webpages: 103

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- Undeclared: 85.4% (88 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 11.7% (12 pages)
- CC BY 4.0: 1.9% (2 pages)
- Public Domain: 1% (1 page)

By Page

- Chemistry 201: General Chemistry II (Garces) - *Undeclared*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: Liquids, Solids, and Intermolecular Forces - *Undeclared*
    - 1.1: Structure Determines Properties - *Public Domain*
    - 1.2: Solids, Liquids, and Gases- A Molecular Comparison - *Undeclared*
    - 1.3: Intermolecular Forces- The Forces that Hold Condensed Phases Together - *Undeclared*
    - 1.4: Intermolecular Forces in Action- Surface Tension, Viscosity, and Capillary Action - *Undeclared*
    - 1.5: Vaporization and Vapor Pressure - *Undeclared*
    - 1.6: Sublimation and Fusion - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.7: Heating Curve for Water - *Undeclared*
    - 1.8: Water - An Extraordinary Substance - *Undeclared*
  - 2: Solutions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.1: Types of Solutions and Solubility - *Undeclared*
    - 2.2: Energetics of Solution Formation - *Undeclared*
    - 2.3: Solution Equilibrium and Factors Affecting Solubility - *Undeclared*
    - 2.4: Expressing Solution Concentration - *Undeclared*
    - 2.5: Colligative Properties- Freezing Point Depression, Boiling Point Elevation, and Osmosis - *Undeclared*
    - 2.6: The Colligative Properties of Strong Electrolyte Solutions - *Undeclared*
  - 3: Chemical Kinetics - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.1: Catching Lizards - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.2: Rates of Reaction and the Particulate Nature of Matter - *Undeclared*
    - 3.3: Defining and Measuring the Rate of a Chemical Reaction - *Undeclared*
    - 3.4: The Rate Law- The Effect of Concentration on Reaction Rate - *Undeclared*
    - 3.5: The Integrated Rate Law- The Dependence of Concentration on Time - *Undeclared*
    - 3.6: The Effect of Temperature on Reaction Rate - *Undeclared*
    - 3.7: Reaction Mechanisms - *Undeclared*
    - 3.8: Catalysis - *Undeclared*
  - 4: Chemical Equilibrium - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.1: Fetal Hemoglobin and Equilibrium - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.2: The Concept of Dynamic Equilibrium - *Undeclared*
    - 4.3: The Equilibrium Constant (K) - *Undeclared*
    - 4.4: Expressing the Equilibrium Constant in Terms of Pressure - *Undeclared*
    - 4.5: Heterogenous Equilibria - Reactions Involving Solids and Liquids - *Undeclared*
    - 4.6: The Reaction Quotient- Predicting the Direction of Change - *Undeclared*
    - 4.7: Finding Equilibrium Concentrations - *Undeclared*
    - 4.8: Le Châtelier’s Principle- How a System at Equilibrium Responds to Disturbances - *Undeclared*
    - 4.9: Solubility Equilibria and the Solubility Product Constant - *Undeclared*
    - 4.10: Precipitation - *Undeclared*
    - 4.11: Complex Ion Equilibria - *Undeclared*
  - 5: Acids and Bases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.1: Batman’s Basic Blunder - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.2: The Nature of Acids and Bases - *Undeclared*
    - 5.3: Definitions of Acids and Bases - *Undeclared*

  - 5.4: Acid Strength and Molecular Structure - *Undeclared*
  - 5.5: Acid Strength and the Acid Ionization Constant (Ka) - *Undeclared*
  - 5.6: Autoionization of Water and pH - *Undeclared*
  - 5.7: Finding the [H3O+] and pH of Strong and Weak Acid Solutions - *Undeclared*
  - 5.8: Finding the [OH-] and pH of Strong and Weak Base Solutions - *Undeclared*
  - 5.9: The Acid-Base Properties of Ions and Salts - *Undeclared*
  - 5.10: Polyprotic Acids - *Undeclared*
  - 5.11: Lewis Acids and Bases - *Undeclared*
  - 5.12: The Danger of Antifreeze - *Undeclared*
  - 5.13: Buffers- Solutions That Resist pH Change - *Undeclared*
  - 5.14: Buffer Effectiveness- Buffer Capacity and Buffer Range - *Undeclared*
  - 5.15: Titrations and pH Curves - *Undeclared*
- 6: Free Energy and Thermodynamics - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 6.1: Energy Spreads Out - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 6.2: Spontaneous and Nonspontaneous Processes - *Undeclared*
  - 6.3: Entropy and the Second Law of Thermodynamics - *Undeclared*
  - 6.4: Predicting Entropy and Entropy Changes for Chemical Reactions - *Undeclared*
  - 6.5: Heat Transfer and Changes in the Entropy of the Surroundings - *Undeclared*
  - 6.6: Gibbs Energy - *Undeclared*
  - 6.7: Free Energy Changes in Chemical Reactions- Calculating - *Undeclared*
  - 6.8: Free Energy Changes for Nonstandard States - The Relationship between and - *Undeclared*
  - 6.9: Free Energy and Equilibrium- Relating to the Equilibrium Constant (K) - *Undeclared*
- 7: Electrochemistry - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 7.1: Lightning and Batteries - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 7.2: Balancing Oxidation-Reduction Equations - *Undeclared*
  - 7.3: Voltaic (or Galvanic) Cells- Generating Electricity from Spontaneous Chemical Reactions - *Undeclared*
  - 7.4: Standard Reduction Potentials - *Undeclared*
  - 7.5: Cell Potential, Gibbs Energy, and the Equilibrium Constant - *Undeclared*
  - 7.6: Cell Potential and Concentration - *Undeclared*
  - 7.7: Batteries- Using Chemistry to Generate Electricity - *Undeclared*
  - 7.8: Electrolysis- Driving Non-spontaneous Chemical Reactions with Electricity - *Undeclared*
  - 7.9: Corrosion- Undesirable Redox Reactions - *Undeclared*
- 8: Transition Metals and Coordination Compounds - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 8.1: The Colors of Rubies and Emeralds - *Undeclared*
  - 8.2: Properties of Transition Metals - *Undeclared*
  - 8.3: Coordination Compounds - *Undeclared*
  - 8.4: Structure and Isomerization - *Undeclared*
  - 8.5: Bonding in Coordinate Compounds - *Undeclared*
  - 8.6: Applications of Coordination Compounds - *Undeclared*
- 9: Radioactivity and Nuclear Chemistry - *Undeclared*
  - 9.1: Diagnosing Appendicitis - *Undeclared*
  - 9.2: The Discovery of Radioactivity - *Undeclared*
  - 9.3: Types of Radioactivity - *Undeclared*
  - 9.4: The Valley of Stability- Predicting the Type of Radioactivity - *Undeclared*
  - 9.5: Detecting Radioactivity - *Undeclared*
  - 9.6: The Kinetics of Radioactive Decay and Radiometric Dating - *Undeclared*
  - 9.7: The Discovery of Fission- The Atomic Bomb and Nuclear Power - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 9.8: Converting Mass to Energy- Mass Defect and Nuclear Binding Energy - *Undeclared*
  - 9.9: Nuclear Fusion - The Power of the Sun - *Undeclared*
  - 9.10: Nuclear Transmutation and Transuranium Elements - *Undeclared*
  - 9.11: The Effects of Radiation on Life - *Undeclared*
  - 9.12: Radioactivity in Medicine and Other Applications - *Undeclared*
- Back Matter - *Undeclared*
  - Index - *Undeclared*
  - Glossary - *Undeclared*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*